



# ENTREPRENEURSHIP

SECOND EDITION

William Bygrave & Andrew Zacharakis

*This page intentionally left blank*

# **Entrepreneurship**

---

***Second Edition***

**William Bygrave**  
Babson College

**Andrew Zacharakis**  
Babson College



John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

*To Frederic C. Hamilton and John H. Muller, Jr., pioneers, entrepreneurs,  
and benefactors of Babson College.*

VICE PRESIDENT AND PUBLISHER

GEORGE HOFFMAN

EDITOR

LISE JOHNSON

EDITORIAL ASSISTANT

SARAH VERNON

MARKETING MANAGER

KAROLINA ZARYCHTA

PHOTO EDITOR

HILARY NEWMAN

DESIGNER

RDC PUBLISHING GROUP SDN BHD

PRODUCTION MANAGER

JANIS SOO

SENIOR PRODUCTION EDITOR

JOYCE POH

Cover image © **panorios/iStockphoto**

This book was set in 10.5/12pt Adobe Garamond by Laserwords Private Limited and printed and bound by RR Donnelley. The cover was printed by RR Donnelley.

This book is printed on acid free paper.

Founded in 1807, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. has been a valued source of knowledge and understanding for more than 200 years, helping people around the world meet their needs and fulfill their aspirations. Our company is built on a foundation of principles that include responsibility to the communities we serve and where we live and work. In 2008, we launched a Corporate Citizenship Initiative, a global effort to address the environmental, social, economic, and ethical challenges we face in our business. Among the issues we are addressing are carbon impact, paper specifications and procurement, ethical conduct within our business and among our vendors, and community and charitable support. For more information, please visit our website: [www.wiley.com/go/citizenship](http://www.wiley.com/go/citizenship).

Copyright © 2011, 2008 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, website [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com). Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201)748-6011, fax (201)748-6008, website <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. Return instructions and a free of charge return shipping label are available at [www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel](http://www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel). Outside of the United States, please contact your local representative.

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Bygrave, William D., 1937-

Entrepreneurship / William D. Bygrave. – 2nd ed.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN 978-0-470-45037-6 (pbk.)

1. New business enterprises. 2. Entrepreneurship. 3. Small business—Management. I. Zacharakis, Andrew. II.

Title.

HD62.5.B938 2010

658.4'21—dc22

2010027088

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# CONTENTS

Preface vii

## 1 The Power of Entrepreneurship 1

- Entrepreneurship and Small Business in the United States 2
  - Entrepreneurial Revolution 4
  - Web: Three Revolutions Converge 8
  - Entrepreneurship Revolution Strikes Gold 9
  - Creative Destruction 11
- Causes of the Entrepreneurial Revolution 12
  - Changes in the Entrepreneurial Framework Conditions 13
  - Churning and Economic Growth 18
- Global Entrepreneurship Monitor 19
- Principal Findings from GEM 20
  - Age 22
  - Gender 23
  - Education 23
  - Financing 25
  - Job Creation 25
- 21st-Century Economies: Anglo-Saxon or Social Models? 27
  - Conclusion 29
  - Your Opportunity Journal 30
  - Web Exercise 30
  - Notes 30
  - CASE: MALINCHO 36

## 2 The Entrepreneurial Process 49

- Critical Factors for Starting a New Enterprise 50
  - Personal Attributes 52
  - Environmental Factors 52
  - Other Sociological Factors 54
- Evaluating Opportunities for New Businesses 56
  - The Opportunity 57
  - The Customer 58
  - The Timing 58
  - The Entrepreneur and the Management Team 59
  - Resources 60
- Determining Resource Needs and Acquiring Resources 60
  - Startup Capital 62
- Profit Potential 64
- Ingredients for a Successful New Business 66
  - Conclusion 68
  - Your Opportunity Journal 68
  - Notes 68
  - CASE: ALISON BARNARD 70

## 3 Opportunity Recognition, Shaping, and Reshaping 83

- From Glimmer to Action: How Do I Come Up with a Good Idea? 84
  - Finding Your Passion 84
  - Idea Multiplication 85
- Is Your Idea an Opportunity? 89
  - The Customer 89
  - The Competition 100
  - Suppliers and Vendors 103
  - The Government 103
  - The Global Environment 104
- The Opportunity Checklist 104
  - "I Don't Have an Opportunity" 104
- Conclusion 106
- Your Opportunity Journal 107
- Web Exercise 107
- Notes 107
- CASE: JIM POSS 110

## 4 Understanding Your Business Model and Developing Your Strategy 125

- The Business Model 125
  - The Revenue Model 126
  - The Cost Model 128
- The First-Mover Myth 130
- Formulating a Winning Strategy 132
  - The People Are What Matters 133
  - Entry Strategy 134
  - Growth Strategy 138
- Conclusion 145
- Your Opportunity Journal 146
- Web Exercise 146
- Notes 146
- CASE: ADAM AIRCRAFT 149

## 5 Entrepreneurial Marketing 167

- Why Marketing Is Critical for Entrepreneurs 168
- Entrepreneurs Face Unique Marketing Challenges 168
- Acquiring Market Information 169
- Marketing Strategy for Entrepreneurs 170
  - Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning 170
  - The Marketing Mix 171
- Guerrilla Marketing 182
- Marketing Skills for Managing Growth 184
  - Understanding and Listening to the Customer 184
  - Building the Brand 185
- Conclusion 185
- Your Opportunity Journal 186

■ Web Exercise	186
Appendix: Customer Interview	186
General Outline: It Needs to Be Tailored to Meet Your Research Needs	187
■ Notes	188
■ CASE: COLLEGE COACH	189

## 6 Building the Founding Team 199

Power of the Team	200
Where Do You Fit?	201
How to Build a Powerful Team	205
Bootstrapping: Building the Team Based on Stage-of-Venture Life	206
Compensation	208
Equity	208
Salary	213
Other Compensation Considerations	213
External Team Members	214
Outside Investors	214
Lawyers	215
Accountants	215
Board of Advisors	216
Board of Directors	216
Keeping the Team Together	217
Burnout	218
Family Pressure	219
Interpersonal Conflicts	219
■ Conclusion	220
■ Your Opportunity Journal	220
■ Web Exercise	220
■ Notes	221
■ CASE: AJAY BAM	222

## 7 The Business Planning Process 235

The Planning Process	237
The Story Model	239
The Business Plan	240
The Cover	240
Executive Summary	240
Table of Contents	241
Industry, Customer, and Competitor Analysis	242
Company and Product Description	246
Marketing Plan	246
Operations Plan	250
Development Plan	251
Team	252
Critical Risks	255
Offering	256
Financial Plan	256
Appendices	256
Types of Plans	257
Style Pointers for the Written Plan and Oral Presentation	258
■ Conclusion	259
■ Your Opportunity Journal	259
■ Web Exercise	259
■ Notes	260
■ CASE: P'KOLINO	261

## 8 Building Your Pro-Forma Financial Statements 305

Common Mistakes	306
Financial Statement Overview	307
Building Your Pro-Forma Financial Statements	308
Build-Up Method	308
Revenue Projections	310
Cost of Goods Sold	311
Operating Expenses	311
Preliminary Income Statement	314
Comparable Method	315
Building Integrated Financial Statements	317
Income Statement	318
Balance Sheet	320
Cash-Flow Statement	321
Putting It All Together	322
■ Conclusion	323
■ Your Opportunity Journal	323
■ Web Exercise	324
■ Notes	324
■ CASE: P'KOLINO FINANCIALS	325

## 9 Financing Entrepreneurial Ventures Worldwide 337

Entrepreneurial Financing for the World's Poorest	338
Microfinancing	338
Microcredit for the Poorest of the Poor	339
Entrepreneurs and Informal Investors	340
Amount of Capital Needed to Start a Business	342
Characteristics of Informal Investors	343
Financial Returns on Informal Investment	345
Supply and Demand for Startup Financing	346
Venture Capital	347
Classic Venture Capital	347
Importance of Venture Capital in the U.S. Economy	350
Mechanism of Venture Capital Investing	352
Financial Returns on Venture Capital	354
Venture Capital in Europe	356
Factors Affecting Availability of Financing	357
Total Entrepreneurial Activity and Informal Investing	357
Factors Affecting Informal Investing	357
Factors Affecting Classic Venture Capital	357
■ Conclusion	358
■ Your Opportunity Journal	358
■ Web Exercise	359
■ Notes	359
■ CASE: DAYONE	361

## 10 Raising Money for Starting and Growing Businesses 379

Jim Poss, BigBelly Solar	379
Bootstrapping New Ventures	380
Valuation	381
Earnings Capitalization Valuation	381
Present Value of Future Cash Flows	382
Market-Comparable Valuation (Multiple of Earnings)	382
Asset-Based Valuation	383
Example of Market-Comparable Valuation	383

Asset-Based Valuation Example	385
Financing a New Venture	386
Informal Investors	387
Business Angels	388
Searching for Business Angels	390
Types of Business Angels	391
Putting Together a Round of Angel Investment	392
Venture Capital	393
Candidates for Venture Capital	393
Ideal Candidates for Venture Capital	394
Actual Venture-Capital-Backed Companies	395
Dealing with Venture Capitalists	396
Negotiating the Deal	398
Follow-On Rounds of Venture Capital	398
Harvesting Investments	399
Initial Public Offering	399
Pros and Cons of an IPO	400
The Process of Going Public	402
BFWS Goes Public	404
Selling the Company	404
A Strategic Acquisition: LowerMyBills.com	404
Why Be Acquired?	406
■ Conclusion	407
■ Your Opportunity Journal	408
■ Web Exercise	408
■ Notes	409
■ CASE: BLADELOGIC	412

## 11 Debt and Other Forms of Financing 421

Getting Access to Funds—Start with Internal Sources	421
Start with Credit Cards and Home Equity Lines	422
Cash Conversion Cycle	423
Working Capital: Getting Cash from Receivables and Inventories	424
Using Accounts Receivable as Working Capital	425
The Sales Pattern	426
Cash Versus Credit Sales	426
Credit Policies	426
Setting Credit Terms	427
Collection Policies	428
Setting Credit Limits for Individual Accounts	429
Inventory	430
Sources of Short-Term Cash: More Payables, Less Receivables	431
Cash from Short-Term Bank Loans	431
Cash from Trade Credit	431
Cash Obtained by Negotiating with Suppliers	432
Cash Available Because of Seasonal Business Credit Terms	432
Advantages of Trade Credit	433
Cash Obtained by Tightening Up Accounts Receivable Collections	433
Obtaining Bank Loans Through Accounts Receivable Financing	434
Pledging	434
Pledging with Notification	434
Factoring	434
Recourse	435
Obtaining Loans against Inventory	435

Obtaining “Financing” from Customer Prepayments	435
Choosing the Right Mix of Short-Term Financing	436
Traditional Bank Lending: Short-Term Bank Loans	436
Maturity of Loans	437
Interest Rates	437
Collateral	438
Applying for a Bank Loan	439
Restrictive Covenants	439
General Provisions	439
Routine Provisions	440
Specific Provisions	441
Equipment Financing	441
Obtaining Early Financing from External Sources	442
SBA-Guaranteed Loans	442
Applying for an SBA Loan	442
Planning Cash Flow and Planning Profits	444
■ Conclusion	444
■ Your Opportunity Journal	445
■ Web Exercise	445
■ Notes	446
■ CASE: FEED RESOURCE RECOVERY	447

## 12 Legal and Tax Issues 461

Leaving Your Present Position	462
Corporate Opportunity	462
Recruitment of Fellow Employees	463
Proprietary Information	463
Noncompetition	465
Choosing an Attorney and an Accountant	466
Choice of Legal Form	466
Control	467
Personal Liability	469
Taxation	470
Initial Investment of the Founders	472
Administrative Obligations	474
Choosing a Name	474
Stockholders’ and Operating Agreements	475
Negotiating Employment Terms	475
Disposition of Equity Interests	475
Distributions of Company Profits	477
Redemption Provisions	478
Legal and Tax Issues in Hiring Employees	478
Employees as Agents of the Company	478
Employment Discrimination	479
Other Employment Statutes	480
Employment Agreements	480
Equity Sharing	481
Insurance	482
Property Insurance	482
Liability Insurance	482
Key Person Life Insurance	483
Business Interruption Insurance	483
Group Life, Disability, and Health Insurance for Employees	483
Raising Money	483
Legal Issues in the Sale of Securities to Investors	483
■ Conclusion	485
■ Your Opportunity Journal	485

- Web Exercise 486
- Notes 486
- CASE: CADENCE DESIGN SYSTEMS AND AVANT! (A) 487

## 13 Intellectual Property 499

- The Basics: What Is Protectable and How Should It Be Protected? 500
- Patents 501
- Obtaining a Utility Patent 501
  - Criteria for Obtaining a Utility Patent 503
  - Drafting the Patent Claims 504
  - Provisional Patent Applications 506
  - Design Patents 506
  - Managing Patent Costs 506
- Trade Secrets 507
- Trademarks 510
- Registering a Mark 511
  - Ownership of a Mark 512
- Copyright 512
- Summing Up 513
- International Protection for Intellectual Property 513
- Patent Filing Deadlines 514
  - How to Extend Patent Filing Deadlines 514
- Licensing and Technology Transfer 515
- Common Concerns and Clauses 515
  - Defining the Property Being Licensed 516
  - Limitations on Licenses 516
  - Assigning Value to a License 516
  - Royalty Rates 517
  - Negotiating License Agreements 517
  - Foreign Licenses 518
- Software Protection 518
- Patents for Software 518
  - Software Copyrights 519
  - Software Trade Secret Protection 519
- The Internet 520
- IP Agreements 520
- Preparing Employment Contracts 521
  - Transfer of Employee Rights to Company Innovations 521
  - How Employee Moonlighting Might Compromise Confidentiality 522
  - Noncompetition Clauses 522
  - Preventing Employee Raiding 523
  - Employee Ownership of Copyright 524
  - Rights of Prior Employees 524
  - Consultant Contracts 524
  - Confidential Disclosure Agreements 525
- Conclusion 526
  - Your Opportunity Journal 527
  - Web Exercise 527
  - Notes 527
  - CASE: CADENCE DESIGN SYSTEMS AND AVANT! (B) 528

## 14 Entrepreneurial Growth 531

- Making the Transition from Startup to Growth 532
- Looking Forward: The Choice to Grow, or Not,... or Sell 532
- A Model of Driving Forces of Growth 534
- The Growth Process 535
- Execution 535
- Instituting Controls 535
  - Tracking Performance 537
  - Managing the Cash Cycle 538
  - Leveraging the Value Chain 540
  - Maintaining the Entrepreneurial Organization 540
- Opportunity Domain 541
- Organizational Resources and Capabilities 544
- Obtaining Financial Resources for the Growing Company 544
  - Intangible Resources and Capabilities 545
- Leadership 546
- Starting the Delegation Process 547
  - First-Level Management 548
  - From Delegation to Decentralization 549
  - Professional Management and Boards 549
  - Coordinating the Driving Forces 550
  - Leading People; Developing Entrepreneurs 550
- Conclusion 551
  - Your Opportunity Journal 552
  - Web Exercise 553
  - Notes 553
  - CASE: LAZYBONES 554

## 15 Social Entrepreneurship: An Overview 563

- Definition 564
- Imitative Nonprofit Organizations 566
  - Innovative Nonprofit Organizations 567
  - Hybrids 568
  - For-Profits 569
- New Forms of Organizations 570
- Getting Started 571
- Identifying an Opportunity 571
  - Forming an Organization 573
  - Securing Resources 575
  - Evaluating Results 576
  - Going to Scale 578
- Conclusion 578
  - Your Opportunity Journal 579
  - Web Exercise 580
  - Notes 580
  - CASE: EARTHWATCH 583
- Glossary 597
- Company Index 607
- Name Index 611
- Subject Index 613

# PREFACE

The green shoots of entrepreneurship give an economy its vitality. They give rise to new products and services, fresh applications for existing products and services, and new ways of doing business. Entrepreneurship stirs up the existing economic order and prunes out the dead wood. Established companies that fail to adapt to the changes cease to be competitive in the marketplace and go out of business.

Within the broadest definition, entrepreneurs are found throughout the world of business because any firm, big or small, must have its share of entrepreneurial drive if it is to survive and prosper. This textbook focuses on starting and growing independent new ventures. It is based on entrepreneurship courses taught at Babson College and at universities around the world.

One of the most common questions that entrepreneurship educators are asked is, Can entrepreneurship be taught? Our response is that anyone with a desire to become an entrepreneur will be more successful if he or she has taken a course on how to start and grow a new venture. About 30% of the students who have taken the new-venture course at Babson College since 1985 have gone on to start full-time businesses at some time in their careers. Many have started more than one.

While this textbook empowers would-be entrepreneurs to start and grow their new ventures, it's not only for them. Any student who reads this book will learn about the entrepreneurial process and the role of entrepreneurship in the economy. We believe that all business students, whether or not they start a new business, will benefit from learning about entrepreneurship. After all, entrepreneurship and small business create most of the jobs in the U.S. economy and account for almost half the GDP. They are ubiquitous, and so integral to the economy that almost every student will work in one way or another with entrepreneurs and small businesses after graduation. This textbook will stand students in good stead—not only for starting their own firms, but also for dealing with startups as investors, bankers, accountants, lawyers, customers, vendors, employees, landlords, and in any other capacity.

An entrepreneurial revolution has transformed the economy since the mid-1970s. Central to that revolution is information technology, especially personal computers and the Internet. Information technology has profoundly changed the way companies do business, none more so than startup companies. Today's students were born after the personal computer came into common use, and they came of age in the era of the Web. We believe they need an entrepreneurship text in which information technology is completely integrated all the way through.

This book combines concepts and cases to present the latest theory about entrepreneurship and relate actual experiences. The concepts cover what would-be entrepreneurs need to know to start and grow their businesses, and the cases illustrate how real entrepreneurs have gone out and done it. They cover all stages of the entrepreneurial process, from searching for an opportunity to shaping it into a commercially attractive product or service, launching the new venture, building it into a viable business, and eventually harvesting it.

Chapter 1 discusses the role of entrepreneurship in the U.S. economy and looks at the entrepreneurial competitiveness of nations throughout the world. Chapter 2 is an overview of the factors critical for starting a new enterprise and building it into a successful business.

Chapters 3 through 8 look in detail at what budding entrepreneurs need to do before they open their doors for business. The section starts with searching for opportunities and evaluating them. It explains how to build a workable business model and covers marketing,

strategy, team building, financial projections, and business planning. At the end of this section students know how to write a business plan and how much startup capital they need to start their ventures.

The next section, Chapter 9 through 11, deals with financing businesses. Chapter 9 reviews the sources of financing for starting and growing businesses, both in the United States and worldwide. Chapter 10 discusses the nuts and bolts of raising money, particularly equity, to start and grow a business. Chapter 11 examines debt and other sources of financing.

Entrepreneurs need to understand the legal and tax issues associated with organizing a new business. They also need to know how to protect their intellectual capital. Chapters 12 and 13 explore these topics.

Anyone can start a new venture, but very few new businesses grow into substantial enterprises. Chapter 14 discusses what it takes to grow a business into a healthy company that provides financial rewards for the entrepreneur and good jobs for employees.

Finally, Chapter 15 looks at social entrepreneurship. Today, many students are looking at business ideas that may not only earn a profit, but also address a social concern.

Each chapter is accompanied by a case study of entrepreneurs in action. We chose the cases carefully, using these criteria:

- The entrepreneurs and their companies represent a spectrum of situations and industries that is as broad as we could make it.
- The judgment point in most cases occurs in the twenty-first century—some as recently as 2008 and 2009.
- All stages of the entrepreneurial process are covered, from pre-startup through harvest.
- Almost all the entrepreneurs in the cases are in their 20s and 30s; some are recent graduates.

There's no substitute for the experience gained from actually starting a business, but we believe that by completing the case studies in this book students will gain wisdom that would take years to pick up by trial and error as entrepreneurs starting and building businesses from scratch.

Each chapter ends with a unique Opportunity Journal. Here students can reflect on the lessons learned and think about how to apply them to their own entrepreneurial ventures, or to managing their careers. Finally, a Web exercise builds upon key concepts covered in each chapter.

## New to this Edition

---

The second edition has been thoroughly updated and enhanced throughout. Since the first edition, the U.S. and world have seen increasing turmoil: the great recession; continuing wars in Iraq and Afghanistan; a major oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico; earthquakes in Haiti and Chile; and an ongoing debate over climate change, just to name a few issues. To that end, we've noticed that more students than ever before are interested in not only creating great companies, but also addressing social issues. Thus, we've added Chapter 15 on Social Entrepreneurship, written by our colleague John Whitman. John has created a number of cutting edge courses on Social Entrepreneurship. In Chapter 15, he uses his expertise to talk about different organization structures and how entrepreneurs can create companies that have a double or triple bottom line. We've also added some new cases that illustrate ventures with a strong social objective. In addition to the Jim Poss case from the first edition, now the text includes a case on Feed Resource Recovery, a business that converts food waste into energy and organic fertilizer, and on Earthwatch, the story of a social enterprise that uses eco/adventure tourism to fund research on important earth science initiatives.

We also replaced three older cases. LazyBones looks at a successful entrepreneur who wants to grow his business, a laundry service, through franchising. BladeLogic looks at a company desperately in need of growth capital, addressing how entrepreneurs should manage the board and articulate their plan in seeking equity financing. Finally, College Coach looks at how a new venture identifies and tests various distribution channels to reach the customer.

With these changes, we are confident that the second edition of Entrepreneurship, not only continues our mission of empowering and enabling young entrepreneurs, but enhances it.

## Teaching Supplements

---

### Instructor's Manual

The Instructor's Manual has been designed to facilitate convenient lesson planning and includes the following:

- **Sample Syllabi.** Suggestions are given on dividing up the chapter material based on the frequency and duration of your class period.
- **General Chapter Outline.** The main headers provide a quick snapshot of all of the chapter content.
- **Case Teaching Notes.** Detailed teaching notes go into depth on the material covered in each chapter's accompanying case. They include discussion questions, classroom activities, and additional information on the businesses and entrepreneurs from the cases.

This comprehensive resource can be found on the Instructor Companion Site at [www.wiley.com/college/bygrave](http://www.wiley.com/college/bygrave).

### PowerPoint Slides

A robust set of PowerPoint slides gives you the ability to completely integrate your classroom lecture with a powerful visual statement of chapter material. The entire collection of roughly 150 slides is available for downloading from the Instructor Companion Site at [www.wiley.com/college/bygrave](http://www.wiley.com/college/bygrave).

### Test Bank

With 60 questions per chapter, the test bank consists of multiple choice, true/false, and short answer questions of varying difficulty. A computerized version of this test bank is also available on the Instructor Companion Site so that you can customize your quizzes and exams. Access these resources at [www.wiley.com/college/bygrave](http://www.wiley.com/college/bygrave).

### Additional Cases

In addition to the 15 cases included in the book, 15 additional cases, available on the book's companion site, give instructors more choices and give students more real-life examples. Cases available online include:

*Andres Galindo*

*Alexander Norman and Toni Randolph-Norman*

*ClearVue*

*Matt Grant*

*Enox*  
*CardSmith*  
*Makers Mark*  
*Vayusa* (the *Ajay Bam* second case)  
*Beautiful Legs by Post*  
*Living Patio Rooms*  
*Neverfail*  
*Matt Coffin*  
*Jon Hirschtick*  
*SolidWorks* (the *Jon Hirschtick* second case)  
*David Pearlman*  
*StudentCity.Com*  
*Nancy's Coffee*

## Video Cases (DVD)

Eleven videos accompany cases from the book, engaging students and giving them the opportunity to hear first-hand accounts from the entrepreneurs themselves. Available on DVD for instructors, these videos are ideal lecture launchers and a great way to grab a class's attention. Ask your local Wiley representative for more information. Video cases include:

*Malincho*  
*Alison Barnard*  
*Jim Poss*  
*Adam Aircraft*  
*College Coach*  
*Ajay Bam*  
*P'kolino*  
*DayOne*  
*BladeLogic*  
*Feed Resource Recovery*

## Acknowledgments

---

A comprehensive textbook on entrepreneurship covers a very wide range of disciplines that require specialized knowledge, so we invited leading experts to write some of the chapters.

- Entrepreneurial marketing is an emerging academic discipline; two of its leading experts are Abdul Ali at Babson College and Kathleen Seiders at Boston College, who wrote Chapter 6, “Entrepreneurial Marketing.”
- Joel Shulman, Babson College, who specializes in entrepreneurial finance, contributed Chapter 11, “Debt and Other Forms of Financing.”
- Legal and tax issues go hand in hand when setting up a new business; Richard Mandel, who is a Babson professor and a partner with the law firm Bowditch and Dewey that specializes in small business, wrote Chapter 12.
- Businesses increasingly depend on intellectual know-how, which must be safeguarded just as carefully as physical assets. Chapter 13, “Intellectual Property,” was authored by Joseph Iandorio and Kirk Teska, who are patent attorneys in the firm that bears their names.

- Babson professors Donna Kelley and Edward Marram wrote Chapter 14, “Entrepreneurial Growth.” Kelley is an expert on innovation, and Marram specializes in growing businesses.
- Professor John Whitman of Babson College wrote Chapter 15. Whitman has developed cutting edge classes in social entrepreneurship.

We thank all the contributing authors for their commitment and dedication to making this book as valuable as it can be for students.

We are forever indebted to everyone involved in the entrepreneurial process who has shared experience and wisdom with us. They include entrepreneurs from novices to old hands, informal investors, business angels, venture capitalists, bankers, lawyers, and landlords—indeed, anyone involved with entrepreneurs. We have learned so much from them. We’re especially thankful for all the students and alumni we have worked with over the years. Their feedback has helped us shape what we teach, and how we teach it.

We believe that entrepreneurs who successfully build businesses are inherently good coaches and teachers; they have to be if they are to develop and encourage employees. This generosity is borne out by their willingness to share their know-how with budding entrepreneurs. One important way in which entrepreneurs have done that is by allowing us to write cases about them and their companies, and then by coming to class when the cases are discussed. We make a video of each entrepreneur in a question-and-answer session with students immediately after the case is taught for the first time. Those videos, which are an integral part of the case study, are available to instructors using this textbook.

A huge “thank you” to the principals featured in the case studies in this book and on its companion Website. They are Kalin Pentchev, Andres Galindo, Alison Barnard, Matt Grant, Stephen Kramer, Michael London, Jim Poss, Voislav Damevski, Rick Adam, John Hamilton, Taran Lent, Brooks O’Kane, Bill Samuels, Jr., Ajay Bam, Elizabeth Preis, Andrew Zenoff, Matt Coffin, Axel Bichara, Jon Hirschtick, John Esler, Beth Wood-Leidt, Mario Ricciardelli, Steve Duplessie, Alexander Norman, Antonio Turco-Rivas, J.B. Schneider, Toni Randolph Norman, Dev Ittycheria, Dave Tabors, Dan Hermann, Joel Pedlikin, Reg Mathelier, Brian Rosborough, and Shane Eten.

We thank all the case writers who researched and wrote the cases in this book and on its companion Website. Carl Hedberg, who wrote many of the cases, deserves special recognition.

We’d also like to thank our student research assistants, who helped track down relevant examples in the popular press, acted as our first-draft readers, and worked hard on the instructional support materials; they are current and former Babson MBA students Rich Enos, Richard Raeke, Alexey Amerikov, Ge Song, Sara Gragnolati, Brian Zinn, Henry McGovern, and Mark Itkovitz.

It is a pleasure to be members of the Arthur M. Blank Center for Entrepreneurship at Babson College. Our Babson colleagues are an inspiration. They are pioneers of entrepreneurship education who are continually coming up with new ways of teaching. The Babson faculty comprises a marvelous mix of academics and what we call “pracademics”—practicing academics—who are entrepreneurs, venture capitalists, angel investors, lawyers, and others associated day-to-day with starting and running businesses. Candida Brush, chairperson of the entrepreneurship department and director of the Babson Arthur M. Blank Center for Entrepreneurship has been highly supportive. We have benefited from discussions with Ed Marram, Brian Abraham, Fred Alper, Jean-Luc Boulnois, Mike Caslin, Les Charm, Alan Cohen, Mike Gordon, Len Green, Tim Habbershon, Neal Harris, Bill Johnston, Glenn Kaplus, Donna Kelley, Julian Lange, Nan Langowitz, Maria Minniti, Kevin Mulvaney, Heidi Neck, Ernie Parizeau, Elizabeth Riley, Patricia Greene, Eric Noyes, Brad George, Yasu Yamakawa, and Joel Shulman, all of whom teach at Babson College. We’d also like to acknowledge two of our biggest supporters and mentors who passed away since the first edition was published, Jeffry Timmons and Natalie Taylor. Their long time influence and contributions to Babson College was invaluable. We miss them.

The Babson administration and staff have supported our efforts: The current president and provost, Leonard Schlesinger and Shahid Ansari, motivated us with their enthusiasm for entrepreneurship education. Michael Fetters, formerly provost, encouraged us to write this book and gave us permission to include the cases in the book. Fritz Fleischmann, former dean of faculty, eased our labor by supporting sabbatical leaves for both of us. William Lawler, former associate dean of the graduate school, provided financial support for the writing of some of the cases; David Wylie edited some of them; and Valerie Duffy made sure that the case collection was up to date.

We are thankful for the financial support we received from the benefactors of the Frederic C. Hamilton Chair for Free Enterprise and the John H. Muller, Jr. Chair for Entrepreneurship.

We greatly appreciate all the help that we received from the staff at Wiley and its affiliates. Lise Johnson, Executive Editor and Sarah Vernon, Assistant Editor were a continual source of inspiration and encouragement. Hilary Newman organized the selection of pictures. Joyce Poh did a fine job of line editing our manuscript.

Many reviewers offered thoughtful suggestions that have improved this book. We are indebted to every one of them:

Richard Benedetto, *Merrimack College*

Lowell Busenitz, *University of Oklahoma*

Pat H. Dickson, *Georgia Institute of Technology*

Hung-bin Ding, *Loyola University*

William Gartner, *Clemson University*

Todd A. Finkle, *University of Akron*

Vance H. Fried, *Oklahoma State University*

Jeffrey June, *Miami University of Ohio*

Mark Lieberman, *USC Marshall School of Business*

Heidi Neck, *Babson College*

William R. Sandberg, *University of South Carolina*

P.K. Shukla, *Chapman University*

Finally, we are both indebted to our families, our patient and supportive wives, and our beautiful and talented children. Thank you for being so understanding when we were pushing hard to meet our deadlines.



(left photo) Bill Gates (bottom left) and Paul Allen (bottom right) with the Microsoft team in December 1978. The company, then almost 4 years old, had annual revenue of \$1.4 million. For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2009, Microsoft's annual revenue was \$58.4 billion and it had 95,736 employees.

(right photo) Warren Buffett speaks to the media with Bill and Melinda Gates June 26, 2006 at a news conference where Buffett spoke about his financial gift to the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation in New York City. Buffett, ranked as the second-richest man in the world—just behind Bill Gates, said his \$31 billion of Class B shares of Berkshire Hathaway stock, will go to the foundation where it will be put to use in work with health and education programs in underprivileged countries. (Source: (left photo): Courtesy Microsoft; (right photo) Spencer Platt/Getty Images, Inc.)

## THE POWER OF ENTREPRENEURSHIP

This is the entrepreneurial age. More than 500 million persons worldwide either were actively involved in trying to start a new venture or were owner-managers of a new business in 2010.<sup>1</sup>

More than fifteen hundred new businesses are born every hour of every working day in the United States. Entrepreneurs are driving a revolution that is transforming and renewing economies worldwide. Entrepreneurship is the essence of free enterprise because the birth of new businesses gives a market economy its vitality. New and emerging businesses create a very large proportion of the innovative products and services that transform the way we work and live, such as personal computers (PCs), computer software, the Internet and the World Wide Web (WWW or Web), biotechnology drugs, overnight package deliveries, and big-box stores. They generate most new jobs; from 1993 through the third quarter of 2008, companies with 500 or fewer employees created 64% of all new jobs in the United States.<sup>2</sup>

There has never been a better time to practice the art and science of entrepreneurship. But what is entrepreneurship? Early in the 20th century, Joseph Schumpeter, the Moravian-born economist writing in Vienna, gave us the modern definition of an entrepreneur: a person who destroys the existing economic order by introducing new products and services, by introducing new methods of production, by creating new forms of organization, or by exploiting new raw materials. According to Schumpeter, that person is most likely to accomplish this destruction by founding a new business but may also do it within an existing one.

Schumpeter explained how entrepreneurs had suddenly increased the standard of living of a few industrialized nations.<sup>3</sup> When the Industrial Revolution began in England around 1760, no nation had enjoyed a standard of living equal to that of Imperial Rome 2,000 years earlier. But from 1870 to 1979, for example, the standard of living of 16 nations jumped sevenfold on average.<sup>4</sup>

Very few new businesses have the potential to initiate a Schumpeterian “gale” of creative destruction, as Apple Computer did in the computer industry. The vast majority enter existing markets. So, in this textbook, we adopt a broader definition of entrepreneurship than Schumpeter’s. Ours encompasses everyone who starts a new business. Our entrepreneur is the person who perceives an opportunity and creates an organization to pursue it. And the entrepreneurial process includes all the functions, activities, and actions associated with perceiving opportunities and creating organizations to pursue them. Our entrepreneur’s new

business may, in a few rare instances, be the revolutionary sort that rearranges the global economic order, as Walmart, FedEx, and Microsoft have done and Amazon.com, eBay, and Google are now doing. But it is much more likely to be of the incremental kind that enters an existing market.

## The Changing Economy

General Motors was founded in 1908 as a holding company for Buick. On December 31, 1955, General Motors became the first American corporation to make over one billion dollars in a year. At one point, it was the largest corporation in the United States in terms of its revenues as a percentage of gross domestic product (GDP). In 1979, its employment in the United States peaked at 600,000. In 2008, General Motors reported a loss of \$30.9 billion and burned through \$19.2 billion in cash. In a desperate attempt to save the company in February 2009, GM announced plans to reduce its total U.S. workforce from 96,537 people in 2008 to between 65,000 and 75,000 in 2012. By March 2009, GM, which had already received \$13.4 billion of bailout money from the U.S. government, was asking for an additional

\$16.6 billion. The Obama administration forced GM's CEO, Rick Wagoner, to resign; his replacement, Fritz Henderson, said that bankruptcy was a real possibility. It became a reality when GM filed for bankruptcy in June and emerged a shrunken company 40 days later.

Walmart was founded by Sam Walton in 1962. For the fiscal year ending on January 31, 2009, Walmart had record sales of \$401.2 billion, record earnings of \$13.4 billion, and free cash flow of \$4.2 billion. Walmart is the world's largest corporation, with 2.1 million associates and 8,291 stores in 2009.

*"We're all working together; that's the secret. And we'll lower the cost of living for everyone, not just in America, but we'll give the world an opportunity to see what it's like to save and have a better lifestyle, a better life for all. We're proud of what we've accomplished; we've just begun."*

—Sam Walton (1918–1992)

In this chapter, we will look at the importance of entrepreneurship and small business to the U.S. and the global economies, describe the entrepreneurial revolution, present a conceptual model for the entrepreneurial sector of the economy, and use it to explain major factors in the revolution; finally, we will compare and contrast entrepreneurial activity among nations within the context of the conceptual model.

## Entrepreneurship and Small Business in the United States

In 2010, there were 29 million or so U.S. businesses, of which approximately 99.9% were small businesses.<sup>5</sup> In general, businesses with 500 or fewer employees are classified as small.<sup>6</sup> They account for half the private-sector workers and 44.3% of the private payroll, and they generate approximately half the non-farm private GDP. If the small-business sector of the U.S. economy were a nation, its GDP would rank second in the world behind that of the U.S. medium- and big-business sector, ahead of the entire economy of Japan, and far ahead of the economies of Germany, the United Kingdom, France, and Italy.<sup>7</sup>

Not only are small businesses the engine for job creation, but also they are a powerful force for innovation. They hire 40% of all high-tech workers and produce approximately 13 times more patents per employee than large firms; those patents are twice as likely as large firm patents to be among the one percent most cited.<sup>8</sup> Their share of U.S. research and development (R&D) grew from 5.9% in 1984 to an estimated 20.7% in 2003, with the dollar value growing from \$4.4 billion in 1984 to an estimated \$40.1 billion in 2003—a ninefold increase.<sup>9</sup>

Half of the 29 million small businesses are part-time undertakings and half are full-time. Approximately 6 million small businesses are employer companies with one or more employees in addition to the self-employed owner.<sup>10</sup> Approximately two-thirds of the full-time businesses are unincorporated and one-third are incorporated.

At any one time, approximately 7 million *nascent entrepreneurs* in the United States are trying to create a new business; they have conceived an idea for a new venture and have taken at least one step toward implementing their idea. Many of them abandon their ventures during the gestation period and never actually open their businesses; nonetheless, each year at least 3 million new ventures are born, of which about 75% start from scratch. Most of the others are purchases of existing businesses.<sup>11</sup> Two in every three businesses are started in the owner's home. Most remain tiny because they are part-time businesses, but around 650,000 have at least one full-time employee.

Survival rates for new businesses were the focus of several different studies.<sup>13</sup> One of the most thorough was done at the U.S. Census Bureau by Alfred Nucci, who calculated the 10-year survival rates of business establishments.<sup>14</sup> He found that 81% survive for at least 1 year, 65% for 2 years, 40% for 5 years, and 25% for 10 years. The survival rate for independent startups was slightly lower. For example, the one-year rate was 79% instead of 81%. The chance of survival increased with age and size. Survival rates also varied somewhat with industry but not as strongly as with age and size.

Of course, survival does not necessarily spell success. In general, the median income of small business owners is almost the same as that of wage and salary earners. However, the income distribution is much broader for small business owners, which means that they are more likely to have significantly less income or significantly more income than wage and salaried workers.<sup>15</sup> But small business owners are also building equity in their companies as well as taking income from them, so it is possible that small business owners are better off overall than their wage-earning cohorts. However, a study of business owners disposing of their businesses through sale, closure, passing it on, and other methods found that comparatively few saw their standard of living changed by their business. Only 17% reported that their business had raised their standard of living, while 6% reported the opposite.<sup>16</sup>

Small businesses are distributed throughout the United States but not uniformly. The proportion of full-time self-employed by state in 1999 ranged from a high of 14.9% for Alaska to a low of 7.3% for Missouri. In rural areas, 10.0% were self-employed, which was almost one percentage point higher than the national average.<sup>17</sup> In 1997, 40% of small businesses were in service industries, 20% in retail, 12% in construction, 8% in wholesale, 8% in finance, 6% in manufacturing, 4% in transportation and communications, and 2% in agricultural services.<sup>18</sup>

Looking back at the new business formation index, we can see that it was stable through the 1950s and most of the 1960s; there was virtually no growth. By 1970, net new business formation was growing, and the growth continued through the 1970s and 1980s and into the 1990s.<sup>19</sup> No one noticed the change at the time. One of the first documented references to what was taking place was a December 1976 article in *The Economist* called "The Coming Entrepreneurial Revolution."<sup>20</sup> In this article, Norman Macrae argued that the era of big business was drawing to an end and that future increases in employment would come mainly from either smaller firms or small units of big firms. In 1978, David Birch published his book *Job Creation in America: How Our Smallest Companies Put the Most People to Work*.<sup>21</sup>

A survey by ACNielsen International Research in July 2005 found the following:<sup>12</sup>

- 58% of Americans say they've dreamed of starting a business and becoming their own boss.
- The most common reason for wanting to start a business is to increase one's personal income (66% of respondents), followed by increased independence (63%).
- The primary barriers to starting a business are insufficient financial resources (cited by 49% of respondents) and satisfaction with their current situation (29%).

The title says it all. It captures the important finding from Birch's comprehensive study of business establishments.

No issue gets the attention of politicians more than job creation. Birch's findings and the stream of research that ensued forever changed the attitude of policy makers toward small business.<sup>22</sup> Until then, most of their focus had been on big business. After all, in 1953 Charles Erwin Wilson, then GM president, is reported to have said during the hearings before the Senate Armed Services Committee, "What's good for General Motors is good for the country." At the time, GM was one of the largest employers in the world—only Soviet state industries employed more people.<sup>23</sup>

## Entrepreneurial Revolution

On November 1, 1999, Chevron, Goodyear Tire & Rubber Company, Sears Roebuck, and Union Carbide were removed from the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) and replaced by Intel, Microsoft, Home Depot, and SBC Communications. Intel and Microsoft became the first two companies traded on the NASDAQ exchange to be listed in the DJIA.

This event symbolized what is now called the *entrepreneurship revolution* that transformed the U.S. economy in the last quarter of the 20th century. Intel and Microsoft are the two major entrepreneurial driving forces in the information technology revolution that has fundamentally changed the way in which we live, work, and play. SBC (formerly Southwestern Bell Corporation) was one of the original "Baby Bells" formed after the U.S. Department of Justice antitrust action resulted in the breakup of AT&T. It is an excellent example of how breaking up a monopoly leads to entrepreneurial opportunities. And Home Depot exemplifies the big-box stores that have transformed much of the retail industry.

Intel was founded in Silicon Valley by Gordon Moore and Robert Noyce and funded by Arthur Rock, the legendary venture capitalist. Gordon Moore, the inventor of Moore's Law,<sup>24</sup> and Robert Noyce, one of the two inventors of the integrated circuit,<sup>25</sup> had been at the birth of Silicon Valley with William Shockley, the co-inventor of the transistor, when Shockley Semiconductor Laboratory was founded in Mountain View in 1956. They left Shockley in 1957 to found Fairchild Semiconductor, which in 1961 introduced the first commercial integrated circuit. In 1968, they left Fairchild to start Intel.

Ted Hoff, employee number 12 at Intel, invented the microprocessor in 1968. In 1971, Intel launched the first commercial microprocessor, heralding a new era in integrated electronics. Then, in 1974, it launched the first general-purpose microprocessor, the Intel 8080, which was the brain of the first personal computer,<sup>26</sup> the Altair 8800—a \$439 hobbyist's kit—announced by MITS (Micro Instrumentation and Telemetry Systems of Albuquerque) on the front cover of the January 1, 1975, edition of *Popular Electronics*.

According to personal computer folklore, Paul Allen, then working at the minicomputer division of Honeywell in Massachusetts, hurried to his childhood friend and fellow computer enthusiast, Bill Gates, who was a Harvard sophomore, and waving *Popular Electronics* with a mock-up of the Altair 8800 on its front cover, exclaimed, "This is it! It's about to begin!" Within a month or so, Gates had a version of BASIC to run on the Altair. He and Allen joined together in an informal partnership called Micro-Soft and moved to Albuquerque.

"When I was 19, I caught sight of the future and based my career on what I saw. I turned out to have been right."

—Bill Gates

Microsoft grew steadily by developing software for personal computers. By 1979, it had moved to Bellevue, Washington, near Seattle, where Gates and Allen had grown up. It then had revenue of more than \$2 million and 28 employees. It got its big break in 1980–81 when, building on the core of a product acquired from Seattle Computer Products, Microsoft introduced MS-DOS for IBM's first PC. Fourteen years later, when Microsoft released Windows 95 in 1995, it sold 4 million

copies in four days. Its success helped to move the personal computer into 250 million homes, businesses, and schools worldwide. In the early 1990s, Microsoft committed itself to adding Internet capabilities to its products. When Microsoft joined the DJIA in 1999, there were more than 200 million Internet users, up from 3 million just five years earlier.

SBC came about in 1984 because of the breakup of AT&T. SBC's growth has come mainly through acquisitions, so we are not making the case that SBC itself is especially entrepreneurial. However, the breakup of AT&T did unleash a wave of entrepreneurship that produced the explosive growth of the telecommunications industry in the last 20 years. According to a recent survey, the top five innovations since 1980 are the Internet, cell phones, personal computers, fiber optics, and e-mail.<sup>27</sup> No doubt about it, the phenomenal growth of wireless communications and the Internet would not have happened if AT&T had been allowed to keep its pre-1983 stranglehold on the telecom industry. (AT&T floundered after it was broken up. In 2004, it was dropped from the DJIA, and in 2005, it was acquired by SBC, which then adopted AT&T, Inc., as its corporate name; as a result, AT&T's legendary "T" ticker symbol on the New York Stock Exchange returned to the DJIA.)

Home Depot was founded in 1979 by Bernie Marcus and Arthur Blank. The chain of hardware and do-it-yourself (DIY) stores holds the record for the fastest time for a retailer to pass the \$30 billion, \$40 billion, \$50 billion, \$60 billion, and \$70 billion annual revenue milestones. It is the second largest retailer in the United States, surpassed only by Walmart. And it almost set the record for the fastest time from starting up to joining the DJIA when it was only 20 years old. By comparison, Walmart was 35 years old when it displaced F. W. Woolworth in the DJIA. Along with Walmart, Home Depot has set the pace for the retail industry in the last two decades. Together, the two account for about 3% percent of the nation's GDP and 1.7 million jobs.



Rob Kimmonth/Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images, Inc.

**Bernard Marcus and Arthur Blank, founders of Home Depot.**

At the turn of the 20th century, about 50% of U.S. workers were employed in agriculture and domestic service. Less than 100 years later, the number was about 4%. Much of this transformation came about because innovations, many of them introduced by entrepreneurs, made agriculture a shining example of increasing productivity, and labor-saving products such as the vacuum cleaner, gas and electric ranges, washing machines and clothes dryers, dishwashers, automobiles, lawn mowers, floor polishers, processed foods, microwave ovens, and services increased the productivity of household labor. The proportion of the workforce in manufacturing grew from 19% in 1900 to 27% in 1950, thereby providing alternative

employment opportunities for farm laborers and domestic workers.

By the turn of the 21st century, only 15% of U.S. jobs were in manufacturing and about 40% were in service industries; the proportion of knowledge-based jobs was estimated to be more than 50%. The DJIA reflects the changing face of the U.S. economy: In 1896, the 12 companies that made up the DJIA reflected the dominance of agriculture and basic commodities; in 1928—the first time the DJIA comprised 30 companies—the members reflected the importance of manufacturing, retailing, and the emerging radio industry; and in 2010, the shift is toward knowledge-based and communications industries.

DJIA Companies		
1896	1928	2010
American Cotton Oil	Allied Can	3M
American Sugar	Allied Chemical	Alcoa
American Tobacco	American Smelting & Refining	American Express
Chicago Gas	American Sugar	AT&T Corp.
Distilling & Cattle Feeding	American Tobacco	Bank of America
General Electric	Atlantic Refining	Boeing
Laclede Gas Light	Bethlehem Steel	Caterpillar
National Lead	Chrysler	Chevron
North American	General Electric	Cisco
Tennessee Coal, Iron & Railroad	General Motors	Coca-Cola
U.S. Leather	General Railway	DuPont
U.S. Rubber	Goodrich	Exxon-Mobil
	International Harvester	General Electric
	International Nickel	Hewlett-Packard
	Mack Trucks	Home Depot
	Nash Motors	IBM
	North American	Intel
	Paramount Publix	Johnson & Johnson
	Postum	JP Morgan Chase
	Radio Corporation	Kraft Foods
	Sears, Roebuck	McDonald's
	Standard Oil (NJ)	Merck
	Texas Corporation	Microsoft
	Texas Gulf Sulphur	Pfizer
	Union Carbide	Procter & Gamble
	U.S. Steel	Travelers
	Victor Talking Machines	United Technologies
	Westinghouse	Verizon
	Woolworth	Walmart
	Wright	Walt Disney

On April 8, 2004, International Paper, AT&T, and Eastman Kodak were replaced with Pfizer, Verizon, and AIG. On February 19, 2008, Bank of America and Chevron replaced Altria and Honeywell. AIG was replaced by Kraft Foods on September 22, 2008, and both Citigroup and GM were replaced by The Travelers Companies and Cisco Systems on June 8, 2009. SBC acquired AT&T and changed its name to AT&T.

Of course, only a few of the entrepreneurial giants ever get into the DJIA, which is composed of only 30 of the most widely held stocks. The following are some of the other legendary entrepreneurs and their companies that played important roles in the entrepreneurship revolution of the last 30 years.

Perhaps one of the most revolutionary entrepreneurial ideas outside of high-tech industries was Fred Smith's notion to deliver packages overnight anywhere in the United States. Smith identified a need for shippers to have a system designed specifically for airfreight that could accommodate time-sensitive shipments such as medicines, computer parts, and electronics in a term paper that he wrote as a Yale undergraduate. Smith's professor did not think much of the idea and gave it a C. After tours of duty in Vietnam, Smith founded his company, Federal Express (FedEx) in 1971, and it began operating in 1973 out of Memphis International Airport. In the mid-1970s, Federal Express had taken a leading role in lobbying for air cargo deregulation, which finally came in 1977. These changes allowed Federal Express to use larger

aircraft and spurred the company's rapid growth. Today FedEx has the world's largest all-cargo air fleet, including McDonnell-Douglas MD-11s and Airbus A-300s and A-310s.<sup>28</sup>

In 1971, when Southwest Airlines began operations, *interstate* airline travel was highly regulated by the federal government, which had set up the Civil Aeronautics Board (CAB) in 1938 to regulate all domestic air transport as a public utility, setting fares, routes, and schedules. The CAB was required to ensure that the airlines had a reasonable rate of return. Most of the major airlines, whose profits were virtually guaranteed, favored the system. Not surprisingly, competition was stifled, and almost no new airlines attempted to enter the market. However, *intrastate* passenger travel was not regulated by the CAB, so Southwest, following the pioneering path of Pacific Southwest Airline's (PSA's) service within California, initiated passenger service within Texas. The success of PSA and Southwest in providing cheap airline travel within California and Texas provided powerful ammunition for the deregulation of *interstate* travel, which came about in 1981 as a consequence of the Airline Deregulation Act of 1978.<sup>29</sup> Since deregulation, more than 100 startup airlines have inaugurated interstate scheduled passenger service with jet aircraft.<sup>30</sup> Herb Kelleher, the charismatic co-founder of Southwest Airlines, is often credited with triggering airline deregulation by persevering with his legal battle to get Southwest airborne in the face of fierce legal opposition from Braniff, Trans-Texas, and Continental Airlines. Two of those airlines took their legal battle all the way to the U.S. Supreme Court, which ruled in Southwest's favor at the end of 1970.<sup>31</sup>

Robert Swanson was 27 when he hit upon the idea that a company could be formed to commercialize biotechnology. At that time, he knew almost nothing about the field. By reading the scientific literature, Swanson identified the leading biotechnology scientists and contacted them. "Everybody said I was too early—it would take ten years to turn out the first microorganism from a human hormone or maybe twenty years to have a commercial product—everybody except Herb Boyer."<sup>32</sup> Swanson was referring to Professor Herbert Boyer at the University of California at San Francisco, co-inventor of the patents that, according to some observers, now form the basis of the biotechnology industry. When Swanson and Boyer met in early 1976, they almost immediately agreed to become partners in an endeavor to explore the commercial possibilities of recombinant DNA. Boyer named their venture Genentech, an acronym for genetic engineering technology. Just seven months later, Genentech announced its first success, a genetically engineered human brain hormone, somatotropin. According to Swanson, they accomplished 10 years of development in 7 months. Most observers say it was Swanson's entrepreneurial vision that brought about the founding of the biotech industry. Today there are about 1,500 U.S. biotech companies with combined revenues of more than \$50 billion.

At almost the same time that Swanson was starting Genentech in southern San Francisco, not many miles away Steve Jobs and Stephen Wozniak were starting Apple Computer in Silicon Valley. Their computer, the Apple I in kit form, was an instant hit with hobbyists. The Byte Shop—the first full-time computer store anywhere in the world, which opened in Silicon Valley in December 1975—ordered 25 of them in June 1976. The owner of The Byte Shop asked Jobs to put the Apple I computer board in a case because his customers were asking for complete units, not just kits. When they did so, both Apple and The Byte Shop had a hot product on their hands. The Byte Shop grew to a chain of 75 stores. "Without intending to do so, Wozniak and Jobs had launched the microcomputer by responding to consumer demand."<sup>33</sup>

Genentech's initial public offering (IPO) in October 1980, followed by Apple's IPO only two months later, signaled that something magical was stirring in the biotech and personal computer industries. It triggered a wave of venture capital investment and IPOs in both industries.

A tipping point in the infant personal computer industry was the introduction of the VisiCalc spreadsheet. Dan Bricklin conceived it when he was sitting in an MBA class at Harvard in 1978, daydreaming about how he could make it easier to do repetitive calculations. Bricklin

designed the prototype software to run on an Apple II. Together with Bob Frankston, he formed a company, Software Arts, to develop the VisiCalc spreadsheet. When they introduced their first version in May 1979, it turbocharged the sale of Apple computers. Subsequently, sales of IBM PCs were rocketed into the stratosphere by Mitch Kapor's Lotus 1-2-3 worksheet.

The late 1970s and the early 1980s were miraculous years for entrepreneurial ventures in the computer industry. Miniaturization of hard-disk drives, a vital component in the information technology revolution, was pioneered by Al Shugart, first at Shugart Associates, then at Seagate Technology. Dick Eagan and Roger Marino started EMC Corporation in 1979, initially selling computer furniture, and with the seed money from that, they launched into selling Intel-compatible memory. From that beginning, Eagan and Marino built EMC into a company that during the 1990s achieved the highest single-decade performance of any listed stock in the history of the New York Stock Exchange. Today it is the dominant company in the data storage industry.

Robert Metcalfe, the inventor of Ethernet, founded 3Com in 1979 to manufacture computer network products. 3Com built its business around Ethernet plug-in cards for personal computers. Today Ethernet is so widely used that it is usually built into most PC motherboards.

Michael Dell, while still a student at the University of Texas, Austin, in 1984, began selling IBM-compatible computers built from stock components that he marketed directly to customers. By concentrating on direct sales of customized products, Dell became the largest manufacturer of personal computers in the world, and Michael Dell was CEO longer than any other executive in the PC hardware industry.

Entrepreneurs were at the conception and birth of new products and services that have transformed the global economy in the last 35 years. However, what is turning out to be the biggest of them all began in 1989 when Tim (now Sir Timothy) Berners-Lee conceived the World Wide Web. We are in the midst of a revolution that is changing our lives more profoundly and faster than anyone could have imagined before the Web became operational in 1992. No major new product has been adopted as quickly by such a large percentage of the U.S. population as the Web.

#### Time for new technologies to penetrate 25% of U.S. population

Household electricity (1873)	46 years
Telephone (1875)	35 years
Automobile (1885)	55 years
Airplane travel (1903)	54 years
Radio (1906)	22 years
Television (1925)	26 years
VCR (1952)	34 years
PC (1975)	15 years
Mobile Phone (1983)	13 years
World Wide Web (1992)	5 years

*Source:* The Wall Street Journal, June 1997; [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Advanced\\_Mobile\\_Phone\\_Service](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Advanced_Mobile_Phone_Service); [http://www.netbanker.com/2000/04/internet\\_usage\\_web\\_users\\_world.html](http://www.netbanker.com/2000/04/internet_usage_web_users_world.html).

## Web: Three Revolutions Converge

In 1989, when Tim Berners-Lee wrote a proposal to develop software that resulted in the World Wide Web, he was not the first to conceive the idea. As far back as 1945, Vannevar Bush proposed a “memex” machine with which users could create information “trails” linking related text and illustrations and store the trails for future reference.<sup>34</sup>

As it turned out, he was 50 years ahead of the technologies that were needed to implement his idea. After all, the first digital computer was then only a couple of years old. Fifteen years later Ted Nelson, inspired by Bush's "memex," was the first person to develop the modern version of hypertext. He wrote—prophetically, as it turned out—in 1960 that "the future of humanity is at the interactive computer screen...the new writing and movies will be interactive and interlinked...we need a world-wide network to deliver it...."<sup>35</sup>

But Nelson, too, was far ahead of the technology. In 1962, there were fewer than ten thousand computers in the world. They cost hundreds of thousands of dollars, they were primitive machines with only a few thousand bytes of magnetic core memory, and programming them was complicated and tedious. AT&T had a monopoly over the phone lines that were used for data communication. And the ARPANET, which was the forerunner of the Internet, had not yet been conceived.<sup>36</sup>

Berners-Lee was a 25-year-old physics graduate of Oxford University working as a consultant at CERN, the European Particle Physics Laboratory in Geneva, Switzerland, in 1980 when he wrote his own private program for storing information using the random associations the brain makes. His Enquire program, which was never published, formed the conceptual basis for his future development of the Web.<sup>37</sup> In 1980, the technology existed for implementing Berners-Lee's concept, but the power of the technology was low, and the installed base of computers was tiny compared to what it would be 10 years later. By 1989, when he revived his idea, three revolutions were ready for it. They were in *digital technology, information technology (IT),* and *entrepreneurship*. The semiconductor revolution enabled the digital revolution, which in turn enabled the IT revolution. By 1992, when the Web was released by CERN, the Internet had 1 million hosts, computers were 1,000 million times faster, and network bandwidth was 20 million times greater than 20 years earlier. The entrepreneurship revolution meant that there was an army of entrepreneurs and would-be entrepreneurs, especially in the United States, with the vision and capacity to seize the commercial opportunities presented by the Web. In February 1993, the National Center for Supercomputing Applications (NCSA) released the first alpha version of Marc Andreessen's Mosaic. By December 1994, the Web was growing at approximately 1% a day—with a doubling period of less than 10 weeks.<sup>38</sup> In the next 10 years, Internet usage exploded.\* By 2009, users numbered 1.7 billion, which was about 25% of the entire population of the world.

## Entrepreneurship Revolution Strikes Gold

Marc Andreessen moved to Silicon Valley in 1994, teamed up with veteran IT entrepreneur Jim Clark, and incorporated Mosaic Communications (later renamed Netscape Communications). Clark put \$6 million of his own money into Mosaic, and venture capitalists added another \$6 million.<sup>39</sup> Their intent was to create a browser that would surpass the original Mosaic. It was a classic Silicon Valley startup with programmers working 18-hour days, 7 days a week, sometimes even working 48 hours at one stretch just coding. In October 1994, the Netscape browser was posted as a download on the Internet. In no time at all, it was the browser of choice for the majority of Web users; in December 1994, Netscape Communications began shipping Netscape Navigator, which started to produce income.

Netscape Navigator was an instant success, gaining 75% of the browser market within four months of its introduction. Netscape Communications was only 16 months old when it went public in August 1995. Its IPO was one of the most spectacular in history and made Jim Clark the first Internet billionaire. According to an article in *Fortune*, "It was the spark that touched off the Internet boom."<sup>40</sup>

---

\* The Internet and the World Wide Web (now usually called the Web) are two separate but related entities. However, most people use the terms interchangeably. The Internet is a vast network of networks, a networking infrastructure. The Web is a way of accessing information over the Internet. It is an information-sharing model that is built on top of the Internet.

Internet Users Worldwide, 2009					
	Country or Region	Internet Users' Latest Data	Population (2009 Est.)	Internet Penetration	% Users of World
1	China	338,000,000	1,338,612,968	25.30%	20.30%
2	United States	227,636,000	307,212,123	74.10%	13.60%
3	Japan	94,000,000	127,078,679	74.00%	5.60%
4	India	81,000,000	1,156,897,766	7.00%	4.90%
5	Brazil	67,510,400	198,739,269	34.00%	4.00%
6	Germany	55,221,183	82,329,758	67.10%	3.30%
7	United Kingdom	48,755,000	61,113,205	79.80%	2.90%
8	France	42,050,465	62,150,775	67.70%	2.50%
9	Russia	38,000,000	140,041,247	27.10%	2.30%
10	Korea South	37,475,800	48,508,972	77.30%	2.20%
11	Italy	29,140,144	58,126,212	50.10%	1.70%
12	Spain	28,628,959	40,525,002	70.60%	1.70%
13	Mexico	27,400,000	111,211,789	24.60%	1.60%
14	Turkey	26,500,000	76,805,524	34.50%	1.60%
15	Indonesia	25,000,000	240,271,522	10.40%	1.50%
16	Canada	23,999,500	33,487,208	71.70%	1.40%
17	Iran	23,000,000	66,429,284	34.60%	1.40%
18	Vietnam	21,524,417	88,576,758	24.30%	1.30%
19	Poland	20,020,362	38,482,919	52.00%	1.20%
20	Argentina	20,000,000	40,913,584	48.90%	1.20%
Top 20 Countries		1,274,862,230	4,317,514,564	29.50%	76.40%
Rest of the World		394,008,178	2,450,290,644	16.10%	23.60%
Total World — Users		1,668,870,408	6,767,805,208	24.70%	100.00%

*Source:* [www.internetworldstats.com/top20.htm](http://www.internetworldstats.com/top20.htm).

A gold rush was under way. “Netscape mesmerized investors and captured America’s imagination. More than any other company, it set the technological, social, and financial tone of the Internet age.”<sup>41</sup> A generation of would-be entrepreneurs was inspired by Netscape’s success. What’s more, corporate executives from established businesses wanted to emulate Jim Barksdale, the former president of McCaw Communications, who joined Netscape’s board in October 1994, became CEO in January 1995, and made a huge fortune in just eight months. Investors—both angels and venture capitalists—hustled to invest in Internet-related startups. It seemed as if everyone was panning for Internet gold, not only in Silicon Valley but also throughout the United States—and a couple of years later throughout the rest of the world.

Netscape is a superb example of American venture capital at its best, accelerating the commercialization of innovations especially at the start of revolutionary new industries driven by technology. Venture capital was in at the start of the semiconductor and the minicomputer industries in the late 1950s and early 1960s and the biotech and personal computer industries in the late 1970s, and now it was eager to invest in what promised to be the biggest revolution of them all, the Internet and the Web.

Venture capital is not invested exclusively in technology companies. It was in at the beginning of the overnight package delivery industry with its investment in Federal Express, at the start of major big-box retailers such as Home Depot and Staples, and at the creation of new airlines including JetBlue. No wonder Jiro Tokuyama, then dean of the Nomura School of Advanced Management in Japan and a highly influential economist, stated that

entrepreneurial firms and venture capital are the great advantages that Americans have.<sup>42</sup> Since the early 1970s, approximately \$456 billion of venture capital have backed 27,000 U.S. companies. In 2008, those venture-backed companies employed more than 12 million people, or 11% of the private-sector employment, and generated revenues of \$2.9 trillion, or 21% of the U.S. GDP.<sup>43</sup>

The Web presented numerous opportunities that were soon being exploited by entrepreneurs. It created a huge demand for more and more capacity on the Internet, which in turn presented opportunities for hardware and software entrepreneurs. They were fortunate to find venture capitalists eager to invest in their startups. The period from 1996 through 2000 was a golden era for classic<sup>43</sup> venture capitalists and the entrepreneurial companies they invested in. It was golden both metaphorically and literally, as more and more venture capitalists and entrepreneurs seemed to have acquired the Midas touch. Some of the financial gains from venture-capital-backed companies were indeed of mythological proportions. For instance, Benchmark Capital's investment of \$5 million in eBay multiplied 1,500-fold in just two years.<sup>44</sup> True, Benchmark's investment in eBay set the all-time record for Silicon Valley, but there were plenty of instances when investments increased at least a hundredfold and in some cases a thousandfold. With investments such as those, overall returns on U.S. classic venture capital soared, with the one-year return peaking at 143% at the end of the third quarter in 2000, compared with average annual returns in the midteens prior to the golden era.

But the gold rush came to an end in 2000. The Internet bubble burst. Many companies failed, others were forced into fire-sale mergers, investors were hammered, many jobs were lost, and doom and gloom were pervasive. There was much hand-wringing about the incredible wastefulness of the U.S. method of financing new industries. However, by August 9, 2005—the tenth anniversary of Netscape's IPO—some companies founded during the gold rush were thriving. The market capitalization of just four of them—Google, eBay, Yahoo, and Amazon.com—was about \$200 billion, which handily exceeded all the venture capital invested in all the Internet-related companies through 2000; what's more, it even topped the combined amount raised from venture capital and IPOs. Granted, there were many more losers than winners, but five years after the bust, it was clear that U.S. society as a whole had already benefited mightily and the best was yet to come—but not for everyone. As Schumpeter observed, revolutionary entrepreneurship creates new products, services, and business methods that undermine and sometimes destroy old ones.

During a 1999 news conference at the World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, reporters pestered Bill Gates again and again with variations of the same question: "These Internet stocks, they're a bubble?" An irritated Bill Gates finally confronted the reporters: "Look, you bozos, of course they're a bubble, but you're all missing the point. This bubble is attracting so much new capital to the Internet industry; it is going to drive innovation faster and faster."<sup>45</sup>

## Creative Destruction

The Web is blowing gales of creative destruction through many old industries, none more so than that of print newspapers, whose publishers were slow to recognize their business models were endangered—perhaps fatally—by the Web. Some long-established U.S. newspapers, such as the *Rocky Mountain News* and the *Tucson Citizen*, have shut down completely; others have drastically reduced their operations; and a few, including the *Christian Science Monitor* and the *Seattle-Post Intelligencer*, now publish only on the Web and no longer produce print editions. Several prominent newspaper chains, including the Tribune Company, the Minneapolis Star Tribune, Philadelphia Newspapers, and the Sun-Times Media Group, have filed for bankruptcy. The 2009 demise of *Editor and Publisher*, the 125-year-old trade magazine for the newspaper industry, seemed to symbolize the plight of the industry.

Newspapers had not only withstood potential competition from the introduction of other forms of news broadcasting, such as radio in the 1920s and 1930s, television in the 1950s, and 24-hour cable news channels in the 1980s and 1990s, but also actually prospered more and more, so why should they have foreseen in the early 1990s the havoc that the fledgling Web was about to wreak on their industry? What most print publishers did not foresee was that the Web would undermine the two basic sources of newspaper revenues, advertising and paid circulation; ad revenue, for example, fell 28% in 2008.<sup>46</sup> The underlying cause is the changes in society brought about by the Internet, which was used by about 75% of the U.S. population in 2009 compared with less than 3% in 1993.<sup>47</sup> Web portals such as Yahoo, social networking services such as Twitter, and individual bloggers give readers instant access to breaking news stories and often break news ahead of the old media; Google and other search engines make it easy to find stories from anywhere in the world at lightning speed; and perhaps best of all, it is free. For advertisers, the allure of the Web over print newspapers and magazines is that it allows them to target ads to individuals—every Web user is now a market segment of just one individual—and it provides much better metrics for tracking the effectiveness of ads.

The Internet has devastated the print media's business model, and publishers are groping for a new one. Some think it will be a hybrid of print and the Web; others believe that print will continue to lose ground to the Web and more papers will publish only Web editions. And what else in this age of government bailouts? Some in Congress have even proposed a "Newspaper Revitalization Act" to help ailing newspapers.<sup>48</sup>

## Causes of the Entrepreneurial Revolution

---

The United States has always been a nation of entrepreneurs. But why has it become more and more entrepreneurial since the end of the 1960s—creating what is now called the entrepreneurial revolution?

First, we need to step back and look at the U.S. economy in the decades before the 1970s. The Great Depression, which followed the stock market collapse of October 1929, had an enormous effect on society. By 1932, when Franklin Roosevelt was elected president, over 13 million Americans had lost their jobs, and the gross national product had fallen 31%. The Roosevelt administration implemented many policies to try to bring the nation out of the Depression, but it was not until World War II that the nation once again started to become prosperous. The end of the war in 1945 heralded an era of economic growth and opportunity. But the memories left by the Depression meant that workers preferred secure jobs with good wages and benefits that medium and big companies offered. And big business was booming.

The late 1940s and the 1950s and 1960s were the era of the corporate employee. They were immortalized by William Whyte in *The Organization Man*,<sup>49</sup> in which he "argued in 1956 that American business life had abandoned the old virtues of self-reliance and entrepreneurship in favor of a bureaucratic 'social ethic' of loyalty, security and 'belongingness.' With the rise of the postwar corporation, American individualism had disappeared from the mainstream of middle-class life."<sup>50</sup> The key to a successful career was this: "Be loyal to the company and the company will be loyal to you." Whyte's writing assumed the change was permanent and it favored the large corporation.

Big American businesses were seen as the way of the future, not just in the United States but worldwide. John Kenneth Galbraith's seminal book *The New Industrial State*<sup>51</sup> and Jean-Jacques Servan-Schreiber's *Le Défi Américain* (The American Challenge)<sup>52</sup> both "became the bible to advocates of industrial policies"<sup>53</sup> supporting big business. Both books were instant best sellers. *Le Défi Américain* sold 600,000 copies in France alone and was translated into 15 languages. Galbraith wrote in 1967, "By all but the pathologically romantic, it is now

recognized that this is not the age of the small man.” He believed that the best economic size for corporations was “very, very large.”

The works of Whyte, Galbraith, and Servan-Schreiber were required reading in universities through the 1970s. Schumpeter’s work was hardly ever mentioned,<sup>54</sup> and when it was, it was his book *Capitalism, Socialism, and Democracy*, published in 1942,<sup>55</sup> in which he was very pessimistic that capitalism would survive. Unlike Karl Marx, who believed the proletariat would bring about the downfall of capitalism, Schumpeter reasoned that the very success of free enterprise would create a class of elites who would favor central control of the economy and thereby curb free enterprise. His first book, *The Theory of Economic Development*,<sup>56</sup> originally published in German in 1911, in which he endorsed entrepreneurship, was hardly ever mentioned. What’s more, in the 1970s there was an abundance of university courses dealing with Karl Marx and almost none dealing with entrepreneurship. It’s not surprising that the world was first alerted to the entrepreneurial revolution by a journalist, Norman Macrae, rather than by an academic scholar. About a decade later, researchers confirmed retrospectively that entrepreneurial activity had indeed been on the increase in the United States in the 1970s.<sup>57</sup>

Entrepreneurship did not disappear in the 1930s, 1940s, 1950s, and 1960s; it simply did not grow very much. What brought about the change in the economy that stirred up entrepreneurship around 1970? To try to understand what changes were taking place, we need to look at the social, cultural, and political context of an economy. A framework for this perspective is presented in Figure 1.1, the Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM) model for the economy.<sup>58</sup>

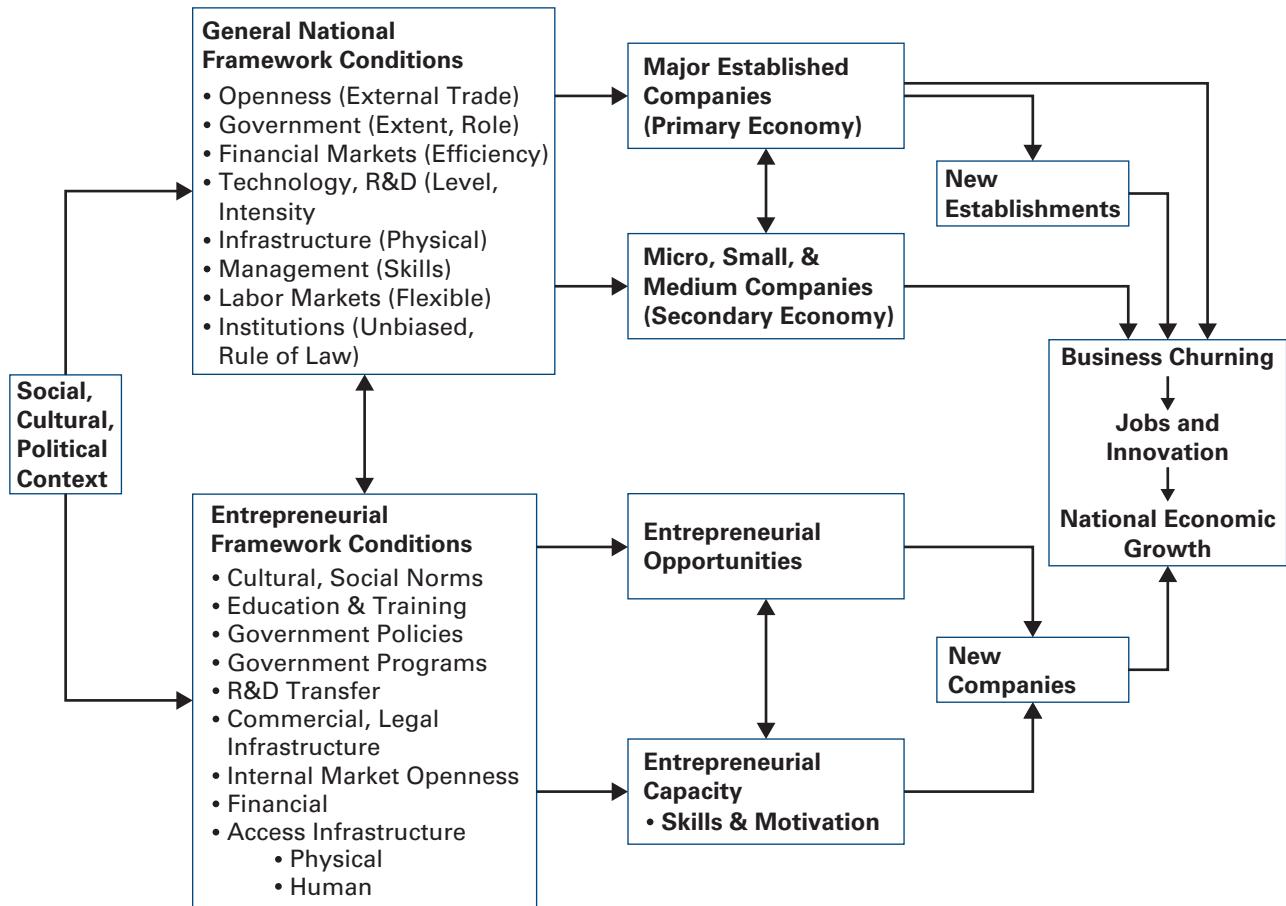
The central argument<sup>59</sup> of the GEM model is that national economic growth is a function of two sets of interrelated activities: those associated with established firms and those related directly to the entrepreneurial process. Activity among established firms explains only part of the story behind variations in economic growth. The entrepreneurial process may also account for a significant proportion of the differences in economic prosperity among countries and among regions within countries.

When looking at the nature of the relationship between entrepreneurship and economic growth, it is important to distinguish between entrepreneurial opportunities and entrepreneurial capacity. What drives entrepreneurial activity is that people perceive opportunities and have the skills and motivation to exploit them. The outcome is the creation of new firms and, inevitably, the destruction of inefficient or outmoded existing firms. Schumpeter’s process of creative destruction is captured in the model by business churning. Despite its negative connotation, creative destruction actually has a positive impact on economic growth—declining businesses are phased out as startups maneuver their way into the market. These dynamic transactions occur within a particular context, which the GEM model calls *entrepreneurial framework conditions* and which includes factors such as availability of finance, government policies and programs designed to support startups, R&D transfer, physical and human infrastructure, education in general, education and training for entrepreneurship, cultural and social norms, and internal market openness.

## Changes in the Entrepreneurial Framework Conditions

Now let’s look at some of the major changes in the framework conditions that have fueled the entrepreneurial revolution.

**Cultural and Social Norms.** First, let’s consider the most important components, the entrepreneurs themselves. In the 1960s, a generation of Americans born in the late 1930s and the 1940s—including the first baby boomers—came of age. They had no first-hand memory of the Great Depression. When they were growing up, the economy was doing well most of the time, so they really had not experienced hard times like their parents had endured. Hence, they were not as concerned about job security. Many were even rebelling against large

**Figure 1.1**

### GEM model of economic growth

corporations, some of which were seen as members of the military-industrial complex that was supporting the very unpopular war in Vietnam; some companies were trading with South Africa, where apartheid still prevailed; and others were under attack by consumer activists such as Ralph Nader.<sup>60</sup> It was a generation of Americans who were better educated than their parents, and for them, starting a new business was a credible career.

The *Fortune* 500 employed 20% of the workforce in the 1960s. That percentage began to decline in 1980 and continued to do so every year since then, down to about 10% by 2005. Hence, jobs in big companies became scarcer. Many companies downsized, and according to George Gendron, who was the publisher of *Inc.* magazine during the 1980s and 1990s, 20% of downsized executives started businesses. Gendron also suggested that some of the executives who were retained—often the “best and the brightest”—became disillusioned by their career prospects in stagnant companies, and that led to a “second exodus” that produced more entrepreneurial activity.<sup>61</sup>

Other important social changes boosted entrepreneurship in the 1990s. More women became business owners, and the proportion of Asian-owned firms increased, as did Hispanic-owned and African-American-owned firms. According to Gendron, for people with limited options in employment, entrepreneurship represents the “last meritocracy.”

**Government.** The 1970s were the decade when Washington bailed out Penn Central Railroad, Lockheed, and Chrysler. Washington seemed more concerned with big business than with small. But it did recognize the need to pay attention to startups with high potential, especially the ones funded by venture capitalists. There had been a burst of venture-capital-backed startups in the last half of the 1960s. But in the early 1970s, venture capital dried up to a trickle. Looking back from the perspective of 2010, when \$20 billion of new money flowing into the venture capital industry seems routine, it is scarcely believable that only \$10 million of new money was committed in 1975. Congress took urgent steps in 1978 to stimulate the venture capital industry, including reducing the capital gains tax and easing the ERISA prudent man rule, which had inhibited pension funds from investing in venture capital funds. The pension floodgates opened, and the inflow of venture capital increased to \$4.9 billion by 1987. Likewise, venture capital invested in portfolio companies increased from a low of \$250 million in 1975 to \$3.9 billion in 1987—a 16-fold increase.<sup>62</sup>

The government asserted its role of ensuring *market openness* by minimizing anticompetitive behavior. We've already mentioned that legislation toward the end of the 1970s deregulated the airfreight and airline passenger industries. That was followed in the early 1980s by the U.S. Justice Department's move to break up AT&T's monopoly.

The government deserves immense credit for its funding of R&D in government, universities, and corporations, both directly and indirectly through purchases of products. Its support was vital in the development of the computer, communications, biotech, and many other industries.

Washington activated the Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) program in 1983 to ensure that small businesses shared some of the federal R&D dollars for new technology-based developments. In 2007, around 5,500 awards, totaling \$2 billion, went to small businesses as a result of the SBIR program. In general, funds awarded under the SBIR program go to develop new technologies that are high risk and high reward. Some might say it is pre–venture capital money. From that viewpoint, \$2 billion is a significant amount when compared with \$1.01 billion that venture capitalists invested in seed- and startup-stage technology companies in 2007. A total of \$26 billion has been awarded over the 26 years of the SBIR program through 2008.<sup>63</sup>

**R&D Transfer.** Commercial development of intellectual property resulting from federally funded research is a major benefit to the U.S. economy. It was given a major boost by the passage of the Bayh-Dole Act, implemented in 1980. The primary intent of that law was to foster the growth of technology-based small businesses by allowing them to own the patents that arose from federally sponsored research. Under Bayh-Dole, universities were allowed to grant exclusive licenses—a feature that was regarded as crucial if small businesses were to commercialize high technologies that were inherently risky propositions.<sup>64</sup>

Before 1980, U.S. universities were granted about 300 patents a year. In 2003, they applied for about 10,000. In 1980, 25 to 30 universities had offices for technology transfer. Today, more than 1,200 do.<sup>65</sup> *The Economist* hailed Bayh-Dole as “the most inspired piece of legislation to be enacted in America over the past half-century.” *The Economist* estimated that Bayh-Dole had created 2,000 new companies and 260,000 new jobs and had contributed \$40 billion annually to the U.S. economy.<sup>66</sup> That assessment was made almost 10 years ago, and more progress has been made since then.<sup>67</sup>

The government itself has technology transfer offices at most of its research laboratories<sup>68</sup> and many large companies have licensing offices. IBM, for example, which annually spends about \$5 billion on R&D, was granted 4,186 patents in 2008. It generates about \$1 billion annually from licensing intellectual property, which comprises both patents and copyrights.

## Fruits of Federally Funded R&D

The success of Bayh-Dole goes far beyond the efforts of Bob Dole and Birch Bayh. This legislation combined the ingenuity and innovation from our university laboratories with the entrepreneurial skills of America's small businesses. Most importantly, this combination created the incentive necessary for private investment to invest in bringing new ideas to the marketplace. The delicate balance of ingenuity, entrepreneurship, and incentive upon which the success of Bayh-Dole has depended must not be disrupted.

A few of the products which have been produced in the last six years are:

- ▣ Taxol, the most important cancer drug in 15 years, according to the National Cancer Institution.
- ▣ DNA sequencer, the basis of the entire Human Genome Project.
- ▣ StormVision, which airport traffic and safety managers use to predict the motion of storms.
- ▣ Prostate-specific antigen test, now a routine component of cancer screening.
- ▣ V-Chip, which allows families to control access to television programming.

*Statement of Senator Birch Bayh to the National Institutes of Health, May 25, 2004.*

**Physical Infrastructure.** The biggest change in entrepreneurship in the last 10 years is due to the Web, the great equalizer. Small businesses now have at their fingertips a tool so powerful that it is leveling the playing field. Big businesses no longer enjoy as many scale economies as they did before the Internet. Information that could have been gathered only by a multitude of market researchers can now be found with a search engine and a couple of clicks of a mouse. Entrepreneurs don't have to spend a fortune to reach customers with print, radio, and television advertising; they can target their potential customers anywhere in the world via the Web. When they want to find a vendor, the Web is there to help them—as it is when they are seeking employees, bankers, and investors. Furthermore, the cost of communications of all kinds (except snail mail) has plummeted since AT&T was broken up. A long-distance telephone call that cost 40 cents a minute in 1980 now can be made for as little as 1 cent. And if these entrepreneurs need to travel by air, they can shop the Web to find the cheapest ticket, automobile rental, and hotel room.

The worldwide distribution of goods and services is now open to everyone. Just consider what eBay has already done to change the entrepreneurial landscape. According to a 2005 study by ACNielsen International Research, 724,000 Americans report that selling on eBay is their primary or secondary source of income.<sup>69</sup> An American entrepreneur can sell merchandise to a customer anywhere in the world; PayPal (founded in 1998 and now part of eBay) can ensure that the entrepreneur receives payment speedily and securely online; the merchandise can be delivered to the buyer within a day or so via FedEx; and buyer and seller can track the shipment online at each step of its journey.

Outsourcing services and goods makes companies more efficient and effective. Entrepreneurs can now focus on their company's core competency and let vendors take care of noncore items such as payroll, Web hosting, telemarketing, manufacturing, and distribution. There are even companies that will help entrepreneurs find outsource partners. Outsourcing enables small businesses to act like big ones, and some small companies are even called *virtual companies* because they outsource so much of their work.

For some entrepreneurs, business incubators combine many of the advantages of outsourcing. Incubators provide not only physical space but also shared services. Many incubators also provide ready access to human infrastructure. In 1980, there were only 12 business incubators in the United States; over the period between 1985 and 1995, the number of U.S. incubators grew 15-fold, from 40 to nearly 600<sup>70</sup>—and by 2003, there were some 850 incubators.<sup>71</sup> The National Business Incubation Association (NBIA) estimated that in 2005 alone, North American incubators assisted more than 27,000 startup companies that provided full-time employment for more than 100,000 workers and generated annual revenue of more than \$17 billion.<sup>72</sup>

### **Human Infrastructure.**

Access to human infrastructure is as important as access to physical infrastructure—maybe more so. The human infrastructure for entrepreneurs grew rapidly in the last 20 years or so, and gaining access to it has never been easier. Thirty years ago, starting a new venture was a lonely pursuit, fraught with pitfalls that would have been avoided by someone with prior entrepreneurial experience. Today numerous entrepreneurship experts gladly help people who are starting or growing companies. There are support networks, both informal and formal, of professionals who know a lot about the entrepreneurial process. Just search the Web for “entrepreneur AND assistance AND *your town*,” and you might be astonished by the number of hits.

**Education, Training, and Professionalization.** Entrepreneurship education and training is now readily available, part of the professionalization of entrepreneurship that has taken place over the last 20 years.<sup>73</sup> According to Gendron, a body of knowledge and skills has developed over the last 20 years to enhance the chances of entrepreneurial success. A good illustration is the widely dispensed advice that would-be entrepreneurs should write a business plan before they launch their new ventures. The world of entrepreneurship is awash with information about business plans. The field has come a long way since the pioneers of entrepreneurship training put writing a business plan at the core of their programs in the 1970s.<sup>74</sup>

When Babson College and the University of Texas started their internal business plan competitions in 1985, only a few schools had entrepreneurship courses. Now more than 60% of four-year colleges and universities have at least one entrepreneurship course, and many have entrepreneurship centers. Today entrepreneurship training courses are readily available to all sectors of the population.



NewsCom

---

**Ebay President and CEO John Donahoe gives the keynote address at the annual eBay Live conference in Chicago, Illinois.**

---

## The Accidental Entrepreneur

Like many other scientists and engineers who have ended up founding companies, I didn't leave Caltech as an entrepreneur. I had no training in business; after my sophomore year of college I didn't take any courses outside of chemistry, math, and physics. My career as an entrepreneur happened quite by accident.

There is such a thing as a natural-born entrepreneur.... But the accidental entrepreneur like me has to fall into the opportunity or be pushed into it. Most of what I learned as an entrepreneur was by trial and error, but I think a lot of this really could have been learned more efficiently.

—Gordon Moore (*co-founder of Fairchild Semiconductor in 1957 and Intel in 1968*).<sup>75</sup>

**Financial.** Raising money for a new business is seldom easy, but the process of raising startup and expansion capital has become more efficient in the last 20 years or so. In 1982, for instance, an economist at the National Science Foundation stated that venture capital was shrouded in empirical secrecy and an aura of beliefs.<sup>76</sup> The same held true for angel investing. In contrast, today there is an abundance of help. The amount of venture capital under management has grown from \$3.7 billion in 1980 to more than \$200 billion in 2008.<sup>77</sup> We do not have reliable numbers for business angel investors, but we do know that informal investors—everyone from parents to external business angels—now invest more than \$100 billion annually in startup and baby businesses. Furthermore, informal investors are ubiquitous. Five percent of American adults report that they “invested” in someone else’s venture in the last three years.<sup>78</sup> It is impossible to claim that the availability of financing has driven the entrepreneurial revolution, but it does appear that sufficient financing has been available to fuel it.

## Churning and Economic Growth

Technological change, deregulation, competition, and globalization presented countless opportunities, which American entrepreneurs seized and commercialized. It caused a lot of *churning*, or Schumpeter's creative destruction. But 11 new businesses with employees were started for every 10 that died over the decade 1990–2000.<sup>79</sup> It is this churning that gives the economy its vitality. Only a society that willingly adapts to change can have a dynamic economy.

We can find examples of churning in every industry that is not a monopoly or a regulated oligopoly. Who can recall VisiCalc or for that matter Lotus 1-2-3? At the height of their fame they were two of the most widely used software packages for PCs. Today Excel is the spreadsheet of choice. In one week alone in May 1982, when Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC) introduced its ill-fated Rainbow PC, four other companies introduced PCs.<sup>80</sup> At the peak of the PC industry frenzy in the early 1980s, more than 200 companies either had introduced PCs or were planning to do so. Only a handful of PC manufacturers exists today. DEC, which in 1982 was the second largest computer manufacturer in the world, was eventually bought by Compaq, which in turn merged with Hewlett-Packard. In 2004, IBM sold its PC division to Lenovo, a company founded in 1984 by a group of academics at the government-backed Chinese Academy of Sciences in Beijing.

Not only did the advent of the PC churn up the entire computer industry, but also it virtually wiped out the typewriter industry. And it changed the way office work is organized. Secretaries had to learn computer skills or they were out of work.

Entrepreneurial competition, according to Schumpeter, “strikes not at the margins of the profits...of the existing firms but at their foundations and very lives.” Established companies that stick with their old ways of doing business self-destruct as their customers turn to new competitors with better business models.

More examples of churning: Southwest Airlines is now the most successful U.S. airline; two of its giant rivals in 1971 no longer exist, and the third, Continental, has been bankrupt twice, in 1983 and 1990. In September 2005, United Airlines, US Airways, Hawaiian Airlines, ATA Airlines (also known as American Trans Air), Delta, Northwest, and Aloha Airlines were all in Chapter 11 bankruptcy, and only a handful of the 100 or so passenger airlines started up since deregulation are still around. Who goes to a travel agent to get a regular airline ticket or book a hotel room today? Where is the fax machine headed? Likewise video stores and CD retailers? Why are newspapers laying off workers? Who is buying a film camera? And even entrepreneurship academics should watch out. Donald Trump, building on his TV success with *The Apprentice*, has started Trump University to teach—what else?—entrepreneurship.

Granted, churning causes a lot of disruption—and nowhere more than in the lives of those who lose their jobs as a result. But overall, society is the beneficiary. Entrepreneurship produces new products and services, it increases productivity, it generates employment, and in some cases, it keeps inflation in check. Economists estimate that Walmart alone knocked 20%—perhaps as much as 25%—off the rate of inflation in the 1990s.<sup>81</sup> According to Alfred Kahn, the father of airline deregulation, airline passengers are now saving \$20 billion a year.<sup>82</sup> And with Skype™ and the Internet, you can “talk to anyone, anywhere in the world for free. Forever.”<sup>83</sup>

Next we will look at how other nations as well as the United States are faring with entrepreneurship.

*“The power of Walmart is such, it’s reversed a 100-year history in which the manufacturer was powerful and the retailer was sort of the vassal. . . . It turned that around entirely.”*

— Nelson Lichtenstein,  
University of California, Santa Barbara

## Global Entrepreneurship Monitor

The Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM) was conceived in 1997\* to study the economic impact and the determinants of national-level entrepreneurial activity. With its coverage of more than 60 countries worldwide, GEM is the largest coordinated research effort ever undertaken to study population-level entrepreneurial activity. Member nations account for approximately 95% of the world's GDP and two-thirds of its population. Because of its worldwide reach and rigorous scientific method, GEM has become the world's most influential and authoritative source of empirical data and expertise on the entrepreneurial potential of nations.<sup>84</sup>

The main objectives of GEM are to gather data that measure the entrepreneurial activity of nations and other data related to entrepreneurial activity; to examine what national characteristics are related to levels of entrepreneurial activity; and to explain how differences in entrepreneurial activity are related to different levels of economic growth among nations. GEM distinguishes between two types of entrepreneurial activity:<sup>85</sup>

- *Nascent entrepreneurs* are individuals who are actively trying to start a new business but who have not yet done so.
- *Baby business managers* are owner-managers of a new business that is no more than 42 months old.

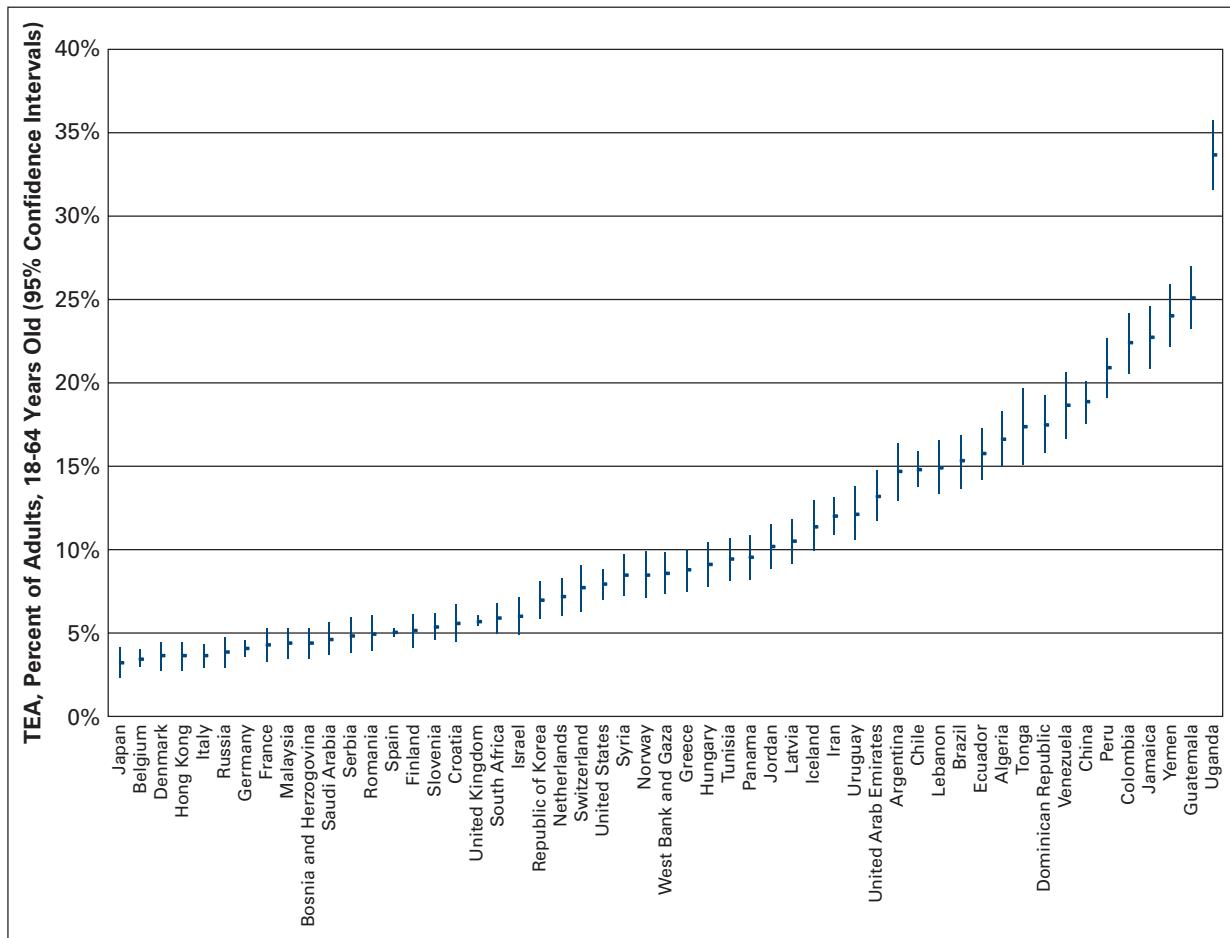
\* GEM in itself is an example of not-for-profit (social) entrepreneurship. It was conceived in 1997 by Babson College and London Business School professors. It was prototyped with bootstrap funding and volunteers and was officially launched in 1998 with research teams from 10 nations and supported with funding raised by each team from national sponsors. By 2009, it had evolved into an international consortium of more than 200 researchers from more than 60 nations, with a combined annual budget of about \$4 million. It produces annual global reports on the overall state of entrepreneurship in those nations, country-specific reports, and reports on special topics such as female entrepreneurship, financing, and job creation. More than 100 global and regional reports can be read and downloaded at [www.gemconsortium.org](http://www.gemconsortium.org).

There are three main measures of entrepreneurial activity:

- TEA (total entrepreneurial activity) is the percentage of the adult population that is either nascent entrepreneurs or baby businesses owner-managers or both. It measures the overall entrepreneurial activity of a nation.
- TEA (opportunity) is the percentage of the adult population that is trying to start or has started a baby business to exploit a perceived opportunity.
- TEA (necessity) is the percentage of the adult population that is trying to start or has started a baby business because all other options for work are either absent or unsatisfactory.

## Principal Findings from GEM

The total entrepreneurial activity (TEA) by country in 2009 is shown in Figure 1.2. The TEA varied from a low in Japan of 3.3% to a high in Uganda of 33.7% for adults 18 to 64 years old. The average level was 10.7% or 1 adult in 11.



Source: Gem Adult Population Survey, 2009.

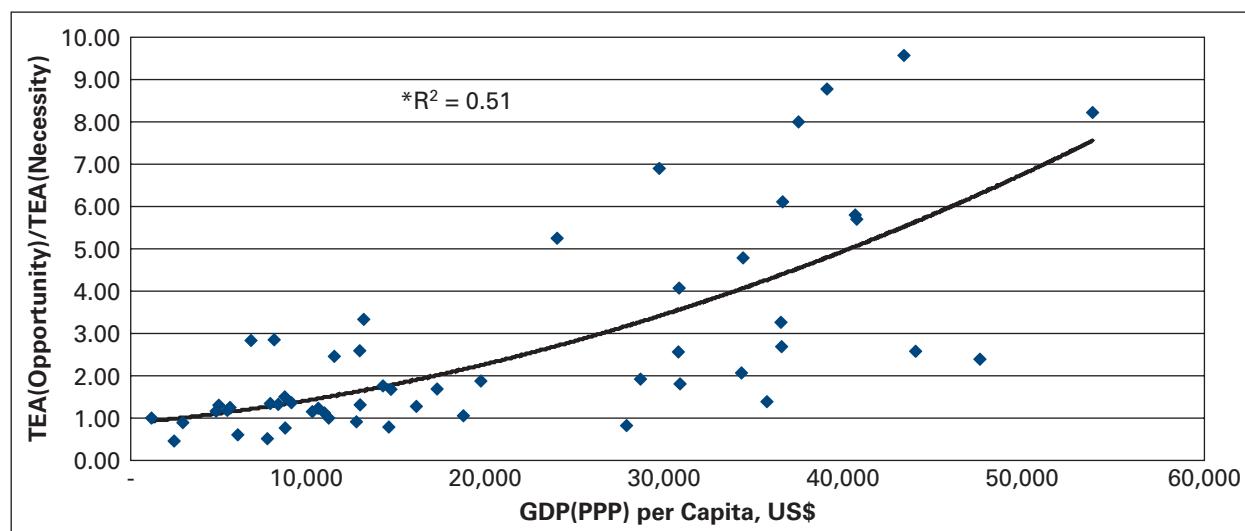
**Figure 1.2**

**Early-stage TEA for 54 nations in 2009**

The vertical bars in Figure 1.2 are 95% confidence intervals. These error bars are wide for some countries and narrow for others because of different sample sizes. Germany, Spain, and the United Kingdom have narrow bars because the samples were very large. Where bars overlap there is no statistical difference among those nations. For example, among countries with lower TEA rates, Japan, Belgium, Denmark, Hong Kong, Italy, Russia, Germany, and France have comparable levels of entrepreneurial activity; among countries with more entrepreneurial activity, Colombia, Jamaica, Yemen, and Guatemala have comparable TEA rates.

GEM defines two types of entrepreneurship: opportunity based and necessity based. In general, nations with high per capita income have proportionately less necessity-pushed entrepreneurial activity and more opportunity-pulled entrepreneurial activity and vice versa for nations with low income, as shown in Figure 1.3. People in higher-income nations tend to have more opportunities for employment and stronger safety nets like social welfare programs, especially for the out-of-work; hence, proportionately fewer are pushed into entrepreneurship to support themselves and their families. The relatively high  $R^2$  of 51% confirms that much of the variation in the proportion of necessity entrepreneurship among nations is accounted for by differences in per capita income.

The relationship between the TEA rate and per capita income (see Figure 1.4) is U-shaped, indicating that, as nations become more prosperous, entrepreneurial activity declines; bottoms out at around \$30,000 per capita, with GDP converted to purchasing power parity (PPP) rather than raw GDP; and then increases. A possible explanation is that, as a nation makes the transition from a less developed nation to a developing one, there are more opportunities for employment with established businesses, so entrepreneurship, especially the necessity-driven form, declines. Entrepreneurial activity bottoms out and then increases again as more and more opportunities, particularly in service and knowledge-based industries, are spotted by entrepreneurs with the skills and motivation to develop them.

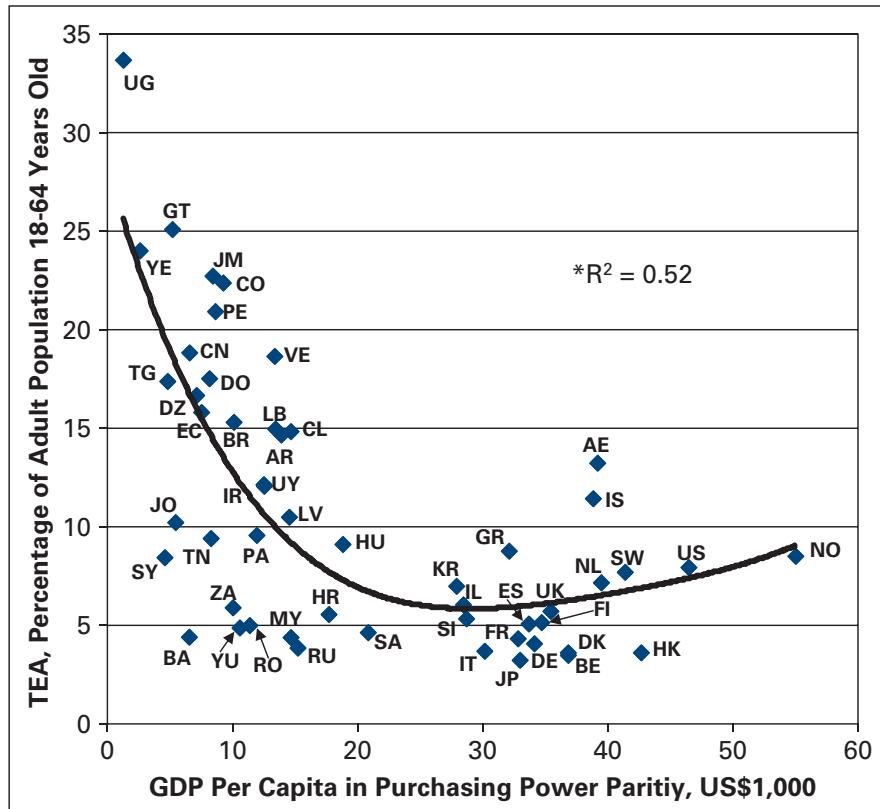


\* $R^2$  is the proportion of the variation that is explained by the trend line. An  $R^2$  of 0.51 indicates that 51% of the variation in the TEA (opportunity)/TEA (necessity) ratio is explained by GDP per capita.

Source: GEM Adult Population Survey, 2009.

**Figure 1.3**

**TEA (opportunity)/TEA (necessity) and per capita income in 2009**



\* $R^2$  is the proportion of the variation that is explained by the trend line. An  $R^2$  of 0.52 indicates that 52% of the variation in the TEA (opportunity)/TEA (necessity) ratio is explained by GDP per capita.

Source: GEM Adult Population Survey; International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook 2009* (<http://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/weo/2009/01/weodata/index.aspx>).

**Figure 1.4**

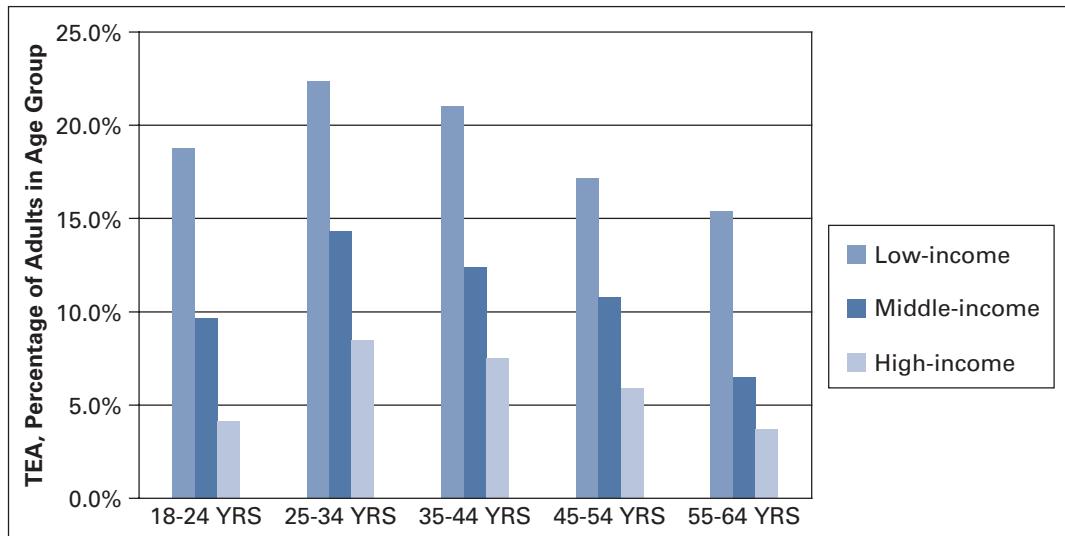
### Early-stage TEA rates and GDP per capita in 2009

## Age

Young people between 25 and 34 years of age are the most entrepreneurially active group of the population regardless of the wealth of the country (see Figure 1.5).<sup>86</sup> After the age of 35, all populations show a steady decline in entrepreneurial activity. This indicates that age is an important factor in the decision to become an entrepreneur. A nation's demographic structure has a significant impact on the immediate level of entrepreneurial activity in the short-term, and demographic change has a significant impact on entrepreneurial activity in the long-term.

Different income groups\* have markedly different entrepreneurship activity levels across all age groups. Low-income countries have the highest activity levels across all age groups, and high-income countries have the lowest. However, the level of necessity entrepreneurship is higher in low-income countries and is also very high among the younger age groups in those countries, where better opportunities for employment are scarcer.

\* Low income:  $\leq \$10,000$  per capita annually; middle income:  $\$10,000 < \leq \$25,000$ ; high income:  $> \$25,000$ .



Source: GEM Adult Population Survey, 2009.

**Figure 1.5**

### Early-Stage TEA for separate age groups in 2009

## Gender

Approximately 50% more men than women are entrepreneurially active.<sup>87</sup> These differences are consistent across age groups and across most countries.

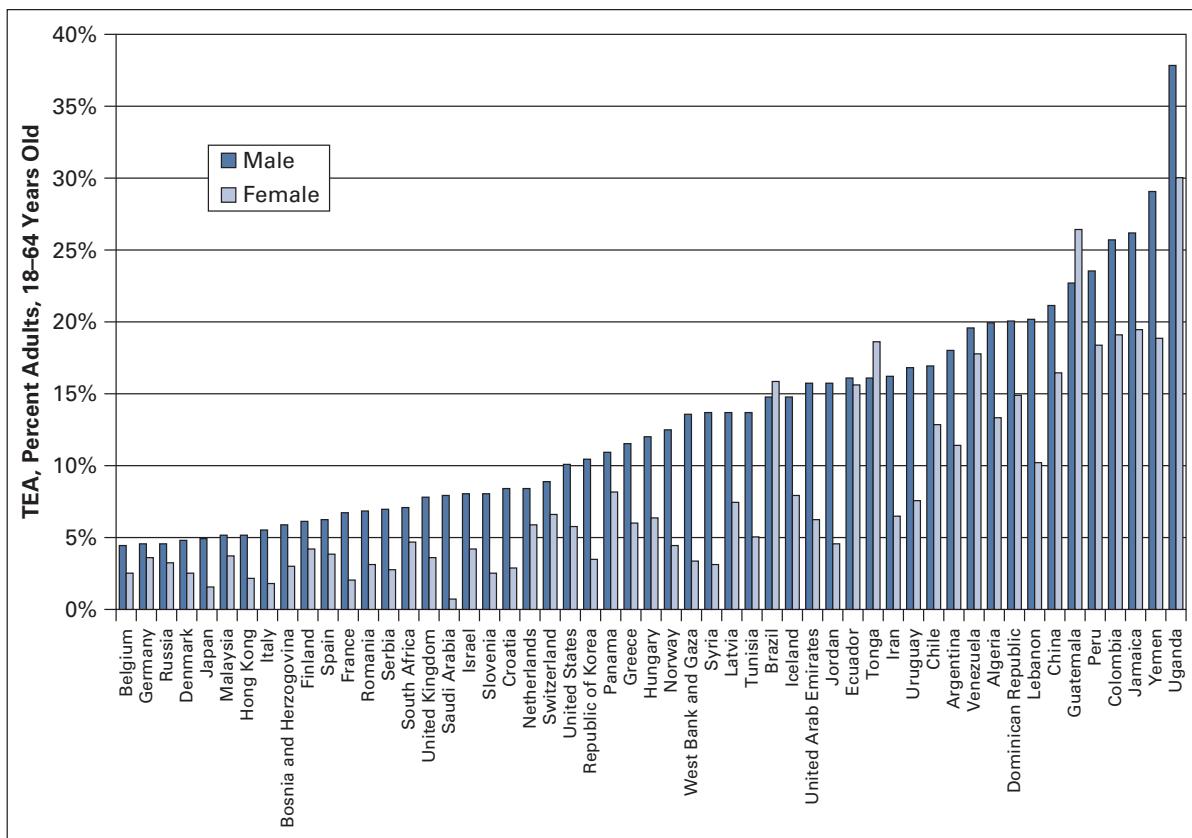
In 2009, Japan, Italy, France, Saudi Arabia, Slovenia, Korea, West Bank & Gaza Strip, Syria, and Jordan all show large gender gaps in entrepreneurial activity, while in Brazil, Ecuador, Tonga, Venezuela, and Guatemala, participation rates are statistically identical (see Figure 1.6).<sup>\*</sup> The narrower gaps in this last group of countries is most likely because the ratio of female to male entrepreneurs is higher in the case of necessity-based entrepreneurship, which constitutes a high proportion of activity in the low-income countries.

## Education

It is widely believed that levels of educational attainment have implications for entrepreneurial behavior. Figure 1.7 shows the relationship between entrepreneurship and some secondary education, a secondary degree, and postsecondary education for each of the three income groups.<sup>88</sup> Secondary education refers to young people roughly between the ages of 12 and 18 years.<sup>89</sup>

The wide differential between the educational profiles of entrepreneurs in low- and high-income countries is obvious. In high-income countries, 57% of entrepreneurs have a postsecondary education, suggesting that in these countries the education systems are tending to build skills conducive to entrepreneurship. In the poorest countries, only 23% of entrepreneurs have a postsecondary education. On the other hand, almost half of the entrepreneurs in low-income nations have not completed secondary education; this is the case for only 13% of their high-income counterparts. In the middle-income countries, the most

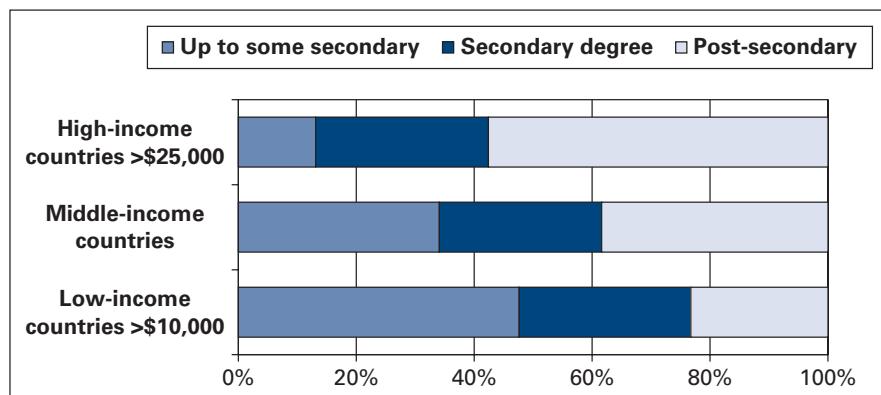
\* What appears to be a closing gender gap may possibly be the result of sample bias. The overall level of activity is very low in some countries, resulting in large standard errors, which make statistically significant gender differences hard to capture.



Source: GEM Adult Population Survey, 2009.

**Figure 1.6**

### Early-Stage TEA rates by gender in 2009



Source: GEM Adult Population Survey, 2004.

**Figure 1.7**

### Education among entrepreneurs by country income group (GDP per capita) in 2004

and least educated fall between these two extremes and exhibit a slight tendency toward the more-educated end of the continuum.

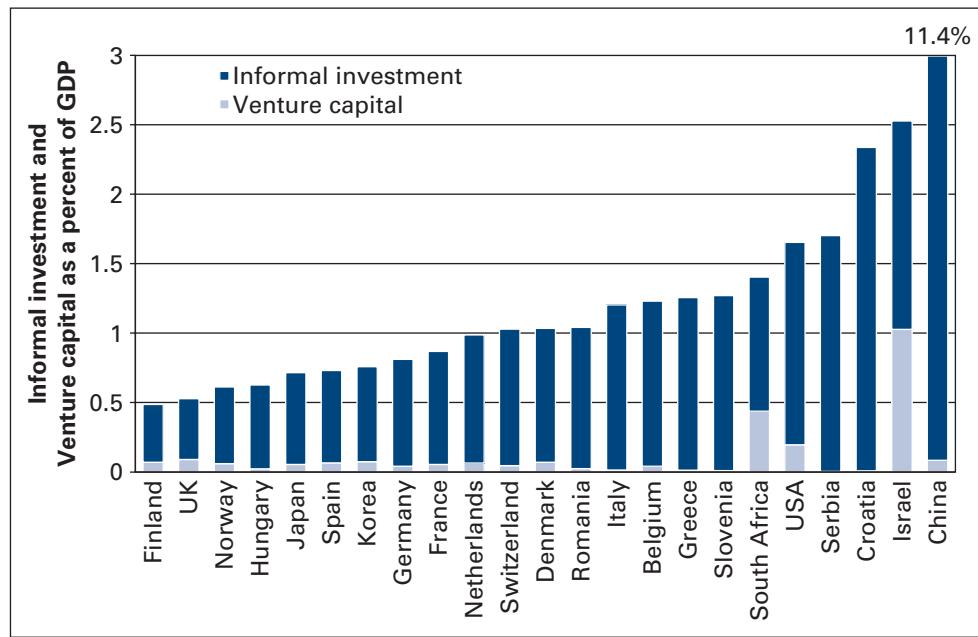
## Financing

Entrepreneurial activity and financing go hand in glove, so it is no surprise that in general they are correlated. There are two main types of financing for new ventures: equity and debt. As a general rule, equity financing has to come before debt, particularly borrowing from a bank. Hence, GEM focuses on equity financing, which is informal investments from the entrepreneurs' families and friends, business angels, and, on rare occasions, formal venture capitalists. Informal investment is much more important than venture capital (see Figure 1.8); one remarkable feature is China's huge amount of informal investment, which is associated with China's very high TEA rate; another is Israel's high proportion of venture capital to informal investment, which is related to that country's large number of high-tech companies backed with venture capital. In a later chapter, we will discuss GEM financing in more detail.

## Job Creation

We now look at the prevalence of high-growth expectations among both nascent entrepreneurs and owner-managers of baby businesses, as identified in GEM's Adult Population Surveys from the years 2004 to 2009.<sup>90</sup>

The GEM method enables the categorization of early-stage startup attempts according to their growth expectations. GEM asks all identified early-stage entrepreneurs how many employees they expect to have (other than the owners themselves) within five years' time.



Source: Informal Investment—GEM Adult Population Survey, 2009; Venture Capital—National Venture Capital Association, USA (NVCA), European Venture Capital Association (EVCA), & National Venture Capital Association of China, Israel, Japan, Korea, South Africa, 2008.

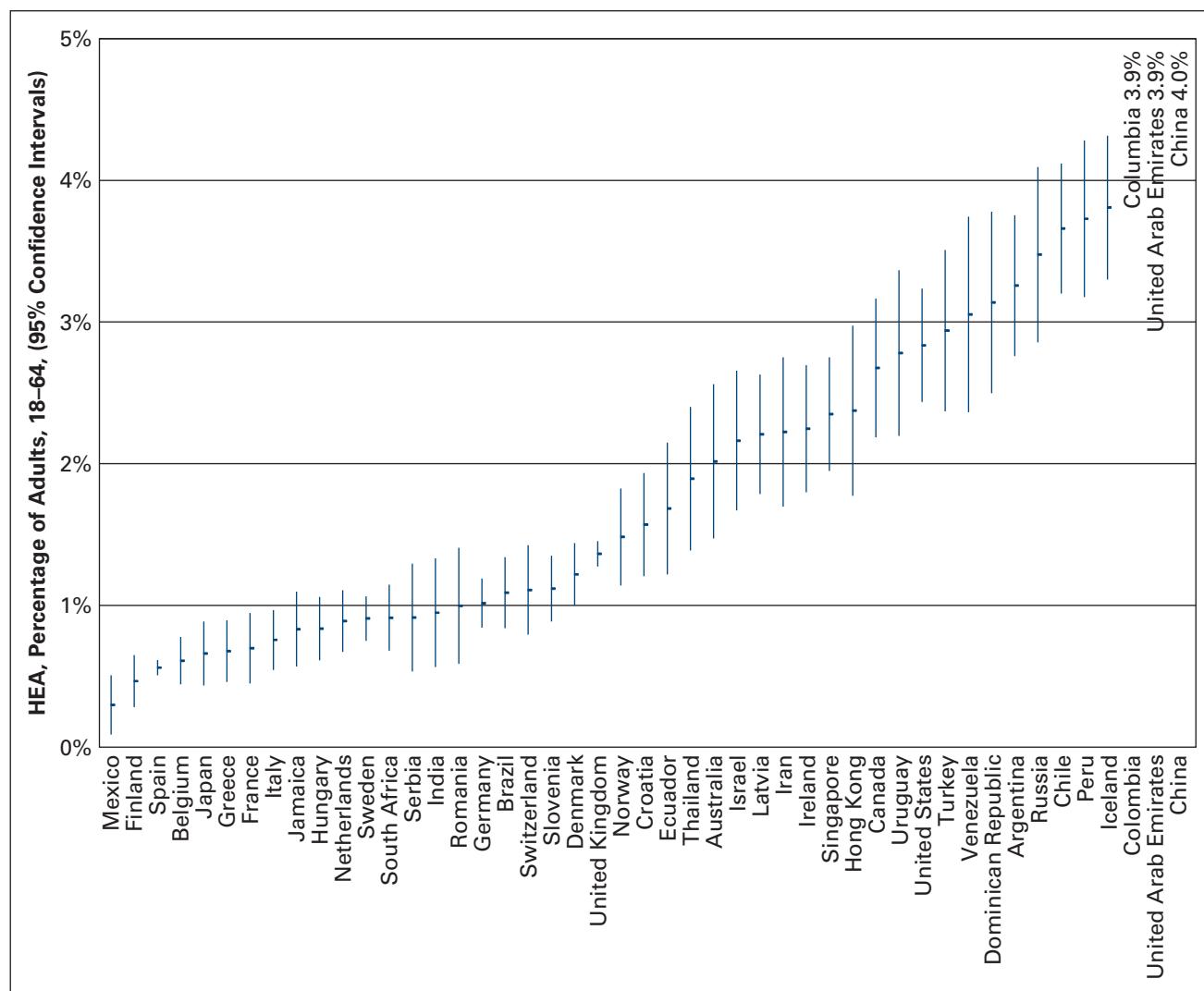
Figure 1.8

Informal investment and venture capital as a percentage of GDP (2009)

Out of every 10 early-stage entrepreneurs, 7 expected some job creation. However, expectations of high growth are rare among nascent and new entrepreneurs. Only 14% of all those involved in startup attempts expected to create 20 or more jobs, while 44% expected to create 5 or more jobs.

High-growth entrepreneurs, also known as “gazelles,” receive heightened attention from policy makers because their firms contribute a disproportionate share of all new jobs created by new firms.<sup>91,92</sup> Figure 1.9 shows the prevalence rates of high-expectation entrepreneurial activity (HEA) in the working-age population.

Among high-income countries, the United Arab Emirates, Iceland, the United States, Canada, Singapore, Ireland, and Australia had the highest levels of HEA over the 2004–2009 period. The HEA rate for these countries is well over 1%. The lowest levels of HEA, at under 0.5%, occur in Spain, Belgium, Japan, and France. HEA rates can vary even among broadly



Source: GEM Adult Population Survey, 2004–2009.

**Figure 1.9**

**Early-Stage HEA rates in 2004–2009**

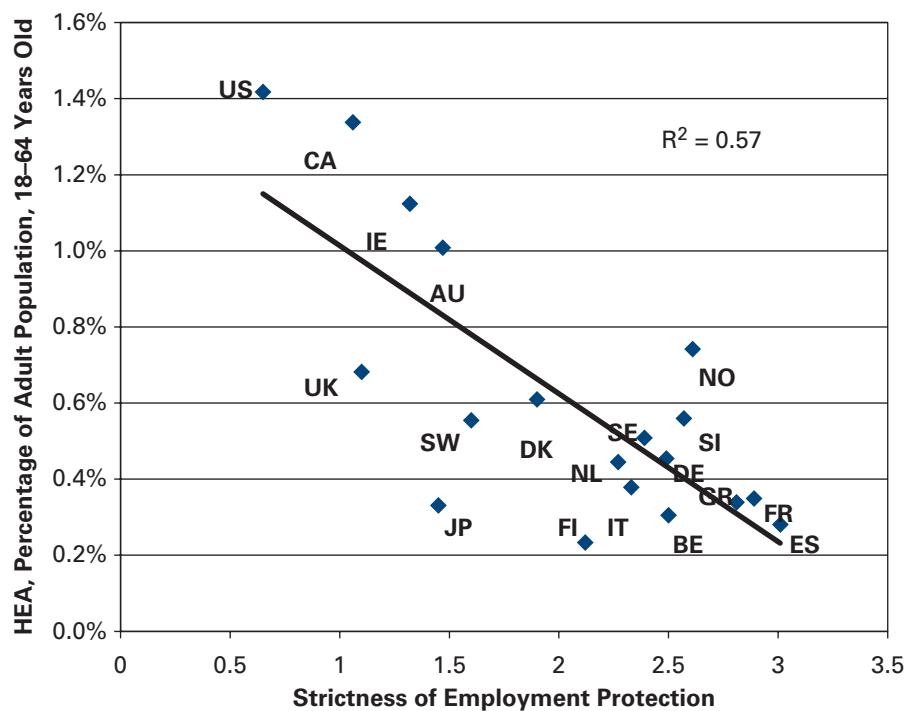
similar high-income countries. Among the large European Union economies, the United Kingdom and Germany exhibit higher HEA rates than do France and Spain. In the Benelux countries, the Netherlands' rate is higher than Belgium's. In Scandinavia, Iceland was at the top on this measure, while Finland was at the bottom and Sweden, Denmark, and Norway were in the middle.

Although GEM data are for expected job creation, they are consistent with empirical studies of actual job creation. For instance, one study found that 4% of new firms in the United Kingdom created 50% of all jobs created by all new firms.<sup>93</sup> And another study reported that more than 70% of the employment growth in the United States came from only 3% of all firms.<sup>94</sup>

## 21st-Century Economies: Anglo-Saxon or Social Models?

It is very interesting that a group of nations with so-called Anglo-Saxon economic systems (the United States, Canada, Ireland, and Australia) has higher HEA rates—which translate into more job creation—than does a group of European nations with strong social models (Denmark, Sweden, Finland, the Netherlands, Germany, and France).

Figure 1.10 shows that the stricter a country's employment security, the lower its early-stage HEA rate.<sup>95</sup> Stricter employment protection inhibits HEA in two ways: First, it makes



Source: GEM Adult Population Survey, 2004–2009; Office of Economic Cooperation and Development, Employment Strictness Data, 2004.

Figure 1.10

Strictness of employment protection and early-stage HEA rates in 2004–2009

would-be HEA entrepreneurs more reluctant to give up a secure job to start their own company; second, if they start one, it makes them more hesitant to hire employees because firing them is costly. Of course, the optimal balance depends on a nation's norms and social values. However, the results in Figure 1.10 suggest that lowering employment protection may benefit employees in the longer term because of the possibility that more jobs will be created by these early-stage HEA entrepreneurs.

Here is U.K. Prime Minister Tony Blair's challenge for Europe in his address to the European Parliament in June 2005:<sup>96</sup>

*What would a different policy agenda for Europe look like? First, it would modernize our social model. Again some have suggested I want to abandon Europe's social model. But tell me: what type of social model is it that has 20 million unemployed in Europe, productivity rates falling behind those of the USA; that is allowing more science graduates to be produced by India than by Europe; and that, on any relative index of a modern economy—skills, R&D, patents, IT—is going down, not up. India will expand its biotechnology sector fivefold in the next five years. China has trebled its spending on R&D in the last five.*

*Of the top 20 universities in the world today, only two are now in Europe.<sup>97</sup> The purpose of our social model should be to enhance our ability to compete, to help our people cope with*

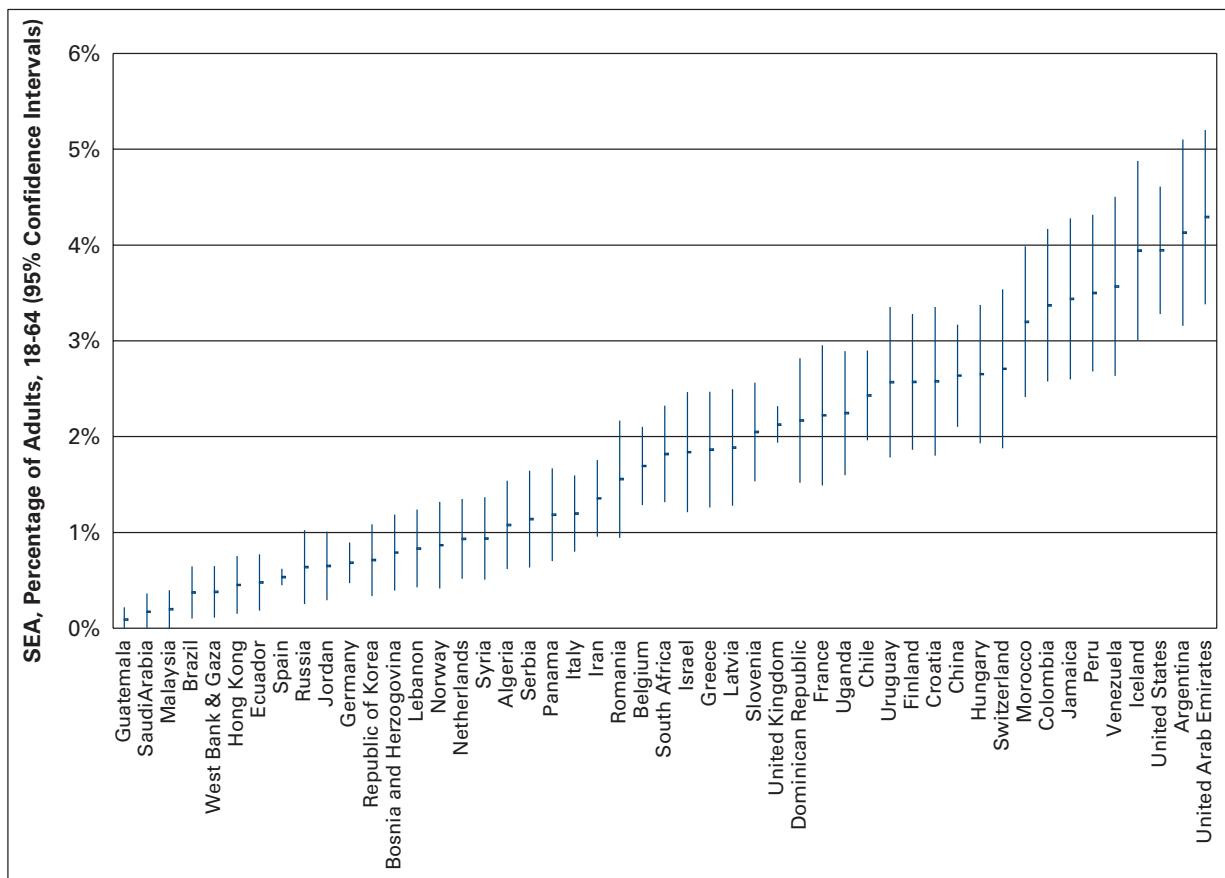


Figure 1.11

Early-Stage SEA rates by country, 2009

*globalization, to let them embrace its opportunities and avoid its dangers. Of course we need a social Europe. But it must be a social Europe that works.*

*And we've been told how to do it. The Kok report<sup>98</sup> in 2004 shows the way. Investment in knowledge, in skills, in active labor market policies, in science parks and innovation, in higher education, in urban regeneration, and in help for small businesses. This is modern social policy, not regulation and job protection that may save some jobs for a time at the expense of many jobs in the future.*

Early in 2006, Dominique de Villepin, France's prime minister, proposed legislation aimed at cutting chronic youth unemployment by easing rigid labor laws that make it very difficult to fire employees. Students rose up all over France to protest the proposed changes and shut down classes at half of France's 84 state-run universities in the biggest student uprising since 1968 (when student riots forced the De Gaulle government to hold an election). The students' attitude in 2006 was summed up by these comments.<sup>99</sup>

*Elodie, 21, a sociology student, said: "The issues are different from those our parents were protesting about. We are marching for the right to proper jobs."*

*Romain, 20, a communications student, said: "We don't want the Anglo-Saxon economic model here."*

One survey discovered that the top career goal of three-quarters of young French people was to be a civil servant.<sup>100</sup> This is in stark contrast to the United States, where the majority of young people want to be an entrepreneur at some time during their career.<sup>101</sup> But it does not follow that young people in France and other European countries with social models are more likely than their U.S. counterparts to become engaged in entrepreneurial activities with a social goal. On the contrary, when GEM made its first comprehensive study of social entrepreneurship in 2009, European nations had a lower level of early-stage social entrepreneurial activity (SEA) than did the United States (see Figure 1.11).

Entrepreneurial activity in the United States now accounts for much of the nation's prosperity and its competitiveness in the global economy. The disappearance of "old" jobs, particularly in mature manufacturing industries, and their replacement by "new" jobs, especially in service and knowledge-based industries, is disconcerting to workers whose jobs are threatened. But society has to accept *churning*—the creation of new enterprises and the destruction of obsolete ones—because it gives the U.S. economy its vitality.

The entrepreneurial framework includes factors such as availability of finance, government policies and programs designed to support startups, R&D transfer, physical and human infrastructure, general education, specific education and training for entrepreneurship, social and cultural norms, and internal market openness. All of these factors combined determine the degree of entrepreneurial activity in a nation, or for that matter in a region within a nation. Among the large, developed nations, the United States sets the entrepreneurial benchmark. What's more, the so-called Anglo-Saxon economic systems seem to engender more entrepreneurial activity than systems dominated by the social model, which is the prevalent system in much of continental Europe. The question remains: How do both Anglo-Saxon and social economies find an entrepreneurial path that leads them out of the economic crisis?

In this chapter, we have looked at the importance of entrepreneurship to national economies. In the following chapters, we will look at the specifics of how entrepreneurs start and grow their new ventures.

## CONCLUSION

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

We are excited that you are exploring an entrepreneurial journey, one that may lead you to launch a business while in college, after graduation, or at some future point in your life. We know that all great entrepreneurs are avid readers and thinkers, and as such, we encourage you to capture some of your thoughts as you read this book. These thoughts may focus on a new venture that you are interested in creating, or they may focus more on your entrepreneurial career plan. In either event, we will close each chapter with space for you to reflect on what it means to you and your potential venture.

### Reflection Point

1. What world-changing industries or opportunities do you see developing over the next 5 to 10 years?
2. What innovations or new technologies will drive these world-changing opportunities?
3. Which regions of the world have the greatest potential for developing these opportunities? Which are you most interested in?
4. What skills do you need to develop to take advantage of these opportunities?

### Your Thoughts . . .

## WEB EXERCISE

What do you think will be the next major innovation (like, e.g., the Internet) that changes the way we work and play? Search the Web to identify trends, statistics, and other evidence to support your insight. (*Hint:* Venture capitalists in the United States have a knack for spotting emergent industries.)

## NOTES

- <sup>1</sup> Estimate based on GEM Adult Population Surveys. [www.gemconsortium.org](http://www.gemconsortium.org).
- <sup>2</sup> Small Business Administration. *Frequently Asked Questions*. [www.sba.gov/advo](http://www.sba.gov/advo).
- <sup>3</sup> Schumpeter, J. A. *The Theory of Economic Development*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press. 1934. (This book was originally published in German in 1911.)
- <sup>4</sup> Maddison, A. *Phases of Capitalist Development*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press. 1989. Baumol, W. J. Entrepreneurship and a Century of Growth. *Journal of Business Venturing*, 1(2): 141–145. 1986.

- <sup>5</sup> SBA Office of Advocacy. *Frequently Asked Questions*. September 2009. [www.sba.gov/gov/advo](http://www.sba.gov/gov/advo).
- <sup>6</sup> For the Small Business Administration definitions of *small business* refer to <http://www.sba.gov/gopher/Financial-Assistance/Defin/def14.txt>.
- <sup>7</sup> This is based on GDPs and actual currency exchange rates in 2004.
- <sup>8</sup> Small Business Administration. *Frequently Asked Questions*. <http://web.sba.gov/faqs/faqindex.cfm?areaID=24>.
- <sup>9</sup> [www.nvca.org/pdf/VentureImpact2004.pdf](http://www.nvca.org/pdf/VentureImpact2004.pdf) based on the data from National Science Foundation (NSF), *R&D in Industry: 1991–2000*, Tables A3 and A4; NSF, *Preliminary Release, 2001 and 2002*, Tables A3 and A4; NSF, *Infobrief: U.S. R&D Projected to Have Grown Marginally in 2003*.
- <sup>10</sup> *The Shape of Small Business*. [www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html](http://www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html).
- <sup>11</sup> It is impossible to establish a precise upper limit because many new ventures are abandoned very soon after they are started and never get entered into any data set that tracks startups.
- <sup>12</sup> [www.forbes.com/businesswire/feeds/businesswire/2005/07/21/businesswire20050721005296r1.html](http://www.forbes.com/businesswire/feeds/businesswire/2005/07/21/businesswire20050721005296r1.html).
- <sup>13</sup> Kirchhoff, Bruce A. *Entrepreneurship and Dynamic Capitalism*. Westport, CT: Praeger, 1994.
- <sup>14</sup> Nucci, A. The Demography of Business Closings. *Small Business Economics*, 12: 25–39. 1999.
- <sup>15</sup> *The Shape of Small Business*. [www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html](http://www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html).
- <sup>16</sup> Dennis, W. J., Jr., and Fernald, L. W., Jr. The Chances of Financial Success (and Loss) from Small Business Ownership. *Entrepreneurship Theory and Practice*, 1: 75–83. 2002.
- <sup>17</sup> Reported in *The Shape of Small Business*. [www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html](http://www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html). *Source*: Bureau of the Census, Current Population Survey, March 1999, special run for the NFIB Education Foundation prepared by Carolyn Looff Associates, Lexington, KY, 2000.
- <sup>18</sup> Reported in *The Shape of Small Business*. [www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html](http://www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html). *Source*: Census Bureau, Special Tabulation of Business Information Tracking System, prepared for the NFIB Education Foundation by the Census Bureau, 2000.
- <sup>19</sup> *The Shape of Small Business*. [www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html](http://www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html). The net business formation index was discontinued in 1995 when one of its two components was no longer available.
- <sup>20</sup> Macrae, N. The Coming Entrepreneurial Revolution. *The Economist*. December 15, 1976.
- <sup>21</sup> Birch, David L. *Job Creation in America: How Our Smallest Companies Put the Most People to Work*. New York, NY: Free Press, 1978.
- <sup>22</sup> For example: Acs, Z. *The New American Evolution*. Washington, DC: U.S. Small Business Administration, Office of Economic Research. June 1998. Kirchhoff, Bruce A. *Entrepreneurship and Dynamic Capitalism*. Westport, CT: Praeger, 1994.
- <sup>23</sup> At one point, General Motors was the largest corporation ever to exist in the United States in terms of its revenues as a percentage of GDP. In 1953, Charles Erwin Wilson, then GM's president, was named by President Eisenhower as secretary of defense. When he was asked, during the hearings before the Senate Armed Services Committee, if as secretary of defense he could make a decision adverse to the interests of General Motors, Wilson answered affirmatively but added that he could not conceive of such a situation “because for years I thought what was good for the country was good for General Motors and vice versa.” Later this statement was often garbled when quoted, suggesting that Wilson had said simply, “What’s good for General Motors is good for the country.”

At the time, GM was one of the largest employers in the world—only Soviet state industries employed more people. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles\\_Erwin\\_Wilson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Erwin_Wilson).

- <sup>24</sup> “The observation made in 1965 by Gordon Moore, co-founder of Intel, that the number of transistors per square inch on integrated circuits had doubled every year since the integrated circuit was invented. Moore predicted that this trend would continue for the foreseeable future. In subsequent years, the pace slowed down a bit, but density has doubled approximately every 18 months, and this is the current definition of Moore’s Law. Most experts, including Moore himself, expect Moore’s Law to hold for at least another two decades.” *Source:* [www.webopedia.com/TERM/M/Moores\\_Law.html](http://www.webopedia.com/TERM/M/Moores_Law.html).
- <sup>25</sup> Working independently and unaware of each other’s activity, Jack Kilby at Texas Instruments and Robert Noyce at Fairchild Semiconductor Corporation invented almost identical integrated circuits at the same time. “In 1959 both parties applied for patents. Jack Kilby and Texas Instruments received U.S. patent #3,138,743 for miniaturized electronic circuits. Robert Noyce and the Fairchild Semiconductor Corporation received U.S. patent #2,981,877 for a silicon-based integrated circuit. The two companies wisely decided to cross license their technologies after several years of legal battles, creating a global market now worth about \$1 trillion a year.” *Source:* <http://inventors.about.com/library/weekly/aa080498.htm>.
- <sup>26</sup> The first personal computers were actually called microcomputers. The phrase “personal computer” was common currency before 1981 and was used as early as 1972 to characterize Xerox PARC’s Alto. However, due to the success of the IBM PC, what had been a generic term came to mean specifically a microcomputer compatible with IBM’s specification. *Source:* [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ibm\\_5150](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ibm_5150).
- <sup>27</sup> The top 25 in descending order are the Internet, cell phone, personal computer, fiber optics, e-mail, commercialized GPS, portable computers, memory storage disks, consumer-level digital cameras, radio frequency ID tags, MEMS, DNA fingerprinting, air bags, ATMs, advanced batteries, hybrid cars, OLEDs, display panels, HDTVs, space shuttles, nanotechnology, flash memory, voice mail, modern hearing aids, and short-range high-frequency radio. *Source:* [www.cnn.com/2005/TECH/01/03/cnn25.top25.innovations](http://www.cnn.com/2005/TECH/01/03/cnn25.top25.innovations).
- <sup>28</sup> [www.fedex.com/us/about/today/history](http://www.fedex.com/us/about/today/history).
- <sup>29</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Airline\\_Deregulation\\_Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Airline_Deregulation_Act).
- <sup>30</sup> Jordan, W. A. *Airline Entry Following U.S. Deregulation: The Definitive List of Startup Passenger Airlines, 1979–2003*. [www.trforum.org/forum/getpaper.php?id=22&PHPSESSID=119446d6d13ce93d6c6aea3df05010ce](http://www.trforum.org/forum/getpaper.php?id=22&PHPSESSID=119446d6d13ce93d6c6aea3df05010ce).
- <sup>31</sup> [www.tsha.utexas.edu/handbook/online/articles/SS/eps1\\_print.html](http://www.tsha.utexas.edu/handbook/online/articles/SS/eps1_print.html).
- <sup>32</sup> Bygrave, W. D., and Timmons, J. A. *Venture Capital at the Crossroads*. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 1992.
- <sup>33</sup> Rogers, E. M., and Larsen, J. K. *Silicon Valley Fever: Growth of High-Technology Culture*. New York, NY: Basic Books, 1984.
- <sup>34</sup> Bush, Vannevar. As We May Think. *The Atlantic Monthly*. July 1945.
- <sup>35</sup> Nelson, Ted. The Story So Far. *Ted Nelson Newsletter*, No. 3. October 1994. [www.computerhistory.org/exhibits/internet\\_history/internet\\_history\\_80s.html](http://www.computerhistory.org/exhibits/internet_history/internet_history_80s.html).
- <sup>37</sup> *Tim Berners-Lee, Inventor of the World Wide Web, Knighted by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II.* [www.w3.org/2004/07/timbl\\_knighted](http://www.w3.org/2004/07/timbl_knighted).
- <sup>38</sup> *New Scientist Magazine*. December 17, 1994.

- 39 www.smartcomputing.com/editorial/dictionary/detail.asp?DicID = 17855.
- 40 Lashinsky, Adam. Remembering Netscape: The Birth of the Web. www.fortune.com/fortune/print/0,15935,1081456,00.html.
- 41 Ibid.
- 42 Gevirtz, D. *The Entrepreneurs: Innovation in American Business*. New York, NY: Penguin Books. 1985. p. 30.
- 43 Classic venture capital is money invested privately in seed, startup, expansion, and late-stage companies. The term *classic* is used to distinguish it from money invested privately in acquisitions, buyouts, mergers, and reorganizations.
- 44 www.forbes.com/2001/02/06/0207VC.html.
- 45 Friedman, T. L. *The World Is Flat*. New York, NY: Farrar, Straus and Giroux. 2005.
- 46 Fitzgerald, Mark. How Did Newspapers Get in This Pickle? *Editor & Publisher*. March 18, 2009. www.editorandpublisher.com/eandp/columns/newspaperbeat\_display.jsp?vnu\_content\_id=1003952561.
- 47 World Bank, *World Development Indicators*. www.google.com/search?hl=en&source=hp&q=internet+users+united+states&aq=2&oq=Internet+users+&aqi=g10.
- 48 http://thehill.com/blogs/blog-briefing-room/news/59523-obama-open-to-newspaper-bailout-bill.
- 49 Whyte, W. *The Organization Man*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster. 1956.
- 50 Postrel, V. How Has “The Organization Man” changed? *The New York Times*. January 17, 1999.
- 51 Galbraith, J. K. *The New Industrial State*. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin. 1967.
- 52 Servan-Schreiber, J. J. *The American Challenge*. New York, NY: Scribner. 1968.
- 53 Macrae, Norman. *We're All Entrepreneurial Now-17 April 1982*. www.normanmacrae.com/intrapreneur.html.
- 54 For example, a mid-1980s study by Calvin Kent of the content of popular principles of economics “revealed that entrepreneurship was either neglected, improperly presented, or only partially covered.” Kent, C. A., and Rushing, F. W. Coverage of Entrepreneurship in Principles of Economics Textbooks: An Update. *Journal of Economics Education* 20, 184–189. Spring 1999.
- 55 Schumpeter, J. A. *Capitalism, Socialism, and Democracy*. Third edition. New York, NY: Harper Torchbooks. 1950. (Originally published in 1942).
- 56 Schumpeter, J. A. *The Theory of Economic Development*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press. 1934. Reprinted edition, Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1949.
- 57 Blau, D. M. A Time-Series Analysis of Self-Employment in the United States. *Journal of Political Economy*, 95: 445–467. 1987. Evans, D., and Leighton, L. S. The Determinants of Changes in U.S. Self-Employment. *Small Business Economics*, 1(2): 111–120. 1987.
- 58 Acs, Z. J., Arenius, P., Hay, M., and Minniti, M. *The Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2004 Executive Report*. www.gemconsortium.org.
- 59 This is excerpted from Reynolds, P. D., Hay, M., Bygrave, W. D., Camp, S. M., and Autio, E. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2000 Executive Report*. www.gemconsortium.org.
- 60 Ralph Nader's best-selling book *Unsafe at Any Speed: The Designed-In Dangers of the American Automobile*, published in 1965, claimed that automobile manufacturers were ignoring safety features, like seat belts and were reluctant to spend money on improving safety.
- 61 George Gendron on the State of Entrepreneurship. December 2002. www.

- 62 [pioneerentrepreneurs.net/bigidea\\_gendron.php](http://pioneerentrepreneurs.net/bigidea_gendron.php).
- 63 Bygrave, W. D., and Timmons, J. A. *Venture Capital at the Crossroads*. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press. 1992.
- 64 Statement of Edsel M. Brown Jr. Assistant Director Office of Technology U.S. Small Business Administration Before the House Committee on Small Business United States House of Representatives April 22, 2009. <http://www.house.gov/smbiz/hearings/hearing-4-22-09-technology-economic-recovery/Brown.pdf>.
- 65 Nelson, L. The Rise of Intellectual Property Protection in the American University. *Science*, 279 (5356): 1460–1461. 1998. [www.sciencemag.org/cgi/content/full/279/5356/1460](http://www.sciencemag.org/cgi/content/full/279/5356/1460).
- 66 Morris, D. Who Gets the Fruits of Public R&D? *Minneapolis Star Tribune*. November 28, 2004. [www.ilsr.org/columns/2004/112804.html](http://www.ilsr.org/columns/2004/112804.html).
- 67 Innovation's Golden Goose. *The Economist*. December 12, 2002.
- 68 Statement of Senator Birch Bayh to the National Institutes of Health. May 25, 2004. <http://ott.od.nih.gov/Meeting/Senator-Birch-Bayh.pdf>.
- 69 www.nal.usda.gov/ttic/guide.htm.
- 70 Singletary, M. How to Get the Most Bang from eBay. *Maine Sunday Telegram*. August 7, 2005.
- 71 Wiggins, J., and Gibson, D. V. Overview of US Incubators and the Case of the Austin Technology Incubator. *International Journal of Entrepreneurship and Innovation Management*. 3(1/2): 56–66. 2003. [www.ic2.org/publications/Incubator%20Paper%20with%20Joel.pdf](http://www.ic2.org/publications/Incubator%20Paper%20with%20Joel.pdf).
- 72 National Business Incubation Association, *Business Incubation Frequently Asked Questions*. [www.nbia.org/resource\\_library/faq/index.php#3](http://www.nbia.org/resource_library/faq/index.php#3).
- 73 Ibid.
- 74 George Gendron on the State of Entrepreneurship. December 2002. [www.pioneerentrepreneurs.net/bigidea\\_gendron.php](http://www.pioneerentrepreneurs.net/bigidea_gendron.php).
- 75 Lange, J., Mollov, A., Pearlmutter, M., Singh, S., and Bygrave, W. *Pre-Startup Formal Business Plans and Post-Startup Performance: A Study of 116 New Ventures*. Presented at the Babson Kauffman Entrepreneurship Research Conference, Babson College. June 2005.
- 76 Moore, G. E. The Accidental Entrepreneur. Originally published in *Engineering & Science* (California Institute of Technology), 57(4): 23–30. Summer 1994. <http://nobelprize.org/physics/articles/moore>.
- 77 Boylan, M. *What We Know and Don't Know About Venture Capital*. American Economic Association Meeting, December 28, 1981, and National Economist Club, January 19, 1982.
- 78 National Venture Capital Association Yearbook, 2009.
- 79 Bygrave, W. D. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2004 Financing Report* (with Steve Hunt). [www.gemconsortium.org/www.sba.gov/advo/research/dyn\\_b\\_d8902.pdf](http://www.gemconsortium.org/www.sba.gov/advo/research/dyn_b_d8902.pdf).
- 80 Rifkin, G., and Harrar, G. *The Ultimate Entrepreneur: The Story of Ken Olsen and Digital Equipment Corporation*. Chicago, IL: Contemporary Books. 1998.
- 81 Lichtenstein, N. Is Walmart Good for America? *PBS Frontline*. June 9, 2004. [www.pbs.org/wgbh/pages/frontline/shows/walmart/interviews/lichenstein.html](http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/pages/frontline/shows/walmart/interviews/lichenstein.html).
- 82 www.news.cornell.edu/stories/April05/HEC.05.cover.html.
- 83 www.skype.com.
- 84 Autio, E. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: GEM-Mazars Special Report on High-Expectation Entrepreneurship*. 2005. [www.gemconsortium.org](http://www.gemconsortium.org).

- 85 Excerpted from GEM global reports and special reports. [www.gemconsortium.org](http://www.gemconsortium.org).
- 86 Excerpted from Acs, Z. J., Arenius, P., Hay, M., and Minniti, M. *The Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2004 Executive Report*.
- 87 Ibid.
- 88 Ibid.
- 89 Education data were standardized across all countries in order to make this comparison possible.
- 90 This section contains excerpts from Bosma, N., and Levie, J. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2009 Executive Report*. [www.gemconsortium.org](http://www.gemconsortium.org).
- 91 Storey, D. *Understanding the Small Business Sector*. London: Routledge. 1994.
- 92 Birch, D. *Who Is Creating Jobs?* Cambridge, MA: Cognetics. 1995.
- 93 Storey, D. *Understanding the Small Business Sector*. London: Routledge. 1994.
- 94 Birch, D. *Who Is Creating Jobs?* Cambridge, MA: Cognetics. 1995.
- 95 The same relationship has also been found in regression analyses, controlling for individual-level and regional-level determinants of high-expectation entrepreneurship. See Bosma, N., and Levie, J. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2009 Executive Report*. [www.gemconsortium.org](http://www.gemconsortium.org).
- 96 Address to the EU Parliament by Prime Minister Blair. June 23, 2005. [http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/uk\\_politics/4122288.stm](http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/uk_politics/4122288.stm).
- 97 The brains business. *The Economist*, September 8, 2005. [http://www.economist.com/surveys/displaystory.cfm?story\\_id=4339960](http://www.economist.com/surveys/displaystory.cfm?story_id=4339960)
- 98 Kok, Wim. *Facing the Challenge: The Lisbon Strategy for Growth and Employment*. Report from the High Level Group chaired by Wim Kok. November 2004. [http://europa.eu.int/growthandjobs/pdf/kok\\_report\\_en.pdf](http://europa.eu.int/growthandjobs/pdf/kok_report_en.pdf).

1 America rules	
The world's top universities*	
1 Harvard University	America
2 Stanford University	America
3 University of Cambridge	Britain
4 University of California ( <i>Berkeley</i> )	America
5 Massachusetts Institute of Technology	America
6 California Institute of Technology	America
7 Princeton University	America
8 University of Oxford	Britain
9 Columbia University	America
10 University of Chicago	America
11 Yale University	America
12 Cornell University	America
13 University of California ( <i>San Diego</i> )	America
14 Tokyo University	Japan
15 University of Pennsylvania	America
16 University of California ( <i>Los Angeles</i> )	America
17 University of California ( <i>San Francisco</i> )	America
18 University of Wisconsin ( <i>Madison</i> )	America
19 University of Michigan ( <i>Ann Arbor</i> )	America
20 University of Washington ( <i>Seattle</i> )	America

\* Ranked by a mixture of indicators of academic and research performance, including Nobel prizes and articles in respected publications

Source: Jiao Tong University, Shanghai.

- 99 Randall, Colin. Students March in Paris as the Unrest Spreads. March 15, 2006. [www.telegraph.co.uk/news/worldnews/europe/france/1513073/students-march-in-paris-as-the-unrest-spreads.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/news/worldnews/europe/france/1513073/students-march-in-paris-as-the-unrest-spreads.html).
- 100 Harriss, J. A. Celebrating 70 Years of Socialism. *The American Spectator*, 39(3): 53. April 2006.
- 101 Several studies have been done on the interests that young people have in entrepreneurship. For example, in their book *The E Generation: Prepared for the Entrepreneurial Economy*, Marilyn Kourilsky and William Walstad (Kendall/Hunt Publishing, Dubuque, Iowa, 2000) explain that youth are overwhelmingly interested in entrepreneurship. In fact, they found that 6 out of 10 young people aspire to start a business of their own. The Gallup Organization, in conjunction with the Kauffman Foundation, conducted the first national poll on entrepreneurship. What they found was that 70% of students polled wanted to start their own business. [www.entre-ed.org/testimony.htm](http://www.entre-ed.org/testimony.htm).

**CASE****Malincho**

Bulgarian Kalin Pentchev leaned into his cell phone conversation as he scribbled numbers on the top flap of a shipping box. Speaking quickly in his native tongue, the big man jabbed the air in front of him for emphasis.

"Look, I will tell you this. If you come down on your price, I will sign a contract to guarantee that my company will purchase one hundred thousand pounds of your cheese in the coming year."

He drew circles and blocks around the numbers as he listened to the impassioned response from a feta cheese producer 3,500 miles away.

"You need to think about that?" Kalin said at last with a fair amount of exasperation. "Well, don't think too long; it's already April and this year 2003 isn't getting any younger. You're not the only producer in Bulgaria, my friend, and you must understand that I will be signing a favorable volume agreement with someone, and soon. Right. Okay, you get back to me."

Kalin smiled as he clicked off. No matter that he had no idea how he could possibly sell that much cheese in a year, or that he was playing hardball with one of the only producers he felt he could trust back in his homeland. As was his nature, Kalin was moving forward like a tightrope walker performing daring feats without a net, protected only by a supreme faith in his own ability to overcome whatever challenge he encountered or set for himself.

As he resumed packing orders of East European food products to be shipped to his customers all over the United States, Kalin shook off concerns about the pile of neglected tasks back at his apartment: paperwork for a sizable UPS shipping credit, his U.S. tax return, and a few applications for debt-consolidation loans.

With his New Jersey-based import business, Malincho.com, growing exponentially during a slump in the economy, Kalin wasn't going to let those pressing tasks slow him down. After all, to someone who had grown up under a communist regime, this business of capitalism in America seemed almost like child's play.

### **Coming to America**

In the spring of 1998, Kalin was awarded a small scholarship from Stockton College in New Jersey. Eager to get to the United States in advance of classes that would begin in September, Kalin joined a few friends who were headed for work with a summer camp in Maine. After discovering that his employer asked much and paid little, Kalin journeyed south:

*I left the camp because I had some disagreements with the boss; they were paying way too low . . . He treated us like we were white slave labor from Eastern Europe. I mean, we might be poor, but we are not slaves . . . I went to Atlantic City where I had a friend in the university where I was going to study accounting. We lived in a community of about 20 people from Bulgaria . . . So we found work pushing chairs on the boardwalk.*

Kalin graduated in 2001 with a degree in finance and accounting. Soon after, he appeared to have landed a job with a financial accounting firm. In a twist of fate, he instead found himself at a wedding in the Czech Republic, discussing the import/export business:

*A financial accounting firm almost hired me. They showed me the office, everything. They asked if I wanted to take the summer off before starting work like Americans usually do*

*when they finish school. But I said, I need some money here now. I stopped sending resumes, because I considered myself hired. I don't know what happened. I called them two weeks later to ask for advice on a place I could rent in their area, and they said, you know, we found somebody else. I said, why didn't you call me? I mean it was ridiculous. I was very upset.*

*Right after this I went to the Czech Republic. I have two cousins there and one was getting married. A dear friend of mine from Bulgaria had come over for this wedding, and on the day we would talk.... We started talking about exporting damaged European-made cars from America back to Europe. So he said, when you go back to the United States find out how we can transport these cars....*

Back in the States, it didn't take Kalin long to learn that the high transport fees would make it nearly impossible to build a profitable damaged-auto export business. His research, however, led him to the idea of importing feta cheese and selling it to fellow Bulgarians on the East Coast—a growing, tight-knit community that he knew was hungry for a taste of home (see Exhibit 1.1).

Having decided to forgo looking for a job in favor of building an enterprise from scratch, Kalin held onto a part-time job he had all through school as a breakfast waiter at a popular Greek restaurant along the boardwalk. In July 2001, Kalin took the ferry to New York to meet with a former school classmate whose father owned a high-profile Bulgarian winery:

*They own one of the best wineries in Bulgaria and have been in the import-export business a long time. They sell wine all over the world and have offices in Switzerland and England. So this guy told me, "Look, I am exporting cheese now from Bulgaria to Switzerland. If you are thinking about the cheese we can go ahead and do it."*

*He tells me it works like this. Everything is on the phone. You just call the producer and you order the cheese. You say this has to come here, this has to go there. You pay this guy this, you pay this guy that. You stay home on the phone. The container comes to you, somebody unloads it, and then you have to sell it. That's it.*

*Then he says, you know, you will have to buy a whole container of cheese; not just one pallet, and a shipping container is like a whole room full of cheese.... And so, I started thinking about the cheese.*

## Research and the Wine Guy

Kalin already knew that the style of cheese known as “feta” was invented in the Trakia peninsula in southern Bulgaria. The Bulgarians called their version “white cheese,” while the Greeks created a mystique by using the word “*feta*.” Although the Greeks were now trying to legally prevent other countries from using the term *feta*, most cheese connoisseurs agreed that by any name, the Bulgarian product—especially that made from sheep’s milk—was the best in the world. Kalin learned that wholesalers sold the cheese either vacuum-packed in various retail sizes or as loose portions stacked between sheets of special paper inside sealed tin buckets of salty brine.

During the summer of 2001, Kalin spent a good deal of his time searching through the vast resources of the U.S. Customs Department—both online and at their ground-floor offices in the World Trade Center complex in New York City. A young customs clerk, intrigued with Kalin’s enthusiastic quest for information, saved Kalin’s time and money by offering her help in sorting through the myriad of import regulations, restrictions, and fees associated with food imports.

**EXHIBIT 1.1 Bulgarian Immigration and U.S. Population**

<b>Immigration Period</b>	<b>Reason for Travel</b>	<b>Estimated Numbers</b>	<b>Characteristics</b>
1920–WWII	Work as temporary field and construction workers	10,000	Most stayed and were assimilated into the U.S. culture.
Post-WWII–1989	Asylum seekers escaping the communist regime	Minimal	During the Cold War, many qualified asylum candidates in the United States were regarded as potential spies.
Post-Communism	Tourism, education, work-visa lottery winners	The U.S. Bulgarian community is estimated at 300,000, with 60,000 in Chicago, 30,000 in New York, and 3,000 in the Boston area.	Ease of travel and established ethnic communities have diminished the need for temporary visitors to assimilate fully into the U.S. culture.

Data and analysis: Silvia Zaharinova, Babson College MBA '03

The 2000 United States Census listed 55,489 U.S. citizens of Bulgarian heritage. The states with the large Bulgarian-American communities included:

California - 7,845  
 Illinois - 6,000  
 New York- 5,937  
 Florida - 3,310  
 Ohio - 2,937

2000 Census Bulgarian-American population, by state:

Alabama 217	Louisiana 261	Ohio 2,937
Alaska 106	Maine 221	Oklahoma 429
Arizona 1,052	Maryland 1,160	Oregon 904
Arkansas 114	Massachusetts 1,140	Pennsylvania 1,469
California 7,845	Michigan 2,522	Rhode Island 144
Colorado 1,495	Minnesota 963	South Carolina 363
Connecticut 722	Mississippi 97	South Dakota 33
DC 207	Missouri 804	Tennessee 317
Delaware 113	Montana 245	Texas 2,140
Florida 3,310	Nebraska 161	Utah 434
Georgia 967	Nevada 1,014	Vermont 52
Hawaii 100	New Hampshire 118	Virginia 1,168
Idaho 288	New Jersey 1,511	Washington 2,248
Illinois 6,000	New Mexico 228	West Virginia 203
Indiana 1,053	New York 5,937	Wisconsin 766
Iowa 563	North Carolina 609	Wyoming 134
Kansas 237	North Dakota 142	
Kentucky 226		

Kalin had always assumed that he would be importing an excellent grade of cow's milk feta, since it was nearly as good as sheep's feta—and less than half the price. The clerk, however, pointed out that the U.S. government levied significant tariffs on imported dairy cow products as a way of protecting domestic producers. The best-quality sheep feta was duty-free and would therefore be a cheaper import.

All the while, Kalin continued to brainstorm with his Bulgarian winery contact about developing a business where Kalin would receive, sell, and distribute containers of cheese that were funded and exported by this well-heeled and experienced professional. Since a minimum shipment of about 28,000 pounds of cheese would cost \$40,000, Kalin figured that this arrangement would work well until he was able to save some money and gain more experience. After that, he imagined that he would make an offer to buy his partner out. He never got that chance. As the summer dragged on, Kalin began to suspect that this businessman was more style than substance:

*I was doing my research about the cheese: how we can sell this cheese and so on and so forth. But it took this guy with the wine very much time to finish everything. He said he had a producer, he had the connections, so all we had to do was to agree on what to order and send. But he kept saying he was busy with other things, so at some point I got fed up. I said, "Look, we have to do something. Time is going." The cheese business is seasonal since you can only milk the sheep from April to August. The rest of the year I don't know. A short time later I was disappointed to find out that he was not actually exporting cheese to Switzerland like he had said. He was only helping a friend do it. He didn't even know the price of the cheese.*

As Kalin began to press his would-be partner hard for substantive action, he got a warning call from his trusted friend who had been investigating the auto-export opportunity. Bulgarian newspapers were reporting that the father of Kalin's "wine guy" not only was millions of dollars in debt but also was about to be indicted on charges relating to a host of questionable business practices. Kalin acted fast:

*So I called the wine guy and said, "Look, why didn't you tell me you are in deep trouble?" He said, "I have nothing to do with the winery. We have sixteen other firms that do different kinds of things." He said they had a scheme where they can take the money out of the winery and put the cash in through other firms so they end up with the money in the end. He says they are fine, very fine. I mean no problem. So I said, "you are what your father is, and I don't buy any of this". And he said, "oh, you doubt me? I am a big business man, and you are nobody".*

With no savings and precious little knowledge of the import business, Kalin tried one last time to force the man into action:

*I gave him three options. First, you can pay for the whole container since you are a big business man, and I'm going to sell that cheese here and we are still in business together. Second option was a fifty-fifty split where I would raise half the money. Or third, I would cover his expenses up to that point.*

*I told him that all this money, this forty-thousand dollars, I have to raise from somewhere. I don't have it in my pocket. I just graduated school and I'm in debt already. He said, "Look, I am going to give you a chance. You pay for the first container as a test. If you can sell this container, this means that you are a good businessman. Anyway, for a second container you're*

*going to need the same amount of money because you have to overlap the containers. By January, if you sell everything I'm going to join in with the big money. Okay?"*

Not okay. Kalin hung up on him and began calling everyone he knew.

## The First Container

Kalin had been talking to people in his community about his import business for some time, so many of the calls he made were to friends who had expressed interest and encouragement. He explained that he needed to raise \$40,000 in cash, since, as many of his Bulgarian compatriots already understood, credit cards and bank drafts would not be accepted. Cash meant cash. Kalin described his pitch to raise money.

*All my friends were students, working hard—some working two jobs. They have money in the bank, but it is for tuition. I told them, look guys, together me and my girlfriend have over forty-thousand dollars as a line available on our credit cards. What we are going to do if this thing screws up is take cash from those cards—never mind about the big interest that they will charge us—and at least we are going to pay your tuitions with those credit cards. I mean, I never lied to anybody that I have money on the side, or that my father is rich or something.*

In one hour Kalin had exhausted his contacts and had raised six individual investments of \$5,000 each—all interest free. Still, he was \$10,000 shy of the cash he would need to order a shipment of cheese. Then he had an idea:

*I called up a friend of my family in Bulgaria. Tania was a businessperson for real. She operated one of the best restaurants in the second biggest city, and she was like an aunt to me. She said, "Okay, I am going to put ten grand into this." Now, I knew that I couldn't send all this money to the producer because I didn't know the producer. So I told Tania that all money goes through you, you pay him and make sure you see the things loaded on the container. She said fine.*

*On the fifteenth of August, my friends gave me the money—five days later I sent thirty-thousand dollars to Tania in Bulgaria. So she paid the guy: one-third when we placed the order, one-third when they began packaging our order, and the last third when they loaded it into the container. After the producer has his money, he forgets about you right away.*

## Lose Your Job? Buy a New Car

On the last morning of August, Kalin reported for his waitstaff job at the restaurant as usual, but discovered that he had been taken off the schedule. Earlier that summer, Kalin had mentioned his business idea to the owner of the establishment (a wealthy Greek gentleman who at the time was the largest landowner in Atlantic City) in the hope that the businessman might offer some helpful advice. He didn't, and when he learned that Kalin had gone ahead with ordering the cheese, he had him terminated because he was afraid that Kalin would

become distracted and unreliable. Kalin recalled that his initial anger at this latest curveball was almost immediately overtaken by a desire to hit a homerun:

*I had been working there nearly four years; I brought them so many Bulgarian customers and workers! I got so upset I wrote the Greek guy a letter. I said that he should have at least warned me. So he called me and says that his aunt is running the place and she had a bad moment and decided to take me off the schedule. He said it was okay, that I could come back. I said forget about it.*

*Then I said to myself, "Look, probably this is good, because I will never stop working at the restaurant because it is cash on the side." I was going to be importing-exporting, so I had to forget about that job as a waiter.*

*My car had just broken down, and my girlfriend and I were fed up with buying old cars that get broken all the time—with dealers and mechanics always screwing you and never fixing it right. Also, when you run a business, you have to have a decent car. So on the fourth of September we ended up buying a brand new Maxima—the perfect car. My container is at sea, and I buy a brand-new car.*

Having virtually no cash on hand, Kalin put the \$3,000 down payment for the Maxima on his credit card. With no further payments due for 45 days, Kalin was determined to make the most of this grace period. His first journey in the new car was to a large refrigerated warehouse 30 miles away in North Jersey, since he understood that they would need an established storage facility to accept delivery of his cheese after it cleared customs. Knowing also that these businesses typically would not work with startups or inexperienced clients, he wore a suit and tie. Dressing for success might have had some impact, but, he recalled, it was his new set of wheels that really made the difference:

*My car helped me to get the storage, because the owner, Tony, was from a rural area and he judged people by their cars. So I come there with a brand-new car. I am young—his age—and I had a better car than he did. He had some truck, and his sister—who owned the storage place with him—was driving a Nissan Sentra. And I drive up in a Maxima with almost no miles on it.*

*So I told him that I had started doing the cheese, and that it was a good business. He showed me the storage, and we started talking about the cheese. He was thinking we are big; he didn't know it was only me. Then he said look you're not dealing drugs, right? I said, come on now, I am not dealing drugs. He was thinking I am Russian.<sup>1</sup> I said no, I speak Russian very good, but I am not Russian, and we are not dealing drugs. After that he said he wanted us to go there. I told him the container was already on its way.*

Kalin contracted with a customs broker whose job it was to expedite the paperwork and procedures necessary for the cheese to clear customs. She explained to Kalin that since this was a first-time import, the container would likely be thoroughly checked before it was released. As nervous as an expectant father, Kalin made it clear to her that he wanted to be notified the moment the container passed customs so that he could be at the storage facility when it arrived. Then, on September 11, 2001, while Kalin's container of cheese was still somewhere

---

<sup>1</sup> In 2002, the Narcotics and Organized Crime Bureau of the New Jersey State Police indicated that political, economic, and social changes occurring in the former Soviet Union and Eastern Bloc countries had provided significant opportunities for Russian organized crime groups to expand their influence in and around the state. In April of that year, federal authorities announced a sweeping racketeering indictment against 10 suspected Russian émigré mobsters operating in Philadelphia and in Northern New Jersey. Sources: The New Jersey State Police, the U. S. Department of Justice, and *The Philadelphia Inquirer* (*Charges reveal new-look mob of Russian émigré*, April 26, 2002).

out in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean, terrorists flew a pair of passenger planes into the World Trade Center buildings in New York City.

## Welcomes to the Business

In the confusion following the attacks, Kalin's broker had been able to get his container released without delay. The bad news was that she never called to give Kalin the good news. On September 25th, Kalin got a heart-stopping call from Tony, the owner of the storage business. The container had been delivered to his facility, but when he opened it (to check for drugs), he discovered a smelly mess of leaking buckets of cheese. Kalin jumped in his Maxima for the long, nerve-racking drive. What he found when he got there was not good:

*The producer [in Bulgaria] had packed eighty square metal buckets—they weigh forty-four pounds apiece—one over another in eight rows. Now they are not using perfect metal because they want to keep the packaging cheap—and the salt kills the metal. You can imagine the bottom two rows; these big cans were cracked, and the white salty brine was all over the floor. It smelled, and Tony wanted to know what I was going to do about it. And I was thinking, on my god, what am I going to do now?*

Kalin rolled up his sleeves and went to work. Hours later he was relieved to find that less than 5% of the order had been damaged in transit. Once this tally—just under 1,000 pounds—was confirmed, Tony directed his workers to help Kalin toss the broken containers into the dumpster. Kalin took Tony aside:

*I asked him to allow me to repack this cheese. There was a lot of money there, and also, I was brought up that you can't throw away food. I told him that when I was young, I used to starve, and my father used to starve. You always ate everything on your plate. As an American person, Tony was thinking that because the insurance will pay, why bother repacking, just throw it out because you will get the money anyway. I was thinking that since it was insured in Bulgaria, there is no guarantee that I am going to get this two-thousand dollars. So I told him I can't throw the food away; I cannot afford to do that.*

Despite a state law prohibiting nonemployees from entering a transfer-warehouse facility, Kalin prevailed. He rushed home to recruit some friends to help him out, and to give the producer in Bulgaria a call:

*I called up the producer and said, how did you load this? I pay you for cheese that is supposed to be in a package good for sale, not for repack. Also, out of six different kinds of cheese just one of them was matching the invoice number. Most of them were less, some of them were more. This is ridiculous. I said, come on! I paid you everything; you send me less, and then we have damage because you arranged the cans like this. All he said was, "Welcomes to the business." Can you imagine this? But he did give me the recipe for brine—water, salt and lemon extract. With two friends helping, it took us a week to repack those broken cans piece by piece.*

## On the Road

Now that he had his inventory organized and secure, Kalin began to sell the quality cheese locally at very low prices. A short while later, he received some important advice from a Bulgarian feta producer:

*I was doing anything to sell, because I had to sell the cheese, but this guy from Bulgaria reminded me that the milking season was over for the year. He said that to be in this business, you have to sell the cheese slower, and at a higher price. If I sell at 5% margins, he said that you are going to end up getting no more merchandise from us.*

*So I said okay. I make a brochure, I rent a truck, and I went down to a Bulgarian church in [Washington] D. C. where people were getting together. A lot of friends were helping me because they spread out the word to the community, and I was delivering the cheese to people's houses with the truck—no matter the gas.*

Realizing that Bulgarian feta was prized throughout the Middle East and Eastern Europe, Kalin cruised the ethnic neighborhoods around D.C. in search of restaurants, delis, and grocery stores. Since his mobile method of distribution and sales seemed to invite a type of street-side haggling common in open-air marketplaces around the world, Kalin found himself struggling to maintain his pricing structure. At one stop, a Lebanese storekeeper drove a particularly hard bargain for a sizable bulk order. After Kalin had unloaded and packed the order neatly in the shop's cooler, he found the man wasn't finished haggling:

*He looks in his drawer, and he says, "You know, this price too much, I'm going to give you less, because you never called me, you never sent me samples, you never did anything. So come on, come on, I'm going to be buying only from you from now on." I got back in my truck after and I said I have to be out of my mind. I mean, if for the rest of my life I'm going to deal with people like this, I'm going to go mad.*

Worse than the constant haggling was the realization that while these retailers were selling his product for at least double their cost, Kalin sensed that the truck rental alone would eat up most of the 20% margins he was struggling to uphold. For all his hard work, he suddenly feared that he might even end up with less money than what he had started out with.

Desperate and determined, he started calling large-volume cheese buyers along the East Coast—intent on pre-selling some orders before he set out again. Kalin explained that it was in late October of 2001 when he had a major breakthrough:

*So, I call this one big company in Florida—I think they were importing from Greece—but the guy wanted to see the cheese. He asked me to UPS him one small round can. Oh my gosh, I thought. I immediately called a friend and told him that I sold all of my cheese. He said, really? You sold the cheese? I said no, but if I can send samples on the ground with UPS, then I knew that I am going to sell everything I have—through the mail and online.*

Kalin moved quickly. After UPS and Federal Express both assured him that they had no restrictions against shipping cheese products, he established a Website named *Malincho*—a playful Bulgarian nickname for a little boy. Then he set about to find a source of economical shipping containers:

*I didn't want to spend money on boxes, so I go to all my friends to see if they had recently bought a TV, a microwave, or had other boxes around. My first two orders I sent to a friend who works in a pizza place in Boston . . . I just put the can in the box—no cushion; nothing else. I figure this can is very tough so I'll just put the label on the box. I just dropped it at UPS, and it was perfect. My friend called and said the can got here—with no damage, thank you very much.*

Three weeks after Kalin mailed out that first package, a UPS representative paid a visit to the world headquarters of Malincho.com—the small apartment Kalin shared with his girlfriend and two other friends. Kalin explained to the young salesman that every few days he would fill up the Maxima at the cold storage facility and then store and ship the product on the back porch because it stayed cold out there. The rep—who had been sent there to open a business account with Malincho before their competitor FedEx moved in—seemed surprised and a bit amused by the meager surroundings. Confident that he would be wiping that smile off the lad's face soon enough, Kalin served up strong coffee and laughed right along with him.

## Credit Sales

By November, Kalin was driving customers to Malincho.com by word-of-mouth and with small advertisements in Bulgarian newspapers. He set up the site to accept major credit cards, but discovered that many of his fellow countrymen were reluctant to place orders online:

*The holidays were coming, and people were visiting online. But many of these Bulgarians had won the “green card lottery” and they came here not knowing English or anything about America. In Bulgaria there is a lot of credit-card fraud, and people had heard that some of the criminals were using Websites to get credit-card numbers. And they think that my site smells like I'm going to get their credit card and start charging for this and that. And if that happens, they think, “How am I going to dispute the charges if I can't even speak English?” So then, they don't buy.*

To overcome this obstacle, Kalin decided for a time to build his business on trust. Customers would receive a Malincho invoice with their delivered order, along with a note requesting prompt payment for the cheese plus shipping charges. Kalin carefully tracked his receivables and found that if it had not been for one woman in Ohio and a shopkeeper in New Hampshire, his bad debt account would have been zero. Many of his friends were shocked to learn that he was shipping orders, some of which totaled hundreds of dollars, on faith. Kalin was not as surprised, though, since Malincho.com was fast becoming an online community of people who literally spoke the same language; and back home, stiffing a vendor was a serious offense:

*My buyers were thinking: here is this Bulgarian guy importing cheese. He should be big, or if he's not big, he has somebody powerful behind him. And if I don't pay him, he can get to my relatives in Bulgaria and beat them up for the money.*

*So I figure, why pay over 2% to Visa or MasterCard when with this cash payment method customers appeared to be coming, and paying? And besides, it was helping me build the business.*

## Expansion

The early part of 2002 was a very busy time for Kalin, who was doing deals all over the board. In January he purchased several pallets of Lutenica, a Bulgarian condiment, from a woman in D.C. who had given up trying to sell off a container that she had imported a couple of years earlier. Kalin added the spread product to Malincho.com at a high markup, and when it sold very well, he rolled his cash on hand into a container of 20 pallets of other assorted dry-storage items like marmalade, roasted red peppers, and thin wafers. With the help of a \$5,000 sale from Florida and a similar sale to an import group in Chicago, by April, Kalin had nearly sold out his inventory of cheese.

As the weather warmed up, the Maxima—splattered throughout with cheese and brine—began to reek. Not wanting to degrade the car any further, and needing a larger transport vehicle anyway, Kalin took out his credit card once again to purchase a Chevy van.

The changing season also meant that the back porch of his apartment would no longer work as a refrigerated shipping area, but Kalin had not been able to convince Tony to rent Malincho refrigerated repacking space. After Kalin had placed an order for a third container—all cheese, like the first—he approached an established importer who was leasing a cold-room from Tony:

*This one French guy was renting one of the rooms but it was too big for him. So I suggested to the French guy that we split the room—and I would pay Tony extra money. I told him I didn't need much space; just enough so I can pack and ship. But Tony got very offended because to him it looked like I was trying to work out a side deal with the French guy. I said no, no, I am willing to pay you extra to do this so I can get my business going. He refused, and then he said, it's time for you to find another storage place.*

Out on the street with another 28,000 pounds of cheese chugging toward New York, Kalin went to see a Russian sausage maker in his neighborhood that he had heard had more refrigeration and dry-space than he was using. They came to an arrangement that Kalin explained was far from ideal:

*The Russian guy said, okay, you can use my place here for six-hundred a month—cash under the table—off the books. But that's it—no key, because, he said, look, I make sausages here; you can come here only when I am here. That's it, end of story. He doesn't know me, and I don't know him, and now I am going to put my product inside his place. I was thinking that once I get all my cheese in there, he could lock the door and say get off my property—I don't want to see you. Sometimes, though, you have no choice—you just have to make decisions on trust.*

Even with the shipping department moved off the back porch, the steadily increasing sales had begun to strain life in the small apartment. Kalin and his girlfriend soon moved to an apartment of their own—complete with enough space to run the business side of Malincho.

In advance of the summer months, Kalin set out to devise an insulated shipping container. After much research and running around, Kalin purchased a bulk order of boxes and pre-cut styrofoam inserts. Realizing that the sausage maker would never agree to accept numerous pallets of packaging materials, Kalin convinced the box seller to inventory the supplies. Kalin was pleasantly surprised to discover that once he switched from used appliance boxes to insulated containers with ice packs, sales spiked by more than enough to cover the added shipping costs.

By the fall of 2002, Kalin had negotiated volume-customer pricing with UPS and with his corrugated box supplier. He had also convinced his Bulgarian suppliers to properly shrink-wrap all of his orders onto pallets that conformed to U.S. standards for size and construction. Most importantly, those suppliers had agreed to help Kalin control his inventory flow by shipping mixed orders containing a variety of different products.

A reporter from *USA Today* called in the middle of the busy Christmas season. Kalin was at the sausage plant, and Vladimir—Malincho's self-taught (and volunteer) Webmaster who had studied accounting with Kalin back in Bulgaria—answered the phone in his native tongue. The reporter didn't call back, but he did visit Malincho.com (see Exhibit 1.2). Kalin recalled the thrill of having his young enterprise mentioned in the national press:

*People called me from Bulgaria because one newspaper in Bulgaria literally translates everything from USA Today. I couldn't imagine that we had been in business for just one year and a half and here we are being written up in that newspaper, Newsweek magazine did an article and quoted me, and then there was another article in a Bulgarian newspaper called Capital—that reporter didn't even call. He found us online. It was amazing.*

## Funding Challenges

Bolstered by press coverage and the strategic use of search-engine tags, Malincho continued to add customers to its core base of about 2,000 loyal regulars. Since many of those customers still were not willing or able to shop online, Kalin produced a simple inventory printout that was sent with each order.

By February of 2003, Kalin had his own key to the factory, and online sales of his landlord's sausages—listed under “Meat Products” on Malincho.com—were more than covering the rent for the shared space. Sales were averaging \$16,000 a month, inventory on hand was just under \$60,000, and the fifth and sixth containers were on their way. Kalin was packing and shipping more than 100 orders per week to customers who were now required to prepay by check or credit card.

All of this activity had ballooned his need for short-term capital, and although Kalin had paid back half of the people who had extended him funding for the first container, he had found it necessary to borrow more cash in order to keep his inventory current. Kalin summarized his financial situation:

*Right now I owe about forty-thousand to credit cards, and sixty-thousand to people. I also have a ten grand personal loan from Fleet Bank. A while back I went to them and said that I wanted to consolidate the debt on my credit cards. When they gave me money, I put it into the business. Now I want to consolidate for real this time, but the banks say I need three years' tax returns—I haven't been here that long. I figure I need about one-hundred grand to consolidate my debts, and another fifty-thousand dollars so that I can get my own place for storage and packing. Then I could hire people to work for me so we could grow faster.*

Kalin was in that enviable yet difficult point on the new venture curve where his growing business was too small to financially support even one full-time employee, but was large enough to require his every waking hour. He described a typical day:

*In the morning I'm taking orders, making labels, calling people, and playing big businessman. In the afternoon I am just a worker who has to check the orders and pack all the packages. It's not easy, but it's worth it. Physical labor is healthy labor. I am not ashamed of doing anything because it's what you have to do to grow.*

**EXHIBIT 1.2**

**Malincho.com -The #1 on-line Bulgarian Food Store, where**

**"We Bring You a Taste of Home!"**

**PRODUCTS**

**CART**

**SALE**

**SEARCH**

**DELIVERY**

**ABOUT US**

**CONTACT US**

**BOOKS**

**FORUM**

**SERVICES**

Bulgarian food products in stock:



[Bulgarian Sheep's Feta Cheese & Yellow Hard Table Cheese "Kashkaval"](#)



[Tomato & Pepper Vegetable Spreads "Lutenica"](#)



[Jams & Marmalades](#)



[Chocolates & Sweets](#)



[Meat Products](#)



[Our Specials](#)

© 2002 Malincho®  
International

[Bulgarian](#)

[English](#)

[Privacy Policy](#)

toll free: 1-866-203  
3525

## Not Going to Go Down

Kalin sealed up and labeled the last box for that day. Grabbing a chocolate-coated Mura wafer bar from inventory, he hopped up onto a pallet of Lutenica for a short break before heading home. Long days. Precarious finances. It was time to make some decisions as to how best to move forward.

Although Malincho.com had become his main source of sales, Kalin was weighing other options as well. Retail margins, for example, were so much higher than wholesale that he was considering opening a storefront location. Wholesaling, on the other hand, was a no-frills business model that worked well with Kalin's need to meet with a variety of key wholesalers, retailers, and suppliers. Although Kalin knew that getting better control over his finances was critical to the survival of his growing venture, he had discovered that it takes more than money to grow a business:

*I know that a small business can go down for three reasons. First, if you give up, that's it. You have to refuse to give up. The second big reason is the money. If you don't have the cash flow to pay your bills, you die. But the most important thing is you. Because if you believe in something, and you can find other people who believe in the same thing, you're going to be able to do it, no matter what.*

## Preparation Questions

1. Apply the Timmons entrepreneurship framework (entrepreneur-opportunity-resources) to analyze this case. Pay particular attention to Kalin's traits and how he gathered resources for his venture.
2. What business models are open to a food-product importer? What steps should Kalin take to position his company for the next phase of early-stage growth?
3. Imagine you are a potential investor and Kalin has just given you his rocket pitch. What are your concerns? Would you help him out?



Facebook Founder and CEO Mark Zuckerberg leaves his Palo Alto, CA office. (© News.com).

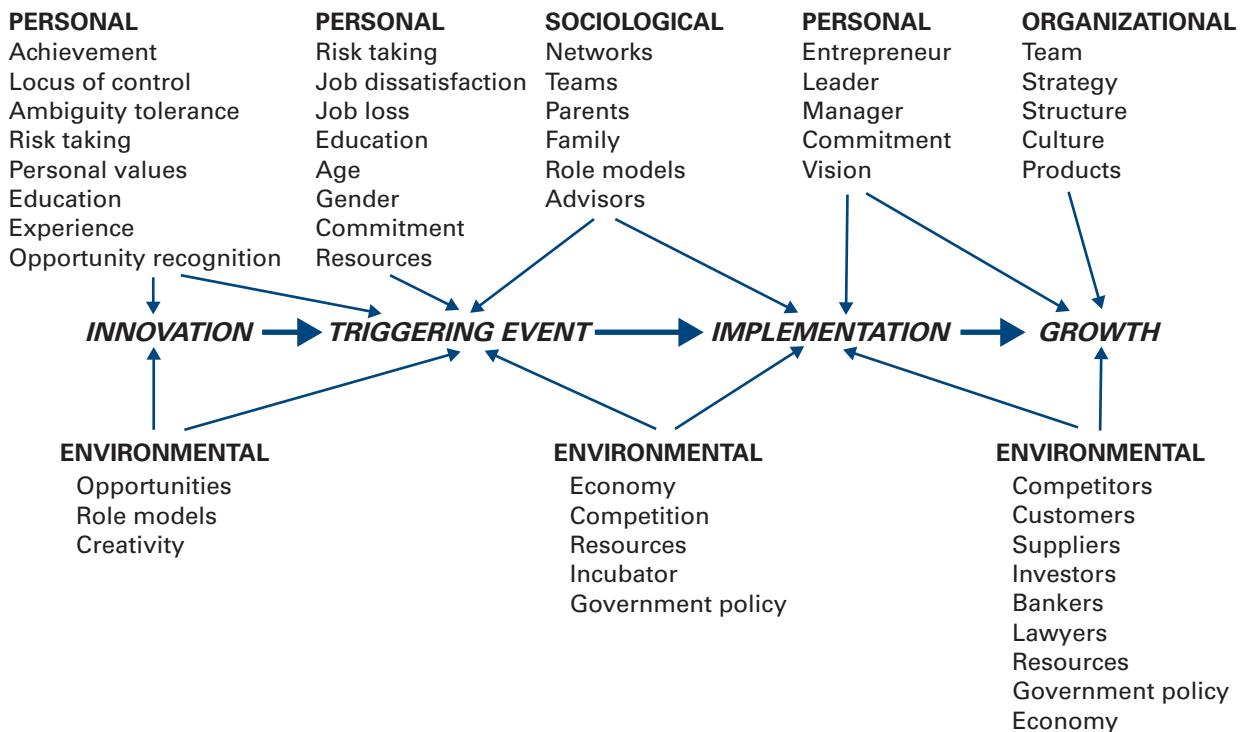
## THE ENTREPRENEURIAL PROCESS

An **entrepreneur** is someone who perceives an opportunity and creates an organization to pursue it. The **entrepreneurial process** includes all the functions, activities, and actions that are part of perceiving opportunities and creating organizations to pursue them. But is the birth of a new enterprise just happenstance and its subsequent success or failure a chance process? Or can the art and science of entrepreneurship be taught? Clearly, professors and their students believe that it can be taught and learned because entrepreneurship is one of the fastest growing new fields of study in American higher education. A study by the Kauffman Foundation in 2002 found that 61% of U.S. colleges and universities have at least one course in entrepreneurship.<sup>1</sup> It is possible to study entrepreneurship in certificate, associate's, bachelor's, master's, and PhD programs.

That transformation in higher education—itself a wonderful example of entrepreneurial change—has come about because a whole body of knowledge about entrepreneurship has developed during the past two decades or so. The process of creating a new business is well understood. Yes, entrepreneurship can be taught. No one is guaranteed to become a Bill Gates or a Donna Karan, any more than a physics professor can guarantee to produce an Albert Einstein or a tennis coach can guarantee a Venus Williams. But students with the aptitude to start a business can become better entrepreneurs.

► An entrepreneur is someone who perceives an opportunity and creates an organization to pursue it.

► The entrepreneurial process includes all the functions, activities, and actions that are part of perceiving opportunities and creating organizations to pursue them.



Source: Based on Carol Moore's Model.<sup>3</sup>

**Figure 2.1**

### A model of the entrepreneurial process

## Critical Factors for Starting a New Enterprise

We will begin by examining the entrepreneurial process (see Figure 2.1). These are the factors—personal, sociological, organizational, and environmental—that give birth to a new enterprise and influence how it develops from an idea to a viable enterprise. A person gets an idea for a new business through either a deliberate search or a chance encounter. Whether or not he or she decides to pursue that idea depends on factors such as alternative career prospects, family, friends, role models, the state of the economy, and the availability of resources.

### Origins of Home Depot

Bernie Marcus was president of the now-defunct Handy Dan home improvement chain, based in California, when he and Arthur Blank were abruptly fired by new management. That day and the months that followed were the most pivotal period in his career, he says. “I was 49 years old at the time and I was pretty devastated

by being fired. Still, I think it’s a question of believing in yourself. Soon after, we [Blank and Marcus] started to realize that this was our opportunity to start over,” says Marcus.

Marcus and Blank then happened upon a 120,000-square-foot store called Homeco, operating in Long Beach, California. The two instantly realized that the concept—an oversized store packed with

merchandise tagged with low prices—had a magical quality. They wanted to buy the business, but it was essentially bankrupt. Marcus and Blank talked Homeco

owner Pat Farah into joining them in Atlanta, and the trio, along with Ron Brill, began sketching the blueprint for Home Depot.<sup>2</sup>

There is almost always a *triggering event* that gives birth to a new organization. Perhaps the entrepreneur has no better career prospects. For example, Melanie Stevens was a high school dropout who, after working a number of minor jobs, had run out of career options. She decided that making canvas bags in her own tiny business was better than earning low wages working for someone else. Within a few years, she had built a chain of retail stores throughout Canada.

Sometimes the person has been passed over for a promotion or even laid off or fired. Howard Rose had been laid off four times as a result of mergers and consolidations in the pharmaceutical industry, and he had had enough of it. So he started his own drug packaging business, Waverly Pharmaceutical. Tim Waterstone founded Waterstone's bookstores after he was fired by W. H. Smith. Ann Gloag quit her nursing job and used her bus-driver father's \$40,000 severance pay to set up Stagecoach bus company with her brother, exploiting legislation deregulating the United Kingdom's bus industry. Jordan Rubin was debilitated by Crohn's disease when he invented a diet supplement that restored his health; he founded a company, Garden of Life, to sell that diet. Noreen Kenny was working for a semiconductor company and could not find a supplier to do precision mechanical work, so she launched her own company, Evolve Manufacturing Technologies, to fill that void. The Baby Einstein Company was started by Julie Aigner-Clark when she discovered that there were no age-appropriate products available to help her share her love of art, classical music, language, and poetry with her newborn daughter.

For some people, entrepreneurship is a deliberate career choice. Sandra Kurtzig was a software engineer with General Electric who wanted to start a family and work at home. She started ASK Computer Systems Inc., which became a \$400 million-a-year business.

Where do would-be entrepreneurs get their ideas? More often than not it is through their present line of employment or experience. A study of the *Inc. 500*—"America's [500] fastest growing companies"—found that 57% of the founders got the idea for their new venture in the industry they worked in and an additional 23% got it in a related industry. Hence, 80% of all new high-potential businesses are founded in industries that are the same as, or closely related to, the one in which the entrepreneur has previous experience. That is not surprising because it is in their present employment that entrepreneurs will get most of their viable business ideas. Some habitual entrepreneurs do it over and over again in the same industry. Joey Crugnale, himself an *Inc. 500* Hall of Famer and an *Inc.* Entrepreneur of the Year, became a partner in Steve's Ice Cream in his early 20s. He eventually took over Steve's Ice Cream and created a national franchise of some 26 units—and a new food niche, gourmet ice creams. In 1982, Crugnale started Bertucci's, where gourmet pizza was cooked in wood-fired brick ovens, and built it into a nationwide chain of 90 restaurants. Then he founded Naked Restaurants as an incubator to launch his innovative dining concepts. The first one, the Naked Fish, opened in 1999 and brought his wood-fired grill approach to a new niche: fresh fish and meats with a touch of Cubanismo.

Others start businesses over and over again in related industries. In 1981, James Clark, then a Stanford University computer science professor, founded Silicon Graphics, a computer manufacturer with 1996 sales of \$3 billion. In April 1994, he teamed up with Marc Andreessen to found Netscape Communications. Within 12 months, its browser software, Navigator, dominated the Internet's World Wide Web (WWW or Web). When Netscape went public in August 1995, Clark became the first Internet billionaire. Then in June 1996, Clark launched another company, Healtheon (subsequently merged with WebMD), to enable

doctors, insurers, and patients to exchange data and do business over the Internet with software incorporating Netscape's Navigator.

Much rarer is the serial entrepreneur such as Wayne Huizenga, who ventures into unrelated industries: first in garbage disposal with Waste Management, next in entertainment with Blockbuster Video, then in automobile sales with AutoNation. Along the way, he was the original owner of the Florida Marlins baseball team, which won the World Series in 1997.

What factors influence someone to embark on an entrepreneurial career? Like most human behavior, entrepreneurial traits are shaped by *personal attributes* and *environment*.

## Personal Attributes

Twenty-five years ago, at the start of the entrepreneurial 1980s, there was a spate of magazine and newspaper articles that were entitled “Do you have the right stuff to be an entrepreneur?” or words to that effect. The articles described the most important characteristics of entrepreneurs and, more often than not, included a self-evaluation exercise to enable readers to determine if they had the right stuff. Those articles were based on flimsy behavioral research into the differences between entrepreneurs and nonentrepreneurs. The basis for those exercises was the belief, first developed by David McClelland in his book *The Achieving Society*, that entrepreneurs had a *higher need for achievement* than nonentrepreneurs and that they were moderate risk takers. One engineer almost abandoned his entrepreneurial ambitions after completing one of those exercises. He asked his professor at the start of an MBA entrepreneurship course if he should take the class because he had scored very low on an entrepreneurship test in a magazine. He took the course, however, and wrote an award-winning plan for a business that was a success from the very beginning.

There is no neat set of behavioral attributes that allows us to separate entrepreneurs from nonentrepreneurs. A person who rises to the top of any occupation, whether an entrepreneur or an administrator, is an achiever. Granted, any would-be entrepreneur must have a need to achieve, but so must anyone else with ambitions to be successful.

It does appear that entrepreneurs have a *higher internal locus of control* than nonentrepreneurs, which means that they have a stronger desire to be in control of their own fate.<sup>4</sup> This has been confirmed by many surveys in which entrepreneurs said independence was a very important reason for starting their businesses. The main reasons they gave were independence, financial success, self-realization, recognition, innovation, and roles (to continue a family tradition, to follow the example of an admired person, to be respected by friends). Men rated financial success and innovation higher than women did. Interestingly, the reasons that nascent entrepreneurs gave for starting a business were similar to the reasons given by nonentrepreneurs for choosing jobs.<sup>5</sup>

The most important characteristics of successful entrepreneurs are shown in Figure 2.2.

## Environmental Factors

Perhaps as important as personal attributes are the external influences on a would-be entrepreneur. It's no accident that some parts of the world are more entrepreneurial than others. The most famous region of high-tech entrepreneurship is Silicon Valley. Because everyone in Silicon Valley knows someone who has made it big as an entrepreneur, role models abound. This situation produces what Stanford University sociologist Everett Rogers called “Silicon Valley fever.”<sup>6</sup> It seems as if everyone in the valley catches that bug sooner or later and wants to start a business. To facilitate the process, there are venture capitalists who understand how to select and nurture high-tech entrepreneurs, bankers who specialize in lending to them, lawyers who understand the importance of intellectual property and how to protect it, landlords who are experienced in renting real estate to fledgling companies, suppliers who are willing to sell goods on credit to companies with no credit history, and even politicians who are supportive.

Dream	Entrepreneurs have a vision of what the future could be like for them and their businesses. And, more important, they have the ability to implement their dreams.
Decisiveness	They don't procrastinate. They make decisions swiftly. Their swiftness is a key factor in their success.
Doers	Once they decide on a course of action, they implement it as quickly as possible.
Determination	They implement their ventures with total commitment. They seldom give up, even when confronted by obstacles that seem insurmountable.
Dedication	They are totally dedicated to their businesses, sometimes at considerable cost to their relationships with friends and families. They work tirelessly. Twelve-hour days and seven-day workweeks are not uncommon when an entrepreneur is striving to get a business off the ground.
Devotion	Entrepreneurs love what they do. It is that love that sustains them when the going gets tough. And it is love of their product or service that makes them so effective at selling it.
Details	It is said that the devil resides in the details. That is never more true than in starting and growing a business. The entrepreneur must be on top of the critical details.
Destiny	They want to be in charge of their own destiny rather than dependent on an employer.
Dollars	Getting rich is not the prime motivator of entrepreneurs. Money is more a measure of success. Entrepreneurs assume that if they are successful they will be rewarded.
Distribute	Entrepreneurs distribute the ownership of their businesses with key employees who are critical to the success of the business.

**Figure 2.2**

### The 10 Ds—The most important characteristics of a successful entrepreneur

Knowing successful entrepreneurs at work or in your personal life makes becoming one yourself seem much more achievable. Indeed, if a close relative is an entrepreneur, you are more likely to want to become an entrepreneur yourself, especially if that relative is your mother or father. At Babson College, more than half of the undergraduates studying entrepreneurship come from families that own businesses, and half of the *Inc.* 500 entrepreneurs in 2005 had a parent who was an entrepreneur.<sup>7</sup> But you don't have to be from a business-owning family to become an entrepreneur. Bill Gates, for example, was following the family tradition of becoming a lawyer when he dropped out of Harvard and founded Microsoft. He was in the fledgling microcomputer industry, which was being built by entrepreneurs, so he had plenty of role models among his friends and acquaintances. The United States has an abundance of high-tech entrepreneurs who are household names. One of them, Ross Perot, is so well known that he was the presidential candidate preferred by one in five American voters in 1992. Some universities are hotbeds of entrepreneurship. For example, Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) has produced numerous entrepreneurs among its faculty and alums. Companies with an MIT connection transformed the Massachusetts economy from one based on decaying shoe and textile industries into one based on high technology.

*According to [a 2009 MIT] study, "Entrepreneurial Impact: The Role of MIT," which analyzes the economic effect of MIT alumni-founded companies and its entrepreneurial ecosystem, if the active companies founded by MIT graduates formed an independent nation, their revenues would make that nation at least the 17th-largest economy in the world....*

*The overall MIT entrepreneurial environment, consisting of multiple education, research and social network institutions, contributes to this outstanding and growing entrepreneurial output. Highlights of the findings include:*

*An estimated 6,900 MIT alumni companies with worldwide sales of approximately \$164 billion are located in Massachusetts alone and represent 26 percent of the sales of all Massachusetts companies.*

*4,100 MIT alumni-founded firms are based in California, and generate an estimated \$134 billion in worldwide sales.*

*States currently benefiting most from jobs created by MIT alumni companies are Massachusetts (estimated at just under one million jobs), California (estimated at 526,000 jobs), New York (estimated at 231,000 jobs), Texas (estimated at 184,000) and Virginia (estimated at 136,000).<sup>8</sup>*

It is not only in high tech that we see role models. Consider these examples:

- It has been estimated that half of all the convenience stores in New York City are owned by Koreans.
- It was the visibility of successful role models that spread catfish farming in the Mississippi Delta as a more profitable alternative to cotton.
- The Pacific Northwest has more microbreweries than any other region of the United States.
- Hay-on-Wye—a tiny town in Wales with 1,500 inhabitants—has 39 secondhand bookstores. It claims to be the “largest used and antiquarian bookshop in the world.” It all began in 1961 when Richard Booth, an Oxford graduate, opened his first bookstore.

African Americans make up 12% of the U.S. population but owned only 4% of the nation’s businesses in 1997.<sup>9</sup> One of the major reasons for that low number is the lack of entrepreneurial role models. A similar problem exists among Native Americans. Fortunately, this situation is rapidly improving. Between the 1992 and 1997 censuses, the number of minority-owned businesses grew more than four times as fast as U.S. firms overall, increasing from 2.1 million to about 2.8 million firms.<sup>10</sup> According to the 2002 census, Hispanics/Latinos owned 6.9% of the nation’s businesses, African Americans owned 5.2%, Asian Americans owned 4.8%, and American Indians and Alaskan Natives owned 0.9%.<sup>11</sup>

## Other Sociological Factors

Besides role models, entrepreneurs are influenced by other sociological factors. *Family responsibilities* play an important role in the decision to start a company. It is a relatively easy career decision to start a business when you are 25 years old, single, and without many personal assets and dependents. It is a much harder decision when you are 45 and married, with teenage children preparing to go to college, a hefty mortgage, car payments, and a secure, well-paying job. A 1992 survey of European high-potential entrepreneurs, for instance, found that on average they had 50% of their net worth at risk because it was tied up in their businesses. And at 45+, if you fail as an entrepreneur, it will not be easy to rebuild a career working for another company. But despite the risks, plenty of 45-year-olds are taking the plunge; in fact, the median age of the CEOs of the 500 fastest-growing small companies, the *Inc. 500*, in 2009 was 41,<sup>12</sup> and the median age of their companies was six years.<sup>13</sup>

Another factor that determines the age at which entrepreneurs start businesses is the trade-off between the *experience* that comes with age and the *optimism* and *energy* of youth.

As you grow older you gain experience, but sometimes when you have been in an industry a long time, you know so many pitfalls that you are pessimistic about the chance of succeeding if you decide to go out on your own. Someone who has just enough experience to feel confident as a manager is more likely to feel optimistic about an entrepreneurial career. Perhaps the ideal combination is a beginner's mind with the experience of an industry veteran. A beginner's mind looks at situations from a new perspective, with a can-do spirit.

Twenty-seven-year-old Robert Swanson was a complete novice at biotechnology but was convinced that it had great commercial potential. His enthusiasm combined with Professor Herbert Boyer's unsurpassed knowledge about the use of recombinant DNA to produce human protein. The two just assumed that Boyer's laboratory bench work could be scaled up to industrial levels. Looking back, Boyer said, "I think we were so naïve, we never thought it couldn't be done." Together they succeeded and started a new industry.

Marc Andreessen had a beginner's mind in 1993 when, as a student and part-time assistant at the National Center for Supercomputing Applications at the University of Illinois, he developed the Mosaic browser and produced a vision for the Internet that until then had eluded many computer industry veterans, including Bill Gates. When Andreessen's youthful creativity was joined with James Clark's entrepreneurial wisdom, earned over a dozen years as founder and chairman of Silicon Graphics, it turned out to be an awesome combination. Their company, Netscape, distributed 38 million copies of Navigator in just two years, making it the most successful new software introduction ever.

Before leaving secure, well-paying, satisfying jobs, would-be entrepreneurs should make a *careful estimate of how much sales revenue* their new businesses must generate before they will be able to match the income they presently earn. It usually comes as quite a shock when they realize that, if they are opening a retail establishment, they will need annual sales revenue of at least \$600,000 to pay themselves a salary of \$70,000 plus fringe benefits such as health care coverage, retirement pension benefits, and long-term disability insurance. Six hundred thousand dollars a year is about \$12,000 per week, or about \$2,000 per day, or about \$200 per hour, or about \$3 per minute if they are open 6 days a week, 10 hours a day. Also, they will be working much longer hours and bearing much more responsibility if they become self-employed. A sure way to test the strength of a marriage is to start a company that is the sole means of support for your family. For example, 22.5% of the CEOs of the *Inc. 500* got divorced while growing their businesses. On a brighter note, 59.2% got married, and 18.3% of divorced CEOs remarried.<sup>14</sup>

When they actually start a business, entrepreneurs need a host of *contacts*, including customers, suppliers, investors, bankers, accountants, and lawyers. So it is important to understand where to find help before embarking on a new venture. A network of friends and business associates can be of immeasurable help in building the contacts an entrepreneur will need. They can also provide human contact, which is important because opening a business can be a lonely experience for anyone who has worked in an organization with many fellow employees.

Fortunately, today there are more organizations than ever before to help fledgling entrepreneurs. Often that help is free or costs very little. The Small Business Administration (SBA) has Small Business Development Centers in every state, it funds Small Business Institutes, and its Service Core of Retired Executives provides free assistance to entrepreneurs. Many colleges and universities also provide help. Some are particularly good at writing business plans, usually at no charge to the entrepreneur. There are hundreds of incubators in the United States where fledgling businesses can rent space, usually at a very reasonable price, and spread some of their overhead by sharing facilities such as copying machines, secretarial help, answering services, and so on. Incubators are often associated with universities, which provide free or inexpensive counseling. There are numerous associations where entrepreneurs can meet and exchange ideas.

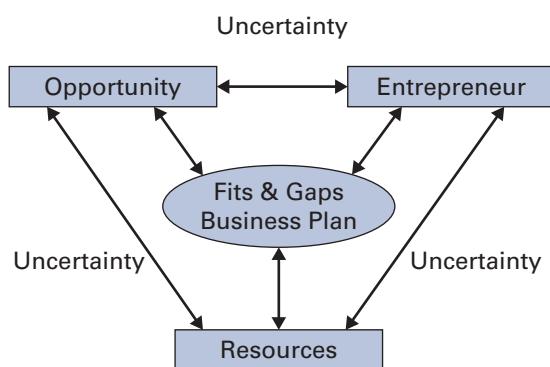
## Evaluating Opportunities for New Businesses

Let's assume you believe that you have found a great opportunity for starting a new business. How should you evaluate its prospects? Or, perhaps more importantly, how will an independent person such as a potential investor or a banker rate your chances of success? The odds of succeeding appear to be stacked against you because, according to small business folklore, only 1 business in 10 will ever reach its 10th birthday. This doesn't mean that 90% of the estimated 3 million businesses that are started every year go bankrupt.<sup>15</sup> We know that even in a severe recession, the number of businesses filing for bankruptcy in the United States has never surpassed 100,000 in any year. In an average year, the number is about 35,000. Even in 2008, when small businesses were hit hard by a severe recession, the number of bankruptcies was less than 45,000.<sup>16</sup> So what happens to the vast majority of the ones that do not survive 10 years? Most just fade away: They are started as part-time pursuits and are never intended to become full-time businesses. Some are sold. Others are liquidated. Only 700,000 of the 3 million are legally registered as corporations or partnerships—a sure sign that many of the remaining 2.3 million never intended to grow because, in general, an entrepreneur will go to the bother and expense of registering a new venture as a separate legal entity only if it is expected to become a full-time business with employees. Hence, the odds that your new business will survive may not be as long as they first appeared to be. If you intend to start a full-time, incorporated business, the odds that the business will survive at least eight years with you as the owner are better than one in four, and the odds of its surviving at least eight years with a new owner are another one in four. So the eight-year survival rate for incorporated startups is about 50%.<sup>17</sup>

But survival may not spell success. Too many entrepreneurs find that they can neither earn a satisfactory living in their businesses nor get out of them easily because they have too much of their personal assets tied up in them. The happiest day in an entrepreneur's life is the day doors are opened for business. For unsuccessful entrepreneurs, an even happier day may be the day the business is sold—especially if most personal assets remain intact. What George Bernard Shaw said about a love affair is also apt for a business: Any fool can start one, but it takes a genius to end one successfully.

How can you stack the odds in your favor so that your new business is a success? Professional investors, such as venture capitalists, have a talent for picking winners. True, they also pick losers, but a startup company funded by venture capital has, on average, a four-in-five chance of surviving five years—better odds than for the population of startup companies as a whole. Very few businesses—perhaps no more than one in a thousand—will ever be suitable candidates for investments from professional venture capitalists. But would-be entrepreneurs can learn a lot by following the evaluation process used by professional investors.

There are three crucial components for a successful new business: the opportunity, the entrepreneur (and the management team, if it's a high-potential venture), and the resources needed to start the company and make it grow. These are shown schematically in Figure 2.3 in the basic Timmons framework. At the center of the framework is a business plan, the result of integrating the three basic ingredients into a complete strategic plan for the new business. The parts must fit together well. It's no good having a first-rate idea for a new business if you have a second-rate management team. Nor are ideas and management any good without the appropriate resources.



**Figure 2.3**

**Three driving forces (Based on Jeffry Timmons' framework)<sup>18</sup>**

The crucial driving force of any new venture is the lead entrepreneur and the funding management team. Georges Doriot, the founder of modern venture capital, used to say something like this: “Always consider investing in a grade-A man with a grade-B idea. Never invest in a grade-B man with a grade-A idea.” He knew what he was talking about. Over the years he invested in about 150 companies, including Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC), and watched over them as they struggled to grow. But Doriot made his statement about business in the 1950s and 1960s. During that period, there were far fewer startups; U.S. firms dominated the marketplace, markets were growing quickly, there was almost no competition from overseas, and most entrepreneurs were male. Today, in the global marketplace, with ever-shortening product life cycles and low growth or even no growth for some of the world’s leading industrial nations, *the crucial ingredients for entrepreneurial success are a superb entrepreneur with a first-rate management team and an excellent market opportunity.*

It’s often said that entrepreneurship is largely a matter of luck. That’s not so. We do not say that becoming a great quarterback, a great scientist, or a great musician is a matter of luck. There is no more luck in becoming successful at entrepreneurship than in becoming successful at anything else. In entrepreneurship, it is a question of recognizing a good opportunity when you see one and having the skills to convert that opportunity into a thriving business. To do that, you must be prepared. So in entrepreneurship, as in any other profession, *luck is where preparation and opportunity meet.*

In 1982, when Rod Canion proposed to start Compaq to make personal computers, there were already formidable established competitors, including IBM and Apple, and literally hundreds of companies were considering entering the market or had already done so. Despite the competition, Ben Rosen of the venture capital firm Sevin Rosen Management Company invested in Compaq. Started initially to make transportable PCs, Compaq quickly added a complete range of high-performance PCs and grew so fast that it soon broke Apple’s record for the fastest time from founding to listing on the *Fortune 500*.

What did Ben Rosen see in the Compaq proposal that made it stand out from all the other personal computer startups? The difference was Rod Canion and his team. Rod Canion had earned a reputation as an excellent manager at Texas Instruments. Furthermore, the market for personal computers topped \$5 billion and was growing at a torrid pace. So Rosen had found a superb team with a product targeted at an undeveloped niche, transportable PCs, in a large market that was growing explosively. By 1994, Compaq was the leading PC manufacturer with 13% of the market.

## The Opportunity

Perhaps the biggest misconception about an idea for a new business is that it must be unique. Too many would-be entrepreneurs are almost obsessed with finding a unique idea. Then, when they believe they have it, they are haunted by the thought that someone is just waiting to steal it from them. So they become super-secretive, reluctant to discuss it with anyone who doesn’t sign a nondisclosure agreement. That makes it almost impossible to evaluate the idea, and many counselors who provide free advice to entrepreneurs refuse to sign nondisclosure agreements. Generally speaking, these super-secret, unique ideas are big letdowns when the entrepreneurs reveal them. Some notable recent examples were “drive-through pizza by the slice,” “a combination toothbrush and toothpaste gadget,” and “a Mexican restaurant in Boston.” One computer programmer said he had a fantastic new piece of software for managing hairdressing salons. He was completely floored when he found that less than a month previously another entrepreneur had demonstrated a software package for exactly the same purpose. Another entrepreneur had an idea for fluoride-impregnated dental floss. Not three months later, the identical product turned out to be available in Boots—Britain’s largest chain of drug stores and a major pharmaceutical manufacturer.

► The crucial ingredients for entrepreneurial success are a superb entrepreneur with a first-rate management team and an excellent market opportunity.

► In entrepreneurship, as in any other profession, luck is where preparation and opportunity meet.

Almost any idea a would-be entrepreneur might have will also have occurred to others. In fact, some of the most revolutionary thoughts in the history of humankind occurred to more than one person almost simultaneously. Newton and Leibnitz independently invented calculus within a few years of each other; Darwin was almost preempted by Wallace in publishing his theory of evolution; Poincaré formulated a valid theory of relativity about the same time Einstein did; and the integrated circuit was invented in 1959, first by Jack Kilby at Texas Instruments and then independently by Robert Noyce at Fairchild a few months later.

So the idea in itself is not what is important. In entrepreneurship, ideas really are a dime a dozen. Developing the idea, implementing it, and building a successful business are the important things. Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin by chance but never developed it as a useful drug. About 10 years later Ernst Chain and Howard Florey unearthed Fleming's mold and immediately saw its potential. They soon were treating patients in England with it, and before the end of World War II, penicillin was saving countless lives. It was a most dramatic pharmaceutical advance and heralded a revolution in that industry.

According to the late Stanford Professor Rajeev Motwani, who mentored Sergey Brin and Larry Page, "At some point these guys said, we want to do a company. Everybody said you must be out of your minds. There are like 37 search engines out there and what are you guys going to do? And how are you going to raise money, how will you build a company, and these two guys said, we'll just do it and they went off and did it. And then they took over the world."<sup>19</sup>

## The Customer

Many would-be entrepreneurs fail to think carefully enough about who makes up the market for their product or service. They should have a very specific answer to this question: "Can you give me the names of prospective customers?" If they have a consumer product—let's say it's a new shampoo—they should be able to name the buyers at different chains of drug stores in their area. If they are unable to name several customers immediately, they simply have an idea, not a market. There is no market unless customers have a real need for the product—a proven need rather than a hypothetical need in the mind of a would-be entrepreneur. A few rare cases may be revolutionary new products with markets waiting to be formed, but most entrepreneurial ideas are for existing products with improved performance, price, distribution, quality, or service. Simply put, customers must perceive that the new business will be giving them better value for their money than existing businesses.

## The Timing

Time plays a crucial role in many potential opportunities. In some emerging industries, there is a definite window of opportunity that opens only once. For instance, about 35 years ago, when videocassette recorders (VCRs) were first coming into household use in the United States, there was a need for video stores in convenient locations where viewers could pick up movies on the way home from work. Lots of video retail stores opened up on main streets and in shopping centers. They were usually run by independent store owners. Then the distribution of videos changed. National chains of video stores emerged. Supermarket and drug store chains entered the market. Then the technology changed, and VCR cassettes were replaced by digital video discs (DVDs), which are much less bulky. You can get DVDs via postal mail, download them via the Internet, or pick them up at vending machines and conventional video stores. Today the window of opportunity for starting an independent video store is closed.

In other markets—high-quality restaurants, for example—there is a steady demand that does not change much from year to year, so the window of opportunity is always open. Nevertheless, timing can still be important because, when the economy turns down, those kinds of restaurants are usually hit harder than lower-quality ones; thus, the time to open one is during a recovering or booming economy.

If the window of opportunity appears to be very brief, it may be that the idea is a consumer fad that will quickly pass away. It takes a very skilled entrepreneur indeed to make money out

► The idea in itself is not what is important. In entrepreneurship, ideas really are a dime a dozen. Developing the idea, implementing it, and building a successful business are the important things.

► Would-be entrepreneurs who are unable to name a customer are not ready to start a business. They have found an idea but have not yet identified a market need.

of a fad. When Lucy's Have a Heart Canvas of Faneuil Hall Marketplace in Boston introduced shoelaces with hearts on them, they flew off the shelves. Children and teenagers could not get enough of them for their sneakers. The store ordered more and more of them. Then demand suddenly dropped precipitously. The store and the manufacturer were left holding huge inventories that could not be sold. As a result, the store almost went under.

## ***Slimming Fad Fades Fast, Inventories Balloon***

The late Dr. Robert C. Atkins built a business around the low-carbohydrate, high-protein diet that bears his name. The 1992 and 1999 editions of his book *Dr. Atkins' New Diet Revolution* sold more than 10 million copies worldwide. The book is among of the top 50 best-selling books ever published and was on *The New York Times* best-seller list for five years. Atkins' company, Atkins Nutritionals, Inc., expanded into 250 food products (nutrition bars, shakes, bake mixes, breads) and nearly 100 nutritional supplements (antioxidants, essential oils) in more than 30,000 outlets. Sales ramped up rapidly at the beginning of the 2000s. Demand was boosted in 2003 by a widely publicized article in the May edition of the influential *New England Journal of Medicine*, reporting that subjects on a low-carb, high-protein diet not only lost weight but also—and perhaps more importantly—had an increase in good

cholesterol levels and a decrease in triglycerides, which was contrary to expectations. In October 2003, Goldman Sachs & Company and Boston-based Parthenon Capital LLC bought a majority stake in the firm for an estimated \$700 million.

At the peak of the low-carb "get-thin-quick" craze in January 2004, 9.1% of the U.S. population claimed to be on the diet. There were 16 national distributors of low-carb products. National supermarkets introduced low-carb products. Food manufacturers rushed to promote low-carbohydrate products. The diet was so popular that it was partially blamed for the bankruptcy of Interstate Bakeries, the producer of Twinkies and Wonderbread. Then the fad faded fast. By 2005, only 2.2% of Americans were on low-carb diets. The fall was so precipitous that manufacturers were caught with bloated inventories. Surplus low-carb products were being shipped to Appalachian food banks. For the year ended 2004, Atkins Nutritionals lost \$341 million. In August 2005, it filed for Chapter 11 with liabilities of \$325 million.

Most entrepreneurs should avoid fads or any window of opportunity they believe will be open for a very brief time because it inevitably means they will rush to open their business, sometimes before they have time to gather the resources they will need. That can lead to costly mistakes.

## **The Entrepreneur and the Management Team**

Regardless of how right the opportunity may seem to be, it will not become a successful business unless it is developed by a person with strong entrepreneurial and management skills. What are the important skills?

First and foremost, entrepreneurs should have experience in the same industry or a similar one. Starting a business is a very demanding undertaking indeed. It is no time for on-the-job training. If would-be entrepreneurs do not have the right experience, they should either get it before starting their new venture or find partners who have it.

Some investors say the ideal entrepreneur is one who has a track record as a successful entrepreneur in the same industry and who can attract a seasoned team. Half the CEOs of the *Inc. 500* high-growth small companies had started at least one other business before they founded their present firms. When Joey Crugnale acquired his first ice cream shop in 1977, he already had almost 10 years in the food service industry. By 1991, when Bertucci's brick-oven pizzeria went public, he and his management team had a total of more than 100 years' experience in the food industry. They had built Bertucci's into a rapidly growing chain with sales of \$30 million and net income of \$2 million.

Without relevant experience, the odds are stacked against the neophyte in any industry. An electronics engineer thought he had a great idea for a chain of fast-food stores. When asked if he had ever worked in a fast-food restaurant, he replied, “Work in one? I wouldn’t even eat in one. I can’t stand fast food!” Clearly, he would have been as miscast as a fast-food entrepreneur as Crugnale would have been as an electronics engineer.

True, there are entrepreneurs who have succeeded spectacularly with no prior industry experience. Jeff Bezos of Amazon.com, Anita Roddick of The Body Shop, and Ely Callaway of Callaway Golf are three notable examples. But they are the exceptions.

Second to industry know-how is *management experience*, preferably with responsibility for budgets or, better yet, accountability for profit and loss. It is even better if a would-be entrepreneur has a record of increasing sales and profits. Of course, we are talking about the *ideal* entrepreneur. Very few people measure up to the ideal. That does not mean they should not start a new venture. But it does mean they should be realistic about the size of the business they should start. Eighteen years ago, two 19-year-old students wanted to start a travel agency business in Boston. When asked what they knew about the industry, one replied, “I live in California. I love to travel.” The other was silent. Neither of them had worked in the travel industry, nor had anyone in either of their families. They were advised to get experience. One joined a training program for airline ticket agents; the other took a course for travel agents. They became friends with the owner of a local Uniglobe travel agency who helped them with advice. Six months after they first had the idea, they opened a part-time campus travel agency. In the first six months, they had about \$100,000 of revenue and made \$6,000 of profit but were unable to pay themselves any salary. In that way, they acquired experience at no expense and at low risk. Upon graduation, one of them, Mario Ricciardelli, made it his full-time job and continued building the business and gaining experience at the same time. In 2009, after many bumps in the road, the business—now named Studentcity.com—is one of the largest student travel businesses in the world.

## Resources

- Entrepreneurial frugality requires
  - ▣ Low overhead,
  - ▣ High productivity, and
  - ▣ Minimal ownership of capital assets.

It's hard to believe that Olsen and Anderson started DEC with only \$70,000 of startup capital and built a company that at its peak ranked in the top 25 of the *Fortune* 500 companies. “The nice thing about \$70,000 is that there are so few of them, you can watch every one,” Olsen said. And watch them he did. Olsen and Anderson moved into a 100-year-old building that had been a 19th century woolen mill. They furnished it with secondhand furniture, purchased tools from the Sears catalog, and built much of their own equipment as cheaply as possible. They sold \$94,000 worth of goods in their first year and made a profit at the same time—a very rare feat indeed for a high-tech startup.

Successful entrepreneurs are frugal with their scarce resources. They keep overheads low, productivity high, and ownership of capital assets to a minimum. By so doing, they minimize the amount of capital they need to start their business and make it grow.

# Determining Resource Needs and Acquiring Resources

---

In order to determine the amount of capital that a company needs to get started, an entrepreneur should first assess what resources are crucial for the company's success in the marketplace. Some resources are more critical than others. What does the company expect to do better than any of its competitors? That is where it should put a disproportionate share of its very scarce resources. If the company is making a new high-tech product, technological know-how will be vital, and the most important resource will be engineers and the designs

they produce. Therefore, the company must concentrate on recruiting and keeping excellent engineers and on safeguarding the intellectual property they produce, such as engineering designs and patents. If the company is doing retail selling, the critical factor will most likely be location. Choosing the wrong initial location for a retail store just because the rent is cheap can be a fatal mistake because it's unlikely there will be enough resources to relocate.

When Southwest Airlines started up in 1971, its strategy was to provide frequent, on-time service at a competitive price between Dallas, Houston, Austin, and San Antonio. To meet its objectives, Southwest needed planes that it could operate reliably at a low cost. It was able to purchase four brand-new Boeing 737s—very efficient planes for shorter routes—for only \$4 million each because the recession had hit the airlines particularly hard and Boeing had an inventory of unsold 737s. From the outset, Southwest provided good, reliable service and had one of the lowest costs per mile in the industry.

Items that are not critical should be obtained as thriflily as possible. The founder of Burlington Coat Factory, Monroe Milstein, likes to tell the story of how he obtained estimates for gutting the building he had just leased for his second store. His lowest bid was several thousand dollars. One day he was at the building when a sudden thunderstorm sent a crew of laborers working at a nearby site to his building for shelter from the rain. Milstein asked the crew's foreman what they would charge for knocking down the internal structures that needed to be removed. The foreman said, "Five." Milstein asked, "Five what?" The foreman replied, "Cases of beer."

A complete set of resources includes everything the business will need, but a business does not have to do all of its work in-house with its own employees. It is often more effective to subcontract the work. That way it doesn't need to own or lease its own manufacturing plant and equipment or to worry about recruiting and training production workers. Often, it can keep overhead lower by using outside firms to do work such as payroll, accounting, advertising, mailing promotions, janitorial services, and so on.

Google founders Larry Page and Sergey Brin bought a terabyte of disks at bargain prices and built their own computer housings in Larry's dorm room, which became Google's first data center. Unable to interest the major portal players of the day, Larry and Sergey decided to make a go of it on their own. All they needed was a little cash to move out of the dorm—and to pay off the credit cards they had maxed out buying a terabyte of memory. So they wrote up a business plan, put their PhD plans on hold, and went looking for an angel investor. Their first visit was with a friend of a faculty member.

Andy Bechtolsheim, one of the founders of Sun Microsystems, was used to taking the long view. One look at their demo and he knew Google had potential—a lot of potential. But though his interest had been piqued, he was pressed for time. As Sergey tells it, "We met him very early one morning on the porch of a Stanford faculty member's home in Palo Alto. We gave him a quick demo. He had to run off somewhere, so he said, 'Instead of us discussing all the details, why

don't I just write you a check?' It was made out to Google Inc. and was for \$100,000."



JB Reed/Bloomberg/Getty Images, Inc.

**Google founders Sergey Brin (L) and Larry Page (R) smile prior to a news conference during the opening of the Frankfurt bookfair on October 7, 2004, in Frankfurt, Germany.**

The investment created a small dilemma. Since there was no legal entity known as "Google Inc." there was no way to deposit the check. It sat in Larry's desk drawer for a couple of weeks while he and Sergey scrambled to set up a corporation and locate other funders among family, friends, and acquaintances. Ultimately they brought in a total initial investment of almost \$1 million.

On September 7, 1998, more than two years after they began work on their search engine, Google Inc.,

opened its door in Menlo Park, California. The door came with a remote control, as it was attached to the garage of a friend who sublet space to the new corporation's staff of three. The office offered several big advantages, including a washer and dryer and a hot tub. It also provided a parking space for the first employee hired by the new company: Craig Silverstein, now Google's director of technology.

Excerpted from *Google History*.<sup>20</sup>

Even startup companies can get amazingly good terms from outside suppliers. An entrepreneur should try to understand the potential suppliers' marginal costs. *Marginal cost* is the cost of producing one extra unit beyond what is presently produced. The marginal cost of the laborers who gutted Milstein's building while sheltering from the rain was virtually zero. They were being paid by another firm, and they didn't have to buy materials or tools.

A small electronics company was acquired by a much larger competitor. The large company took over the manufacturing of the small company's products. Production costs shot up. An analysis revealed that much of the increase was due to a rise in the cost of purchased components. In one instance, the large company was paying 50% more than the small company had been paying for the same item. It turned out that the supplier had priced the item for the small company on the basis of marginal costs and for the large company on the basis of total costs.

Smart entrepreneurs find ways of controlling critical resources without owning them. A startup business never has enough money, so it must be resourceful. It should not buy what it can lease. Except when the economy is red hot, there is almost always an excess of capacity of office and industrial space. Sometimes a landlord will be willing to offer a special deal to attract even a small startup company into a building. Such deals may include reduced rent, deferral of rent payments for a period of time, and building improvements made at low or even no cost. In some high-tech regions, landlords will exchange rent for equity in a high-potential startup.

When equipment is in excess supply, new businesses can lease it on very favorable terms. A young database company was negotiating a lease with IBM for a new minicomputer when its chief engineer discovered that a leasing company had identical secondhand units standing idle in its warehouse. The young company was able to lease one of the idle units for one-third of IBM's price. About 18 months later, the database company ran out of cash. Nevertheless, it was able to persuade the leasing company to defer payments because by then there were even more minicomputers standing idle in the warehouse, and it made little economic sense to repossess one and add it to the idle stock.

## Startup Capital

You've developed your idea, you've carefully assessed what resources you will need to open your business and make it grow, you've pulled all your strategies together into a business plan, and now you know how much startup capital you need to get you to the point where your business will generate a positive cash flow. How are you going to raise that startup capital?

There are two types of startup capital: **debt** and **equity**. Simply put, with debt, you don't have to give up any ownership of the business, but you have to pay current interest and eventually repay the principal you borrow; with equity, you have to give up some of the ownership to get it, but you may never have to repay it or even pay a dividend. So you must choose between paying interest and giving up some of the ownership.

In practice, your choice usually depends on how much of each type of capital you can raise. Most startup entrepreneurs do not have much flexibility in their choice of financing. If it is a very risky business without any assets, it will be impossible to get any bank debt without putting up some collateral other than the business's assets—and most likely that collateral will be personal assets. Even if entrepreneurs are willing to guarantee the whole loan with their personal assets, the bank will expect entrepreneurs to put some equity into the business, probably equal to 25% of the amount of the loan. If your personal assets are less than the amount of the loan, the bank might recommend an SBA-guaranteed loan, in which case you would have to put in more equity.

The vast majority of entrepreneurs start their businesses by leveraging their own savings and labor. Consider how Apple, one of the most spectacular startups of all time, was funded. Steve Jobs and Stephen Wozniak had been friends since their school days in Silicon Valley. Wozniak was an authentic computer nerd. He had tinkered with computers from childhood, and he built a computer that won first prize in a science fair. His SAT math score was a perfect 800, but after stints at the University of Colorado, De Anza College, and Berkeley, he dropped out of school and went to work for Hewlett-Packard. His partner, Jobs, had an even briefer encounter with higher education: After one semester at Reed College, he left to look for a swami in India. When he and Wozniak began working on their microcomputer, Jobs was employed at Atari, the leading video game company.

Apple soon outgrew its manufacturing facility in the garage of Jobs' parents' house. Their company, financed initially with \$1,300 raised by selling Jobs' Volkswagen and Wozniak's calculator, needed capital for expansion. They looked to their employers for help. Wozniak proposed to his supervisor that Hewlett-Packard produce what later became the Apple II. Perhaps not surprisingly, Hewlett-Packard declined. After all, Wozniak had no formal qualification in computer design; indeed, he did not even have a college degree. At Atari, Jobs tried to convince founder Nolan Bushnell to manufacture Apples. He too was rejected.

However, on the suggestion of Bushnell and Regis McKenna, a Silicon Valley marketing ace, the two partners contacted Don Valentine, a venture capitalist, in the fall of 1976. In those days, Jobs' appearance was a holdover from his swami days; he definitely did not project the image of Doriot's grade-A man, even by Silicon Valley's casual standards. Valentine did not invest. But he did put them in touch with Armas Markkula, Jr., who had recently retired from Intel a wealthy man. Markkula saw the potential in Apple, and he knew how to raise money. He personally invested \$91,000, secured a line of credit from Bank of America, put together a business plan, and raised \$600,000 of venture capital.

The Apple II was formally introduced in April 1977. Sales took off almost at once. Apple's sales grew rapidly to \$2.5 million in 1977 and \$15 million in 1978. In 1978, Dan Bricklin, a Harvard business student and former programmer at DEC, introduced the first electronic spreadsheet, VisiCalc, designed for the Apple II. In minutes, it could do tasks that had previously taken days. The microcomputer now had the power to liberate managers from the data guardians in the computer departments. According to one source, "Armed with VisiCalc, the Apple II's sales took off, and the personal computer industry was created." Apple's sales jumped to \$70 million in 1979 and \$117 million in 1980.

In 1980, Apple sold some of its stock to the public with an initial public offering (IPO) and raised more than \$80 million. The paper value of their Apple stock made instant millionaires of Jobs (\$165 million), Markkula (\$154 million), Wozniak (\$88 million), and Mike Scott (\$62 million), who together owned 40% of Apple. Arthur Rock's venture capital investment of \$57,000 in 1978 was suddenly worth \$14 million, an astronomical compound return of more than 500% per year, or 17% per month.

By 1982, Apple IIs were selling at the rate of more than 33,000 units a month. With 1982 sales of \$583 million, Apple hit the *Fortune* 500 list. It was a record. At five years of age, it was at that time the youngest company ever to join that exclusive list.

In 2000, Steve Jobs said, “I was very lucky to have grown up in this industry. I did everything coming up—shipping, supply chain, sweeping floors, buying chips, you name it. I put computers together with my own hands. As the industry grew up, I kept on doing it.”<sup>21</sup>

“In November 2009, Steve Jobs was voted CEO of the decade by *Fortune*. In the first decade of the 21st century, he reordered three industries: music with the iPod, movies with Pixar, and mobile phones with the iPhone. And back in the 1970s he shook up the computer industry with the Apple. Reordering one market as Henry Ford did with automobiles, Fred Smith with package delivery, Conrad Hilton with hotels, and Jeff Bezos with book retailing is an extraordinary achievement for any one lifetime; reordering four as Steve Jobs did before he was 55 is a gigantic feat.”<sup>22</sup>

Success as spectacular as Apple’s has seldom been equaled. Nonetheless, its financing is a typical example of how successful high-tech companies are funded. First, the entrepreneurs develop a prototype with personal savings and **sweat equity**, or ownership earned in lieu of wages. Then a wealthy investor—sometimes called an *informal investor* or *business angel*, who knows something about the entrepreneurs, or the industry, or both—invests some personal money in return for equity. When the company is selling product, it may be able to get a bank line of credit secured by its inventory and accounts receivable. If the company is growing quickly in a large market, it may be able to raise capital from a formal venture capital firm in return for equity. Further expansion capital may come from venture capital firms or from a public stock offering.

The vast majority of new firms will never be candidates for formal venture capital or a public stock offering. Nevertheless, they will have to find some equity capital. In most cases, after they have exhausted their personal savings, entrepreneurs will turn to family, friends, and acquaintances (see Figure 2.4). It can be a scary business. Entrepreneurs often find themselves with all their personal net worth tied up in the same business that provides all their income. That is double jeopardy because, if their businesses fail, they lose both their savings and their means of support. Risk of that sort can be justified only if the profit potential is high enough to yield a commensurate rate of return.

Would-be entrepreneurs sometimes tell me that they did not start their ventures because they could not raise sufficient money to get started. More often than not, they were unrealistic about the amount of money that they could reasonably have expected to raise for their startup businesses. I tell them that many of the best companies started with very little capital. For example, 50% of companies on the 2008 list of *Inc.* 500 companies were started with less than \$25,000; 87% of all the companies on the list were funded with money from the

entrepreneurs, 19% with money from family and friends, 17% with bank loans, and only 3% with venture capital,<sup>23</sup> which is by far the rarest source of seed-stage investment. It is estimated that at most only 1 in 10,000 of all new ventures in the United States has venture capital in hand at the outset and only 1 in 1,000 gets venture capital at any stage of its life.

## Profit Potential

	All Nations	U.S.
Close family member	40%	44%
Other relative	11%	6%
Work colleague	10%	9%
Friend/Neighbor	28%	28%
Stranger	9%	7%
Other	2%	6%
	100%	100%

Source: Global Entrepreneurship Monitor.<sup>24</sup>

Figure 2.4

### Relationship of investor to entrepreneur

The level of profit that is reasonable depends on the type of business. On average, U.S. companies make about 5% net income. Hence, on one dollar of revenue, the average company makes a five-cent profit after paying all expenses and taxes. A company that consistently makes 10% is doing very well, and one that makes 15% is truly exceptional. Approximately 50% of the *Inc.* 500 companies make 5% or less; 13% of them make 16% or more. Profit margins in a wide variety of industries for companies both large and small are published by Robert Morris Associates, so entrepreneurs can compare their forecasts with the actual performance of similar-sized companies in the same industry.

Any business must make enough profit to recompense its investors (in most cases that is the entrepreneur) for their investment. This must

be the profit after all normal business expenses have been accounted for, including a fair salary for the entrepreneur and any family members who are working in the business. A common error in assessing the profitability of a new venture is to ignore the owner's salary. Suppose someone leaves a secure job paying \$50,000 per year plus fringe benefits and invests \$100,000 of personal savings to start a new venture. That person should expect to take a \$50,000 salary plus fringe benefits out of the new business. Perhaps in the first year or two, when the business is being built, it may not be possible to pay \$50,000 in actual cash; in that case, the pay that is not actually received should be treated as deferred compensation to be paid in the future. In addition to an adequate salary, the entrepreneur must earn a reasonable return on the \$100,000 investment. A professional investor putting money into a new, risky business would expect to earn an annual rate of return of at least 40%, which would be \$40,000 annually on a \$100,000 investment. That return may come as a capital gain when the business is sold, or as a dividend, or as a combination of the two. But remember that \$100,000 compounding annually at 40% grows to almost \$2.9 million in 10 years. When such large capital gains are needed to produce acceptable returns, big capital investments held for a long time do not make any sense unless very substantial value can be created, as occasionally happens in the case of high-flying companies, especially high-tech ones. In most cases, instead of a capital gain, the investor's return will be a dividend, which must be paid out of the cash flow from the business.

The cash flow that a business generates is not to be confused with profit. It is possible, indeed very likely, that a rapidly growing business will have a negative cash flow from operations in its early years even though it may be profitable. That may happen because the business may not be able to generate enough cash flow internally to sustain its ever-growing needs for working capital and the purchase of long-term assets such as plant and equipment. Hence, it will have to borrow or raise new equity capital. So it is very important that a high-potential business intending to grow rapidly make careful cash-flow projections so as to predict its needs for future outside investments. Future equity investments will dilute the percentage of ownership of the founders, and if the dilution becomes excessive, there may be little reward remaining for the entrepreneurs.

Biotechnology companies are examples of this problem: They have a seemingly insatiable need for cash infusions to sustain their research and development (R&D) costs in their early years. Their negative cash flow, or *burn rate*, sometimes runs at \$1 million per month. A biotechnology company can easily burn up \$50 million before it generates a meaningful profit, let alone a positive cash flow. The expected future capital gain from a public stock offering or sale to a large pharmaceutical company has to run into hundreds of millions of dollars, maybe into the billion-dollar range, for investors to realize an annual return of 50% or higher, which is what they expect to earn on money invested in a seed-stage biotechnology company. Not surprisingly, to finance their ventures biotechnology entrepreneurs as a group have to give up most of the ownership. A study of venture-capital-backed biotechnology companies found that after they had gone public, the entrepreneurs and management were left with less than 18% of the equity, compared with 32% for a comparable group of computer software companies.<sup>25</sup>

We've said that most businesses will never have the potential to go public. Nor will the owners ever intend to sell their businesses and thereby realize a capital gain. In that case, how can those owners get a satisfactory return on the money they have invested in their businesses? The two ingredients that determine return on investment are (1) the amount invested and (2) the annual amount earned on that investment. Entrepreneurs should invest as little as possible to start their businesses and make sure that their firms will be able to pay them a "dividend" big enough to yield an appropriate annual rate of return. For income tax purposes, that "dividend" may be in the form of a salary, bonus, or fringe benefits rather than an actual dividend paid out of retained earnings. Of course, the company must be generating cash from its own operations before that dividend can be paid. For entrepreneurs, happiness is a positive cash flow. And the day a company begins to generate **free cash**—that is, more cash than needed to sustain operations and purchase assets to keep the company on its growth trajectory—is a very happy day in the life of a successful entrepreneur.

For entrepreneurs, happiness is a positive cash flow.

## Awash with Cash

Microsoft is an awesome money machine. Microsoft's stash of cash kept piling up so that by 2004 its cash and short-term investments stood at \$60.6 billion—slightly topping the value of all the gold stored in Fort Knox at 2004 prices. It was enough money to give each family in the United States \$760.

In 2008, Microsoft generated \$1.8 billion of cash flow from operations every month—almost \$2,900 per second on the basis of a five-day working week, eight hours per day. No wonder Bill Gates and Steve Ballmer were smiling a lot (Microsoft Annual Report 2008. <http://www.microsoft.com/msft/reports/ar08/index.html>).

## Ingredients for a Successful New Business

The great day has arrived. You found an idea, wrote a business plan, and gathered your resources. Now you are opening the doors of your new business for the first time, and the really hard work is about to begin. What are the factors that distinguish winning entrepreneurial businesses from the also-rans? Rosabeth Kanter prescribed Four Fs for a successful business,<sup>26</sup> a list that has been expanded into the Nine Fs for entrepreneurial success (see Figure 2.5).

First and foremost, the founding entrepreneur is the most important factor. Next comes the market. This is the “era of the other,” in which, as Regis McKenna observed, the fastest-growing companies in an industry will be in a segment labeled “others” in a market-share pie chart. By and large, they will be newer entrepreneurial firms rather than large firms with household names; hence, specialization is the key. A successful business should focus on niche markets.

The rate of change in business gets ever faster. The advanced industrial economies are knowledge based. Product life cycles are getting shorter. Technological innovation progresses at a relentless pace. Government rules and regulations keep changing. Communications and travel around the globe keep getting easier and cheaper. And consumers are better informed about their choices. To survive, let alone succeed, a company has to be quick and nimble. It

Founders	Every startup company must have a first-class entrepreneur.
Focused	Entrepreneurial companies focus on niche markets. They specialize.
Fast	They make decisions quickly and implement them swiftly.
Flexible	They keep an open mind. They respond to change.
Forever-innovating	They are tireless innovators.
Flat	Entrepreneurial organizations have as few layers of management as possible.
Frugal	By keeping overhead low and productivity high, entrepreneurial companies keep costs down.
Friendly	Entrepreneurial companies are friendly to their customers, suppliers, and employees.
Fun	It's fun to be associated with an entrepreneurial company.

Figure 2.5

### The Nine Fs for entrepreneurial success

must be fast and flexible. It cannot allow inertia to build up. Look at retailing: The historical giants such as Kmart are on the ropes, while nimble competitors dance around them. Four of the biggest retailing successes are Les Wexner's The Limited, the late Sam Walton's Walmart, Bernie Marcus and Arthur Blank's Home Depot, and Anita Roddick's The Body Shop. Entrepreneurs such as these know that they can keep inertia low by keeping the layers of management as few as possible. Tom Peters, an authority on business strategy, liked to point out that Walmart had 3 layers of management, whereas Sears had 10 a few years back when Walmart displaced Sears as the nation's top chain of department stores. "A company with three layers of management can't lose against a company with ten. You could try, but you couldn't do it!" says Peters. So keep your organization flat. It will facilitate quick decisions and flexibility and will keep overhead low.

Small entrepreneurial firms are great innovators. Big firms are relying increasingly on strategic partnerships with entrepreneurial firms in order to get access to desirable R&D. The trend is well under way. Hoffmann-La Roche, hurting for new blockbuster prescription drugs, purchased a majority interest in Genentech and bought the highly regarded biotechnology called PCR (polymerase chain reaction) from Cetus for \$300 million. Eli Lilly purchased Hybritech. In the 1980s, IBM spent \$9 billion a year on research and development, but even that astronomical amount of money could not sustain Big Blue's commercial leadership. As its market share was remorselessly eaten away by thousands of upstarts, IBM entered into strategic agreements with Apple, Borland, Go, Lotus, Intel, Metaphor, Microsoft, Novell, Stratus, Thinking Machines, and other entrepreneurial firms for the purpose of gaining computer technologies.

When it comes to productivity, the best entrepreneurial companies leave the giant corporations behind in the dust. According to 2008 computer industry statistics, Dell's revenue per employee was \$693,000 and Microsoft's was \$630,000, while Hewlett-Packard's was \$369,000 and IBM's was \$260,000. Of course, Dell subcontracts more of its manufacturing, but this does not explain all the difference. Whether you hope to build a big company or a small one, the message is the same: Strive tirelessly to keep productivity high.

But no matter what you do, you probably won't be able to attain much success unless you have happy customers, happy workers, and happy suppliers. That means you must have a friendly company. It means that everyone must be friendly, especially anyone who deals with customers. "The most fun six-month period I've had since the start of Microsoft" is how Bill Gates described his astonishing accomplishment in reinventing his 20-year-old company to meet the threat posed by Internet upstarts in the mid-1990s. In not much more than six months of Herculean effort, Microsoft had developed an impressive array of new products to match those of Netscape. Having fun is one of the keys to keeping a company entrepreneurial. If Microsoft's product developers had not been having fun, they would not have put in 12-hour days and sometimes overnighters to catch up with the Netscape. And big as it is, Microsoft still has the entrepreneurial spirit. In June 2009, Microsoft introduced its Bing search engine to compete with Google's; four months after its introduction, Bing had already captured almost 10% of the lucrative search and advertising market.<sup>27</sup>

Most new companies have the Nine Fs at the outset. Those that become successful and grow pay attention to keeping them and nurturing them. The key to sustaining success is to remain an entrepreneurial gazelle and never turn into a lumbering elephant and finally a dinosaur, doomed to extinction.

When it introduced the first personal computer (PC) in 1981, IBM stood astride the computer industry like a big blue giant. Two suppliers of its personal computer division were Intel and Microsoft. Compared with IBM, Intel was small and Microsoft was a midget. By 2002, Intel's revenue was \$26.8 billion and Microsoft's was \$28.4 billion. Between 1998 and 2002, Microsoft's revenue increased 86%, while IBM's stood still. In 2002, IBM—the company that invented the PC—had only 6% of the worldwide market for PCs. In December 2004, IBM announced that it was selling its PC division to Lenovo, the leading Chinese manufacturer of PCs. Today it is Microsoft's Windows operating system and Intel's microprocessors—the so-called WINTEL—that are shaping the future of information technology.



## CONCLUSION

It is easy to start a business in the United States; anyone can do it. What distinguishes successful entrepreneur from less successful ones is the ability to spot an opportunity for a high-potential venture and then to develop it into a thriving business. As the business grows, the successful entrepreneur is able to attract key management team members, to motivate employees, to find more and more customers and keep them coming back, and to build increasingly sophisticated relationships with financiers.



## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

### Reflection Point

1. What life events might trigger your entrepreneurial career?
2. What ideas do you have for a new business?
  - a. What ideas can you draw from your past work experience?
  - b. What ideas can you draw from your family's work experience?
3. Which of your personal attributes will most help you succeed as an entrepreneur?
4. Which attributes do you think you need to further develop?
5. Who are your entrepreneurial role models? Can you foster any of them into mentors?
6. Is your idea an opportunity? Explain.
7. Is the timing right to launch your venture?
8. What are some cost-effective ways for you to get started?

### Your Thoughts...



## NOTES

- 
- <sup>1</sup> According to the 2002 Kauffman study, 1,992 two- and four-year colleges and universities offered at least one course in entrepreneurship, up from about 300 in the 1984–1985 academic year. <http://money.cnn.com/magazines/fsb/fsb-archive/2006/03/01/8370301/index.htm>.
  - <sup>2</sup> [www.stores.org/archives/jan99cover.asp](http://www.stores.org/archives/jan99cover.asp).
  - <sup>3</sup> Moore, Carol. "Understanding Entrepreneurial Behavior." In J. A. Pearce II and R. B. Robinson, Jr., eds., *Academy of Management Best Paper Proceedings*. Forty-sixth Annual Meeting of the Academy of Management, Chicago, 1986.
  - <sup>4</sup> Brockhaus, R. Risk-Taking Propensity of Entrepreneurs. *Academy of Management Journal*, 23: 509–520. 1980.

- <sup>5</sup> Carter, N. M., Gartner, W. B., Shaver, K. G., and Gatewood, E. J. The Career Reasons for Nascent Entrepreneurs. *Journal of Business Venturing*, 19: 13–39. 2003.
- <sup>6</sup> Rogers, E. M., and Larsen, J. K. *Silicon Valley Fever: Growth of High-Technology Culture*. New York, NY: Basic Books. 1984.
- <sup>7</sup> *Inc.* 500. September 2005.
- <sup>8</sup> Excerpted from <http://web.mit.edu/newsoffice/2009/kauffman-study-0217.html>.
- <sup>9</sup> [www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/2001/cb01-54.html](http://www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/2001/cb01-54.html).
- <sup>10</sup> [www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/2001/cb01-115.html](http://www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/2001/cb01-115.html).
- <sup>11</sup> [www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/releases/archives/cb05\\_108\\_table.xls](http://www.census.gov/Press-Release/www/releases/archives/cb05_108_table.xls).
- <sup>12</sup> *Inc.* 500. September 2009.
- <sup>13</sup> *Inc.* 500. 25(12):. 2004. *Inc.* 500 CEO Survey 2004. [http://www.inc.com/multimedia/slideshows/content/crunchingnumbers\\_pagen\\_3.html](http://www.inc.com/multimedia/slideshows/content/crunchingnumbers_pagen_3.html).
- <sup>14</sup> *Inc.* 500. 22(15). 2000.
- <sup>15</sup> For more information on startups and failures, refer to William Dennis, *The Shape of Small Business*. NFIB Foundation. [www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html](http://www.nfib.com/object/PolicyGuide2.html).
- <sup>16</sup> [www.sba.gov/advo/research/rs204tot.pdf](http://www.sba.gov/advo/research/rs204tot.pdf).
- <sup>17</sup> Detailed information on survival rates can be found in: Boden, R. J., Jr. *Analysis of Business Dissolution by Demographic Category of Business Ownership*. 2000. [www.sba.gov/advo/research/rs204tot.pdf](http://www.sba.gov/advo/research/rs204tot.pdf). Kirchhoff, Bruce A., and Phillips, Bruce D. *Innovation and Growth Among New Firms in the U.S. Economy*. Frontiers of Entrepreneurship Research, Babson College, Wellesley, MA. 1989. pp. 173–188. Kirchhoff, Bruce A. *Entrepreneurship and Dynamic Capitalism*. Westport, CT: Praeger. 1994. Phillips, Bruce D., and Kirchhoff, Bruce A. Formation, Growth, and Survival: Small Firm Dynamics in the U.S. Economy. *Small Business Economics*, 1: 65–74. 1989.
- <sup>18</sup> Timmons, Jeffry A. *New Venture Creation*. Homewood, IL: Richard D. Irwin. 2001.
- <sup>19</sup> Obituary: Professor Rajeev Motwani. June 9, 2009. [www.telegraph.co.uk/news/obituaries/technology-obituaries/5487846/Professor-Rajeev-Motwani.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/news/obituaries/technology-obituaries/5487846/Professor-Rajeev-Motwani.html).
- <sup>20</sup> [www.google.com/corporate/history.html](http://www.google.com/corporate/history.html).
- <sup>21</sup> *Business Week*. February 6, 2006. p. 66.
- <sup>22</sup> [www.telegraph.co.uk/technology/apple/6513511/Steve-Jobs-voted-CEO-of-the-decade.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/technology/apple/6513511/Steve-Jobs-voted-CEO-of-the-decade.html).
- <sup>23</sup> *Inc.* September 2008.
- <sup>24</sup> The information in Figure 2.4 was extracted from the Global Entrepreneurship Monitor data set. [www.gemsonsortium.org](http://www.gemsonsortium.org).
- <sup>25</sup> Bygrave, William D., and Timmons, Jeffry A. *Venture Capital at the Crossroads*. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press. 1992.
- <sup>26</sup> Kanter, Rosabeth Moss. *Change Masters: Innovation and Entrepreneurship in the American Corporation*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster. 1985.
- <sup>27</sup> AFP. November 17, 2009. [www.google.com/hostednews/afp/article/ALeqM5iFla\\_CCCc6QwmkYkicyfMLE\\_oGiQ](http://www.google.com/hostednews/afp/article/ALeqM5iFla_CCCc6QwmkYkicyfMLE_oGiQ).

**CASE****Alison Barnard**

Having spent her Saturday morning redesigning window displays, folding inventory, and following up with a supplier who seemed disinclined to take back an entire shipment she felt was unacceptable, Alison Barnard, 27, was finally settled at her desk in the corner—fully intending to make some progress on her growing management task list. Chief among those neglected missions was getting up to speed on her software system for monitoring sales and inventory.

*In-jean-ius*, her upscale “jeans and t-shirt” boutique in Boston’s North End, was attracting professional and wealthy women from Maine to Rhode Island. As one of many satisfied customers wrote, “Alison has an uncanny ability to match up the right person with the perfect pair of jeans. If you have ever gone ‘jean shopping’ you know that that is not an easy thing to do! Experience In-jean-ius for yourself. You won’t shop for jeans anywhere else again.”

March 2006. Alison looked up from her work with a weary smile.

*Open just over six months, and actuals are tracking nearly twice my projections....*

As it had from the very beginning, running her hit venture continued to consume nearly every waking hour. The creative, high-energy founder was far less concerned with burning out than with having the day-to-day concerns usurp her ability to plan and manage for growth. And with only one full-time employee—not yet fully trained—Alison couldn’t expect much relief anytime soon.

Her attention was suddenly drawn to an exchange between her salesperson and a well-dressed, middle-aged woman who was favoring a sleek pair of low rises. From where she sat, Alison could see that the woman was built for something a bit less daring. When the associate began fishing for the correct size in that style, Alison left her desk (and her task list) to steer the sale toward a more conservative brand that would ultimately prove to offer the best fit. Another satisfied customer . . . .

**Alison Barnard: Shopper**

Like many rural-suburban American teens, young Alison Barnard had been an avid shopper. But there was something more. The daughter of a serial entrepreneur and an enterprising mother, she had developed an eye for opportunity and value-add that she ceaselessly trained on the business of creating a unique upscale shopping experience: trends, service, selection, presentation, decor. Despite her keen interest in retailing, she headed off for college with a more conservative career track in mind:

*I really thought I wanted to be in brand management, marketing, or retail consulting. I figured that someday I would have a store but thought it might be something I’d do when I retired, like you kind of hung out in your store.*

*But I had all of these ideas. I like clothing, I like the shopping experience, and I like dealing with people. One idea was to have an all-black store because black apparel is such a staple for any woman’s wardrobe.*

In May of 2002, Alison received her undergraduate degree in business from the University of Richmond. Back in the Boston area, her first job was with a dot-com startup. She left there for an interesting opportunity with another high-potential venture. While the work environment there was most definitely not for her, that “mistake” would have a major impact on her career trajectory.

## Catalysts

Hired as part of the seminar development team at a medical device company in Cambridge, Massachusetts, Alison quickly discovered that her talents weren't exactly appreciated:

*They were part of this old boy network that really looked down on females. They told me, for example, that I needed to cover on Thursdays for the receptionist when she went to lunch. Swell. I hated that place, and I immediately began interviewing for something better.*

*At one point, I went on a job interview, and since my boss approved of higher education, I told her I had gone to Babson College to investigate their MBA program. When I checked into it in order to support my little lie, I found out that Babson had a one-year program that looked really interesting; you're there, you're focused and doing it, and then you're out.*

Alison began the One-Year MBA at Babson in the spring of 2003. Since she was still brainstorming retail store concepts with anyone who would engage, her mom's hairdresser suggested that as a next step she ought to get some floor time in the real world. That summer Alison started work as a part-timer at an upscale boutique near Boston. Although she still had no immediate plans to develop a new venture, her MBA studies melded well with her exposure to retailing:

*I quickly realized that my first concept about an all-black store was a bad idea. Women buy black, but they don't shop for it. They'll even go into a store and say they want anything but black—because they have too much black in their wardrobe. But then in the end, they'll buy something black.*

*At the time, I was really getting into jeans myself. At Babson, I wore jeans and a t-shirt every day. My first pair was Sevens, one of the early entrants into what I would call the premium denim revolution. Jeans are no longer just weekend wear; they are worn in the workplace and for going out. Premium denim has become a fashion staple, and women now have an average of about eight pairs of jeans in their wardrobe.*

*So an all-jeans store became sort of my fun idea—something I thought would be just another idea that would be passed by. Still, my concept was interesting enough to attract a team in class to do the business plan.*

## Realizations

Nothing Alison and her team members discovered in their research surprised her in the least (see Exhibit 2.1). When asked what pain point she expected her store to relieve, she didn't hesitate a moment:

*Women's point of pain is themselves. The reality is that every female hates themselves in some sort of way. And if she doesn't like something about her body, jeans can bring out the worst qualities. But they can also make you look great if they fit right.*

*There are some decent stores in the area that sell premium jeans (see Exhibit 2.2), but they all forget to mention the fact that fit is by far a woman's number one concern when searching for jeans. Women are not brand loyal; they are fit loyal.*

When she graduated in the spring of 2004, Alison was offered an opportunity to learn even more:

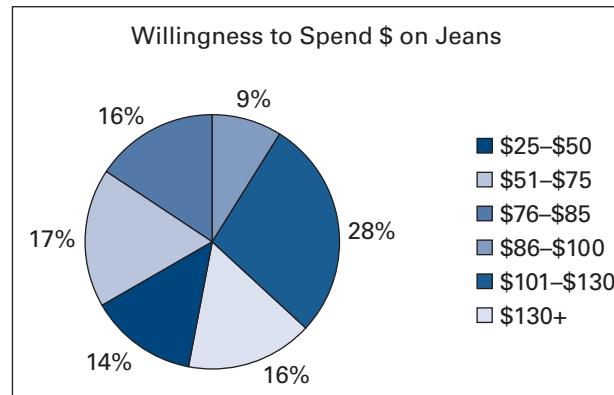
*The woman who was managing the boutique was going on maternity leave starting in the fall. The partners knew I wanted to open a store someday and they said that they would train me, and help me out until she returned in the spring of 2005.*

**EXHIBIT 2.1 Research Findings**
**What Women Want: Survey Results**

We conducted primary research through a survey of 90 women in the Boston area to find out their jean-buying habits, including number of jeans owned, where they purchase their jeans, brands they are loyal to, and what they would like to see in a jean store. The complete results can be found in Exhibit 2.2.

The survey conducted to extract the jean-purchasing behaviors of 90 females aged 21–35 reveals the following:

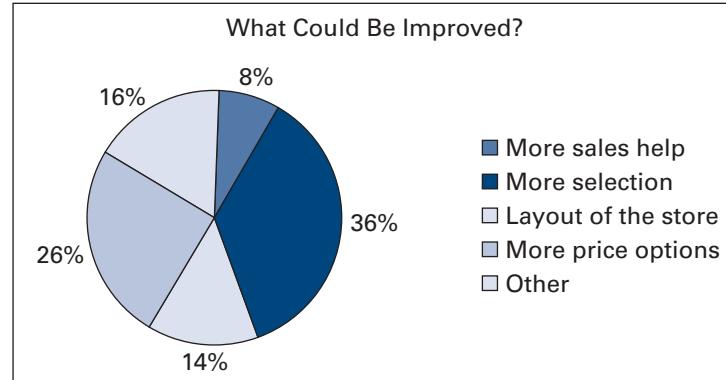
- Women are willing to spend money for jeans
  - 28% \$25-\$50
  - 16% \$51-\$75
  - 14% \$76-\$85
  - 17% \$86-\$100
  - 16% \$101-\$130
  - 9% \$130+



- Fit matters and influences where and which brands women purchase
  - 86.7% of women said their 1 reason for shopping at certain stores was that these stores carried jeans that fit them
  - Brand preference is based on fit
- 82% of women say they are not loyal to one brand of jeans. Women need more.....
  - More selection → 49.4% want more options
  - More information → so many jean brands and styles and so little time
  - More help → make the process less time consuming, less of a hassle

In addition, open-ended questions regarding what they dislike about the jean-buying process and what they would like to see in a new jean store environment revealed the following:

- Overall, women dislike the jean-buying process, even though they enjoy buying a new pair of jeans.
- Disorganization of the store and inconsistency of jean sizes by brands made women want to see more sales help, which was lacking in the stores they currently frequent for jean buying.



**EXHIBIT 2.2****Premium Jean Stores in Eastern Massachusetts**

Store	Private Label	Trendy Jean Brands	Jean Expertise	Knowledgeable Customer Service	Welcome Atmosphere	Large Selection of Brands
Jean Therapy		X	X	X		
The National Jean Co.		X		X		X
Banana Republic	X					
Express	X					
Riccardi		X				X
Diesel	X		X	X		
Intermix		X			X	
Gap	X					
Mudo		X	X			
Lucky Brand	X					
Jasmine Sola*		X			X	X
Jeans Addiction		X		X		X

\*Luciano Manganella, who founded this upscale boutique in Harvard Square in 1970, four years after emigrating from Italy, sold Jasmine Sola in the summer of 2005 to the nearly national 500-store New York & Co. This move, Manganella said, was the only way he could expand beyond his present 15 stores to an expected 25 stores—all on the East Coast—by the end of 2006. The undisclosed amount of the sale was estimated to be in excess of \$20 million.

Alison accepted their offer. She soon discovered, however, that they would be delivering far less than they promised:

*I never got anything we had agreed to, including health insurance or training of any kind. I did learn how to handle receivables, pricing, dating, and ordering, but I figured out that stuff on my own by examining the invoices and checking in the orders.*

It wasn't long before Alison was certain that she could run a shop of her own. She was still drawn to the \$6.3 billion women's denim market, a highly fragmented space with hundreds of manufacturers and inconsistent retail offerings, from boutiques, chain stores, and department stores. Still, she felt that she "would have to jump on it right away before anyone else did"—it was now or never:

*I had been keeping my idea secret from the store owners because I didn't trust them at all. Sure, they liked me, but they also had money and resources. That summer, I was attending a fashion show with one of the owners. He said that he had always wanted to open a jeans and t-shirt store but that his business partner—a woman—wasn't interested in the concept. At that point, I told him about my idea, and before you know it, we were talking about going into business together.*

*He called a few times after the trip to talk it over. We never touched on details like money or ownership breakdown, but we did go to look at a spot in Wellesley [Massachusetts]. But then he just dropped it; never talked about it again. It was as if we had never had a conversation about it! That's the sort of thing you get from a lot of people in this industry.*

*But how was I going to do it alone? Where was I going to get the money?*

## Commitments

Based on her projections (see Exhibit 2.3), Alison expected her retail store would have first-year sales of just over \$375,000. She had also calculated that startup costs, including build-out and inventory, would be in the range of \$125,000. She was confident that she could attract investors, but first she wanted to secure a location that would be acceptable to what she was sure would be her toughest constituency:

*Fashion denim manufacturers are represented by showrooms in New York City and in LA [Los Angeles]. They are very committed to their brands—and very particular about whom they will sell to. To avoid saturation, they won't sell to a store that is too close to another client, and they will even shut off an established shop that locates a new store too close to another buyer.*

*Territory protection is a great asset for existing stores, but it makes it very hard to find locations that have the right customer traffic and are not in conflict with existing vendors.*

Alison's boyfriend, Bryan, was active in the Boston real estate market. On weekends, Alison often accompanied him as he made the rounds to various properties he was managing. One icy morning in early 2005, Alison fell for a corner location in the North End:

*This place was a bit removed from the busiest section of Hanover Street, but the outside was SO nice; all dark wood, newly redone. I had Bryan call the number because as a real estate agent, I knew they would take him seriously. He set up a meeting with the landlord—a top neurosurgeon who owned the building as an investment. He had already denied seven previous proposals, but said he liked mine a lot.*

Soon, they were talking hard numbers:

*I learned a lot in negotiating with him because he had a huge ego—just like a lot of good surgeons do. I had to figure out how to make him feel he was still getting something out of it. He was also getting stuck on little details. For example, he wanted to control my window displays and be able to go to arbitration over it.*

*And the space may have been beautiful on the outside, but the inside was unbelievably awful. It was scary. It needed new floors, new ceilings, new walls, and a new heating system.*

In late February, Alison signed a three-year lease that included a few months of free rent—she now had until September. All along, her father had felt strongly that she should have lined up the capital first:

*My dad was saying, "What are you thinking?" He totally disagreed with what I was doing, but I told him I'd find the money. He loaned me the deposit on the location, and he called up my uncle, who is an accountant. The three of us sat down and came up with an investment offering.*

<b>EXHIBIT 2.3</b>		<b>Five-Year Projections, Income Statement</b>				
<b>Sales</b>		<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>Jeans</b>						
Unit Sales		1,635	1,962	2,315	2,547	2,801
Average Price		135	142	149	156	164
		220,725	278,604	344,935	397,332	459,364
<b>Tops</b>						
Unit Sales		2,453	3,434	4,120	4,862	5,737
Average Price		54	40	42	45	48
		132,462	137,360	173,040	218,790	275,376
<b>Accessories</b>						
Unit Sales		550	633	791	988	1,235
Average Price		45	45	50	50	55
		24,750	28,485	39,550	49,400	67,925
<b>Total Sales</b>		<b>377,937</b>	<b>444,449</b>	<b>557,525</b>	<b>665,522</b>	<b>802,665</b>
<b>Cost of Sales</b>						
Jeans		94,912	119,589	148,171	171,137	197,663
Tops		58,860	61,803	79,108	97,237	126,313
Accessories		11,550	13,283	12,452	15,565	19,457
		165,322	194,675	239,731	283,939	343,433
<b>Total Cost of Sales</b>						
<b>Sales Expenses</b>						
Credit Card Commissions		10,222	12,000	14,737	17,482	21,186
Discounts & Promos		2,759	3,476	4,307	4,975	5,746
Returns		14,031	16,470	20,228	23,995	29,078
Damage & Theft		12,026	14,117	17,338	20,567	24,924
		39,038	46,063	56,610	67,019	80,934
<b>Total Sales Expenses</b>						
<b>Gross Margin</b>		<b>173,577</b>	<b>203,711</b>	<b>261,184</b>	<b>314,564</b>	<b>378,298</b>
<b>Buying Expenses Incl Travel Administration</b>						
Rent		2,400	3,600	4,000	4,200	4,400
Staff Salaries & Benefits		17,500	31,200	32,400	33,600	34,800
Staff Payroll Taxes		24,960	31,200	33,600	33,600	33,600
Management Salaries		7,488	9,360	10,080	10,080	10,080
Management Payroll Taxes		51,996	52,800	55,000	60,000	65,000
Health Insurance		15,439	15,840	15,840	15,840	15,840
Interest		3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000
Communications & Media		900	1,200	1,040	880	720
Professional Fees		3,300	3,300	3,300	3,300	3,300
Depreciation		4,308	4,308	4,308	4,308	4,308
Insurance		12,266	13,381	13,381	13,381	13,381
Utilities (Electric & Gas)		2,880	2,880	2,880	2,880	2,880
		4,200	4,200	4,200	4,200	4,200
		148,237	172,669	179,029	185,069	191,109
<b>Total Expenses</b>		<b>150,637</b>	<b>176,269</b>	<b>183,029</b>	<b>189,269</b>	<b>195,509</b>
<b>Pretax Profit</b>		22,940	27,442	78,155	125,295	182,789
<b>Net Profit</b>		<b>14,844</b>	<b>17,425</b>	<b>47,914</b>	<b>76,265</b>	<b>110,825</b>

(Continued)

<b>EXHIBIT 2.3</b>	<b>(Continued)</b>				
<b>Sales</b>	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>Beginning Cash Inflows</b>	125,000	19,077	47,883	125,561	235,571
Sales	377,937	444,449	557,525	665,522	802,665
Depreciations	12,233	13,381	13,381	13,381	13,381
<b>Outflows</b>					
Cost of Sales	(165,322)	(194,675)	(239,731)	(283,939)	(343,333)
Sales Expenses	(39,038)	(46,063)	(56,610)	(67,018)	(80,934)
Marketing Expenses	(2,400)	(3,600)	(4,000)	(4,200)	(4,400)
Admin. Expenses	(148,237)	(172,669)	(179,029)	(185,069)	(191,109)
Note Payment	(20)	(2,000)	(2,000)	(2,000)	(2,000)
Taxes	(8,096)	(10,017)	(30,798)	(49,030)	(71,964)
Pre-opening & Build-Out	(58,000)				
Opening Inventory	(75,000)				
Increase in A/P			18,940	22,364	26,990
<b>Net (Outflow) Inflow</b>	<b>(105,923)</b>	<b>28,806</b>	<b>77,678</b>	<b>110,010</b>	<b>149,296</b>
<b>Ending Cash Balance</b>	<b>19,077</b>	<b>47,883</b>	<b>125,561</b>	<b>235,571</b>	<b>384,867</b>

## Finding the Money

Before she went the equity route, Alison wanted to investigate other avenues. The news was not good:

*My dad referred me to some people he knew at Boston Private Bank—very conservative. Talks went fine until they became insistent that, if they were going to do anything, they would have to have a guarantor for the loan—a co-signer. Well, I wasn't going to do that; I wanted this to be my responsibility.*

*I tried to get an SBA loan through a small bank on the North Shore, but I had no collateral, and I was paying off student loans. They said no way because, even though the SBA would be backing it, a bad loan would give them a worse rating through the SBA. I looked into grants, but the process was too long. I also tried to get startup funding through the Hatchery Program at Babson. They said no as well; that really surprised me.*

With the clock ticking on her lease, Alison went ahead with the investor plan she had crafted with her closest advisors:

*We were not going to give people the option of deciding how much money they could invest. Instead, we said this is the deal: There are six slots of \$25,000 each, and your options are full equity, debt/equity, or full debt.<sup>1</sup>*

---

<sup>1</sup>The valuation for the offer was based on her Year One sales projections. Each \$25,000 investment would be worth 6.25% in equity. Debt/equity investors could choose either 10,000/15,000 debt/equity ratio or 15,000/10,000 debt/equity ratio. The all-debt interest rate was originally 10%, but when a wealthy investor from Denver offered an all-debt loan at 8%, the terms were adjusted to maintain parity.

*I sent an e-mail to all my contacts saying that this is where I am and that I was looking for investors. A lot of people responded to me; I was shocked.*

*A former classmate at Babson (who had started a men's skin-care line) e-mailed to say that he was very upset with me because he thought I was giving up way too much equity. But I didn't look at it that way at all. It was a different business model; he was going to the masses, and I was very local.*

Her father was in for one share; all equity. Her uncle let her choose, so she set him up as a debt/equity investor. She had a Babson woman (who had always liked her idea) in for all equity and a private investor in Denver for all debt. The final two shares were to be all equity:

*A guy I used to work with told me he wanted to do \$50,000, but he wanted to do it for 15% equity instead of 12.5%. I quickly said no. I had deals in place with other people; those are the terms. He said that's fine, he'd still like to do it.*

Armed with a bit of cash and some solid commitments, Alison charged forward to make her vision a bricks-and-mortar reality.

## Building Momentum (and Shelving)

Having initially envisioned a space in the range of 1,800 square feet, Alison found the 600 square foot shell to be a significant creative challenge—so much so that she hired an expert:

*I needed to accommodate a starting inventory of around 600 pairs of jeans and a selection of tops (see Exhibit 2.4). My biggest concern was we had to have wide enough aisles to walk around.*

*I thought I could do it myself, but against my better judgment, I hired an interior designer. I worked with him and came up with a compact shelving system that started almost at the floor and went up only as high as I could reach. I am 5'5"?, and that is about the average. If someone was shorter, I could get it for them. I really wanted my store to feel very comfortable and warm—like you're in a good friend's closet. But the designer never quite got the need to maximize the space.*

She added with a smile that she had been able to attract effective talent to the task of building out her vision:

*Bryan built all of the shelving with his father, an engineer. I showed them my drawings, gave them the measurements, and they did it. He actually project managed the build-out, and we did a lot of the work together. I saved so much money because of him. We painted it ourselves, and did other little things here and there. The contractors knew him well, and since he gives them so much business, they were willing to cut us breaks here and there. I went around and found furniture pieces for practical use that would make it feel more homey, like an armoire, a big dining room table, and a couple of benches. The furniture is all white, so the store has a shabby-chic feeling to it.*

To monitor her sales and margins, Alison invested in a high-end software inventory system. The trouble was that the salesperson had yet to train her, and he wasn't returning her calls. But that challenge would have to wait; it was time to buy.

<b>EXHIBIT 2.4</b>		<b>Opening Inventory; Brand selection</b>
<b>Denim Vendors</b>	<b>T-Shirt/Tops Vendors</b>	
ABS	ABS	
AG	C & C California	
Bella Dahl	Central Park West	
Big Star	Custo	
Blu Jeanious	Ella Moss	
Cambio	Hale Bob	
Chip and Pepper	Jakes	
Christopher Blue	James Perse	
Citizens of Humanity	Juicy Couture	
Habitual	Lilla P.	
Hudson	Michael Stars	
IT Jeans	Mimi & Coco	
James Jeans	Muchacha	
Juicy Couture	Notice	
Kasil	Rebecca Beeson	
Notify	Splendid	
Paper Denim & Cloth	Susana Monaco	
Parasuco	Three Dots	
Red Engine	Troo	
Rock & Republic	Velvet	
Sacred Blue		
Saddelite		
Salt Works		
Seven for All Mankind		
Tacto		
True Religion		
Tylerskye		
Womyn		
Yanuk		

## Learning Curves

With investors in place and the build-out moving along, Alison flew to Los Angeles and New York to haggle (and sashay) for “permission” to play:

*I had a list of brands that I wanted, based on my experience at the boutique. I was very concerned about fit and consistency. I was constantly looking at other girls’ butts, so I knew that there was a core group of “in fashion” trendy jeans that I needed to have and that people liked. I also had to have some Mom jeans: higher-waisted, not young, but still sophisticated and nice looking.*

*From there, it was about attending big trade shows in New York to touch the material and examine the styles. That doesn’t tell you much about fit, and unfortunately you can’t try on the floor samples.*

*Buying is always stressful. There are times when my head is pounding and everything looks the same. The sellers are really snobby, and I had to dress totally trendified so they could look me up and down and say, “Okay, you can buy from us.” Great, thanks. If I’m a good businessperson, does the way I’m dressed matter at all? No, of course not; but that’s what it’s like.*

*Although I had a pretty good idea of what I needed for my opening inventory, I did make some mistakes. I also bought some jeans that I would not have normally, but I couldn't get some of the brands that I wanted to start with—they wouldn't sell to a new store.*

The denim reps that did sell to her demanded full payment up front. Using bank cards secured with her mother's credit, Alison pulled together a \$75,000 inventory of jeans, tops, and accessories like trendy shoes and jewelry. That's when she was given a bit of a scare:

*A month before I opened, my last investor calls to say he's going to knock his investment down because he didn't want to be an aggressive shareholder. I panicked; I was in the final phases of my build-out, I had done all my buying, and here he was telling me I was going to be \$25,000 short!*

Despite her angst, Alison decided to sit tight. Things were moving along nicely, and it wasn't long before she realized that she'd be able to open her store without the additional capital.

## In-jean-ius

A week before her opening in July 2005, Alison hired a friend of a friend as her first employee. Her mom was there to help out, along with her 17-year-old sister. The plan was to be open from around lunchtime to just past dinnertime, six days a week, and stay open a bit later on Sundays. Alison explained that it was soon evident that the location required a flexible approach:

*The North End is interesting because in the summer they have a variety of feasts and festivals. I was often staying open until nearly midnight. I was working all the time—anything that would make a sale. I immediately surpassed my business plan estimates, and it kept building.*

As a new retailer in town, she attracted a few of the usual suspects who thought they might be able to take advantage of the young proprietor. They thought wrong:

*The area is safe, but like any city neighborhood, it has its share of drug addicts. The first week I was open, two junkies came in. The guy was distracting me while the girl was stealing. I knew what was going on, but I didn't see her take anything. The general idea is that unless you see them do it, you can't do anything.*

*When they left, a girl walks in and says, "Excuse me, those two just walked out with a pair of jeans." Well, I am not a very tough person—I grew up in the suburbs—and I don't know what I was thinking or what came over me, but I ran after them. I took the jeans out of the guy's hand and the bag off of her shoulder. I told her that I knew she had jewelry of mine, and I found it in there. I walked away from them to call the police. They ran away and my neighbors got in their car to go find them. They took my younger sister with them because she knew what they looked like.*

*They found them and brought them back to the store so I could positively ID them. They were arrested and taken away. From then on, everyone in the North End thought hey, she's tough—and the druggies, who all talk, stayed away.*

Soon after that, Alison was in hot pursuit again:

*I chased another girl down the street, and when I wouldn't let her get in her car, she tried to punch me. Bryan tells me all the time I have to stop doing that; someday I could get hurt.*

*Of course, I tell my employees not to do anything like that; just call the police. But I take it so personally; that's mine, you're stealing from me! How can you do that? Don't you know I'm a new business?*

Over the next few months, Alison's total loss to theft was a single pair of shoes and a pair of earrings. The other good news was that sales continued to track far ahead of her estimates. In the first six months, the store had generated a net income of \$20,307 on sales of \$294,061. Alison explained that, although word of mouth was an important factor in her early success, attracting the imagination of the local press had been key:

*I'm not the only one who has had this idea, and other trendy jeans stores have definitely gotten their share of press, but people are really taking to my message: "You're going to get help, and we're going to work with you to find jeans that fit. We have jeans for everybody." Nobody else is saying that this is all about fit, and that's the message that I relay in every piece of PR that I send out. And they keep coming to talk to me.*

While the young entrepreneur was thrilled with how things were going, she was ready to start spending less time on the sales floor and more time with strategic and management challenges. Easier said than done.

## Fold or Finance?

Since the local press always seemed to focus on *her* skills and *her* story, Alison wondered how that might impact her ability to replicate her concept:

*How do you grow when the store is about you? People come here because they like dealing with me. How do I duplicate myself? That's not to say that someone can't do what I'm doing and do it well, but employees are never going to treat people exactly the way you do. I have a lot of learning to do in terms of managing my employees, delegating, and sharing my knowledge.*

One of her many priorities was to develop a training manual that, in addition to describing the particular fit characteristics of various brands, would clearly articulate her vision for customer service. She thought of contacting the Ritz-Carlton in Boston—to her mind a master of customer service—to see if they might let her review their training materials. Until she did have some documentation in place though, she'd have to communicate her philosophy on the fly:

*I sort of torture my employees when they're hired. They have to come in and spend a few hours trying on everything in the store—like a restaurant that requires their servers to try everything on the menu so they can talk about it.*

*I am also pretty strict about keeping the store neat and organized. I think that is so important in a small space like this. Whenever I come into the store, I can immediately see items that are unfolded or out of place.*

*My office is a desk in the corner, so I'm right there to offer help or teach them the little tricks I've learned. I also try to stay at my desk and let them take care of whoever comes in, but I can't just keep quiet if they are not saying the right thing. I always have to get my two cents in.*

Now that she had a full-time employee nearly up to speed and a sharp former classmate from Babson working on weekends as a fun job, Alison had begun to carve out some time each week to recharge:

*I have had to give up spending much time with Bryan, and that has been a huge problem. My taking Sundays has become so important because we get to spend time together. Despite the fact*

*that he is also an entrepreneur, he has had a really big struggle with the idea that he is number two to this business. That's been hard and it's something we're working on.*

Her other challenging relationship was with the numbers:

*Nailing down the actuals is a big issue for me, and I am in the process of doing that. I'm not bad with financials, but they are a bit intimidating; I am really just much more into customer service and marketing. There are so many other things that I could be doing to bring in sales, so I'd rather do those things first.*

*It's true; I would rather have my store neat and folded than work on my financials. That is always my first priority. If the store looks good, then I can do other things. The problem is that I am constantly rearranging the store, and that is my way of being creative: putting different things together, doing the windows over every week.*

*My uncle does my accounting, and I am paying close enough attention to know I'm doing much better than my projections, but I need to focus on it more. And I need to find a training course for that inventory software so I can run those reports and coordinate things the right way.*

## Down by One

It had been one of the best-selling days to date. Alison closed her shop at 8:30 that night and returned to her desk with the absurd idea that she might have some energy left for paperwork. It wasn't just that she was tired; she now had a brand-new challenge on her plate: that day her one full-time employee had given her two-week notice.

## Preparation Questions

1. Is this business scalable? Discuss the limitations and challenges.
2. What tasks and goals should Alison be focusing on at this stage of her venture?
3. Discuss the signing of a lease prior to having the money. What was the risk?
4. Discuss her fund-raising and valuation. If you were an equity investor, what return expectations would you have?
5. If women are coming to Alison's store from all over, how important is location? Discuss the implications for growth.

*This page intentionally left blank*



Stacy Madison, founder of Stacy's Pita Chips which has grown to \$60 million in sales was sold to Frito-Lay in January 2006. (Source: Courtesy Frito-Lay, Inc.)

## OPPORTUNITY RECOGNITION, SHAPING, AND RESHAPING

---

Entrepreneurship is all about opportunity. Would-be entrepreneurs often have one of two things on their minds: “How do I come up with a good business idea?” and “Is this idea big enough to make a successful business?” This chapter focuses on evaluating ideas and assessing whether they are indeed good opportunities. While an idea is necessary to entrepreneurship, it isn’t sufficient. To have a successful entrepreneurial endeavor, your idea needs to be an opportunity.

Belief in your idea is a great thing. But first step back and ask a more important question: “Is this idea an *attractive opportunity*?” Moving from an idea to a viable opportunity is an iterative process. Entrepreneurs need to conduct a series of tests—what we refer to as **market tests**—to identify interesting ideas and then see whether they are viable opportunities. Each test is an escalation of commitment, an important step to successfully launching the venture. So the process of recognizing, shaping, and reshaping an opportunity combines thought and action to take the idea from formulation to execution. Both are critical as you embark on your entrepreneurial adventure. In this chapter, we will lay out the process from the very beginning—the idea—and move through opportunity shaping and reshaping.

# From Glimmer to Action: How Do I Come Up with a Good Idea?

---

We said in the preceding chapter that most successful ideas are driven by the entrepreneur's personal experience. Entrepreneurs gain exposure to their fields through their jobs and use this experience to identify possible opportunities for a new venture. Considering that many students have limited work experience, you may not have the knowledge base to generate a new idea. So how, then, does a student find a worthy idea?

Start by looking inside yourself and deciding what you really enjoy. What gives you energy? What can you be passionate about for the many years it will take to start and grow a successful company? For those who lack this professional experience or who find they haven't enjoyed their professional life to date, it takes effort to find the answers to these questions.

## Finding Your Passion

Think long-term. What are your goals for your degree, and where would you like to be 5 years and 10 years down the road? Most students have difficulty envisioning the future. They know they want an exciting job with lots of potential (and, of course, above-average pay), but they haven't really thought about their careers in detail. Students often have a general idea of which industries and types of jobs are interesting to them (say, "something in finance"), but they lack a clear sense of what type of company they want to work for after college (culture, customers, and so forth). After all, school is a time of self-discovery, and this self-discovery is critical for both undergraduates and MBAs. In fact, many people enroll in MBA programs with the express goal of switching careers or industries and use the graduate program as a stepping-stone toward a field they are more passionate about. It can thus pay dividends to spend time thinking beyond the next exam, semester, or year.

Launching an entrepreneurial venture takes a tremendous amount of time and energy, and you will have difficulty sustaining that level of energy if you aren't passionate about the business. How do you go about finding your passion? There are two primary ways. First, think deeply about all the things that give you joy. What do you do in your spare time? What are your hobbies? What types of newspaper and magazine articles or Internet blogs do you read? The reality of our capitalistic society is that all those things you enjoy likely have ancillary businesses around them. Some are obvious. Many students have a passion for investment finance. They have been tracking stocks for a number of years and trade them for their personal portfolio. There are many viable businesses associated with personal finance, ranging from directly trading stocks to providing analysis of the industry through a blog, for instance.

Other passions may not have as many clear-cut examples of ancillary businesses. You may have a passion for hiking. On the surface, hiking seems like a free endeavor, yet there are numerous ancillary businesses that support this activity, ranging from designing, manufacturing, and distributing hiking gear and clothing to providing specialty tours for the extreme hiker. Take World Class Teams,<sup>1</sup> for example. This company was founded by Robyn Benincasa, a former triathlete and adventure racer. After winning the Eco-Challenge, she decided to turn her passion for adventure and the outdoors into a business. Today World Class Teams provides team building and experiential education programs to all kinds of clients. Or take one of the best-known examples in this industry—Yvon Chouinard. One of the pioneers of mountaineering and rock climbing, Chouinard turned his knack for creating useful climbing tools into a small business that served most of his friends in the California climbing community. Today his company, Patagonia, is a world leader in outdoor sporting clothes and equipment and continues to pioneer as a model for socially responsible businesses.

The world is full of examples of enterprising individuals who turned their passions into a lifetime of fulfilling work. After your initial search of “self,” you may still have a fuzzy sense of what you’re passionate about. To help refine your self-analysis, talk to people in your “sphere of influence.”

While it is often difficult for people to be introspective about what they love, your strengths may be clearer to those who know you well. The first place to start is your family. They have watched you grow and have seen what you excel at and enjoy. Ask your parents what they see as your greatest strengths. What weaknesses do they think you are blind to? What activities over the years have given you the greatest joy? Just keep in mind that, while your parents and other family members clearly know you best, their perspective may be somewhat biased. Michael Dell of Dell Computers originally enrolled in premed courses while in college to please his father, who was an orthodontist.<sup>2</sup> He would hide his computers in his roommate’s bathtub while his parents came to visit.<sup>3</sup> In your search, also go outside your family and ask your friends, teachers, and former work associates (even if the latter group is limited to your old manager at McDonald’s). How do they perceive you? The insight others provide is usually surprising. We all have blind spots that prevent us from seeing ourselves in a clear light. Seeking the opinions of others can help us overcome those blind spots and better understand our true passions.

During your search of “self,” you may realize that you are passionate about something but haven’t yet developed the skill set to successfully translate that passion into a viable business. For example, you may fall in love with a new restaurant idea—say, fast-casual Thai—but never have worked in a restaurant. Opening a restaurant is a worthy goal, but many students don’t want to put in the effort to learn about the business. Instead of going to work as a waiter in a restaurant upon graduation, they will take a corporate job with a life insurance company. They rationalize that the pay is better and this will give them the nest egg needed to launch their restaurant. While we don’t want to downplay the importance of cash flow, if you or others on your team haven’t earned some deep experience in the operations of a restaurant, you will burn through your nest egg quickly and likely fail. Instead of taking the bigger paycheck, go work at a restaurant. You’ll learn what customers like and how to deliver it cost effectively, while also earning a bit of money. More importantly, you will have an “apprenticeship” at a successfully run restaurant and will learn many of the major areas that you need to watch out for when the time comes to launch your own restaurant. This apprenticeship won’t make you rich in the short-term, but it will provide a platform for greater personal wealth and fulfillment in the long run. If you truly want to be an entrepreneur, you will need to make countless sacrifices. One of the first may be bypassing a higher-paying job for the opportunity to roll up your sleeves and gain hands-on experience in your field of choice. Just remember that the knowledge you gain will be far more valuable than the salary you give up.

Once you identify your passions, you have a strong base to start to identify ideas for business opportunities. Today’s business environment is intensely competitive, and simple replication (another computer company) is often a recipe for failure. You will need to work on developing ideas that are unique and have something in them that can be a source of sustainable competitive advantage. This process is the focus of the next section, and it will help you understand how to take a basic idea and turn it into a great opportunity.

## Idea Multiplication

All great ideas start with a seed of an idea. The trick is moving from that seed to something that is robust, exciting, and powerful. Doing so requires input from others, such as your fellow co-founders, trusted mentors, friends, and family. Spend as much time as possible brainstorming your idea with this group. These informal conversations help you think through the idea and flesh it out. You will learn more about some of the shortcomings or challenges of the business

idea, and you will also gain new insights on how it might grow beyond that first product or service.

We offer one caution, however: Avoid becoming a “cocktail-party entrepreneur.” This is the individual who always talks of becoming an entrepreneur or brags of the ideas he or she thought of that others turned into exciting, profitable ventures. In other words, a cocktail-party entrepreneur is all talk and no action. Anybody can be a cocktail-party entrepreneur because it doesn’t require any effort or commitment, just a few people who are willing to listen. To become a true entrepreneur requires effort beyond that first conversation. It requires continual escalation of commitment.

We have found a few useful processes that help move you beyond the simple initial idea. The first is called **idea multiplication** and is best exemplified by IDEO, the idea think tank responsible for many of the product innovations we take for granted. For instance, that thick, grippable toothbrush you use every morning was developed by IDEO, as was the design of your computer monitor and any number of other products you use every day. Figure 3.1 highlights the top IDEO innovations over the years. IDEO, founded by Stanford engineering professor David Kelley, is hired by leading corporations worldwide to develop and design new products. We can learn a lot by observing its process.<sup>4</sup> There are four basic steps: (1) Gather stimuli, (2) multiply stimuli, (3) create customer concepts, and (4) optimize practicality. Let’s talk about each.



John Hard/Life pictures/Getty Images News and Sport Services

---

**David Kelly, the Stanford engineering professor who founded IDEO, an innovative design firm.**

---

**Gather Stimuli.** All good ideas start with the customer. Most often, entrepreneurs come across ideas by noting that there is some product or service they would like but can’t find. This is your first interaction with a customer—yourself. To validate this idea, you need to go further by gathering stimuli.<sup>5</sup> IDEO does this through a process called *customer anthropology*, in which the IDEO team goes out and observes customers in action in their natural environment and identifies their pain points.<sup>6</sup> For example, in an ABC *Nightline* segment about IDEO, the team went to a grocery store to better understand how customers shop and, more specifically, how they use a shopping basket. The team’s mission was to observe, ask questions, and record information. They did not ask leading questions in hopes that the customer would validate a preconceived notion of what that shopping cart should be. Instead, the questions were open ended.

Beware the leading question. As an entrepreneur who is excited about your concept, you may find it all too easy to ask, “Wouldn’t your life be better if you had concept X?” or “Don’t you think my product/service idea is better than what exists?” While this might be a direct way to validate your idea, it requires that people answer honestly and understand exactly what they need. Most people like to be nice, and they want to be supportive of new ideas—until they actually have to pay money for them. Also, many times people can’t envision your product/service until it actually exists, so their feedback may be biased.

During the “gathering stimuli” phase, act as if you were Dian Fossey observing mountain gorillas in Africa—just *observe*. Ideally, you’ll gather stimuli as a team so that you have multiple interpretations of what you have learned.

**Multiply Stimuli.** The next phase in the IDEO process is to multiply stimuli. Here, the team members report back on their findings and then start brainstorming on the concept and how to improve upon the solution. One of our colleagues shared with us the trick of comedy

Product	Year	Description
Computer mouse	1981	A computer mouse for navigating a computer desktop.
Compass	1982	The precursor to the modern day laptop.
Microsoft mouse	1987	An ergonomically designed mouse for use with Windows.
Ford car audio system	1989	Audio system design for Ford automobiles.
Aerobie football	1992	Foam football with fins to stabilize the ball in air.
ATM wall surround	1993	ATMs designed with walls to provide privacy for transactions.
4000 & 7000 series LAN extender	1995	Cisco router series for controlling traffic on local-area computer networks.
Nike V12 sunglasses	1996	Breakthrough in style and functionality in sunglasses design.
ForeRunner	1997	Portable electronic heart defibrillator.
Yeoman XP-1	1997	GPS system for map plotting.
Humalog/humulin insulin pen	1998	Redesigned insulin pen injector for diabetes patients.
Palm V	1999	Stylish and technologically enhanced redesign of Palm's signature product.
Leap	2000	Scientifically designed desk chair for enhanced comfort and back support.
i-Zone	2000	Disposable instant camera intended for children's market.
Acela	2000	Helped design customer-centric features of Amtrak's high-speed train.
Eyemodeule2	2001	Digital camera for use with Handspring PDAs.
Apollo booster	2001	Redesign of children's car seats for Evenflo.
Muji CD player	2002	Wall-mounted CD player with simple, artistic design.
MoneyMaker Deep Lift Pump	2003	Human-powered irrigation pump for use in impoverished regions.
Windows home computing concept	2005	Computer interface linking personal entertainment and home computing units.
Shimano coasting bicycle	2006	Comfortable and low-maintenance bicycle to attract casual cyclists.
Ethos water bottle	2007	Designed to convey the mission of providing clean water to Third World children.
Wee Generation diaper bag	2008	Eco-friendly diaper bag that is functional and durable.
Peek Smartphone alternative	2009	Simple and cost-conscious mobile device to access e-mail.

**Figure 3.1****IDEO Innovations over the Years<sup>7</sup>**

improv for facilitating this process. A group of actors (usually three to four) poses a situation to the audience and then lets the audience shout out the next situation or reply that one actor is to give to another. From these audience suggestions, the actors build a hilarious skit. The key to success is to always say, “Yes, and . . .” Doing so allows the skit to build upon itself and create a seamless and comical whole. Likewise, multiplying stimuli requires the team to take the input of others and build upon it. Be a bit wild-eyed in this process. Let all ideas, no

matter how far-fetched, be heard and built upon because, even if you don't incorporate them into the final concept, they might lead to new insights that are ultimately important to the product's competitive advantage.

Remember that "Yes, and . . ." means that you build upon the input of your colleagues. All too often in a group setting it is easy to say, "That won't work because . . ." These kinds of devil's advocate debates, while important in the later phases of business development, can prematurely kill off creative extensions in this early phase. Also beware of "Yes, but . . ." statements, which are really just another way of saying, "Your idea won't work and here's why . . ." The key to this phase of development is to generate as many diverse ideas as possible.

As you go through this multiplication stage, *brain-writing* is a useful technique to avoid prematurely squashing interesting extensions. The process is like brainstorming, but the focus is on written rather than verbal communication. The biggest shortcoming of brainstorming is that it opens up the opportunity for the most vocal or opinionated members of the group to dominate the conversation and idea-generation process. In contrast, brain-writing ensures that everyone has a chance to contribute ideas. To start, the team identifies a number of core alternative variations to the central idea (if you have a disparate team, as you might for an entrepreneurship class, use each member's favored idea). Put the core ideas onto separate flip-chart sheets and attach them to the wall. Then the team and trusted friends, or classmates, go around and add "Yes, and . . ." enhancements to each idea. Keep circulating among the flip-chart sheets until everyone has had an opportunity to think about and add to each idea. At the end of that cycle, you'll have several interesting enhancements to consider. Instead of publicly discussing the ideas, have everybody vote on the three to five they like best by placing different-colored sticky notes on the sheets. In essence, this is another "market test" in which your team and other interested parties are gauging the viability of the idea.<sup>8</sup>

**Create Customer Concepts.** Once you've narrowed the field to the idea and features you think have the most potential, the next step is to create customer concepts. In other words, build a simple mock-up of what the product will look like. This helps the team visualize the final product and see which features/attributes are appealing, which are detrimental, and which are nice to have but not necessary. Keep in mind that this mock-up doesn't need to be functional; it is just a tool to solidify what everybody is visualizing and to help the team think through how the product should be modified.

When your team is developing a service, your mock-up won't necessarily be a physical representation but rather some kind of abstract modeling of what you hope to achieve. For example, the initial mock-up for a restaurant is often just a menu. Entrepreneurs who want to take the research process even further will often test the product or service in a low-cost way. Wally Amos was the first African-American talent agent for William Morris. In building his clientele, Wally would greet potential clients with chocolate chip cookies. The cookies were a hit, and Wally continually refined and tested variations of his recipe. In 1975, Wally decided to sell his cookies, and the Famous Amos Chocolate Chip Cookie store was born.<sup>9</sup> Wally's process allowed him to get a reaction to the recipes and think through how to modify them to better suit customer expectations and tastes. This process allows for rapid-fire prototyping of ideas, and it also provides the luxury of failing early and often before making substantial investments in a bricks-and-mortar establishment.

**Optimize Practicality.** Quite often at this stage people "overdevelop" the product and incorporate every bell and whistle that the team has come up with during the brainstorming process. This is fine—the next and last step is to optimize practicality, when the team will identify those features that are unnecessary, impractical, or simply too expensive.

This is the phase in which it is important to play devil's advocate. As the IDEO developers state, it is a time for the "grown-ups" to decide which features are the most important to optimize. If the previous steps have gone well, the team has learned a tremendous amount about what the customer may want, and that means they have a deeper understanding of the features/attributes that create the greatest value for the customer. Referring to the Jim Poss case<sup>10</sup> presented at the end of this chapter, Jim and his team found that the most important attributes of his solar-powered trash receptacles were (1) durability—the bins were in public places, and rough treatment or vandalism was a real threat; (2) size—the receptacle couldn't be overly large, or it wouldn't fit in the public places intended, and the bags couldn't weigh too much when filled; and (3) price—the higher up-front purchase cost had to be offset by the reduced trips to collect trash so the receptacle would pay for itself within a year. Understanding these basic parameters helped Jim's team refine its original design. For durability, they found that sheet metal was a cost-effective casing, that a Lexan plastic cover on the solar panel prevented vandalism and accidental chipping, and so forth. They went through a similar process to determine the right size. These steps helped them to design a product that the customer would want at a price the customer was willing to pay.

The entire idea-generation process is iterative. At each of the four steps we've presented, you learn, adjust, and refine. You start to understand the critical criteria that customers use in their purchasing decision and the pain points in building your product or delivering your service. This process allows you to identify and refine your idea with relatively little cost, compared to the costs you'd incur if you immediately opened your doors for business with what you believed to be the most important attributes. Nonetheless, up to this point you still don't know whether your idea, which is now very robust and well thought out, is a viable opportunity.

## Is Your Idea an Opportunity?

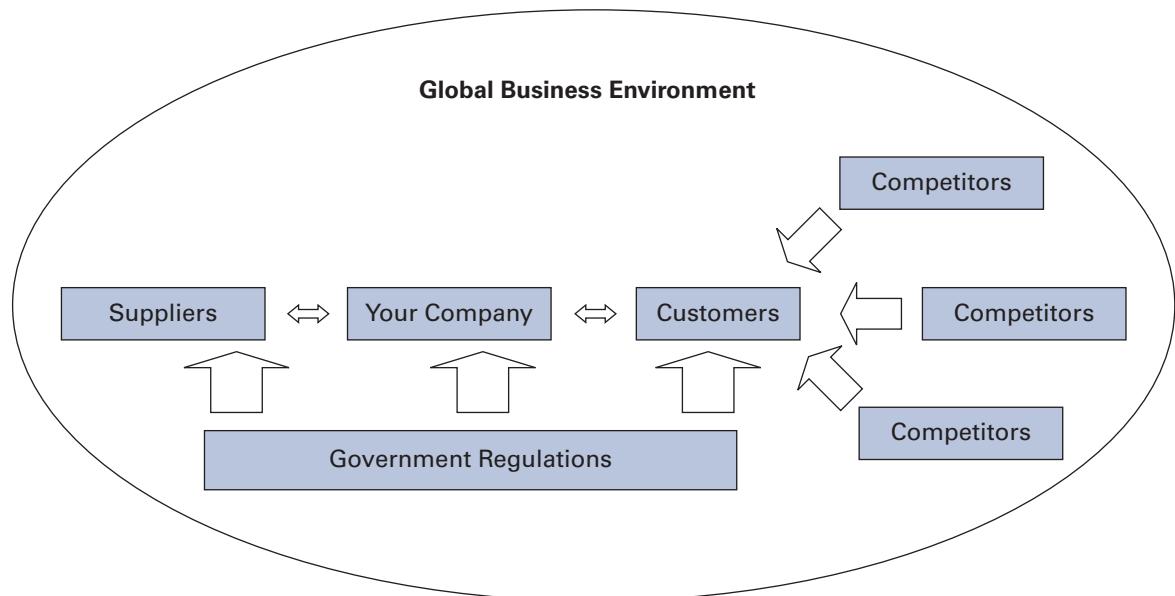
---

While the idea-generation process helps you shape your idea so that it is clearer and more robust, it is only part of the process. The difference between venture success and failure is a function of whether your idea is truly an opportunity. Before quitting your job and investing your own resources (as well as those of your family and friends), spend some time studying the viability of your idea. There are five major areas you need to fully understand prior to your launch: (1) customers, (2) competitors, (3) suppliers and vendors, (4) the government, and (5) the broader global environment (see Figure 3.2). We'll discuss each of these areas in turn.

### The Customer

Who is your customer? This broad question, the first you must answer, can be problematic. For instance, you might be tempted to think, if you're hoping to open a restaurant, that anyone who would want to eat in a restaurant is your customer: in other words, just about everyone in the world except for the few hundred hermits spread out across the country. But you need to narrow down your customer base so that you can optimize the features most important to your customer. So a better question is, "Who is your *core* customer?" Understanding who your primary customer is lets you better direct your efforts and resources to reach that customer. You can further refine your definition.

Starting with your initial definition, break your customers down into three categories: (1) primary target audience (PTA), (2) secondary target audience (STA), and (3) tertiary target audience (TTA). Most of your attention should focus on the PTA. These are the customers you believe are most likely to buy at a price that preserves your margins and with a frequency that

**Figure 3.2**

### The opportunity space

reaches your target revenues. Let's consider our fast-casual Thai restaurant example. The sector is growing, even during an economic downturn, as consumers seek less-expensive food that does not sacrifice quality. Fast-casual restaurants usually have larger footprints (more square feet) than fast-food restaurants and food-court outlets. Thus, you want a customer willing to pay a bit more than a fast-food customer for perceived higher quality. A wise location might be a destination mall with tenants like Barnes & Noble, Pottery Barn, and other stores that attract middle-income and higher-income shoppers. Your PTA, in this situation, might be soccer moms (30 to 45 years old, with household incomes ranging from \$50,000 to \$150,000). These women tend to shop, watch what they eat, and enjoy ethnic food.

During the investigation stage, you would focus your attention on better understanding your PTA. How often do they shop? How often do they eat out? What meals are they more likely to eat outside the home? What other activities do they participate in besides shopping and dining out? What you are collecting is information about things like income and ethnicity (demographics), and about personality traits and values (psychographics)<sup>11</sup>. Both categories help you design and market your product or service. During the launch phase, you would design the decor in a manner that most appeals to the PTA. You would create a menu that addresses their dietary concerns and appeals to their palette. During operations, you would market toward your PTA and train your employees to interact with them in an appropriate and effective manner. Note that the efforts across the three stages of your venture (investigation, launch, and operations) are different than they would be if you were launching a fast-food restaurant or a fancy sit-down French restaurant because your target audience is different.

While you should focus most of your attention on your PTA, the STA group also deserves attention. The PTA may be your most frequent, loyal customers, but to increase your revenues, you'll want to bring in some of your STA as well. In the restaurant example, your STA may be men with similar demographics as your PTA, older couples who are active and near retirement age, and younger yuppie post-college working professionals (see the box describing the demographics of fast-casual customers). These groups are likely to find your restaurant appealing but may not attend with the same frequency (possibly more on weekends

or during the dinner hour versus lunch). Your STA may also be part of your growth strategy. For instance, after you get past your first two to three restaurants, you may choose to expand your menu or your location profile (urban centers, for instance). Understanding which STA is the most lucrative helps you make better growth decisions.

## Fast-Casual Demographics

The most often cited reason for the growth in the fast-casual segment is the generation of consumers who grew up on fast food and won't eat it anymore. Add the aging baby boomers who are looking for healthier alternatives and who can afford to pay a little more for better quality. The price of a meal in a moderately priced restaurant has dropped; it's now only 25% more than the price of a meal purchased in a grocery store and prepared at home ... making dining out an economically viable alternative. Other fast-casual demos:

- The 18–34 age group is most likely to opt for fast-casual and makes up 37% of the traffic at such outlets.
- A newly emerging segment of fast-casual consumers is married, dual-income couples with no kids (known as "DINKSs"). These "DINKs" range in age from 35 to 54, and 38% own a home worth \$100,000 to \$199,000. They make up 28% of the customer base.

- 15% of fast-casual customers were under 18.
- Casual dining is too slow for kids ... parents don't want to eat fast food.
- Fast-casual restaurants offer teens on dates a destination their parents are comfortable with that does not serve alcohol.
- Casual dining companies are responding to the fast-casual trend by aggressively marketing takeout business.
- Casual dining has now become an event ... not a spur-of-the-moment dining decision.

Excerpted from E-Business Trends (Food and Beverage). August 21, 2002. [www.army.mil/cfsc/documents/business/trends/\\_E-TRENDS-8-21-02.doc](http://www.army.mil/cfsc/documents/business/trends/_E-TRENDS-8-21-02.doc). Updated with facts from Webinar: Fast-Casual Restaurant Trends Forecast 2009. [www.fastcasual.com/specialpub.php?i=97&s=4](http://www.fastcasual.com/specialpub.php?i=97&s=4); and Minnick, Fred. Knowing Your Customer. *Fast Casual Magazine*. May 30, 2006. [www.fastcasual.com/article.php?id=5120&na=1&pvc=43](http://www.fastcasual.com/article.php?id=5120&na=1&pvc=43).

Finally, your TTA requires a little attention. During the investigation and launch stage, you shouldn't spend much time on the TTA. However, once you begin operating, a TTA may emerge that has more potential than you originally realized. Keeping your eyes and ears open during operations helps you adjust and refine your opportunity to better capture the most lucrative customers. In our Thai restaurant example, you might find that soccer moms aren't your PTA but that some unforeseen group emerges, such as university students. If you segment your customer groups throughout the three stages as we have outlined, you'll be better prepared to adapt your business model if some of your preconceptions turn out to be incorrect.

We've said that it's important to understand your audience's demographics and psychographics. Part of your investigation phase should include creating customer profiles. Figure 3.3 provides a sampling of the types of demographics and psychographics that might be used in describing your customer.

**Trends.** Customers aren't static groups that remain the same over time. They evolve; they change; they move from one profile to another. In order to best capture customers, you need to spot trends that are currently influencing their buying behavior and that might influence it in the future. When considering trends, look at broader macro trends and then funnel down to a more narrow focus on how those trends affect your customer groups. Trends might also occur within customer groups that don't affect the broader population.

Demographics	Psychographics
Age	Social group (white collar, blue collar, etc.)
Gender	Lifestyle (mainstream, sexual orientation, materialistic, active, athletic, etc.)
Household income	Personality traits (worriers, Type A's, shy, extroverted, etc.)
Family size/family life cycle	Values (liberal, conservative, open minded, traditional, etc.)
Occupation	
Education level	
Religion	
Ethnicity/heritage	
Nationality	
Social class	
Marital status	

**Figure 3.3**

### Common demographic/psychographic categories

One of the most influential trends in the macro environment within the United States over the last 50 years has been the life cycle of the baby boom generation. Born between 1946 and 1964, the country's 77.6 million baby boomers are usually married (69.4%), well educated (college graduation rates hit 19.1% at the end of the boomer generation, compared to just 6% for prior generations), and active (46% of boomers exercise regularly).<sup>12</sup> What links them as a generation is the experience of growing up in post–World War II America, a time of tremendous growth and change in this nation's history. Since they represent such a large percentage of the U.S. population, it is no wonder that they have created numerous new categories of products and services. For example, in the 1950s, the disposable diaper industry emerged and then exploded to the point where today it has \$4 billion in sales. In the late 1950s and through the 1960s, the rapidly growing population created a need for large numbers of new schools, which in turn led to a building frenzy. (Now you know why so many schools were named after former President John F. Kennedy.) In the late 1960s and the 1970s, the rock-and-roll industry exploded. Then in the 1980s, as these baby boomers became parents, a new car category was created (the minivan), which saved Chrysler from bankruptcy. In the 1990s, the boomers were in their prime working years, and new investment categories emerged to help them plan for their retirement and their children's college educations. Today, as the boomers age, we see growth in pharmaceuticals and other industries related to the more mature segment. According to one market research firm, "boomers are expected to change America's concepts of aging, just as they have about every previous life stage they have passed through."<sup>13</sup> How does this macro trend influence your idea?

Numerous macro trends affect the potential demand for your product or service. Trends create new product/service categories, or emerging markets, that can be especially fruitful places to find strong entrepreneurial opportunities. The convergence of multiple trends enhances the power of an opportunity like the Internet boom. First, the personal computer (PC) was common in the workplace, and as a result, many Americans grew comfortable using it. That led to a proliferation of PCs in the home, especially for children and teenagers who used it for school, work, and video games. While the Internet had been available for decades, the development by Tim Berners-Lee of the World Wide Web (WWW or Web) system of hyperlinks connecting remote computers, followed by the development of the Mosaic Web browser (the precursor to Netscape and Explorer) and the proliferation of Internet service providers like Prodigy and AOL, created huge opportunities for commerce online. From the very first domain name—symbolics.com—assigned in 1985, the Web has evolved into an

integral component of the modern economy. Even though many dot-coms failed, others, like eBay and Amazon, have established themselves as profitable household names. That many of these successful businesses have become multi-*billion*-dollar companies in less than a decade speaks to the incredible power of convergent trends.

Trends also occur in smaller market segments and may be just as powerful as macro trends; in fact, they may be precursors to larger macro trends. For example, according to Packaged Facts, a market research consultancy, the market for religious products (including blockbuster movies, pop music, clothing, books, and even games and toys) will reach \$6 billion in annual sales by 2013, up from the \$5.6 billion sold in 2004.<sup>14</sup> Indeed, major companies are capitalizing on this market. At the end of 2005, Starbucks announced it would be featuring a quotation on its coffee cups from Rick Warren, pastor and best-selling author of *The Purpose-Driven Life*, which includes the line “You were made by God and for God, and until you understand that, life will never make sense.”<sup>15</sup> While the quote is just one of many that the company featured on its coffee cups, you can rest assured that the decision to include it was a calculated move to make the company’s products more appealing to the growing Christian market.

Another important trend is the changing demographics of the U.S. population. By many estimates, in 2030 nearly one in four U.S. residents will be Hispanic if current trends hold.<sup>16</sup> With the incredible growth in both size and purchasing power of this untapped market, it’s no wonder that companies are scrambling to serve emerging opportunities. The past decade has seen a proliferation of media outlets targeting the Spanish-speaking U.S. population, and since some pundits believe the Hispanic population could emerge as the next middle class, it’s likely more and more companies will find ways to capture this enormous demographic.

Trends often foretell emerging markets and suggest when the window of opportunity for an industry is about to open. Figure 3.4 lists some influential trends over the last 50 years. However, it is the underlying convergence of trends that helps us measure the power of our ideas and whether they are truly opportunities.

**How Big Is the Market?** Trends suggest increasing market demand. Thus, one of the questions that distinguish ideas from opportunities asks whether there is sufficient market demand to generate the level of revenues necessary to make this an exciting career option. As we pointed out in Chapter 2, an entrepreneur typically needs the new venture to generate a minimum of \$600,000 per year in revenue to meet market rates on his or her forgone salary of \$70,000 plus benefits. While this level might make a nice “mom and pop” store, many students are interested in creating something bigger. The larger your goals, the more important your market-demand forecasts. To accurately gauge your demand, start at the larger macro market and funnel demand down to your segment and your geographic location. Granted,

Trend	Impact
Baby boom generation	Pampers, rock ‘n’ roll, television, minivans, real estate, McMansions, etc.
Personal computing	Internet, media on demand, electronic publishing, spreadsheets, electronic communication
Obesity	Drain on health care system, growth of diet industry, changes in food industry, health clubs, home gyms
Dual-income households	Child care, home services – landscaping, housecleaning, prepared foods

**Figure 3.4**

**Important trends over the last 50 years**

Overall Amount Spent on Dining Out Projected for 2007	<b>\$491.2 Billion<sup>17</sup></b>
Size of Market Segments	
Full-Service Restaurants	<b>\$181.6 Billion<sup>18</sup></b>
Quick-Service Restaurants (including fast-casual)	<b>\$150.1 Billion</b>
Cafeterias, Grills, & Buffets	<b>\$5.4 Billion</b>
Social Caterers	<b>\$6.1 Billion</b>
Snack and Nonalcoholic Beverage Bars	<b>\$20.2 Billion</b>
Bars and Taverns	<b>\$15.8 Billion</b>
Market Share for Ethnic Restaurants	<b>\$163.7 Billion<sup>19</sup></b>
Market Share by Region	
New England	<b>\$23.1 Billion<sup>20</sup></b>
Middle Atlantic	<b>\$54.1 Billion</b>
South Atlantic	<b>\$81.2 Billion</b>
East North Central	<b>\$61.4 Billion</b>
East South Central	<b>\$21.5 Billion</b>
West North Central	<b>\$25.8 Billion</b>
West South Central	<b>\$44.5 Billion</b>
Mountain	<b>\$28.9 Billion</b>
Pacific	<b>\$73.4 Billion</b>
Massachusetts	
Overall Restaurant Sales	<b>\$11.7 Billion<sup>21</sup></b>
Ethnic	<b>\$245.7 Million<sup>22</sup></b>
Natick (we are opening in Natick shopping district)	
Massachusetts Population.....6.4M	<b>\$234 Million<sup>23</sup></b>
Natick Population.....32K	
Framingham Population.....67K	
Wellesley Population.....29K	
Soccer Moms (women between 30 and 45).....14K	<b>\$19 Million</b>

**Figure 3.5****Market size for Thai fast-casual restaurant**

as you expand, you'll likely move beyond your segment and your geographic origins, but the most critical years for any venture are its first two. You need to be certain that you can survive the startup, and that means you need to be confident of your base demand.

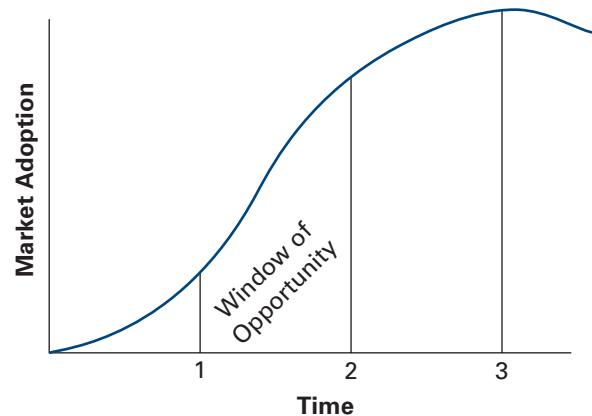
Let's go back to our Thai fast-casual restaurant example to begin to understand how large our market demand might be. Figure 3.5 steps through the demand forecast. It is best to start with the overall market size—in this case, the size of the entire restaurant industry in the United States. Next, segment the industry into relevant categories. We are interested in both the relative size of the fast-casual segment and the size of the ethnic segment. It would be ideal to find the size of the fast-casual-ethnic (or better yet, Thai) segment, but as you narrow down to your opportunity, there is likely to be less information because you may be riding new trends that suggest future demand that has yet to materialize. Finally, during your initial launch, you'll likely have some geographic focus. Extrapolate your overall market data to capture your geographic market. In this case, we took the population of the towns within a five-mile drive along the major thoroughfare on which our restaurant would be located and multiplied that percentage of the state population by the total spent in the state (Massachusetts). Basically, for this last step, you should try to assess the number of soccer moms in your geographic reach. The U.S. Census makes this very easy, as it breaks out demographics by town. Thus, it appears that there are roughly 14,000 soccer moms in this target market.

**Market Size Today and into the Future.** While it is important to size your market today, you'll also need to know how big it will be in the future. If you are taking advantage of trends, your market is likely growing. Attractive opportunities open up in growing markets because there is more demand than supply, and a new firm doesn't need to compete on price. In the early years, when the firm is going through a rapid learning curve, operational expenses will be proportionately higher than in later years, when the firm has established efficient procedures and systems. Furthermore, market growth means that your competitors are seeking all the new customers entering the market rather than trying to steal customers away from you.

Projecting growth is notoriously difficult, but you can make some educated guesses by looking at trends and determining overall market size as described earlier. Then make some estimates of what type of market penetration you might be able to achieve and how long it will take you to get there. If all else fails, the easiest thing to do is to verify past growth. As trend analysis tells us, past growth is usually correlated with future growth, which means you can make reasonable estimates based on historical numbers. The **S-curve** is a powerful concept that highlights the diffusion of product acceptance over time.<sup>24</sup> When a product or innovation is first introduced, few people are aware of it. Typically, the firm has to educate consumers about why they need this product and the value it offers. Hence, the firm concentrates its effort on early adopters. It is expensive to develop the right concept and educate the consumer, but the firm can offset this cost somewhat by charging a high price.

As customers react to the concept, the company and other new entrants learn and modify the original product to better meet customer needs. At a certain point (designated as point 1 in Figure 3.6), customer awareness and demand exceed supply, and the market enters a fast-growth phase. During this time (the time between points 2 and 3 in Figure 3.6), a dominant design emerges, and new competitors enter to capture the “emerging market.” Typically, demand exceeds supply during this phase, meaning that competitors are primarily concerned with capturing new customers entering the market. After point 3, market demand and supply equalize, putting price pressure on the companies as they fight to capture market share from each other. Finally, innovations push the product toward obsolescence, and overall demand declines.

While it is hard to say what market size indicates the window is opening and what size indicates it is closing, research suggests that markets become attractive around \$20 million in revenue. Demand and supply tend to equalize around \$1 billion.



**Figure 3.6**

**S-curve**

**Frequency and Price.** Market size and growth are important, but we also need to think about how often our average customer buys our product or service and how much he or she is willing to pay. Ideally, our product or service would have perfectly inelastic demand: The customer would pay any price to have it. For a product with elastic demand, the quantity demanded will go down if the price goes up, and vice versa. Inelasticity results in the opposite—whether prices increase or decrease, the demand for the product stays stable. Consider front row seats for your favorite baseball team or theater production. Nearly everyone would like to sit in the front row, but most of us can't or don't because the price is too high. However, if the price were lowered by a certain amount, we might be more than happy to buy the tickets. This is an example of elastic demand: As price decreases, demand for that product increases.

In contrast, consider gasoline. People who rely on a car to get to work have little choice but to pay the prices charged at the pump. If prices go down, they are unlikely to buy more gas, and if prices go up, they will still need to buy enough gas to get to work and run errands. While not perfectly inelastic, the demand for gasoline is relatively inelastic. In reality, there will almost always be elasticity in customer demand, and our price will be a function of that

elasticity. We need to determine the optimal price that encourages regular purchases, accounts for the value inherent in our product, and allows us to earn an attractive margin on the sale. These three variables are highly correlated, and an imbalance would hurt the profitability and even the viability of the firm.

In a classic mistake, some entrepreneurs use a penetration-pricing strategy. They reason that in order to pull customers from existing alternatives, the firm needs to price lower than the competition. Then, once the product is able to gain acceptance and market share, the company can raise prices to increase gross margins and better reflect underlying value. There are a number of flaws in this logic. First, as we've noted, attractive ventures are often launched in emerging markets where demand exceeds supply. This means that price is relatively inelastic. Consumers want the product and are willing to pay a premium for it. Second, many new products are designed to be better than existing alternatives. These products offer greater value than competitive products, and the price should reflect this greater value, especially since it usually costs more to add the features that led to it. Third, price sends a signal to the customer. If a product with greater value is priced lower than or the same as competing products, customers will interpret that signal to mean it isn't as good, despite claims that it has greater value.

Fourth, even if customers flock to the low-priced product, this rapid increase in demand can sometimes cause serious problems for a startup. Demand at that price may exceed your ability to supply, resulting in stock-outs. Consumers are notoriously fickle and are just as likely to go to a competitor as wait for your backlog to catch up.<sup>25</sup> Finally, these same customers may resist when you try to recapture value by raising prices in the future. They will have developed an internal sense of the value of your product, and they may take this opportunity to try other alternatives. The last thing you want is a business built around customers who are always searching for the lowest price. These will be the first people to leave you when a competitor finds a way to offer a lower price.

The Internet boom and bust saw many poor pricing decisions. Internet firms entered the market at very low price points. Take kozmo.com, for example. Many thought the company's revolutionary approach to delivering things like groceries and videos would change the way people shopped, but in the end, the value proposition was too good to be true. The company was delivering goods at a cost higher than it was charging. The total ticket for a simple order of a few sodas, a bag of chips, and a candy bar might be only \$7, but kozmo.com was paying as much as \$10 to the person who had to find those items and then deliver them. The venture-capital-backed company burned through almost all its cash before it finally recognized the flaw of its pricing logic, but by then, it was too late.<sup>26</sup>

Webvan is an eerily similar example. In its attempt to deliver groceries directly to consumers, the company failed to adapt its business model to the extremely thin gross profit margins of the grocery business. Webvan offered to deliver groceries free of charge, but the labor costs of deliveries, along with the warehousing needs of a large-scale grocery delivery operation, were such that the company was losing money on almost every order. Webvan burned through \$1 billion in cash before failing.<sup>27</sup> This is one of the primary rules of economics—you shut down the business if the price you are charging can't cover the direct costs of the good or service.

Peapod, a company that survived in the online local delivery segment, made the decision to go after a profitable opportunity in the marketplace. In 2000, Peapod partnered with food provider Royal Ahold, parent company of Stop & Shop and Giant Foods. This "clicks and bricks" strategy allowed Peapod to position itself as a lifestyle solution for those with busy schedules. Peapod offers a select 8,000 items—much less than the over 200,000 items found in partnering grocery stores. Peapod limits orders to a \$60 minimum, and its delivery fee lowers as the size of the order increases. Peapod can claim that its average order size is \$150 and that its sales enjoyed a greater than 25% year-over-year growth rate in 2008.<sup>28</sup>

The argument many unsuccessful Internet entrepreneurs made at the time was that the “number of eyeballs” looking at a site was more important than profitability, which firms figured would come later as they developed a critical mass of customers. These firms reasoned that they could charge lower prices than brick-and-mortar outlets (traditional stores that the customer had to physically visit) because they didn’t have the overhead costs of renting or buying so many store locations. Furthermore, Internet companies could serve a larger volume of customers via a single Website than a chain of stores could serve in thousands of physical locations. For the most part, these strategies failed due to a number of reasons.

First, the Internet firms continued reducing prices to the point where they weren’t generating a positive gross margin. The continued decrease in price was a function of competition. New online firms that were basically identical started to appear. For instance, do you remember the difference between pets.com and petopia.com? Traditional retailers responded by adding Websites as an additional channel of distribution. Toys “R” Us was able to enter and secure new customers at one-tenth the cost of Toys.com due to higher name recognition.

Finding the right price to charge is difficult. It requires understanding your cost structure. You cannot price under your cost of goods sold (COGS) for an extended period of time unless you have lots of financing (and are certain that access to financing will continue into the future). Thus, your minimum price should be above your COGS. Some firms look at their cost to produce a unit of the product and then add a set percentage on top of that cost to arrive at the price. This is called **cost-plus pricing**, and the problem is that it may set your price lower or higher than the underlying value of your product or service. For example, if you price at 40% above marginal cost, that may result in your product being a great value (software usually has gross margins of 70% or better) or drastically overpriced (groceries often have gross margins in the 20% range).

A better approach is to assess market prices for competing products. For instance, consider GMAT test-preparation courses that help students strengthen their business school applications. At the time of this writing, a quick scan of Kaplan and Princeton Review reveals that prices for their classroom GMAT programs are \$1,449 and \$1,249, respectively. Given the similarities of the content, structure, and results of these programs, it is no surprise that their prices are comparable. The slight difference reflects the differences in marketing and operational strategy as well as the value customers perceive in the services. Over the years, Kaplan and Princeton Review have gained deep insight into what parents will pay. For an entrepreneur entering this marketplace, Kaplan and Princeton Review provide a starting point in deciding what price can be charged. The entrepreneur would adjust his or her price based on the perceived difference in value of the offering.

Many entrepreneurs claim that they have no direct competition so it is impossible to determine how much customers might pay. In such cases, which are very rare, it is essential to understand how customers are currently meeting the need that you propose to fill. Assess how much it costs them to fulfill this need and then determine a price that reflects the new process plus a premium for the added value your product delivers.

**Margins.** For new ventures, research suggests that gross margins of 40% are a good benchmark that distinguishes more attractive from less attractive opportunities. It is important to have higher gross margins early in the venture’s life because operating costs during the early years are disproportionately high due to learning curve effects. For instance, no matter how experienced they are in the industry, your team will incur costs as you train yourselves and new hires. Over time, the team will become more efficient, and the associated costs of operations will reach a stability point. Another reason for keeping margins high is that the new venture will incur costs prior to generating sales associated with those costs. For instance, well before you are able to generate any leads or sales, you will need to hire salespeople and

invest time and money training them. Even if you are a sole proprietorship, you will incur costs associated with selling your product or service before you receive any cash associated with the sale. For instance, you may have travel expenses like airline tickets or gasoline for your car and infrastructure expenses like a new computer and office furniture. This lag between spending and earning creates a strain on cash flows, whether you are a one-person shop or a growing enterprise, and if your margins are thin to begin with, it will be harder to attract the investment needed to launch.

It typically takes three to five years for a firm to reach stability and for operating costs to stabilize. At this point, strong firms hope to achieve net income as a percentage of sales of 10% or better. If the net income margin is lower, it will be hard to generate internal cash for growth or to attract outside investors, to say nothing about generating returns for the founding team.

The exceptions to this rule are businesses that can generate high volumes. During the 1980s and 1990s, many new ventures sought to replicate the Walmart concept. Staples, Office Max, Home Depot, and Lowe's are good examples. Gross margins on these businesses range from 10% to 33% and net income margins from 1.8% to 6.5%. However, the stores do such enormous volumes that they are still able to generate huge profits. For example, in the 12-month period ending on January 31, 2009, Walmart posted profits of \$13.4 billion, which is more in profits than the vast majority of all U.S. companies had in sales, and it was able to do so because it generated \$401 billion in sales during the same period. While Walmart's net profit margin of 3.3% is small by most measures, its sales and profit numbers are clear indicators that its business strategy is working.

The performance of these big companies suggests another kind of industry structure that can be very attractive—fragmented industries. Prior to the launch of Staples and Home Depot, people filled their office supply and hardware needs through “mom and pop” companies. These small enterprises served small geographic regions and rarely expanded beyond them. The big-box stores entered these markets and offered similar goods at much lower prices against which “mom and pop” firms couldn't compete.

While entering a fragmented industry and attempting to consolidate it, as big-box stores do, can create huge opportunities, the financial and time investments required are substantial. For instance, Arthur Blank and Bernard Marcus founded Home Depot in 1978 in the Atlanta area. While its individual stores had enormous sales and profit potential, the company needed significant up-front capital for the initial building costs and inventory, and it raised venture capital, followed by \$7.2 million from its 1981 public offering (which translates to \$16.8 million in 2008 dollars). Almost 10 years later, Thomas Stemberg founded Staples and followed a nearly identical path in office supplies. Here, again, the startup costs were enormous, and the company relied heavily on its founders' experience in retailing. Staples raised \$33.83 million in venture capital before it went public in April 1989, raising \$51.3 million.<sup>29</sup> The bottom line is that such opportunities are rarer than in emerging markets, and they require a team with extensive industry experience and access to venture capital or other large institutional financing resources.

**Reaching the Customer.** Reaching the customer can be very difficult, even for the most experienced entrepreneur. Take the example of the founder of Gourmet Stew.<sup>30</sup> After completing her MBA, she spent many years with one of the top three food producers in the country, where she gained a deeper understanding about the industry. In the 1980s, she joined a small food startup company that developed a new drink concept that became widely successful and was ultimately acquired by Kraft Foods. Still a young woman, she cashed out and started her own venture, Gourmet Stew. Its first product was beef stew in a jar, like Ragú spaghetti sauce. The product tasted better than competitors like Hormel Stew (in

a can). Despite her extensive entrepreneurial and industry experience and even though her product tasted better, the entrepreneur couldn't overcome one obstacle: how to reach the customer.

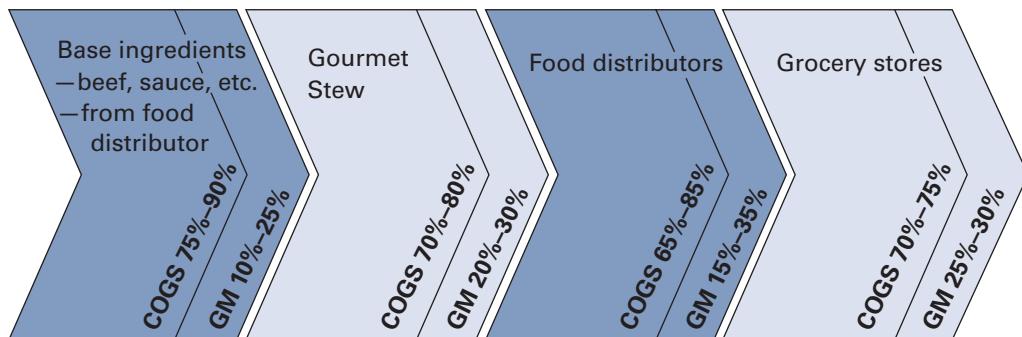
Stew in a jar is usually distributed in grocery stores, but this is a very difficult market to enter on a large scale. The industry is consolidated and mature, with only 19 chains throughout the entire country. Large product and food companies like Procter & Gamble and General Mills control much of the available shelf space, due to their power and ability to pay the required slotting fees.<sup>31</sup> Grocery stores also have an incentive to deal with fewer rather than more suppliers because it improves their internal efficiency.

Given that, companies that sell only a few products, such as Gourmet Stew, have a more difficult time accessing large chain stores. And even though smaller chains may find a unique product like Gourmet Stew appealing, it costs one-product companies more to distribute through these channels, since they have to deal with multiple vendors instead of sealing a few large distribution agreements. Alternatively, Gourmet Stew could work with a large food brokerage company, but that would mean giving a portion of its margins to the brokerage. With all these options, the economics of distribution make it almost impossible to generate a decent margin on this type of company.

One of the most overlooked keys to entrepreneurial success is distribution. How *do* you reach the customer? While Gourmet Stew might have been able to reach the customer through alternative distribution channels like the Internet, these are likely to generate lower sales volume and higher marketing expenses because you have to educate the customer not only about what your product is but also about where to find it.

It is important to understand the entire value chain for the industry you are competing in. You need to lay out the distribution of your product from raw materials all the way to the end consumer. Figure 3.7 captures the value chain for Gourmet Stew.<sup>32</sup> From the figure, you can see the respective gross margins of the players—note that their net income margins would be much lower if based on their operating costs. The higher gross margins of the grocery stores indicate their relative power. Consider whether there is a variation on your business idea that would allow you to enter the portion of the value chain where greater margins are available. In sum, you must understand the entire value chain in order to determine where opportunities to make a profit might exist.

While Gourmet Stew wasn't successful at gaining distribution, the box featuring Stacy's Pita Chips shows how a small food company can slowly gain distribution and build momentum to the point where it achieves a successful harvest for the entrepreneurs.



**Figure 3.7**

**Value chain of Gourmet Stew**

## **Stacy's Pita Chips Gaining Widespread Distribution**

Stacy's Pita Chips didn't start out as a snack food maker. Instead, Stacy Madison, a social worker by training, and Mark Andrus, a psychologist, wanted to open a restaurant. Their first venture was a small food cart that sold pita bread wraps in downtown Boston. They were instantly successful and soon had long lines of hungry customers waiting for their freshly made wraps. Some of these potential customers tired of waiting in line and would give up before placing an order. To minimize the number of lost customers, Stacy and Mark started serving seasoned pita chips, baked from the bread they had left at the end of each day. The pita chips were a hit. In addition to great roll-up sandwiches, customers had a delicious incentive while they waited in line. Eventually, the couple was running two businesses and had to make a choice. They chose the pita chips, figuring they'd be able to gain national growth more rapidly. A new venture was born.

Even though Stacy and Mark had a great product, the question was, "How could they reach the end consumer en masse?" Most people buy chips in the grocery store, but getting space in the snack aisle is nearly impossible. Large distributors sell to grocery stores, and they are interested only in products that their buyers (the grocery stores) want. Recognizing this problem, Stacy decided that there was another way

into this channel; Stacy's would place its chips in the natural food aisle and the in-store delis.

Stacy and Mark attended trade shows and made direct contact with grocery stores, sold them on their product, and secured trial placements in the stores. Stacy supplied display racks for her chips to each store and worked hard to increase consumer awareness by giving sample chips to shoppers. Without a distributor, Stacy's Pita Chips often shipped their product via UPS, but once they secured 10 or more stores in a particular geographic region, they went to the stores and asked who distributed snacks to them. The stores often contacted the distributors on Stacy's behalf, asking them to handle the product for them. Stacy noted, "Having customers that the distributor sold to gave us leverage. They wanted to carry our products because we created customer demand for them." Once Stacy's had a few large distributors in line, the company gained momentum, and other stores and distributors wanted to carry the product. In 2005, Stacy's hit \$60 million\* in sales, and Frito-Lay, the largest snack food maker in the world, finalized the acquisition of the company in January 2006.

Compiled from a personal interview with Stacy Madison, March 22, 2006.

\*Frito-Lay Is Extending Its Healthy Snack Offerings with the Acquisition of Stacy's Pita Chips, Randolph, Mass., for an Undisclosed Sum. *Brandweek* 46.43: 5(1). Nov. 28, 2005.

## **The Competition**

Would-be entrepreneurs often say, "I have a great idea, and the best part is there's NO COMPETITION." If that were true, then as long as you have a customer, you have a license to print money. However, most nascent entrepreneurs turn out to be defining their competition too narrowly. For example, an overly optimistic entrepreneur might suggest that Gourmet Stew has no competition because there are no other companies producing stew in a jar. That doesn't account for Hormel canned stew (direct competition). It doesn't account for the multitude of frozen pizzas and other prepared foods that customers can bring home from the grocery store (more direct competition). It ignores the customers' options of preparing their own secret recipe for stew (indirect competition) or going out to eat (substitute). In other words, Gourmet Stew's competition isn't just stew in a jar; it is all the other businesses competing for a share of the consumer's stomach. Entrepreneurs ignore these competitors and substitutes at their peril.

To fully identify the competition, start with the customer. How is the customer currently fulfilling the need or want you intend to fill? You must identify direct competitors, indirect competitors, and substitutes. The number and strength of your competitors mirror the market structure. In a mature market, the industry is likely consolidated, and the power of existing competitors is likely strong. From the Gourmet Stew example, the industry is highly consolidated. Five major prepared-food companies—Nestle S.A., Kraft Foods Inc., Unilever, Frito-Lay, Inc., and Cargill, Inc.—control 57% of the market.<sup>33</sup> Entering this market is difficult, as we saw earlier, because the major competitors control the primary channel of distribution.

Even if you successfully enter the market, the strength of your competitors enables them to retaliate. Competitors, because of their economies of scale and scope, can lower prices to a point that makes it difficult for new ventures to compete. They can spend more on their advertising campaign and other marketing expenditures and increase their visibility due to greater resource reserves or easier access to capital. The good news is that many times strong competitors won't bother with new startups because they're so small that they aren't noticeable or because they don't feel threatened in either the short or the medium term. However, entrepreneurs should plan for contingencies just in case the larger competitors retaliate earlier than expected.

When markets are emerging, like the market for video game consoles, fewer products compete for customers primarily because the demand exceeds the supply. The main struggle within these markets is trying to find and own the dominant design that will become the customer favorite. The classic example of convergence toward a dominant design is the PC operating system. In the early years, there was a multitude of potential operating systems that ran computers ranging from Apple to Tandy/Radio Shack. In the 1970s, Digital Research Inc.'s CP/M system looked to be the dominant system—until the company's founder, Gary Kildall, blew off a meeting with IBM officials looking for an operating system for the company's new PC. IBM then approached Microsoft, which had bought QDOS from Seattle Computer Co. for the foundation of its MS-DOS system. Meanwhile, Tandy/Radio Shack created a proprietary system, TRS-DOS, for its own computers. Figure 3.8 shows some of the competing systems, when they were designed, and when they went out of business. Note that by the late 1980s DOS controlled 85% of the marketplace, Apple had 7%, and all others were also-rans.<sup>34</sup> What this means is that firms in emerging markets have to work feverishly to design a better product and to communicate its benefits to customers because their competition is doing the same. MS-DOS became the dominant operating system primarily because it was included in the most popular PC at the time, the IBM PC. As PC design converged toward the IBM design, existing PC manufacturers and new manufacturers alike adopted the Microsoft DOS platform. This example highlights the evolution of most marketplaces. Once a dominant design is in place, the market moves rapidly to maturity.

<b>Operating System</b>	<b>Year Introduced</b>	<b>Year It Failed</b>
Digital Research Inc. CP/M	1976	1983
Tandy/Radio Shack TRS-DOS	1977	1987
Apple DOS	1978	1983
Seattle Computer Co. QDOS	1980	1981
Microsoft MS-DOS	1981	1995
Microsoft Windows	1983	
Apple Macintosh OS	1984	

**Figure 3.8**

**Operating systems move toward a dominant design**

Emerging markets are characterized by “stealth” competitors. Entrepreneurs often believe their idea is so unique that they will have a significant lead over would-be competitors. But just as your venture will operate “under the radar” as it designs its products, builds its infrastructure, and tests the product with a few early beta customers, so will a number of other new ventures likely be at similar stages of development. While it is relatively easy to conduct due diligence on identifiable competition, it is extremely difficult to learn about competition that isn’t yet in the marketplace. Thus, it is imperative for new ventures to scan the environment to identify and learn about “stealth” competition.

There are several sources of intelligence you can tap. It is probable that your competition is using inputs, and thus suppliers, similar to what you are. As you interview your potential suppliers, make sure to query them about similar companies with whom they are working. While the suppliers may not divulge this information, more often than not they don’t see it as a conflict of interest to do so. Outside professional equity capital can also help you determine competitors. Angels and venture capitalists see many deals and have knowledge about how an industry is developing even if they haven’t funded one of your “stealth” competitors. Again, you can talk to professional investors about who they see as strong emerging competitors. Furthermore, a number of widely available databases track and identify companies that receive equity financing. Price Waterhouse Coopers publishes MoneyTree,<sup>35</sup> which allows you to screen new investments by industry, region, and venture capitalists making the investment. VentureWire is one of many daily e-mail newsletters published by Dow Jones that tracks current deals—and the best part is that VentureWire Alert is free.<sup>36</sup> The smart entrepreneur will diligently monitor his or her industry and use these resources, as well as many others, to avoid being surprised by unforeseen competition. An excellent source of industry gossip is trade shows.

While your direct competition is most relevant to your success, you also should spend some time understanding why your target customer is interested in your indirect competitors and substitutes. As you increase your knowledge of the total marketplace, you will start to understand the key success factors (KSFs) that distinguish those firms that win and those that lose. KSFs are the attributes that influence where the customer spends money. If we think once again about Gourmet Stew, customers base their food purchasing decisions on a number of factors, including taste, price, convenience (time to prepare and serve), availability (the distribution channel issue discussed earlier), and healthy attributes of the food, among other factors. As you gather data on these factors, constructing a competitive profile matrix to identify the relative strength of each will help you decide how to position your venture in the marketplace (see Figure 3.9). Gauge how well your competitors are doing by tracking their revenues, gross margins, net income margins, and net profits. Note that we don’t yet know

	<b>Gourmet Stew</b>	<b>Hormel</b>	<b>Homemade</b>	<b>DiGiorno Pizza</b>
<b>Taste</b>	Good	Fair	Excellent	Fair
<b>Price</b>	High \$3.50	Medium \$1.89	Low	Very High \$6.50
<b>Convenience</b>	High	High	Low	High
<b>Availability</b>	Low	High	High	High
<b>Healthy</b>	Medium	Low	High	Medium
<b>Revenues</b>		<\$135 million*		\$500 million*
<b>Gross Margins</b>		23.7%*		34.9%*
<b>Net Income Margins</b>		16.5%*		
<b>Net Profit</b>		\$22.3 million*		loss*

\*Financial figures for Hormel and DiGiorno are for the whole company, not just the product.

**Figure 3.9**

### Competitive profile matrix

what the figures are for Gourmet Stew because it has yet to hit the marketplace. Likewise, “homemade stew” in the figure is the creation of the consumer, who buys all the ingredients separately at the grocery store.

As you examine the competitive profile matrix, you understand the competitors’ strategy and which customers they are targeting. Hormel, for example, is targeting price-sensitive, convenience-minded consumers. Typical customers might include males living on their own, college students, or others who don’t have the time or desire to cook but are living on a budget. Homemade stew, on the other hand, falls in the domain of persons who enjoy cooking and have more time. Stay-at-home parents may have the time to shop for all the ingredients and to cook the stew from scratch, or weekend gourmets might like to have something special for guests or family. Gourmet Stew might appeal to families where both parents work outside the home. They want quality food but don’t have the time to cook it from scratch and are not as sensitive to prices. Lastly, DiGiorno pizza (a higher-quality pizza) is targeting families who want something in the freezer for those nights that they just don’t have time to cook. While there are many more competitors than we have highlighted in the matrix, it is often best to pick representative competitors rather than to highlight every potential company. The matrix is a tool to help you understand the competitive landscape by drilling down deep on a few key competitors. Although you’ll want to be aware of every potential competitor and substitute, focusing on a few in depth will help you devise a successful strategy.

From this information, you can start to get the broad guidelines of the competitors’ strategies—Hormel is pursuing a low-cost strategy—and of what might be an appropriate strategy for Gourmet Stew. It might pursue a differentiation strategy of better quality at a higher price. Moreover, considering the difficulties of entering the distribution channels, it might focus on a niche strategy. Maybe Gourmet Stew could access health-oriented grocery stores like Whole Foods. Understanding the marketplace helps you formulate a strategy that can help you succeed.

## Suppliers and Vendors

Understanding the customers and competition is critical to determining whether your idea is indeed an opportunity, but other factors also need consideration. Referring back to the value chain we created for Gourmet Stew (see Figure 3.7), you’ll notice that suppliers are providing commodity goods such as beef, vegetables, and other food products. These types of vendors usually have limited power, which means that more of the ultimate gross margin in the chain goes to Gourmet Stew. A sudden rise in the market price of beef, however, could have a negative impact on your margins even though your power over suppliers is strong. A diversified offering that includes vegetarian stew, for example, can guard against such problems.

In other instances, your suppliers can have tremendous power, and that will directly affect your margins. For example, Microsoft, as the dominant operating system and core software provider, and Intel, as the dominant microprocessor supplier, have considerable power over PC manufacturers. Microsoft has gross margins of 81% and Intel has gross margins of 55%,<sup>37</sup> whereas average gross margins for PC manufacturers are between 8% and 33%.<sup>38</sup> Putting aside the strong competition in the mature PC market for a moment, the fact that suppliers have so much power lessens the opportunity potential for entrepreneurs entering the PC market—unless they find an innovation to supplant the Microsoft operating system or the Intel chip.

## The Government

For the most part, the U.S. government is supportive of entrepreneurship. Taxes are lower than in most nations in the world, the time required to register a new business is shorter, and the level of regulations is generally lower. However, in certain industries, government regulation and involvement are significantly higher, such as in pharmaceuticals and medical devices. For example, consider a startup company that produces a stent that more quickly and

effectively removes kidney stones. In order to bring this product to market, you would have to guide your product through Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval. The approval process is often lengthy, taking on average 20 months before the product can be brought to market.<sup>39</sup> During this time, the startup company is incurring costs with no revenue to offset the negative cash flow, increasing the time to break even, and also increasing the amount of money at risk if the venture fails. While the upfront time and expense are entry barriers that reduce potential future competition, your company benefits only if the product proves successful in gaining both FDA approval and adoption by doctors. Thus, as an entrepreneur, you need to be aware of government requirements and their impact on your business. If the requirements are stringent, such as getting FDA approval, and the potential margins you can earn are relatively low, it is probably not a good opportunity. In the case above, the stents command a very high margin, so the company can more than recoup its investment if it successfully navigates FDA approval and secures wide doctor adoption.

## The Global Environment

As the world marketplace becomes global, your opportunity is increasingly strengthened by looking overseas. What international customers fit within your PTA, STA, and TTA? How easy is it to reach them? When might you go international? On the flip side, you also need to be aware of your international competitors. Have they entered your market yet? When might they? It is increasingly common for entrepreneurial firms to use an outsourcing strategy, which means that you may need to evaluate international vendors and their relative power. In Chapter 4, we go into much greater detail on global strategies, but for now, let's see whether the global environment makes your idea a stronger or weaker opportunity.

## The Opportunity Checklist

---

Figure 3.10 summarizes the concepts we have covered in this chapter. Use it to evaluate your idea to see whether it is a strong opportunity or to evaluate several ideas simultaneously to see which one has the greatest promise. While your opportunity would ideally fit entirely in the middle column under “Better Opportunities,” there will be some aspects where it is weak. Examine the weak aspects and see how you can modify your business model to strengthen them. In the end, of course, the goal is to be strong in more areas than you are weak.

## “I Don’t Have an Opportunity”

---

After doing a thorough analysis, some entrepreneurs conclude that the marketplace isn’t as large or accessible or that the competition is much greater than they expected, and they quickly reach the conclusion that they should abandon their dreams. But in fact, if you analyze every aspect of the business and if you do your assessment completely, you’ll always find a reason for the business to fail. There is no perfect business. There will be areas of weakness in any business model, and it is human nature to amplify those weaknesses until they seem insurmountable. Step back, take a second look, and ask yourself two questions: First, how can you modify your business model so that it isn’t as weak in those aspects? Second, what can go right as you launch your business?

The entrepreneurial process is one of continuous adjustment. Many times entrepreneurs stick stubbornly to an idea as it was originally conceived. After a thorough customer and competitive analysis, you need to find ways to modify the business concept so that it better matches the needs of your customer and so that it has advantages over your competitors. The

<b>Customer</b>	<b>Better Opportunities</b>	<b>Weaker Opportunities</b>
Identifiable	PTA	STA
Demographics	Clearly defined and focused	Fuzzy definition and unfocused
Psychographics	Clearly defined and focused	Fuzzy definition and unfocused
<b>Trends</b>		
Macro market	Multiple and converging	Few and disparate
Target market	Multiple and converging	Few and disparate
Window of opportunity	Opening	Closing
Market structure	Emerging/fragmented	Mature/decline
<b>Market size</b>		
How many	PTA	STA
Demand	Greater than supply	Less than supply
<b>Market growth</b>		
Rate	20% or greater	Less than 20%
<b>Price/Frequency/Value</b>		
Price	GM > 40%	GM < 40%
Frequency	Often and repeated	One time
Value	Fully reflected in price	Penetration pricing
Operating expenses	Low and variable	Large and fixed
Net Income Margin	>10%	<10%
Volume	Very high	Moderate
<b>Distribution</b>		
Where are you in the value chain?	High margin, high power	Low margin, low power
<b>Competition</b>		
Market structure	Emerging	Mature
Number of direct competitors	Few	Many
Number of indirect competitors	Few	Many
Number of substitutes	Few	Many
Stealth competitors	Unlikely	Likely
Strength of Competitors	Weak	Strong
<b>Key success factors</b>		
Relative position	Strong	Weak
<b>Vendors</b>		
Relative power	Weak	Strong
Gross margins they control in the value chain	Low	High
<b>Government</b>		
Regulation	Low	High
Taxes	Low	High
<b>Global environment</b>		
Customers	Interested and accessible	Not interested or accessible
Competition	Nonexistent or weak	Existing and strong
Vendors	Eager	Unavailable

**Figure 3.10****Opportunity checklist**

more you learn about the opportunities that exist for your product, the more you must refine your business plan. For instance, as you open your doors and customers come in and provide feedback, you'll find more ways to improve your business model. If you ignore feedback and remain stuck to your initial concept as you originally visualized it (and possibly as you wrote it in your plan), you are more likely to fail. The business planning process is ongoing, and you'll learn more about your opportunity at every step along the way. Therefore, to prematurely abandon your concept after some negative feedback from your analysis is a mistake unless the negatives far outweigh the positives in Figure 3.10.

"Analysis and criticism are of no interest to me unless they are a path to constructive, action-bent thinking. Critical type intelligence is boring and destructive and only satisfactory to those who indulge in it. Most new projects—I can even say every one of them—can be analyzed to destruction."

— Georges Doriot,  
Founder of the modern venture  
capital industry

It is also natural to assume the worst possible outcomes, fixating on the weak aspects of the business model and failing to recognize what can go right. For example, Ruth Owades, who founded Calyx & Corolla (a direct flower-delivery service from the growers to your home), persisted in launching a mail-order catalog called *Gardener's Eden* for unique gardening tools even though the initial analysis suggested it would be difficult to break even in the first year.<sup>40</sup> While Owades envisioned her business as seasonal—customers would order gardening supplies during the spring planting season—she found that she had two seasons: People also used the catalog during the Christmas season for gifts. She found, too, that the amount people would spend per order was higher than expected, making the dynamics of the business much more robust than she initially imagined.

Your pre-launch analysis is just a starting point. You need to understand the variables in your business model, how they might be greater or less than you initially imagine, and what that might mean for your business. In the next chapter, we will define and examine business models—how you make money and what it costs to generate revenues.



## CONCLUSION

All opportunities start with an idea. We find the ideas that most often lead to successful businesses have two key characteristics. First, they are something that the entrepreneur is truly passionate about. Second, the idea is a strong opportunity as measured on the opportunity checklist. To be sure of having a strong opportunity, entrepreneurs need a deep understanding of their customers, preferably knowing the customers by name. Better opportunities will have lots of customers currently (market size) with the potential for even more customers in the future (market is growing). Furthermore, these customers will buy the product frequently and pay a premium price for it (strong margins). Thus, entrepreneurs need to be students of the marketplace. What trends are converging, and how do these shape customer demand today and into the future?

Savvy entrepreneurs also recognize that competitors, both direct and indirect, are vying for the customers' attention. Understanding competitive dynamics helps entrepreneurs shape their opportunities to reach the customer better than the competition can. As this chapter points out, the entrepreneurial environment is holistic and fluid. In addition to their customers and competitors, entrepreneurs need to understand how they source their raw materials (suppliers) and what government regulation means to their business. If all these elements—customers, competitors, suppliers and government—are favorable, the entrepreneur has identified a strong opportunity. The next step is successfully launching and implementing your vision.

**Reflection Point****Your Thoughts...**

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

1. What do you really enjoy doing? What is your passion? Can your passion be a platform for a viable opportunity?
2. What do your friends and family envision you doing? What strengths and weaknesses do they observe? How do their insights help lead you to an opportunity that is right for you?
3. What ideas do you have for a new business? How can you multiply the stimuli around these ideas to enhance them and identify attractive opportunities?
4. Put several of your ideas through the opportunity checklist in Figure 3.10. Which ideas seem to have the highest potential?
5. How can you shape, reshape, and refine your opportunities so that they have a greater chance to succeed and thrive?
6. Identify some early, low-cost market tests that you can use to refine your opportunity. Create a schedule of escalating market tests to iterate to the strongest opportunity.

Subscribe to the free listserve VentureAlert ([www.djnewsletters@dowjones.com](mailto:www.djnewsletters@dowjones.com)). Track the stories on a daily basis. Which companies are receiving venture capital? What trends does this flow of money suggest? How might these trends converge to create new opportunities?

## WEB EXERCISE

<sup>1</sup> [www.worldclassteams.com/welcome.htm](http://www.worldclassteams.com/welcome.htm).

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.fastcompany.com/magazine/44/dell.html>.

<sup>3</sup> Boyett, Joseph and Jimmie Boyett. *The Guru Guide to Entrepreneurship: A Concise Guide to the Best Ideas from the World's Top Entrepreneurs*. New York: Wiley, 2001. p. 258.

<sup>4</sup> See the ABC *Nightline* segment “The Deep Dive” aired on July 13, 1999.

<sup>5</sup> The four-step process outlined in this chapter—gather stimuli, multiply stimuli, create customer concepts, and optimize practicality—comes from a process outlined by Doug Hall. See Hall, D. *Jump Start Your Brain*. New York, NY: Warner Books. 1996.

## NOTES

- <sup>6</sup> *Pain points* are those aspects of a current product or service that are suboptimal or ineffective from the customer's point of view. Improving on these factors or coming up with an entirely new product or service that eliminates these points of pain can be a source of competitive advantage.
- <sup>7</sup> Compiled from IDEO Website at <http://ideo.com/portfolio> and from Edmondson, Amy C. "Phase Zero: Introducing New Services at IDEO." Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. December 14, 2005. p. 13.
- <sup>8</sup> For those of you who are interested in learning more about brain-writing, visit [www.usabilitybok.org / methods / p314?](http://www.usabilitybok.org/methods/p314) section = basic-description.
- <sup>9</sup> <http://www.wallyamos.com/about/index.html>.
- <sup>10</sup> Bygrave, W., and Hedberg, C. *Jim Poss* (case). Wellesley, MA: Babson College. 2004.
- <sup>11</sup> Psychographic information categorizes customers based on their personality and psychological traits, lifestyles, values, and social group membership. It helps you understand what motivates customers to act in the ways they do and is important because members of a specific demographic category can have dramatically different psychographic profiles. Marketing strictly based on demographic information will be ineffective because it ignores these differences. Our use of soccer moms captures both the demographic and the psychographic attributes of a broad customer profile.
- <sup>12</sup> *The U.S. Baby Boomer Market: From the Beatles to Botox.* Third edition. Rockville, MD: Packaged Facts. November 2002. pp. 8–10.
- <sup>13</sup> Ibid. p. 7.
- <sup>14</sup> *The Religious Publishing and Products Market in the U.S.* Sixth edition. Rockville, MD: Packaged Facts. August 2008. p. 2.
- <sup>15</sup> Grossman, Cathy Lynn. Starbucks Stirs Things Up with a God Quote on Cups. *USA Today*. October 19, 2005. [www.usatoday.com/life/2005-10-19-starbucks-quote\\_x.htm](http://www.usatoday.com/life/2005-10-19-starbucks-quote_x.htm).
- <sup>16</sup> Rives, Karen. U.S. Hispanics Expected to Fill Baby Boomer Labor Gap. *Hispanic Business*. March 3, 2006. [www.hispanicbusiness.com/news/newsbyid.asp?id=29151&cat=Headlines&more=/news/morenews.asp](http://www.hispanicbusiness.com/news/newsbyid.asp?id=29151&cat=Headlines&more=/news/morenews.asp).
- <sup>17</sup> Ebbin, R., Grindy, B., Riehle, H., Roach, D., and Smith, T. Restaurant Industry Sales Trends in Recent Years. In *2007 Restaurant Industry Forecast*. Washington, DC: National Restaurant Association. 2007. p. 38.
- <sup>18</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>19</sup> Fullservice Steams Ahead. *Restaurants USA*. October 2001. <http://nationalrestaurantassociation.org/tools/magazines/rusa/magArchive/year/article/?ArticleID=671>. This article estimates that ethnic food accounts for one-third of total restaurant sales, so we multiplied the total industry size by one-third.
- <sup>20</sup> Ebbin, R., Grindy, B., Riehle, H., Roach, D., & Smith, T. Projected Growth in State & Regional Economic Indicators. In *2007 Restaurant Industry Forecast*. Washington, D.C.: National Restaurant Association. 2007. p. 38.
- <sup>21</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>22</sup> Based on 2.1% fast-casual market share estimate from ThinkEquity Partners, LLC. *Company Note: Chipotle Mexican Grill*. San Francisco, CA: ThinkEquity Partners LLC. February 16, 2006. Investext Plus. Wellesley, MA: Babson College Horn Library. March 4. 2005. <http://web3.infotrac.galegroup.com/itw>.
- <sup>23</sup> <http://quickfacts.census.gov/qfd/states/25000.html>.
- <sup>24</sup> Brown, R. Managing the "S" Curves of Innovation. *Journal of Consumer Marketing*, 9(1): 61–72. 1992.
- <sup>25</sup> *Backlog* is the sales that have been made but not fulfilled due to lack of inventory to finalize the sale.

- 26 Slaton, Joyce. *Webvan, Kozmo—RIP. Money Lessons We've Learned from the Last Mile Failures*. July 21, 2001. [http://articles.sfgate.com/2001-07-12/technology/17606161\\_1\\_webvan-kozmo-delivery/2](http://articles.sfgate.com/2001-07-12/technology/17606161_1_webvan-kozmo-delivery/2).
- 27 Maney, K. Founder of Webvan Grocery Store Tries Again with Online Newsstand. *USA Today*. July 23, 2003. pp. B1, B3.
- 28 [www.peapod.com](http://www.peapod.com).
- 29 VentureXpert.
- 30 The names of the company and the entrepreneur are disguised.
- 31 Slotting fees are fees that supermarket chains charge suppliers for providing shelf space in their stores.
- 32 Information for this value chain was gathered from financial data on sample industry companies found at <http://biz.yahoo.com/ic/340.html> and linked pages.
- 33 General rankings for food sales found at [http://biz.yahoo.com/ic/profile/340\\_1349.html](http://biz.yahoo.com/ic/profile/340_1349.html).
- 34 Reimer, Jeremy. *Total Share: 30 Years of Personal Computer Market Share Figures*. December 14, 2005. <http://arstechnica.com/articles/culture/total-share.ars>.
- 35 [www.pwcmoneytree.com/moneytree/index.jsp](http://www.pwcmoneytree.com/moneytree/index.jsp).
- 36 [www.djnewsletters@dowjones.com](mailto:www.djnewsletters@dowjones.com).
- 37 Hoovers Online.
- 38 [http://biz.yahoo.com/id/ind\\_index.html](http://biz.yahoo.com/id/ind_index.html).
- 39 [www.fda.gov/cder/reports/reviewtimes/default.htm](http://www.fda.gov/cder/reports/reviewtimes/default.htm).
- 40 Stevenson, H., Von Werssowetz, R., and Kent, R. *Ruth Owades*. Case 383051, Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. 1982.

**CASE****Jim Poss**

On his way through Logan Airport, Jim Poss stopped at a newsstand to flip through the June 2004 *National Geographic* cover story that declared “The End of Cheap Oil.” Inside was a two-page spread of an American family sitting amongst a vast array of household possessions that were derived, at least in part, from petroleum-based products: laptops, cell phones, clothing, footwear, sports equipment, cookware, and containers of all shapes and sizes. Without oil, the world will be a very different place. Jim shook his head.

*...and here we are burning this finite, imported, irreplaceable resource to power three-ton suburban gas-guzzlers with “these colors don’t run” bumper stickers!*

Jim’s enterprise, Seahorse Power Company (SPC), was an engineering startup that encouraged the adoption of environmentally friendly methods of power generation by designing products that were cheaper and more efficient than 20th century technologies. Jim was sure that his first product, a patent-pending solar-powered trash compactor, could make a real difference.

*In the United States alone, 180,000 garbage trucks consume over a billion gallons of diesel fuel a year.*

By compacting trash on-site and off-grid, the mailbox-sized “BigBelly” could cut pick-ups by 400%. The prototype—designed on the fly at a cost of \$10,000—had been sold to Vail Ski Resorts in Colorado for \$5,500. The green technology had been working as promised since February, saving the resort lots of time and money on round-trips to a remote lodge accessible only by snow machine.

Jim viewed the \$4,500 loss on the sale as an extremely worthwhile marketing and proof-of-concept expense. Now that they were taking the business to the next level with a run of 20 machines, Jim and his SPC team had to find a way to reduce component costs and increase production efficiencies.

Jim returned the magazine to the rack and made his way to the New York Shuttle gate. An investor group in New York City had called another meeting, and Jim felt that it was time for him to start asking the hard questions about the deal they were proposing. These investors in socially responsible businesses had to be given a choice: Either write him the check they had been promising—and let him run SPC the way he saw fit—or decline to invest altogether so he could concentrate on locating other sources of funding to close this \$250,000 seed round. So far, all Jim had received from this group were voices of concern and requests for better terms—it was time to do the deal or move on.

**Green Roots**

As a kid, Jim Poss was always playing with motors, batteries, and electronics. He especially enjoyed fashioning new gadgets from components he had amassed by dismantling all manner of

---

Carl Hedberg prepared this case under the supervision of Professor William Bygrave, Babson College, as a basis for class discussion rather than to illustrate either effective or ineffective handling of an administrative situation. Funding provided by the F.W. Olin Graduate School of Business and a gift from the class of 2003. Copyright © by Babson College 2004.

appliances and electronic devices. He also spent a lot of time out of doors cross-country skiing with his father. Jim said that by his senior year in high school, he knew where he was headed:

*I had read Silent Spring<sup>1</sup> and that got me thinking about the damage we are doing to the earth. And once I started learning about the severity of our problems—that was it. By the end of my first semester at Duke University, I had taken enough environmental science to see that helping businesses to go green was going to be a huge growth industry.*

Jim felt that the best way to get businesses to invest in superior energy systems was to make it profitable for them to do so. In order to prepare himself for this path, Jim set up a double major in Environmental Science and Policy, and Geology—with a minor degree in engineering. He graduated in 1996 and found work as a hydrologist, analyzing soil and rock samples for a company that engineered stable parking lots for shopping malls. He didn't stay long:

*That certainly wasn't my higher calling. I poked around, and within six months I found a fun job redesigning the production capabilities at a small electronics firm. Soon after that, I started working for this company called Solectria; that was right up my alley.*

As a sales engineer at Solectria—a Massachusetts-based designer and manufacturer of sustainable transportation and energy solutions—Jim helped clients configure electric drive systems for a wide range of vehicles. He loved the work and developed an expertise in using spreadsheets to calculate the most efficient layout of motors, controllers, power converters, and other hardware. By 1999, though, he decided that it was once again time to move on:

*Solectria had a great group of people, but my boss was a micro-manager and I wasn't going to be able to grow. I found an interesting job in San Francisco as a production manager for a boat manufacturing company—coordinating the flow of parts from seven or eight subcontractors. When the [Internet] bubble burst, the boat company wasn't able to raise capital to expand. My work soon became relatively mundane, so I left.*

This time, though, Jim decided to head back to school:

*I had now worked for a bunch of different businesses and I had seen some things done well but a lot of things done wrong. I knew that I could run a good company—something in renewable energy, and maybe something with gadgets. I still had a lot to learn, so I applied to the MBA program at Babson College. I figured that I could use the second-year EIT<sup>2</sup> module to incubate something.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Silent Spring*, written in 1962 by Rachel Carson, exposed the hazards of the pesticide DDT, eloquently questioned humanity's faith in technological progress, and helped set the stage for the environmental movement. Appearing on a CBS documentary shortly before her death from breast cancer in 1964, the author remarked, "Man's attitude toward nature is today critically important simply because we have now acquired a fateful power to alter and destroy nature. But man is a part of nature, and his war against nature is inevitably a war against himself... [We are] challenged as mankind has never been challenged before to prove our maturity and our mastery, not of nature, but of ourselves."

<sup>2</sup> The Entrepreneurship Intensity Track (EIT) was a compressed and highly focused entrepreneurship curriculum for graduate students at Babson College. The program provided a select group of MBAs who intended to become full-time entrepreneurs as soon as they graduated with the necessary skills to take their new venture ideas through the critical stages of exploration, investigation, and refinement, so they could launch their businesses during the spring of their second year.

## Opportunity Exploration

Between his first and second years at Babson, Jim applied for a summer internship through the Kauffman Program. He sent a proposal to the Spire Corporation—a publicly traded manufacturer of highly engineered solar electric equipment—about investigating the market and feasibility of solar-powered trash compactors. Jim had copied his idea to someone he knew on the board, and the same week that the HR department informed him that there were no openings, he got a call from the president of the company:

*Roger Little had talked with the board member I knew and said that while they weren't interested in having me write a case study on some solar whatever-it-was, he said they'd like me to write some business plans for Spire—based on their existing opportunities and existing operations. I said sure, I'll take it.*

That summer, Jim worked with the executive team to complete three business plans. When they asked him to stay on, Jim agreed to work 15 hours per week—on top of his full-time MBA classes. He mentioned that every month or so he would bring up his idea for a solar-powered trash compactor with the Spire executives, but their answer was always the same:

*I was trying to get them to invest in my idea or partner with me in some way, and these guys kept saying, "It'll never work." So I just kept working on them. I did the calculations to show them that with solar we could do ten compactations a day and have plenty [of electric charge] on reserve for a run of cloudy weather. Finally, they just said that they don't get into end-user applications.*

Early in his second year, Jim attended a product design fair featuring young engineers from Babson's new sister school, the Franklin W. Olin School of Engineering. He connected with Jeff Satwicz, an engineering student with extensive experience in remote vehicle testing for the Department of Defense. When Jim got involved with a project that required engineering capabilities, he knew who to call:

*I went up the hill to Olin to ask Jeff if he'd like to help design a folding grill for tailgating—he said sure. It's funny, the two schools are always talking about working together like that, but it doesn't happen until the students sit in the Café together and exchange ideas. That's how it works; the faculty wasn't involved—and they didn't really need to be.*

Although Jim didn't stay with the grill team, the project had forged a link with an engineer with a penchant for entrepreneurship. Now certain of his trajectory, Jim incorporated the Seahorse Power Company (SPC)—a nod to his ultimate aspiration of developing power systems that could harness the enormous energy of ocean waves and currents.

Understanding that sea-powered generators were a long way off, Jim began to investigate ways to serve well-capitalized ventures that were developing alternative-energy solutions. One idea was to lease abandoned oil wells in California for the purpose of collecting and selling deep-well data to geothermal energy businesses that were prospecting in the area. When Jim sought feedback, he found that even people who liked his concept invariably pointed him in a different direction:

*Everybody kept telling me that wind was where it's at—and they were right; it's the fastest growing energy source in the world. All the venture capitalists are looking at wind power. I realized, though, that if I was going to make wind plants, I'd have to raise two to five hundred*

*million dollars—with no industry experience. Impossible. So instead, I started looking at what these [wind-plant ventures] needed.*

## The DAQ Buoy

Jim discovered that The Cape Wind Project, a company working to build a wind farm on Nantucket Sound, had erected a \$2.5 million, 200-foot monitoring tower to collect wind and weather data in the targeted area. Jim felt that there was a better way:

*Meteorological testing is a critical first step for these wind businesses. I thought, whoa, they've just spent a lot of money to construct a static tower that probably won't accurately portray the wind activity in that 25-square-mile area. And without good data, it's going to be really hard for them to get funding.*

My idea was to deploy data buoys that could be moved around a site to capture a full range of data points. I spent about six months writing a business plan on my data acquisition buoy—the DAQ. I figured that to get to the prototype stage I'd need between \$5 and \$10 million. This would be a pretty sophisticated piece of equipment, and a lot of people worried that if a storm came up and did what storms typically do to buoys, we'd be all done. I was having a hard time getting much traction with investors.

## Finding the Waste

Even while he was casting about for a big-concept opportunity, Jim had never lost sight of his solar compactor idea. With the spring semester upon him, he decided to see if that business would work as an EIT endeavor. Although he was sure that such a device would be feasible—even easy—to produce, he didn't start to get excited about the project until he took a closer look at the industry:

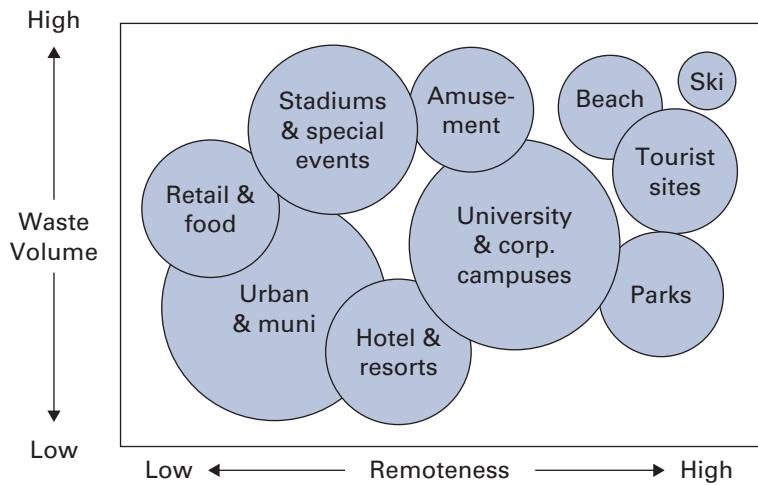
*I did an independent study to examine the trash industry. I was about a week into that when I looked at the market size and realized that I had been messing around with expensive, sophisticated business models that didn't offer close to the payback as this compactor would.*

*U.S. companies spent \$12 billion on trash receptacles in 2000, and \$1.2 billion on compaction equipment in 2001. The average trash truck gets less than three miles to the gallon and costs over \$100 an hour to operate. There are lots of off-grid sites<sup>3</sup> that have high trash volumes—resorts, amusement parks, and beaches—and many are getting multiple pick-ups a day. That's a tremendous waste of labor and energy resources.*

Joining him in the EIT module was first-year MBA candidate Alexander Perera. Alex had an undergraduate degree in Environmental Science from Boston University, as well as industry experience in renewable energy use and energy-efficiency measures. The pair reasoned that if a solar compactor could offer significant savings as a trash collection device, then the market could extend beyond the off-grid adopters to include retail and food establishments, city sidewalks, and hotels (see Exhibit 3.1).

---

<sup>3</sup> Sites without electrical power.

**EXHIBIT 3.1**    **Target Customers**


## Gearing Up

By the time the spring semester drew to a close, they had a clear sense of the market and the nature of the opportunity—in addition to seed funding of \$22,500: \$10,000 from Jim’s savings, and \$12,500 through the Hatchery Program at Babson College. Since solar power was widely perceived as a more expensive, more complex, and less-efficient energy source than grid-power, it was not surprising to discover that the competition—dumpster and compaction equipment manufacturers—had never introduced a system like this. Nevertheless, Jim and Alex were certain that if they could devise a reliable, solar-powered compactor that could offer end users significant cost savings, established industry players could be counted on to aggressively seek to replicate or acquire that technology.

Understanding that patent protections were often only as good as the legal minds that drafted them, Jim had sought out the best. The challenge was that most of the talented patent attorneys he met with were far outside his meager budget. In May of 2003, Jim got a break when he presented his idea at an investor forum:

*I won \$1,500 in patent services from Brown and Rudnick.<sup>4</sup> That might not have taken me too far, but they have a very entrepreneurial mindset. They gave me a flat rate for the patent—which is not something many firms will do. I paid the \$7,800 upfront, we filed a provisional patent in June, and they agreed to work with me as I continued to develop and modify the machine.*

Jim’s efforts had again attracted the interest of Olin engineer Jeff Satwicz, who in turn brought in Bret Richmond, a fellow student with experience in product design, welding, and

<sup>4</sup> Brown Rudnick Berlack Israels, LLP, Boston, Massachusetts.

fabrication. When the team conducted some reverse-engineering to see if the vision was even feasible, Jim said they were pleasantly surprised:

*I found a couple of kitchen trash compactors in the Want Ads and bought them both for about 125 bucks. We took them apart, and that's when I realized how easy this was going to be... of course, nothing is ever as easy as you think it's going to be.*

## Pitching Without Product

Figuring that it was time to conduct some hard field research, they decided to call on businesses that would be the most likely early adopters of an off-grid compactor. Alex smiled as he described an unexpected turn of events:

*We had a pretty simple client-targeting formula: remoteness, trash volume, financial stability, and an appreciation for the environmental cachet that could come with a product like this.*

*Literally the first place I called was the ski resort in Vail, Colorado. Some eco-terrorists had recently burned down one of their lodges to protest their expansion on the mountain, and they were also dealing with four environmental lawsuits related to some kind of noncompliance.*

*This guy Luke Cartin at the resort just jumped at the solar compactor concept. He said, "Oh, this is cool. We have a lodge at Blue Sky Basin that is an hour and a half round trip on a snow cat. We pick up the trash out there three or four times a week; sometimes every day. We could really use a product like that...." That's when you put the phone to your chest and think, Oh my gosh ...*

Jim added that after a couple of conference calls, they were suddenly in business without a product:

*I explained that we were students and that we had not actually built one of these things yet (sort of). Luke asked me to work up a quote for three machines. They had been very open about their costs for trash pick-up, and I figured that they'd be willing to pay six grand apiece. I also had a rough idea that our cost of materials would fall somewhat less than that.*

*Luke called back and said that they didn't have the budget for three, but they'd take one. I was actually really happy about that because I knew by then that making just one of these was going to be a real challenge.*

In September, SPC received a purchase order from Vail Ski Resorts. When Jim called the company to work out a payment plan with 25% upfront, Luke surprised them again:

*He said, "We'll just send you a check for the full amount, minus shipping, and you get the machine here by Christmas." That was great, but now we were in real trouble because we had to figure out how to build this thing quickly, from scratch—and on a tight budget.*

## Learning by Doing

The team set out to design the system and develop the engineering plans for the machine that SPC had now trademarked as the “BigBelly Solar-Powered Trash Compactor.” Although his

Olin team was not yet versant with computer-aided design (CAD) software, Jim saw that as an opportunity:

*These guys were doing engineering diagrams on paper with pens and pencils—but now we were going to need professional stuff. I said that we could all learn CAD together, and if they made mistakes, great, that's fine; we'd work through it.*

Concurrent to this effort was the task of crunching the numbers to design a machine that would work as promised. As they began to source out the internal components, they searched for a design, fabrication, and manufacturing subcontractor that could produce the steel cabinet on a tight schedule. Although the team had explained that SPC would be overseeing the entire process from design to assembly, quotes for the first box still ranged from \$80,000 to \$400,000. Jim noted that SPC had an even bigger problem to deal with:

*On top of the price, the lead times that they were giving me were not going to cut it; I had to get this thing to Colorado for the ski season!*

*So, we decided to build it ourselves. I went to a local fabricator trade show, and discovered that although they all have internal engineering groups, some were willing to take a loss on the research and development side in order to get the manufacturing contract.*

*We chose Boston Engineering since they are very interested in developing a relationship with Olin engineers. They gave me a hard quote of \$2,400 for the engineering assistance and \$2,400 for the cabinet. By this time, we had sourced all the components we needed, and we began working with their engineer to size everything up. Bob Treiber, the president, was great. He made us do the work ourselves out at his facility in Hudson (Massachusetts), but he also mentored us, and his firm did a ton of work pro bono.*

## Fulfillment and Feedback

As the Christmas season deadline came and went, the days grew longer. By late January 2004, Jim was working through both of the shifts they had set up: from four in the morning to nearly eleven at night. In February, they fired up the device, tested it for three hours, and shipped it off to Colorado (see Exhibit 3.2). Jim met the device at their shipping dock, helped unwrap it, met the staff, and put a few finishing touches on the machine. Although it worked, even at zero degree temperatures, it had never been tested in the field. Jim left after a few days, and for two weeks, he endured a deafening silence.

Jim wrestled with how he could check in with SPC's first customer without betraying his acute inventor's angst about whether the machine was still working, and if it was, what Vail thought about it. Finally, when he could stand it no longer, he placed the call under the guise of soliciting satisfied-customer feedback. The news from Vail nearly stopped his heart:

*They said that they had dropped the machine off a forklift and it fell on its face. Oh man, I thought; if it had fallen on its back, that would have been okay, but this was bad—real bad. And then Luke tells me that it was a bit scratched—but it worked fine. He told me how happy they were that we had made it so robust. When I asked how heavy the bags were that they were pulling out of the thing, he said, "I don't know; we haven't emptied it yet." I was astounded.*

As it turned out, the Vail crew discovered that the single collection bag was indeed too heavy—a two-bin system would be more user-friendly. The resort also suggested that the inside cart be on wheels, that the access door be in the back, and that there be some sort of wireless notification when the compactor was full.

**EXHIBIT 3.2****The BigBelly Arrives in Vail**

a.



b.



As the SPC team got to work incorporating these ideas into their next generation of “SunPack” compactors, they were also engineering a second product that they hoped would expand their market reach to include manufacturers of standard compaction dumpsters. The “SunPack Hippo” would be a solar generator designed to replace the 220-volt AC-power units that were used to run industrial compactors. The waste-hauling industry had estimated that among commercial customers that would benefit from compaction, between 5% and 20% were dissuaded from adopting such systems because of the set-up cost of electrical wiring. SPC planned to market the system through manufacturing and/or distribution partnerships.

## Protecting the Property

While the interstate shipment of the BigBelly had given SPC a legal claim to the name and the technology, Jim made sure to keep his able patent attorneys apprised of new developments and modifications. SPC had applied for a provisional patent in June of 2003, and they had one year to broaden and strengthen those protections prior to the formal filing. As that date approached, the attorneys worked to craft a document that protected the inventors from infringement, without being so broad that it could be successfully challenged in court.

The SPC patents covered as many aspects of Sun Pack products as possible, including energy storage, battery charging, energy-draw cycle time, sensor controls, and wireless communication. The filling also specified other off-grid power sources for trash compaction, such as foot pedals, windmills, and waterwheels.

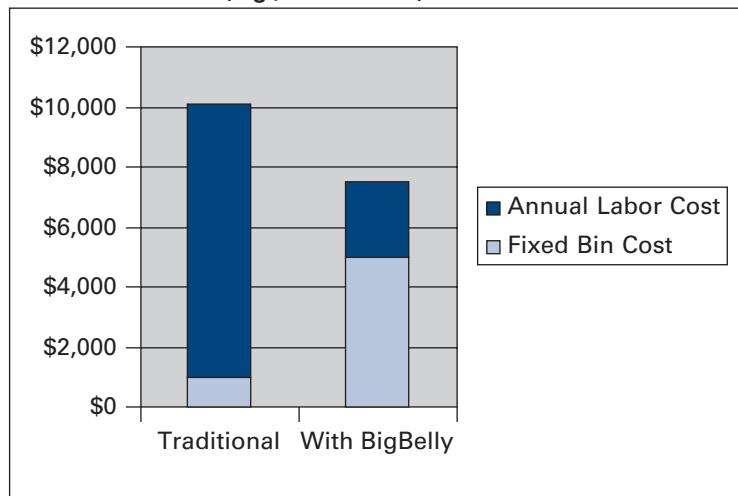
Even without these intellectual property protections, though, Jim felt that they had a good head start in an industry segment that SPC had created. Now they had to prove the business model.

## The Next Generation

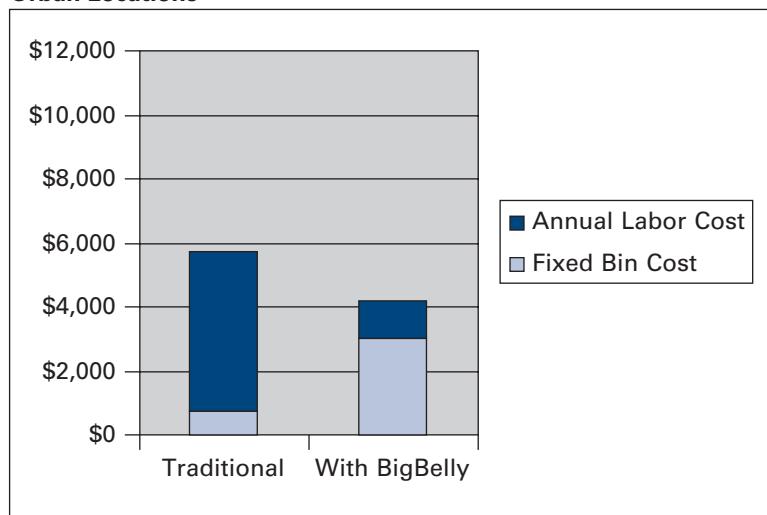
While the first machine had cost far more to build than the selling price, the unit had proven the concept and had been a conduit for useful feedback. A production run of 20 machines, however, would have to demonstrate that the business opportunity was as robust as the prototype appeared to be. That would mean cutting the cost of materials by more than 75% to around \$2,500 per unit. SPC estimated that although the delivered price of \$5,000 was far more expensive than the cost of a traditional trash receptacle, the system could pay for itself by trimming the ongoing cost of collection (see Exhibit 3.3).

### EXHIBIT 3.3 Customer Economics

#### Remote Locations (e.g., Ski Resorts)



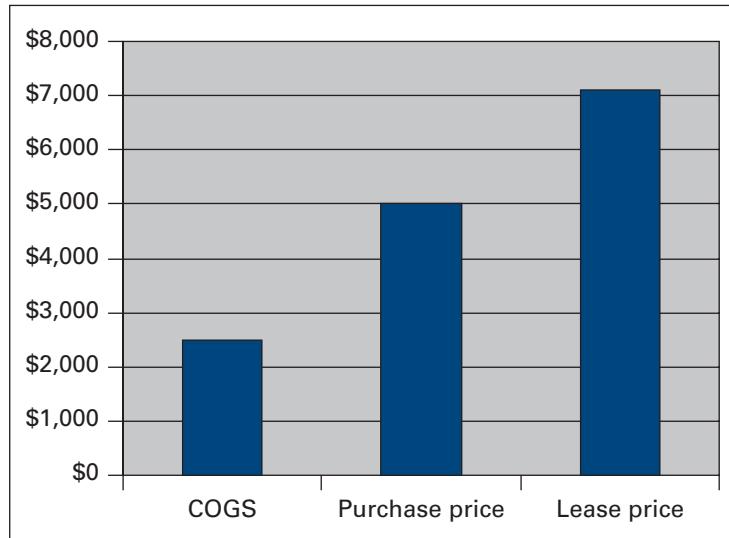
#### Urban Locations



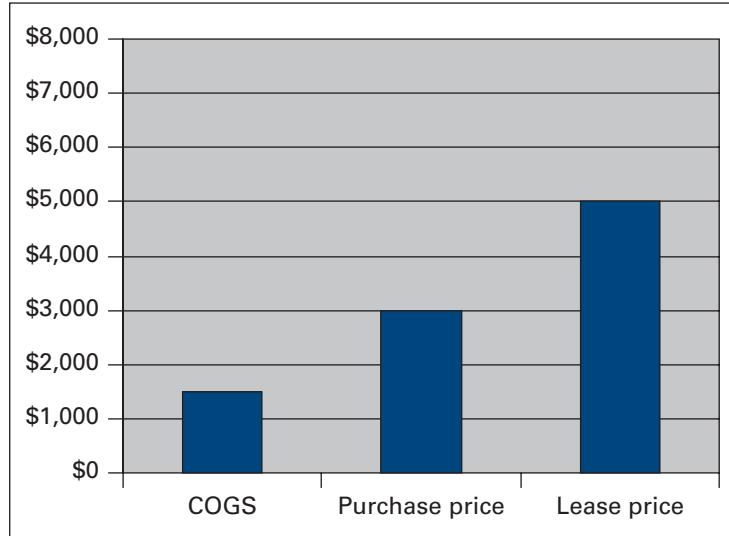
The team had determined that developing a lease option for the BigBelly would alleviate new-buyer jitters by having SPC retain the risk of machine ownership—a move that could increase margins by 10%. Over the next five years, SPC expected to expand its potential customer pool by reducing the selling price to around \$3,000—along with a corresponding drop in materials costs (see Exhibit 3.4).

#### EXHIBIT 3.4 BigBelly Economics

##### Near Term

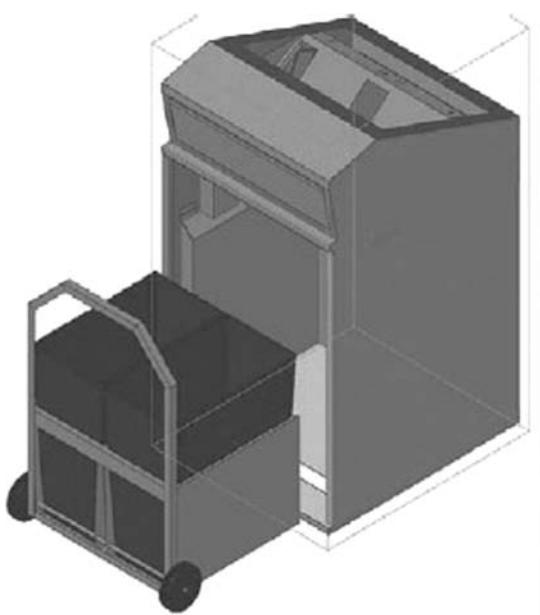


##### In Five Years

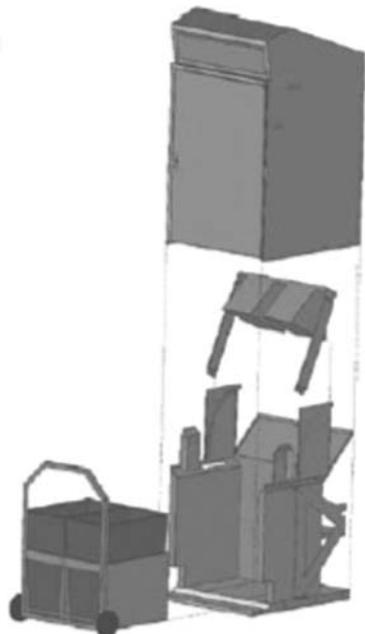


**EXHIBIT 3.5 BigBelly CAD Schematic**

a.



b.



With steel prices escalating, the SPC team designed their new machines with 30% fewer steel parts. They also cut the size of the solar panel and the two-week battery storage capacity in half, and replaced the expensive screw system of compaction with a simpler, cheaper, and more efficient sprocket-and-chain mechanism (see Exhibit 3.5).

In order to offer an effective service response capability, the team tried to restrict their selling efforts to the New England area, although “a sale was a sale.” One concern that kept cropping up was that this unique device would be a tempting target for vandals.

Team members explained that the solar panel on top was protected by a replaceable sheet of Lexan,<sup>5</sup> that all mechanical parts were entirely out of reach, and that the unit had already proven to be quite solid. The general feeling, Jim noted, was that if the machine could be messed with, people would find a way:

*One state park ranger was worried that it would get tossed into the lake, so I assured him that the units would be very heavy. He said, “So they’ll sink really fast....”*

Jim added that the overall response had been very favorable—so much so that once again, there was a real need for speed:

*We have pre-sold nearly half of our next run to places like Acadia National Park in Maine, Six Flags amusement park in Massachusetts, Harbor Lights in Boston, beaches on Nantucket, and to Harvard University. Fifty percent down-payment deposits should be coming in soon, but that won’t cover what we’ll need to get this done.*

<sup>5</sup> A clear, high-impact-strength plastic used in many security applications.

## Projections and Funding

During this “early commercialization period,” Jim was committed to moderating investor risk by leveraging on-campus and contractor facilities as much as possible. The company was hoping to close on an A-round of \$250,000 with a pre-money valuation of \$2.5 million by early summer to pay for cost-reduction engineering, sales and marketing, and working capital. The following year the company expected to raise a B-round of between \$700,000 and \$1 million.

SPC was projecting a positive cash flow in 2006 on total revenues of just over \$4.7 million (see Exhibit 3.6). The team members felt that, if their products continued to perform well, their market penetration estimates would be highly achievable (see Exhibit 3.7). Jim estimated that by 2008, SPC would become an attractive merger or acquisition candidate.

**EXHIBIT 3.6** **SPC Financial Projections**

	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008
BigBelly Unit	50	300	1,200	3,600	9,000
Sales	\$225,000	\$1,200,000	\$4,200,000	\$10,800,000	\$22,500,000
BigBelly Revenues	0	120,000	525,000	1,620,000	3,937,500
Hippo Royalty Revenues	225,000	1,320,000	4,725,000	12,420,000	26,437,500
Total Income	146,250	660,000	2,100,000	4,860,000	9,000,000
COGS	78,750	660,000	2,625,000	7,560,000	17,437,500
Gross Income	400,000	1,600,000	2,600,000	5,000,000	11,000,000
SG&A	(\$321,250)	(\$940,000)	\$25,000	\$2,560,000	\$6,437,500
EBIT					

**EXHIBIT 3.7** **Market Size and Penetration**

Top-Down	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008
SunPack Market* (Billion)	\$1.0	\$1.0	\$1.0	\$1.0	\$1.0
SunPack % Penetration	0.0%	0.1%	0.5%	1.2%	2.6%
<b>Bottom-Up</b>					
Total Potential Customers**	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000
Potential Units/Customer	20	20	20	20	20
Total Potential Units	600,000	600,000	600,000	600,000	600,000
Cumulative Units Sold	50	350	1,550	5,150	14,150
Cumulative % Penetration	0.0%	0.1%	0.3%	0.9%	2.4%

\*Assume a \$600,000,000 BigBelly market (5% of \$12 billion worth of waste receptacles sold to target segments), plus a \$400,000,000 power unit market (\$1.2 billion worth of compacting dumpsters sold/\$12,000 average price x \$4,000 per power unit).

\*\*Assume 400 resorts, 600 amusement parks, 2,000 university campuses, 5,000 commercial campuses, 2,200 hotels, 4,000 municipalities, 57 national parks, 2,500 state parks and forests, 3,700 RV parks and campgrounds, and 17,000 fast-food and retail outlets.

In January of 2004, as Jim began work on drafting an SBIR<sup>6</sup> grant proposal, his parents helped out by investing \$12,500 in the venture. That same month, while attending a wind energy conference sponsored by Brown and Rudnick, Jim overheard an investor saying that he was interested in putting a recent entrepreneurial windfall to work in socially responsible ventures. Jim decided it was worth a try:

*I gave him my three-minute spiel on the compactor. He said that it sounded interesting, but that he was into wind power—after all, this was a wind-power conference. “Well then,” I said, “have I got a business plan for you!”*

That afternoon Jim sent the investor the most recent version of the data acquisition buoy business plan. That led to a three-hour meeting where the investor ended up explaining to Jim why the DAQ was such a good idea. Jim said that the investor also understood how difficult it would be to get the venture fully funded:

*[The investor] said, “Well, I sure wish you were doing the Data Acquisition Buoy, but I can also see why you’re not.” I assured him that my passion was, of course, off-shore wind, and that it was something I was planning to do in the future. So he agreed to invest \$12,500 in the compactor—but only because he wanted to keep his foot in the door for what SPC was going to do later on.*

In February, after the folks at Vail had come back with their favorable review, Jim called on his former internship boss at the Spire Corporation. Roger Little was impressed with Jim’s progress, and his company was in for \$25,000. In April, the team earned top honors in the 2004 Douglas Foundation Graduate Business Plan Competition at Babson College. The prize—\$20,000 cash plus \$40,000 worth of services—came with a good deal of favorable press as well. The cash, which Jim distributed evenly among the team members, was their first monetary compensation since they had begun working on the project.

Although SPC could now begin to move ahead on the construction of the next 20 cabinets, Jim was still focused on the search for a rather uncommon breed of investor:

*This is not a venture capital deal, and selling this idea to angels can be a challenge because many are not sophisticated enough to understand what we are doing. I had one group, for example, saying that this wouldn’t work because most trash receptacles are located in alleys—out of the sun.*

*Here we have a practical, common-sense business, but since it is a new technology, many investors are unsure of how to value it. How scalable is it? Will our patent filings hold up? Who will fix them when they break?*

Earlier that spring Jim had presented his case in Boston to a gathering of angels interested in socially responsible enterprises. Of the six presenters that day, SPC was the only one offering products that were designed to lower direct costs. During the networking session that followed, Jim said that one group in particular seemed eager to move ahead:

*They liked that Spire had invested, and they seemed satisfied with our projections. When I told them that we had a \$25,000 minimum, they said not to worry—they were interested in putting in \$50K now, and \$200K later. In fact, they started talking about setting up funding milestones so that they could be our primary backers as we grew. They wanted me to stop fundraising, focus on the business, and depend on them for all my near-term financing needs.*

---

<sup>6</sup> The Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) program is a source of government grant funding driven by 10 federal departments and agencies that allocated a portion of their research and development capital for awards to innovative small businesses in the United States.

*At this point I felt like I needed to play hardball with these guys; show them where the line was. My answer was that I wasn't at all comfortable with that, and that I would be comfortable when I had \$200K in the bank—my bank. They backed off that idea, and by the end of the meeting, they agreed to put in the \$50,000; but first they said they had to do some more due diligence.*

## Momentum

By May of 2004, the Seahorse Power Company had a total of six team members.<sup>7</sup> All SPC workers had been given an equity stake in exchange for their part-time services. The investor group expressed deep concern with this arrangement, saying that the team could walk away when the going got tough—and maybe right when SPC needed them most. Jim explained that it wasn't a negotiable point:

*They wanted my people to have “skin in the game” because they might get cold feet and choose to get regular jobs. I told them that SPC workers are putting in 20 hours a week for free when they could be out charging consulting rates of \$200 an hour. They have plenty of skin in this game, and I’m not going to ask them for cash. Besides, if we could put up the cash, we wouldn’t need investors, right?*

As Jim settled into his seat for the flight to New York, he thought some more about the investors’ other primary contention—his pre-money valuation was high by a million:

*These investors—who still haven’t given us a dime—are saying they can give me as much early-stage capital as SPC would need, but at a pre-money of \$1.5 million, and dependent on us hitting our milestones. With an immediate funding gap of about \$50,000, it’s tempting to move forward with these guys so we can fill current orders on time and maintain our momentum. On the other hand, I have already raised some money on the higher valuation, and maybe we can find the rest before the need becomes really critical.*

## Preparation Questions

1. Apply the Timmons entrepreneurship framework (entrepreneur-opportunity-resources) to analyze this case.
2. Discuss Jim Poss’ fund-raising strategies. What other options might be considered for raising the funds SPC needs? Is this a good investment?
3. Discuss the growth strategy. What additional market(s) should Poss pursue?

---

<sup>7</sup> Three of the most recent equity partners were Richard Kennelly, a former Director at Conservation Law Foundation where he concentrated on electric utility deregulation, renewable energy, energy efficiency, air quality, and global warming; Kevin Dutt, an MBA in Operations Management and Quantitative Methods from Boston University with extensive work experience in improving manufacturing and operational practices in a range of companies; and Steve Delaney, an MBA from The Tuck School at Dartmouth College with a successful track record in fund-raising, business development, market strategy, finance, and operations.

*This page intentionally left blank*



David Neeleman, Founder and former CEO of JetBlue and Founder and CEO of Azul Linhas Aéreas Brasileiras.  
(Source: EFE/Zuma Press).

## UNDERSTANDING YOUR BUSINESS MODEL AND DEVELOPING YOUR STRATEGY

---

Once you've identified your opportunity, the next step is to devise a strategy to pursue that opportunity. While you're probably familiar with the basic strategy categories from previous coursework—differentiation, low cost, niche—many would-be entrepreneurs fail to grasp the intricacies of devising and implementing their strategy. All strategies are driven by the company's business model. So before you state that your firm is going to use a differentiation strategy or a niche strategy, you need to understand exactly what your business model is.

### The Business Model

---

Every firm's business model consists of two components: a revenue model and a cost model. The **revenue model** breaks down all the sources of revenue that your business will generate. For instance, if you own a restaurant, your basic revenue model will separate food and beverage

into two main sources of revenue. You can take that further and break down the revenue model by meals (breakfast, lunch, and dinner), categories of food (Italian, American, etc.), or even food item (pizzas, hamburgers, etc.). The more detailed your categories, the more information you can glean about how certain aspects of your business are performing.

The **cost model** identifies how you are spending your resources to make money. It includes your cost of goods sold (COGS) and your operating expenses. Basically, the business model is represented by your company's income statement. Understanding the business model enables entrepreneurs to make decisions that lead to greater revenue for lower costs.

Many of the world-changing businesses that have formed over the last 10 years have struggled to find a viable business model. For example, Twitter, a social networking and micro-blogging service founded in March 2006, has yet to determine how to generate revenue. Twitter CEO Evan Williams has spoken several times about the lack of a business model: "We will make money, and I can't say exactly how because . . . we can't predict how the businesses we're in will work." Also, "We think Twitter will make money. I think it will take some time to figure it out."<sup>1</sup> Yet if Twitter follows the Google example—build a huge customer base and worry about revenue later—it may figure out how to monetize those customers. For the year ending December 31, 2008, Google earned \$22 billion in revenue. The danger is that customers used to getting something for free may not want to pay for it, and unlike Google, the Twitter platform doesn't lend itself to generating ad income.

## The Revenue Model

All businesses must generate revenue if they are to survive. Even nonprofit organizations need revenue, whether from donations or a combination of donations, government grants, and income generated from sales of a product or service. Without this revenue, nonprofits would be unable to achieve their missions. Breaking down the revenue sources into categories helps an entrepreneur understand how the firm can increase each.

Different revenue categories often require variations on the firm's central strategy to achieve the highest possible outcomes. For instance, Amazon.com's revenue model consists of a number of categories according to the products it sells online. On its Website, customers can find everything from books and music to toys, computers, and electronics. In addition, the company breaks out sales by geographic region (see Figure 4.1). Amazon's strategy is to become the Walmart of the World Wide Web (WWW or Web), moving well beyond marketing books to selling items in a diverse array of product categories.<sup>2</sup> While Amazon markets its site heavily, spending close to \$469 million annually to draw customers to it, Amazon varies its strategy based on the product categories. For example, Amazon initially touted itself as "The Earth's Biggest Bookstore," which meant it had to carry (or have access to) more titles than its competitors. For toys, on the other hand, it outsourced marketing and fulfillment to Toys "R" Us. The agreement gave Toys "R" Us access to Amazon's order fulfillment system and gave Amazon a wider selection of products. In this category, Amazon was merely a portal for another company to sell its goods, although the co-branding strategy drew more people to the site and increased revenues for both firms. However, co-branding can bring difficulties. Amazon and Toys "R" Us were unhappy with each other. Toys "R" Us expected to be the exclusive toy seller on Amazon, while Amazon wanted to be the distribution channel for a variety of toy sellers. In the spring of 2006, the relationship was dissolved, and Toys "R" Us launched its own branded site.<sup>3</sup>

Different revenue categories for a firm are influenced by "drivers" that are directly correlated with the level of revenues the company earns. Using Amazon again, we see that the number of customers buying products from the site has the greatest influence on the revenues generated. Digging deeper, we find that other drivers influence revenue as well. For instance, it isn't just how many customers buy but also how much they spend per purchase and how often they buy (once a year, six times a year, etc.). The picture is still incomplete because not

	<b>2004</b>	<b>2005</b>	<b>2006</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>
<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>\$6.921</b>	<b>\$8.490</b>	<b>\$10.711</b>	<b>\$14.835</b>	<b>\$19.166</b>
Media	5.102	5.931	7.067	9.242	11.084
Electronics	1.686	2.329	3.361	5.210	7.540
Other	.133	.230	.283	.383	.542
<b>North America</b>	<b>\$3.847</b>	<b>\$4.711</b>	<b>\$5.869</b>	<b>\$8.095</b>	<b>\$10.228</b>
Media	2.589	3.046	3.582	4.630	5.350
Electronics	1.128	1.443	2.024	3.139	4.430
Other	.130	.222	.263	.326	.448
<b>International</b>	<b>\$3.073</b>	<b>\$3.779</b>	<b>\$4.842</b>	<b>\$6.740</b>	<b>\$8.938</b>
Media	2.513	2.885	3.485	4.612	5.734
Electronics	.558	.886	1.337	2.071	3.110
Other	.002	.008	.020	.057	.094
<b>Cost of Revenue</b>	<b>\$5.319</b>	<b>\$6.451</b>	<b>\$8.255</b>	<b>\$11.482</b>	<b>\$14.896</b>
North America	2.824	3.444	4.344	6.064	7.733
International	2.495	3.007	3.911	5.418	7.163
<b>Gross Profit</b>	<b>\$1.602</b>	<b>\$2.039</b>	<b>\$2.456</b>	<b>\$3.353</b>	<b>\$4.270</b>
<b>Operating Expenses</b>					
Fulfillment	.580	.729	.913	1.253	1.597
Marketing	.154	.192	.259	.336	.469
Technology & Content	.219	.406	.608	.715	.882
General & Administrative	.100	.146	.176	.200	.229
Other Operating Expenses	.050	.047	.010	.009	-.024
Stock-Based Compensation Exp.	.058	.087	.101	.185	.275
<b>Total Operating Expenses</b>	<b>\$1.161</b>	<b>\$1.607</b>	<b>\$2.067</b>	<b>\$2.698</b>	<b>\$3.428</b>
<b>Operating Income</b>	<b>\$441</b>	<b>\$432</b>	<b>\$389</b>	<b>\$655</b>	<b>\$842</b>

Source: Amazon.com Annual Report.  
US\$ in millions

**Figure 4.1**

### Amazon.com's business model

every person who visits Amazon will buy. Some people visit Amazon to comparison shop, while others use it to research books on a particular topic, which they then borrow from the local library. Thus, other revenue drivers include the percentage of visitors to the site who make a purchase and the number of times those customers will visit before actually completing a transaction.

While consumer awareness of the Amazon brand influences all the drivers, Amazon can pursue any number of tactics to move the drivers in its favor. For example, advertising enhances Amazon's overall brand image. In addition, Amazon uses tactics such as bundling to increase the average order size (if you buy this book, we will offer this one at a discount). Many other tactics, such as co-branding with strategic partners and offering affiliates a percentage of sales for referrals, help to increase the number of visits to the site as well as the number of times a year that people visit.

All these drivers influence the revenues that Amazon achieves. Entrepreneurs can formulate strategies to achieve their goals if they understand the central drivers and how they can influence them. If you don't fully understand your revenue drivers, you won't achieve the greatest success.

## The Cost Model

Typically, a firm needs to spend money to influence the revenue drivers. Thus, entrepreneurs also need to understand the cost model, which includes two primary categories: COGS and operating costs. Referring to Figure 4.1, we can identify the cost model for Amazon. COGS represents those costs directly associated with the revenue source. For a product company, COGS generally includes the raw materials and direct labor needed to make the product. For a retailer like Amazon, COGS is the cost of purchasing the products from various manufacturers that Amazon then sells.<sup>4</sup>

Some products have a very small COGS. For example, software is very cheap to produce after it has been developed. COGS may include only the cost of buying and burning a CD, packaging it, and shipping it to a retailer or customer.<sup>5</sup> COGS may be even lower if the software can be downloaded from the Web. For service firms, COGS is mostly composed of the direct labor involved in delivering the service. For instance, at a consulting firm, COGS would be the salary costs of the consultants working on the project, and at a tutoring company, COGS would be the hourly wages paid to the tutors for every hour worked.

As with revenues, we categorize COGS by product categories. For Amazon, strong control would suggest that it break out COGS for books, toys, and so on and directly tie each COGS to the revenue generated by that product category. However, in its publicly available financials, Amazon breaks out COGS only by geographic region. We suspect its internal reporting is more detailed, but since business is highly competitive, companies usually reveal as little detail as they can in public reports. Those internal details help entrepreneurs understand which products have strong gross margins and which products don't.

By understanding how sales drive COGS, entrepreneurs can achieve higher margins as well as increase revenues. For example, in November 2007, Amazon launched the Kindle, a portable reading device with the ability to wirelessly download books, blogs, magazines, and newspapers, followed in March 2009 by the launch of the Kindle for Apple's iPhone and iPod Touch devices.<sup>6</sup> The Kindle and iPhone/iPod touch developments have revolutionized Amazon.com's business model. Electronic delivery is another way to capture revenue, and it significantly reduces cost. The book doesn't have to be packaged and shipped. If a book is not in stock or is out of print, Amazon.com can now deliver it electronically, whereas in the past, it would have to either forgo the order or buy a minimum quantity of the book from the publisher, which would greatly increase COGS. Technology is allowing Amazon.com's business model to change toward an on-demand revenue and cost model that provides greater flexibility.

Many firms outsource production to more efficient producers in order to increase gross margins. P'kolino, a playroom furniture company founded by Antonio Turco-Rivas and JB Schneider, outsources production of its lower-end items to China. Moving production offshore can greatly reduce the manufacturing costs and thereby increase gross margins, but there may be other trade-offs to consider. To start, what other costs will P'kolino incur from outsourcing? Transportation costs will be much higher from China, and travel costs will increase, as P'kolino founders periodically visit the production sites to monitor quality and manage relationships. Do the savings from less expensive overseas manufacturing offset these increased transportation and travel costs? The answer is usually yes, given the high cost of manufacturing in the United States, but there are yet more factors to consider. Lead times for overseas outsourcing will have to be longer. If P'kolino is slow in moving its designs to the manufacturer, it may miss the critical holiday selling season. If the company has some proprietary components, outsourcing may cause manufacturing details to leak and seriously damage the firm's competitive advantage.

Along with influencing gross margins, outsourcing can powerfully reduce the up-front fixed costs the firm would incur if it produced its products itself. New ventures require more

time to break even due to high up-front fixed costs. Outsourcing production means the firm is moving from fixed expenses to variable expenses because it is paying the subcontractor based on the number of units it produces.

In May 2003, the founders of startup Keen Footwear decided to use subcontractors in China to make the company's line of shoes and sandals. Within two months, the Chinese subcontractor began production, and Keen sold 700,000 pairs of shoes for revenues of \$30 million in 2004.<sup>7</sup> Designers at Kidrobot use Adobe Illustrator to design their toys. Once completed, the plans are sent to China, where workers build prototypes. The designers then hone the prototypes and send the models back to China for production. As a result, Kidrobot can turn around a new toy in four months, as opposed to the industry average of one year for larger toymakers. The 85 person company had revenue of approximately \$20 million in 2008.<sup>8</sup> Avoiding the huge up-front costs of building a factory decreases the time to break even. But as we noted earlier, firms do not want to outsource their competitive advantage. Outsourcing production rarely jeopardizes firms' competitive advantage because their advantage usually isn't in the production process. Nonetheless, entrepreneurs must remain careful.

Operating costs provide the other main component of the cost model. Referring to Figure 4.1, we find that Amazon incurs large marketing expenses (14% of operating costs in 2008) to ensure that its brand continues to be at the forefront of consumers' minds. Rapid delivery is also important for the company's strategy. Fulfillment costs accounted for 47% of operating costs in 2008. By examining Amazon's cost model, we get a sense of the key elements of its strategy: brand recognition through marketing, world-class Web technologies and content (ensuring that customers have a pleasant experience when they visit the site), and quick delivery through high-tech fulfillment operations.

To create a viable business model, Amazon must develop and sustain clear competitive advantages. For instance, the company spends a considerable amount of money marketing the brand. This is essential for an Internet company that has little or no brick-and-mortar retail presence. In addition, we see that the company's cost of sales is 78% of revenues, which suggests that Amazon is pursuing a high-volume, low-cost strategy. This is related to the high marketing costs already mentioned because generating high volume takes significant marketing and advertising investments. The Kindle and other forms of electronic delivery that cut printing and fulfillment costs may lower the cost of sales if Amazon, rather than the publisher, is able to capture these savings.

We also see that Amazon's competitive advantage stems from keeping an enormous selection of products available at competitive prices. At the time of Amazon's founding, the average book superstore carried 150,000 titles in stock. Amazon started with 1 million titles. Again, the strategies are interdependent. By having a far greater selection than local stores, the company increases the likelihood of customer purchases and also increases the chances that a customer purchasing a unique title will purchase another book he or she has been meaning to buy. This availability strategy enables Amazon to meet the needs of customers who want their purchases quickly, but it leads to high inventory and fulfillment expenses. All these expenses lead to lower net income margins, but this is offset in turn by high volumes. Consider Walmart—it may average net margins in the low single digits, 3.3% in 2009, but when it is achieving those margins on *hundreds of billions* of dollars in revenue, \$375 billion for 2008, the end result is billions of dollars of profit. Amazon is pursuing a similar strategy, and it is an expensive one. The company needed significant up-front capital while establishing itself. Prior to going public in May 1997, Amazon raised \$10.6 million from private equity sources. Although it raised \$54 million in public offerings, it still needed to raise an additional \$1.25 billion in 1999 by selling convertible bonds to institutional investors such as investment banks and insurance companies.<sup>9</sup> Amazon didn't become profitable until 2003.<sup>10</sup>

Once entrepreneurs understand their basic business model, they can build a strategy to compete and win in the marketplace. The strategy and business model are interrelated:

Entrepreneurs can have a broad sense of what overall strategy they want to pursue, but until they have a full understanding of their business model, it is difficult to move on to tactics to implement that strategy.

## The First-Mover Myth

---

Beware entrepreneurs who claim they have a “first-mover advantage.” This claim is part and parcel of the “we don’t have any competition” claim discussed in the previous chapter. Most entrepreneurs who make these claims don’t truly understand the nature of their business and what a first-mover advantage really is. Elizabeth Preis, founder of Beautiful Legs by Post (BLBP), a mail-order firm that delivered quality panty hose to professional women in the United Kingdom, claimed that her firm had a first-mover advantage because no other specialty mail-order catalog had tapped into this market.<sup>11</sup> Preis said she would capture these women before other firms had the chance to enter. This would create loyalty to BLBP, she claimed, that would not only ensure that her company would beat the competition but also dissuade potential competitors from entering the market. Let’s ignore the fact that “other specialty mail-order catalogs” is an overly narrow definition of her competition and focus instead on how Preis intended to execute this first-mover advantage. Her three-year pro-forma financials show that she expected to capture 1.17% of her target market of upscale professional women. Such low penetration over three years isn’t necessarily bad, but clearly it is not a first-mover advantage. At that level, BLBP wouldn’t preempt competition from entering; there are too many women who haven’t bought from, let alone heard of, BLBP to have any sense of loyalty or switching costs.

Even if you are first and gain a substantial customer base, you may not succeed with a first-mover advantage. Jonathan Abrams, founder of Friendster, the first online social network, took his Website live in March 2003 and six months later garnered 3 million users.<sup>12</sup> In August 2003, MySpace emerged, and by the end of 2004, its site had 22 million monthly users compared to Friendster’s 1 million. By March 2007, Friendster was 13th among social networks in the United States.<sup>13</sup> Today, Facebook, launched in February 2004 by Mark Zuckerberg, dominates the social networking business with 276 million unique visitors monthly compared to MySpace’s 124 million.<sup>14</sup>

These examples illustrate several key aspects about capturing a first-mover advantage.

- You have to be first (or very early) into the market.
- You need to capture a large percentage of the market quickly (which means fast growth).
- You need to create switching costs so the customer will stick with you (even in today’s Internet world, where searching for competing brands is easy and low cost).

Gaining a first-mover advantage isn’t impossible, but it is very difficult and expensive. For instance, it is fair to say that Amazon successfully executed a first-mover advantage, although technically it wasn’t the first online bookseller. Amazon went from a startup company out of Seattle in July 1995 to a global firm with sales of \$19 billion in 2008. It introduced Internet retailing to many customers and educated them on the benefits. But even with that first-mover advantage, other firms have come into the marketplace and have succeeded. For instance, barnesandnoble.com has carved out significant market share, and in books, it has a larger percentage of online sales than does Amazon (17% versus 10%).<sup>15</sup> While Amazon has expanded into selling other goods, barnesandnoble.com has stayed with selling books and other media. Its revenues were \$466 million in 2008. As the nearby box illustrates, eBay is another example of a company that successfully executed a first-mover advantage. You’ll notice that eBay sustains its position with an active acquisition strategy.

## Executing a First-Mover Advantage at eBay

Since its inception, eBay has focused on viral marketing (any advertising that encourages people to pass along a marketing message or that facilitates such communication, as when people use free e-mail that tags the e-mail company's name in every message sent), rather than a large advertising budget, to build its network of users. With this strategy, eBay has created a largely organically grown, self-policing, and self-regulating market, in which it receives a cut of every transaction. It started in 1995 and raised \$6.55 million in venture capital before raising \$63 million in its 1998 initial public offering. Given that size is one of eBay's key advantages, the company has decided to expand its global presence, buying local upstarts in the process rather than adding services.

As of 2006, eBay commanded 90% of the online auction market. Its revenues have grown from \$32 million in 1996 to \$224 million in 1999 to \$700 million in 2002 to \$8.5 billion in 2008. In September 2005, eBay announced that it would purchase the voice-over-Internet company Skype for \$2.6 billion. Former eBay president and CEO Meg Whitman cited Skype's growing network of users, leadership position, and competitive advantage as reasons for the acquisition. Since eBay's acquisition, Skype has grown from 75 million users to over 400 million users in 2008. "eBay, PayPal, and Skype are the leading brands for three of the most important areas on the net: e-commerce, online payment, and voice communications," Whitman said. "By combining Skype with eBay and PayPal, we can create an unparalleled e-commerce and communications engine for buyers and sellers around the world."<sup>16</sup>

A first-mover advantage is expensive because firms have to quickly capture a large part of the available market. As we have discussed, Amazon raised over \$1 billion and eBay raised \$66 million to execute their first-mover strategies. That money was used to build organizational infrastructure and reach new customers. At the time of Amazon's initial public offering, company officials said, "Amazon will invest heavily in promotion and marketing, site development, and technology and operating infrastructure development. In addition, Amazon intends to offer attractive discounts that will reduce its already slim gross margins."<sup>17</sup> The company's formula for success depended on its ability to extend its brand position, provide customers with outstanding value and a superior shopping experience, and achieve sufficient sales volume to realize economies of scale.

The stage of the marketplace also contributes to the high costs of a first-mover advantage. Referring back the industry S-curve in Figure 3.6, you'll see that a new market emerges slowly. Rather than investing marketing dollars to educate customers on why their product is better, in a new market companies find themselves educating customers on why they need the product in the first place. This can take a lot of time and money, and it is a unique challenge of emerging markets.

There is an added danger to being a first mover: You may get it wrong. The history of business is littered with first movers supplanted by offerings that better met the customer's needs. Figure 4.2 lists some first movers and the firms that eventually gained dominance in those markets.

Figure 4.2 and the success of Amazon and eBay tell us that being first does not by itself lead to success. For a first mover, a winning strategy is complemented by other components that lead to a sustainable, bundled competitive advantage. In Amazon's case, its heavy bet on brand awareness led firms such as Toys "R" Us to partner with it, further enhancing the brand. Amazon has coupled this strategy with a rapid fulfillment infrastructure that allows the company to gain a cost advantage on efficiently delivering products to customers on a timely basis. In contrast, eBay's success combined being first to the market with installing a strong seller base. All the mini-stores on eBay use the platform because of its ubiquitous name.

Industry	First Mover	Current Leader
Social Networking	Friendster	Facebook
Video Games	Atari	Nintendo
Web Browser	Mosaic	Microsoft Internet Explorer
Internet Search Engine	Excite	Google
Word-Processing	WordStar	Microsoft Word
Software		
Personal Computer	Altair	Dell
E-mail	Juno	Yahoo Mail
Diet Soda	No-Cal	Diet Coke
Presentation Software	Harvard Graphics	Microsoft PowerPoint
Online Bookseller	Book Stacks Unlimited	Amazon
ATM Machines	Docutel	Diebold

**Figure 4.2****Supplanting the first-mover advantage**

These sellers know that they will have strong customer traffic because of the eBay brand. Even if a more attractive technology is introduced, it will be difficult to get buyers and sellers to switch to that platform.

Considering the high costs, it is nearly impossible to achieve a first-mover advantage without significant outside financing, most often venture capital financing. Less than 0.1% of all firms receive venture capital. Since most firms aren't attractive to venture capitalists or other large sources of capital, the first-mover advantage is often too expensive a strategy to pursue. Relax. As we have tried to illustrate, the first-mover advantage often fails anyway. Most successful firms win not because they have some inherent, large competitive advantage but because they execute better than the competition. These firms are flexible and adapt to the customer so that they continue to add value long after the initial launch.

Winning is more about implementing your strategy than about formulating some grand strategy that nobody has ever thought of before. Don't get us wrong—you absolutely need a well-thought-out strategy—but in the end, execution of that strategy will determine your success or failure.

## Formulating a Winning Strategy

Winning strategies include some combination of the following attributes: better, cheaper, and faster. Your business needs to create some value for which people are willing to pay. P'kolino, the children's playroom furniture company mentioned earlier, is pursuing customers with better design. The company expects parents and grandparents to pay more for a unique product that encourages creative play. Pete Lescoe, founder of FoodShouldTasteGood, Inc., is pursuing a better product strategy. His company makes chips with all natural ingredients baked right into the chip rather than adhering to the industry standard of spraying on flavored seasoning. We would expect to see their competitive advantages reflected in the business models of both these firms. P'kolino should achieve high gross margins because parents—and more specifically, financially well-off parents—are willing to pay a premium for well-designed children's furniture. Its margins may be offset somewhat by the distribution channels the firm uses. If, for example, it uses Pottery Barn, the prestigious and powerful retailer may appropriate more of those gross margins. While P'kolino might be able to retain stronger gross margins by selling directly to parents, it would incur higher operating costs such as marketing and fulfillment infrastructure costs. Entrepreneurs can capture the trade-offs between different approaches

by examining their relative impacts on the net income margin. FoodShouldTasteGood's production process is more efficient. Spray-on flavors are a headache because the process gums up equipment, which then requires lots of cleaning and downtime after each production run. In contrast, flavoring via "inclusion" of ingredients is cleaner, faster, and cheaper. Just like P'kolino, however, FoodShouldTasteGood needs strong distribution partners and may have to relinquish a large portion of its gross margins to gain access to sales channels.

We can summarize P'kolino's competitive advantage as better designs and FoodShouldTasteGood's as better taste. Other companies may have a branding advantage or just execute better than the competition. Whatever the company's competitive advantages, it needs to take steps to protect them. There are numerous paths for doing so. If you have a unique product that includes significant intellectual property, you may file for patent protection or choose to maintain trade secrets. (Chapter 13 covers intellectual property issues in greater detail.)

## The People Are What Matters

Students often think that their company needs to have an explicit, identifiable, and patentable competitive advantage. However, more often than not, your competitive advantage will be complemented by the tacit knowledge held by the people within your company. Southwest Airlines, for example, has consistently been one of the most profitable airlines, a result partially due to its direct route strategy (rather than the hub-and-spoke system of the old-line airlines). Southwest employees also work more efficiently than their counterparts at traditional airlines. Existing airlines have tried and failed to imitate their friendly customer interactions and motivation to get airplanes quickly serviced and back into the air. In other words, Southwest's competitive advantage is inherent in the tacit knowledge of its employees. The most difficult aspects of a firm's strategy to imitate are the people and the execution of the strategy. From the very beginning of your company's life, you need to create a culture that is conducive to fostering the human elements of your business.

Probably the most important thing founders do is to create the organization's culture. While the original culture will evolve, companies tend to be replications of what they were in the past, so it is critical that you get the culture right at the beginning. You need to create an atmosphere that encourages people to bond to the company. Yes, your people believe in the mission; yes, they believe in the product; but more importantly, the members of your team need to believe in each other and want to continue to be part of the organization. Let's break building and maintaining a culture into three main categories: values, selection, and structure.

**Values.** As the founder, you need to identify what values you want to drive your organization. Values are beliefs shared by all members. For example, JetBlue based its organization building on five core values:<sup>18</sup>

- Safety
- Caring
- Integrity
- Fun
- Passion

Values communicate what kind of work environment founders want to create and what guidelines they use in hiring future employees. For JetBlue, safety is a central value, and without question, this is a critical value for the airline industry. The other values communicate that JetBlue treats its employees the way it expects its employees to treat the customers. The values put into place at the company's founding will flow through to formulating and implementing the strategy. More importantly, values create the foundation on which your company will grow.

**Selection.** It's important to hire the right person the first time. Communicating the values you've identified to new team members goes a long way toward making sure there is a fit between the employee and the company. Every new person added to the company will reinforce the values you've put in place, thereby helping to sustain the company's culture. JetBlue focuses on its five core values when interviewing job candidates and structures its interview questions around these values.<sup>19</sup> Canadian entrepreneur Peter Armstrong earned success with his first business, Spotlight Tours, by focusing on customer relationships. In order to build those relationships with customers, he hired graduating theater students as tour directors. He followed the same strategy after buying the failing Rocky Mountaineer tours from VIA Rail and turned it into Canada's first profitable passenger rail line in 40 years by pursuing the luxury vacation market at a premium fare.<sup>20</sup>

**Structure.** The structure of a new venture changes as it matures. Early on, it is very informal as the founders and a few early hires do a wide variety of tasks. There are a couple of things to keep in mind as you build your early organization. First, you need to hire people who can "wear many hats"—who can work on a prototype, contact vendors, create budgets, and talk to customers as the need arises. It can often be a mistake to hire a corporate lifer who is used to working in one functional area and having expensive administrative support. Such employees, while talented, may not operate well in the informal startup environment.

Second, as team-building expert Elizabeth Rley<sup>21</sup> says, "over-hire." That is, find team members and early-stage employees who are overqualified for the tasks they will initially be doing. While you might save some money by hiring someone else with fewer skills, as a young and resource-constrained new venture, you won't have the time and money to help that person learn on the job.

Finally, you need to create a flexible organizational structure. While you may have an organizational chart, reporting and communications need to be free to flow throughout the organization. That means that any employee during this startup phase can freely talk to any other. This loose structure facilitates learning about your business model, about processes that do and don't work, about customers' needs, and so forth. It fosters and promotes flexibility. The universal truth about strategy formulation and business planning as a whole is that it needs to change and adjust during implementation based on your customers' reactions. If you build a flexible organization, you will be in a better position to adjust your strategy. As the organization matures, the structure will necessarily become more formalized. While it is easy to be informal with 5, 10, or even 20 employees, it is inefficient when you have 150.

In sum, an organization's culture starts at its founding and determines your strategy—and ultimately your success—for the life of the organization. Take time to think about what kind of culture you want and create a plan to make sure it is implemented.

## Entry Strategy

Successful launches are iterative. Southwest Airlines didn't start with a nationwide route plan but instead serviced routes between Dallas, Houston, and San Antonio. After this initial market test in Texas, the company adjusted its processes, improved upon its customer interactions, and then added more routes. Over time, the carrier has continued to add routes and today flies to 64 cities in 32 states nationwide. Since its inception, Southwest has flown one type of airplane—the Boeing 737—which helps streamline its operation. In addition, the company has focused on using less congested airports and flying point-to-point rather than using the hub-and-spoke system of traditional airlines. Each new route proved the Southwest business model and created an opportunity to reevaluate and improve the product. Raising millions in advance of a national route structure and then launching nationwide from day one would have surely led to failure for Southwest, considering the high startup costs of creating an airline.

	<b>JetBlue</b>	<b>Southwest</b>	<b>UAL</b>	<b>AA</b>	<b>FedEx</b>
<b>Strategy</b>	Low cost	Low cost	Geographic coverage (national and international)	Geographic coverage	International, overnight package delivery
<b>Core Customer Competitive Advantage</b>	Leisure traveler Cost structure (non-union, no hubs, smaller airports)	Leisure traveler Cost structure (no hubs, smaller airports)	Business and leisure Size of fleet, geographic coverage	Business and leisure Size of fleet, geographic coverage	Business Size of fleet, geographic coverage, entry barriers
<b>Revenue Model</b>	Airfare, freight	Airfare, freight	Airfare, freight	Airfare, freight	Package
<b>Cost Model</b>	Labor, fuel, aircraft, landing fees, and infrastructure	Same	Same plus higher costs associated with “hub” system	Same plus higher costs associated with “hub” system	Same plus higher costs associated with “hub” system
<b>Other</b>	Investment in IT, customer focus, employee focus, hands-on CEO	Standardized aircraft, customer and employee focus, hands-on CEO			Investment in IT, employee focus, hands-on CEO

**Figure 4.3****Benchmarking comparison for JetBlue**

By advancing step by step, the company learned a lot of lessons that it otherwise would have missed. Likewise, you should devise an entry strategy for your firm that allows you to test your concept in the market at a relatively low cost.

**Benchmarking.** Before you raise a dime of outside capital, first learn from others. Benchmark competitors and learn “best practices” from firms that operate inside and outside your industry of interest. Create a simple matrix that identifies the firm and its strategy, core customers, sources of competitive advantage, basic revenue model (including margins), and major cost categories—and any other elements that you think might be useful. JetBlue followed much of Southwest’s formula during its startup phase. Its founder and former CEO, David Neeleman, worked for six months as an executive vice president at Southwest Airlines before he was fired. At JetBlue, Neeleman placed a high priority on creating a cooperative company culture and hiring the right people to fit that model. Initially, JetBlue flew only one type of jet. The flight attendants help clean up the plane for quicker turnarounds at the gate.<sup>22</sup>

Figure 4.3 compares JetBlue during its launch phase to some of its competition. It highlights a gap in the marketplace where JetBlue could enter (geographic opening for a low-cost carrier out of New York) as well as the ways different firms are competing. You can see that a low-cost, point-to-point system focusing on leisure travel makes sense, and it appears that JetBlue should pursue this strategy. Gathering this initial information puts you in a position to do an initial, ideally low-cost, market test.

We included Federal Express (FedEx) in the matrix because entrepreneurs should look outside their immediate industry and identify “best practice” companies there. From FedEx, JetBlue can learn the power of a state-of-the-art information technology infrastructure as well as lessons on creating an effective corporate culture.

## The Serial Entrepreneur: Can Lightning Strike Twice?

What happens when an entrepreneur is forced from the company he founded? If you're a serial entrepreneur like David Neeleman, you start another airline. On Valentine's Day in 2007, an ice storm blanketed the East Coast. JetBlue had to cancel 1,700 flights and stranded 130,000 passengers. That exposed poor operations and communication. Most airlines responded by canceling flights prior to the storm and sending passengers home, but JetBlue thought the weather would break and it would be able to fly. Instead, the storm hit with a fury, and there were stories of JetBlue passengers confined to their planes for as long as five hours as they waited on the tarmac for the weather to break.

Neeleman was publically apologetic, even creating a YouTube clip to apologize directly to his customers. JetBlue created a Customer Bill of Rights, which highlighted how they would treat customers affected by future storms. But it wasn't enough. In May 2007, Neeleman was fired as CEO from JetBlue—the company he founded in 2000.

But Neeleman wasn't down for long. In December 2008, Brazilian-born Neeleman launched Azul Airlines, based in Brazil, after securing \$200 million from investors—many of them the same investors who previously backed JetBlue. Azul—Portuguese for blue—is trying to replicate JetBlue's low-cost airline success in an emerging economy where flying is almost 50% more per mile than in the United States. Will lightning strike twice?<sup>23</sup>

**Initial Market Test.** You can devise your initial market test once you have a strong understanding of the competition. For JetBlue, the initial market test entailed operating one route and then expanding routes based upon what it had learned. If you are planning to open a restaurant and believe you will compete based on unique recipes and cuisine, preparing your menu for family and friends would be a simple, low-cost test. Do they like the food? What other items might they like to see on the menu? Note that you can do this test without spending any money on an actual location. Next you might see about catering one or two events. Here, you can test whether people will pay for your cuisine and further refine your menu. The next step might be to offer your food on a mall cart that sells smaller items in common areas at shopping malls. Are people drawn to your cart? Do they buy? This test helps you determine location. What kind of traffic patterns does the business need? Which demographic group is most drawn to the cuisine? Based upon your learning during this market test, you might be ready to open your first restaurant. Figure 4.4 illustrates a market test schedule. Developing this schedule not only guides your learning but also helps you understand when, how, and how much it will cost to achieve the next milestone.

The concept of escalating market tests is powerful. While you can visualize and plan for your business in great detail over a long period of time, you never truly learn whether it is a viable business until you make a sale. Too many entrepreneurs make the mistake of spending \$1 million or more to open up that first restaurant only to find that customers don't like the basic concept. Adapting your concept at that point is more costly than it would have been if you had completed some earlier market tests. If you adapt your menu and cuisine at every step in Figure 4.4, you'll be much closer to a winning concept when you open your first restaurant.

It is important to remember that successful new-venture creation is an iterative process. Regardless of how large your company grows, you will continually adapt your business based on what you learn at each market test. At a company like Microsoft, for instance, new software products go through an alpha test, during which the company uses the software internally. After the software is debugged, it goes to a beta site. In beta, a handful of customers use the product and report back problems as well as additional functions that they would like to see. Based upon the feedback, the company might continue with more beta tests. Once they feel that the product is close to their goal, managers release it to the larger market. As any company that has been through a product recall can attest, prematurely releasing a product is

Market Test	What You Expect to Learn	Timing
Prepare dinner for family and friends	Do they like the menu? What else would they add? When would they eat this food? How often?	2–3 events over the next month.
Try to sell a catering event	Can you actually sell the concept? Can you prepare larger quantities in an efficient manner? How does preparing large quantities impact taste?	1–2 events one month after the initial test.
Rent a mall cart	What kind of people (demographics) are attracted to your concept? When do they buy (lunch, dinner)? How much do they buy? How often do they buy? What kind of traffic patterns seem to be most conducive to the business?	Operate for 1–2 months. Do this by month 3 of business.
Open first restaurant	What preparation processes are most effective? What kind of staffing do you need? What hours of operation capture the largest percentage of customers?	6 months after launch.
Open second restaurant	Can the processes be replicated? Do the same types of customers come into this location? What attributes seem to define the best location?	Open 1 year after first restaurant.
Open restaurants 3–5	Can you replicate processes? What processes need to be established at the central level to oversee all the restaurants?	Open in years 2–5.
Franchise the concept	Are potential franchisees interested in your concept? Are your processes sound so that a franchisee can replicate your company-owned restaurants?	Franchise in years 5–8.

**Figure 4.4**

### Market test schedule

an incredibly expensive proposition. The costs include the possibility of having to distribute replacements for defective units, the opportunity costs of disgruntled customers who choose not to buy from you again, and the broader costs of damage to your reputation in the market as customers spread the word that your product is inferior. A controlled launch plan will help you manage the process and avoid these potentially debilitating costs.

**Creating a Platform.** Figure 4.4 shows the concept of creating a platform on which to grow your business. Opening the first restaurant is the platform, whereas opening successive restaurants is a growth strategy. For many entrepreneurs, opening one restaurant may be the end goal, but others will have larger aspirations. Frank Day's restaurant empire includes 144 casual dining restaurants: 44 Brewery Restaurants (Rock Bottom Restaurant and Brewery, Walnut Brewery, ChopHouse, and Sing Sing) and 100 Old Chicago's. Day is a role model for creating a hugely successful business. He "got into the game" by opening one restaurant he used for experience and learning. In order to differentiate his Old Chicago in Boulder,

Colorado, Day began offering a selection of 110 beers. As he expanded the chain to new locations, Day allowed the restaurants to reflect their local communities and focused on the ambience. Day then replicated his highly successful business model and grew the business into multi-million-dollar chains, with estimated revenues for the private company of over \$304 million in 2009.\*

This strategy works across industries and marketplaces. P'kolino, for example, entered the children's furniture market with a few designs. As the owners started selling their products and learned what aspects customers liked and didn't like, they continued to add designs. Over time, they have entered different segments by offering different levels of quality. This type of learning reduces your up-front costs and exposes you to new opportunities that you might not otherwise perceive because you are interacting with customers. Finally, if the worst case should occur and you fail, you will lose less than if you boldly jumped in with multiple restaurants or products all at once.

Opening that first restaurant or selling your first product is your entry into the marketplace. You'll need to have an overriding entry strategy as we discussed earlier—perhaps differentiation. You'll also need to have marketing, operating, and financial plans in place to help achieve your strategy. Much of this is covered in other courses you've taken, and we will explore business planning in depth in Chapters 7 and 8 as well. The key for your entry strategy is to find a pathway into the industry and a way of surviving the first two to three years when most businesses are operating with a negative cash flow. Starting in year three, you need to envision how you will not only grow your firm but also thrive.

## Growth Strategy

The first two to three years of any new venture are about survival. The firm has to prove that its customers are interested in its offerings, refine its operations, and increase its visibility. After the first couple of years, many firms will seek growth. In Figure 4.4, we see growth as a function of adding more company-owned restaurants and then ultimately franchising the concept. Managing growth is difficult, and Chapter 14 goes into greater detail on these issues. Our goal here is to think about strategies for growth—what works, when it works, and why it works. Although experience suggests that the first few years of a new venture should focus on testing the market and refining your business model, it is never too early to start thinking about how you will grow. We will explore several common growth strategies.

**Franchising.** As shown in the example in Figure 4.4, franchising is a strong growth strategy if you have a replicable business model. Most often franchising is used with retail concepts, such as McDonald's or Mail Boxes Etc. We can summarize the keys to success with franchising as follows:

- **Replicability**—The business model is well established and proven. As the franchisor, you have worked out the processes of opening and operating a business unit (which is captured in the Franchising Disclosure Document and details the operations, quality controls, policies, procedures, and financial aspects of the business).
- **Control**—The brand is the life blood of your business. A poor franchisee can damage your brand, so you need to have monitoring systems in place. Control is also important to ensure that the franchisee is accurately reporting revenues because this controls the revenue you'll receive from your franchising royalty.

Franchising leads to two types of growth. First, it speeds growth as it brings in new capital to fund that growth. Specifically, the franchisees fund new unit development. SUBWAY is the classic example. In fact, many critics argue that SUBWAY takes advantage of its franchisees

---

\* [www.rockbottomrestaurantinc.com/aboutus](http://www.rockbottomrestaurantinc.com/aboutus)

#	Chain	U.S. Total Franchise Sales	U.S. Franchise Units	Sales per Store
1	McDonald's	\$24.0 billion	11,833	\$2,032,452
2	SUBWAY	\$8.2 billion	21,195	\$386,884
3	Burger King	\$7.6 billion	6,280	\$1,211,783
4	Wendy's	\$5.8 billion	4,662	\$1,252,681
5	Dunkin' Donuts	\$5.0 billion	5,451	\$912,677
6	Taco Bell	\$4.2 billion	4,322	\$983,341
7	KFC	\$4.0 billion	4,302	\$925,151
8	Pizza Hut	\$3.9 billion	6,196	\$629,438
9	Applebee's	\$3.3 billion	1,343	\$2,464,631
10	SONIC Drive-Ins	\$3.0 billion	2,706	\$1,118,334

Source: Technomic/Restaurant Finance, compiled by Blue MauMau 2007 ([www.bluemaumau.org/6057/ten\\_largest\\_restaurant\\_franchisors\\_systemwide\\_sales](http://www.bluemaumau.org/6057/ten_largest_restaurant_franchisors_systemwide_sales))

**Figure 4.5**

### Top 10 franchisors

(see Box). SUBWAY's growth was phenomenal. Starting with 3 company stores in 1965, it grew to 134 by 1979 and has exploded to more than 30,000 franchises today. SUBWAY is ubiquitous in the United States and operates in 89 other countries around the world. It has focused on achieving long-term growth and expanding in countries with high population density, available disposable income, and political and economic stability.<sup>24</sup> Figure 4.5 shows the top 10 franchise operations in the world, current revenue, number of units, and sales per store.

## The Dark Side of Franchising: Does SUBWAY Take Advantage of Its Franchisees?

Although franchising is an excellent growth strategy for the franchisor, as well as a means for individual franchisees to start their own tried-and-true business, franchising is not without its problems. For example, many critics and franchisees feel that SUBWAY is not a good partner. In 1998, Dean Sagar, the staff economist of the U.S. House of Representatives' Small Business Committee, said, "SUBWAY is the biggest problem in franchising and emerges as one of the key examples of every abuse you can think of."<sup>25</sup>

Today SUBWAY has over 30,000 restaurants,<sup>26</sup> but that rapid growth has caused some dissension. Many franchisees believe that SUBWAY has violated their agreements by allowing new franchisees to open close to existing restaurants, thereby cannibalizing sales. "In many markets SUBWAY has overbuilt," says

International Association of Independent SUBWAY Franchisees (IAISF) Executive Director Leslee Scott. "There are guys who were doing \$8,000 a week three or four years ago who today are doing \$4,500."<sup>27</sup>

Although most SUBWAY franchisees are happy and profitable, the franchise business model is ripe for conflict. "The franchising business is, at its core, antagonistic," says Tom Schmidt, an attorney who is suing the Houston-based Marble Slab Creamery ice cream chain on behalf of nine Marble Slab franchisees. Schmidt continues, "Franchisees must also play by strict rules, and those rules are constantly changing according to the parent company's whims."<sup>28</sup> Thus, franchisees and franchisors need to be aware of and prepare for likely conflict.

For example, SUBWAY changed how its multi-million-dollar advertising budget is controlled. Jim Hansen, CEO of the North American Association of SUBWAY Franchisees (NAASF), says, "The new franchisee agreement 'threatens' control franchisees have over the advertising funds."<sup>29</sup> So the NAASF, an

independent group representing about 67% of all SUBWAY franchisees, along with the SUBWAY Franchisee Advertising Fund Trust, filed lawsuits seeking to bar SUBWAY from instituting these new terms. The

groups claimed that, "if left intact, the agreement would give SUBWAY the power to redirect franchisee advertising contributions to a separate entity at any time."<sup>30</sup>

Second, franchising adds new revenues—the royalty fee and the franchising fee. Franchisees owe the franchisor a royalty ranging from 2% to 12.5% on every dollar earned.<sup>31</sup> For this royalty, the franchisor promises to support the franchisee. Often the fee will include royalties the franchisees must pay for advertising, but sometimes this charge is a separate fee. The franchisor pools the advertising royalties and spends it on behalf of the franchisees for regional and national TV, radio, newspaper, magazine, and Internet ads.

The franchisees also pay a fee to secure the rights to the franchise. This ranges from \$25,000 for a relatively undeveloped brand to \$45,000 for a McDonald's. Moreover, McDonald's requires a down payment that must come from nonborrowed personal resources, exclusive of a personal residence. The initial down payment is 40% of the total cost of a new restaurant, which ranges between \$950,200 and \$1,800,000, plus McDonald's requires the franchisee to have an additional \$300,000 in nonborrowed personal resources after the down payment.<sup>32</sup> For the most part, these fees cover the overhead for managing and monitoring the system, but they are also a source of growth capital.

Some franchisors bring in additional revenue by selling supplies to their franchisees. In fact, the franchising business model can be so lucrative that William Ackman, whose Pershing Square Capital Management once owned a 4.9% stake in McDonald's, challenged the firm to spin off all its company-owned stores, which, according to his analysis, dragged down the firm's profit. After two years of pressure, Ackman ultimately failed to get the change he wanted and sold all of his shares in McDonald's at the end of 2007.<sup>33</sup> However, it is necessary to have company-owned stores in the launch and early years, while the entrepreneur tests and refines the basic operations and market acceptance of the concept. Successful company-owned stores also allow the franchisor to charge larger franchise fees.

**Expanding Your Product Mix.** Many companies start with one product, but as they gain traction in the marketplace, they recognize new opportunities to add to their product mix. Building your product mix should increase your revenue at a rate greater than the associated costs. In other words, you should be able to spread your existing costs across a larger product base. You might use the same vendor to provide raw materials or to produce your product. That would increase your power to secure better terms when negotiating. You also might leverage your existing distribution channels. By selling more products through these channels, you increase your negotiating power.

The key is to leverage your firm's experience as you become more familiar with your core customers and your own operations. Whole Foods, for example, has included lifestyle departments at its stores in Austin and Los Angeles, selling all-natural housewares and clothing. "The development and incorporation of Whole Foods Market Lifestyle reflects the company's founding values into other aspects of life," said Marci Frumkin, a Whole Foods regional marketing director. "The new lifestyle store is another example of how Whole Foods leads by example . . . educating consumers about organic food, natural products and ethical business practices."<sup>34</sup> Like Whole Foods, you should search for ways to extend your product mix that leverage your existing production or customer relationships.

Adding products is a means to grow, but it is not risk free. Eighty percent of new products are failures.<sup>35</sup> The risk is that the company will incur development expenses, the market may not accept the new product, and the unsuccessful product line could reflect unfavorably on

the reputation of the existing products. You need a coherent strategy to minimize the risks of new products. Start with your firm's competitive advantage. What do you do better than anybody else? For P'kolino, that advantage is innovative furniture designs. Adding designs increases P'kolino's power by giving it more visibility with its distributors, such as Babies 'R' Us. P'kolino also decreases its cost of direct distribution by selling a wider range of products on its Website and by having enough products in a catalog to try a direct-mail strategy. Furthermore, this strategy gives the company more leverage with its vendors. More products ideally result in a larger production volume, which suggests that P'kolino can negotiate better terms.

iRobot was a Massachusetts-based startup focused on building robots on specification for government agencies and industry until it created the Roomba. This innovative self-propelled and self-controlled vacuum cleaner helped iRobot move into the lucrative consumer products market. Rather than partnering with another firm and selling the technology, iRobot decided it could manufacture the Roomba overseas. Although it still builds robots for military and industrial use, iRobot began to focus on branching into other consumer products.<sup>36</sup> Today iRobot is a public company generating over \$299 million in sales with several new product innovations such as floor-vacuuming robots (Roomba - over 3 million sold), floor-washing robots (Scooba), shop-sweeping robots (Dirt Dog), pool-cleaning robots (Verro), gutter-cleaning robots (Looj), and programmable robots. iRobot has also sold 3,000 PackBot tactical military robots that have been deployed on missions in Afghanistan and Iraq.

A product growth strategy identifies synergies within the firm and then leverages those synergies in conjunction with the company's customer knowledge. While sound management imagines what the firm will pursue for product growth during the launch phase, in reality many new opportunities will appear only once you have started selling your first product and gained firsthand market intelligence.

**Geographic Expansion.** Expanding geographically is another common growth strategy. This natural growth is based on the underlying assumption that customers should like your product or service elsewhere if they like it in the location where you founded the company. All the larger retail companies in existence today had roots in one geographic region before they grew outward. Walmart started in Arkansas, while McDonald's was originally located in Bakersfield, California.

You can plan geographic expansion systematically, or it can happen haphazardly. Often-times potential customers will come across your product through the media or the Internet and want it. The MouseDriver,<sup>37</sup> a one-product company that developed a computer mouse in the shape of a Big Bertha golf driver, received unsolicited inquiries from potential distribution agents as far away as Japan. While opportunistic growth can be a smart move, entrepreneurs benefit from developing and following a coherent strategy.

When planning geographic expansion, you'll want to weigh a number of factors:

- Customers—First and foremost, are the customers in the new location similar to those in areas with existing operations? Your initial strategy is predicated on delivering a product or service that satisfies the needs or wants of a core customer group. For your initial expansion, you want to leverage the knowledge you've gained from serving customers in your initial location. For example, College Coach,<sup>38</sup> a college advisory service, targets well-to-do parents through two primary channels: First, the company sets up retail stores in affluent suburbs, and second, it partners with large *Fortune* 500 companies such as IBM to provide human resource benefits. College Coach was founded and based in Newton, Massachusetts, an affluent suburb of Boston. Its initial expansion efforts were to the suburbs of New York City and Chicago. The rationale behind these locations was the prevalence of well-to-do parents who are focused on getting their children into Ivy League schools and other top universities across the country. Thus, College Coach seeks

geographic regions characterized by affluent pockets where a high percentage of kids apply to top-tier universities.

- Vendors—Can you continue to use the same vendors? If not, what costs will you incur to establish new relationships? Remember, the greater your volume, the stronger your negotiating position. If you can continue with the same vendors, you will have greater bargaining power, but that power becomes diluted if you add vendors.
- Distribution—Can you use the same distribution channels? As with vendors, you can increase your leverage and reduce your marginal costs by moving more volume through existing distribution channels.

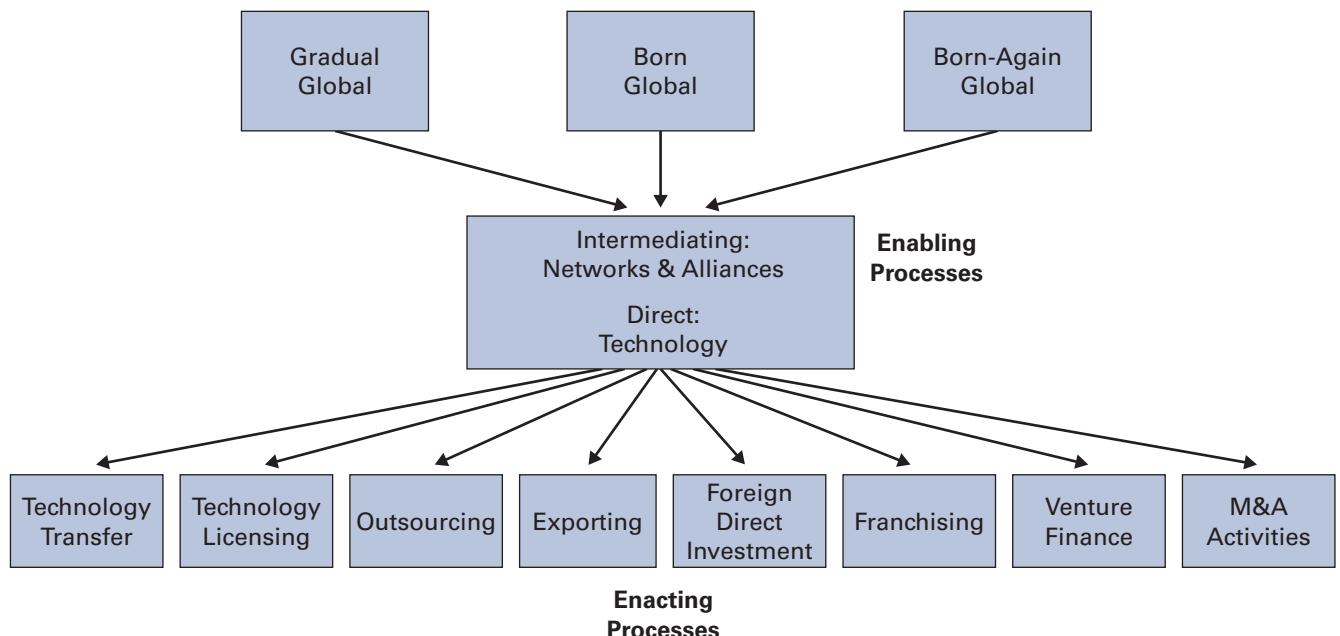
These factors should guide your decision making as you formulate your growth strategy. If you look at the geographic expansion of retail operations, you'll note that they strive for a critical mass within a region before moving to another region. For example, Dunkin' Donuts is highly concentrated in the northeastern United States. There are approximately 169 Dunkin' Donuts outlets within a five-mile radius of Boston: one outlet for every 3,500 residents. Customers in the Boston area know the company well, and its core customers view stopping at Dunkin' Donuts for their morning coffee as integral to their morning routine. Not only does this high concentration keep the brand at the forefront of the customer's mind, but also it gives Dunkin' Donuts considerable operating efficiencies. The key is balancing your company's saturation point—the point when new expansion within the region cannibalizes existing operations—against its opportunities to expand to new regions.

Today with the Internet, it is easier than ever to expand across many regions simultaneously. Potential customers find out about your product and then contact you about buying the product or representing your company in a new region. Before accepting these offers, make sure you understand the trade-offs. First, most sales and even unsolicited orders require time and effort on your part. This is time and effort that is diverted from establishing your company in its existing regions. Second, your company may not have the infrastructure in place to support the buyer after the sale. Third, consider any additional costs for transporting the product to the customer. While unsolicited orders can be attractive, make sure you understand the hidden costs (mostly in time and effort) that you incur as you fill them.

**International Growth.** International growth is a special case of geographic expansion. In today's global economy, new entrepreneurial firms often should consider expansion at their inception. Advances in logistics, technology, and manufacturing have allowed smaller and younger firms to compete globally. Firms that look globally from the outset often have tightly managed organizations, innovative products, and strong networks for marketing. They also have more-aggressive growth strategies, use more distribution channels, and have more experienced management teams. They don't simply export but instead choose foreign direct investment in the countries in which they seek to operate. With their global reach, they can introduce innovative products to new markets, giving them an advantage over startups that operate only in the domestic sphere. They also may operate in industries that are globally integrated from the start.<sup>39</sup>

The U.S. Commerce Department's Exporter Database (EDB) reveals that in 2006 the total number of U.S. firms exporting goods stood at 245,945—more than double the 112,854 firms that exported in 1992.<sup>40</sup> In another study, Rodney Shrader and colleagues<sup>41</sup> estimate that one-third of all small manufacturing firms derive at least 10% of their revenues from foreign sources. Unfortunately for a new venture, going global increases risk and costs money. Pat Dickson<sup>42</sup> provides a model that illustrates when and how entrepreneurial ventures go global (see Figure 4.6).

Dickson notes that there are three types of global entrepreneurial firms. Those in the first category, *gradual globals*, enter international markets in stages in order to reduce their risk. During their initial expansion, gradual globals will enter countries similar to their domestic market and use processes that require lower costs and commitment, such as exporting. Over

**Figure 4.6****The entrepreneurial firm's international expansion process**

time, they will enter more, and increasingly dissimilar, countries. Gradual globals will also expand their entry modes, moving from exporting to foreign direct investment, for example. The second category of entrepreneurial firms is *born global*. These firms plan to enter international markets right from their outset. Those in the final category, *born-again globals*, have been operating only domestically, but some triggering event, such as an unsolicited order from abroad, causes them to move rapidly into new international markets. Although there is a lot of debate about which type of firm is most likely to succeed globally, entrepreneurs need to think about international business from day one.

Dickson suggests that entrepreneurs pursue enabling strategies, given that new ventures are resource constrained. For instance, they can use intermediaries to reduce needed resources or use low-cost methods, such as the Internet, that enable them to make contact with potential international partners. In many cases, entrepreneurs can tap their existing networks, such as employees, investors, vendors, or customers, to facilitate international entry. One of your vendors, for instance, may have distribution capabilities in another country that you can use on a variable-cost basis. You might also pursue alliances with other companies. The Internet enables entrepreneurs to directly access international markets in a low-cost manner. You can market to firms worldwide by simply putting up a Website. You can proactively manage relationships overseas by using the Internet and e-mail. The toy designers at Kidrobot communicate with their subcontractors from afar, electronically sending their plans and product changes to China.<sup>43</sup> Companies are adapting to a growing trend called telepresence systems. Telepresence refers to a set of technologies that allow persons to feel as if they are physically present at a location other than their true location.<sup>44</sup> Whatever enablers you use, it is easier today to enter global markets than ever before. Dickson's model moves from enabling to enacting processes. There are eight primary means to expand globally.

- Technology transfer (joint venture)—When firms choose to enter the global market, they may need to decide whether to sell their technology or produce it abroad themselves.

Producing technology overseas can involve significant risk and investment. On the other hand, having a partner firm in the target country or region produce and distribute your product can reduce your entry costs. The costs of technology development and production often lead young firms to build alliances and joint partnerships and to focus on niche markets.<sup>45</sup> However, there is a risk you'll lose control of the technology because the partner firm will gain insight into how you produce the product.

- ▣ Technology licensing—Perhaps the most common means to enter a foreign market is to secure an agent to represent the company abroad. Here, the entrepreneur may decide that he or she is better off letting a foreign company produce and sell the product, perhaps rebranded under its own name, and taking a royalty as compensation. Licensing reduces risk from an operational perspective. While this is an excellent means of generating revenue and conserving resources, it also is a lost opportunity to extend your own brand into new markets.
- ▣ Outsourcing—Outsourcing allows businesses to handle key attributes of their products while handing over the responsibility for development and manufacturing to a subcontractor. The outsourced production may be sent back to the company's home country for sale. It is often the first logical step as a firm seeks to expand globally. This is basically the strategy that P'kolino is considering, and the primary reason to look at global outsourcing is cost savings.
- ▣ Exporting—The cheapest and easiest way to enter new markets is to sell from your headquarters. However, as always there are trade-offs. First, it is harder to establish a critical mass in the country if you don't have anyone on the ground, and as mentioned earlier, you may incur additional costs in after-sales support. Your customers also may have difficulty contacting you or providing information about the market and their needs. You incur the transportation costs and risks of getting your products through the target country's customs. A second alternative is to hire a sales representative in the target country. The advantages are that sales representatives have deep knowledge of the country and presumably a strong network they can leverage in selling the product. However, agency theory suggests there are risks to consider.<sup>46</sup> First, it is difficult for you to confirm that agents are as skilled as they might claim (which is referred to as *adverse selection*). Second, it is difficult to ensure that the agent is honoring the contract (which is referred to as *moral hazard*).
- ▣ Foreign direct investment (FDI)—Under this strategy, companies set up a physical presence in the countries of interest, whether that is a sales office, retail outlets, production facilities, or something else. The startup retains control of the assets and facilities, an issue that can prove expensive. The primary means of FDI are acquiring foreign assets and building and expanding current facilities overseas. FDI is usually beyond the means of most early-stage companies. French clothing line Chloé tested the Chinese market by exporting the product first through retail stores. Then, once it learned that Chinese customers liked the product, it started to establish its own retail outlets in Beijing and then Shanghai. Today Asia accounts for 20%–30% of the sales of this high-end fashion house, with over 60 locations in the Asia Pacific.<sup>47</sup> It plans to branch out slowly from those locations.<sup>48</sup> Similarly, Jeff Bernstein started Emerge Logistics by using China's bureaucratic red tape and the unwillingness of American companies to invest in Chinese facilities to his advantage. Bernstein's logistics company has 14 customers such as Harley-Davidson, Mercedes-Benz, and Siemens. For example, Mercedes-Benz needed to ensure effective, reliable after-market parts support for luxury vehicles sold in China. Emerge provided a warehousing facility, customs clearance management, and local delivery to dealers and distributors throughout China.<sup>49</sup>

- ▣ Franchising—Some see franchising as a low-risk method of entering a foreign market because it allows the firm to license an operational system. Yet there can be difficulties in monitoring the international franchisee and ensuring that it protects the company's brand (moral hazard). Until recently, the Chinese as a whole had a dim view of franchises. The media in China highlighted several news stories about franchise owners receiving payment but failing to provide services. And as a parent company, KFC had difficulties in convincing its franchisees in China to collectively bargain in order to receive lower prices from suppliers.<sup>50</sup> In 2004, A&W All - American Restaurants closed all of its eight locations in China after several disputes with its franchisee. Virginia Ferguson, a spokeswoman for A&W Restaurants International, said, "We have uniform franchise standards around the globe and worked diligently with the owner for over a year to rectify problems and reinstate the licenses, but unfortunately the issues were not resolved."<sup>51</sup>
- ▣ Venture financing—According to Dickson, venture capital is both an enabling and an enacting mechanism. What he means is that the available capital and expertise provided by venture capitalists may enable a firm to go international using any of the previously mentioned means to enter a market. However, research suggests that venture capital often leads to mergers and acquisitions with foreign companies.
- ▣ Merger and acquisition (M&A)—For some businesses, buying an overseas firm may be the most efficient manner to enter a foreign market. You gain an instant presence in the country with an established infrastructure. M&As also allow an entrepreneurial company to grow and expand quickly. Some research shows that firms that use acquisitions for expansion have a higher survival rate than do those that choose a startup.<sup>52</sup> The capital required means that the firm must secure venture capital or go public; thus, this method is beyond the means of most early-stage entrepreneurs.

As the world becomes increasingly connected, entrepreneurs need to look beyond their home borders to see whether they can expand on their initial opportunity. While it is more difficult to enter and operate in a country that you are not familiar with, technology and increasing trade are reducing the knowledge gap. As research points out, more and more entrepreneurs are becoming global early in their companies' lives. As an entrepreneur, you need to be aware of your options, and the Dickson model provides a solid framework for understanding them.

This chapter moves beyond opportunity recognition to implementation. Once you understand your business model, it is time to think about how you will enter the marketplace and grow your firm. During entry, you are proving that your business model is viable and profitable. Are customers buying your product at the prices you need to be profitable? As you learn more about your customer and business, you'll modify your original vision. Entry into the marketplace provides a platform to identify new opportunities and to reshape your business so that it is best positioned to grow and thrive. Thus, it's wise to think about your growth strategy from the very beginning. Today that growth is more likely than ever to mean you'll consider international expansion.

## CONCLUSION

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

### Reflection Point

1. Describe your business model. What are your primary sources of revenue? What are your revenue drivers? Your COGS? Your operating expenses?
2. What is your overall strategy? Why does this strategy help you sell to customers? What tactics can you employ to increase your revenues?
3. What is your entry strategy? How does this create a platform for your business to grow?
4. What is your growth strategy? How big do you want your firm to be? How long might it take for it to get there?

### Your Thoughts...

## WEB EXERCISE

Pull the income sheets from three companies in the industry that you are interested in entering. Try to find companies that are pursuing different strategies. Examine their business models and see if you can identify the drivers that they are influencing to achieve their strategy. What lessons can you learn for your own venture? What new elements can you incorporate into your business model? How do you tie these elements to your strategy?

## NOTES

- <sup>1</sup> Needleman, Rafe. Twitter Still Has No Business Model, and That's OK. *CNET News*. March 27, 2009. [http://news.cnet.com/8301-17939\\_109-10205736-2.html](http://news.cnet.com/8301-17939_109-10205736-2.html).
- <sup>2</sup> Demery, P. The New Wal-Mart? *Internet Retailer*. 2004. [www.internetretailer.com/article.asp?id=11898](http://www.internetretailer.com/article.asp?id=11898).
- <sup>3</sup> D'Innocenzo, Annie. Once Partners, Amazon.com and Toysrus.com Become Rivals. *USA Today*. October 5, 2006. [www.usatoday.com](http://www.usatoday.com).
- <sup>4</sup> The actual accounting definition of COGS is the inventory at the beginning of the period, plus the cost of inventory purchased during the period, minus the inventory remaining at the end of the period.
- <sup>5</sup> Many software firms amortize research and development and include it in COGS.
- <sup>6</sup> Martin, Mel. *The Rumors Were True—You Can Turn Your iPhone into a Kindle*. March 4, 2009. [www.tuaw.com](http://www.tuaw.com).
- <sup>7</sup> Copeland, Michael V., and Tilin, Andrew. The New Instant Companies: Cheap Design Tools, Offshore Factories, Free Buzz Marketing: How Today's

- Startups Are Going from Idea to \$30 Million Hit—Overnight. *Business 2.0*, 6(5): 82–94. June 2005.
- <sup>8</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>9</sup> Mitchell, Dan. Amazon Raises Big Money with Debt Offering. *CNET News*. January 28, 1999. [www.cnet.com](http://www.cnet.com).
- <sup>10</sup> Happy e-birthdays; Internet Businesses. *The Economist*, 376(8436): 62. July 23, 2005.
- <sup>11</sup> Bygrave, W. *Beautiful Legs by Post*. Wellesley, MA: Babson College. 1996.
- <sup>12</sup> A Cautionary Tale. *Fast Company*. December 19, 2007. [www.fastcompany.com/magazine/115/open\\_features-hacker-dropout-ceo-cautionary-tale.html](http://www.fastcompany.com/magazine/115/open_features-hacker-dropout-ceo-cautionary-tale.html).
- <sup>13</sup> Chafkin, Max. How to Kill a Great Idea! *Inc.*, 29(6): 84–91. 2007.
- <sup>14</sup> Smith, David. MySpace Shrinks as Facebook, Twitter and Bebo Grab Its Users. *The Observer*. March 29, 2009. [www.guardian.co.uk/technology/2009/mar/29/myspace-facebook-bebo-twitter](http://www.guardian.co.uk/technology/2009/mar/29/myspace-facebook-bebo-twitter).
- <sup>15</sup> Leading Book Retailers, 2007. *Austin American-Statesman*. April 1, 2008. from Barron's and company reports. Market Share Reporter 2009). Reproduced in Business and Company Resource Center. Farmington Hills, Mich.: Gale Group, 2010.
- <sup>16</sup> McElligot, Tim. eBay Places VoIP's Biggest Bet. *Telephony*. September 19, 2005.
- <sup>17</sup> Millot, J. Amazon.com Expects to Generate \$34 Million from IPO. *Publishers Weekly New York*, 244(13): 11. March 31, 1997.
- <sup>18</sup> Gittell, J., and O'Reilly, C. *JetBlue Airways: Starting from Scratch*. Case 9-801-354. Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. 2001.
- <sup>19</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>20</sup> Grescoe, Paul. Maxims of the Mavericks: Looking for Sage Business Advice? *Profit*, 18(6): 49. October 1, 1999.
- <sup>21</sup> Elizabeth Riley is a successful entrepreneur who started Mazza and Riley, Inc., an internationally recognized executive search firm, and has spent much of her career placing people in venture-backed companies.
- <sup>22</sup> Salter, C. And Now the Hard Part. *Fast Company*, No. 82: 66. May 1, 2004.
- <sup>23</sup> Mount, Ian. JetBlue Founder's Revenge: A New Airline. *CNNMoney.com*. March 20, 2009. [http://money.cnn.com/2009/03/19/smallbusiness/jetblue\\_founder\\_flies\\_again.fsb](http://money.cnn.com/2009/03/19/smallbusiness/jetblue_founder_flies_again.fsb); Baily, Jeff. JetBlue's C.E.O. Is 'Mortified' After Fliers Are Stranded. *The New York Times*. February 19, 2007. [www.nytimes.com/2007/02/19/business/19jetblue.html?\\_r=1&oref=slogin](http://www.nytimes.com/2007/02/19/business/19jetblue.html?_r=1&oref=slogin).
- <sup>24</sup> Duecy, E. Global Growth, Urban Sites Speed Subway Along Track Toward Overtaking McDonald's. *Nation's Restaurant News*, 39(6): 4. February 7, 2005.
- <sup>25</sup> Behar, Richard. Why Subway Is the Biggest Problem in Franchising. *Fortune*. March 16, 1998. Vol 137, pg. 126.
- <sup>26</sup> From [www.Subway.com](http://www.Subway.com).
- <sup>27</sup> Goff, L. Encroachment Complaints Hasten Litigation, Unity. *Franchise Times*, 2(4): 3–4. 1996.
- <sup>28</sup> McCuan, J. Six things to consider before you buy a franchise. *Smart-money.com*, April 5, 2005. [http://www.smsmallbiz.com/bestpractices/Six\\_Things\\_to\\_Consider\\_Before\\_You\\_Buy\\_a\\_Franchise.html](http://www.smsmallbiz.com/bestpractices/Six_Things_to_Consider_Before_You_Buy_a_Franchise.html).
- <sup>29</sup> Johannes, Amy. Franchisees Sue Subway over \$400 Million Ad Fund. *Promo*. July 20, 2006. [http://promomagazine.com/retail/subway\\_sued\\_ad\\_funds\\_072006](http://promomagazine.com/retail/subway_sued_ad_funds_072006).
- <sup>30</sup> MacMillan, Douglas. Franchise Owners Go to Court. *BusinessWeek Online*. January 29, 2007. [www.businessweek.com](http://www.businessweek.com).
- <sup>31</sup> <http://money.cnn.com/2004/04/29/pf/howmuchfranchise>.
- <sup>32</sup> *Purchasing Your Franchise*. <http://aboutmcdonalds.com>.
- <sup>33</sup> Burritt, Chris, and Burton, Katherine. Bill Ackman Sells McDonald's

- Stake After Stock Surges (Update 4). *Bloomberg News*. December 5, 2007. [www.bloomberg.com/apps/news?pid=20601103&sid=aZ6kcnn5qqUo&refer=us](http://www.bloomberg.com/apps/news?pid=20601103&sid=aZ6kcnn5qqUo&refer=us).
- <sup>34</sup> Desjardins, Doug. Whole Foods Goes Hollywood with Lifestyle Store. *DSN Retailing Today*. November 7, 2005.
- <sup>35</sup> Shanahan, L. Designated Shopper. *Brandweek*, 40(1): 38. January 4, 1999.
- <sup>36</sup> Buchanan, Leigh. Death to Cool. *Inc.*, 25(7): 82–88. July 2003.
- <sup>37</sup> [www.mousedriver.com](http://www.mousedriver.com).
- <sup>38</sup> [www.getintocollege.com](http://www.getintocollege.com).
- <sup>39</sup> McDougall, Patricia P., Oviatt, Benjamin M., and Shrader, Rodney C. A Comparison of International and Domestic New Ventures. *Journal of International Entrepreneurship*, 1, No. 1 (2003): 59–82.
- <sup>40</sup> *Small & Medium-Sized Exporting Companies: Statistical Overview, 2006*. U.S. Department of Commerce, Exporter Database. 2007. <http://ita.doc.gov>.
- <sup>41</sup> Shrader, Rodney C., Oviatt, Benjamin M., and McDougall, Patricia P. How New Ventures Exploit Trade-Offs Among International Risk Factors: Lessons for the Accelerated Internationalization of the 21st Century. *Academy of Management Journal*, 43(6): 1227–1247. 2000.
- <sup>42</sup> Dickson, P. Going Global. In A. Zacharakis and S. Spinelli, eds., *Entrepreneurship*. Volume 2. Greenwich, CT: Praeger. 2006 (pp. 155–177).
- <sup>43</sup> Copeland and Tilin. The New Instant Companies, 82–94.
- <sup>44</sup> *What Is TelePresence?* March 28, 2007. [www.kolabora.com/news/2007/03/28/what\\_is\\_telepresence.htm](http://www.kolabora.com/news/2007/03/28/what_is_telepresence.htm).
- <sup>45</sup> Eden, L., Levitas, E., and Martinez, R. J. The Production, Transfer and Spillover of Technology: Comparing Large and Small Multinationals as Technology Producers. *Small Business Economics*, 9(1): 53–66. 1997.
- <sup>46</sup> Zacharakis, A. L. Entrepreneurial Entry into Foreign Markets: A Transaction Cost Perspective. *Entrepreneurship: Theory and Practice*, 21(3): 23–39. 1997.
- <sup>47</sup> Fenton, Susan. HK Designer Sees Upside in “Made in China” Label. *Reuters*. September 17, 2008. <http://uk.reuters.com/article/stageNews/idUKHKG6544920080917>.
- <sup>48</sup> Movius, L. Chloé Launches in China. *WWD*, 190(137): December 29, 2005. <http://www.movius.us/articles/index.html>.
- <sup>49</sup> Flannery, Russell. Red Tape. *Forbes*, 171(5): 97–100. March 3, 2003.
- <sup>50</sup> Chang, Leslie. From KFC to Beauty Spas, Chinese Are Embracing Franchises—As Maturing Retail Market Moves Past Fraudsters, Chain Stores Take Root. *The Wall Street Journal*. April 18, 2002.
- <sup>51</sup> A&W Closes Its Eight Restaurants in China. *Associated Press*. February 3, 2004. <http://thestar.com.my/news/story.asp?file=/2004/2/3/latest/15819AWcloses&sec=latest>.
- <sup>52</sup> Vermeulen, Freek, and Barkema, Harry. Learning Through Acquisitions. *Academy of Management Journal*, 44(3): 457–476. 2001.

## Adam Aircraft

### CASE

As the sleek, six-seat Adam A500 performed a graceful arc overhead, Babson College MBA John Hamilton, Vice President of Marketing for Adam Aircraft Industries (AAI), had to smile. Earlier that morning he had read an article describing the difficulties and pitfalls associated with designing, building, and certifying new aircraft. In the last 30 years, there were countless examples of startup aircraft manufacturers that had tried and failed to deliver new products to the small and mid-sized aircraft markets. In fact, the only two startup companies that had recently succeeded had been builders of very basic, single-engine aircraft.

Like most MBAs, John had been taught to analyze companies based on all the standard metrics: the management team, product viability and appeal, market demand, capitalization, and financing potential. While AAI appeared to be a winner on all counts—including the progress it was making in the lengthy and complex certification process—the company did not have the many millions of dollars it would need to bring its products to market and reach positive cash flow.

Talking with some of his peers in venture capital, John had come to understand that private equity investors were a fickle bunch. The vast majority preferred to invest in biotechnology, telecommunications, and other industries with historically well-defined harvest potential. Following the market correction in 2000, the flow of venture capital had significantly diminished, and investments outside of these core industries had all but ceased.

John had grown up in a family of aviators. He had been a licensed pilot for over 18 years. Since flying machines were not only his vocation but also his passion, he had to wonder whether this love was clouding his analysis. The market was clearly desperate for products like the plane performing flawlessly overhead, but did AAI have what it would take to succeed where so many had failed? Could it continue to advance toward certification and full-production capability, or would the challenges that lay ahead slow it down enough to increase the burn rate to a level that would discourage even the most ardent investor?

John did know that in less than five years, company founder Rick Adam had orchestrated the fabrication of two flying prototypes—the A500 twin piston and the A700 jet—at a speed of design and production that had turned heads in all sectors of the aviation industry. Certification on both models was expected in the coming year—two years ahead of a number of well-funded competitors. With their third product—the A600 twin turboprop—nearly ready to fly, AAI had become the one to watch in 2004.

John zipped up against the cold December wind and tracked the A500 as it snapped a sharp wing-turn on its approach to their home field, Centennial Airport in Englewood, Colorado. Another successful flight test. He smiled; definitely the one to watch . . .

### The Entrepreneur

George Adam, Sr., had been a career Air Force officer who had flown B-17 and B-29 bombers during World War II. His son Rick, born in 1946, grew up on Air Force bases and had always expected to follow his father into the military cockpit. When a color-vision deficiency kept him out of the Air Force Academy flight program, he joined the Army, attended West Point, and then switched his commission to the Air Force.

Rick specialized in computer science, and as an Air Force captain, he ran the Real-Time Computer Centers at the Kennedy Space Center and at Vandenberg Air Force Base. During that time, he earned his MBA at Golden Gate University, and later, as a civilian, he found his way to Wall Street. At Goldman Sachs, he ran the IT department as a general partner. In 1993, Rick left Goldman to start his own business: New Era of Networks, an Enterprise Application Integration software developer. The wildly successful company went public and grew to a market capitalization of over \$1 billion. It was later acquired by the Sybase Corporation.

All the while, Rick had never lost sight of his first love, and in the early 1990s, he learned to fly. Since his business required lots of travel, he was able to log over a thousand pilot-hours in just a few years by flying himself to meetings. He started in an old Skymaster, moved into a 1978 Mitsubishi MU2, and ultimately got type-rated in a 1993 Citation jet. While Rick had had the opportunity and the personal wealth to progress quickly as a pilot, he recognized that the majority of owner-operators weren't as fortunate:

*As a pilot, you have to go in steps; you can't get ahead of yourself. So, as you log more and more hours in the air, you can begin to fly increasingly more complex airplanes. The problem is that, when you are ready to make the move from a single- to a twin-engine aircraft, there are very few products to choose from. Most of the aircraft are based on old designs, which makes them tough to fly and expensive to own and operate.*

*One of the most popular production twin-engine planes on the market is the Beechcraft Baron—introduced in 1961! Because they quit building their more capable pressurized twins in the mid-1980s and stopped innovating at the same time, the old Baron is still their frontline light twin—and a new one costs over a million dollars. See, as the volume of orders has gone down, the prices have continued to climb (see Exhibit 4.1).*

Rick added that the alternative to buying a new version of an old design was far worse:

*Demand for used planes is huge because they are cheaper than new ones, and since nothing has changed in the industry, pilots can buy something that may have been manufactured in the 1970s or 1980s, but it looks like a new plane. Right now the average age of a general aviation<sup>1</sup> aircraft is over 30 years (see Exhibit 4.2), and it's getting one year older every year.*

*And frankly, these airplanes become unsafe. If you look at the accident rate in aircraft, it climbs dramatically with age. So even though there are strict regulations on maintaining these aircraft, it's hard to keep an old plane in good shape. Things like the wiring and systems just get to a point where they are too old to be reliable.*

The more Rick thought about this aging factor, the more certain he became that the only solution would be an entirely new generation of general aviation products. It wasn't long before he had begun to evaluate the commercial viability of such a venture.

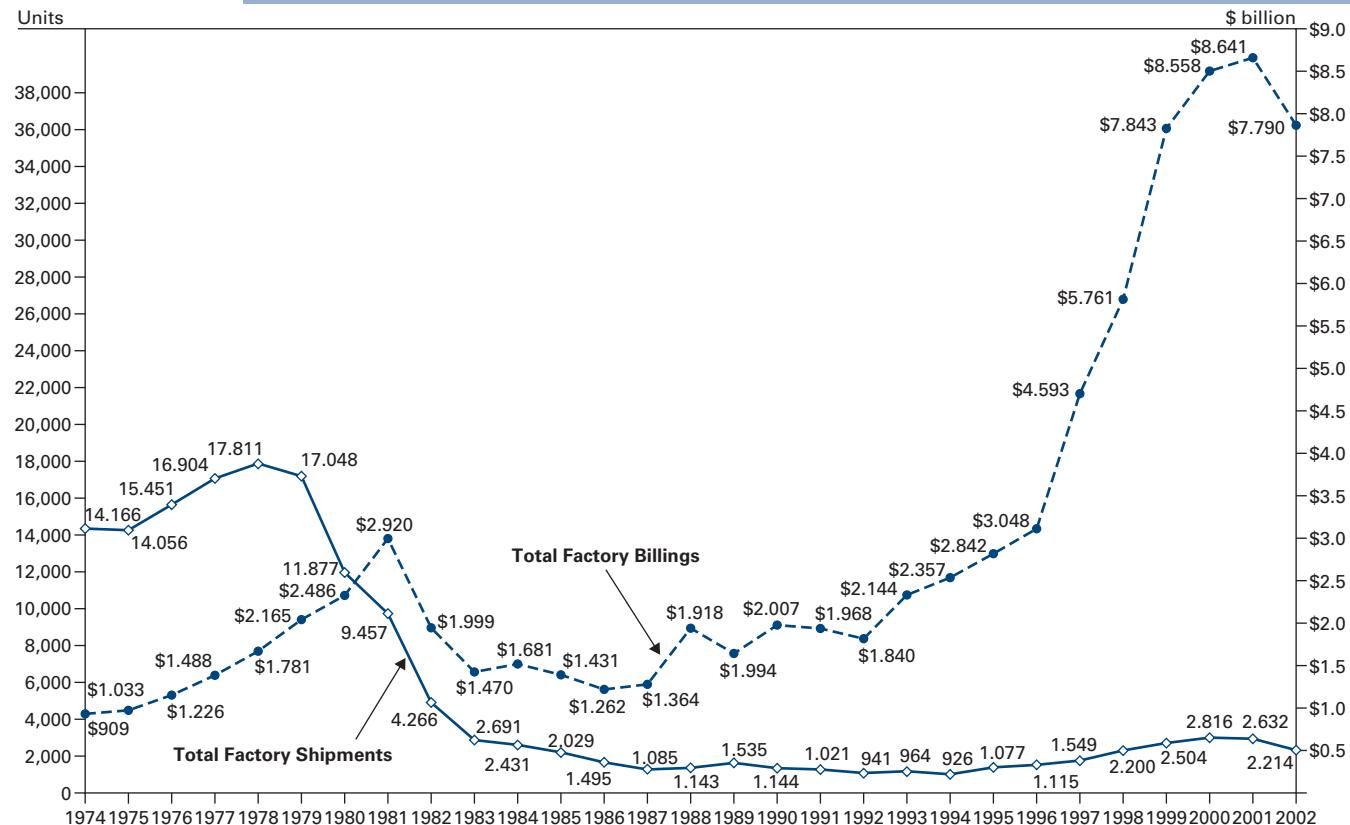
## Spotting the Opportunity

Almost immediately upon joining the ranks of experienced aviators, Rick began to contemplate the type of effort that would be required to deliver a new plane to the marketplace:

*Every time I went to a cocktail party or barbecue, all the pilots would go off into a corner and start talking pilot stuff. And since everybody was moaning about the lack of new products, I became convinced that there was a huge demand. So in the early 1990s, I started developing strategies for launching a new aircraft company.*

---

<sup>1</sup> General aviation (GA) is a term comprising all of aviation other than government and scheduled air transport (commercial airlines) and includes privately owned aircraft, charter services, business-owned aircraft, and many more types of working aircraft that are not, strictly speaking, for transportation. Although a large part of GA consists of recreational flying, an equally large part involves important commercial activities such as flight training, shipping, surveying, agricultural application, air taxi, charter passenger service, corporate flying, emergency transport, and firefighting.

**EXHIBIT 4.1****Annual New U.S. Manufactured General Aviation Unit Shipments/Buildings**

Source: General Aviation Manufacturers Association (GAMA) Statistical Databook 2002.

**EXHIBIT 4.2****Average Age of U.S. General Aviation Fleet in 2002**

<b>Aircraft Type</b>	<b>Engine Type</b>	<b>Seats</b>	<b>Average Age in Years</b>
Single-Engine	Piston	1–3	36
		4	33
		5–7	28
		8+	43
	Turboprop	All	12
		All	31
	Jet	1–3	36
		4	33
Multi-Engine	Piston	5–7	33
		8+	37
	Turboprop	All	26
		All	28
		All	31
<b>All Aircraft</b>			<b>31</b>

*Source: General Aviation Manufacturers Association (GAMA) Statistical Databook 2002.*

*Now, I have launched a few entrepreneurial ventures, and when you think there is a big opportunity, you make sure to stop and evaluate why it hasn't been done before. Why isn't anyone pursuing this opportunity? What do I know, or what do I see that nobody else is seeing? Very often entrepreneurial opportunities occur when a series of prior developments make it possible to accomplish the once unachievable. You reach a point where you finally have all the ingredients to make it happen.*

To illustrate, Rick referred to the electronic organizer on the table:

*There were at least a dozen attempts to bring out handheld devices ahead of the Palm Pilot. The most notable was Jerry Kaplan's GO Corporation. Kaplan saw the opportunity, had the right idea, and raised \$50 million in funding back in the early 1990s. But since the chips weren't small enough, the displays weren't big enough, and the batteries weren't powerful enough, his product looked like a brick. He spent 50 million bucks and failed, simply because his great idea was ahead of the prevailing technology.*

In a similar way, the Beechcraft Corporation was ahead of its time when, in the late 1970s, it set out to develop a new class of business aircraft. The five-and-a-half year, \$300 million development program resulted in the federally certified Starship (see Exhibit 4.3).

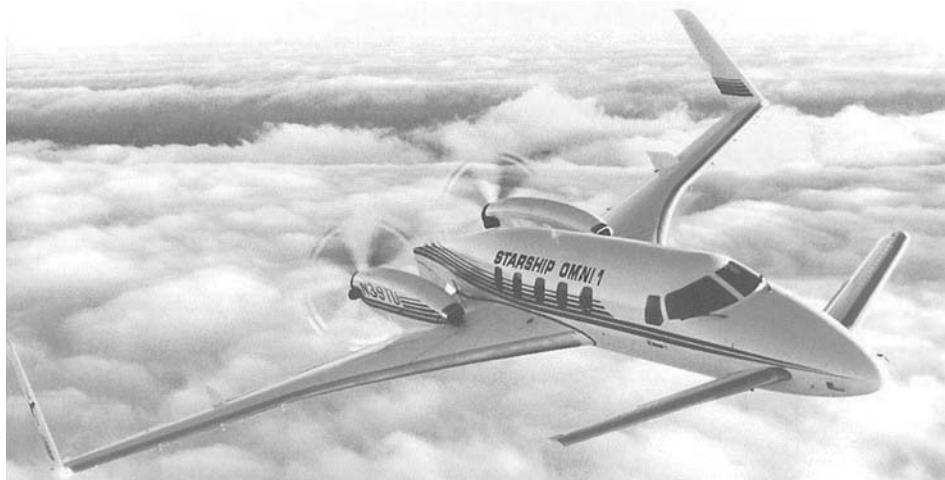
The futuristic craft was the world's first pressurized, all-composite<sup>2</sup> business turboprop. Many in the industry had high hopes that the Starship would usher in a new age of modern propeller-driven aircraft, but that was not to be.

<sup>2</sup> An easy-to-understand composite material would be an adobe brick: wet mud and straw mixed together and dried. The result is a material stronger than either mud or straw. Composite airframes typically consisted of a carbon, graphite, or glass fiber reinforcing material and an epoxy resin binder. Alone, these substances had very little strength, but when combined and properly cured, they became a composite structure that was very strong. Since this construction process lent itself to fluid design, composite airframes were often sleeker and more pleasing to the eye than their aluminum counterparts.

Developed by Scaled Composites, a cutting-edge aircraft design enterprise founded by visionary Burt Rutan,<sup>3</sup> the Starship project brought about the development of Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) standards for the construction of composite aircraft. Unfortunately for Beechcraft, this was a very long and difficult process, resulting in an aircraft that was heavier and more expensive than predicted. As a result, the Starship's performance was only marginally better than that of the existing fleet—and yet its price was far higher. Despite its commercial failure, this project was the first in a series of events that would begin to spark new life into the long-ailing general aviation aircraft industry in America.

### EXHIBIT 4.3

### The Beechcraft Starship



The Beechcraft Starship, a twin-turboprop pusher design, was the first all-composite pressurized airframe ever certified by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). The task was larger than simply developing an all-new aircraft. Beechcraft had to master an innovative technology, work hand in hand with FAA regulators, build a new manufacturing facility, and train a specialized workforce. Much of this effort was concentrated on areas the industry had not addressed before. The company built 53 Starships in all before ceasing production in the early 1990s.

## A Convergence of Factors

Between 1978 and 1992, the general aviation industry had suffered a 95% unit sales decline and the loss of over 100,000 jobs. Over that same period, GA manufacturers had spent as much to defend product liability suits as they had spent to develop new aircraft in the 30 years following World War II.

<sup>3</sup> As a schoolboy, Burt Rutan had designed award-winning model aircraft and by age 16 had learned to fly. After receiving a bachelor's degree in aeronautical engineering from California Polytechnic State University, he worked for the U.S. Air Force as a flight test project engineer at Edwards Air Force Base in California. In 1972, at age 29, he founded Rutan Aircraft Factory, which sold plans and kits for Rutan-designed aircraft. His science-fiction-like aircraft designs were considered "risky" by established aircraft manufacturers, who made sure that the regulators of the Federal Aviation Administration were aware of their "concerns." While he successfully sold a number of unique designs, he became frustrated by the litigious regulatory environment and substantial liability claims that had put many private aircraft manufacturers out of business. In 1982, Rutan chose to leave the home-built industry in favor of larger-scale designs for companies. His new firm was Scaled Composites.

When Congress enacted the General Aviation Revitalization Act (GARA) in 1994 to protect aircraft builders from lawsuits on planes that were more than 18 years old, it revitalized an industry nearly wiped out by two decades of what lawmakers were calling lawsuit abuse and trial lawyer profiteering.

The 1990s also brought about enormous advances in computing power and computer-aided design and modeling (CAD/CAM) software. Airframe geometry could now reside in the computer, with all of its internal structures defined electronically as three-dimensional models. By the end of that decade, expensive wind tunnels and physical scale models were being replaced by computational fluid dynamics software. Manufacturing and tooling capabilities had made great strides as well.

Rick said that after a couple of kit manufacturers<sup>4</sup> managed to achieve commercial certification for their composite designs, he figured that the time was right:

*In the early 1990s, all the innovation was being done in composites and kits. Then Lancair and Cirrus announced that they were going to take what they had learned and build production airplanes. Everybody who loves flying was rooting for them, hoping they would make it, and sure enough, they both got certified.*

*I'm watching this process and realizing that, while there were quite a few single-engine, nonpressurized, fixed-gear startups out there, nobody had yet brought an innovative product into the middle market. It was real clear to me that pilots wanted a new twin, and once I had seen the success that the composite guys had down in single engines, I came to the conclusion it could be done in the twin-engine area.*

By the latter half of the 1990s, a number of well-financed firms were competing to introduce a personal jet into this middle-market space by 2006. Rick looked at these projects and wondered: Would it be possible to design a single airframe that could accommodate jet engines as well as twin piston engines? He didn't have the answer, but he knew who would.

## The Project Begins

Although he was still running his software venture, in 1998 Rick decided to put up a million dollars to get into the aviation business. At the same time, he brought in a talented partner: former FAA trial attorney John Knudsen, an experienced aviator with a career in the U.S. Navy as a carrier-based attack pilot. Understanding that a commercially viable new design—whether it was a twin jet or a twin piston—would have to blend superior performance capabilities with “curb appeal,” Rick said that they contacted the best in the business:

*We met with Burt Rutan and showed him some requirements, definitions, and preliminary designs for a twin piston. Since carbon fiber lends itself to much more aerodynamic shapes than you can get with aluminum construction, I told him to make it look as much like a jet as possible.*

*As always, he had some wild stuff, and he had some stuff that was more middle of the road. We narrowed four or five design concepts down to an in-line, front and back engine configuration, with twin booms to get to the tail.*

If this plane was going to be the step-up for single-engine pilots that Rick was envisioning, they understood that ease of operation would be critical. With this in mind, they chose a centerline thrust arrangement, since, compared to twins with the power plants mounted on

---

<sup>4</sup> Kit planes were considered “experimental” by the FAA. This designation was originally intended for aircraft designers who wanted to do research or for amateur pilots who wanted to learn about aerodynamics as they built their own planes. Because these aircraft were barred from commercial use, the FAA felt that there was no need to impose its exhaustive and very expensive certification process on this class of aircraft.

the wings, the push-pull design significantly reduced the difficulty of flying with one engine not functioning. Having settled on what he felt was an exciting airframe, Rick noted that they had no desire to conquer more than one frontier at a time:

*The Eclipse 500 project has raised \$400 million so far in its effort to build a light business jet. They tried to develop a new airframe and a new engine at the same time. The engine didn't work, and now they are two years off schedule.*

*I'm a raging incrementalist; the way to innovate is to take one step at a time. We chose power plants, avionics, and construction methods that had previously been certified by the FAA for other planes; our only major innovation initially will be with the shape of the airframe. I figured that once we had that done, we could innovate on something else later on. It's just so tough to bring a certified new airplane to market; we had to be very careful to avoid adding layers of complexity—and lots of time and money.*

The team at Scaled Composites began work on the conceptual designs for AAI in May of 1999 and cut the first tool<sup>5</sup> in late August. When the M-309 (see Exhibit 4.4) lifted off on its maiden flight in March of 2000, it marked the most rapid manned-aircraft development program in the company's history.

Despite the price tag, Rick understood that this "experimental" was a one-of-a-kind, hand-built model that would serve only as a research vehicle. Conventional evidence suggested that the development of an FAA-certified version of the M-309 would take a few years, at least a couple more flying test planes, millions of engineering man-hours, and hundreds of millions of dollars. Rick was determined, however, to make sure that his aircraft company was anything but conventional.

## Research and Innovation

With the M-309 outfitted with an array of data collection equipment, the AAI team members proceeded to log over 300 flight hours in 2000 as they scrutinized the full range of the craft's aerodynamic characteristics and performance capabilities. Rick explained that with regard to understanding the commercial viability of the plane, their destinations were often just as important as their in-flight calculations:

*We collected aerodynamic data as we flew the M-309 to air shows around the country, and that gave us the opportunity to survey the market and listen to what potential customers had to say. We completely re-engineered the original design. For example, we increased the size of the empennage<sup>6</sup> and also moved the door for easier access to the cabin. By the fall of 2000, I had come to the conclusion that there was a significant market for this kind of aircraft.*

Rick, who was self-funding most of the startup costs, had been busy recruiting a top-tier management group. Nearly everyone on his 10-member executive staff was an accomplished pilot, and collectively, they had many years of experience from all corners of the aviation industry, including Boeing, Beechcraft, Martin Marietta, Cirrus, Lancair, Scaled Composites, Eclipse, the U.S. military, and the FAA.

In December, AAI established its home base at Centennial Field, just south of Denver. As they got down to the business of fitting the factory in advance of tooling design for the

<sup>5</sup> In composite engineering, a tool was the master mold that the composite material was layered into before being vacuum-compressed and then oven cured—a process known as thermosetting—at 240 degrees.

<sup>6</sup> The empennage, commonly called the tail assembly, is the rear section of the body of the airplane. Its main purpose is to provide stability to the aircraft.

**EXHIBIT 4.4 The M-209**

Named for Burt Rutan's 309th completed design, the Model 309 was built with the aim of delivering a very safe twin-engine aircraft that would give good performance and benign single-engine handling qualities. The pressurized cabin was designed to carry a pilot and five passengers.

The central goal of this program was to develop an aerodynamically refined aircraft. However, there were several features that were more representative of a full-production airplane. For example, there are several major structural components that have been produced as single-cure parts. The outboard wings, horizontal tail, elevator, rudders, and flaperons have no secondary bonds in their primary structure. This allows for a lighter, stronger, and safer structure due to the significant elimination of fasteners and secondary bonds.

---

*Source:* [www.scaled.com](http://www.scaled.com).

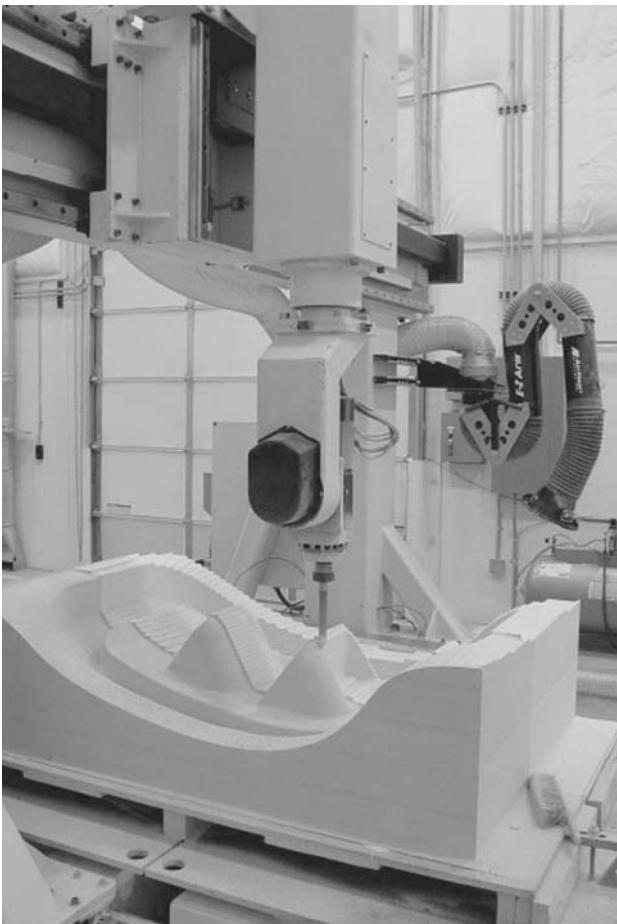
first production model, now called the Adam A500, Rick said that, because of the direct relationship between time to market and project cost, they had no choice but to innovate:

*I had recently heard from an industry expert that the standard budget for a new airplane project is about \$250 million. Since there has been so little success in this industry to date, it would be nearly impossible to raise that kind of money for a startup airplane company like ours. We knew that the only way we could make financing achievable was by cutting development costs by at least 75%.*

He added that to accomplish such a feat would require not only brilliant engineering but also the development of a culture unheard of in aviation manufacturing:

*Being a lifetime computer guy, speed and innovation seem very natural to me. We knew right off that time was not our friend; either we get this plane up and certified quickly, or we'd attract competitors and run out of money. One of the first things we did was to institute the kind of 24-hour scheduling that we had used to run our data centers and networks.*

*Our people now work 12-hour, overlapping shifts: three-day weeks, with voluntary overtime on Sundays. So while our competitors are putting in 5 shifts in a calendar week, we are getting up to 21—in addition to high morale and very low attrition.*

**EXHIBIT 4.5****Five-Axis Tooling Mill**

Fabricating the air-stair door tool out of dense foam material.

Over the past few decades, powerful aircraft builders like McDonnell Douglas, Lockheed, and Boeing had developed highly sophisticated modeling design tools that were powered by multi-million-dollar mainframe computers. The personal computer (PC) age had put those capabilities into the hands of small shops like AAI. For an off-the-shelf cost of about \$3,000 per system, the company was able to set up a 40-station CAD/CAM engineering center with all the capabilities of the big guys. Rick said that by tying this powerful design architecture into the tooling mill downstairs (see Exhibit 4.5), the company was able to add efficiencies by keeping the entire design process in-house:

*With aluminum technology, you design the part, and then you bid it out for tooling. You award the tooling—which typically costs over a million dollars—and six to nine months later, the tool comes back. If it's wrong or you want to make a design change, you have to start all over. Because we have our own tooling mill, we can do it fast the first time and, more importantly, continue to modify the tool quickly until we get it right.*

The management team understood that merely coupling rapid application development with a 24/7 working environment would not provide enough of an edge to develop the full

line of airplanes they were envisioning. Rick explained that for that to happen, they would need to adopt a computer industry concept that, if successful, would change the face of general aviation manufacturing forever:

*PCs are developed around a common set of rules as to how the parts interact with each other. That way, you can change the keyboard, the disk drive, the screen, whatever you want, and it won't tear up your memory or your software; that's called modular architecture.*

*There has been little progress in modular architecture in airplanes—until now. We are building enormous modularity into our design so we can do things like move the wing location, modify the cabin size, change the power plants—all kinds of things. What that means is that we will bring this first plane to certification status for about \$50 million. For another \$10 million, we'll adjust the modules slightly and get a jet. For another \$5 million, we'll get a turboprop.<sup>7</sup>*

Detractors felt that this was wishful thinking and pointed out that the modular architecture approach could potentially compromise performance. Some noted that, since each power plant system would have different weight and structural characteristics, installing all three on essentially the same airframe could cause center-of-gravity problems. In addition, critics felt that using a single wing and empennage design would mean that two of the planes, or maybe even the whole line of products, would fly at less than optimum performance.

The AAI team members felt that they were on top of those challenges with innovations like their “smart tunnel,” a device that enabled engineers to shift the wing location on the fuselage in order to control the range of the aircraft’s center of gravity. They felt that this technology and other specialized systems they were devising would give AAI engineers the means to modify the underlying airframe to accommodate a wide range of engine choices and configurations. In addition, they felt that this engineering strategy would enable them to leverage their research and development spending over at least three commercially viable aircraft designs. Time would tell.

## Working with the FAA

Throughout 2001, all manner of government and industry groups had visited the plant to witness the A500 project as it came together very nearly on schedule and on budget. Predictably, the one group that would not be offering praise or extra points for speed of design and assembly was the FAA.

The task of the FAA was to see to it that the Type Certification (TC) approval process (see Exhibit 4.6) proceeded in a careful and thorough manner. The complex system of inspections and testing was similar to what health care companies faced with the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Like the FDA, the FAA requires exhaustive proof that products are safe before they can be marketed to consumers. In the aviation industry, that regulatory oversight translates into lots of time and money. While it was true that successful new entrants like Lancair and Cirrus had helped pave the way for subsequent efforts, Rick said that getting through the regulatory process would still be one of their greatest challenges:

*Although the FAA is constantly working to improve the aircraft certification process, for good reason it is designed to be extremely arduous. Nevertheless, we do have a number of advantages over our predecessors. For example, as opposed to submitting aircraft designs on paper, we can now send designs to the FAA electronically. By doing this, we save a ton of time and, most importantly, are assured of the highest degree of accuracy in our documentation process.*

---

<sup>7</sup> Turboprops were designed to carry heavy passenger (or cargo) loads over relatively short distances (under 300 miles or so). Short-field takeoff and landing capabilities and the ability to use kerosene instead of aviation fuel had contributed to the popularity of turboprops, particularly in developing countries.

**EXHIBIT 4.6****FAA Type Certification Process**

**Familiarization Meeting** — The meeting to establish a partnership with the applicant. It is an opportunity to develop a mutual understanding of the Type Certification (TC) process as it applies to the applicant's design. It's highly recommended as a beginning point in the process.

**Formal Application** — The applicant's formal application for a TC includes a cover letter, Form 8110-2, and a three-view drawing.

**Preliminary Type Certification Board** — At this initial formal meeting, the project team collects data about the technical aspects of the project and the applicant's proposed certification basis, and it identifies other information needed to start developing the Certification Program Plan. Special attention items are also identified at this time.

**Certification Program Plan** — The Certification Program Plan (CPP), a key document, addresses:

- The proposed FAA certification basis
- Noise and emission requirements
- Issue papers
- Special conditions, exemptions, and equivalent level of safety findings
- Means of compliance
- Compliance checklists and schedules
- Use of delegations/designees

**Technical Meetings** — Held throughout the project, technical meetings (e.g., specialist and interim TC meetings) cover a variety of subjects. Team members may:

- Approve test plans and reports
- Review engineering compliance findings
- Close out issue papers
- Review conformity inspections
- Review minutes of board meetings
- Revise the CPP
- Issue new FAA policy guidance
- Review airworthiness limitations
- Review instructions for continued airworthiness

**Pre-Flight Type Certification Board** — Discussions at the pre-flight TC board center on the applicant's flight test program, including conformity inspections and engineering compliance determinations.

**Type Inspection Authorization** — Prepared on FAA Form 8110-1, the Type Inspection Authorization (TIA) authorizes conformity and airworthiness inspections and flight tests to meet certification requirements. The TIA is issued when examination of technical data required for TC is completed or has reached a point where it appears that the product will meet pertinent regulations.

**Conformity Inspections and Certification Flight Tests** — Conformity inspections ensure that the product conforms with the design proposed for TC. Flight tests are conducted in accordance with the requirements of the TIA.

**Aircraft Evaluation Group Determinations** — The Aircraft Evaluation Group (AEG) works with certification engineers and FAA flight test pilots to evaluate the operational and maintenance aspects of certificated products through such activities as:

- Flight Standardization Board (FSB)
- Pilot type rating
- Pilot training checking, currency requirements
- Operational acceptability Flight Operations Evaluation Board (FOEB)
- Master Minimum Equipment List (MMEL)

**EXHIBIT 4.6 (Continued)**

Maintenance Review Board (MRB)

- Maintenance instructions for continued airworthiness

**Final Type Certification Board** — When the applicant has met all certification requirements, the ACO schedules the final formal TC board. The board wraps up any outstanding items and decides on the issuance of the TC.

**Type Certificate** — The certifying ACO issues the TC when the applicant completes demonstration of compliance with the certification basis. The TC data sheet is part of the TC and documents conditions and limitations to meet FAA requirements.

**Post-Certification Activities** — These include the Type Inspection Report (TIR), to be completed within 90 days of issuance of the unique technical requirements and lessons learned; the Certification Summary Report (CSR); and the Post-Certification Evaluation, which closes out the TC project and provides the foundation for continued FAA airworthiness monitoring activities such as service bulletins, revisions to type design, malfunction/defect reports, and Certificate Management for the remainder of the aircraft's life cycle.

By the time the A500 had been cleared for its inaugural flight in July of 2002, a second test aircraft was already under construction (see Exhibit 4.7), and fabrication of parts for a third had begun as well. These three aircraft made up the entire testing fleet, and each would each undergo a series of exhaustive flight and static tests—many requiring the construction of customized systems and fixtures (see Exhibit 4.8). If all proceeded as planned, AAI expected to achieve certification for the A500 by the first half of 2004.

## The Customers

When Adam Aircraft flew its A500 to the Experimental Aircraft Association's (EAA's) AirVenture Convention in Oshkosh, Wisconsin, that summer, the company brought along a full-size mockup of the plane's cockpit and fully appointed interior. Vice President of Marketing John Hamilton noted that Oshkosh was an excellent show, since it attracted buyers from all the major markets for its \$895,000 twin piston:

*There are two basic markets for aircraft like the A500: owner flown and professionally flown. The owner-flown market is just that—the owner of the aircraft is also the pilot in command. In the professionally flown market, nonowners fly the aircraft. It sounds like a silly distinction, but it makes a difference in how you market the aircraft.*

*I would say between 70% and 80% of our A500 customers will be owner-operators. These folks are evaluating our aircraft from the pilot's seat. They will be very tuned in to things like the performance of the aircraft, its handling characteristics, and the electronic systems in the instrument panel. In addition, because they also manage the scheduled maintenance requirements, they will be very sensitive to serviceability.*

*Marketing to the professionally flown segment is a bit different, since they are more focused on the needs of their client-passengers. They'll be interested in things like how comfortable the seating is, how much baggage area is available, and whether the plane has a toilet or an entertainment system. They'll also want a pressurized cabin so they can fly over weather, a plane that looks and feels safe and substantial—and a plane that is appealing to the eye.*

In addition, John emphasized that aviation consumers of all types demanded top service and easily maintainable aircraft:

*You have to have absolute first-rate service. Customers can't have difficulty getting parts or finding somebody to work on their airplane.*

**EXHIBIT 4.7****Fuselage Construction of the A500 SN002**

a.



Vacuum bag on fuselage tool

b.



Laying up the carbon material into the tail boom tool.

*Pilots are also hesitant to adopt something that is new. We're not Cessna, we're not Beechcraft, and we're not Piper. Those guys have been around forever, and they've built a ton of airplanes.*

*That's why with everything we do—from delivery, to flight training, to service and parts—we have to prove to our customers that there is a very compelling reason why they should adopt this new aircraft.*

John added that the company's unique design modularity would play an important role in serviceability:

*One feature of the A500 that customers will love is how easy it is to access the systems on the aircraft that need to be inspected and/or replaced. A great deal of engineering work has been*

*performed to dramatically reduce the amount of time it takes maintenance personnel to complete the necessary service tasks. This will result in reduced downtime and lower costs of operation. Going the extra mile for owners in this area will pay substantial dividends in customer satisfaction.*

EXHIBIT 4.8

Custom-Built Static Test Rig



## Eyeing the Future

In October of 2002, the company announced its plan to introduce the next aircraft. The company also indicated that due to the modular systems, the A700, a six- to eight-seat stretched-fuselage twin jet, would share 80% part commonality with the A500. Some critics doubted Rick's assertion that, since the A700 would present only an incremental development challenge for his talented engineers, AAI would be able to build a flying model within a year.

Ten months after completing preliminary design work, the A700 jet shocked and amazed the general aviation world by making a surprise appearance at the 2003 EAA AirVenture event. Industry dignitaries such as Secretary of Transportation Norman Mineta and FAA Administrator Marion Blakey welcomed the aircraft with words of support and congratulations. The aviation press was buzzing; if the company was able to hold to its schedule and achieve FAA certification for the A700 in the fourth quarter of 2004, the \$1.995 million craft would be the first to market in this emerging, closely watched segment (see Exhibit 4.9).

**EXHIBIT 4.9****Very Light Jet Segment—Competitor Profiles**

	Manufacturer	Product	List (\$000)	Seats	Cruise Speed	First Delivery	Orders to Date (11-03)	Home Base	
a.		<b>Avocet</b>	Pro-Jet	2,000	6–8	420	Late 2006	200	Westport, Connecticut
b.		<b>Cessna</b>	Citation Mustang	2,295	6	391	Late 2006	300+	Wichita, Kansas
c.		<b>Safire</b>	Safire Jet	1,395	6	437	2006	300+	Miami, Florida
d.		<b>Eclipse</b>	Eclipse 500	950	3–6	432	2006	2,060	Albuquerque, New Mexico

John explained that this keen interest in light jets was directly related to the need for more efficient transportation solutions:

*The average mission is less than a two-hour flight, with three-and-a-half people on board—meaning nearly every business jet in America is oversized for what it does.*

*This emerging personal jet segment is based on the same concept that Japanese auto makers used to take on Detroit 30 years ago. With gas prices going up, why not build a car that was more suitably sized to the average driver's need? Reducing the size and weight of the machine dramatically improved its operating efficiency. We're building a smaller and lighter aircraft designed for the most common trip length and passenger load to deliver optimal efficiency in the twin jet category.*

In addition to the benefits of an incremental improvement in the efficiency of twin-engine jets, personal jet aircraft were being viewed by some as the solution to the gridlock in the hub-and-spoke airline system. Rick Adam described one official's views on the subject:

*Dr. Bruce Holmes at NASA<sup>8</sup> has performed extensive studies of the transportation system and has concluded that the best way to increase capacity in the air is by directing more traffic to the 5,000 underutilized regional airports in this country. Regional travelers would fly point-to-point out of small airports and never enter the hub-and-spoke system unless they plan to fly across the country or abroad.*

*Because this air taxi system would require a massive fleet of aircraft to achieve network coverage, the price of the aircraft and its operating cost are critical to the success of the system. Aircraft like the A700 could get the cost-per-seat mile down to a level where the average business traveler could afford the service.*

*We don't need the air taxi model to take off for the A700 to be a successful project, but it would certainly provide a fantastic upside to our company.*

With two distinct models flying, Rick and his company now had a real story to tell. Chief Financial Officer Mike Smith observed that for outside investors and municipal development groups, one of the most attractive aspects of the AAI plan was that the economics seemed entirely within the range of possibility:

*We could break even right out of this facility [at Centennial Field] by adding roughly 100 production people to our current staff of 150. With the A500, the current overhead breaks even at somewhere between 35 and 40 planes a year, and the jet would be roughly a third of that. We have a component capacity for about 100 planes a year and an assembly capacity for about 40 or 50. The great thing about this company is that, at just 50 airplanes a year, we're making money. So far we have taken deposits for over 50 twin pistons.<sup>9</sup> Once we are certified, we anticipate a surge in orders.*

By late 2003, the planes had appeared on a host of aviation magazine covers and in a wide range of business publications including *The New York Times*, *The Wall Street Journal*, and *Forbes* magazine. Nearly all seemed to be anticipating a significant American success story.

---

<sup>8</sup> Dr. Bruce Holmes led the Small Aircraft Transportation System (SATS) program unit at NASA. SATS was a driving force in the incubation of innovative technologies necessary to bring affordable, on-demand flight service by small aircraft in near-all-weather conditions to small community airports.

<sup>9</sup> Initial deposits to secure a delivery position for an A500 were between \$50,000 (nonescrowded) and \$100,000 (escrowed). An additional \$50,000 progress payment would be due at aircraft Type Certification, with an additional \$100,000 progress payment due six months prior to the scheduled delivery date of the aircraft. The balance would be due upon delivery.

## The Critical Juncture

Heading out for a meeting over in Boulder, John fired up his twin-engine Beechcraft as the A500 crossed his path on its way back to the hanger for further testing. As he taxied out in preparation for takeoff, John recalled an earlier meeting with a reporter from an aviation magazine. When she had asked him whether he thought much about the possibility of failure, he prefaced his response with a story:

*You know, we were speaking with some guys in the airborne firefighting business. They currently use airplanes that are roughly in the A500 class to fly lead-in for firefighting tankers. These spotter planes fly low and left of the tankers and tell those pilots where to make the drop.*

*They asked if we could put a window overhead on the A500 so their lead pilots could have good visibility of the tanker high and right. They told us that none of the established competitors they had spoken with would even consider that kind of modification. Our engineers told him that it would take us about a week to figure that out.*

*The point is, that's why I don't spend much time thinking about the business risk of this venture. Adam Aircraft has been surprising the experts and our potential customers from the very beginning; there is no reason to assume we won't continue to do so.*

As John lifted off and banked north toward Boulder, he realized that his thrill of flying had never waned since he was a kid. Although he loved his 30-year-old Beech, he knew it wouldn't last forever—and there were a bunch of pilots just like him out there waiting for something new. He felt certain that Adam Aircraft would be the one to answer that call.

## Preparation Questions

1. What is Adam Aircraft's business model?
2. Do you believe that Rick Adam can bring a new aircraft to market for so much less than conventional wisdom says it should cost?
  - a. What are the factors that are critical to the success of Adam Aircraft?
  - b. Which of those factors are the biggest risks?
  - c. What can he do to control those risks?
3. If you were a potential investor, how would you compare the potential risks and rewards from an investment in Adam Aircraft with an investment in Jim Poss' company (Seahorse Power Corporation)?

*This page intentionally left blank*



Nantucket Nectars manufacturing and bottling plant. (Source: Porter Gifford/Getty Images News and Sport Services)

## ENTREPRENEURIAL MARKETING

Marketing is at the heart of an organization because its task is to identify and serve customers' needs. In essence, marketing spans the boundaries between a company and its customers. It is marketing that delivers a company's products and services to customers and marketing that takes information about those products and services, as well as about the company itself, to the market. In addition, it is marketing's role to bring information about the customers back to the company. Although many people relate the term *marketing* to advertising and promotion, the scope of marketing is much broader. The American Marketing Association defines marketing as:

*An organizational function and a set of processes for creating, communicating, and delivering value to customers and for managing customer relationships in ways that benefit the organization and its stakeholders.<sup>1</sup>*

Successful entrepreneurs select and optimize the marketing tools that best fit their unique challenges. Marketing practices vary depending on the type of company and the products and services it sells. Marketers of consumer products, such as carbonated soft drinks, use different tools than marketers of business-to-business products, such as network software. Companies in the services sector, such as banks, market differently from companies that sell durable goods, such as automobile manufacturers.

## Why Marketing Is Critical for Entrepreneurs

---

Marketing is a vital process for entrepreneurs because no venture can become established and grow without a customer market. The process of acquiring and retaining customers is at the core of marketing. Entrepreneurs must create the offer (design the product and set the price), take the offer to the market (through distribution), and, at the same time, tell the market about the offer (communications). These activities define the famous **Four Ps** of marketing: product, price, place (distribution), and promotion (communication).

Entrepreneurs often are faced with designing the entire “marketing system”—from product and price to distribution and communication. Because it is difficult and expensive to bring new products and services to market—especially difficult for new companies—they need to be more resourceful in their marketing. Many entrepreneurs rely on creativity rather than cash to achieve a compelling image in a noisy marketplace.

An important part of gaining the market’s acceptance is building brand awareness, which, depending on the stage of the venture, may be weak or even nonexistent. Entrepreneurs must differentiate their company’s product or service so its distinctiveness and value are clear to the customer. This is the job of marketing.

Marketing also plays a central role in a venture’s early growth stages when changes to the original business model may be necessary. Companies focused on growth must be able to switch marketing gears quickly and attract new and different customer segments.

## Entrepreneurs Face Unique Marketing Challenges

---

Entrepreneurial marketing is different from marketing done by established companies for a number of reasons. First, entrepreneurial companies typically have limited resources—financial as well as managerial. Just as they rarely have enough money to support marketing activities, they also rarely have proven marketing expertise within the company. Most entrepreneurs do not have the option of hiring experienced marketing managers. Time—as well as money and marketing talent—is also often in short supply. Whereas larger corporations can spend hundreds of thousands or even millions on conducting extensive marketing research, testing their strategies, and carefully designing marketing campaigns, new ventures find creative and less costly means to validate their ideas and reach customers.

Most entrepreneurs face daunting challenges. Their companies have little or no market share and a confined geographic market presence. As a result, they enjoy few economies of scale; for example, it is difficult for small companies to save money on “media buys” because their range of advertising is so limited. Entrepreneurs usually are restricted in their access to distributors—both wholesalers and retailers. On the customer side, entrepreneurs struggle with low brand awareness and customer loyalty, both of which must be carefully cultivated.

Not only is market information limited, but also decision making can be muddled by strong personal biases and beliefs. Early-stage companies often stumble in their marketing because of a product focus that is excessively narrow. Companies frequently assume that their products will be embraced by enthusiastic consumers when, in reality, consumer inertia prevents most new products from being accepted at all. Research has shown that common marketing-related dangers for entrepreneurs include overestimating demand, underestimating competitor response, and making uninformed distribution decisions.

Entrepreneurs market to multiple audiences: investors, customers, employees, and business partners. Because none of these bonds is well established for early-stage companies, entrepreneurs must be both customer oriented and relationship oriented. A customer orientation requires understanding the market and where it is going. A relationship orientation is needed to create structural and emotional ties with all stakeholders. *Thus, marketing helps*

entrepreneurs acquire resources by selling their ideas to potential investors and partners. It also allows entrepreneurs to leverage scarce resources through innovative business approaches.

In this chapter, we consider entrepreneurial marketing in depth. Building upon the opportunity-defining and -refining discussion in Chapter 3, we provide direction on market research—that is, collecting information useful in making marketing and strategy decisions. Next we focus on implementing marketing strategies that make the most of these opportunities. We also look at how certain marketing skills serve to support a new company's growth.

## Acquiring Market Information

---

An entrepreneur needs to do research to identify and assess an opportunity. Intuition, personal expertise, and passion can take you only so far. Some studies show that good pre-venture market analysis could reduce venture failure rates by as much as 60%.<sup>2</sup> But many entrepreneurs tend to ignore negative market information because of a strong commitment to their idea. Whereas Chapter 2 defined what an opportunity is and Chapter 3 presented a checklist for assessing how attractive your opportunity might be, this chapter provides a drill-down on how you collect data to validate your initial impressions of the opportunity.

We define **marketing research** as the collection and analysis of any reliable information that improves managerial decisions. Questions that marketing research can answer include the following: What product attributes are important to customers? How is customers' willingness to buy influenced by product design, pricing, and communications? Where do customers buy this kind of product? How is the market likely to change in the future?

There are two basic types of market data: **secondary data**, which marketers gather from already published sources like an industry association study or census reports, and **primary data**, which marketers collect specifically for a particular purpose through focus groups, surveys, or experiments. You can find a great deal of market information in secondary resources. Secondary research requires less time and money than primary research, and it should be your first avenue. Entrepreneurs sometimes use databases at college libraries to collect baseline information about product and geographic markets (Figure 7.5 in Chapter 7 lists some common databases).

Some types of primary data are easy to collect, for instance, with personal interviews or focus groups, but keep in mind the limitations of such data, such as lack of statistical

Stage	Examples of Effective Questions
Introduction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Think of the last time you purchased Product X. What prompted or triggered this activity?</li> <li>□ How often do you use X?</li> </ul>
Rapport Building	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ What are some of the reasons for so many products in this industry?</li> </ul>
In-Depth Investigation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Here is a new idea about this market. In what ways is this idea different from what you see in the marketplace?</li> <li>□ What features are missing from this new product?</li> <li>□ What would you need to know about this idea in order to accept it?</li> </ul>
Closure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Is this focus group discussion what you expected?</li> </ul>

Figure 5.1

Focus group

significance (because the samples are small). To ensure that they obtain high-quality data, some entrepreneurs hire marketing research firms to perform research studies. Lower-cost alternatives do exist: For example, a business school professor might assign the company's project to a student research team. In choosing a research approach, balance your quality and time constraints with the possible cost savings.

The appendix at the end of this chapter provides a list of possible questions to address in a customer research interview. You can structure such an interview as a one-on-one interaction or as a focus group. In focus groups, a discussion leader encourages 5 to 10 people to express

their views about the company's products or services. The focus group has distinct stages, and you will need to ask specific questions to get good-quality information from the group participants. Figure 5.1 displays these stages and provides some example questions to use when conducting a focus group.

Customer acceptance of an entrepreneur's idea is proof that the opportunity is worth pursuing. Entrepreneurs must understand the customer decision-making process and how to influence the customer's choice. Such customer understanding enables entrepreneurs to develop the right products at the right prices (create and capture value) and then market these products to the right customers in the right place (communicate and deliver value). Further, such knowledge of customers' behavior at each stage of the decision-making process helps entrepreneurs to be effective and efficient with their communication strategy to reach the target customers. Figure 5.2 provides an illustration of the role that marketing tools play in the customer choice process.



**Figure 5.2**

#### Understanding the customer choice process

## Marketing Strategy for Entrepreneurs

A company's marketing strategy must closely align with its resources and capabilities. Entrepreneurial companies with limited resources have little room for strategic mistakes. Segmentation, targeting, and positioning are key marketing dimensions that set the strategic framework. We begin this section by discussing these three activities and their role in marketing strategy. Then we examine the widely studied marketing elements known as the marketing mix: product, price, distribution (place), and communications (promotion).

### Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning

*Segmentation and targeting* are the processes marketers use to identify the “right” customers for their company's products and services. In Chapter 3, we talked about the segment your opportunity would initially target, what we call the primary target audience or PTA. As we move beyond opportunity recognition into implementation of a marketing strategy, we need to revisit our initial conceptions and refine what that PTA segment really means. A **segment** is a group of customers defined by certain common bases or characteristics that may be demographic, psychographic (commonly called *lifestyle characteristics*), or behavioral. Demographic characteristics include age, education, gender, and income; lifestyle characteristics include descriptors like active, individualistic, risk taking, and time pressured. Behavioral characteristics include consumer traits such as brand loyalty and willingness to adopt new products.

Marketers identify the most relevant bases for segmentation and then develop segment profiles. It's common to define a segment using a combination of demographic and lifestyle characteristics: for example high-income, sophisticated baby boomers. Marketers also segment customers based on where they live (geography), how often they use a product (usage rates), and what they value in a product (product attribute preferences).

**Targeting** compares the defined segments and then selects the most attractive one, which becomes the PTA. Target market definition is essential because it guides your company's *customer selection* strategy. The attractiveness of a segment is related to its size, growth rate, and profit potential. Your targeting decisions should also reflect your company's specific capabilities and longer-term goals. Accurate targeting is important for entrepreneurs; however, it is not always clear which customer segment(s) represents the best target market, and finding out may require some research and some trial and error. As we noted in Chapter 3, it is wise to identify secondary target audiences (STAs) in case the PTA doesn't meet expectations. Nevertheless, identifying the appropriate target market early on is critical because pursuing multiple targets or waiting for one to emerge is an expensive strategy.

To illustrate segmentation and targeting, let's look at the example of Nantucket Nectars, the beverage company founded by marketing-savvy entrepreneurs Tom Scott and Tom First. Relevant segment characteristics for this company are age, individualism, and health consciousness. In Nantucket Nectars' early days, its primary target market was young, active, health-oriented consumers who enjoyed breaking with conformity by choosing a noncarbonated soft drink alternative. As Nantucket Nectars gained public awareness, this gave the company power to move beyond its PTA to its STAs and ultimately the broader, nationwide drink market. Scott and First started the company with an initial investment of \$9,000 and a production run of 1,400 cases. In 1997, they sold a majority stake in the business to Ocean Spray for \$70 million. Cadbury bought the firm from Ocean Spray in 2002. At the time, Nantucket Nectars had estimated revenues of \$80 million.<sup>3</sup> In 2008, Cadbury demerged its beverage business from its confectionary business, creating Dr. Pepper Snapple Group.

While segmentation and targeting profile a company's customers, **positioning** relates to competitors and to customers' *perceptions* of your product. Positioning usually describes a company's offering relative to certain product attributes—the ones customers care about most. Such attributes often include price, quality, and convenience, all of which can be scaled from high to low. For example, if brands of single-serve beverages were shown on a positioning map (see Figure 5.3) with the two dimensions of *price* and *quality*, Nantucket Nectars would be positioned in the high-price, high-quality (upper-right) quadrant, whereas a store-brand juice would likely be positioned in a low-price, low-quality (lower-left) quadrant.

## The Marketing Mix

The marketing mix—the Four Ps of product, price, place, and promotion—is a set of tools your company can use to achieve its marketing goals. In fact, the marketing mix is so basic to a company's business model that *marketing* strategy often defines company or corporate strategy. In this section, we discuss the individual elements of the marketing mix, shown in Figure 5.4. Our focus is on the particular challenges entrepreneurial marketers face.

**Product Strategy.** We can divide product strategy into the **core product** and the **augmented product**. The core product is the essential good or service, while the augmented product is the set of attributes peripherally related to it. For example, Apple manufactures and markets its iPod, the core product, but it also provides iTunes for downloading music and product troubleshooting as augmented services.

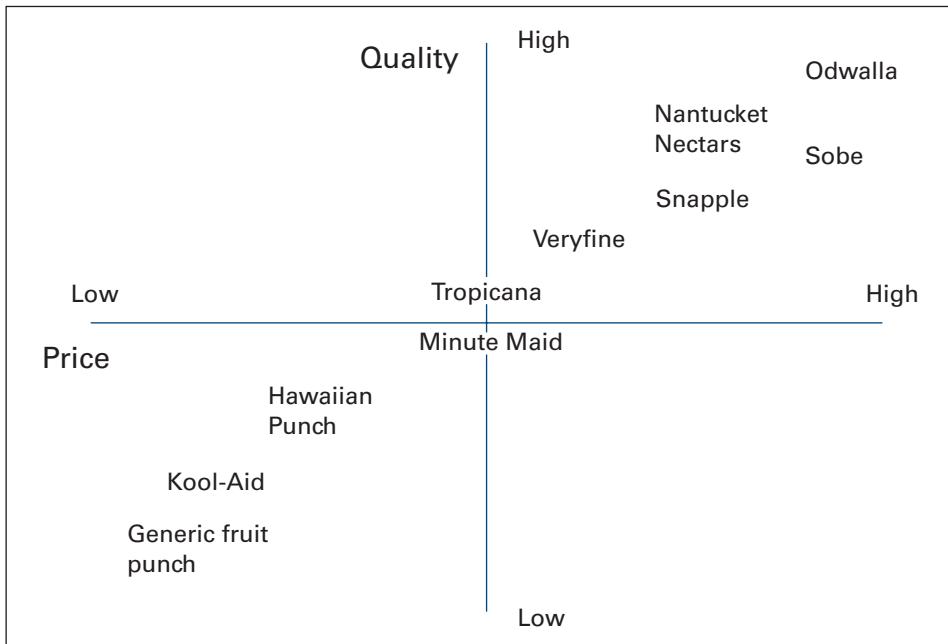


Figure 5.3

### Nantucket Nectars position map



Figure 5.4

### Marketing mix strategy for an entrepreneur

Another way to look at the product variable part of the marketing mix is in terms of goods and services (the word *product* here can refer to either a service or a good). Whereas beverages and computers are obviously tangible goods, supermarkets, Internet service providers, and banks are services *and* offer service products, such as food shopping, Internet access, and debit accounts. The line between products and services has been eroding for some time. Furthermore, we live in a service economy, and a large part of the gross national product and new job creation are tied to services.

In your product strategy, you'll pay attention to the strength of the *value proposition* you are offering customers and make sure your products are clearly *differentiated*. You'll also be guided by the *product life cycle* in crafting your strategy and by *product diffusion theory* in assessing how fast consumers will adopt your products. Finally, from the beginning, you should be obsessively focused on *quality*.

Many entrepreneurs establish companies based on a new product or product line. When developing any new product, your company must ensure that it is truly addressing an “unmet consumer need”—that there is a real **customer value proposition (CVP)**. **Customer value** is the difference between total customer benefits and total customer costs, which are both monetary and nonmonetary. A product attribute is not a benefit until consumers buy into the advantage.

		Perceived Performance "Poor"	"Good"
Attribute Importance	High Low	Improve Monitor	Maintain De-emphasize

Source: Adapted from John A. Martilla and John C. James.<sup>4</sup>

**Figure 5.5**

### Importance-performance analysis

Identifying a CVP, also known as a *positioning statement*, is an essential step in the marketing of a product or service regardless of your industry. Any positioning statement has four elements: (1) target group and need, (2) brand, (3) concept, and (4) point of difference. The formula is straightforward. Entrepreneurs need to know which attributes customers consider important and how customers rate the company's products—and competing products—on each attribute. Figure 5.5 shows how you can identify the product/service attributes you'll consider when designing your offerings.

*Product differentiation* is important for initial product success as well as for longer-term brand building. In its early days, Maker's Mark, a sixth-generation, family-run Kentucky bourbon producer, leveraged the product-related attributes that make its bourbon unique (for example, wheat instead of rye, six-year fermentation, and small-batch production) to build a distinctive image for the brand. For decades, the company has been able to rely on these product differences to reinforce its quality position.

A venerable framework for understanding product strategy is the **product life cycle**. The stages of the product life cycle are **introduction, growth, maturity, and decline**. Product life-cycle analysis can help you recognize how marketing requirements differ at each stage of a company's growth. During the introduction stage, marketers must educate the customer and secure distribution. During the growth stage, they must cultivate customer loyalty and build the brand. Differentiation is important during the maturity stage, and marketing efficiency is critical during the decline stage.

In a business environment with intense global competition and fast-paced technology, entrepreneurs must continue to develop new products in order to maintain a profitable market position, even after creating a winning new venture. New product development is critical for market longevity. Entrepreneurship combined with innovation equals success. Naturally, entrepreneurs need to understand new product opportunities and the new product development process if they are to ensure their venture's survival.

Because new products have varying levels of *newness* to both the company and the marketplace, entrepreneurs must make different kinds of *risk-return* trade-offs. At one extreme, pioneering or radical innovation represents a technological breakthrough or “new-to-the-world” product. Although pioneering products may be risky investments, they can produce handsome returns. At the other extreme, entrepreneurs may develop *incremental* products, which are modifications of existing products, or *product line extensions*. Incremental products are less risky to develop but typically produce a more modest

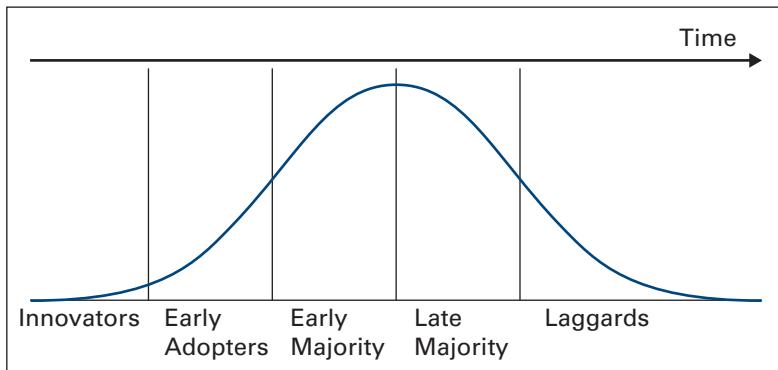


Courtesy Maker's Mark

**Maker's Mark whiskey.**

return. Regardless of the type of new products you develop, bringing products to market quickly—by mastering the new product development process—is critical for gaining a competitive advantage.

If you introduce highly innovative products, be particularly attentive to consumer adoption behavior. Consumer willingness to adopt a new product is a major factor in the realm of technology products. The **product diffusion curve** (see Figure 5.6) captures adoption behavior graphically, showing customer segments called innovators, early adopters, early majority, late majority, and laggards. A number of factors affect the *rate of diffusion*, or how fast customers adopt a new product. If a product represents risk or is complex or is not completely compatible with existing products, then the market usually will adopt it at a fairly slow rate.



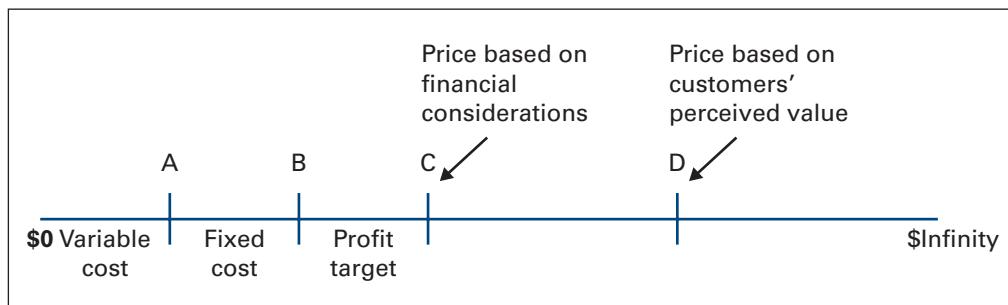
**Figure 5.6**

### Product diffusion curve

the recommendation of customers. Positive word-of-mouth recommendations are essential because most customers are not yet familiar with the company. Entrepreneurial companies with a quality orientation also find it easier to engage in internal marketing: Employees are more enthusiastic about and proud to be selling high-quality products than products of mediocre quality.

**Pricing Strategy.** Developing an optimal pricing strategy is a daunting challenge for even the most sophisticated entrepreneurial company. Figure 5.7 shows various price-setting options.

Entrepreneurs incur many costs in starting a venture. Some are *fixed costs*, which do not change with the volume of production (such as facilities, equipment, and salaries), and some are *variable costs*, which do change with the volume of production (such as raw materials,



**Figure 5.7**

### Pricing decision for an entrepreneur

Entrepreneurs sometimes err in being overly product focused, concentrating on the product as they conceive it rather than as customers may want it. One way to offset the danger of this mindset is to involve the customer in the design process. Custom Research, a Baldrige National Quality Award-winning marketing research firm, performs a comprehensive survey of each of its clients prior to beginning a project. This allows the company to learn exactly what the client expects and hopes to gain from its investment. The practice of studying the customer upfront not only results in better service quality but also enables you to deliver a highly customized product.

Finally, perhaps the most important product attribute for entrepreneurs is quality, which serves as a powerful differentiator and is needed to gain

hourly labor, and sales commissions). The price of a product/service must be higher than its variable cost (point A in Figure 5.7), or you will sustain losses with the sale of each additional unit. To operate successfully, an entrepreneurial venture must not only recover both fixed costs (point B) and variable costs (point A) but also make a reasonable profit (point C). The crash of many early dot-com businesses illustrates this simple financial logic, as a number of these companies followed a “get-big-fast” strategy by aggressively selling their products below cost. Online grocery businesses such as Webvan fell into this trap: The expense of filling and delivering each order exceeded the profitability of the sale.

Many entrepreneurs, in setting prices, use a *cost-based method*, marking up a product based on its cost plus a desired profit margin (point C in Figure 5.7). Another method, often used in conjunction with a markup, is matching competitors’ prices. A common problem with these methods is that they allow entrepreneurs to price too low, thereby “leaving money on the table.” Pricing too low can hurt the long-term profitability of the venture. Of course, pricing too high also has a serious downside, as it can create a purchase barrier and limit sales.

So what choices does an entrepreneur have in identifying the most appropriate price? An alternative to cost-based and competitive pricing is *perceived value pricing* (point D), which is especially viable for pricing a new or innovative product or service. Entrepreneurs also can pursue strategies that trade off high profit margins for high sales, or vice versa. Determining the full value of a product/service and then using effective communications to convince target customers to pay for that value are challenging tasks even for an established company.

If possible, approach perceived value pricing with pre-market price testing, estimating the number of units customers will purchase at different price points. Two well-known pricing strategies, which represent opposite ends of the pricing spectrum, are price skimming and penetration pricing. **Price skimming** sets high margins; you can expect to gain limited market share because your prices will be relatively high. **Penetration pricing** aims to gain high market share with lower margins and relatively lower prices. For entrepreneurs with a product that brings something new to the marketplace, a skimming strategy is usually best. Unless your channels of distribution are very well established, a penetration strategy, generally reserved for mature products, is hard to implement.

We can represent price in a variety of ways. There are basic **price points** (also called *price levels*) for products, which are standardized or fixed, and there are **price promotions**—a tool by which marketers can achieve specific goals, such as introducing a product to a new customer market. Price promotions are short-term and use regular price levels as a base to discount from; they provide a way to offer customers good deals. Price promotions let you increase sales, reward distributors, gain awareness for a new product, and clear excess inventory. Periodically, Nantucket Nectars coordinates a price promotion with its retailers, who offer its 16-ounce juices (such as Peach Nectar) with an advertised, 25%-off price. This type of promotion typically doubles sales on the products, benefiting both the manufacturer and the retailers.

Price promotions often are necessary to maintain good relationships with distributors: Both wholesalers and retailers must offer price promotions in order to stay competitive. In business-to-business markets, companies often reward their business customers with volume discounts applied to the ongoing purchase of particular goods and services. Promotions are an important tool for entrepreneurs, too, who often use them to gain an initial position in the marketplace. At its earliest stage, Nantucket Nectars used *trade promotions* to motivate retailers to make the initial “buys” of their products and *customer promotions* to motivate the retailers’ customers to try the products.

A common pricing strategy is **price discrimination**: charging different prices to different customer segments. Examples of this practice are highly varied and include the lower prices charged to shoppers using store loyalty cards and the differing price structures used to charge airline passengers. *Couponing* is a widely used form of price discrimination that rewards customers who care about receiving a discount but does not reward those who don’t care enough to put forth the extra effort to redeem the coupon.

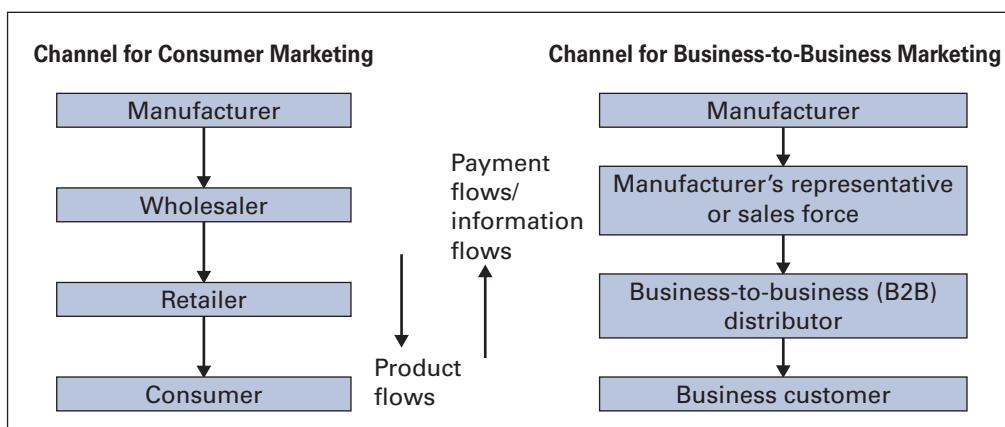
Pricing is important to entrepreneurs not just because it affects revenue and profit but also because it plays a role in how consumers perceive a product's position in the market. Price serves as a quality cue to consumers, especially when they have had limited experience with the product. The *economic perspective* views consumers as rational actors who buy when the perceived benefits of a product exceed its price. Those who study consumer behavior, however, understand that consumers' *willingness to pay* is not totally rational but is affected by a variety of psychological factors.

Entrepreneurs can use some marketplace wisdom relative to pricing. First, the selling effort for a product must match its price. Price skimming, for example, must be accompanied by a sophisticated, effective selling process. It is easier to lower than raise prices because customers are resistant to price increases. The more established the differentiation and/or quality of a product or service, the more price insensitive the consumer—if he or she values the perceived benefits. Customers also are less price sensitive when products and services are bundled into a single offer because this makes prices more difficult to compare. A good entrepreneur will be aware of both the pricing practices of competing companies and the pricing-related purchase behavior of consumers.

**Distribution Strategy (Place).** Distribution presents special challenges for entrepreneurs because channels of distribution often are difficult to set up initially. Figure 5.8 shows the structure of traditional distribution channels for consumer and business-to-business marketing. While established businesses may introduce new products, price points, and communications strategies, they usually rely on existing channels of distribution. For example, Crest, a Procter & Gamble brand, may introduce a new type of electric toothbrush with a distinctive price position and an innovative advertising campaign, but it will use its existing network of wholesalers and retailers to actually distribute the product. Entrepreneurs usually don't have this luxury.

Finding the right channel can be far less difficult than breaking into the right channel. Entrepreneurs who want to market food products, for instance, face enormous barriers when they try to get their products on supermarket shelves, as the Gourmet Stew case in Chapter 3 illustrated. Most supermarkets are national chains that charge large slotting fees. Even when brokers and distributors accept new products into their lines, they may be unwilling to dedicate much effort to selling them when the products are unknown.

Distribution can be problematic for entrepreneurial service companies as well as for those that manufacture goods. Distribution decisions for a service company often are location decisions because many services require that service providers interact directly with customers.



**Figure 5.8**

**Traditional distribution channels**

Effective distribution is the availability and accessibility of a service to its target customers. As early-stage service companies grow, new locations often are the most important means of attracting new customers and increasing sales.

Starbucks is an international services-sector company with thousands of stores; nevertheless, the service is sold locally, and one location may be more or less successful than another. If a Starbucks location is unsuccessful, the company can cancel its lease and open an alternative location in that neighborhood or focus on locations in other neighborhoods. But if an entrepreneur makes a bad location decision for his first or second or even third location, the financial loss can paralyze the company.

There is a great deal of *interdependency* in a distribution channel: Each channel member has a particular function to perform, and each relies on the others. Entrepreneurs especially are inclined to rely on other companies to fulfill certain distribution tasks. Many companies were able to enter the Internet retailing sector quickly because they could outsource *fulfillment*—warehousing, packing, and delivering the order—to another company, allowing them to maintain *virtual* companies with low fixed costs. In business-to-business channels, entrepreneurs often outsource their selling efforts to sales brokers who work for a marketing firm rather than investing the time and money to build their own sales force. There are disadvantages to this kind of outsourcing, though: Quality is hard to control, the information flow between you and your customer is interrupted, and longer-term cost economies are harder to achieve.

Sometimes channel partners don't do what you want or expect them to do. When Nantucket Nectars' co-founders became frustrated with their distributor's slow progress in getting the brand established, they took over distribution themselves. The company lost millions of dollars trying to change its distribution model, and it went back to contracting with distributors after it found more capable partners. Although distribution mistakes such as those made by Nantucket Nectars extract a price, they also teach early-stage companies what their capabilities are.

Distribution channel strategy includes three types of **channel coverage**: intensive, selective, and exclusive. The appropriate strategy depends on the type of product or service that you will sell. **Intensive** coverage works for consumer goods and other fast-moving products. The carbonated soft drink category is one of the most intensively distributed: Products are sold in supermarkets, drugstores, convenience stores, restaurants, vending machines, sporting event concessions, and fast-food outlets. **Selective** distribution brings the product to specific distributors, often limiting selection geographically by establishing a dealer network. Kate Spade sells her handbags and other fashion accessories to high-end, luxury department stores, as well as Kate Spade specialty stores, but not to mainstream retailers or mass merchandisers. Selective distribution can protect dealers and retailers from competition, while helping manufacturers maintain prices by thwarting price competition. The third coverage strategy, **exclusive** distribution, is often used for luxury products. For some time, Neiman Marcus had exclusive rights to distribute the Hermès line of fashion accessories.

**Channel partnerships** (or *relationships*) have important implications for entrepreneurs. Often the channel member with the most power will prevail; for this reason, **channel power** is an important concept in distribution strategy. While channel partnerships can speed a young company's growth, preserve resources, and transfer risk, entrepreneurs must be careful not to sacrifice their direct relationship with customers. Most important, entrepreneurs must carefully manage their relationships with channel partners and monitor them over time.

Another widely applied concept, **channel conflict**, refers to situations where differing objectives and turf overlap lead to true disharmony in the channel. Channel conflict was a high-profile phenomenon in the early days of the Internet, when many startup companies were using the strategy of **disintermediation**—cutting intermediaries out of traditional distribution channels by selling directly to customers. Amazon.com, the online bookseller, created conflict between book publishers and distributors and traditional book retailers. Because Amazon could buy in volume and avoid the high occupancy costs retailers pay, it could offer an enormous assortment at deeply discounted prices. Amazon's volume allowed it to negotiate

low prices from publishers and wholesalers, who in turn alienated their other customers, the traditional book retailers in the channel.

Entrepreneurs succeed with their distribution strategies when they have a strong understanding of channel economics. Giro, the bicycle helmet company that outfitted both Greg LeMonde and Lance Armstrong—famous American winners of the Tour de France—gained initial access to the retail channel by offering high margins and selective distribution to preferred bike shops. This allowed the company to maintain its premium prices and establish loyalty among experts and cycling enthusiasts.

Current practice reflects a focus on multichannel distribution, which gives a company the ability to reach multiple segments, gain marketing synergies, provide flexibility for customers, save on customer acquisition costs, and build a robust database of purchase information. J.Crew, for instance, has been successful diversifying its store-based business to include strong catalog and online channels. But a multichannel strategy adds operating complexity and demands more resources, so entrepreneurs are best to approach these opportunities cautiously and be careful that their timing is in line with their capabilities and resources. For example, TiVo's strategy to push its innovative product through both specialty stores like Fry's and consumer-electronics superstores like Best Buy created problems for the successful launch of its product. TiVo should have used the specialty store channel exclusively in the beginning rather than both channels. Specialty stores are not willing to provide time and service to develop the market for an innovative product when they have to compete on price with consumer-electronics superstores.

Research shows that many of the most serious obstacles to entrepreneurial success are related to distribution. Specifically, entrepreneurs tend to be overly dependent on channel partners and short on understanding channel behavior in their industry. It is critical that entrepreneurs take the time to learn about distribution and make fact-based decisions about channel design and channel partnerships to overcome these threats to good distribution strategy.

**Marketing Communications Strategy (Promotion).** Marketing communications convey messages to the market—messages about the company's products and services as well as about the company itself. The marketing communications element of the marketing mix is a mix within a mix: the **communications mix** is defined as *advertising, sales promotion, public relations, personal selling, and direct marketing* (sometimes included with advertising). The marketing communications mix and some of its key elements are shown in Figure 5.9.

The components of the communications mix, like those of the marketing mix, are often referred to as *tools*, and the use of these tools by marketers differs substantially across business and industry contexts. To illustrate, consumer product companies' communications are often aimed at mass markets and include advertising and sales promotions, whereas business-to-business companies use more customized, interactive tools, such as personal selling by a sales force. Of course, the communications a marketer uses are closely aligned with the specific type of product the company is attempting to sell as well as with the company's marketing objectives.

It is common marketing wisdom to use a variety of tools in marketing any product or service. Because of this focus on multiple methods and the need to integrate and coordinate these methods, we often call the process **integrated marketing communications**. A range of factors—including cost, timing, and target market—determines the selection of a company's key communications tools. The question you must answer is, “What is the most effective way to communicate with my customers and influence their actions?” And the sooner you can answer this, the better.

Two communications strategies are *push* and *pull*. A **push** strategy aims to push a product through the channel using tools such as trade promotions, trade shows, and personal selling to distributors or other channel members. A **pull** strategy's goal, on the other hand, is to create end-user demand and rely on that demand to pull the product through the channel. Pull strategies, which are directly targeted to end users, include advertising and consumer sales promotions, such as in-store specials. These strategies also are relevant for service companies.

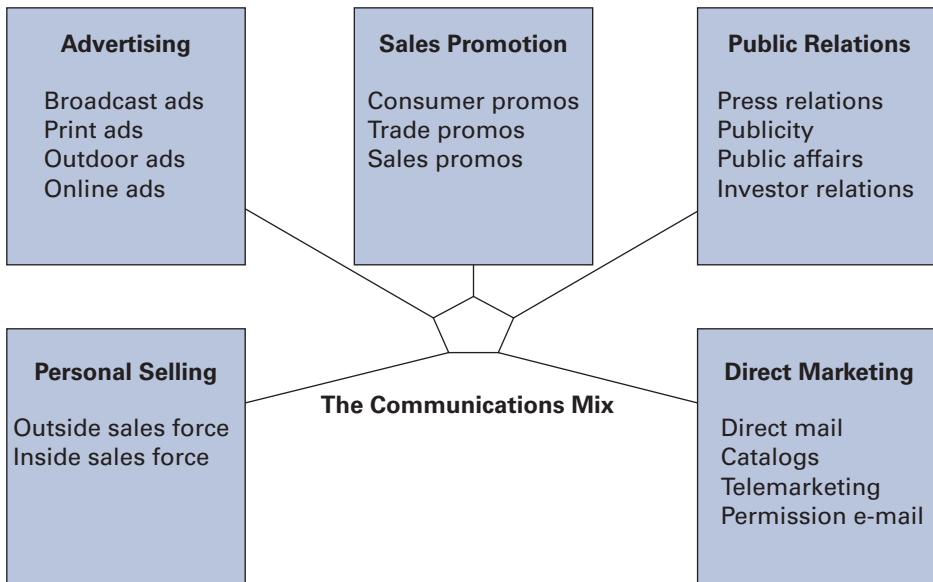


Figure 5.9

### Marketing communications

Fidelity Investments, for example, can push its mutual funds through brokers or advertise them directly to investors, who, the company hopes, will then request them.

Marketing communications is a broad and sophisticated field. Many of the most visible tools are primarily accessible to large companies with deep marketing budgets and in-house marketing talent. This is usually the case for large, national television and print advertising and high-penetration direct mail campaigns. Probably the greatest breadth of tools exists within the domain of advertising, which includes everything from billboards to Websites to local newspapers to Super Bowl commercials. There also are various direct marketing tools, including catalogs, direct mail and e-mail, telemarketing, and infomercials (vehicles for direct selling).

What *advertising* choices are available to an entrepreneur? Anything that is appropriate, affordable, and measurable, or at least possible to evaluate. Entrepreneurs can use traditional major media by focusing on scaled-back options, such as regional editions of national magazines, locally broadcast commercials on cable television stations, and local newspapers and radio stations. The disadvantage is that it's almost impossible to achieve advertising economies of scale. But you can efficiently conduct tightly targeted campaigns with a focus on cost control.

In addition to regionalized or localized major media, you have a number of minor media options. These include classified ads, the yellow pages and online information services, brochures, flyers, online bulletin boards, local canvassing (for business-to-business), and educational seminars or demonstrations. As mentioned above, most marketing experts support using multiple methods in combination, in part because different methods have particular strengths and weaknesses. But even though the media are varied, the message and the brand image you want to communicate should be strictly consistent. Two terms that are frequently mentioned in relation to advertising objectives are *reach* and *frequency*. **Reach** is the percentage of a company's target market that is exposed to an ad campaign within a specific period of time. **Frequency** is the number of times a member of your target market is exposed during that time period.

When selecting media, entrepreneurs match their communications goals to media capabilities. Radio is more targeted and intimate than other advertising media; it allows flexibility but requires repetition for the message to get through. Television has a large reach and is good for demonstrating product benefits but is usually expensive and entails substantial production

Advertising Medium	Key Factors for Entrepreneurs to Consider
Brochures and flyers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allows creative flexibility and focused message</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Production quantity and distribution must be well planned</li> </ul>
Direct mail and e-mail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Permits precise targeting and encourages direct response</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Results are measurable and can guide future campaigns</li> </ul>
Infomercials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Effective for telling a story and communicating or endorsing product benefits</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Costly to produce but measurable and good for collecting data</li> </ul>
Internet communications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A variety of options, such as banner ads and permission e-mail marketing</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Superior for collecting data and measuring responses</li> </ul>
Magazines	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Can easily be targeted, are involving for readers, and have a long shelf life</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Offer budget flexibility but involve a long lead time</li> </ul>
Newsletters	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Good creative opportunities and maximum control</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cost factors (time and money) should be carefully considered</li> </ul>
Newspapers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Best medium for advertising promotions and reaching a geographically based or local market</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Shelf life is fairly short and ads are usually not carefully read</li> </ul>
Outdoor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Can have strong visual impact and repeat exposure; this medium is believed to offer a high return on investment</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Targeting is difficult because ads are location-bound</li> </ul>
Radio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Good potential for creativity and connecting with the audience; message can be easily varied</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Excellent for targeting but ads must be repeated to be effective</li> </ul>
Telemarketing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Interactive communication with one-on-one selling capabilities</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A direct response method that has faced increased regulation because it is seen by many to be intrusive</li> </ul>
Television	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> High media and production costs but superior reach; most effective way to present and demonstrate a product</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Commonly used for brand building</li> </ul>
Yellow pages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> An important local medium used as a basic reference by consumers; necessary for credibility</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Low cost, but standardized format limits creativity</li> </ul>

**Figure 5.10**

### Strategic use of advertising media

costs. Many magazines with a long shelf life are well targeted (consider how many times a magazine may be read in a doctor's waiting room).

Newspapers are good for geographical targeting and promotional advertising but have a very short shelf life. Infomercials, which we may also consider a direct marketing tool, have production costs and a short life span but are persuasive and good for telling the product story. Online advertising, which continues to grow in importance, allows companies to reach a specific and often desirable customer market. Figure 5.10 presents brief guidelines for the strategic use of advertising media.

Even entrepreneurs often go to marketing experts for advice about how to execute campaigns and how to frame an effective message. While some early-stage companies use established advertising agencies, others contract with freelance marketing professionals, many

of whom have experience in the entrepreneurial domain. You'll want to learn the basics of advertising, public relations, and marketing research in order to be able to select and evaluate agencies or individuals you bring in to assist your company with its early-stage marketing.

The three primary types of **sales promotion** are consumer promotions, trade promotions, and sales force promotions. **Consumer promotions** are deals offered directly to consumers to support a pull strategy. **Trade promotions** are deals offered to a company's trade or channel partners—such as distributors or retailers—to support a traditional push strategy. **Sales force promotions** motivate and reward the company's own sales force or its distributors' sales forces.

There are two basic types of sales promotions: price and nonprice. We discussed price promotions earlier in the section on pricing strategy. *Consumer* price promotions include coupons, rebates, and loyalty rewards; *trade* price promotions include discounts, allowances, buyback guarantees, and slotting fees. Types of *consumer* nonprice promotions include product sampling, advertising specialties (such as t-shirts with a brand logo), contests, and sweepstakes. *Trade* nonprice promotions include trade shows and sales contests.

The effects of sales promotions differ from the effects of advertising. In general, sales promotions produce more immediate, sales-driven results, whereas advertising produces a more long-term, brand-building result. Sales promotions have become increasingly popular with companies in the last couple of decades.

Many entrepreneurs derive great value from using **public relations (PR)** as a strategic communications tool. PR has two major dimensions: *publicity* and *corporate communications*. When Google founder Larry Page introduced Google Pack at the 2006 Consumer Electronics Show, that was a corporate communication designed to move users away from competitor, Microsoft. When Google joined the O3b (other 3 billion) consortium—a group of companies that support World Wide Web (WWW or Web) access for Africa—it did so to gain positive publicity. Bill Samuels, Jr., the CEO of Maker's Mark Bourbon, used a personal connection and an elaborate plan to gain major-league publicity:

*Dave Garino covered the Kentucky area for The Wall Street Journal. Bill Jr. discovered that he and Dave had a mutual friend, Sam Walker, with whom Dave had gone to journalism school. Bill Jr. knew Dave was going to be in town covering an unrelated story and decided to try a unique approach to persuade him to do a story on Maker's Mark. Bill Jr. staged an event at the distillery and awarded exclusive rights to cover the show to a local news station. He found out which hotel Dave Garino was staying in and had Sam Walker arrange to meet Dave for cocktails in the hotel's bar. Next, Bill Jr. convinced the bartender to turn all the televisions above the bar to the local station that was covering the distillery show. When Dave saw the news footage, he asked Sam what Maker's Mark was and why, if there was so much interest in this distillery, had he never heard of it. When Sam replied that it was the local favorite and offered to introduce him to Bill Jr., he accepted. Subsequently, Dave and Bill Jr. spent three days developing a story that was published on the front page of The Wall Street Journal in August of 1980.*

*Bill Jr. recalled: "From that one story we received about 50,000 letters inquiring about our product. The phone lines didn't stop ringing for weeks. We had one salesman at the time and we were trying to figure how to best capitalize from all this publicity."*

And the rest, as they say, is history.<sup>5</sup>

It is often argued that publicity is an entrepreneur's best friend, more valuable than millions of dollars of advertising. The reason is that PR is perceived as more credible and more objective; a reporter's words are more believable than those of an advertising agency. Also, the argument goes, PR is free! This, of course, is not true—it takes a significant amount of time and effort, sometimes money, and always the ability to leverage connections to generate good PR. If this were not the case, there would not be so many public relations firms charging high fees and battling for the media's attention.

For companies operating in a business-to-business environment or those that need to sell into an established distribution channel, *personal selling* is a core component of the communications mix. Although some companies separate sales and marketing, a company's sales force

is often its primary marketing tool. Establishing and managing a sales force requires decisions related to sales force size, training, organization, compensation, and selling approaches.

A sales force is often considered to be a company's most valuable asset. Maintaining a strong sales force is an expensive proposition though, and startup companies often face a difficult decision: whether to absorb the expense and sell directly or hire manufacturers' representatives (*reps*, sometimes called *brokers*) to sell the company's products (along with those of other companies) on commission. Reps are advantageous in that they have existing relationships with customers, but a company has more control—and a closer relationship with its customers—if it invests in its own sales force. A sales force may be organized geographically, by product line, by customer size, or by customer segment or industry. Compensation is usually some mix of base salary and commission, and incentives may be linked to gaining new customers, exceeding sales quotas, or increasing profitability. Current marketing practice places a high value on selecting and retaining customers based on their profit potential to the company. The sales force typically should have access to effective selling materials, credible technical data, and sales automation software that will ensure an effective and efficient selling process.

Personal selling is an important activity for entrepreneurs on an informal, personal level—through professional networking. Leveraging personal and industry connections is a key success factor, especially in the startup or early growth stage of the venture. But this is a time-consuming and often laborious process, which is often neglected and rarely fully optimized. Giro's founder, Jim Gentes, personally attended top triathlons and other high-profile races across the country, demonstrating his helmets and giving them to the best cyclists. He was ahead of his time in understanding the value of endorsements from world-class athletes.

Entrepreneurs can implement *direct marketing* campaigns to be broad based or to be local or limited in scope. Direct marketing methods include direct mail, catalogs, telemarketing, infomercials, and permission e-mail (where consumers “opt-in” to receive messages). The effectiveness of direct media is easy to measure, and these media are ideal for building a database that can be used for future marketing and analysis. Direct marketing is an important tool for communicating with new or existing customers, whom you can target for mailings that range from thank-you notes to announcements of future promotions.

With the increased use of technology and databases in marketing, and the growth of the Internet channel, the practice of “one-to-one” marketing has become pervasive. This type of marketing is interactive and has qualities similar to personal selling: Your company can address a customer on an individual level, factoring in that customer's previous purchasing behavior and other kinds of information, and then respond accordingly. It is the use of databases that allows marketers to personalize communications and design customer-specific messages.

*Customer Relationship Management (CRM)* systems are designed to help companies compile and manage data about their customers. While CRM systems are usually large scale and expensive, an astute entrepreneur can set up a more fundamental system to capture and use customer data to facilitate relationship building. Part of this process is capturing the right metrics—for example, *cost of customer acquisition* or *average lifetime value of a customer*—and knowing how to act on them.

## Guerrilla Marketing

---

**Guerrilla marketing** is marketing activities that are nontraditional, grassroots, and captivating—that gain consumers' attention and build awareness of the company. Guerrilla marketing is often linked to “creating a buzz” or generating a lot of word-of-mouth in the marketplace. The terms *buzz*, *viral*, and *word-of-mouth marketing* aren't interchangeable.

According to the Word of Mouth Marketing Association (WOMMA), the three concepts are defined as in the accompanying box.<sup>6</sup>

Entrepreneurs may use all of these nontraditional promotion campaigns to get people's attention, especially younger generations who may not pay attention to TV campaigns and print media. Guerrilla marketing is also attractive to entrepreneurs because often they have to work with a limited or nonexistent promotion budget and traditional media are very expensive. Unfortunately for entrepreneurs, such nontraditional promotional methods are getting the attention of big marketers, who want to break through the clutter of existing media. BzzAgent, a Boston-based word-of-mouth marketing agency, has more than 500,000 agents who will try clients' products and then talk about them with their friends, relatives, and acquaintances over the duration of the campaign. It has worked with companies like Anheuser-Busch, General Mills, and Volkswagen. Procter & Gamble's (P&G's) four-year-old Tremor division has a panel of 200,000 teenagers and 350,000 moms who are asked to talk with friends about new products or concepts that P&G sends them. Some experts suggest that traditional marketers underused public relations or used it only as an afterthought, thus opening the door for creative guerrilla marketers.

It is easier to define what guerrilla marketing *does* than what it *is*. Guerrilla marketing is heard above the noise in the marketplace and makes a unique impact: It makes people talk about the product and the company, effectively making them "missionaries" for the brand. It creates drama and interest and positive *affect*, or emotion—all pretty amazing results. But in fact, truly good guerrilla marketing is as difficult as—and maybe more so than—good traditional marketing. Because lots of companies are trying to do it, it's harder to break free of the pack.

Think of guerrilla marketing as guerrilla *tactics* that you can apply to various media or elements of the communications mix rather than as entirely different communications tools. You can use guerrilla tactics in advertising (riveting posters in subways) and in personal selling (creative canvassing at a trade show), but you'll most likely use them as a form of PR—as tactics that garner visibility and positive publicity. The president of Maker's Mark practiced guerrilla marketing when he inspired *The Wall Street Journal's* reporter to learn about and write the story of his bourbon. Nantucket Nectars' Tom and Tom were relentless guerrilla marketers, dressing up like grapes and making a stir on the Cape Cod highway on Memorial Day weekend as thousands of motorists were stuck in traffic and sending purple vans to outdoor concerts to distribute free juice before it became a common practice.

Much of what we now call *event marketing* is in the realm of guerrilla marketing because it is experiential, interactive, and lighthearted. But as we noted earlier, guerrilla tactics are becoming more and more difficult for entrepreneurs to execute because every corporate marketing executive is trying to succeed at guerrilla marketing, too, and has a much larger budget to employ. Sony Ericsson Mobile executed a guerrilla marketing campaign in New York City in which trained actors and actresses pretended to be tourists and asked passersby to snap a picture with the company's new mobile phone/digital camera product. Deceptive? Yes, but too commonplace a tactic to truly be controversial. Not every guerrilla campaign escapes controversy. In 2007, Cartoon Network's Adult Swim launched a guerrilla marketing campaign to promote the show *Aqua Teen Hunger Force*. The campaign used battery-powered

## TYPES OF GUERRILLA MARKETING

- Word-of-mouth marketing: Giving people a reason to talk about your products and services and making it easier for that conversation to take place.
- Buzz marketing: Using high-profile entertainment or news to get people to talk about your brand.
- Viral marketing: Creating entertaining or informative messages that are designed to be passed along in an exponential fashion, often electronically or by e-mail.

## ISSUES IN GUERRILLA MARKETING

- Identify challenges and develop creative solutions.
- Find the "inherent drama" in your offerings, and translate that into a meaningful benefit.
- Get people's attention and get a "foot in the door" (generating the first sale).
- Create "buzz" once you get in the door (word-of-mouth marketing).

electronic light boards of a middle-finger waving moon man hidden in various areas around 10 cities. People in Boston mistook the packages for bombs, and the police responded. Turner Broadcasting, the owner of Cartoon Network, was forced to pay \$2 million to the city of Boston not only to cover the costs of police and bomb squad but also as a show of goodwill.<sup>7</sup>

An elaborate guerrilla marketing campaign in Toronto, designed to promote an HBO comedy series, featured street teams with TV-equipped backpacks to show pedestrians 30-second promotional clips, chalk drawings promoting the series at major intersections, and ads in the bathrooms of major media agencies that showcased giant quotes from reviews of the show. The attempt by large corporations and advertising agencies to set the standard for guerrilla marketing makes these tactics less accessible to small companies. Still, as long as entrepreneurs are sparked by creativity, guerrilla successes can still be possible, even though they require a continuous stream of ideas and energy.

In conclusion, entrepreneurs who create successful marketing strategies must have a clear vision of their goal. They also must understand how one strategic element affects another because, if the marketing mix elements of product, price, distribution, and communications are not perfectly compatible—if the mix is not internally logical—the strategy will not work. Even a good beginning strategy is not enough, however, because the marketplace is dynamic. Entrepreneurial companies, more so than mature businesses, must constantly reevaluate their strategy and how it is affecting growth.

## Marketing Skills for Managing Growth

---

It is beyond the scope of this chapter to offer a comprehensive discussion of the next step: the marketing processes and capabilities a young company needs in order to pursue strong growth. However, two key areas for you to focus on are *understanding and listening to customers* and *building a visible and enduring brand*.

### Understanding and Listening to the Customer

Although intuition-based decision making can work well initially for some entrepreneurs, intuition has its limitations. Entrepreneurs must be in constant touch with their customers as they grow their companies. When a company decides to introduce its second product or open a new location, for example, it needs to be able to determine whether that product or location will be welcomed in the marketplace. Entrepreneurs with a successful first product or location often overestimate demand for the second, sometimes because their confidence encourages them to overrely on their own intuition.

Entrepreneurs must obtain information that will allow them to understand consumer buying behavior and customer expectations related to product design, pricing, and distribution. They also need information about the best way to communicate with customers and influence their actions. Finally, they need information about the *effectiveness* of their own marketing activities so they can continue to refine them. Marketers build relationships in part by using information to customize the marketing mix. Good entrepreneurial marketers do whatever it takes to build relationships with customers.

Entrepreneurs following a high-growth strategy need to continuously find new customer segments to support that growth. Bill Samuels, Jr., recognized that for Maker's Mark to grow significantly, the company would have to reach a new segment—drinkers of other types of alcohol—because the bourbon connoisseur market was near saturation. Rather than relying on his own intuition, Samuels studied the consumer market to understand where he would find his new customers and how he would attract them.

There are a number of ways to listen to customers; some require formal research, and others use informal systems for soliciting information and scanning the market environment.

Leonard Berry cites a portfolio of methods that entrepreneurs can use to build a *listening system*.<sup>8</sup> These include:

- ❑ *Transactional surveys* to measure customer satisfaction with the company
- ❑ *New and lost customer surveys* to see why customers choose or leave the firm
- ❑ *Focus group interviews* to gain information on specific topics
- ❑ *Customer advisory panels* to get periodic feedback and advice from customers
- ❑ *Customer service reviews* to have periodic one-on-one assessments
- ❑ *Customer complaint/comment capture* to track and address customer complaints
- ❑ *Total market surveys* to assess the total market—customers and noncustomers

## Building the Brand

All entrepreneurs face the need for **brand building**, which is the dual task of building brand awareness and building brand equity. **Brand awareness** is the customer's ability to recognize and recall the brand when provided a cue. Marketing practices that create brand awareness also help shape **brand image**, which is the way customers perceive the brand. **Brand equity** is the effect of brand awareness and brand image on customer response to the brand. It is brand equity, for example, that spurs consumers to pay a premium price for a brand—a price that exceeds the value of the product's tangible attributes.

Brand equity can be positive or negative. Positive brand equity is the degree of marketing advantage a brand would hold over an unnamed competitor. Negative brand equity is the disadvantage linked to a specific brand. Brand building is closely linked to a company's communications strategy. While brand awareness is created through sheer exposure to a brand—through advertising or publicity—brand image is shaped by how a company projects its identity through its products, communications, and employees. The customer's actual experience with the brand also has a strong effect on brand image.

Maker's Mark used its communications strategy, implemented through humorous, distinctive print advertising in sophisticated national magazines like *Forbes* and *Business Week*, to create a brand image that would help establish a high-end market for bourbon where none had existed in the past. The company created a likeable, genuine brand personality for its bourbon. Because many of the advertisements were in the form of an open letter from Bill Samuels, Jr., to his customers, Samuels was able to represent and personalize the brand.

Marketing is often described as a delicate balance of art and science. Certainly developing the expertise to be a master marketer is difficult, especially for entrepreneurs who are constantly pulled in a thousand directions. Nevertheless, the task remains: to have customer knowledge and PR mastery and to recognize effective advertising as well as effective experiential promotion. Entrepreneurial marketers must, first and foremost, be able to sell: sell their ideas, their products, their passion, their company's long-term potential. And they must learn the skill of knowing where the market is going, now and into the future.

Early-stage companies often find it necessary to scale up or change focus. In these scenarios, competition can be a potent driver of marketing decisions, whether you are staying under the radar screen of giant companies or buying time against a clone invasion. But successful entrepreneurs will have a strong, focused marketing strategy—a consistent strategy—and therefore will not easily be thrown off course.

## CONCLUSION

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

Reflection Point	Your Thoughts...
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. How do you learn about your customer?</li> <li>2. What secondary sources can you use?</li> <li>3. What primary data will you collect?</li> <li>4. How do you segment your market? Who's your PTA? Who are your STAs?</li> <li>5. How will you price your product?</li> <li>6. How will you distribute your product?</li> <li>7. What channels are available? Which channels are best? When will you add new channels?</li> <li>8. What is your marketing communications strategy? What mix of advertising, PR, personal selling, and direct marketing is most effective?</li> <li>9. What guerrilla tactics can you use to create a buzz? How will you get your product's buzz to be heard above the noise?</li> <li>10. Articulate what you would like your brand to be. How will you build it during launch? During growth?</li> </ol>	

## WEB EXERCISE

Scan the Web and identify the Internet marketing techniques of two to three companies. Start with the company's home page. What functionality does the page contain (just information, online selling interface, etc.)? Evaluate the home page's communications effectiveness. Next go to a search engine such as Google. What key search terms bring this company up on the first two or three pages? Does the company use paid Internet advertising? Affiliate programs? Are there any other unique aspects about the company's Internet strategy? How does what you've learned inform your Web strategy?

## Appendix: Customer Interview

To whom should we ask the questions?

What possible information would we ask about?

Should the questions be open ended or structured?

How should the questions be sequenced?

## General Outline: It Needs to Be Tailored to Meet Your Research Needs

### 1. Opening discussion (introduction and warm-up):

Briefly describe research purpose, introduce self, ensure confidentiality of response, and state expected duration of the interview session.

**Opening statement:** Think of the last time you purchased or used such a product. What prompted or triggered this activity? What specific activities did you perform to get the product or service? What was the outcome of your shopping experience?

### 2. Current practice:

How do you currently purchase or use a product/service of interest? How did you go about deciding on what to buy? How frequently do you buy/use this product/service? How much do you buy/use each time? Where do you buy?

### 3. Familiarity/awareness about product/service:

What other products/services/stores have you considered before deciding on the final product/service you bought?

### 4. Important attributes:

If you were shopping for such a product, what would you look for? What is important? What characteristic(s) are important to you?

### 5. Perception of respondents:

How would you compare different products/services? How well do you think of the product/service you bought compared with those of its competitors with respect to these attributes?

### 6. Overall satisfaction with or liking of the product/service:

Ask satisfaction level and preference ranking among competitive products.

### 7. Product demo/introduction/description:

*Purpose: Get reactions to the product concept and elicit a response that may identify additional decision drivers.*

What do you like about this idea? What do you dislike? Does listening to this idea suggest some factors that you would consider important and that we have not discussed so far? Does it change the importance you attach to different factors before choosing a product or service?

*Purpose: Determine the purchase intent of new product or service.*

*What will be the level of interest or willingness of respondents to buy or use this new product/service? At what price?*

We would like to know how likely it is that you would buy such a product or service.

- Would definitely buy
- Would probably buy
- Might or might not buy
- Would probably not buy
- Would definitely not buy

We would like to know now how much you would be willing to pay for such a product or service:

- Would definitely pay \$\_\_\_\_\_.

Please note that comparable products are priced at \$\_\_\_\_\_. Now how much would you be willing to pay for such a product or service?

Would definitely pay \$\_\_\_\_\_.

**8. Media habit:**

How do you find out about a product or service?

What media do you read, listen to, or watch?

**9. Demographic information:**

**Personal information should be asked at the end of the interview.**

Age, income, occupation, gender, education, etc.

Size of the firm (revenue, total full-time staff, research and development staff), resources, experience, skills, etc.

**10. Wrap-up:**

Any final comments or ideas?

Thank you for your time.

---



---

## NOTES

---

- <sup>1</sup> American Marketing Association. 2004. [www.marketingpower.com/content/21257.php](http://www.marketingpower.com/content/21257.php).
- <sup>2</sup> Lodish, Leonard M., Morgan, Howard Lee, and Kallianpur, Amy. *Entrepreneurial Marketing*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley. 2001. p. xi.
- <sup>3</sup> Cadbury Does Yet Another Deal. *Beverage Digest*. Volume 41, Issue 1 May 2002.
- <sup>4</sup> Adapted from John A. Martilla and John C. James. Importance-Performance Analysis. *Journal of Marketing*, <http://www.beverage-digest.com/editorial/020329.php>: 77–79. January 1977.
- <sup>5</sup> Seiders, Kathleen (1999), “Maker’s Mark Bourbon” (case study and teaching note), Arthur M. Blank Center for Entrepreneurial Studies, Babson College.
- <sup>6</sup> Taylor, Catherine P. Psst! How Do You Measure Buzz? *AdWeek*. October 24, 2005.
- <sup>7</sup> Turner, Contractor to Pay \$2M in Boston Bomb Scare. February 5, 2007. [www.cnn.com/2007/US/02/05/boston.turner/index.html](http://www.cnn.com/2007/US/02/05/boston.turner/index.html).
- <sup>8</sup> Berry, Leonard L. *Discovering the Soul of Service*. New York, NY: Free Press. 1999. pp. 100–101.

## College Coach

CASE

Michael London and Stephen Kramer sat in front of the television at Stephen's apartment in Brookline, Massachusetts, which served as the corporate offices of College Coach, the college admissions advisory service they had started up seven months earlier. Feedback from their pilot retail classes and from a corporate workshop had been encouraging. The partners had identified three distinct business models: retail classes for students, corporate workshops, and high school guidance consulting. They now needed to consider which models to pursue, and related to that strategic plan was a decision on the type of facility they would require to run their operations. The partners had recently secured the services of a public relations (PR) firm, and Michael slipped one of the products of that relationship into the VCR. They smiled as a well-known local network news reporter began:

*In the locker room and on the field of play, coaches are there to make sure every player lives up to his or her potential. So how about a hired gun to help make sure your teenager gets his or her best shot at the college admissions game? . . . Michael London and Stephen Kramer fancy themselves the Knute Rockne and Vince Lombardi of the college-bound crowd. . . .*

## Friends and Partners

Stephen and Michael met as freshmen at Babson College in Wellesley, Massachusetts. Back in high school, Michael had become intrigued by the intricacies of applying to college, and he found Stephen to be an effective and interested brainstormer on the idea of starting a business to help students through the process. In their second year, they created Waterboys, an on-campus water cooler sales and delivery service. This venture proved successful, and the partners were voted runners-up for the school's annual business initiative award.

After college, Michael joined the Marketing Development Program at Digital Equipment Corporation and attended the evening MBA program at Boston University. He later worked as a senior consultant at Harte-Hanks Direct Marketing in Philadelphia but continued to research the college admissions advisory opportunity. In fact, in the years following his undergraduate education, he had served as an independent consultant to over 100 college-bound students.

Stephen initially worked at Arthur D. Little, where he assisted clients in developing strategic plans, creating market entry strategies, and improving operations. After graduating from the Harvard Business School, he joined Fidelity Ventures in Boston. He kept in touch with Michael, and they continued to develop a plan for their college advisory business. Stephen commented:

*At Fidelity, I was in charge of starting up and running their for-profit education [venture capital] practice. We looked at companies that were providing service in the education space: tutorial in nature, preparation in nature, software, and long-distance learning businesses. Michael and I had a lot of interesting conversations about the various business models that I was being exposed to, and we applied this to what we were thinking about within our opportunity.*

By the spring of 1998, they were meeting every weekend, either in Boston or in the Philadelphia area, to work on their business plan. As their commitment to the opportunity increased, interest in their jobs began to wane. Fall is a critical time for seniors preparing to apply to colleges, and the pair realized that, if they wanted to offer pilot classes by that time, they would have to devote their full energies to College Coach. They gave their employers their notices, and by July, they had become partners in the field of college admissions advising.

## The Demand for College Advisory Services

Applying to college had become a demanding and stressful process that included transcripts, SAT scores, essays, short-answer questions, interviews, and the securing of letters of recommendation. Competition to attend the best schools was evidenced by the fact that in 1998 the University of Pennsylvania rejected 300 high school valedictorians, Stanford turned away 10,000 straight-A students with high SATs, and Berkeley rejected 5,000 applicants with similar achievements.

In 1995, 62% of the 1.7 million high school seniors in the United States applied to college. This percentage tended to be higher in states with large white-collar populations. In Massachusetts, for example, 71% of the 49,681 public school graduates and nearly 100% of the 10,281 private school graduates continued on to college. Nationally, 3% had used the services of independent educational consultants in 1995, which was up from 1% in 1991. The average expense for these services was between \$1,000 and \$1,500. It was expected that college advisory services would eventually achieve a market demand on par with the 375,000 students that currently enroll each year in SAT test preparation classes.

The overall population of college-bound students was expected to rise dramatically over the next 10 to 20 years for two reasons:

- The ever-widening disparity between high school and college graduate pay scales was forcing more and more families to conclude that college was no longer an option but a requirement, and
- The “baby boom echo”, as it had been called, was expected to increase high school populations by 20% over the next 10 to 20 years.

The market was being served primarily by earnest, well-meaning parents; overworked high school counselors; and independent advisors (usually former high school counselors or former college admissions officers) who typically worked out of their home. Parents were often ineffective not only because they lacked expertise but also because this task needed to be done at a time when parent-child relationships could be somewhat strained. The average high school counselor in the United States was responsible for over 300 students, and in addition to college advising, their tasks included dealing with issues such as drugs, general discipline, and teenage pregnancy. As a result, guidance counselors spent little time with the majority of the student body, and with regard to college advising, they tended to work with the most talented students and with students with special needs. The best were exciting to work with, and the challenged students often had active parents who advocated on their behalf. Effective independent counselors were hard to locate, and the best could cost thousands of dollars.

College testing prep centers like Kaplan and Princeton Review had certainly been watching the growing demand for college admission advising, and Kaplan's Website ([www.kaplan.com](http://www.kaplan.com)) offered a range of helpful advice and services on the subject. Until recently, however, the college advisory market had attracted no growth-oriented corporate entrants. In February of 1997, Carlos Watson left a lucrative position with McKinsey & Co. and founded Achieva, a venture-backed company based in Palo Alto, California. Achieva charges fees ranging from a few hundred dollars to as much as \$3,000 for full-service college admissions counseling that includes test preparation and tutoring. Significant startup capital enabled the company to open 8 centers in the first year, with 22 more West Coast centers planned for 1999. By 2002, Watson expected to have gone public and opened 250 Achieva centers across the United States. On the opposite coast, Stephen Kramer and Michael London had plans of their own.

## College Coach

The partners had completed the business plan by early summer of 1998 and had left their jobs without having any commitment other than to spend their own money to get the operations up and running and to build a successful college advisory business. College Coach would assist families in determining an appropriate mix of target schools for each student. Developing compelling applications and interview strategies for those choices would be the cornerstone of the business, but they also planned to assist parents and students in the difficult task of applying for and securing financial aid.

Michael and Stephen immediately set out to raise the \$500,000 they would need to fund the first 18 months of operations. They contacted family members, who initially provided the requisite hand-wringing admonishments about the opportunity costs of leaving two great jobs and about how little actual experience Michael and Stephen had in the education field.

The founders broadened their search for capital. Stephen was adept at dealing with investor issues, and Michael could sell the model in his sleep. In less than two months, they closed on \$575,000 from seven investors that included family friends, personal friends, and colleagues. Five investors held straight equity, and two held debt with warrants. These were relatively inexpensive startup funds and preserved a good portion of the equity for the substantial venture capital infusion they were planning to seek early in 2001. This second round would help them achieve their five-year goal of operating in 17 markets with yearly revenues of \$15 million.

Raising funds was a critical component in being able to hold trial classes in the fall, but developing a compelling, professional curriculum for College Coach was their number one priority. The partners surveyed students, parents, guidance counselors, and others to determine the relative importance of each of the key elements of the college admissions process. They contracted with experts in the field of designing curriculum and partnered them with content experts such as essay writers, leading admissions officers, and college financial aid officers. As with the surveys, parent and student input was crucial to ensure that the College Coach program would resonate with the target audience. The project, along with copyrighting expenses, cost just under \$30,000. The result was an elaborate 1,000-page manual that included group exercises, games, and role-playing interviews. (See Exhibit 5.1 for a College Coach promotional piece that provides an overview of the course offerings.) The partners were very satisfied with the curriculum, but they also understood that even the best program would fail unless it was properly presented to the students.

## Staffing

The College Coach plan emphasized that the partners would manage the business and the classes would be executed—based on the curriculum—by people who had an ability to teach. This would be part-time work paying between \$15 and \$20 per hour. For the trial classes the previous fall, they had worked hard to secure individuals with impressive, relevant backgrounds. Michael indicated that he and Stephen were surprised by the results:

*We had a director of admissions. We also had an essay writer with an undergrad from Tufts and a Master's and a PhD from Brandeis, who had taught five years of freshman English at Brandeis. We found that credentials did not make them great at what we do. I think the students were somewhat more forgiving than we were; they may have had mediocre teachers in high school. But we need great teachers. Those are the people the students are going to talk about when they go home.*

**EXHIBIT 5.1 Promotional piece**
**The College Coach Workshop**

**College Selection** — College Coach knows the right questions to ask students and parents to create a personalized college list. Once the list is complete, College Coach uses its knowledge about the admissions process and past applicants to determine a student's likelihood of getting into each school. College Coach maintains a near-flawless record at predicting admission outcomes.

**Student Marketing** — College Coach lets students understand what it is like to be an admissions officer. Using this intelligence as a weapon, each student works with College Coach to discover what makes him/her special and to sell that "special something" to colleges — gaining an admissions edge.

**Organization** — Students have a lot to think about and College Coach has a proven way of assisting students to get their hands around all of it. Should I do early decision? How many schools should I apply to? Is on-line easier? What do schools think of the common application? Do I really have to write so many essays? Can I read my recommendations? Does the school need to receive my application by the 15<sup>th</sup> or does it just have to be postmarked by that day? College Coach gives students control over the college admissions process by arming them with organizational tools and answering any college questions that arise.

**Essay Writing** — Essay specialists work with students to complete their main essay. Unlike their English teacher or tutor, College Coach goes far beyond structure and grammar. Utilizing its proprietary essay writing techniques and individualized marketing themes, College Coach ensures students create memorable, powerful, award-winning essays that gain college acceptances. Students say that College Coach is the best cure for writer's block.

**Interviewing** — There is only one way for your student to become a strong interviewer — practice, practice, practice. Students sharpen their interviewing skills by preparing with real college admissions interviewers from the nation's top universities. Dressed for success, students are interviewed and critiqued by a series of admissions officers of differing styles. Students graduate College Coach with confidence and improved interview techniques that will never be forgotten.

**Recommendations** — Colleges expect students to receive strong teacher recommendations. Students fail to realize they can influence a teacher's recommendation with coaching. College Coach helps students maximize their chances of impressing admissions officers with standout letters of recommendation.

**Paying for College** — Financial aid experts teach parents how the financial aid process works and how it can benefit any family, regardless of income. Designed specifically for the parents of College Coach students, this session explains all the options available to finance their child's education. Parents leave with greater knowledge and in many cases more money for the future.

---

The partners turned to the schools of education at Harvard and Boston College, where they found an interested pool of graduate students who had some high school classroom experience. They also invited potential candidates to present a piece of the College Coach curriculum and be critiqued by an educator from Harvard. This exercise revealed that the best teachers were motivational types who have taught high school English and who have some experience in college admissions. Stephen and Michael were satisfied that they could successfully staff their classes. It was evident, however, that turnover would be high and that, as they expanded operations, access to teaching colleges would be an important site-selection criterion.

Full-time personnel at the corporate level would be minimal. Stephen and Michael would serve respectively as Chief Operating Officer and Chief Marketing Officer. A third key individual was the Director of Education, for which they chose a former superintendent of the Needham (Massachusetts) public school system. His task was primarily to help forge relationships with area high schools. In addition, an Operations Manager would be brought

on to support the activities of the College Coach offices. Inbound calls during peak direct marketing periods would be handled either by adding an in-house telemarketing group or by contracting with an independent telemarketing firm.

For specific projects, the partners planned to hire temporary workers or utilize student interns from area colleges. For example, during the spring of 1999, four Babson College students were working on a variety of tasks, including setting up a prospect/client database and researching the competition, benefit-friendly corporations, and online college application services. In addition, at the end of the semester, two of the students were planning to collaborate on the design and implementation of a College Coach PR event at a local high school.

The fund-raising agreement stipulated that the investors had the right to elect an individual to join the founders on a three-person Board of Directors. This person had not been chosen as yet. A Board of Advisors was also planned. The partners hoped to attract respected professionals from leading universities and the business community who could offer their expertise in such functional areas as business scaling, corporate benefits, and retail consumer marketing.

## Retail Classes

In selling their retail program, the partners found that many of the students they were targeting lead busy lives, with sporting commitments, extracurricular activities at school, and other private lessons like music and SAT preparation. College Coach students could expect to spend 14 hours in class and in addition to be assigned a few hours of homework. So, while the company was virtually alone in offering this type of classroom advisory instruction, they were competing heavily for the student's available time.

Initially, parents had expressed concern as to whether group instruction would adequately satisfy the needs of a range of students. This did not appear to be a problem, since the curriculum presented the material clearly enough to enable everyone to achieve at their own level. In fact, Michael felt that in many ways group instruction was a more valuable experience than a one-on-one session:

*It was interesting in our first class because in a classroom setting someone with a 900 SAT and a C average can say to a bright kid, "Your essay doesn't make sense; it's confusing. You are trying to use big words and it doesn't mean anything." They are less threatened than in a normal class. People who may not be great students feel very comfortable voicing their opinions in a classroom like ours because it's not real school.*

In the fall, they provided two classes for 15 students who paid \$500 each. In the spring, they expected to have a second round of pilot classes with 50 students paying a more realistic fee of \$700. These clients were mostly juniors hoping to get an early jump on the process by visiting potential schools during their spring break. This would end the pilot sessions. By the following year, their goal was to scale the business to support a target enrollment of 250, with an average class size of 15 students.

Despite some challenges with the teaching staff, overall the partners were pleased with how their test classes had been received. They had some early-decision application successes and deferrals, but the real test of the College Coach program would come after April 1, when the colleges released their regular decisions.

Throughout the fall of 1998, most of the focus had been on building an effective program for classroom instruction. At the same time, the partners had been investigating and developing what they felt were two other equally viable markets—high schools and “benefit friendly” corporations.

## High School Consulting

One direct result of the heightened competition for spots at top schools was that high school administrators were under increasing pressure to provide their students with adequate college guidance. This pressure was certainly felt in average school systems with low admissions ratios to good schools, but it was most acute at public schools in affluent communities and in private schools. The difference was that private schools, with tuitions often exceeding \$15,000 a year, were less inclined to acknowledge their weakness in this area by seeking or accepting assistance from an outside organization.

Since College Coach was an outside contractor and not part of the union, selling to schools frequently involved quite a bit of political wrangling. Guidance counselors were often defensive, and school committees tended to have a wide range of opinions on almost any issue. The best approach was first to sell the superintendent on the idea from a value-cost-benefit perspective and then to have that person move it down the chain of command to the principals and finally to the guidance counselors. The partners felt that having the various school officials on board would go a long way in tempering possible objections from the school committees and union groups.

Their Director of Education proved to be an effective prospector, and their program had been presented to a number of school systems in the Boston area. By February of 1999, however, the partners had become a bit disappointed with the inability of this “hired gun” to close sales. So far they had secured just one deal, but Stephen and Michael were optimistic about signing up a few local high schools by the end of the spring semester.

Stephen and Michael adopted a consultative approach with schools, since no two administrations seemed to be dealing with their guidance challenges in the same way. Some expressed interest in having College Coach provide one-day student workshops. Others were considering summer training programs for their guidance counselors, and one school involved in an administrative turnover was looking at the possibility of transferring the entire college advising function to College Coach. The partners were confident that they had the flexibility to service these potential accounts, each of which would represent a unique allocation of administrative and teaching resources.

## Corporations

Michael and Stephen discovered that selling to corporations involved a difficult process similar to that of selling to school systems; they needed to target senior management and have them advocate the idea down the line. Early on, Stephen had decided to approach Fidelity, where he had contacts in all levels of the company. He contacted the director of the company’s Work-Life Department but soon realized that this individual was “more of an executer than a buyer.” It became clear that the decision to adopt a discretionary benefit such as College Coach would have to come from the senior staff.

In the late fall, Stephen managed to get a referral to the president and COO of American International Group (AIG), the largest insurance company in the world, with 17,000 employees in the United States. In the five minutes they were given to present their program, the partners successfully generated enough interest to be referred to the Vice President of Human Resources. He happened to have a child in high school, as did the next in line, the Director of Worldwide Training. These two championed the project within AIG,

and in December, College Coach presented a lunchtime workshop on Wall Street that was videoconferenced to 30 AIG centers around the world.

The partners were also retained to provide one-on-one counseling to every interested AIG employee, either in New York City or over the phone. Financially, the project just broke even, but they felt it had been a huge success in terms of understanding the corporate market. Stephen commented on the experience:

*AIG looks for benefits that permeate all levels of the organization, and the group we presented to was very diverse. We had VP kids and kids of the people who load the trucks all night.*

*Management saw 150 families get involved in one benefit, and this was one of their primary success indicators. They also perceived that somehow we relieved stress and increased productivity because these employees were not spending time on the Internet looking at colleges.*

*College Coach helped them through the process in a much more time-efficient way.*

AIG expressed an interest in having College Coach return each year and provided a referral to another multinational company based in New York. The partners began to develop a strategy for selling their services to a number of firms in Manhattan. Their plan was to organize a tight schedule of classes that would maximize their time spent on this annual visit to New York City. Although this past workshop had been held during the busy season for college advisory work, the goal was to concentrate corporate sessions in the summer months. They were also looking into the possibility of increasing sales by partnering with a well-established company that provided benefits to corporations, such as Cerridian and Workplace Connections.

## Marketing

The two primary marketing objectives of the College Coach plan were to create name/brand recognition and to sell their admissions advisory services. At present, the industry had no organized competition, and it was likely that many consumers were unaware of the availability of professional advisory classes. Therefore, in this and in subsequent markets that they entered, a large percentage of their promotional budget would be allocated to PR efforts such as event sponsorship, media interviews, and speaking engagements. Following the second year of operations, the mix would include radio and newspaper advertising, with an ongoing emphasis on direct marketing.

Direct mail was viewed as the most cost-effective means of acquiring new clients. To reach potential retail customers, the partners planned to purchase lists from companies such as American Student Lists. A mailing in late 1998 to local upscale families with high school seniors generated enough interest to fill the pilot classes, but Stephen and Michael felt that the lists were not comprehensive enough. Their current database contained referrals and prospects pulled in from advertising and promotions, but eventually they hoped to increase the quality and depth of the lists by developing relationships with local high schools and community groups.

The company's promotional materials emphasized that the College Coach program worked well because each of the challenges of the application process was broken out and dealt with individually. They asserted that this strategy lowered stress and maximized the students' ability to pinpoint their relative strengths and weaknesses. In terms of addressing the competition, College Coach pointed out that private counselors were limited by their own bias and personal experience; and that guidance counselors simply had too many students to work with to be effective. Michael thought that a campaign dealing specifically with the failings of school guidance departments would be particularly successful, but he was hesitant to jeopardize the high school relationships they were trying to build.

## Facility Strategies

The fall retail classes had been well received, and e-mails of praise were arriving from AIG participants. The curriculum had worked well, and it was now time to move operations out of Stephen's apartment. In the Boston area, general office space ranged from \$15 to \$25 a square foot in outlying towns and from \$25 to \$40 downtown and in certain hot-market suburbs. Their business plan called for a leased 2,500-square-foot facility in a densely populated town with high drive-by visibility. At an estimated cost of \$80,000, the build-out was to include two classrooms with state-of-the-art technology, breakout rooms for one-on-one sessions, and a resource library store. Monthly lease expense for the first center was estimated at \$5,000, which would include corporate office space. As operations grew, high-volume towns more than 20 miles from the center would be served by satellites located in college/high school classrooms, synagogues, churches, and community centers. These teaching centers would be operated only in the peak activity months each fall, and would pay as little as \$25 a night for the space.

This "center-based" strategy had been modeled on what Kaplan had done with its educational centers. Building brand equity was a key element of the College Coach plan, and it was felt that having storefronts with high-impact signage would be an effective way to achieve an established and credible image.

The opposite end of the branding/location strategy spectrum was represented by Kaplan competitor Princeton Review. From a central office in New Jersey, this company had successfully built its brand equity almost entirely through advertising. Princeton Review avoided expensive storefront locations and conducted classes in community centers close to its target markets. Both models had worked in building large businesses with tremendous brand equity, and advisors to College Coach seemed split as to which would be the most appropriate course to follow. Michael commented,

*Marketing people think we need to have a high-profile location to build the brand.*

*Operations/finance people would say, "What do you need [a center] for? Spend the real estate money on ads and hold classes at area community space." Do we do first-floor retail with signage and draw them in, or do we attract customers with aggressive advertising? There is a trade-off.*

## Preparing for Growth

The news piece concluded with a Newton (Massachusetts) student commenting on his high school's guidance program;

*"I don't think I've ever received a bad comment from my guidance counselor, and that's not bad, but you want to get some constructive criticism." The reporter then continued; "Jake Cohen is waiting to hear from eight schools he applied to from UMass to Princeton, but with the help of College Coach, Cohen says he's got the confidence, that whatever happens, he's given it his best shot...."*

The partners felt that with continued publicity of that kind they could expect to grow quickly throughout the Boston area. Reflecting on their first few months in business, they agreed that three discoveries had been particularly encouraging.

1. Stephen's and Michael's skill sets complemented each other, and they worked well together as partners.

2. They were able to execute a successful program using a curriculum that they were at least 80% satisfied with.
3. Corporations and high schools would buy, and these represented two additional markets.

The decision as to what type of facility to create was closely linked to promotional activities. Investing in a high-profile retail site with full-service teaching facilities was in part a marketing strategy to gain exposure and credibility. On the other hand, they could rent simple offices, steer clients to classes at community centers, and allocate the lease and build-out savings to further bolster their marketing campaign.

Given their limited resources, the partners determined that it would be difficult to pursue more than two of the three business models they had been developing. In making their choice, they needed to consider which models would work best together.

A recent call from the Kaplan Educational Centers indicated that word was spreading about College Coach activities. Stephen and Michael knew from their research that Kaplan was owned by *The Washington Post*, was well capitalized, and had in the past acquired a number of smaller businesses in their industry. The partners were intrigued by Kaplan's interest and met with the corporate director of precollege programs and his regional vice president. Although no offers were made, it was clear that the Kaplan people were impressed and would continue to monitor the progress of College Coach.

## Preparation Questions

1. The partners were finding it difficult to service all three business models they had identified. If they chose to pursue two markets, which would be most complementary? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each business model? Consider lead generation potential, PR opportunities, and account servicing logistics.
2. What type of location should they choose, and how will their choice affect their marketing strategy? If the partners feel that there is a real possibility that a large potential partner such as Kaplan will continue to show interest, should this have an impact on their location and marketing decisions?

*This page intentionally left blank*



Team Canada celebrate winning the gold medal following their 2-0 victory during the ice hockey women's gold medal game between Canada and USA on day 14 of the Vancouver 2010 Winter Olympics at Canada Hockey Place on February 25, 2010 in Vancouver, Canada. (Source: Alex Livesey/Getty Images, Inc.)

## BUILDING THE FOUNDING TEAM

Despite the glowing tributes to superstar entrepreneurs that we all read about in the popular press, entrepreneurship is a team sport. Even Bill Gates, one of the richest men in the world, did not start Microsoft by himself. Instead, he and Paul Allen led a hardy team of bright young engineers to the semi-desert of Albuquerque in 1975 to develop the original microcomputer software, BASIC. The group included four programmers, a project manager, a production manager, a lead mathematician, a technical writer, and a bookkeeper. Despite their incredible intelligence and drive, Gates and Allen recognized that the company would never reach its potential with just the two of them.

Today, from its humble beginnings, Microsoft has become the leading software company in the world, with sales of almost \$60 billion and 93,000 employees worldwide as of 2008. Indeed, we could look at all the top companies in the world today and identify the team behind the lead entrepreneur, but the point is the same: Successfully launching a business requires support. Even if you are launching a small business, you'll quickly find that your potential to grow beyond a self-employment business requires a team, whether it's your spouse



for moral support or a trusted advisor who mentors you through the growing pains you'll inevitably encounter. This chapter will look at the issues entrepreneurs face as they build their initial team and lead this group through the challenging launch process.

## Power of the Team

---

Teams provide multiple benefits. First and foremost, a team enables the entrepreneur to do more than he or she could accomplish alone. No matter how strong the entrepreneur, how many hours she puts into the business, or how many days a week she is willing to work, at some point a team becomes necessary to increase the capacity of the business. Babson College and the London Business School have been studying the impact of entrepreneurship on economies around the globe since 1999. One consistent finding is that businesses with growth aspirations plan on employing more than 20 people within the next five years.<sup>1</sup>

The size of your organization is also directly correlated to the amount of revenue your business can derive. For example, if you are launching a retailing business, your average sales per person will range from \$57,000 per employee for a confectionary store to \$496,000 per employee for a new car dealer.<sup>2</sup> The figures are lower for restaurants, averaging around \$31,000 per employee.<sup>3</sup> So if you hope to grow a million-dollar business, you'll need to build up an organization capable of generating that kind of revenue. For a restaurant, that means you'll need 30-plus employees. Keep in mind that these figures are revenue and not profits. Thus, if you want \$100,000 or more in profits each year, you'll likely need a much larger business. For a full-service restaurant, which according to Robert Morris Associates (RMA) has generated an annual average net income margin of 2.8% before taxes over the last five years, you'd need sales of \$3.6 million per year to pull out \$100,000 in profits. Understanding these relationships going into your business will help you set goals and objectives for growing your company.

For growth, it's important to add employees who generate revenue. Too often, firms add support staff. While such employees can improve the effectiveness of the people they work for, their impact on revenue is often not large enough to pay for their salary, especially for the early-stage entrepreneurial company. Instead, hire a salesperson who will directly lead to new revenue. In the early years, it is critical to be focused on revenue-generating employees.

The power of the team extends beyond adding sales. Solo entrepreneurs suffer from a number of shortcomings, including a limited perspective, little moral support, and a small network. Research finds that teams have a higher chance of success due to an increased skill set,<sup>4</sup> an improved capacity for innovation,<sup>5</sup> and a higher social level of support,<sup>6</sup> among other factors.

Entrepreneurs benefit by hearing and evaluating suggestions from others about how to better define and shape their business concept. No matter how brilliant your idea is, it can be better. Solo entrepreneurs often fail to get feedback on their idea that could help them better match customer needs and thereby increase product demand. Remember, initially your concept is based upon your own perception of a customer need. Just because you are enthralled with the idea doesn't mean that it will generate widespread demand. Your team provides a good initial sounding board for ways to improve your idea. Granted, you can solicit this feedback from people outside your founding team (and you should), but you're likely to find that team members will provide more detailed suggestions because your success directly affects their own well-being. Moreover, your team members can help you evaluate the feedback you receive from outsiders. As we discussed in Chapter 3, your idea will continue to evolve during the entire entrepreneurial process, from pre-launch all the way through rapid growth. Getting different perspectives on the opportunity will help you come up with a more robust product or service.

Starting a business is hard work. You'll face a roller coaster of emotion as you achieve important milestones (your first sale) and hit unexpected pitfalls (your first unhappy customer). Unfortunately, most new ventures encounter far more pitfalls than milestones in the launch phase. It is all too easy to fold up and find regular employment when you hit a particularly tough problem. Having a team around you provides moral support. You're all in this together. You have a shared responsibility to work hard on each other's behalf because, if the business fails, it is not only you who needs to find alternative employment or opportunities but the rest of the team as well. Furthermore, a team means there are people you can confide in and share your frustrations with because they are facing them as well. The sympathetic ear enables you to let off steam and then refocus your attention on the problem at hand. Finally, it is more fun and rewarding to share the successes with a group of people who have been working toward the same goals. The power of a team is its shared vision of success.

Business is all about relationships. You need to establish relationships with suppliers, distributors, customers, investors, bankers, lawyers, accountants, and countless others. While well-networked individuals make better entrepreneurs, a team dramatically multiplies the size of even a good network. If you build your team wisely, you will gain access to a broader range of contacts that can help your business. This is often most evident in the fund-raising phase. Early on, you will likely need to raise equity capital, and the bigger your team, the more contacts you have as you embark on finding that investment. At the very least, your team is a great source for co-investment. In the 2003 edition of the *Inc.* magazine list of the 500 fastest-growing firms, 17% of the entrepreneurs reported that co-founders were a source of seed financing. Even if the co-founders don't invest directly, they can tap their own friends and family for startup capital, as was the case at 10% of the companies on the 2003 *Inc.* listing.<sup>7</sup> Thus, the power of the team greatly enhances your network, which is the lifeblood of any business.

A team also rounds out the skill set needed to launch a business. Most lead entrepreneurs have a vision of the initial product, and many even have the skills necessary to build a prototype—as when a software engineer identifies a new video game opportunity. But it is almost impossible for one individual to possess all the skills necessary in the launch phase. For instance, a person with strong technical skills may lack the business know-how required to successfully introduce a new product to market, or a business guru may see a product need but lack the technical skill to build it. Even a business superstar is unlikely to possess all the business skills needed for long-term success. For example, a financial expert likely will need team members with marketing, sales, operations, and production experience, among others. The key is to understand your own strengths and weaknesses. Know what you know, and more importantly, know what you *don't* know. Once you have a strong sense of who you are, you can create a strategy to construct a powerful team. As you start to build up your team, identify the critical skills for success. Create job descriptions and a time line of when you need these people. Then work through your network to find the right candidates.

## Where Do You Fit?

---

Just because the business is your idea doesn't mean you must be the CEO. Every entrepreneur needs to take a hard look at himself or herself and decide how to best contribute to the venture's success. Matt Lauzon, founder of Gemvara.com, is a case in point. He took his concept to Highland Capital, where he raised seed funding, and began executing a business plan he had developed with other students while studying at Babson College. After raising a Series A investment, Lauzon began searching for an experienced CEO with the help of his board members. The board recruited former Lotus executive and BrassRing CEO Deb Besemer. Why did Lauzon relinquish the CEO role? It's likely that Lauzon and his investors felt this

rapid-growth opportunity required someone with senior executive experience in scaling a technology company. Although Lauzon's innovative nature nurtured and led the company's first year of growth, both he and his investors felt the company's potential could best be reached by teaming Lauzon up with an experienced executive like Besemer.

Granted, creating a new venture requires most people to develop new skills on the job, but you'll be encountering a plethora of new challenges in the launch process, and you need to understand your personal limits. Stubbornly keeping the CEO job could limit the potential of your venture and may even lead to its premature demise. So the question is, "How do you gauge what you already know and what you can comfortably grow into as your business evolves?"

The first thing to do is to update your resume. This document best captures your skill set to date. The key to revising and reviewing your resume is to do an *honest* and complete assessment of your demonstrated skills. This is not the time to exaggerate your accomplishments because the only person you're fooling is yourself. You need to understand how your skill set will help you achieve success.

A second thing to keep in mind as you update your resume is, "What do you really like to do and what do you dislike?" Too many product people fail as CEO because they don't like to sell. These entrepreneurs want to design a product—and then redesign it over and over until it is perfect. While there is definitely a place for this type of founder within a new venture, it's not in the CEO role, which is about selling your company to customers, investors, and vendors.

Even if you're still a student and have limited work experience, building your resume will help you examine what you have achieved. Do you see patterns in your resume that suggest some underlying strengths? Can you leverage these strengths as you try to launch a startup? Even if you are relatively young, recognize that many young entrepreneurs built companies large and small starting from their strengths. Mark Zuckerberg, for example, started the social-networking site Facebook in 2004 as a sophomore college student at Harvard University. He launched the company on his strengths: a passion for technology and computer programming, which was self-taught. He also started with some partners who added to and complemented his strengths. Co-founder and former Vice President of Engineering Dustin Moskovitz was his roommate at Harvard. Former Facebook Chief Technology Officer Adam D'Angelo was Zuckerberg's friend in high school, where they wrote software for the MP3 player Winamp that learned your personal music listening habits and then automatically created a custom playlist to meet your tastes. Other co-founders Chris Hughes and Eduardo Saverin helped in the early years to promote Facebook.<sup>8</sup> Although all were young, together they brought an understanding of technology and how young people like to connect and communicate with each other. As of April 2009, Facebook had over 200 million members.<sup>9</sup>

Likewise, Jeremy Weiner took his business plan for Cover-It, which had won an undergraduate business-school competition, and grew the business to the point where his largest competitor bought him out, making him a millionaire by the age of 26. Weiner's strengths lay in his tenacious ability to bootstrap the business, the strong connections he forged with his customers (high schools and national brand advertisers), and his ability to offer the service at a lower cost than his competitor. In addition, he worked hard to get an audience with a potential client and didn't give up until he closed the sale.

Zuckerberg and Weiner both started modestly and grew their businesses incrementally (at least in the beginning), which allowed them to develop their own skills in line with the growth of the business. Yet each of them had a key strength he could leverage in the early days, a platform from which he could launch his business. As you examine your resume, what key strength pops out at you? Is that strength a strong platform from which you can develop the skills necessary to be the company's CEO, or might you be better off taking another role, such as Matt Lauzon did, and bring in a more seasoned leader? Can you sell, or are you better suited to another role? You can't build a successful team until you understand your strengths

and the best place for you in the company today at its launch and in the future as it progresses through various stages of growth.

While most people are pretty good at identifying their own strengths, they often have trouble understanding their weaknesses. Peter Drucker, the management guru who published over 30 books and received the 2002 Presidential Medal of Freedom, suggested that we can all improve our own self-awareness by conducting feedback analysis.<sup>10</sup> His methodology is simple: Every time you make a major decision or take a significant action, record what you expect to happen. For instance, as you decide to take an entrepreneurship class, write down what you expect to learn and what grade you believe you will earn. Several months later, after an outcome has occurred, compare it to what you originally recorded. Are your expectations and your actual results similar? What's different, and why is it different? Drucker's exercise focuses you on performance and results so you can identify your strengths and work to improve them. Although this exercise and others can help you understand your own strengths, many times people who know you are better judges of you than you are.

Talk to those people in your sphere of influence, people who know you well and whom you respect. Talk to your parents, friends, bosses, employers, coaches, professors, and others who can gauge your capabilities. Ask them, "What do you see me doing? What are my strengths and how can these attributes translate into launching a successful venture? What areas do you think I need to work on, and how should I go about it?" It is also important to ask them about your weaknesses: "What characteristics might impede my success? How can I work to rectify them?" Understanding your weaknesses will help you devise a plan to overcome them, whether that be through self-improvement or by hiring the right people to compensate for your weaknesses.

When it comes to self-awareness, there are two types of people. First, there are those who are overly conscious of their own weaknesses; they are their own worst critics. This group may be reluctant to pursue a venture because they fear their own shortcomings will lead to failure. In contrast, the second group seems oblivious to their own weaknesses. While this group may be more likely to launch a business, they are also more likely to fail once they do so because they won't seek help or even recognize that they need help. It is important to strike the right balance between these two extremes. The key to doing so is to develop deep self-awareness.

In addition to self-reflection and feedback from friends and family, there is a wide array of psychological and personality tests available. Some classic examples are the Myers-Briggs Personality Type Indicator, the California Personality Inventory, and the Personal Interests, Attitudes and Values (PIAV) profile. These tests, which vary widely in cost, are designed to help individuals understand things like their underlying interests, motivations, and communication styles. They can provide valuable insights, but there are several important caveats to keep in mind when using them. First, always remember that no test, no matter how carefully designed and applied, can accurately predict an individual's likelihood for success in an entrepreneurial endeavor. Few things in life are as dynamic and unpredictable as an entrepreneurial environment, and for this reason, expect these tests only to give you a deeper understanding of your own strengths and weaknesses. Second, should you decide to take advantage of these resources, industry newsletter *HRfocus* strongly recommends that you have a trained professional administer and interpret the test for you and that you insist upon a test that has been statistically validated. This is a field with little regulation, and as a result, it is essential that you use assessments that have a proven track record.<sup>11</sup>

Finally, keep in mind that no single personality or demeanor is best suited for entrepreneurship. In fact, a study by *Inc.* magazine found that many of the most common assumptions about entrepreneurs were misleading or wholly inaccurate. For instance, a classic label applied to entrepreneurs is that of risk taker. In reality, the study found that CEOs of the *Inc.* 500 companies varied widely in their levels of risk tolerance. What many had in common, however, was an ability to work well under highly stressful conditions.<sup>12</sup> The lesson here is that

entrepreneurs come in all shapes and sizes, and you need to be careful about letting common myths about entrepreneurs dissuade you from starting a business. Tests can't tell you whether you will be successful, but they can provide you with insights that you can use to help ensure your success.

The key thing to remember is that entrepreneurship is hard work. You will not become a millionaire overnight—or in five years. As Walter Kuemmerle notes, entrepreneurship requires patience.<sup>13</sup> As the Internet boom and bust taught us, it can be a mistake to grow too big too fast. It is cheaper to test the business model when a company is small and then shift strategies quickly to better adapt the model to the market reality.<sup>14</sup> This will take years, not months. So you need to ask yourself whether you have the patience to be an entrepreneur—this can be harder for the young and brash.

Once you understand who you are and what skill set you bring to the venture, the next step is to identify what other skills are necessary to successfully launch the business. Create a staffing plan that not only identifies key roles but also tells you when you need to fill those roles. Figure 6.1 provides an example, but staffing plans vary based on the type of company, stage of development, type of industry, and so on. Early on, you likely need only one or two other team members. At this stage, each team member needs to understand that early-stage companies are flat and nonhierarchical. It is more important to know what needs to be done than to worry about who should do it. Nonetheless, the roles for these members should be complementary, and each co-founder should also participate extensively in shaping the vision of the business. An ideal combination might have team members coming from different disciplines such as science and business. Or if they are in the same major field of study, they might have different functional specialties, such as finance and marketing or biology and microbiology. The co-founders will work together on the overall direction of the business, but it is also wise for them to identify and divide primary responsibilities. Many co-founders make the mistake of working on every task and decision together, which often leads to frustration and inefficiency. While everyone's input is valuable, consensus is often a deterrent to success. Someone needs to be in charge.

The sample staffing plan in Figure 6.1 is a working document that grows and evolves as the founding team achieves milestones and moves on to new tasks. The value in creating the staffing plan is that it helps you to anticipate where the company is going and to plan for those needs. Note that not all the positions are currently filled. It is wise in the launch stage to conserve resources, especially cash. Thus, the founders may take on some of the future roles as their skills permit. If, for example, the team needs a strong finance person with previous experience raising equity capital, it makes sense to start identifying that person early on but to delay bringing him or her onto the team until needed (which might be when the company raises a significant round of financing from angels or through a private placement). While we have found the staffing plan highlighted in Figure 6.1 to be useful, the Management Function Analysis Worksheet<sup>15</sup> is another useful staffing planning device.

Role	Primary Duties	Person Filling Role	When Needed
Product Development	Develop prototype	Lead entrepreneur	Now
Market Development	Customer research Channel development	Founder	Now
Finance	Raise outside capital	To be determined	Next month
Production	Identify manufacturing partners	To be determined	3 months from now

**Figure 6.1**

### Staffing plan

## How to Build a Powerful Team

Your staffing plan is the first step in building a powerful team. Your next challenge is to identify the individuals to fill the gaps. How do you identify the best candidates? The simple answer is to tap your personal network and the network of your advisors, but you'll want to go outside that network to broaden the pool of quality candidates. Work with your professors to make contacts with alumni. Search your college's alumni database to find people in the right industry and with the right kind of position. More often than not, alumni are willing to speak with current students. Even if the alumnus isn't willing or able to join your team, she may be able to recommend someone from her network. You should also check with your investors, accountant, lawyer, or other people affiliated with your efforts (if you have these people lined up already). Oftentimes, entrepreneurs will hire a lawyer or accountant earlier than they might need that individual just to tap into his network. Moreover, many law firms are willing to work for promising new ventures pro bono, at reduced rates, or for deferred compensation. Thus, it may make sense to hire your lawyer early in your launch process. The key to your success is continually building your network. This will help you meet challenges beyond filling out your team.

A natural place to find co-founders and other team members is your family and friends. A look at the *Inc.* 500 shows that 58% of entrepreneurs teamed up with a business associate, 22% with a personal friend, and 20% with their spouse or other family members.<sup>16</sup> Just remember that working with a close friend or family member can be a double-edged sword. On the plus side, you know these people well, so you have a strong sense of their work ethic and personal chemistry. This was definitely the case for co-founders and co-presidents Sarah Eck-Thompson and Brook Jay, of the Chicago-based events marketing firm All Terrain, Inc. Close friends before going into business together, they found that their skills complemented each other's very well. Perhaps more importantly, their relationship added a level of trust that can only be found between friends.<sup>17</sup>

It can be difficult, however, to order your parent or spouse to do some tasks. Jeremy Weiner, the young millionaire entrepreneur we spoke of earlier, relates a story of hiring his mom, reversing their customary roles. Whereas Weiner's mother had been used to directing and advising him as he grew up, now he was in a position to direct and advise his mother. Finally one day, his step-father scolded him for not being nicer to his mother at work. Similar dynamics occur when you hire friends. You need to relate to your friends in a different manner—a more professional manner—and this can stress the friendship. Recognizing the consequences of this new dynamic is the first step toward managing it, but there is more that you can do.

Before entering into a team relationship with family or friends (or anyone, for that matter), lay out as much as possible the previous accomplishments, industry profile, and years



Courtesy Jeremy Weiner

**Jeremy Weiner, founder of Cover-It and Zim Squared, directs his mother on an important task.**

of experience that person has and the roles and responsibilities that person will fill in your organization going forward. Define decision and reporting responsibilities. We are not saying you need to have a highly formalized structure at an early stage of your venture's development, but you do need to clearly state expectations, tasks, and objectives. We have seen more teams self-destruct because of personal conflicts than because of lack of funding.

Although the circumstances surrounding the fallout between Facebook co-founders Mark Zuckerberg and Eduardo Saverin remain mysterious, Zuckerberg forced Saverin from the company. Saverin then sued Zuckerberg and Facebook.<sup>18</sup> The moral of the story is that founder conflict occurs and can escalate to the point of endangering the company. Setting expectations and responsibilities in advance of engaging in a relationship can help to mitigate damaging conflict.

It is not at all uncommon for friends to dive into starting a business before they have really considered how it could affect their relationship. An excellent example unfolds in the movie *Startup.com*. This outstanding documentary follows two close friends through the rise and fall of their company during the Internet boom and provides a dramatic example of how working together can affect the relationship of two lifelong friends. Although Kaleil Tuzman had to make the difficult and painful decision to fire his friend and co-founder, Tom Herman, the two were ultimately able to piece their friendship back together. This is just one example of the difficulties you may face. Again, the key is to have clear expectations of each other and understand that pitfalls will test your friendship.

Once you have identified the right co-founders or team members, there is still the hurdle of opportunity costs. The best candidates often are already employed in good jobs, frequently in the industry where you will be competing. That means at some point they will need to leave a well-paying job to join your venture, and most new businesses can't afford to pay market rates during the cash-strapped startup phase. In addition, there is much greater risk that a new business will fail, which compounds the personal opportunity costs that co-founders and early team members face. As the lead entrepreneur, you need to convince potential candidates that the job itself is intrinsically rewarding and growth oriented (team members get to do something they like and be part of creating something new and exciting) and that in the long run the financial payoff will be much greater. A young company offers potential team members opportunities to grow into higher management positions (and therefore higher deferred tax–advantaged pay) than might be possible at their current company and to have some ownership in the new venture (through either options or founder stock). These are both powerful tools for convincing talented candidates to take a risk with your company. The more successful the targeted candidate, the harder it will be for you to successfully make these arguments; yet our research indicates that many people are willing and eager to jump into the entrepreneurial fray for the right opportunity. Make sure to present your best case. Sell candidates on the vision and back that up by showing them what you've accomplished to date, such as building and testing a prototype or securing outside financing.

## Bootstrapping: Building the Team Based on Stage-of-Venture Life

---

Building your team requires resources, which are scarce in most nascent ventures. Co-founders must often live off their savings or their spouse's income during the early days, as it may be impossible to draw a salary. Recognizing that difficulty, you are likely to find that it is better to bootstrap your team build-out rather than putting everyone in place from day one.

It's common for founders of smaller companies to stay at their current jobs and work on the business part-time at night and on weekends. Many companies are able to successfully develop prototypes or raise the first round of outside investment while the founders are still at their current job (although you should not continue working for a firm that you'll directly compete with).

Be careful, though, not to commingle activities. When you're at your current job, your attention should be focused on those duties that help your employer succeed. You should *not* use your employer's resources, like computers and copiers, without explicit permission. You should *not* expropriate intellectual property from your current employer to use in your new venture. And you most certainly should *not* solicit your employer's customers while you are still taking a paycheck from that employer. If you handle your startup well, you will often find that your current employer is supportive, especially if the business isn't directly competing with your proposed venture. Thus, you should notify your employer of your intentions as soon as possible.

Another means of earning a salary during the early days is to take a part-time job. While this may mean working as a waiter or for a temp agency, entrepreneurs will often consult in a related field until their main product or service is ready to go to market.

As a lead entrepreneur, you need to prepare for a diminished personal cash flow during the early years of your business, as you will often have to defer drawing a salary. Continuing to work for your current employer, building up a savings war chest, and delaying purchases of new cars or a house all contribute to sustaining you during the beginning. While painful, this frugality is often a small trade-off to pursue your dream, and if you are successful, you will likely receive a future payoff that will be well worth the initial risk and sacrifice.

Perhaps the most common means to protect your personal cash flow is to continue working in a full-time job during the early phases. The weekend and nighttime entrepreneur is common, but at some point you have to quit and work on your dream full time. For example, Ruthie Davis, founder of DAVIS by Ruthie Davis, an ultra-modern footwear company, continued to consult for Tommy Hilfiger where she had been Vice President of Marketing and Design for Women's Footwear. Ruthie's phenomenal success in launching "Tommy Girl Shoes" garnered the attention and support of the entrepreneur and founder Tommy Hilfiger. When Ruthie decided to launch her own firm, Tommy Hilfiger asked her to remain as a consultant for six months. This consulting agreement allowed Ruthie to maintain a salary, contacts and focus on building her brand.\*

The trade-offs of this approach are clear. While you do maintain your personal income, every waking hour is devoted to either your regular job or your new venture. This dual-job strategy usually works only during the planning stages of your new venture—you can write a business plan, build a prototype, and start to make some key vendor and customer contacts, but you likely can't launch the business while working full-time elsewhere.

In addition to the time constraints, there are other issues to consider. If you are being paid, that means your time and effort should go toward your current job. Make sure to work on the startup on your own time. There is also the potential for a lawsuit if your new business uses intellectual property developed on the company's time. Once you leave your full-time job, your previous company may feel like a jilted lover. Working to maintain a relationship with your former company is difficult—but not impossible. Follow the example of Ruthie Davis. She not only informed Tommy Hilfiger but also got his blessing to work on her business while continuing to consult for his. The risk of informing your current company, of course, is that you might be immediately terminated, but for the long term, it is better to be straight with those affected by your decision.

When you're bringing on team members, many of the same principles apply. Examine your staffing plan to assess when you need that individual on a part-time basis and when you

---

\* Presentation during 7<sup>th</sup> Annual Babson Forum on Entrepreneurship and Innovation, Babson College, Wellesley, MA. October 2, 2008.

need her on a full-time basis. If the person is critical to building your product, you'll need her sooner. If she will be your primary salesperson, you won't need her until you go to market. Accurately timing when different people join the team conserves company cash and helps the new hire manage her own personal finances. There are trade-offs, however. First, you need to plan ahead. It often takes four months or more to identify and hire key employees. Second, it is easy for a part-time worker to become disengaged from the startup. If your team member is still at his current job, that will likely take priority over your venture, especially if some special projects come up. Third, people who are already working on the startup full-time may resent that the other person isn't as heavily involved in the sweat and tears that characterize the venture. They may feel this person is getting a free ride. As the lead entrepreneur, you need to manage these perceptions and work to keep the part-time and future team members fully apprised of what is happening. Finally, until a person signs up, she is at greater risk of either changing her mind about joining the venture or walking away for another new opportunity. Understanding these risks will help you manage them and still preserve your cash flow. One way to handle these situations is to develop a compensation plan that excites your current and future team members.

## Compensation

---

As resource constrained as new ventures are, you are likely hard-pressed to think about compensation for you and your team. At some point, however, you'll need to pay yourself and others in your organization. The more powerful your team members, the more compensation they will expect, whether that is in salary or in equity (but usually a combination). So how does a startup company determine what to pay its employees? How does it choose among wages, salary, bonuses, equity, or some combination of these options? The answers to these questions depend not only on the nature of your company but also on the nature of your team and employees.

### Equity

There are several good reasons why most new ventures distribute equity to at least some of their employees. First, new companies often can't pay market rates for salary and wages. Equity can induce people to work for below-market rates with the expectation that at some point in the future they will be handsomely rewarded. As Lalitha Swart of Silicon Valley Bank put it, "People don't leave large corporations and take on risk without knowing there is an upside in stock."<sup>19</sup> Second, including some equity in the compensation package aligns the employee's interests with those of the company. Basically, the employees become owners, and their stock or options increase in value as the company prospers. Finally, the sense of ownership boosts morale, as employees perceive that everybody is in this together. This added camaraderie helps the team to stick together during the inevitable rough times in the early-launch phase. Of course, distributing equity throughout an organization isn't costless. It dilutes the founders' and investors' equity. You need to understand the trade-offs among motivating employees, conserving cash flow, and preserving your own equity. Understanding the trade-offs helps you develop a compensation plan.

There are two basic ways of distributing equity: founder shares and an option pool. As the name implies, **founder shares** are equity earned by founders of the company at the time it is officially established or when the first outside equity capital is invested (usually when it is first incorporated, although the shares may vest over time). Founder shares are most often

given with no or minimal investment (maybe one cent per share) and are an acknowledgment of the “sweat equity” that the founders have invested in turning their idea into a company or of the track record and value of the founders. There are several considerations to keep in mind when granting founder shares. First, remember that granting shares to new parties dilutes your personal ownership, but this dilution is more than offset if you are granting shares to valuable co-founders who can help the company grow. For example, if you are opening a French restaurant and you have front-room experience as a maître d’, it makes sense to co-found the restaurant with an accomplished French chef who can design and run the kitchen. It makes less sense to award founder shares to waiters, dishwashers, busboys, and other staff who are more transient and less central to the restaurant’s competitive advantage. Founder shares should be reserved for those team members who are essential to turning the idea into reality.

How many people should get founder shares? It’s a serious question. We advise entrepreneurs to keep this group small, usually no more than three people. Again, keep in mind the principle of preserving your equity by avoiding dilution. Once the founding team gets to be five or more, dilution can dramatically affect the capital appreciation that each founder receives, especially if the company needs to raise outside equity. Investors like to see founders with a significant stake in the company because “having skin in the game” focuses entrepreneurs on growing the company’s future value rather than on maximizing current salaries. If, after a few rounds of outside investment, each of the founders has only 1% to 5% of the equity, they may start to recognize that no matter how big the company becomes, the long-term gain won’t be sufficient to compensate them for all the hard work of getting the company to that point. Therefore, the founders might be more inclined to leave the new venture for greener pastures, and disruption in the leadership team is very difficult for emerging ventures to survive. The smaller the group of people who receive founder shares, the smaller this dilution problem. This is not to say that other team members should be precluded from equity participation, just that founder shares are not the best way to distribute equity to employees. Options are a better choice, and we’ll touch on that topic shortly.

A third consideration regarding founder shares is how to divide them between the founders. Many first-time entrepreneurs fall into the trap of evenly dividing the shares among the founders. So if you have four founders, you might give each person 25% of the founder shares. A number of problems can arise from equal distribution. First and foremost, if each founder has an equal share, it can be hard to make important decisions because the group will want to have consensus. Even if one founder has been designated CEO, the others may perceive that their input needs to be given full consideration. At a minimum, this situation slows the decision-making process, but it can sometimes lead to disaster as the team stalls and becomes incapable of taking action. Another factor is that ambitious people tend to benchmark themselves against their peers. This means that a CEO will benchmark her compensation against that of other CEOs. If the founder shares are equally distributed, it is only a matter of time before the CEO recognizes that she is doing as much work as her peers but has less potential upside. This discrepancy acts as a disincentive to maintaining the level of commitment required by startups.

While there are no hard-and-fast rules for splitting founder stock, keep in mind these guiding principles centering on past contribution and expected future contribution. First, acknowledge the time and value of past contributions.<sup>20</sup> The entrepreneur who initiated the idea, started doing the leg work, and enticed co-founders to join deserves consideration for all of these efforts and also for her expected contribution going forward—maybe as much as 50% if the founder also continues in a major role as CEO or some other high-level manager. Second, the founder who is CEO should have most of the equity, often as much as 50% of the founder shares. Next, the founder who brings in the intellectual capital—say, a patent or invention—should have 20% to 30% of the founder shares. As you can see, it is difficult to put hard-and-fast rules on founder shares, as founders may assume multiple roles.

While these principles can guide the distribution, the final split comes down to a negotiation. Detail each founder's past and expected future contributions and the role he will assume in the organization and then divide the founders' stock accordingly. It can be useful to engage a lawyer with experience in this area. The lawyer can help you benchmark against other companies and offer outside validation that each founder is getting her due share.

Since you will want to minimize the distribution of founder shares, another way to reward other employees and future hires is through an option pool. An **option pool** is equity set aside for future distribution. Options basically give the holder the right to buy a share in the company at a below-market rate. The option price is often determined by the market price of the stock on the day the employee is hired (or in the case of a private company, the price at the last round of financing).

The principles we discussed about founder shares apply to options as well. An option pool will dilute the founders' equity—but to a much lower degree than broadening the number of people who receive founder shares. Granting options also helps align the employees' interests with those of the founders by making the employees partial owners of the company. Additionally, to exercise their options recipients must pay for the shares, which brings money into the company (although the amount is usually too small to be considered as a source of growth capital). During the Internet boom, companies liberally granted options. Unfortunately, as the boom turned to bust, many employees found their options "under water," meaning that the exercise price was greater than the current market price for the share. If options lose their value, they cease to be an incentive and retention tool. When this happens, employees are more likely to leave to seek new opportunities. However, if a company is growing, the value of the options should continue to grow, which increases the incentive and value for the employees.

Since granting options can mean giving up a significant piece of the organization, it is essential that owners know how to use these motivational tools effectively. The worst-case scenario is one in which the entrepreneur gives up equity in the company and receives little or none of the value that equity is supposed to create. Many rank-and-file employees have difficulty understanding exactly how they contribute to the value of the organization. Communicating with employees about the importance of their roles, and training everyone about how they can increase shareholder value, is essential.

According to the Beyster Institute, a nonprofit organization dedicated to improving the use of employee ownership, entrepreneurs can take several key steps to ensure that options improve organizational performance. First, employees need to fully understand the stock ownership program and how they will participate in it. Related to this point, employees should have a solid understanding of how the company is performing. Second, the staff must know how to measure company success and receive training on how to achieve it through their individual roles. Third, as we have mentioned, one of the great benefits of offering options is that it makes employees owners of the company and therefore encourages them to think like owners. However, the key here is that owners are typically more motivated to find solutions to problems or to develop innovations. An entrepreneur who offers options and doesn't harness or listen to this highly motivated workforce is failing to capitalize on the greatest benefit of offering ownership. Fourth, a stock ownership plan should offer employees a true opportunity to earn a financial reward. This potential for financial windfall is the key to stock-ownership plans.<sup>21</sup>

Once the company decides it wants to use options to motivate and reward employees, the question becomes how many options to issue and to whom. Research suggests that issuing options generates increased overall company value through gains in employee productivity and that this increased value offsets the dilution effect.<sup>22</sup> It is common for many technology firms

to put aside 15% to 20% of their equity for employee options after a major investment round. From that pool, the company can decide to distribute options to all or just key employees. Don't make the mistake of distributing all the options to existing employees, but anticipate how many new hires you'll make over the coming years. Then you can come up with a distribution plan based on employee level. Higher-level employees—say, vice presidents and other upper-management employees—will get more options than lower-level employees. Keep in mind that you'll vest shares over an employee's tenure.

Although options are the most commonly used form of equity compensation, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) regulations put into place in 2005 make them more expensive for both private and public companies. Specifically, companies must list options as an expense on their income sheet rather than just as a footnote to their financials.<sup>23</sup> While it appears that the FASB rule hasn't dampened the use of options, there are other similar means to reward employees, including restricted stock, stock appreciation rights, and phantom stock.<sup>24</sup> **Restricted stock** is actual shares, rather than the option to buy shares, that are vested over time. The upside is that the expense is the current share price rather than the expected exercise price of an option. The downside is that the recipient gets the stock regardless of company performance, whereas employees exercise options only when the company's stock price increases. **Stock appreciation rights** accrue to employees only if the stock price increases (similar to options). Their advantage over options is that they tend to be lower cost to the company. Finally, **phantom stock** isn't really issued equity but a cash bonus paid to employees if the stock price appreciates over a set period of time. Phantom stocks are expensed over the vesting period, but they have the benefit of lowering dilution. The downside is that you'll need cash once the phantom stocks are exercised, and for a resource-constrained startup, cash is at a premium.

One of the main reasons to award options, founder stock, or one of the hybrids just mentioned is to keep key employees with the firm. However, what happens if you decide that someone needs to be fired due to poor performance, nonperformance, or any variety of other reasons? If it is a co-founder, that person likely has a sizable chunk of equity and any voting rights associated with it. That may mean the person can interfere with the operations of the business. An important means to protect you from an employee or co-founder who doesn't pan out as expected is to create a vesting schedule. **Vesting** basically means that people earn their shares or options over time, usually over four or more years. For example, if a co-founder is entitled to 25% of the company's shares, you may vest those shares in equal chunks over four years. That way if the person leaves or is fired in the first year, he walks away with only a quarter of the shares he would have been entitled to if he stayed. This maintains the unvested shares for distribution to future hires.

You can also structure an employment contract to permit the company to repurchase the employee's shares at cost, or some other predetermined rate, when she leaves or is dismissed from the company. You may negotiate a right of first refusal that gives the company or other existing shareholders the right to buy the equity of an ex-employee at the prevailing market rate. It is important for your employment agreement to state that the employee is an at-will employee, regardless of her ownership position in the company, in case you would need to fire that employee in the future. Failure to take this step can open your company up to the possibility of a minority shareholder lawsuit. To avoid lawsuits, you should define *fired for cause*, touching on what the company considers to be fraud, negligence, nonperformance, and so forth. Lawsuits aside, having a right of first refusal or the option to repurchase shares when the employee leaves preserves all the shares for redistribution among the remaining founders and employees. To avoid the time and energy of litigation, companies usually buy out fired co-founders after they reach a settlement.

## The Dilution Effect: An Example

This hypothetical example shows what happens to an entrepreneur as her firm achieves various milestones/benchmarks of a successful launch and moves on to a harvest/liquidity event. To demonstrate dilution, assume valuations at different rounds (valuation is covered in detail in Chapter 10). The following are some typical milestones that a successful venture might reach.

### Milestone Events

1. Entrepreneur entices technology partner to join her firm, gives him **40%** of the equity.
2. Raises **\$200,000** in equity from family and friends. The idea is valued post-money at **\$1.0 million**.
3. Idea is technically feasible. Needs to hire **software engineers** to build a working prototype. Raises **\$1 million** from angels on a **\$2.5 million** post-money valuation. Establishes a **15%** option pool to provide equity to current engineers as well as future hires.
4. Prototype looks promising and company successfully raises **\$3 million** of venture capital on a **\$7 million** post-money valuation to start sales. The venture capitalist imposes the following terms: Company needs to hire an experienced CEO, CFO, and VP of Sales, giving the three options worth **10%, 3%, and 7%**.
5. Sales growth is on plan, and the firm needs to ramp up to meet increasing demand. Raises **\$10 million** of additional venture capital on a **\$30 million** post-money valuation.

6. Firm receives acquisition offer from a large company (e.g., Microsoft, Cisco) for **\$100 million in the large company's stock**.

Note that while our entrepreneur is being diluted, the increasing value of her firm offsets this dilution.

This example highlights a successful venture. Founders who distribute equity wisely grow the value of their firm, which leads to a higher return for all involved, even as dilution occurs. However, student entrepreneurs often make the mistake of giving too much founder stock to too many different people. If, for example, the firm started with five student founders with equal ownership and still progressed through each step, the final harvest value for each founder would be \$1 million. While this sum is attractive, keep in mind that this growth projection likely takes five or more years, and in the early years, the founders will be paid below-market salaries (and probably no salaries until the angel round).

Also, if there is any kind of problem that leads to a lower valuation than projected here, the final payoff for the founders is greatly impacted. If, for example, the valuation that the firm receives when the first venture capital comes in is only \$5 million versus \$7 million, the entrepreneur (as sole initial founder) earns a harvest value of \$2.8 million. If there were five initial co-founders who get equal shares, each would earn a bit less than \$600,000 for many years of hard work and below-market pay. The lesson is to distribute equity wisely. Make sure that all co-founders will contribute throughout the entire time it takes to build and harvest the company and that each can increase the value of the company.

Event	Entr. Share	Co-Founder	Family/ Friends	Angels	Option Pool	CEO	CFO	VP Sales	VC Rnd1	VC Rnd2	Total	Valuation (000)	Ent's. Value
1	60%	40%										100%	
2	48%	32%	20%									100%	\$1,000
3	22%	14%	9%	40%	15%							100%	\$2,500
4	8%	5%	3%	15%	6%	10%	3%	7%	43%			100%	\$7,000
5	5%	4%	2%	10%	4%	7%	2%	5%	29%	32%	100%	\$30,000	\$1,605
6	5%	4%	2%	10%	4%	7%	2%	5%	29%	32%	100%	\$100,000	\$5,349
Harvest Value for All Stakeholders	\$5,349	\$3,566	\$2,229	\$9,905	\$3,714	\$6,667	\$2,000	\$4,667	\$28,571	\$33,332			

## Salary

Although equity can compensate for a below-market salary, most of your team will need at least a subsistence salary during the launch phase. The difficulty is trying to set that initial salary. You can start by researching the current market rate for the position you are trying to fill at online resources such as [www.salary.com](http://www.salary.com). The Website provides general parameters for the position and then allows you to personalize your search by company size, industry, and other factors. For instance, an information technology director might earn anywhere from \$150,000 to \$200,000 in the Boston metropolitan area. The person's salary would be adjusted by her previous work experience, the industry focus of your company, and other mitigating factors specific to the individual or your company. You can also double-check your market figure by looking at some of the Internet job sites like [www.monster.com](http://www.monster.com) or [www.theladders.com](http://www.theladders.com). A scan of these sites found that a chief information technology officer position pays anywhere from \$170,000 and \$300,000. The market rate is a reference parameter, and you'll adjust it by considering the person's expertise and perceived contribution to the company. A younger, less experienced co-founder will earn well below the market rate. A more senior, experienced co-founder with a long record of success might earn close to or above the market rate, but paying the market rate is probably impossible for a startup.

Once you know the market rate, you can negotiate a current salary and expected increases based on your company's improving cash flow. For instance, you might tie an increase to closing the next round of funding. Other increases might be linked to increasing cash flow due to improved sales. Instead of making firm commitments to future salary increases, consider using performance-based bonuses in the early years. This further aligns the team's efforts with the venture's overall goals and preserves cash flow. If team members successfully execute, the venture should have increasing sales, which in turn can lead to rapid growth in bonuses and other profit sharing. The key is to be creative and motivate your team to work toward common goals. That means deferred current income (lower salaries), with the promise of larger returns in the future (bonuses, appreciation of equity, and options).

Although startups should negotiate below-market salaries, it can be helpful to understand the implications of a fully loaded business model. When constructing your pro-forma financials, see what happens to your expected profitability if you paid everyone their market rates. All too often, entrepreneurs launch into a business expecting attractive profit margins only to realize that these margins are a mirage; once people are paid according to the market rate (say, in the fifth year), the profits disappear. Some entrepreneurs choose to promise market rates but defer payment until cash flow improves. In this case, they are creating a deferred liability that obligates the company to make up for the lower-than-market salary in the future. This means the market-rate salary is reflected in the income statement, the actual pay is shown on the cash flow, and the remainder appears on the balance sheet as a deferred liability. However you decide to compensate your team, be cognizant of the full range of possibilities, and keep in mind that you need to preserve cash flow in the early years to fund growth.

## Other Compensation Considerations

In addition to equity and salary, as the owner of a company you will need to think through a number of other issues in overall compensation. You will be competing with companies of all shapes and sizes for the most skilled people in the workforce. Putting together a competitive compensation package means thinking beyond just the monetary side of compensation. For instance, while they may not be feasible in the earliest parts of the startup phase, as quickly as possible you will want to consider things like health and dental plans and retirement savings programs like 401(k)s. Even from the start, you will need to figure out a holiday and vacation package that makes sense for your company.

Every organization is different, and it's important to align your benefits package with the types of people you intend to hire. If your business will rely on recent college graduates, something like company-sponsored life insurance will probably be unnecessary. However, if your staff will be older, married people who have families, life insurance and a solid family health care plan will be essential. The key is that all of these benefits are strategic in nature. Your goal in developing a compensation package is to attract and motivate the best talent in the most cost effective way possible. You should never underestimate the effect that a thoughtful benefits plan can have on employee satisfaction and loyalty. There are few things as powerful as having a workforce that feels they work for a great company.

## External Team Members

---

Although your core team is critical to your venture's success, you will leverage the team's efforts by building a strong **virtual team**—that is, all those who have a vested interest in your success, including professionals you contract for special needs, such as lawyers, accountants, and consultants. It also includes those who have invested in your business, especially if they have valuable expertise. For instance, you'll be well served if you secure angel investors who are successful entrepreneurs in your industry. You may also be able to gain help from those who haven't financially invested in your firm but are interested in helping new businesses succeed, perhaps by serving on advisory boards for new companies. Finally, at some point you'll likely pull together a board of directors, which is required by law if you are incorporated. Let's examine each of these outside team members in more detail.

### Outside Investors

When you are considering bringing on outside investors, whether in the form of angel investors or venture capitalists, never underestimate the value these team members can bring with their experience and wisdom. For many angel investors in particular, the experience of working with a startup is as much about the satisfaction of mentoring a young entrepreneur as it is about financial gain. Take, for example, the story of Norm Brodsky, the long-time entrepreneur and contributor to *Inc.* magazine. In describing his decision to invest in David Schneider's New York City restaurant, he said, "Yes, making money is important. I wouldn't go into a deal unless I thought I could get my capital back and earn a good return. But I don't really do this type of investing for the money anymore. I'm more interested in helping people get started in business. Whatever I make is a bonus on top of the fun I have being a part of it and the satisfaction I get from helping people like David succeed."

For an aspiring entrepreneur, finding an investor with that kind of an attitude is invaluable. As David Schneider put it, "I really liked the idea of having somebody I could go to who cared about this place as a business.... It's like he's always pushing people to better themselves. He wants you to move on, to expand, to grow."<sup>25</sup> In business, experience is the greatest competitive advantage, and an investor can bring that asset to a fledgling company. But Schneider's comments also point to another key benefit of having a strong investor on your side: You'll have someone to hold you accountable and keep you focused. Many entrepreneurs underestimate the challenge being your own boss can pose. When the going gets tough or decisions get complicated, it can be incredibly helpful to have someone prodding you forward. For all these reasons, choose carefully if you decide to raise capital through angel investors.

## Lawyers

Every new venture will require legal advice. Although you may be able to incorporate on your own, other aspects of your venture will benefit from your attorney's guidance. As discussed earlier, your lawyer can draft an appropriate template for employee contracts. If your business is developing some intellectual property, you may wish to file a patent. The right attorney can help you search existing patents and decide which elements of your intellectual property are patentable. She will devise a suite of patents and then, if you deem it appropriate, help you patent your product in several important countries. Lawyers can also consult on the myriad of unforeseen issues that are likely to arise, which is why it is so essential to choose your attorney carefully.

When making a decision to hire a lawyer, consider several factors. For instance, a smaller firm is likely to offer lower billing rates, a factor that can be very important to a startup. However, small firms are often heavily dependent on a small handful of clients who make up the bulk of their business. For this reason, you may find that your company is a low priority for a small firm with several key accounts. In contrast, while a large firm may bill at a higher rate, it will almost always have someone available to answer your questions, and it will also offer the benefit of a large pool of lawyers with diverse areas of expertise to draw from. Since your legal issues may cover everything from employment law to intellectual property, a large firm isn't necessarily a bad choice. While you may pay more, you may also find that a larger firm is more willing or able to set up a flexible payment plan.

In addition, when choosing your lawyer, it is essential that you find someone whom you like, who shows an appreciation for and interest in your company, and, most importantly, who has deep knowledge of your industry. The last thing you want is to be paying several hundred dollars an hour to talk with someone who is distant or aloof. And as for hourly rates, yes, you should expect to pay a minimum of \$150/hour—and likely much more than that. For this reason, it is critical that you do as much preparation and research as possible before you sit down with your attorney. Most firms bill in increments of as little as 10 minutes, so you need to use your time with an attorney as effectively and efficiently as possible. Also keep in mind that, while it is important to have a lawyer from the beginning to ensure that you avoid many of the classic mistakes, there is also a wide variety of free resources available to small businesses. These include everything from online templates for standard agreements and forms to nonprofit- and government-sponsored law centers that can provide low-cost or pro bono advice. While you should always turn to your lawyer for the final word, you can save your company a lot of money by using the available resources to get some of the legwork out of the way. Just remember that, as your company grows, your time will become more valuable, and at some point, spending hours doing your own research becomes counterproductive.

## Accountants

It's often wise to hire an accountant to handle tax filings in the early years because you're likely to be too busy to do it yourself and too small to have an in-house person, such as a

When Ajay Bam started his company, Vaysu/Mobilelime.com, he was determined to get the best legal advice possible, but he had no money to pay for the service. He heard John Hession speak at a Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) Enterprise Forum and decided he was the right lawyer for Vaysu. Bam pursued Hession with phone calls and e-mails. He arranged a personal meeting, and they clicked. Hession knew that a startup like Bam's couldn't afford his fees, so he told Bam, "You educate yourself on a lot of the legal stuff so I don't have to spend time telling you what it means, and you will save some money. You will prepare all the drafts." Hession sent Bam typical legal document templates such as stock agreements and told Bam to cut and paste his own documents and then bring them to him for a final review. In that way, Bam saved thousands of dollars and got an education.

controller or CFO, to manage the process for you. Many of the same caveats about working with lawyers apply to accountants, though you may be well served by an accountant who is a sole proprietor. The nature of accountants' work is somewhat different from that of lawyers, and for this reason, you needn't work with a larger firm in your early years. Don't forget that an accountant is a trained business professional; beyond filing tax returns and keeping your filings up to date, an accountant can help you analyze the strengths and weaknesses of your company's financial performance. He may be able to help you find ways to improve cash flow, strengthen margins, and identify tax benefits that can save you money down the road. Furthermore, both lawyers and accountants represent another spoke in your network, as both groups frequently have a long list of business and professional contacts. These can include everything from potential partners and customers to angel investor networks and venture capital firms.

## Board of Advisors

A board of advisors can be extremely beneficial to the early-stage company. Unlike a board of directors, a board of advisors has no fiduciary duty to shareholders. Instead, the goal is to offer a source of expert guidance and feedback to the lead entrepreneur. In choosing a board, you should look to enlist people with expertise in your field and a sincere interest in mentoring an emerging business. Good sources are your professors, current and former entrepreneurs, professional investors such as venture capitalists and angels, suppliers for your firm, and individuals who may have insight into your target customers. Beyond advice, this group can expand your personal network and provide leads to new customers or investors. In fact, board of advisor members will often become investors if your firm goes through a private placement.

One final note on boards of advisors relates to communication. Many first-time entrepreneurs struggle to strike the right balance between too much and too little communication. Keep in mind that, if you have developed a board of powerful advisors, they are busy individuals. Don't e-mail or phone them every time you have a question. Instead, accumulate questions and think about which ones are most critical to your firm and where the advisor can add the most value. Do some preliminary legwork to find alternative answers to these questions and options you might be inclined to pursue. If you are prepared, you will have a more productive conversation with your advisors, and they will be even more supportive of your future efforts.

The flip side to overcommunicating with advisors is touching base with them rarely—or only when you want help raising money. This type of communication suggests the entrepreneur is interested only in the advisor's network, but the advisor is less inclined to open up that network unless he has a strong understanding of the company's progress. Produce a monthly or bi-monthly e-mail newsletter that keeps all your important stakeholders, including your board of advisors, informed about the company's progress. This newsletter should be short and concise so that it will get read. More often than not, the newsletter will prompt an advisor to contact you with some useful input or connection to someone in her network. Properly managing your board of advisors will pay dividends, so don't neglect it.

## Board of Directors

When incorporating a company, entrepreneurs must establish a board of directors whose purpose is to represent the interests of the equity holders. Thus, when you initially incorporate, the only shareholders might be you and your co-founders. Once you seek outside financing, it becomes important to fill out the board beyond the co-founders. Venture capitalists and more

sophisticated angels often require representation on the board. A common board structure for the early-stage firm is five board members; these might include two insiders like the CEO and CFO, two members from the lead investors, and one outsider, who most often is selected with strong input from the investors. The outsider is often a person who has significant vertical market expertise and who can add value to the strategic operating decisions.

The board is in charge of governance and represents the shareholders. It meets quarterly to review the company's progress and its strategy going forward. The board will determine compensation for the company's officers and also oversee financial reporting. With the passage of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, the responsibilities and potential liability of the board have greatly increased. While the legislation applies only to public companies, more and more small businesses are finding it necessary to align with the act if they hope one day to sell to a public company or go public themselves. It's a voluntary choice to do so, but the act's standards are rapidly becoming the "best practices" for accounting and financial control at well-managed companies. This means that developing a clear set of expectations, ethical standards, and procedures for board members is essential. Furthermore, you'll want to ensure that your board has at least one or two members who can be considered independent, which means that they are not susceptible to potential conflicts of interest. Board members should be encouraged to act in the best interest of all the shareholders, not just the principal owner.

We believe the entrepreneurial team should extend beyond the co-founders and early employees to include external individuals who can provide invaluable wisdom and input. Entrepreneurship is truly a team sport—the stronger your team, the stronger your bench, the more likely you'll not only survive but also thrive. The next section looks at some difficulties you might incur once the team is in place.

## Keeping the Team Together

---

We've looked at the value of a well-functioning team. But not every team functions well, even if it's filled with superstars. Consider the Detroit Tigers, which had Major League Baseball's second highest payroll (\$137 million) in 2008. The team finished in last place in the American League Central Division despite having all-star Carlos Guillen and power players such as Todd Jones, Kenny Rogers, Ivan "Pudge" Rodriguez, Jeremy Bonderman, Magglio Ordonez, and Gary Sheffield.<sup>26</sup>

Why has this happened? Common sense dictates that the team with the best talent should win, but a dysfunctional team often fails. The key here is chemistry: Sometimes the whole really is greater than the sum of the parts. Consider the Oakland A's of Major League Baseball. Although as of the writing of this book they have not won the World Series since 1989, they have consistently achieved a winning record despite having one of the lowest payrolls in the major leagues. From 2003 to 2007, the Oakland A's had the second-best record (456–353) in the American League, and yet they spent one-third of what the winning New York Yankees spent on payroll.<sup>27</sup> The A's general manager, Billy Beane, argues that a manager can put together a winning combination as long as he understands the gaps in his team, works to fill those gaps, and focuses on finding players who match the team's culture and work ethic. While we're not advocating the statistical construction of teams, we do believe that understanding and effectively directing your team toward its ultimate goal can make all the difference in the world.

You can hardly overestimate the importance of culture and fit. The key to building and growing a successful team is establishing a company culture and working to bring in team members who subscribe to that culture. Culture starts at day one in any new venture and

evolves from the way the founders interact among themselves and with other early employees. Picture culture as analogous to duck imprinting. When a duckling is born, she follows the first thing she sees, which is usually her mother. Likewise, when a person joins a company, she quickly acculturates to the environment she is in—or leaves shortly thereafter.

Once established, a company culture is incredibly difficult to change. So decide what type of culture you want, and then work to create it. Company culture is an enigmatic and amorphous thing, and the ways in which it affects organizational performance are not completely understood. It often filters down from the very top of the company, and thus it reflects the values and skills of the CEO and other leaders. If you want a company with an open, trusting environment, then you need to foster an open and trusting relationship with your direct reports. If you lead with fear and intimidation, this approach will filter its way down to all levels of your organization. The bottom line is that you need to think through the culture you want to create, decide on one you are comfortable with, and work daily to communicate the values behind that culture. The most successful cultures are those rooted in core values and beliefs that are a part of the company's mission, vision, and mantra.

Keep in mind that not everyone will fit the culture of your company. For many first-time entrepreneurs, this represents a source of frustration and internal conflict, but it shouldn't. There are people who like buttoned-up, conservative work environments and people who like laid-back, laissez-faire workplaces. One person's "unprofessional" atmosphere makes another person's ideal company. Don't fight this, but do recognize the culture you are trying to create, and seek to hire people who will feel comfortable in it.

As a company grows, it's common for the culture to evolve. The classic example is the loosely organized startup culture where the pace of work is relentless, and as a result, a lot of misgivings are overlooked. Nine times out of ten, this culture will evolve toward a more structured "corporate" culture as the company gets bigger, and the chaos that was so critical to the early stage will begin to erode the company's success. Every startup will see certain elements of its culture evolve and certain elements stay the same year after year. The most important point is to make the change deliberate and recognize the long-term commitment needed to instill it.

Even if a venture has a strong culture, problems with the team are inevitable. Just as the best cure is prevention, the best way to keep your team functioning well is to avoid some of the common pitfalls. We will take a look at some of the problems that most new-venture teams face and then examine ways to avoid them.

## Burnout

We've all heard the stories of Internet startups during which the team ate and slept in the office for weeks at a time. A diet of pizza and Red Bull is synonymous with the crazed hours of the classic launch phase. The atmosphere is relaxed but energized, and the people are highly motivated by the fast-paced environment and the thrill of being on the cutting edge of an emerging technology.

While this approach works for many early-stage ventures, it's not for everyone, and it has its drawbacks. On top of the long hours, there's the uncertainty that your product will work as intended or that the market will respond to the product or service as you hoped. Every minor misstep seems to take on epic importance and increases the stress levels of your team. Moreover, your team members will notice that the balance between personal and professional life is out of whack, and they may start questioning whether this sustained effort is worth it. As these pressures increase, the risk of losing a critical team member mounts. It's important to manage and relieve these stresses as much as possible.

As the lead entrepreneur, you need to act as the coach of the team and keep the members focused on the end goal. This means that communication is critically important. Although

e-mail is the standard business communication form these days, in the startup phase, you should make a point of having daily face-to-face communication with every team member. Listen to each of them—not only about the progress of their assignments, but also about the stresses they may be feeling. Present them with regular updates on the overall progress of the venture, and give them realistic progress reports on how things are going. It is far more damaging to withhold negative information they will ultimately discover for themselves. If they understand that the venture is falling behind schedule or that the product isn't functioning quite as planned, they can be energized to correct these problems.

New ventures also have planned stress-relieving activities, or bonding experiences, such as the Friday happy hour or the lunchtime basketball game. Get away from your workspace and share some downtime with each other. The upside of these extracurricular activities is the strong bonds it helps the team build. A startup can be like your college days, where you'll make some of your lifelong friends. Many new ventures also have stress relievers right in the workplace, such as foosball tables, dartboards, and other distractions so that individuals can break from their work for a few minutes and clear their minds. It's often a good idea to provide free soda, coffee, and snacks as well. These little perks are cost effective and build goodwill and camaraderie. Relieving stress will help keep your team strong and cohesive.

## Family Pressure

If working long hours stresses your team members, it also stresses their families. Spouses and significant others complain to their partners about their never being home or their being too tired to pay attention to their families. Missing a child's ball games and school performances can create resentment. Stress at home can negatively affect performance and increase the risk of turnover. If spouses continually ask why their partners have left good-paying jobs for lower pay and the promise of a future payoff, your team members will question their own motives. So it's imperative that open communication occur on the home front as well.

Counsel your team members to set the expectations of their families even before they join your team. If a spouse is forewarned of the long hours, it minimizes the angst. It's also a good idea to include families in stress-relieving events on a regular basis. Company picnics are a nice way for spouses to connect with other spouses. In this way, they can develop an informal support group with people who are facing the same difficulties. In fact, some new ventures formalize these family support groups by organizing a few events that are spouse specific. It is important to remember and remind all involved that the long hours will subside and that, if the venture is successful, everyone will benefit.

## Interpersonal Conflicts

In such a charged environment, interpersonal conflicts among team members are common. Resolve these disputes as quickly as possible, or they may escalate to the point where they become destructive. Lead entrepreneurs typically find that they spend as much time coaching and managing team issues as they do directly working on the business. If you find yourself in this situation, don't worry—this is a valuable and effective use of your time. If you can keep your team working together, you'll have more success than if you try to carry the burden all alone.

As the coach, you may be able to resolve some conflicts only by firing one of the team members. While firing is a necessary part of running a company, you need to be prepared for the inevitable disruption it will cause (although it can be therapeutic to those who remain if it removes some of the stress that the fired individual brought to the company). Depending on the person's agreement with the company, his departure may require a buyout of equity and a lump-sum settlement. That's why firing is usually undertaken only if the person is not

only prone to interpersonal conflicts but also underperforming in some way (either not skilled enough to do the jobs required or shirking his responsibilities). First try to resolve the conflict by mediating between the parties, and be sure not to appear to be favoring either one. It may be prudent to hire an outside expert who is perceived as a neutral party. Whatever resolution you agree upon, make sure that it is implemented as planned.

## □ CONCLUSION

Entrepreneurship is a team sport. The most critical task any lead entrepreneur undertakes is defining who should be on the team and then creating an environment in which that team can flourish. This chapter has identified what type of team members ventures might need, how to entice and compensate them, and how to build a strong, supportive culture. Maintaining a team requires ongoing effort, and many organizations find that team dynamics suffer when the firm experiences rapid growth. Chapter 14 revisits these issues and suggests ways that organizations can keep their entrepreneurial orientation.

## □ YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

### Reflection Point

1. What are your three strongest attributes?
2. Talk to a close mentor and ask what he or she sees as your strengths. Do these match the attributes you identified above?
3. What skills do you need to develop prior to launch? What skills can you develop during the launch and early stages of your company? Create a plan to develop those skills.
4. Create an organization chart for your venture. Show positions to be filled immediately and those to be filled later (along with the dates of filling those positions). Create a staffing plan based on your organization chart.
5. Think about the types of employees you'd like to hire. What kind of values are you looking for? Remember, this is the point at which you create your company's culture.

### Your Thoughts ...

## □ WEB EXERCISE

Scan Monster.com, Salary.com and other job sites. Look at the postings for CEO and other key employees of early-stage companies in the industry that you are interested in pursuing. What skills are being sought? What level of previous experience is desired? How much are they offering for these key employees? Use this information to start creating your own staffing plan.

## NOTES

- <sup>1</sup> Minniti, M., Bygrave, W., and Autio, E. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2005 Executive Report*. Wellesley, MA: Babson College and London Business School. 2006.
- <sup>2</sup> [www.bizstats.com/drilldown\\_industry-productivity.asp?industry = Retail](http://www.bizstats.com/drilldown_industry-productivity.asp?industry = Retail).
- <sup>3</sup> [www.bizstats.com/reports/industry-productivity.asp?industry = Full%2D service+restaurants](http://www.bizstats.com/reports/industry-productivity.asp?industry = Full%2D service+restaurants). For other industries, check <http://bizstats.com>.
- <sup>4</sup> Lechner, T. Social Interaction: A Determinant of Entrepreneurial Team Success. *Small Business Economics*, 16: 263–278. 2001.
- <sup>5</sup> Ruef, M. Strong Ties, Weak Ties and Islands: Structural and Cultural Predictions of Entrepreneurial Team Success. *Industrial and Corporate Changes*, 11: 427–449. 2002.
- <sup>6</sup> Bird, B. *Entrepreneurial Behavior*. Glenview, IL: Scott Foresman. 1989.
- <sup>7</sup> Hofman, M. The Big Picture. *Inc.*, 25(11): 87–94. October 15, 2003.
- <sup>8</sup> <http://www.facebook.com/press/info.php?founderbios>.
- <sup>9</sup> Stone, Brad. (2009) “Is Facebook Growing Up Too Fast?” *New York Times*. Mar 28. <http://www.nytimes.com/2009/03/29/technology/internet/29face.html>
- <sup>10</sup> Drucker, P. Managing Oneself. *Harvard Business Review*, 83(1): 100–105. 2005.
- <sup>11</sup> *HRfocus*, 82(9): 8–9. September 2005.
- <sup>12</sup> McFarland, K. The Psychology of Success. *Inc.*, 27(11): 158–159. November 15, 2005.
- <sup>13</sup> Kuemmerle, W. A Test for the Faint-hearted. *Harvard Business Review*, 80(5): 122–126. 2002.
- <sup>14</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>15</sup> [www.eventuring.org/eShip/appmanager/eVenturing>ShowDoc/eShipWebCache](http://www.eventuring.org/eShip/appmanager/eVenturing>ShowDoc/eShipWebCache)
- <sup>16</sup> Repository/Documents/FTNV-pp276-279.pdf.
- <sup>17</sup> Brief Profile of 2003 Inc. 500 Companies. *Inc.* 25(10). October 2003.
- <sup>18</sup> Sherman, A. P. You Can Count on Me. *Entrepreneur*, 32(11): 36. November 2004.
- <sup>19</sup> Hoffman, Claire. (2008) The battle for facebook. *The Rolling Stone*. [http://www.rollingstone.com/news/story/21129674/the\\_battle\\_for\\_facebook/print](http://www.rollingstone.com/news/story/21129674/the_battle_for_facebook/print)
- <sup>20</sup> Spirrison, J. B. Startups Ponder Equity Compensation Conundrum. *Private Equity Week*. October 4, 1999. pp. 1–2.
- <sup>21</sup> Robbins, S. Dividing Equity Between Founders and Investors: How to Figure Out Who Gets What Percentage of the Business When Investors Come on Board. *Entrepreneur*. October 13, 2003.
- <sup>22</sup> Beyster Institute. *Employee Ownership Plans—“Keys to Success.”* [www.beysteringstitute.org/about\\_employee\\_ownership/keys\\_to\\_success.cfm](http://www.beysteringstitute.org/about_employee_ownership/keys_to_success.cfm).
- <sup>23</sup> Burlingham, B. The Boom in Employee Stock Ownership. *Inc.*, 22(11): 106–110. August 2000.
- <sup>24</sup> Sisk, M. Taking Stock. *Inc.*, 27(4): 34. April 2005.
- <sup>25</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>26</sup> Burlingham, B. Touched by an Angel. *Inc.*, 19(10): 46–47. July 1997.
- <sup>27</sup> Shea, Bill. (2009) “Detroit Tigers’ Payroll Is Fifth Highest In Baseball, But Down From Last Year.” *Crain’s Detroit Business*. Apr 6. <http://www.crainsdetroit.com/article/20090406/FREE/904069989>
- <sup>28</sup> Hammonds, Keith. (2007) “How To Play Beane Ball.” *Fast Company*. Dec 19. <http://www.fastcompany.com/magazine/70/beane.html>

**CASE****Ajay Bam**

With the quiet click of the meeting room door, Ajay Bam was left with one fewer person on his team. It was the spring of 2002, and Walter Stock—Ajay’s friend and partner—had finally succumbed to the pressures of time and money. Troy Chen, the other founding partner, had exited two months earlier.

Ajay dialed new-venture attorney John Hession to vent his frustrations. Maybe at 27 he was just too young and inexperienced, right? Of course, he had understood that it was not going to be easy to start up a wireless payment and loyalty solution in the United States, but did it have to be this draining, this fraught with rejection and naysayers? Sure, he had assembled a top-flight board of seasoned advisors, but what good was that if he was unable to keep his team together or get any traction with investors? Broke and exhausted, Ajay confessed that, even though he had worked for two years to earn an MBA degree in Entrepreneurship, he was giving a lot of thought to a six-figure job that was still waiting for him with Lehman Brothers in New York.

As Ajay clicked off his cell phone, he was suddenly struck by the fact that the attorney had said almost nothing. He swallowed hard as he realized why; he had been talking like a quitter—maybe not worth the free advice and networking support that the skilled lawyer had been providing for months. And what about all the other professionals who had given Ajay so much of their time and encouragement over the past two years—including a major venture-capital investor that he now considered his mentor? Was he willing to make a similar call to them as well? This is just too hard, too lean.

Ajay rubbed his tired eyes and looked out at the cold April rain. What had he missed? What else could he try? Should he keep at it, or cut his losses now and attempt something else at a later time after he had rebuilt his personal savings a bit?

In addition to his precarious financial situation and his state of exhaustion, Ajay was certain of at least one other thing: if he didn’t start up a mobile payments and loyalty enterprise soon, someone else would.

**Ajay Bam**

Ajay Bam grew up in Pune, India, just north of Bombay. His father, a textile manufacturer, and his mother, a greenhouse business proprietor, had raised their children to be independent, critical thinkers. Looking back, Ajay said that, although he wasn’t always in agreement with their choices, he could see they had been pushing him in the right direction:

*I am so grateful to my parents. I remember when I went to prep school, I hated it . . . I didn’t realize at the time what my parents were doing, but they did the best thing. I have seen a lot of amazing things, and I am cosmopolitan because I am very world traveled. It puts a lot of things in perspective . . . You know who you are, where you have come from, and what you have.*

By his early twenties, Ajay had earned an undergraduate degree in computer engineering and a master’s degree in software engineering. He then landed a job as a technology analyst for Lehman Brothers in the World Trade Center complex in New York City. He was young, single, successful, and growing restless:

*The pay was great. Everything was fantastic, but it gets to a point where the money doesn’t matter anymore. You know you are good and you know you are going to make a good*

*living . . . In the back of my mind I always knew I wanted to go for my MBA . . . so after getting two years of full-time experience I decided to apply to a number of schools . . . Babson, being number one in Entrepreneurship, was my first choice.*

## Babson College

Ajay left Wall Street and in the fall of 1999 began a two-year program at Babson College. He immediately applied for and was accepted into a new offering at the school: the Entrepreneurship Intensity Track (EIT) program. EIT was “a compressed and highly focused entrepreneurial curriculum designed to provide students with the necessary skills to take a business idea through the critical stages of exploration, investigation, and refinement.” Ajay was thrilled with the opportunity to meet the many successful entrepreneurs who were participating in the program as well as to work with a diverse, talented group of instructors and students. He recalled that the learning experience was quite different from his more bookish engineering studies:

*To me getting an MBA was 50% networking, 20% classes, and 30% doing what I wanted to do. It was not about what your professors did for you; it was about your level of participation.*

Following his second semester, Ajay signed up for a four-month international management internship. Eager to travel again and test his proficiency with at least one of several languages he had learned academically, Ajay chose a startup in Munich, Germany. Ajay enjoyed working for the COO, who agreed to let him sit in on board meetings:

*The great challenge for me was that the meetings were in technical German. It was hard to understand every word. So I would come out of these meetings and ask, “What just happened? I got bits and pieces but could you put the story together for me?” I think they liked it because they thought it was very challenging of me to be sitting in and trying to understand what was going on.*

The COO encouraged his soft-spoken, hard-working intern to take three-day travel weekends. Ajay grew particularly fond of Western Europe, and it was there that he began to see cell phones in a new light:

*As I traveled around, I noticed that people had very fancy phones—sometimes several; like one for a party, one for the office, one for home . . . I still had my phone from the States and it was just a clunky old black box . . . I just hated it . . . I decided that mobile applications were going to be the next big thing in the United States. When I came back from Germany, I decided that this was the space I wanted to work in.*

## Vayusa

In the fall of 2000, Ajay and fellow MBA Walter Stock were meeting at Starbucks to brainstorm consumer applications for mobile technology. When the discussion gravitated toward the hassle of coffee cards, the pair spied their opportunity. Ajay explained:

*I carry a lot of loyalty cards. I have four coffee cards in my wallet. To be honest, it is a pain carrying all these cards; I don’t have them when I need them, I lose my rewards, it’s a pain to sign up, and it’s a pain if you lose them. And for merchants, the struggle is getting their card into your wallet.*

*Walter and I started thinking about building a mobile coffee card that would allow you to track your coffees on your cell phone and let you know that you have, say, 11 coffees on your card. Then you wouldn’t need to carry all these loyalty cards.*

Over the next few weeks, Ajay's EIT sessions helped to shape the business model, and they began to gain an understanding of the challenges that merchants were facing. The new venture would develop a technology platform that would enable customers to carry out payments and participate in loyalty programs using any type of cell phone. The partners viewed the loyalty component as key, since vendors large and small were discovering that loyalty-marketing programs developed from actual customer behavior—a discipline known as customer relationship management, or CRM—could produce stunning returns on investment. Ajay explained how the transaction would work:

*As a first-time [user] you have to sign up your mobile phone and credit card into the Vayusa portal. Once you do the sign-up process, you walk into a participating store—say, Blockbuster—and they ask you how you would like to pay: Visa card, Visa phone, or cash. Our vision is to be the Visa phone.*

*There is a pre-programmed [toll free] number on your phone that will ask you for the... unique tonal [point of sale ID displayed by that merchant]. Say it's 100. Press 100.*

*Simultaneously, the Blockbuster guy enters \$4.99, and on his tonal he says, "Visa mobile."*

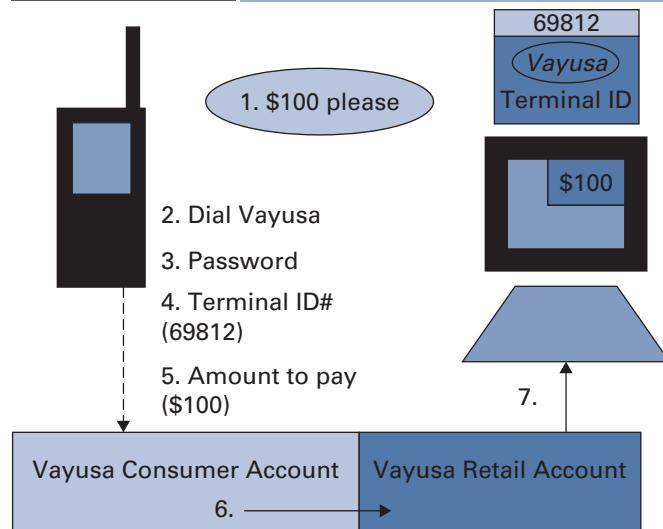
*When you authorize the payment, [the system] automatically reads your [online] coupons and lets you know whatever the best one is. Then you enter your pin number to complete the transaction.*

*Afterward you get a text receipt on your cell phone and an e-mail receipt sent to your e-mail address. Then we automatically update your loyalty rewards with Blockbuster. Again, you don't need to carry [a vendor] card in your wallet. You don't even need to carry credit cards.*

The company name, Vayusa—Sanskrit for “rhythm in the air”—was chosen to evoke the effortless mobile transactions they were hoping to foster (see Exhibit 6.1).

Ajay and Walter had no illusions about the odds against two young MBAs (with no industry experience) developing a complex technology enterprise that would likely require a significant infusion of venture capital, in addition to corporate alliances and partnerships. Ajay set out immediately to understand the payments industry and, at the same time, build a top-tier board of advisors.

### EXHIBIT 6.1 Point-of-Sale System



## A Legal Education

Although he had no money to pay for such services, Ajay was determined to secure the best new-venture legal advice in the Boston area. After hearing attorney John Hession, an attorney with Testa Hurwitz, one of leading U.S. law firms specializing in technology new ventures and venture capital, speak at an MIT venture forum, Ajay decided that he fit the bill. Ajay recalled that, predictably, the busy attorney was not an easy sell:

*I pursued him. I sent him e-mails, I called him up. I told him that I have to work with you; you have to hear my story. So John and I met one day for breakfast and we just clicked. He said okay; let's see where we can go. One reason why John and I clicked was that he wasn't about making money with startups. He knew that startups don't have money.*

*He said, this is how I work: You educate yourself on a lot of legal stuff so I don't have to spend a lot of time telling you what it means, and you will save some money there. You [Ajay] will prepare all the drafts. He sent me stock agreements, things like that. He said you are going to cut and paste to put documents together and then you are going to come back to me for a final review. He said that he would rather spend his time on people who are paying him, and it made sense. It is a great philosophy. So I saved myself thousands of dollars, and I got an education.*

When John saw that the young man had an insatiable thirst for learning and for meeting people who might be of assistance, he opened his Rolodex. In addition to referring Ajay to a number of business leaders, John provided him with free passes to the many entrepreneurship and technology events that were being sponsored by his firm. Ajay attended every one of them.

## SeaPoint Ventures

Babson Professor Jeffry Timmons put Ajay in touch with his close friend Tom Huseby, the managing partner at SeaPoint Ventures—a Seattle-based venture capital firm specializing in telecommunications. Ajay said that after a couple of phone conversations, the venture capitalist invited him over for dinner and a sail:

*I spent my Thanksgiving with Tom's family in Seattle. I flew to Seattle and had one of the most wonderful times with Tom. He was a great guy. He's a Stanford MBA. He has started four different telecom companies, was very successful, made money, and decided to start a venture fund. It was my first visit to a VC office and it kind of blew me away. It was grand, something totally unexpected.*

*Tom took me out for four hours on his million-dollar sailboat, and in that four hours he explained to me the entire process of how a startup works, how to reduce risk, and what it was going to take for him to invest in my company. So that was fascinating, and it motivated me.*

*Wow, this is how I want to be. I want to have money, I want to do a lot of philanthropy, and I want to be in a position where I can control and do more. I came back and decided that Tom was going to be my mentor for life.*

## Cracking the Chicken and Egg Cycle

By late 2000, Ajay and Walter found themselves running in circles. Potential merchant-clients were interested in their idea but would not commit to anything until Vayusa could demonstrate the application. Developing a prototype would require funds they didn't have, and funding sources explained that, before they would be willing to invest, Vayusa would have to sign up some merchants.

The pair decided to concentrate on the technology piece of the puzzle, since that was the element over which they had the most control. In January, Ajay began looking into product development grant programs and came across the National Collegiate Inventors and Innovators Alliance (NCIIA) at Hampshire College in western Massachusetts. Launched in 1995, the NCIIA was created “to support educational initiatives in creativity, technological innovation, and entrepreneurship.” Ajay sensed a fit, but he immediately encountered his first obstacle in the grant process:

*When I started looking at NCIIA I found out Babson needed to be a member of NCIIA. That would cost \$500.... While I was at Babson, I was significantly involved in a lot of different activities on campus, and that helped my credibility with my professors. Everyone knew me, and I was talking to the Associate Dean, Wendy Baker, every day. I told Wendy that Babson needed to be a member in order for me to apply for this grant. Nobody had done this before, so I said that it is likely that, if we do this now, more Babson students will end up getting grant money in the future.*

In February, Ajay and Walter had brought in a third partner: Babson MBA student Troy Chen. In March, after Ajay had successfully enrolled the college as an NCIIA member, he was faced with new hurdles:

*My partners refused to apply for the [NCIIA] grant. They said this is all crap—just a lot of paper work. I just said that I was going to work at it and get the grant. I remember that I applied for a [\$20,000] grant a day after the deadline and I called them and I said my partners are not listening to me, I want to do this, will you still accept my app? They said we'll do it as long as you FedEx it within a day.... They got it the next evening and they agreed to take it.*

While Ajay was busy investigating grant opportunities, he was also helping his partners search for an engineer who might be willing to develop their prototype software for an equity stake in Vayusa. In March, they signed up Tim Patel, a recent computer engineering graduate from Tufts University.

It was early spring of 2001 when Ajay started to run short on cash. To cover his rent, he began to cast around for some sort of employment that would not seriously undermine his final semester of MBA studies or his work with Vayusa. He discovered the answer in his own academic backyard:

*The Olin Engineering School had opened, and they were looking for a student housing director. So I applied, and guess what? I was accepted because [at the time] I was a student housing director with Babson. With Olin, it was exciting to be part of something new, exciting, and something very entrepreneurial. I just moved from one side of the campus to the other.*

With all his commitments, Ajay found himself screaming along at a breakneck pace of 18-hour days. One of his favorite posts was serving as the director of the Babson Technology Venture Group. In that capacity, he traveled to technology conferences around the country, led Babson College to the Harvard Cyberposium—the largest gathering of MBAs in the high-tech industry—and spoke with a wide range of entrepreneurial and technology experts about the mobile payment and loyalty space.

Even with solid work experience, two engineering degrees, an interesting business model, and boundless energy to promote and network, Ajay was still hard-pressed to gain any traction for Vayusa. As they neared graduation, his partners appeared to be losing interest. Just then, they received word that the NCIIA would be awarding Vayusa a grant of \$12,500, and that Babson College would kick in an additional \$8,500 from its seed fund.

## VeriFone

In June, flush with renewed spirit, resolve, and a bit of cash, the team moved into Idealab in downtown Boston. They were building the product, talking to a wide range of funding sources, attempting to bring merchants on board, and researching potential competitors (see Exhibit 6.2). As their vision for a mobile payment and loyalty solution took shape, they began to realize that the only feasible way to capture significant market share quickly would be to design technology that would work with an existing point-of-sale (POS) device (see Exhibit 6.3).

The team reasoned that, since the value of a POS systems manufacturer alliance would be directly proportional to the market strength of that partner, they needed to aim high. They learned that the number one POS payment company, with over 4 million units worldwide, was VeriFone. Ajay recalled with a grim smile that the company, which was restructuring following a spin-off from parent Hewlett-Packard, gave him less than a warm reception when he described what his team had in mind:

*VeriFone wouldn't talk to us because they were like, who are you guys in Boston, out of nowhere, wanting to use a VeriFone box for mobile payments? Stay away! They wouldn't even give us a contact name or number for anyone at VeriFone who would want to talk to us. So I said, somehow I have to crack this. I called them every day. Finally after three months, they gave in. Okay, okay, here is the guy you should talk to.*

EXHIBIT 6.2

Competitor Matrix

	Vayusa	WIRCA	Mint	Speedpass	Prepaid cards
Utilizes current infrastructure	✓	✓	✓		✓
Loyalty program integration	✓		✓	✓	
Safe and secure	✓	✓	✓		
Transaction speed	✓		✓	✓	✓
Wireless	✓	✓	✓		
CRM	✓			✓	✓

**EXHIBIT 6.3****The Concept**

## Executive Summary Highlights

### The Vision

With mobile phones becoming the most ubiquitous communication device of the times, Vayusa offers innovative mobile payment and loyalty program solutions to enterprises in the telecom, retail, and hospitality industries. The solutions extend the use of mobile phones beyond voice to data, messaging, transaction, and multimedia.

### The Problem

Carriers are starved for new sources of revenue as they reach saturation with voice services and are looking for compelling applications to drive next-generation phones, messaging, and services. Currently merchants spend significant dollar amounts on payment fees and millions of dollars to manage loyalty programs, none of which are affordable to small and mid-size businesses. Merchants are thus looking to a new, convenient, and cost-effective customer relationship offerings and services via the mobile channel.

### The Product

Vayusa's product is a mobile payment and loyalty program technology platform that is device and point-of-sale (POS) neutral. The software platform transforms the existing POS into a very powerful mobile transaction and marketing device by enabling it to accept mobile payments and trigger loyalty programs with only a change in software.

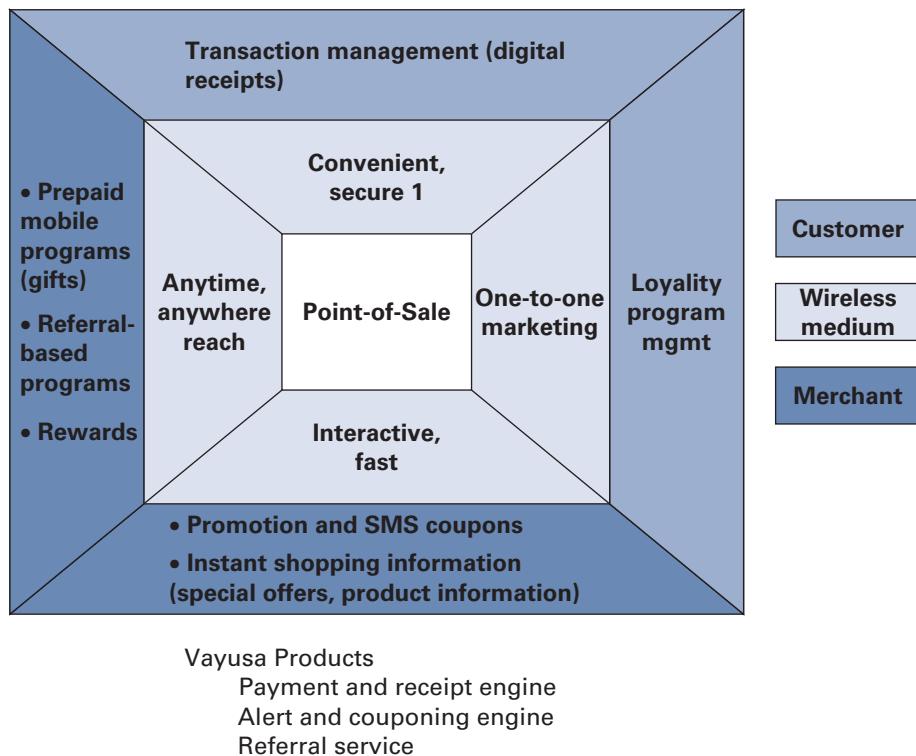
### The platform has two offerings:

- Mobile payments — Enabling merchants to accept a mobile phone as an acceptable means of payment instrument either at the point-of-sale or remotely. Vayusa offers merchants a low-cost prepaid service (stored value) in addition to access to existing debit and credit models. The payment solutions are secure and as fast as existing payment technologies. With e-mail and SMS being the key messaging drivers, Vayusa enables consumers to receive digital receipts and transactional information on their mobile phones.
- High-impact loyalty offerings and services — A wide array of tools and one-to-one marketing programs now provide instant marketing promotions, interactive rewards, and better ROI. Loyalty offerings include SMS-based coupons, promotions, notifications, and digital tags to drive customers to the stores and offer better customer service and product/service information. The offerings make it very easy and convenient for consumers to manage their payments/receipts and loyalty programs, providing access to all the information from anywhere at anytime.

### Differentiation

Vayusa's technology platform works on existing infrastructure, thereby providing immediate accessibility to markets and consumers. Vayusa is also the first to provide an end-to-end

electronic transaction processing system leveraging e-mail, SMS, and voice channels. By connecting the point of sale to the Web, Vayusa will be one of the first companies to offer new applications that leverage the Internet to provide faster and better services.



The VeriFone contact took a liking to the enthusiastic MBA and ultimately provided Ajay with a list of VeriFone vendors and contacts. He suggested that Ajay work through the list. Ajay did. One of the people he met over the phone was Nick Epperson, a former chief marketing officer at VeriFone and the chief technical architect who had designed the VeriFone box.

As the summer of 2001 drew to a close, Ajay felt that he was beginning to build a good relationship with Mr. Epperson and a number of other potential investors and advisors. Although the prototype was still in the design stage and investors appeared to be waiting for merchants to sign on, the overall momentum seemed to be in their favor.

Then came 9–11.

## The Aftermath

The terrorist attacks in September exacerbated a downturn in the capital markets that had been showing signs of weakness for some time. The drying up of the investor pool was a tough reality, but for Ajay, the horror of 9–11 had hit far closer to home:

*I lost six of my friends in the September eleventh tragedy.... The next three months after that were very depressing.... Troy was supposed to have gotten married on September fifteenth in*

**EXHIBIT 6.4****Financial Projections**

Years 1 to 5 (000,000)

**Income Statement**

	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
NET REVENUES	\$0.3	\$4.6	\$34.6	\$85.6	\$169.8
COST OF REVENUES	\$0.02	\$0.4	\$9.0	\$24.0	\$51.0
GROSS	\$0.3	\$4.2	\$25.6	\$61.6	\$118.9
% of Net Revenue	92	92	74	72	70
OPERATING EXPENSES					
Sales & Marketing	\$0.5	\$1.9	\$4.0	\$14.6	\$29.2
Research & Development	\$0.4	\$1.5	\$2.0	\$4.6	\$7.9
General & Administration	\$0.4	\$0.8	\$1.4	\$3.2	\$5.5
Total Operating Expenses	\$1.3	\$4.1	\$7.5	\$22.5	\$42.6
% of Net Revenue	457	90	22	26	25
EARNINGS BEFORE INTEREST & TAXES	\$(1.0)	\$0.1	\$18.1	\$39.2	\$76.3
DEPRECIATION	\$0.0	\$0.70	\$1.7	\$3.0	\$5.3
TAXES	\$-	\$(0.55)	\$5.2	\$11.2	\$21.7
NET EARNINGS (LOSS)	\$(1.0)	\$(0.07)	\$11.2	\$25.0	\$49.4

Years 1 to 5 (000,000)

**Statement of Cash Flows**

	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
OPERATING ACTIVITIES					
Net Earnings	(\$1.0)	(\$0.1)	\$11.2	\$25.0	\$49.4
Depreciation	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.7	\$ 1.7	\$ 3.0	\$ 5.3
Working Capital Changes					
(Increase)/Decrease Accounts Receivable	(\$0.0)	(\$0.1)	(\$1.8)	(\$2.8)	(\$4.6)
(Increase)/Decrease Other Current Assets	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Increase/(Decrease) Accounts Payable	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.5	\$0.8	\$1.5
Increase/(Decrease) Other Current Liab.	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	(\$1.0)	\$0.5	\$11.6	\$26.0	\$51.5
INVESTING ACTIVITIES					
Technology & Equipment	(\$0.20)	(\$1.9)	(\$2.9)	(\$4.0)	(\$9.0)
Other	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Net Cash Used in Investing Activities	(\$0.20)	(\$1.9)	(\$2.9)	(\$4.0)	(\$9.0)
FINANCING ACTIVITIES					
Increase/(Decrease) Short-Term Debt	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Increase/(Decrease) Long-Term Debt	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Increase/(Decrease) Common Stock	\$0.01	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Increase/(Decrease) Preferred Stock	\$2.0	\$0.0	\$5.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
Net Cash Provided/(Used) by Financing	\$2.0	\$0.0	\$5.0	\$0.0	\$0.0
INCREASE/(DECREASE) IN CASH	\$0.8	(\$1.4)	\$13.7	\$22.0	\$42.5
CASH AT BEGINNING OF YEAR	\$0.0	\$0.8	(\$0.6)	\$13.1	\$35.2
CASH AT END OF YEAR	\$0.8	(\$0.6)	\$13.1	\$35.2	\$77.7

**EXHIBIT 6.4 (Continued)**

Years 1 to 5 (000,000)

**Balance Sheet**

	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>ASSETS</b>					
<b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>					
Cash	0.8	0.6	13.1	35.2	77.7
Accounts Receivable	0.0027	0.1	1.9	4.7	9.3
Other Current	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
Total Current	0.8	(0.5)	15.0	39.9	87.0
<b>FIXED ASSETS</b>					
Technology & Equipment Cost	0.2	2.1	5.0	9.0	18.0
Less Accum. Depreciation	0.0	0.7	2.4	5.4	10.7
Net Book Value	0.2	1.4	2.6	3.6	7.3
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>0.9</b>	<b>17.6</b>	<b>43.5</b>	<b>94.3</b>
<b>LIABILITIES &amp; SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>					
<b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>					
Short-Term Debt	0	0	0	0	0
Accounts Payable	0.0002	0.0	0.5	1.3	2.8
Accrued Expenses	0	0	0	0	0
Other Current Liab.	0	0	0	0	0
Total Current Liabilities	0.0002	0.0	0.5	1.3	2.8
<b>LONG-TERM DEBT</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>
<b>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>					
Common Stock	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01	.01
Preferred Stock	2.0	2.0	7.0	7.0	7.0
Retained Earnings	(1.0)	(1.1)	10.1	35.1	84.5
Total	1.0	0.9	17.1	42.1	91.5
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES &amp; EQUITY</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>0.9</b>	<b>17.6</b>	<b>43.4</b>	<b>94.3</b>

New York.... His grandmother was now stuck on a flight from Japan in Seattle for three days.... Everyone was depressed.... The wedding was postponed.... October was Walter's wedding, and that wedding happened. With the weddings we had a precondition that you could not take a long vacation, so they came back after two weeks. So he was married now, and it just was worse. He had more responsibilities.... For me, I am still single so it makes it easier to do things, to make decisions.... It was a terribly emotional ride.

In early November, despite clear indications that the gathering would be dismal at best, Ajay decided to attend the West Wireless Conference in California. He explained that, even though he had been correct about the conference, his decision to attend yielded a golden connection:

*My timing was so lucky. It turns out Nick Epperson had just left VeriFone and was looking for his next gig. VeriFone had kept him as a consultant. . . . The conference was so bad. There was no one there. I don't even know why I showed up. But I met Nick in person. He and I clicked and he said, "I'm on board; let's do this."*

*I went back to VeriFone, and I said, "Guess what? I just got Nick as my advisor. Do you want to work with us?" VeriFone replied, "Absolutely"—because now we had credibility. It is all about having the right people.*

After the conference, Ajay flew north to spend his second Thanksgiving with the Huseby family in Seattle. Ajay presented his Vayusa plan to Tom's three general partners at SeaPoint Ventures. In summary, Ajay explained that Vayusa needed to raise \$2 million in the first year to support the beta development and implementation, and to hire senior management. Vayusa would then need another \$5 million in funding to reach a positive cash-flow position in year three (see Exhibit 6.4). The presentation went well, and all but one of the partners seemed to be on board. Unfortunately, that was one fewer than Vayusa needed to garner a SeaPoint term sheet.

## Spring Exodus

By January of 2002, Vayusa had a working prototype to support a detailed business plan, and a board of advisors that included—in addition to Tom from SeaPoint Ventures and Nick from VeriFone—a former CEO of NYNEX, a former CEO of Citibank, and Bob Anderson, director of the MIT Enterprise Forum and former CEO of GenRad. Nevertheless, the founding team had been unable to make much progress with the Boston merchants or secure commitments for a first round of venture funding.

Each month Ajay was painfully reminded of their need for a capital infusion by a persistent Indian national whom he had met through an organization of Southeast Asian entrepreneurs:

*Rahul used to call me every month to see if I was interested in working with him. He was based in Boston and had an outsourcing company in India to write software code. Every month he used to call me and say like, "Hey I like your idea, would you be interested in working with me? I want to work with you."*

Due diligence by contacts Ajay had back in India verified that Rahul would be an excellent choice to build the software platform, so Ajay continued to string him along until he could raise enough capital to take that next step. Ajay had applied for a follow-on NCIIA grant, but that money would likely be less than the first award—and far less than they would need to move ahead in a substantial way.

Troy, whose wedding had been rescheduled for April, announced in late January that he was leaving the team and moving back to New Jersey. The following month Ajay kept a meeting that Troy had scheduled long before with a gentleman recommended by a venture firm that had liked their concept but did not participate in early-stage funding. Ajay described the meeting with Jack Weston, a 20-year credit card industry veteran who had recently joined a startup that was building applications to store coupons on charge cards:

*When I showed Jack what we were doing, it struck him that we were one step ahead [of his company] because we had the chip and our solution was with every cell phone. . . . He loved the demo, and we ended up having a two-hour conversation. When he started asking me about the team, I realized that he might be looking for his next gig. I hinted to him in the meeting that we were looking for senior people or someone from the industry who knows the space. I asked if he*

would be interested. He said, "Let me think about it." We started meeting once a week after that.

Two months later Mr. Weston joined Vayusa as an advisor, but at the same time, their software designer Tim Patel decided to leave the team. Soon after, Walter brought in Phuc Truong, a Babson MBA with whom Ajay had never worked. Ajay commented that his initial skepticism was soon allayed:

*Phuc was running Club Nicole in Boston. Phuc and Walter had worked together in some of their classes. I didn't know Phuc at all then. Walter said that Phuc wants to join the team and that he had a lot of merchant contacts . . . he knew a lot of wealthy people in town as well . . . I'm like, I don't know Phuc, and he runs a club; what is he going to bring to the table?*

*It turns out that all the merchants in Boston knew Phuc because he had worked before for a startup that was a retail business and he knew every damn merchant in the city . . . It made a lot of sense because I didn't have time to go out and talk to a lot of merchants. I needed someone who knew the merchants on a very personal level [because] with a lot of shops—like small mom-and-pop shops—it is very much about personal relationships.*

While it had seemed that Walter had suggested Phuc as a substitute for Troy, when Walter called it quits less than a month later, it was clear that he had not wanted to leave his good friend Ajay standing alone at the helm.

## Go or No Go?

With all of his original partners gone and Phuc barely up to speed, Ajay was once again standing on the edge of a decision to try to keep moving forward or cut his losses and head back to Wall Street. It was maddening. Without a substantial startup investment soon, Vayusa would most certainly fail. Ajay leaned back, glanced at his cell phone for the time, and considered his next move.

## Preparation Questions

1. What traits does Ajay exhibit that have helped him to get this far?
2. Imagine you are a potential investor. Ajay has just given you his rocket pitch. What are your concerns? Would you invest?
3. If Ajay decides to move forward, what more can he do to build credibility and improve his chances of securing venture capital?

*This page intentionally left blank*



J.B. Schneider and Antonio Turco-Rivas (*Source:* Courtesy Antonio Turco-Rivas and J.B. Schneider)

## THE BUSINESS PLANNING PROCESS

The most important aspect of writing the business plan is not the plan itself, but all the learning that goes on as you identify your concept and then research the concept, the industry, the competitors, and, most importantly, your customers. The written plan has its place (as an articulation of all the learning you have achieved), but even a technically well-written plan does not necessarily ensure a successful new venture. *Inc. Magazine* finds that few if any of the fastest-growing companies in the country have a business model exactly the same as the one in their original written business plan: Of those that wrote a formal business plan, 65% admitted that the existing business was significantly different from their original concept.<sup>1</sup> But following a formal process can help ensure that you don't miss any important gaps in your planning process. As General Dwight D. Eisenhower famously stated, "In preparing for battle I have always found that plans are useless, but planning is indispensable."<sup>2</sup>

This chapter takes the view that the *process* undertaken in developing a tight, well-written story is the most important thing. Furthermore, our research indicates that students who write a business plan, even if it is for an entrepreneurship class, are far more likely to become entrepreneurs than students who haven't written a business plan.<sup>3</sup> Business planning isn't just writing; it's research, it's talking to others, it's iterative, it's a *learning* process . . . and given that, a three-ring binder that catalogs all your learning is the best place to start.

The purpose of business planning is to tell a story; the story of your business. Thorough business planning can establish that there is an opportunity worth exploiting and should

then describe the details of how this will be accomplished. During the dot-com boom of the late 1990s, many entrepreneurs and venture capitalists questioned the importance of business planning. Typical of this hyper-startup phase are stories like that of James Walker, who generated financing on a 10-day-old company based on “a bunch of bullet points on a piece of paper.” He stated, “It has to happen quick in the hyper-competitive wireless-Internet-technology world. There’s a revolution every year and a half now.”<sup>4</sup> The implication was simple. Business planning took time—time that entrepreneurs didn’t have.

April 2000 was a sobering wake-up call for investors and entrepreneurs who had invested in that dot-com boom. Previously, many entrepreneurs believed that all that was needed to find investors and go public was a few PowerPoint slides and a good idea. The NASDAQ crash in April dispelled those beliefs as people came to realize that the majority of these businesses never had the potential to produce profits. Today investors have learned from this lesson and demand well-researched market opportunities and solid business planning. Entrepreneurs have also learned the various benefits of a well-researched plan.

There is a common misperception that business planning is primarily used for raising capital. Although a good business plan assists in raising capital, the primary purpose of the process is to help entrepreneurs gain a deeper understanding of the opportunity they are envisioning. Many would-be entrepreneurs doggedly pursue ideas that will never be profitable because they lack a deep understanding of the business model. The relatively little time spent developing a sound business plan can save thousands or even millions of dollars that might be wasted in a wild goose chase. For example, for a person who makes \$100,000 per year, spending 200 hours on a business planning process equates to a \$10,000 investment in time spent (\$50/hour times 200 hours). However, launching a flawed business concept can quickly accelerate into millions in spent capital. Most entrepreneurial ventures raise enough money to survive two years, even if the business will ultimately fail. Assuming the only expense is the time value of the lead entrepreneur, a two-year investment equates to \$200,000, not to mention the lost opportunity cost and the likelihood that other employees were hired and paid and that other expenses were incurred. So do yourself a favor and spend the time and money up front.

The business planning process helps entrepreneurs shape their original vision into a better opportunity by raising critical questions, researching answers for those questions, and then answering them. For example, one question that every entrepreneur needs to answer is, “What is the customer’s pain?” Conversations with customers and other trusted advisors assist in better targeting the product offering to what customers need and want. This pre-startup work saves untold effort and money that an entrepreneur might spend trying to reshape the product after the business has been launched. While all businesses adjust their offerings based upon customer feedback, business planning helps the entrepreneur to anticipate some of these adjustments in advance of the initial launch.

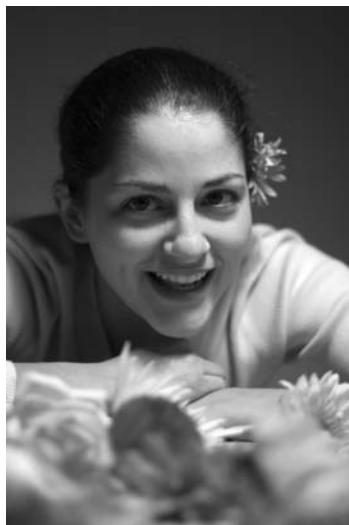
*“The key to understanding your business opportunity is to get out there and talk to people...people who sell, distribute, make and use similar products—most importantly, the customer. Writing a business plan without this groundwork leads to assumptions that may not hold water. There’s not much room for error in your key assumptions and this field research helps validate those assumptions.”*

Jim Poss, Founder and CEO  
BigBelly Solar  
[www.bigbellysolar.com](http://www.bigbellysolar.com)

*“It’s not the 40 page report with the appendices and the Excel worksheets that is important. It’s the legitimate understanding of what would be necessary to create the business. I think another thing that is valuable about a business plan that gets committed to paper is that it provides a touchstone and a point of reference for the entrepreneur to measure his progress against. If you say in your plan that you will sign up 500 customers in the first year and only sign up 50, that is far more revealing than having no plan and signing up 50. Without established targets and goals, it is very hard to gauge how you are doing. Falling short is not the problem—where you*

*fall short, and identifying why, and then correcting course—that is where business planning is important.”*

Rob Adler, CEO  
WordStream  
[www.wordstream.com](http://www.wordstream.com)



Courtesy Gina Maschek

*The business plan is relatively unimportant because the only thing you know for sure is that it WON’T be accurate with what actually happens. The planning, however, is hugely important. It helps identify the key assumptions that drive your business model, and the subsequent chain of assumptions you have built on top of the original assumptions. The more comprehensive the planning process, the better your ability to recognize and re-strategize the business going forward.*

Dan Hermann, Founder and CEO  
Lazy Bones  
[Mylazybones.com](http://Mylazybones.com)

*Business planning really helps you understand your business, especially the drivers of the business. For example, what happens if I tweak my customer retention rate? How does that change my customer acquisition cost, etc.? How does that prolong or shorten the time to break even . . . ? It gives you a basis to make important decisions.*

Gina Maschek, Co-founder  
Beyond Blossoms  
[www.beyondblossoms.com](http://www.beyondblossoms.com)

---

**Gina Maschek, co-founder of Beyond Blossoms, shows off some of her flowers.**

---

Perhaps the greatest benefit of business planning is that it allows the entrepreneur to articulate the business opportunity to various stakeholders in the most effective manner. Business planning provides the background information that enables the entrepreneur to communicate the upside potential to investors. Second, it provides the validation needed to convince potential employees to leave their current jobs for the uncertain future of a new venture. Finally, it can also help secure a strategic partner, key customer, or supplier. In short, business planning provides the entrepreneur with the deep understanding she needs to answer the critical questions that various stakeholders will ask. Completing a well-founded business plan gives the entrepreneur credibility in the *eyes* of various stakeholders.

Think of the business plan as a compilation of learning (both literally and figuratively). Start with a three-ring binder divided into categories, and then start collecting information in each section. Write a synopsis for each of these sections that includes your interpretation of what the information means and how that implies that you should shape and reshape your concept. You can also compile all this information on your computer, but whatever method you choose to catalog it, the point is the same—you need a mechanism to start organizing your learning.

## The Planning Process

---

Business planning literally begins when you start thinking about your new venture. In Chapter 3, we highlighted the opportunity recognition process. That is the genesis of planning. It progresses from there when you start sharing your thoughts with potential

co-founders over a cup of coffee or lunch. It moves on from that point when you share the idea with your significant other, friends, family, colleagues, and professors, among others. At each interaction, you are learning about aspects of your business opportunity. Do your friends think they would buy this product or service (potential customers)? Have they said things along the lines of “This is just like XYZ Company . . .” (potential competitor)? Have they informed you of potential suppliers or other people you might want to hire or at least talk to or learn from? All these bits and pieces of information are valuable learning that you should document and catalog in your three-ring binder.

Once you acquire a critical mass of learning, it’s time to start organizing your information in a meaningful way. First, write a short summary (less than five pages) of your current vision. This provides a road map for you and others to follow as you embark on a more thorough planning process. Share this document with co-founders, family members, and trusted advisors. Ask for feedback on what else you should be thinking about. What gaps do the people who read this summary see? What questions do they ask and how can you gain the learning necessary to answer those questions in a convincing and accurate manner? This feedback will provide a platform for you to attack each of the major areas important to launching and running a new venture.

Your planning process will focus on critical aspects of your business model; not coincidentally, these critical aspects map well to the typical format of a business plan (see Figure 7.1). Now that you have some feedback from your trusted advisors, you can begin attacking major sections of the plan. It really doesn’t matter where you start, although it is often easiest to write the product/service description first. This is usually the most concrete component of the entrepreneur’s vision. Wherever you begin, don’t let the order of sections outlined in Figure 7.1 constrain you. If you want to start somewhere else besides product description, do so. As you work through the plan, you’ll inevitably find that this is an iterative process. Every section of the plan interacts with the other sections, and as a result, you’ll often be working on multiple sections simultaneously. Most important, keep in mind that this is *your* business planning process; this is your learning. You should follow whatever method feels most comfortable and effective.

Wisdom is realizing that the business plan is a “living document.” Although your first draft will be polished, most business plans are obsolete the day they come off the presses. That means that entrepreneurs are continuously updating and revising their business plan—they recognize it is a learning process, not a finished product. You’ll continue learning new things that can improve your business for as long as you’re involved with the business, and the day you stop learning how to improve it is the day that it will start its decline toward bankruptcy.

- I. Cover
- II. Executive Summary
- III. Table of Contents
- IV. Industry, Customer, and Competitor Analysis
- V. Company and Product Description
- VI. Marketing Plan
- VII. Operations Plan
- VIII. Development Plan
- IX. Team
- X. Critical Risks
- XI. Offering
- XII. Financial Plan
- XIII. Appendices

**Figure 7.1**

**Business plan outline**

So keep and file each major revision of your plan, and occasionally look back at earlier versions for the lessons you've learned. Remember, the importance of the business plan for you isn't the final product but the learning that you gain from writing the novel of your vision. The plan articulates your vision for the company, and it crystallizes that vision for you and your team. It also provides a history—a photo album, if you will—of the birth, growth, and maturity of your business. Although daunting, business planning can be exciting and creative, especially if you are working on it with your founding team. So now let us dig in and examine how to effectively conduct the business planning process.

## The Story Model

---

One of the major goals of business planning is to attract various stakeholders and convince them of the potential of your business. Therefore, you need to keep in mind how these stakeholders will interpret your plan. The guiding principle is that you are writing a story, and all good stories have a theme—a unifying thread that ties the setting, characters, and plot together. If you think about the most successful businesses in America, they all have well-publicized themes. When you hear their taglines, you instantly gain insight into the businesses. For example, when you hear “absolutely, positively has to be there overnight,” most people think of Federal Express (FedEx) and package delivery. On top of that, they think of reliability, which is the quality FedEx wants to embody in the minds of its customers. Similarly, “Just do it” is intricately linked to Nike and the image of athletic excellence (see Figure 7.2).

A tagline is a sentence, or even a fragment of a sentence, that summarizes the essence of your business. It's the theme that every sentence, paragraph, page, and diagram in your business plan should adhere to—the unifying idea of your story. One useful tip is to put your tagline in a footer that runs on the bottom of every page. As you are writing, if the section doesn't build on, explain, or otherwise directly relate to the tagline, it most likely isn't a necessary component to the business plan. Rigorous adherence to the tagline facilitates writing a concise and coherent business plan. You might also want to put your tagline on your business card, company letterhead, and other collateral material you develop for the business. It's a reminder to you and your team about what you are trying to accomplish as well as an effective marketing tactic that helps build your brand.

Now let's take another look at the major sections of the plan (refer back to Figure 7.1). Remember that, although there are variations, most planning processes will include these components. It is important to keep your plan as close to this format as possible because many stakeholders are accustomed to this format and it facilitates spot reading. If you are seeking venture capital, for instance, you want to make quick reading possible because venture capitalists often spend as little as five minutes on a plan before rejecting it or putting it aside

Nike.....	<i>Just do it!</i>
FedEx.....	<i>Absolutely, positively has to be there overnight</i>
McDonald's.....	<i>I'm lovin' it.</i>
Cisco Systems.....	<i>Discover all that's possible on the internet</i>
Microsoft.....	<i>Where do you want to go today</i>
Walmart.....	<i>Always low prices. Always!</i>

**Figure 7.2**

### Taglines

for further attention. If a venture capitalist becomes frustrated with an unfamiliar format, it is more likely that she will reject it rather than trying to pull out the pertinent information. Even if you aren't seeking venture capital, the common structure is easy for other investors and stakeholders to follow and understand. Furthermore, the highlighted business plan sections in Figure 7.1 provide a road map for questions that you need to consider as you prepare to launch your business.

## The Business Plan

---

Although it's the business planning *process* that's important, it is easier to discuss that process by laying out what the final output, the business plan, might look like. We will progress through the sections in the order that they typically appear, but keep in mind that you can work on the sections in any order that you wish. Business planning is an iterative process. Also, you may find it useful to refer to the P'kolino business plan at the end of this chapter as you read each of the following sections. You'll notice areas where the P'kolino plan follows our suggestions and areas where it doesn't. The most important point is that you evaluate the P'kolino plan's strengths and weaknesses on the basis of how well it articulates the P'kolino story.

### The Cover

The cover of the plan should include the following information: company name, tagline, contact person, address, phone, fax, e-mail, date, disclaimer, and copy number. Most of the information is self-explanatory, but a few things should be pointed out. First, the contact person for a new venture should be the president or some other founding team member. Imagine the frustration of an excited potential investor who can't find out how to contact the entrepreneur to gain more information. More often than not, that plan will end up in the reject pile.

Second, business plans should have a disclaimer along these lines:

*This business plan has been submitted on a confidential basis solely to selected, highly qualified investors. The recipient should not reproduce this plan or distribute it to others without permission. Please return this copy if you do not wish to invest in the company.*

Controlling distribution is particularly important when seeking investment, especially if you do not want to violate Regulation D of the Securities and Exchange Commission, which specifies that you may solicit only qualified investors (high-net-worth and high-income individuals). Although you cannot physically control what someone else might do with your plan, the statement at least reminds them to respect your wishes and that is usually good enough.

The cover should also have a line stating which number copy it is. For example, you will often see on the bottom right portion of the cover a line that says "Copy 1 of 5 copies." Entrepreneurs should keep a log of who has copies so that they can control for unexpected distribution. Finally, the cover should be eye-catching. If you have a product or prototype, a picture of it can draw the reader in. Likewise, a catchy tagline draws attention and encourages the reader to look further.

### Executive Summary

This section is the most important part of the business plan. If you don't capture readers' attention in the executive summary, it is unlikely that they will read any other parts of the

plan. This is just like a book's jacket notes. Most likely, the reader will buy the book only if she is impressed with the notes inside the cover. In the same way, you want to hit your readers with the most compelling aspects of your business opportunity right up front. *Hook the reader.* That means having the first sentence or paragraph highlight the potential of the opportunity. For example:

*The current market for widgets is \$50 million, growing at an annual rate of 20%. Moreover, the emergence of mobile applications is likely to accelerate this market's growth. Company XYZ is positioned to capture this wave with its proprietary technology: the secret formula VOOM.*

This creates the right tone. The first sentence emphasizes that the potential opportunity is huge; the last sentence explains that Company XYZ has a competitive advantage that enables it to become a big player in this market. Too many plans start with "Company XYZ, incorporated in the state of Delaware, will develop and sell widgets." Ho-hum. This kind of opening is dull and uninspiring—at this point, who cares that the business is incorporated in Delaware (aren't they all?). Capture the reader's attention immediately or risk losing her altogether.

Once you have hooked the reader, you need to provide compelling information about each of the following subsections:

- Description of Opportunity
- Business Concept
- Industry Overview
- Target Market
- Competitive Advantage
- Business Model and Economics
- Team and Offering
- Financial Snapshot

Remember that you'll cover all these components in detail in the body of the plan. As such, we will explore them in greater detail as we progress through the sections. Given that, your goal in the executive summary is to touch on the most important or exciting points of each section. Keep it brief and make it compelling.

Since the executive summary is the most important part of the finished plan, write it *after* you have gained a deep understanding of the business by working through all the other sections. Don't confuse the executive summary included in the plan with the short summary that we suggested you write as the very first step of the business plan process. As a result of your research, the two are likely to be significantly different. Don't recycle your initial summary. Rewrite it entirely based on the hard work you have done by going through the business planning process.

## Table of Contents

Continuing the theme of making the document easy to read, a detailed table of contents is critical. It should include major sections, subsections, exhibits, and appendices. The table of contents provides the reader a road map to your plan (see Figure 7.3). Note that the table of contents is customized to the specific business, so it doesn't perfectly match the business plan outline presented earlier in Figure 7.1. Nonetheless, a look at Figure 7.3 shows that the company's business plan includes most of the elements highlighted in the business plan outline and that the order of information is basically the same as well.

<b>I.</b>	<b>Executive Summary</b>	
<b>II.</b>	<b>Industry, Customer, and Competitor Analysis</b>	
2.1	Industry Overview	5
2.2	Competitor Analysis	8
<b>III.</b>	<b>Company and Product Description</b>	
3.1	Company Description	13
3.2	Opportunity	13
3.3	Strategy	13
3.4	The History Shoppe Experience	14
3.5	Product Description	19
<b>IV.</b>	<b>Marketing Plan</b>	
4.1	Overview	22
4.2	Customer Analysis	22
4.3	Marketing Communications	25
4.4	Product Mix	27
4.5	Pricing	28
<b>V.</b>	<b>Operations</b>	
5.1	Overview	29
5.2	Location	29
5.3	Facilities and Equipment	31
5.4	Insurance	31
5.5	Employees	32
5.6	Suppliers	32
<b>VI.</b>	<b>Development Plan</b>	
6.1	Development Timeline	35
6.2	Growth Plan	36
<b>VII.</b>	<b>Team</b>	
7.1	Management Team	37
7.2	Advisors	39
<b>VIII.</b>	<b>Critical Risks</b>	40
<b>IX.</b>	<b>Financial Plan</b>	
9.1	Basis of Presentation	42
9.2	Assumptions	42
9.3	Annual Financial Statements	46
9.4	Monthly Financial Statements	49
<b>X.</b>	<b>Appendix</b>	

### Figure 7.3

#### Table of Contents

## Industry, Customer, and Competitor Analysis

**Industry.** The goal of this section is to illustrate the opportunity and how you intend to capture it. However, before you can develop your plot and illustrate a theme, you need to provide a setting or context for your story. Refer back to Chapters 2 and 3, where we described characteristics that create an attractive opportunity. In your plan, you'll need to delineate both the current market size and how much you expect it to grow in the future. In addition, you need to indicate what kind of market you're facing. History tells us that often the best

opportunities are found in emerging markets—those that appear poised for rapid growth and that have the potential to change the way we live and work. For example, in the 1980s the personal computer, disk drive, and computer hardware markets revolutionized our way of life. Many new companies were born and rode the wave of the emerging technology, including Apple, Microsoft, and Intel. In the 1990s, it was anything dealing with the Internet. eBay, Google, and Facebook have leveraged the Internet and changed the way we live. Today we are seeing important trends in energy and environment that have created a clean technology boom. According to *Clean Energy Trends 2008*, revenue from clean technologies grew 40% from \$55 billion in 2006 to \$77 billion in 2007 and is projected to grow to \$225 billion by 2017.<sup>5</sup> Another market structure that tends to hold promise is a fragmented market where small, dispersed competitors compete on a regional basis. Many of the big names in retail revolutionized fragmented markets. For instance, category killers such as Walmart, Staples, and Home Depot consolidated fragmented markets by providing quality products at lower prices. These firms replaced the dispersed regional and local discount, office supply, and hardware stores.

Another key attribute to explore is industry economics. For example, do companies within the industry enjoy strong gross and net income margins? Higher margins allow for higher returns, which again leads to greater growth potential. This typically happens when the market is emerging and demand exceeds supply. So, again, you'll want to explore where the margins are today—and also where you expect them to go in the future.

You'll note that we keep referring to the future. A good market analysis will look at trends that are shaping the future. For instance, as the world continues to adopt wireless communication, more and more people are connected 24/7. What might this mean for your business? Another trend that has had tremendous ramifications on U.S. society is the life cycle of the baby boom generation. Over the last 50 years, business has responded to this generation's needs and wants. In the 1950s and 1960s, that meant building schools. In the 1970s and 1980s, it meant building houses and introducing family cars like the minivan. In the 1990s, it led to Internet concepts, as this group was more affluent and computer savvy than any generation before it. Today the baby boomers are approaching retirement. What opportunities does this trend portend? Identify the trends, both positive and negative, that will interact with your business.

You need to describe your overall market in terms of revenues, growth, and future trends that are pertinent. In this section, avoid discussing your concept, the proposed product or service you will offer. Instead, use dispassionate, arm's-length analysis of the market with the goal of highlighting a space or gap that is underserved. Thus, focus on how the market is segmented now and how it will be segmented into the future. After identifying the relevant market segments, identify the segment your product will target. Again, what are the important trends that will shape this segment in the future?

**Customer.** Once you've defined the market space you plan to enter, you'll examine the target customer in detail. As we discussed in Chapters 4 and 5, an accurate customer profile is essential to developing a product that customers truly want and marketing campaigns that they will actually respond to. Define who the customer is by using demographic and psychographic information. The better the entrepreneur can define her specific customers, the more apt she is to deliver a product that these customers truly want. Although you may argue that everyone who is hungry is a restaurant's customer, such a vague definition makes it hard to market to the core customer. For instance, since I'm a middle-aged man, my eating habits will be different from what they were when I was 20-something. I will frequent different types of establishments and expect certain kinds of foods within a certain price range. I'm beyond fast food, for example. Thus, you'd have very different strategies to serve and reach me than you would to reach younger people. Unless you develop this deep an understanding of your customer, your business is unlikely to succeed.

To help, companies often develop profiles of the different kinds of customers they target. For example, Best Buy has profiled a variety of customers, which serves as an aid to help employees better understand their customers' needs. "Buzz" is a young urban male who might be interested in video games, whereas "Barry" is an upscale suburban client who wants premium products that are packaged as a total solution.<sup>6</sup>

A venture capitalist recently said that the most impressive entrepreneur is the one who comes into his office and not only identifies who the customer is in terms of demographics and psychographics but also identifies that customer by address, phone number, and e-mail. You can even go one step further by including letters of interest or intent from key customers who express a willingness to buy, once your product or service is ready. When you understand who your customers are, you can assess what compels them to buy, how your company can sell to them (direct sales, retail, Internet, direct mail), and how much it is going to cost to acquire and retain them as customers.

An exhibit describing customers in terms of the basic parameters and inserted into the text of your plan can be very powerful, as it communicates a lot of data quickly.

Too often entrepreneurs figure that, if they love their product concept, so should everybody else. Although your needs and wants are the best place to start, you must recognize that they may not be the same as everyone else's. So to truly understand your customers, you need to talk to them. Early in your conceptualization of your product or service, go out and interview potential customers (the appendix at the end of Chapter 5 provides some questions that might be useful). Keep your questions open ended and try not to direct the customer's answers. It is critical to *listen* at this stage rather than talking about your concept. After each customer interaction, go back and reevaluate your concept. Can you cost-effectively incorporate features that will make this product better fit the customer's need? After several individual conversations, run a focus group and then maybe a broader customer survey. At each step along the way, refine your concept and start to define the demographic and psychographic characteristics of your primary target audience. This process helps you create a better product that is more likely to gain customer acceptance than if you boldly (and blindly) charge ahead with your initial concept. As you get closer to launching, you'll likely have a beta customer use your product or service to further refine the concept. The key once again is that business planning is the *process*, not the output (written plan).

**Competition.** The competition analysis proceeds directly from of the customer analysis, and you should complete it using a competitive profile matrix. You have already identified your market segment, profiled your customer, and described what he wants. Armed with this information, you can begin to research how your direct and indirect competitors are meeting those needs. The basis of comparison will be the different product features and attributes that each competitor uses to differentiate itself from the pack. A competitive profile matrix not only creates a powerful visual catch-point but also conveys information about your competitive advantage and is the basis for your company's strategy (see Figure 7.4).

The competitive profile matrix should be at the beginning of the section, followed by text describing the analysis and its implications. Figure 7.4 shows a sample competitive profile matrix for a new retail concept—a specialty store targeting the history enthusiast. The entrepreneur rates each competitor (or competitor type) on various key success factors using a five-point scale (with 1 being strong on the attribute and 5 being weak). Often entrepreneurs include product attributes such as the product color, dimensions, specifications, and so forth, but you should omit this unless you believe it is the main criterion customers will use to decide to buy your product over those of competitors. Instead, focus on the key success factors that often lead a customer to buy one product over another, such as price, quality, speed, and so on. It is also a good idea to list your own concept in the matrix. Up until this point, your plan has been painting a picture of the industry and market. By including your concept in the matrix, you begin to shift the focus toward your company and the opportunity you

	My Concept	Big-Box Stores	Amazon	History Channel Website	Museum Stores	Specialty Websites
History book selection	2	3	1	3	4	3
Display of artifacts	1	5	5	5	3	5
History-related gift items	1	5	4	2	1	2
Videos/DVDs	1	4	3	3	5	2
Price	3	2	1	2	3	3
Atmosphere	1	2	5	5	4	5
Employee knowledge	1	4	5	5	2	5
Ease of shopping for specific items	2	2	1	1	3	4
Location	4	1	1	1	5	3
Ease of browsing	1	2	3	3	2	4

**Figure 7.4****Competitive profile matrix**

believe it can capture. In Figure 7.4, we can see that the entrepreneur expects to do well on most attributes, except for price and location. In describing the matrix, the entrepreneur would explain why the business is weak on those attributes and why it is better on the rest. Understanding the strengths and weaknesses of the business concept helps the entrepreneur to define the company's strategy.

Finding information about your competition can be easy if the company is public, harder if it is private, and very difficult if it is operating in “stealth” mode (it hasn’t yet announced itself to the world). Most libraries have access to databases that contain a wealth of information about publicly traded companies (see Figure 7.5 for some sample sources), but privately held companies or “stealth ventures” represent a greater challenge.

The best way for savvy entrepreneurs to gather competitive information is through their network and trade shows. Who should be in the entrepreneur’s network? First and foremost are the customers the entrepreneur hopes to sell to in the near future. Just as you are (or should be) talking to your potential customers, your existing competition is interacting with this group every day, and as a result, your customers are the best source of information about the “stealth” competition on the horizon. Although many entrepreneurs are fearful (verging

- Infotrac** — Index/abstracts of journals, general business and finance magazines, market overviews, and profiles of public and private firms.
- Factiva** — Searchable index of articles from over 9,000 U.S. and international newspapers, trade journals, and more.
- LexisNexis** — Searchable index of articles.
- Dun’s Principal International Businesses** — International business directory.
- Dun’s One Million Dollar Premium** — Database of public and private firms with revenues greater than \$1M or more than eight employees.
- Hoover’s Online** — Profiles of private and public firms with links to Websites, etc.
- CorpTech** — Profiles of high-technology firms.
- RDS Business Reference Suite** — Linked databases providing data and full-text searching on firms.
- Bloomberg** — Detailed financial data and analyst reports.
- Dow Jones Interactive** — Searchable index of articles from over 3,000 newspapers.
- Bridge Information Services** — Detailed financial information on 1.4 million international securities that can be manipulated in tables and graphs.

**Figure 7.5****Sample sources for information on public/private companies**

on the brink of paranoia) that valuable information will fall into the wrong hands and lead to new competition that invalidates the current venture, the reality is that entrepreneurs who openly talk about their ideas with as many people as possible are far more likely to succeed. Take the risk. Talking allows entrepreneurs to get the kind of valuable feedback that can make the difference between success and failure in a venture.

## Company and Product Description

The dispassionate analysis described in the previous section lays the foundation for describing your company and concept. In this section, you'll introduce the basic details of your company before moving on to a more detailed analysis of your marketing and operations plans.

You can begin by identifying the company name and where the business is incorporated. After that, you should provide a brief overview of the concept for the company and then highlight what the company has achieved to date. If you have reached any major milestones, be sure to list them, but don't worry if the business plan is your first step. Subsequent drafts will provide you with opportunities to showcase what you have achieved.

Once you have provided an introduction, take some time to communicate the product and its differentiating features. You can do this in writing, but keep in mind that graphic representations are visually powerful. You'll note in the P'kolino case at the end of this chapter that the photos create a powerful message, communicating much about how this concept is different from the existing alternatives. Highlight how your product fits into the customer value proposition. What is incorporated into your product, and what value-add do you deliver to the customer? Which of the customer's unmet wants and needs are fulfilled by your offering? In essence, you need to tell us why your product is better, cheaper, or faster and how that creates value for the customer. Your advantage may be a function of proprietary technology, patents, distribution, and/or design. In fact, the most powerful competitive advantages are derived from a bundle of factors because this makes them more difficult to copy.

Entrepreneurs also need to identify their market entry and growth strategies. Since most new ventures are resource constrained, especially for available capital, it is crucial that the lead entrepreneur establish the most effective way to enter the market. We discussed in Chapters 3 and 5 how to identify your primary target audience (PTA) based on an analysis of the market and customer sections. Focusing on a particular niche or subset of the overall market allows new ventures to effectively utilize scarce resources to reach those customers and prove the viability of their concept.

The business plan should also sell the entrepreneur's vision for the company's long-term growth potential. If the venture achieves success in its entry strategy, either it will generate internal cash flow that can be used to fuel continued growth, or it will be attractive enough to get further equity financing at improved valuations. The growth strategy should talk about the secondary and tertiary target audiences that the firm will pursue once it meets success with the PTA. For instance, technology companies might go from selling to users who want the best performance (early adopters) to users who want ease of use (mainstream market). Whatever the case, you should devote at least a paragraph or two to the firm's long-term growth strategy.

## Marketing Plan

Up to this point, you've described your company's potential to successfully enter and grow in a marketplace. Now you need to devise the strategy that will allow it to reach its potential. The primary components of this section are descriptions of the target market strategy, product/service strategy, pricing strategy, distribution strategy, marketing communications strategy, sales strategy, and sales and marketing forecasts. Let's take a look at each of these subsections in turn.

**Target Market Strategy.** Every marketing plan needs some guiding principles. In targeting and positioning your product, you should lean heavily on the knowledge you gleaned from the customer analysis. For instance, product strategies often fall along a continuum whose endpoints are rational purchase and emotional purchase. For example, when a person buys a new car, the rational purchase might be a low-cost reliable option such as the Ford Focus. In contrast, some people see a car as an extension of their personality—and therefore might buy a BMW or an Audi because of the emotional benefits it delivers. Within every product space, there is room for products measured at different points along this continuum. You can also use this idea of a continuum to find other dimensions that help you classify your marketplace. These tools help entrepreneurs decide where their product fits or where they would like to position it, and once you have solidified your target market strategy, you can begin working on the other aspects of the marketing plan.

**Product/Service Strategy.** Building from the target market strategy, this section of the plan describes how you will differentiate your product from the competition. Discuss why the customer will switch to your product and how you will retain customers so that they don't switch to your competition in the future. You can create a powerful visual by using the attributes defined in your customer profile matrix to produce a product attribute map. This tool is a great way to illustrate how your firm compares to the competition. In creating it you should focus on the two most important attributes, putting one on the x-axis and the other on the y-axis. The map should show that you are clearly distinguishable from your competition on desirable attributes.

Figure 7.6 shows the competitive map for the retail concept that focuses on the history enthusiast. The two attributes on which it evaluates competitors are atmosphere (Is this a place where people will linger?) and focus (Does it have a broad topic focus, or is it specialized?). As you can see from Figure 7.6, our retail concept plans to have a high level of history specialization and atmosphere, which places it in the upper-right quadrant. From the product attribute map, it is easy to see how our retail concept will distinguish itself from the competition. The map implies that history specialization and atmosphere will attract history buffs and entice them to return time and again.

This section should also address what services you will provide the customer. What type of technical support will you provide? Will you offer warranties? What kind of product upgrades will be available and when? It is important to detail all these efforts because they will affect the pricing of the product. Many times entrepreneurs underestimate the costs of these services, which leads to a drain on cash and ultimately to bankruptcy.

**Pricing Strategy.** Pricing your product is challenging. Canvassing prevailing prices in the marketplace helps you determine what the perceived value for your product might be. If your product is of better quality and has lots of features, price it above market rates. We saw in Chapter 5 that a price-skimming strategy is best in the beginning, to gain a sense of what customers are willing to pay—that means pricing a bit higher than you believe the perceived value to be. It is always easier to reduce prices later than to raise them. Most importantly, if during the course of researching possible prices you find that you can't price your product well above what it will cost you to produce it, the business planning process will have saved you untold time and pain. You have two choices: redesign your concept or abandon it.

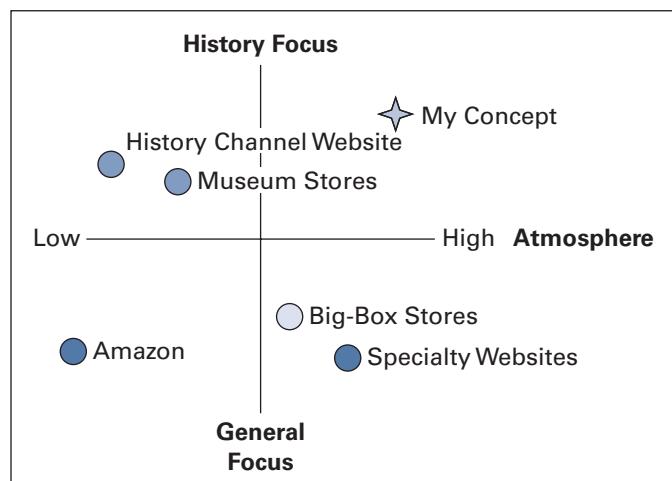


Figure 7.6

Product attribute map

Remember to avoid “cost plus” pricing (also discussed in Chapter 5). First, it is difficult to accurately determine your actual cost, especially if this is a new venture with a limited history. New ventures consistently underestimate the true cost of developing their products. For example, how much did it really cost to write that software? The cost includes salaries and payroll taxes, computers and other assets, the overhead contribution, and more. Since most entrepreneurs underestimate these costs, they underprice their products. Second, we often hear entrepreneurs claim that they are offering a low price in order to penetrate and gain market share rapidly. One major problem with launching at a low price is that it may be difficult to raise the price later; it can send a signal of lower quality. In addition, demand at that price may overwhelm your ability to produce the product in sufficient volume, and it may unnecessarily strain cash flow.

**Distribution Strategy.** This section of your written plan identifies how your product will reach the customer. Since much of the cost of delivering a product is tied up in its distribution, your distribution strategy can define your company’s fortune as much as or more than the product itself. Distribution strategy is thus more than an operational detail. For example, the e-commerce boom of the late 1990s assumed that the growth in Internet usage and purchases would create new demand for pure Internet companies. Yet the distribution strategy for many of these firms did not make sense. Pets.com and other online pet supply firms had a strategy calling for the pet owner to log on, order the product from the site, and then receive delivery via UPS or the U.S. Postal Service. The strategy was fantastic in theory, but in reality, the price the market would bear for this product didn’t cover the exorbitant costs of shipping a 40-pound bag of dog food.

It’s wise to examine how the customer currently acquires the product. If you’re developing a new brand of dog food and your primary target customer buys dog food at Walmart, then you will probably need to include traditional retail outlets in your distribution plans. This is not to say that entrepreneurs are limited to a single-channel distribution strategy, just that to achieve maximum growth will probably require the use of common distribution techniques. While it may be appealing to take retail outlets out of this chain, re-educating customers about a new buying process can be prohibitively expensive and challenging.

Once you determine the best distribution channel, the next question is whether you can access it. The Walmart example is a good one. A new startup in dog food may have difficulty getting shelf space at Walmart. A better entry strategy might focus on boutique pet stores to build brand recognition. Once your product is well known and in high demand, retail stores like Walmart will be much more likely to carry your brand. The key here is to identify appropriate channels and then assess how costly it is to access them.

**Marketing Communications Strategy.** Communicating effectively to your customer requires advertising and promotion, among other methods. Since these tools are expensive, resource-constrained entrepreneurs need to carefully select the appropriate strategies. What avenues most effectively reach your PTA? Your options include mass advertising, direct mail, and public relations. While mass advertising is often the most expensive approach, it is also one of the most effective tools for building a brand. In contrast, if you can identify your PTA by name, then direct mail may be more effective than mass media blitzes. Similarly, grassroots techniques such as public relations efforts geared toward mainstream media can be more cost effective. Sheri Poe, founder of Ryka shoes, appeared on *The Oprah Winfrey Show* touting shoes designed by women and made for women. The response was so overwhelming that she couldn’t supply enough shoes to meet the demand. This is a classic example of a public relations success. In contrast, the dot-com boom of the late 1990s offers striking examples of advertising failures, such as Computer.com’s exorbitant media buy during the 2000 Super Bowl. The firm spent \$3 million of the \$5.8 million it had raised on three ads.<sup>7</sup> Needless to

Promotional Tools	Budget over 1 Year
Print advertising	\$ 5,000
Direct mail	3,000
In-store promotions	2,000
Tour group outreach	1,000
Public relations	1,000
Total	\$ 12,000

**Figure 7.7a****Advertising schedule**

Publication	Circulation	Ad Price for Quarter Page	Total Budget for Year 1
<i>Lexington Minuteman</i> newspaper	7,886	\$ 500	\$4,000
<i>Boston magazine</i>	1,400,000	\$1,000	\$1,000

**Figure 7.7b****Magazine advertisements**

say, the gamble failed, and now it represents a textbook example of the importance of using advertising carefully.

As you develop a multipronged advertising and promotion strategy, create detailed schedules that show which avenues you will pursue and the associated costs (see Figures 7.7a and 7.7b). These types of schedules serve many purposes, including providing accurate costs estimates, which will help in assessing how much capital you need to raise. They also build credibility in the eyes of potential investors by demonstrating that you understand the nuances of your market.

**Sales Strategy.** The section on sales strategy provides the backbone that supports all of the subsections described so far. Specifically, it illustrates what kind and level of human capital you will devote to the effort. You should complete a careful analysis of how many salespeople and customer support reps you will need. Will these people be internal to the organization or outsourced? If they are internal, will there be a designated sales force, or will different members of the company serve in a sales capacity at different times? Again, a thoughtful presentation of the company's sales force builds credibility by demonstrating an understanding of how the business should operate.

**Sales and Marketing Forecasts.** Gauging the impact of sales efforts is difficult. Nonetheless, to build a compelling story, entrepreneurs need to show projections of revenues well into the future. How do you derive these numbers? There are two methods: the comparable method and the build-up method. After detailed investigation of the industry and the market, entrepreneurs know the competitive players and have a good understanding of their history. The **comparable method** models the sales forecast after what other companies have achieved and then adjusts these numbers for differences in things like the age of the company and the variances in product attributes. In essence, the entrepreneur monitors a number of comparable competitors and then explains why her business varies from those models.

In the **build-up method**, the entrepreneur identifies all the possible revenue sources of the business and then estimates how much of each type of revenue the company can generate during a given period of time. For example, a bookstore generates revenues from books and artifacts. Thus, a bookstore owner would estimate the average sales price for each product

category. Then he might estimate the number of people to come through the store on a daily basis and the percentage that would purchase each revenue source. From these numbers, he could create a sales forecast for a typical day, which could then be aggregated into larger blocks of time (months, quarters, or years). These rough estimates might then be further adjusted based on seasonality in the bookstore industry. In the end, the bookstore owner would have a workable model for sales forecasts.

The build-up technique is an imprecise method for the new startup with limited operating history, but it is critically important to assess the viability of the opportunity. It's so important, in fact, that you might want to use both the comparable and the build-up techniques to assess how well they converge. If the two methods are widely divergent, go back through and try to determine why. The knowledge you gain of your business model will help you better articulate the opportunity to stakeholders, and it will provide you with invaluable insights as you begin managing the business after its launch. Chapter 8 provides more detail on how to derive these estimates.

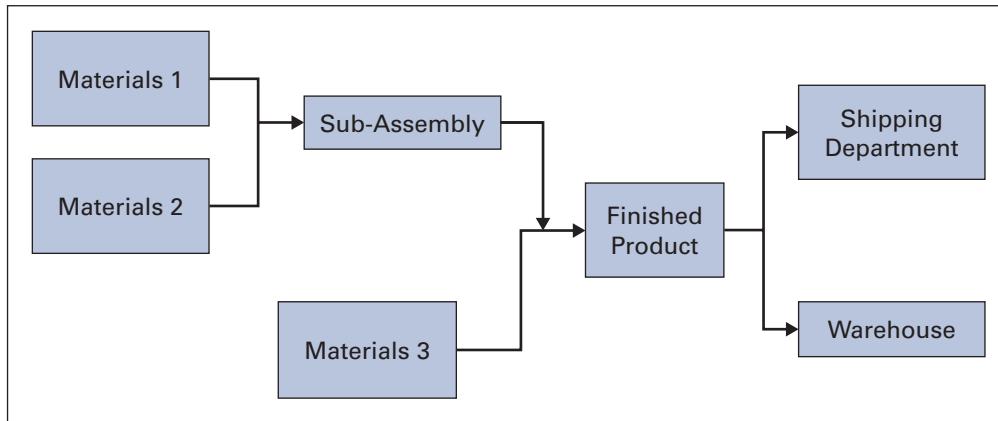
While we know for certain that these forecasts will never be 100% accurate, it is essential to minimize the degree of error. Detailed investigation of comparable companies can help you accomplish this goal, as can triangulating your comparable method results with your build-up method results. However you go about building your forecast, always keep in mind that the smaller the error, the less likely your company will run out of cash. Beyond building credibility with your investors, rigorous estimates are also the single best tool for keeping your company out of financial trouble.

## Operations Plan

The key in the operations plan section is to address how operations will add value for your customers. Here, you'll detail the production cycle and gauge its impact on working capital. For instance, when does your company pay for inputs? How long does it take to produce the product? When does the customer buy the product and, more importantly, when does the customer pay for the product? From the time you pay for your raw materials until you receive payment from your customers, you will be operating in a negative cash flow. The shorter that cycle, the more cash you have on hand and the less likely you are to need bank financing. It sounds counterintuitive, but many rapidly growing new companies run out of cash even though they have increasing sales and substantial operating profit. The reason is that they fail to properly finance the time their cash is tied up in the procurement, production, sales, and receivables cycle.

**Operations Strategy.** The first subsection of your operations strategy section provides a strategy overview. How does your business compare on the dimensions of cost, quality, timeliness, and flexibility? Emphasize those aspects that provide your venture with a comparative advantage. It is also appropriate to discuss the geographic location of production facilities and how this enhances your firm's competitive advantage. Your notes should cover such issues as available labor, local regulations, transportation, infrastructure, and proximity to suppliers. In addition, the section should provide a description of the facilities, discuss whether you will buy or lease them, and explain how you will handle future growth (by renting an adjoining building, perhaps). As in all sections detailing strategy, support your plans with actual data.

**Scope of Operations.** What is the production process for your product or service? Creating a diagram makes it easier for you to see which production aspects to keep in-house and which to outsource (see Figure 7.8a). Considering that cash flow is king and that resource-constrained new ventures typically should minimize fixed expenses on production facilities, the general rule is to outsource as much production as possible. However, there is a major caveat to that rule: Your venture should control aspects of production that are



**Figure 7.8a**

### Operations flow

central to your competitive advantage. Thus, if you are producing a new component with hard-wired proprietary technology—let's say a voice recognition security door entry—it is wise to internally produce that hard-wired component. The locking mechanism, on the other hand, can be outsourced to your specifications. Outsourcing the aspects that aren't proprietary reduces fixed costs for production equipment and facility expenditures, which means you have to raise less money and give up less equity.

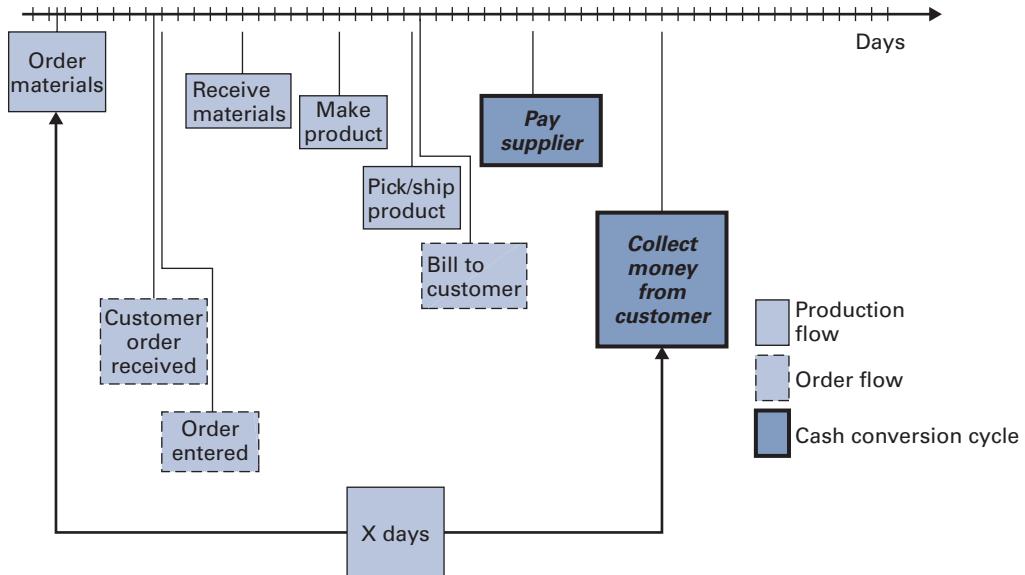
The scope of operations section should also discuss partnerships with vendors, suppliers, and partners. Again, the diagram should illustrate the supplier and vendor relationships by category or by name (if the list isn't too long and you have already identified your suppliers). The diagram helps you visualize the various relationships and ways to better manage or eliminate them. The operations diagram also helps identify staffing needs—for example, how many production workers you might need depending on the hours of operation and number of shifts.

**Ongoing Operations.** This section builds upon the scope of operations section by providing details on day-to-day activities. For example, how many units will you produce in a day and what kinds of inputs will you need? An operating cycle overview diagram graphically illustrates the impact of production on cash flow (see Figure 7.8b). As you complete this detail, you can start to establish performance parameters, which will help you to monitor and modify the production process into the future. If this plan is for your use only, you may choose to include such details as the specific job descriptions. However, for a business plan that will be shared with investors, you can get by with a much lower level of detail.

## Development Plan

The development plan highlights the development strategy and also provides a detailed development timeline. Many new ventures will require a significant level of effort and time to launch the product or service. This is the prologue of your story. For example, new software or hardware products often require months of development. Discuss what types of features you will develop and tie them to the firm's competitive advantage. This section should also discuss any patent, trademark, or copyright efforts you will undertake.

**Development Strategy.** What work remains to be completed? What factors need to come together for development to be successful? What risks to development does the firm face? For example, software development is notorious for taking longer and costing more than



Source: Adapted from Professor Robert Eng, Babson College

**Figure 7.8b**

### Operating cycle

most companies originally imagined. Detailing the necessary work and what needs to happen for you to consider the work successful helps you understand and manage the risks involved. After you have laid out these details, you can assemble a development time line.

**Development Timeline.** A development time line is a schedule that you use to highlight major milestones and to monitor progress and make changes. It's often useful to illustrate time lines as Gantt charts. Figure 7.9 illustrates a typical Gantt chart for a new business launching a history themed bookstore.

The time line helps you track major events, delegate responsibilities for project tasks, and schedule activities to best execute those events. In addition to plotting future milestones, it is a good idea to illustrate which development milestones you have already achieved as of the writing of the business plan. Finally, keep in mind that, as the old adage says, "time is money." Every day your product is in development and not on the market, you lose a day's worth of sales. You will have to work hard to meet deadlines, especially in those industries where speed to market is critical.

### Team

We mentioned in Chapter 2 that Georges Doriot would rather back a "grade-A man with a grade-B idea than a grade-B man with a grade-A idea." For this reason, the team section of the business plan is often the section that professional investors read right after the executive summary. This section is also critically important to the lead entrepreneur. It identifies the members responsible for key activities and conveys why they are exceptionally qualified to execute on those responsibilities. The section also helps you consider how well this group of individuals will work together. It is well established that ventures started by strong teams are much more likely to succeed than those led by weak teams.

Activity	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Opening Month
<b><u>10–12 Months Prior to Opening</u></b>													
1) Finalize business plan and financials													
2) Review plans with local bookstore/ specialty shop owners													
3) Fill in skill gaps with advisory board													
4) Determine exact location possibilities													
<b><u>7–9 Months Prior to Opening</u></b>													
5) Register rights to business name													
6) Seek funding from appropriate sources													
7) Update business plan per feedback from potential financiers													
8) Make initial contact with product vendors													
9) Contact POS/inventory vendors and store designers													
<b><u>4–6 Months Prior to Opening</u></b>													
10) Determine exact store design													
11) Finalize product vendors													
12) Confirm funding													
<b><u>3 Months Prior to Opening</u></b>													
13) Finalize store design plans													
14) Open vendor/bank accounts													
15) Place fixture orders													
16) Finalize marketing plan and implement to announce store opening events													
17) Submit merchandise orders with all vendors													
<b><u>1 Month Prior to Opening</u></b>													
18) Contact local media re placement in local newspapers and magazines													
19) Code merchandise category data in inventory management system													
20) Recruit and train staff													
21) Receive merchandise, fixtures, and complete setup of store													
<b><u>Opening Month</u></b>													
22) “Soft opening” of store to assess cus- tomer response, training, and system functioning													
<b>Grand Opening of Store</b>													

**Figure 7.9****Gantt chart**

**Team Bios and Roles.** Every story needs a cast of characters, and the best place to start is by identifying the key team members and their titles. Often the lead entrepreneur assumes a CEO role. However, if you are young and have limited business experience, it is usually more productive to state that the company will seek a qualified CEO as it grows. In these cases, the lead entrepreneur may assume the role of Chief Technology Officer (if she develops the technology) or Vice President of Business Development. However, don't let these options confine you. The key is to convince your investors that you have assembled the best team possible and that your team can execute on the brilliant concept you are proposing.

A simple, relatively flat organization chart is often useful to visualize what roles you have filled and what gaps remain. It also provides a road map for reading the bios that follow. The bios should demonstrate records of success. If you have previously started a business (even if it failed), highlight the company's *accomplishments*. If you have no previous entrepreneurial experience, discuss your achievements in your last job. For example, bios often contain a description of the number of people the entrepreneur previously managed and, more importantly, a measure of economic success, such as "grew division sales by 20-plus percent." The bio should demonstrate your leadership capabilities. Include the team's resumes as an appendix.

**Advisory Boards, Board of Directors, Strategic Partners, External Members.** Many entrepreneurs find that they are more attractive to investors if they have strong advisory boards. In building an advisory board, you want to create a team with diverse skills and experience. Industry experts provide legitimacy to your new business as well as strong technical advice. Other advisors should bring financial, legal, or management expertise. Thus, it is common to see lawyers, professors, accountants, and others who can assist the venture's growth on advisory boards. Moreover, if your firm has a strategic supplier or key customer, it may make sense to invite him onto your advisory board. Typically, these individuals are remunerated with a small equity stake and compensation for any organized meetings.

By law, most types of organization require a board of directors. While members of the advisory board can also provide needed expertise, a board of directors is different from an advisory board. The directors' primary role is to oversee the company on behalf of the investors, and to that end, the board has the power to replace top executives if it feels doing so would be in the best interests of the company. Therefore, the business plan needs to briefly describe the size of the board, its role within the organization, and any current board members. Most major investors, such as venture capitalists, will require one or more board seats. Usually, the lead entrepreneur and one or more inside company members, such as the Chief Financial Officer or a Vice President, will also have board seats.

Strategic partners may not necessarily be on your advisory board or your board of directors, but they still provide credibility to your venture. For this reason, it makes sense to highlight their involvement in your company's success. It is also common to list external team members, such as the law firm and accounting firm that your venture uses. The key in this section is to demonstrate that your firm can successfully execute the concept. A strong team provides the foundation that can ensure your venture will implement the opportunity successfully.

**Compensation and Ownership.** A capstone to the team section should be a table listing key team members by role, compensation, and ownership equity. A brief description in the text should explain why the compensation is appropriate. Many entrepreneurs choose not to pay themselves in the early months. Although this strategy conserves cash flow, it would misrepresent the individual's worth to the organization. Therefore, the table should contain what salary the employee is due. If necessary, that salary can be deferred until a time when cash flow is strong. Another column that can be powerful shows what the person's current or most recent compensation was and what she will be paid in the new company. Highly

qualified entrepreneurs taking a smaller salary than at their previous job make an impressive point. While everyone understands that the entrepreneur's salary will increase as the company begins to grow, starting at a reduced salary sends the message that you and your team believe in the upside of your idea. Just be sure the description of the schedule underscores the plan to increase salaries in the future. In addition, it is a good idea to hold stock aside for future key hires and to establish a stock option pool for critical lower-level employees, such as software engineers. The plan should discuss such provisions.

## Critical Risks

Every new venture faces a number of risks that may threaten its survival. Although the business plan, to this point, is creating a story of success, readers will identify and recognize a number of threats. The plan needs to acknowledge these potential risks; otherwise, investors will believe that the entrepreneur is naïve or untrustworthy and may possibly withhold investment. How should you present these critical risks without scaring your investor or other stakeholders? Identify the risk and then state your contingency plan. Critical risks are critical assumptions—factors that need to happen if your venture is to succeed as currently planned. The critical assumptions vary from one company to another, but some common categories are market interest and growth potential, competitor actions and retaliation, time and cost of development, operating expenses, and availability and timing of financing.

**Market Interest and Growth Potential.** The biggest risk any new venture faces is that, once the product has been developed, no one will buy it. Although you can do a number of things to minimize this risk, such as market research, focus groups, and beta sites, it is difficult to gauge overall demand, and the growth of that demand, until your product hits the market. State this risk, but counter it with the tactics and contingencies the company will undertake. For example, sales risk can be reduced by mounting an effective advertising and marketing plan or by identifying not only a PTA but also secondary and tertiary target audiences that the company will seek if the PTA proves less interested.

**Competitor Actions and Retaliation.** Too many entrepreneurs believe either that direct competition doesn't exist or that it is sleepy and slow to react. Don't rely on this belief as a key assumption of your venture's success. Most entrepreneurs passionately believe that they are offering something new and wonderful that is clearly different from what is currently on the market. They go on to state that existing competition won't attack their niche in the near future. Acknowledge the risk that this assessment may be wrong. One counter to this threat is that the venture has room in its gross margins to operate at lower-than-anticipated price levels and the cash available to withstand and fight back against such attacks. You should also identify the strategies you will use to protect and reposition yourself, should an attack occur.

**Time and Cost of Development.** As mentioned in the development plan section, many factors can delay and add to the expense of developing your product. The business plan should identify the factors that may hinder development. For instance, during the extended high-tech boom of the late 1990s and into the new century, there has been an acute shortage of skilled software engineers. You need to address how you will overcome the challenge of hiring and retaining the most qualified professionals, perhaps by outsourcing some development to the underemployed engineers in India. Compensation, equity participation, flexible hours, and other benefits that the firm could offer might also minimize the risk. Whatever your strategy, you need to demonstrate an understanding of the difficult task at hand and assure potential investors that you will be able to develop the product on time and on budget.

**Operating Expenses.** Operating expenses have a way of growing beyond expectations. Sales, administration, marketing, and interest expenses are some of the areas you need to monitor and manage. The business plan should highlight how you forecast your expenses (comparable companies and detailed analysis) and also lay out your contingency plans for unexpected developments. For instance, you may want to slow the hiring of support staff if development or other key tasks take longer than expected. Remember, cash is king, and your plan should illustrate how you will conserve cash when things don't go according to plan.

**Availability and Timing of Financing.** We can't stress enough how important cash flow is to the survival and flourishing of a new venture. One major risk that most new ventures face is that they will have difficulty obtaining needed financing, both equity and debt. If the current business plan is successful in attracting investors, cash flow will not be a problem in the short-term. However, most ventures will need multiple rounds of financing. If the firm fails to make progress or meet key milestones, it may not be able to secure additional rounds of financing. This can put the entrepreneur in the uncomfortable position of having to accept unfavorable financing terms or, in the worst-case scenario, force the company into bankruptcy. Your contingency plans should identify viable alternative sources of capital and strategies to slow the "burn rate."<sup>8</sup>

A number of other risks might apply to your business. Acknowledge them and discuss how you can overcome them. Doing so generates confidence among your investors and helps you anticipate corrective actions that you may need to take.

## Offering

Using your vision for the business and your estimates of the capital required to get there, you can develop a "sources and uses" schedule for the offering section of your business plan. The sources section details how much capital you need and the types of financing, such as equity investment and debt infusions. The uses section details how you'll spend the money. Typically, you should secure enough financing to last 12 to 18 months. If you take more capital than you need, you have to give up more equity. If you take less, you may run out of cash before reaching milestones that equate to higher valuations.

## Financial Plan

Chapter 8 illustrates how to construct your pro-forma financials, but you will also need a verbal description of these financials. We will defer discussion of this section until the next chapter.

## Appendices

The appendices can include anything and everything that you think adds further validation to your concept but that doesn't fit or is too large to insert in the main parts of the plan. Common inclusions would be one-page resumes of key team members, articles that feature your venture, and technical specifications. If you already have customers, include a few excerpts of testimonials from them. Likewise, if you have favorable press coverage, include that as well. As a general rule, try to put all exhibits discussed in the written part of the plan on the same page on which you discuss them so the reader doesn't have to keep flipping back to the end of the plan to look at an exhibit. However, it is acceptable to put very large exhibits into an appendix.

# Types of Plans

---

So far in this chapter, we have laid out the basic sections or areas you want to address in your business planning process. The earliest drafts should be housed in a three-ring binder so you can add and subtract as you gain a deeper understanding, but at some point, you may want to print a more formal-looking plan.

Business plans can take a number of forms depending on their purpose. Each form requires the same level of effort and leads to the same conclusions, but the final document is crafted differently depending on who uses it and when they use it. For instance, when you are introducing your concept to a potential investor, you might send a short, concise summary plan. As the investor's interest grows and she wants to more fully investigate the concept, she may ask for a more detailed plan. Even though the equity boom of the late 1990s essentially equated entrepreneurship with venture capital, a business plan serves many more purposes than the needs of potential investors. Employees, strategic partners, financiers, and board members all may find use for a well-developed business plan. Most importantly, the entrepreneur herself gains immeasurably from the business planning process because it allows her not only to run the company better but also to clearly articulate her story to stakeholders, who may never read the plan. In sum, different consumers of the business plan require different presentation of the work.

Your three-ring binder is basically what we would call an *operational plan*. It is primarily for you and your team to guide the development, launch, and initial growth of the venture. There really is no length specification for this type of plan, but it's not unusual to exceed 80 pages. The biggest difference between an operational plan and the one you might present to a potential investor is the level of detail, which tends to be much greater in an operational plan. Remember, the creation of this document is where you really gain the deep understanding so important in discerning how to build and run the business.

If you need outside capital, a business plan geared toward equity investors or debt providers should be about 25 to 40 pages long. Recognize that professional equity investors, such as venture capitalists, and professional debt providers, such as bankers, will not read the entire plan from front to back. That being the case, produce the plan in a format that facilitates spot reading. The previous discussion highlighted sections that these readers might find useful. The key is to present a concise version of all the material you have produced in your planning process. Focus on what the investor values the most. Thus, operational details are often less important unless your competitive advantage derives from your operations. Our general rule of thumb is that "less is more." For instance, we've found that 25-page business plans receive venture funding more often than 40-page plans (other things being equal).

You may also want to produce an expanded executive summary. These plans are considerably shorter than an operational plan or the 25- to 40-page plan discussed above—typically, no more than 10 pages. The purpose of this plan is to provide an initial conception of the business in order to test initial reaction to the idea. It allows you to share your idea with confidantes and receive feedback before investing significant time and effort on a longer business plan.

After you've completed the business planning process, rewrite the expanded executive summary. You can use this expanded summary to attract attention. For instance, send it to investors you have recently met to spur interest and a meeting. It is usually better to send an expanded executive summary than a full business plan because the investor will be more apt to read it. If the investor is interested, he will call you in for a meeting. If the meeting goes well, the investor often then asks for the full business plan.

## Style Pointers for the Written Plan and Oral Presentation

---

Once you start writing plans for external consumption, the way you present the information becomes important. Not only do you need to capture the reader's attention with a well-researched opportunity, but also you need to present your case in a way that makes it easy and interesting to read. Too many business plans are text-laden, dense manifestos. Only the most diligent reader will wade through all that text. The key is to create visual catch-points.

Use a table of contents with numbered sections, as we described earlier in this chapter. Then use clearly marked headers and subheaders throughout the document. This allows the reader to jump to sections she is most interested in. Another way to draw the reader to important points is to use bulleted lists, diagrams, charts, and sidebars.<sup>9</sup> Your reader should be able to understand the venture opportunity by just looking at the visual catch-points of a plan. Work with your team and trusted advisors on ways to bring out the exciting elements of your story. The point is to make the document not only content rich but also visually attractive.

Some investors have no interest in a plan at all. Instead, they prefer to see an executive summary and PowerPoint slides, and they often read the PowerPoint slides instead of asking the entrepreneur to personally present those slides. We have already discussed executive summaries, so let's spend a few moments on PowerPoint slides. You should be able to communicate your business opportunity in 10 to 12 slides, possibly along the following lines:

1. Cover page showing product picture, company name, and contact information
2. Opportunity description emphasizing customer problem or need that you hope to solve
3. Illustration of how your product or service solves the customer's problem
4. Some details (as needed) to better describe your product
5. Competition overview
6. Entry and growth strategy showing how you get into the market and then grow
7. Overview of your business model—how you will make money and how much it will cost to support those sales
8. Team description
9. Current status with time line
10. Summary including how much money you need and how it will be used

The key to creating a successful presentation is to maximize the use of your slides. For example, graphs, pictures, and other visuals are more powerful and compelling than texts and bulleted lists. Entrepreneurs who create bulleted lists often use them as cue cards during an oral presentation and either stare at the screen behind them as they talk or continually look back and forth between the screen and their audience. In either case, this behavior might prevent you from creating a personal connection with your audience.

This connection is important because it conveys that you have confidence in your plan and that you have a strong command of the concept. A second problem with bulleted lists is that those in your audience will tend to read them, and their attention will be focused on the slide and not on what you are saying. Again, you want to create a strong personal connection with your audience. You should be able to use graphics to communicate the key points. Doing so will better engage your audience and make them more inclined to view your opportunity favorably.

The business plan is more than just a document; it is a process, a story. Although the finished product is often a written plan, the deep thinking and fact-based analysis that go into that document provide the entrepreneur the keen insights needed to marshal resources and direct growth. The whole process can be painful, but it almost always maximizes revenue and minimizes costs. The reason is that the process allows the entrepreneur to better anticipate instead of react.

Business planning also provides talking points so that entrepreneurs can get feedback from a number of experts, including investors, vendors, and customers. Think of business planning as one of your first steps on the journey to entrepreneurial success. Also remember that business planning is a process and not a product. It is iterative, and in some sense, it never ends. As your venture grows, you will want to come back and revisit earlier drafts, create new drafts, and so on for the entire life of your business. Keep your three-ring binder close by and continue to add to and revise it often. It is the depository of all the learning that you have achieved as well as your plans for the future. While preparing the first draft of your plan is tough, the rewards are many. Enjoy the journey.

## CONCLUSION

### Reflection Point

### Your Thoughts ...

1. What data have you gathered about your opportunity?
  - a. What do these data suggest as far as reshaping your opportunity?
  - b. What new questions do they raise, and who should you talk to in order to answer these questions?
2. Who have you shared your vision with?
  - a. Who have they referred you to?
  - b. What new learning have you gained from these conversations?
3. What is your “tagline?”
4. Does your executive summary have a compelling “hook”?
5. Does your business planning process tie together well? Do you have a compelling, articulate story?

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

Scan the Internet for business plan preparation sites. What kinds of templates are available? Do these make it easier to write a plan? What is the downside, if any, of using these templates? What are the benefits? Find some sample plans online. These plans are often advertised as superior to “typical” plans. Are they better? What makes them better?

## WEB EXERCISE

## NOTES

- 1 Bartlett, S. *Seat of Your Pants. Inc.*, October 2002.
- 2 *The Quotations Page*. [www.quotationspage.com/quote/36892.html](http://www.quotationspage.com/quote/36892.html).
- 3 Lange, J., Bygrave, W., and Evans, T. *Do Business Plan Competitions Produce Winning Businesses?* Paper presented at 2004 Babson Kauffman Entrepreneurship Research Conference, Glasgow, Scotland.
- 4 Thomas, P. Rewriting the Rules: A New Generation of Entrepreneurs Find Themselves in the Perfect Time and Place to Chart Their Own Course. *Wall Street Journal*. May 22, 2004. p. R4.
- 5 Makower, J., Pernick, R., and Wilder, C. *Clean Energy Trends 2008*. San Francisco, CA: Clean Edge. 2008.
- 6 Marco, M. *Leaks: Best Buy's Internal Customer Profiling Document*. March 18, 2008. <http://consumerist.com/368894/leaks-best-buys-internal-customer-profiling-document>.
- 7 Sacirbey, O. Private Companies Temper IPO Talk. *IPO Reporter*. December 18, 2000.
- 8 *Burn rate* is how much more cash the company is expending each month than earning in revenue.
- 9 A running sidebar, a visual device positioned on the right side of the page, periodically highlights some of the key points in the plan. Don't overload the sidebar, but one or two items per page can draw attention to highlights that maintain reader interest.

# P'kolino

**CASE**

CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

## Business Plan May-2005

**Prepared by:**  
J.B. Schneider &  
Antonio Turco-Rivas N.

**Contact Information:**  
Phone: (781) 497-0913  
Email: jb@pkolino.com  
atrn@pkolino.com

**Address:**  
600 West Cummings Park  
Suite 5350  
Woburn, MA 01801

The information contained in this document is highly confidential. Except if stated herein, none of the material may be copied, reproduced, distributed, republished, downloaded, displayed, posted or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, but not limited to, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written authorization from P'kolino, LLC.

**Executive Summary**  
**P'kolino, LLC**  
(pee-ko-lee-no)



**QUICK FACTS:**

**Management:**

J.B SCHNEIDER: President, Marketing  
ANTONIO TURCO-RIVAS: Operations  
Sales, Finance  
RISD: Design and Development

**Industry:** Play at Home - Play Furniture

**Business:** Improving play at home with products like this:



**Patents:** Currently filing provisional patents

**Law Firm:** Brown Rudnick, and Berlack Israels LLP

**Auditors:** N/A

Current Investors: Founders

**Financing Sought:** \$400K

**Use of Funds:** Manufacturing, Marketing and Product Development

**Employees:** Founders (2)

**Clients:** Conversations with specialty retailers (e.g. Museum of Modern Arts)

**Exit Strategy:** Acquisition by toy manufacturer, furniture retailer or furniture manufacturer

**CONTACT INFORMATION:**  
600 West Cummings Park, Suite 5350  
Woburn, MA 01801  
Phone: (781) 497-0913  
Email: [jb@pkolino.com](mailto:jb@pkolino.com) or [atrn@pkolino.com](mailto:atrn@pkolino.com)  
Website: [www.pkolino.com](http://www.pkolino.com)

**Summary:**

P'kolino is committed to improving play at home by developing and marketing innovative play products and accessories. P'kolino believes that play should be fun and that play is critical to a child's physical, mental and social development. We hear from parents that they believe this too. Our products,

- are designed for optimal usage by the child,
- grow and adapt to the child's stage of development, and
- integrate with toys and activities to encourage and enhance play.

P'kolino not only improves play at home but its business of "growing" products, toy integration and complementary accessories serves as the foundation for a solid business with recurring, high margin sales.

**Strategy:**

Our goal is for P'kolino to become synonymous with play at home, and to accomplish this we have designed a progressive growth strategy. Through research we determined that the basis for play, the play space and its furniture, are in need of improvement. We've identified four key areas for improvement:

- Existing play furniture hinders play because it is designed for miniature adults.
- Play furniture rapidly loses its value because children outgrow it.
- The child loses interest in the play furniture quickly because it has few applications.
- Play spaces are cluttered and unorganized

P'kolino addresses these needs by:

- Making play more productive by designing furniture for the ones who use it: children.
- Increasing the useful life of the furniture by designing it to grow with the child
- Maintaining interest in the furniture by increasing its uses. Add-on toy kits integrate with the table for unlimited uses.
- Organizing the play spaces by designing these toy kits to simply fold-up and store away in a child friendly storage unit.

We will build distinctive, high quality products and focus on developing a strong brand. P'kolino will first target the high-end market because it values the brand, its consumers are influencers, and it has the highest margins. We will grow by introducing additional products to the high-end markets and expanding with a different product line into the higher volume mid-market.

Distribution will primarily be direct, however we will partner with key retail showrooms to create familiarity with our products. A strong direct channel will enable us to develop extended relationships with our customers for repeat sales of upgrades, accessories and toy kits.

**Market:**

Play furniture is a \$1.2 billion market. The High-end segment is \$51 million, growing at 9% and strong margins of 55% gross/20% net. The Mid segment is estimated at \$300 million, growing at 8% per year and margins of 48% gross/14% net. The mass segment is estimated at \$800 million, growing at 7% and margins of 37% gross and 5% net.

**Operations:**

Outsourcing manufacturing, and using a collaboration model for product development.

**Management Background:**

- Antonio Turco-Rivas: co-founder and Sales & Operations Manager is a Babson MBA 2005. Antonio is a proven entrepreneur who successfully launched two ventures. He has managerial and sales experience.
- J.B. Schneider: co-founder and Marketing & Product Development Manager is a Babson MBA 2005 with over 10 years of marketing strategy and communications experience for several Fortune 500 companies.

	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>Revenues</b>	612K	1783K	2922K	4168K	5793K
<b>Expenses</b>	643K	1761K	2806K	3786K	5093K
<b>Net Profit</b>	-31K	22K	116K	382K	700K
<b>Head Count</b>	4	7	13	14	14

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



<b>1 MISSION STATEMENT .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2 INDUSTRY OVERVIEW.....</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1 UNDERSTANDING THE PLAYROOM MARKET.....	3
2.2 FURNITURE INDUSTRY HIGHLIGHTS .....	3
2.3 TOY INDUSTRY HIGHLIGHTS .....	5
2.4 HOW IT ALL COMES TOGETHER (FURNITURE & TOY INDUSTRY).....	7
2.5 TRENDS INFLUENCING THE PLAYROOM MARKET .....	8
2.6 PLAYROOM FURNITURE MARKET STRUCTURE AND COMPETITION.....	10
<b>3 THE OPPORTUNITY .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>4 COMPANY AND PRODUCT DESCRIPTION .....</b>	<b>16</b>
4.1 COMPANY AND DESCRIPTION .....	16
4.2 THE P'KOLINO CONCEPT .....	17
4.3 PRODUCT DESCRIPTION .....	18
4.4 COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE .....	27
4.5 OUR STRATEGY.....	28
<b>5 MARKETING PLAN.....</b>	<b>30</b>
5.1 UNDERSTANDING THE CUSTOMER .....	30
5.2 TARGET CUSTOMER PROFILE .....	31
5.3 PRICING STRATEGY .....	32
5.4 DISTRIBUTION STRATEGY.....	32
5.5 COMMUNICATION STRATEGY – YEAR 1 .....	33
5.6 SALES STRATEGY .....	35
5.7 SALES AND MARKETING FORECAST.....	36
5.8 COMMUNICATIONS STRATEGY – YEARS 2-5 .....	36
<b>6 THE TEAM.....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>7 OPERATIONS.....</b>	<b>38</b>
7.1 OPERATIONS STRATEGY .....	38
7.2 DEVELOPMENT TIMELINE .....	41
<b>8 CRITICAL RISKS.....</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>9 FINANCIAL PLAN (APPEARS IN NEXT CHAPTER) .....</b>	<b>43</b>
9.1 BASIS OF PRESENTATION:.....	43
9.2 INCOME STATEMENT ASSUMPTIONS - REVENUES .....	43
9.3 INCOME STATEMENT ASSUMPTIONS - COST OF SALES .....	47
9.4 INCOME STATEMENT ASSUMPTIONS – EXPENSES .....	47
9.5 BALANCE SHEET ASSUMPTIONS .....	48
9.6 FUNDING ASSUMPTIONS .....	49
9.7 CASH FLOW ASSUMPTIONS .....	50
9.8 BREAKEVEN ANALYSIS .....	50
<b>10 ACHIEVEMENTS (NOT INCLUDED IN THIS CASE).....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>11 APPENDIX (NOT INCLUDED IN THIS CASE).....</b>	<b>55</b>
11.1 TOYS MARCH UPMARKET .....	56
11.2 APPENDIX – PRODUCT ATTRIBUTES .....	57
11.3 PRODUCT PICTURES .....	58

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



*"P'kolino will develop innovative playroom furniture designed for the child to improve play"*

## 1 Mission Statement

"P'kolino is a product development and marketing company. Our goal is to improve play at home by developing and marketing innovative playroom furniture designed for the child. Our products will grow and adapt to the child's stage of development and integrate with toys and activities to encourage and enhance play."

## 2 Industry Overview

### 2.1 Understanding the Playroom Market

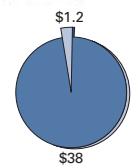
Four million children are born in the United States each year.<sup>1</sup> Thus, at any given time, there are 30 million children ages 8 or younger. This large base fuels the \$38 billion children's toy and furniture market, currently growing at 13% per year (according to the industry trade publication "Playthings"). The playroom market (meaning the area of the house set aside for children's recreation and play) is part of this pie, and includes elements of both the furniture and the toy industry.

*"Children's playroom furniture market is estimated at \$1.2 billion, growing at 7% annually for the next five years"*

P'kolino will compete in the children's playroom furniture space, estimated to be a \$1.2 billion market, growing at 7% annually for the next five years (according to marketresearch.com). However, a playroom is not a playroom without toys. For this reason, P'kolino will develop furniture products and accessories designed to integrate with toys and activities to complete the playroom offering and enhance their play value.

The dynamics of the playroom market are influenced by both the furniture and toy industry. An overview of each of these industries follows.

Exhibit 2-A  
The Playroom Market  
(US\$ Billions)



■ Toy + Furniture Market  
■ Playroom Furniture

### 2.2 Furniture Industry Highlights

Households in the US spend over \$24 billion a year on furniture and this figure is expected to grow at 2% per year according to the American Furniture Manufacturer Association (AFMA). The industry has traditionally been highly segmented, but because of lower margins fueled by intense competition from imports, it has started to consolidate. Last year, for example, products manufactured and imported from other countries (especially China) represented 45%<sup>2</sup> of total purchases.

<sup>1</sup> Source: U.S. Census Bureau – [www.census.gov](http://www.census.gov)

<sup>2</sup> Source: US Department of Commerce – [www.commerce.gov](http://www.commerce.gov)

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Companies competing in this market are:

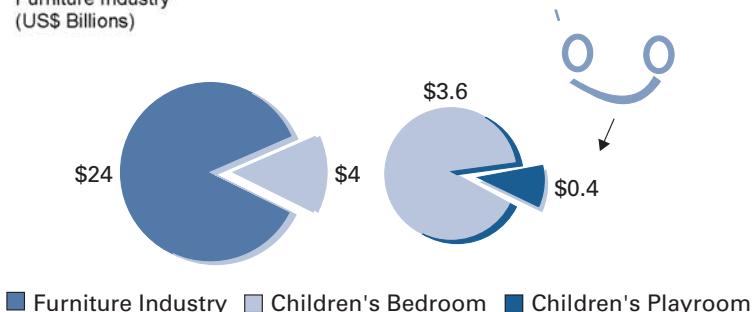
- Furniture Brands International, the largest maker of residential furniture and owner of brands like Henredon, Drexel, and Maitland-Smith (the company has over \$2.3 billion in revenues).<sup>3</sup>
- Lay Z Boy (\$1.9 billion in revenues).
- Ashley Furniture (\$1.7 billion in revenues)
- and others; like Ethan Allen and local players.

These companies distribute products through a network of furniture centers, independent dealers (specialty retailers), national and local chains, and department stores.

According to the AFMA, children's furniture generated \$4 billion in 2003, 90% related to children's bedroom furniture sales (cribs, changing tables, etc.) and the remaining 10% or \$400 million to children's tables, chairs, storage and toys. Niche players have dominated this segment of the industry and according to the American Home Furnishings Alliance (annual publication) it is the fastest growing segment (8% in 2003).

We believe the Furniture Industry will continue to face strong competition from foreign manufacturers (selling at lower prices). Local manufacturers will have to invest in technology and compete on quality and speed. In the children's furniture market, the large companies have been traditionally focused on bedroom furniture. Niche players have been taking over the more specialized products - those requiring expertise in other areas - like child development (i.e. the playroom furniture).

Exhibit 2-B  
Furniture Industry  
(US\$ Billions)



*"Children's furniture is the fastest growing segment in the Furniture Industry with 8% growth in 2003"*

American Home Furnishing Alliance

<sup>3</sup> Source: Hoovers Online – [www.hoovers.com](http://www.hoovers.com)

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



### 2.3 Toy Industry Highlights

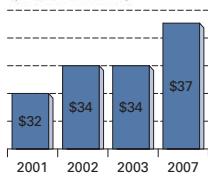
The Toy Industry accounted for \$34 billion in 2003.<sup>4</sup> On both the manufacturing and retailing side it is a highly concentrated industry. For the past few years it has been growing at 5-9% per year, with almost 60% of the products being imported from other countries.<sup>5</sup>

According to "Playthings annual report" the Toy industry is highly seasonal with almost 70% of all toy purchases occurring during the Holiday season (Christmas).

The "Playthings annual report" for 2003 also stated the main forces driving the industry as follows:

- "Educational toys:" after many ups and downs, it seems like American parents have become more aware of the importance of play and education in the early years. This has resulted in sales growth of 9% per year.
- "Word of mouth and Brand:" proven ways to build sales in this industry.
- "Technology is king:" almost 39% all of toys sales (in terms of US\$) are video games or what they like to call "technology related products".
- "Merchant power:" Mass merchandisers; in particular Walmart (sells 25% of the toys sold every year in America), have taken the industry by storm, lowering prices to consumers but also lowering margins to manufacturers.
- "China:" manufacturing has gone overseas

Exhibit 2-C  
The Toy Industry  
(US\$ Billions)



*"Parents have become more aware of the importance of play and education in the early years... educational toys sales are up 9% per year"*

*"Playthings"*

Retail sales of toys and games are expected to grow 4.3 percent per year to total \$37.8 billion in 2007.<sup>6</sup> New video game technologies and the introduction of next generation systems are expected to be the main driver of growth. With respect to toys the leaders in the industry are Mattel (\$4.9 billion in sales), Hasbro (\$3.1 billion), Lego (\$1.6 billion), and Leap Frog (\$600 million).<sup>7</sup> Sony takes the lead in video games.

Regarding the playroom furniture market, some companies like Rubbermaid (using the Little Tykes brand) have developed; role-play toys, ride-on toys, sandboxes, activity gyms and climbers, and plastic juvenile furniture. These products are sold in toy stores (not furniture stores) and have been targeting the price sensitive consumer. Our research indicates that these types of

<sup>4</sup> Source: Industry trade publication "Playthings"

<sup>5</sup> Source: Industry trade publication "Playthings"

<sup>6</sup> Source: Marketresearch.com

<sup>7</sup> Source: revenues for Toy industry leaders from Hoovers Online

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA

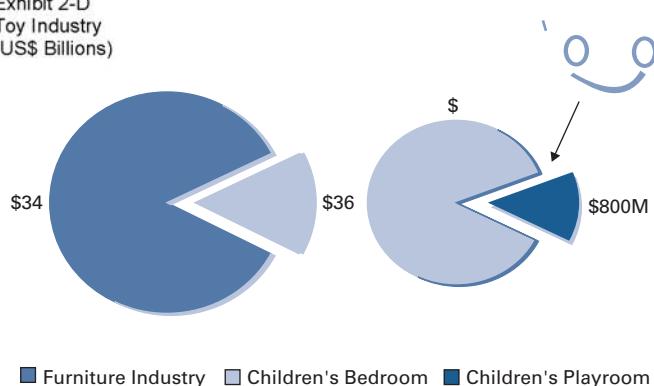


*"\$800 million in playroom furniture products are sold each year by Toy Industry related companies*

products carry very low margins (average 5% profit margins).<sup>8</sup> To compete, companies like Brio, another strong player in this niche, sells low price train tables to encourage parents to buy their higher margins trains (they lose money on the furniture to sell the toy).

According to the Marketresearch.com industry report, of the \$34 billion, \$6 billion accounts for furniture products. However, this number includes car seats, play pens, strollers, etc. For playroom furniture, our research<sup>9</sup> indicates that approximately \$800 million is sold each year.

Exhibit 2-D  
Toy Industry  
(US\$ Billions)



Our research concludes that large toy companies dominate the price-sensitive segment of the playroom furniture market. However for mid and high-end play furniture products, niche manufacturers and retailers like Pottery Barn Kids and Land of Nod have taken the lead.

<sup>8</sup> Sources: According to 10K filings for the SEC and/or public financial statements from: Graco, Rubbermaid, Brio and others.  
<sup>9</sup> Based on Marketresearch.com Industry Report and Sales of top ten manufacturers of playroom furniture products

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA

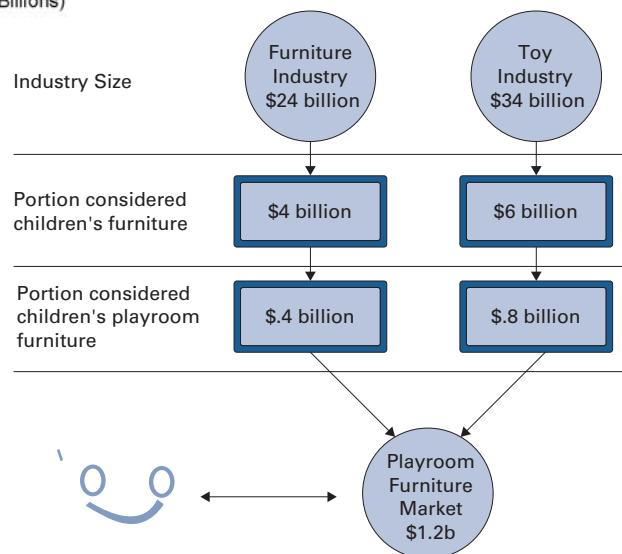


## 2.4 How it all Comes Together (Furniture & Toy Industry)

Furniture meets toys in the playroom; both Industries converge and influence the \$1.2 billion market.

Exhibit 2-E  
The Playroom Furniture Market  
(US\$ Billions)

*"The Furniture and Toy industry converge in the furniture playroom market"*



The Playroom furniture market (where P'kolino will compete) has inherited many of the competitive dynamics of its parent industries:

- Is growing at an average of 7% annually<sup>10</sup>
- Is highly seasonal (almost 70% of sales during the Holiday season)
- Almost 60% of the products are manufactured abroad<sup>11</sup>
- For highly price sensitive consumers the market is highly concentrated, but at mid and high-end income levels niche players dominate
- Word of mouth and brand are the main drivers of sales

<sup>10</sup> Source: Marketresearch.com Industry Report

<sup>11</sup> Based on the Management calculations, supported by AFMA information on Furniture Imports

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## **2.5 Trends Influencing the Playroom Market**

**More children are being born:** According to the latest statistics from the National Center for Health Statistics, women in the United States are having more children now than at any time in almost 30 years. During most of the 1970s and 1980s, the average birthrate was fewer than two children per woman, today that average has increased to 2.1 children. As a result of this trend, the population of children age 5 and under is expected to grow in 2004, and to experience gradually increasing annual percentage gains through 2010.

**Mom's with more income and spending more:** More women are having babies later in life, when their income tends to be higher and more stable. The birth rates for women in their 30s and older are at their highest level in three decades, up 2%-3% since 1990 for women in their 30s, and up more than 7% for women in their 40s.<sup>12</sup> As a result many of them are coming into the toy and furniture markets with higher disposable income than was previously the case.

**Grandparents are spending more:** According to the U.S. Census Bureau, greater longevity and higher disposable income of a growing U.S. population of grandparents is also boosting average per capita spending on home furnishings and toys for young children. There are about 70 million grandparents in the United States today. As a result of divorces and remarriages, many American children have six to eight adults in the "grandparent" role. According to the research firm Interep (supported by Simmons database), grandparents are spending over \$60 billion on grandchildren each year.

**More aware/educated parents:** Parents these days are being bombarded by advice from experts about developing children's mental, physical, and social skills. Parents understand the value play has on this development and look for products to encourage it. In an interview with the trade publication Playthings (May 2002), Susan Oliver, executive director of the non-profit organization Playing for Keeps, explains:

*"Parents with dollars to spend, typically those who have greater amounts of education, are increasingly aware of the connection between play and healthy development. There has been a lot of media coverage about brain development, with an emphasis on the critical role of a stimulating environment during the first three years of a child's life." As long as the market approach is toward kids learning more at a younger age, consumers will pay to get on the higher rung of the educational ladder"*

*"...More babies, more disposable income and more spending in children's furniture are also driving the playroom market"*

<sup>12</sup> Source: U.S. Census Bureau – [www.census.gov](http://www.census.gov)

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



*"...The Power of Play program, continues to reach literally millions of people...play has a positive effect on children's overall well-being is instrumental in the child's development"*

**New laws:** New safety legislation has propelled safer product designs as the industry and the media warn consumers not to use older products that do not meet current safety standards.<sup>13</sup>

**Home remodeling:** With new TV shows encouraging makeovers of home spaces, Americans are likely to spend more on home furnishing in 2005.

**The Power of Play Campaign:** Children appear to be growing up much faster; they look more mature and they know more about the world at younger and younger ages. Child development experts stress that despite appearances, a child is still a child. This message is a major focus of "The Power of Play" program, which continues to reach literally millions of people throughout our nation as a result of the second phase of broadcast and print public service announcements sponsored by the Toy Manufacturer Association.

The importance of this message was discovered as a result of a national survey conducted in 1999 on behalf of the American Toy Institute, the industry's charitable and educational foundation, recently renamed the Toy Industry Foundation. Ninety-one percent of the survey participants, made up of parents, teachers and child experts, stated that play has a positive effect on children's overall well-being and was instrumental in the development of a child's imagination, self-confidence, self-esteem, creativity, problem-solving and cooperation.

**Toys March Up-market:** A recent article in the Wall Street Journal (please refer to Appendix 11.1) explained the profit killing price war landscape for toy-making and retailing in the mass market, and highlighted how premium priced toys appear to be outgrowing the simpler less expensive versions.

David Shaw, the new owner of the FAO Schwarz retail stores stated "the admittedly small niche is a vibrant marketplace full of customers looking for something different from what's available at mass retail stores... is a niche that small retailers and catalogs dominate."

A customer commented as she visited one small specialty retailer in New York City "these toys aren't cheap... but they are really good-quality...I know my kids will love them."

<sup>13</sup> Source: The U.S. Public Interest Research Group

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



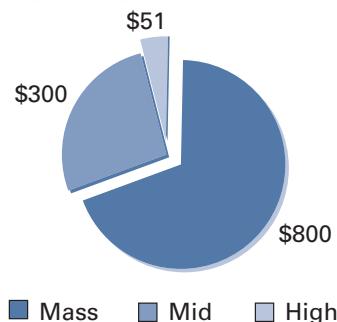
## 2.6 Playroom Furniture Market Structure and Competition

The Playroom Furniture Market has three main segments: mass (\$800 million), mid (\$300 million) and high-end (\$51 million). These segments are derived from a market segmentation based on product quality, price, distribution channel and type of customer.

**High-end segment:** P'kolino will enter the playroom furniture market in this segment. This segment refers to exclusive products sold primarily through catalogs, interior-designer depots, trade events, specialty small retailers and direct from the designer/manufacturer. These products are expensive and branded with the designer's name. Most of these products are usually designed in Italy, Germany, Spain, Netherlands, among others European countries. Buyers are looking for something unique and beautiful. Interior designers are the main promoters in this segment; however, some specialty furniture boutiques have also begun to carry premium furniture for play. Furniture usually takes 6 to 8 weeks for delivery.

*"P'kolino market entry strategy will be to target the High-end segment, a small but profitable spot"*

Exhibit 2-F  
Playroom Furniture Market (US\$ MM)



Customers in this segment are resorting to custom designed playroom solutions using interior designers; some of them even specialized on child-spaces. Customers are also buying from product boutiques that sell furniture as well as other children products (e.g. clothing, toys, and accessories). Small independents design firms (e.g. Truck Architecture) generally design the products sold in these stores. These design shops are usually niche players, who specialize in products such as hand painted furniture, or replications of classic styles. Their value to the boutique is the uniqueness of the product; you cannot find them at the mid or mass market stores.

To summarize, our main competitors in this market are the interior designers (custom made) and the niche product designers. They are often

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



small in size with limited reach and resources. According to our research this segment is growing at 9% per year with strong margins of 55% gross/20% net.<sup>14</sup>

Due to the distinctive characteristics of the High-end segment it is difficult to pinpoint a single market or list of the most prominent competitors. However, we will provide examples of the type of competition P'kolino will face as it enters the high-end segment:

- **Truck Architecture:** is a good example of a design firm. With offices in New York City and a team of 3 designers the company has developed high-end playroom furniture products with a very contemporary style. Truck has been in business since 2000, and sells its products through specialty retail stores, online retailers and in an affiliate web-based store (Offi). Truck founders Jennifer Carpenter, Jonathan Marvel and Rob Rogers have been successful with PR, and have managed to showcase its products in high visibility places like the Museum of Modern Arts (MoMA) Stores in San Francisco and New York.
- **Casakids – Roberto Gil:** Born in Buenos Aires, Argentina and educated at Harvard University, Roberto Gil trained as an architect before delving into furniture design. Gil's lines of children's furniture are very simple in terms of design and configuration. His products have been sold most recently at the Guggenheim Museum Store, Barney's New York, the Whitney Museum's Store Next Door, FAO Schwarz, SF MoMA, and The Land of Nod.
- **KidKraft, Inc:** Originally formed in 1968 as a manufacturer and supplier to the early-childhood sector, KidKraft began competing in the juvenile retail market in 1996. Today, KidKraft creates a wide array of room furnishings, gifts and toys, including licensed juvenile products. KidKraft (headquartered in Dallas, Texas) competes in other segments of the market as well. Its most recent line of products, hand-painted furniture pieces, is positioned at high-end price points. KidKraft has a strong distribution channel infrastructure for mid and mass market products, and is trying to leverage those channels to enter the high-end segment.

<sup>14</sup> Based on primary and secondary research – Interviews with industry experts.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



*"The mid segment is the sweet spot for P'kolino, with reasonable volume, high margins and less price sensitive customers...is driven by quality and looks, not price."*

**Mid-Segment:** Retailers like Pottery Barn Kids, Bellini, Bombay Kids, Land of Nod and specialty catalogs have become the leaders in this segment. These companies are mainly furniture retail chains with products designed with a more conservative classic look and with better materials. The majority of the pieces are made from wood, normally targeting the family room and the child's bedroom. Some of the products are multipurpose (e.g. coffee table that is also a train table). Competition in this segment is considered "high" because of the limited number of players. Pottery-Barn, the market leader, is also the style setter for this segment. In contrast to the take-home approach of mass merchandisers, delivery of the product to the end customer usually takes up to 4 weeks.

Most of the products are sold by catalog, although Pottery-barn, Bellini and Bombay have all opened physical stores to showcase their children's product line.

Customers in this segment are looking for more exclusive designs and will trust companies like Pottery-Barn Kids, The Land of Nod, and Bellini because of their established reputations for high quality and visually appealing products. The largest threats for these companies are the copy-cats (e.g., Ikea and Target) as they manufacture very similar products priced 30-40% less. Copy cats are successful because the brand defining product attribute - beauty - is easily replicated.

According to our research, succeeding in this segment requires a strong brand. Our strategic differentiation in this market will be to offer compelling, customer driven attributes, leveraging the functionality of our products, a grow-with-your-child proposition and furniture integration with toys/activities. For P'kolino the mid-segment is the sweet spot (good margins and healthy volume).

According to AFMA, the mid-segment is growing at 8% per year and has been enjoying healthy margins of 48% gross and 14% net.

Key competitors in the Mid-Segment:

- **Pottery Barn Kids (PBK):** A subsidiary of Williams-Sonoma, Inc. is the largest player in this segment with over 87 stores, an online store-front and 4 to 5 catalog issues per year. According to 10k reports, revenues are split 50/50 between physical stores and direct channels. PBK competes with quality, design and brand and had revenues over \$300 million last year. They entered the playroom furniture market with a number of products targeting the bedroom and family room spaces, as well as some toy like furniture pieces (e.g. kitchen play sets).

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



In a recent article in the Wall Street Journal<sup>15</sup> - "Williams-Sonoma: Seeing a Strong High-End Consumer," it was reported that:

*"Furniture sales have increased to about 25% of total company sales from about 17% a year earlier, said Laura Alber, head of the Pottery Barn brand. "It's really a key strategic focus," Alber said. "Furniture seems to be a strong area of growth and one where we're very focused on driving profitability."*

- **Bellini:** A manufacturer and specialty retail boutique chain that has been around for more than 15 years. They sell high-end European designed children's furniture and accessories. Bellini targets the big spenders with solid-wood juvenile furniture. The company franchises its retail concept and has stores nationwide. Some of its products could be considered high-end, but depending on the franchisee target, the store would more likely than not carry products at prices closer to the mid-segment. They have embraced the grow-with-your-child concept for bedroom furniture, but they are still very classic and basic in terms of their playroom offering.
- **Land of Nod:** The runner-up in terms of playroom furniture in this segment. The online-catalog based juvenile furniture store was recently acquired by Crate and Barrel. They are now in the process of opening stores following the PBK success; however, their business model is different. They sell products designed and manufactured by others. They are competing head to head with PBK in terms of design attributes, style and prices.

*"The mass segment is highly concentrated, suffers low margins and uses mainstream toy distribution channels"*

**Mass-Segment:** In this segment, furniture market characteristics more resemble those of toys than in the other segments. Together Brio, Imaginarium, Little Tykes and Fisher Price hold up to 58%<sup>16</sup> of the market share. Small independents that manufacture furniture products under licensed brands such as Dora the Explorer, Barnie, Barbie, Disney, etc, also hold a solid 20% market share<sup>17</sup>.

This segment can be considered highly concentrated (few players) and price sensitive. Customers in this segment are buying playroom furniture the way they buy toys: at large discount stores (75%) like Walmart, Target, Kmart or large specialized retailers like Toys R Us.

Products like play tables and chairs are sold for less than \$200. They are made of plastic or composite materials and in many cases branded with cartoon characters. The majority of the products are not designed to

<sup>15</sup> Wednesday August 25-2004, WSJ

<sup>16</sup> Source: Derived from individual sales from companies financial statements

<sup>17</sup> Source: "Playthings" Annual Report

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



integrate with the toy or activity (toy/furniture integration) and competition seems to be based on price and brand, not on quality or looks. The noticeable exceptions are the train tables and some Lego tables. Brio for example, sells its train table almost at cost, but then makes a profit selling the trains.

Distribution and competitive dynamics in this segment mimic those of the toy industry in terms of levels of concentration (few players with large market shares), business cycle (70% of sales occurs during the holidays)<sup>18</sup> and barriers of entry (very low margins – competition based on volume). Most of the participants in this market have been losing money lately. On average, the mass segment margins have been 37% gross, and 5% profit.<sup>19</sup>

#### Some Key Competitors in the Mass-Segment:

*"P'kolino will enter the mass-segment once it has penetrated the high and mid segments of the market and developed a strong brand"*

- **Brio:** Based in Sweden, but with operations in Europe, Asia and the US. With \$1.6B in sales,<sup>20</sup> the company has complemented its toy offering with some playroom furniture pieces (especially train tables) now representing about 1/3 of total sales. The company has a strong presence in the Nordic countries and has made an effort to penetrate the US market with products priced a little above the market average. Specialty stores and mass merchandisers have been carrying Brio products in small quantities because of its price point. Brio represents the "traditional wood based" products in this segment. High quality products and a reputation for delivering on educational play support its strong brand.
- **Little Tykes:** Subsidiary of Newell Rubbermaid, Little Tykes is the largest manufacturer of plastic based tables and chairs for this segment. With operations all over the world, Little Tykes has positioned its products as safe, durable and low price playroom furniture. Its products are sold in mass merchandise stores and according to the parent company's financial statements, the division has been struggling to maintain profitability because of higher raw material prices (oil based). In July 2004, the company sold its Little Tykes Commercial Play Systems (LTCPS) unit to PlayPower. Little Tykes had 28% gross and -2% profit margins in 2003.<sup>21</sup>
- **Imaginarium:** This Spain based company and Toys R Us affiliate since 2001 is the second largest manufacturer of play tables for this market segment. The relationship with Toys R Us guarantees shelf space in the stores to display its products and has even created barriers of entry to other manufacturers in that channel. The

<sup>18</sup> Source: Toy Industry Association Annual Report

<sup>19</sup> Source: Hoovers Online, SEC filings and Annual Reports from Mattel, Hasbro, Lego and LeapFrog

<sup>20</sup> Source: Brio Annual Financial Statements

<sup>21</sup> Source: Newell Rubbermaid Annual Report, SEC Filing, Hoovers Online

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



company has positioned its products similar to Brio but with a lower price tag and quality. The company has had a disappointing year in the U.S. according to the Wall Street Journal, but remains a competitor with a strong distribution channel and world-class product development capabilities.

The following summarizes the size and structure of the Playroom Furniture Market:

Exhibit 2-G The Playroom Furniture Market  
Summary of Market Segments and Competitive Dynamics



Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



### 3 The Opportunity

*"Willingness to pay for products that encourage child development is on the rise."*

Play is a child's work and education; it is how they learn and grow. Parents are more willing to pay for products that encourage or facilitate play as they become more educated about child development and the importance of play. Evidence of this trend is the growing spending on educational toys (growing at 9% for the last three years)<sup>22</sup>, and playroom furnishings (growing at 7% per year<sup>23</sup>). P'kolino has identified a powerful opportunity that leverages this trend.

Through our research we discovered that the basis for play - the play space and its furniture - is in need of improvement. We identified four key areas for improvement:

*"The basis for play - the play space and its furniture – is in need of improvement"*

- Existing playroom furniture compromises play because it is designed for miniature adults and not children.
- Playroom furniture loses its value fast because children quickly outgrow it. One size fits all in playroom furniture simply doesn't work.
- The child loses interest in the playroom furniture quickly because it has few applications.
- Lastly, and probably most obviously, play spaces are cluttered and unorganized.

*"Parents want to know the right toy to buy"*

We also discovered that parents are feeling the pressure of wanting to know the right toy to buy, at the right time to effectively support the development of their children.

### 4 Company and Product Description

#### 4.1 Company and Description:

P'kolino, LLC is based in Woburn, MA and is a product design and marketing company. We believe play is an integral part of a child's healthy development and that current play furniture compromises play. It is our goal to improve the play experience at home. P'kolino currently has 4 product concepts under development through a partnership with the Rhode Island School of Design (RISD).

**"P'kolino, improving play at home."**

<sup>22</sup> According to Parents Magazine and LeapFrog SEC filings

<sup>23</sup> According to marketresearch.com

Confidential Information  
 Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
 Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



*"P'kolino's playroom furniture is designed for the child and functional for the parent. It grows and adapts to the child's stage of development and integrates with toys/activities to encourage and enhance play"*

#### **4.2 The P'kolino Concept**

P'kolino will address the opportunity in the play space by designing truly innovative play furniture and child development stage specific toy kits.

These solutions will have the following characteristics:

1. We are making play more productive by designing playroom furniture for the ones who use it, the children. **Functional**.
2. We are increasing the useful life of the furniture by designing it to grow with the child through key stages of development. **Multi-purpose**.
3. We are maintaining interest in the furniture by increasing its uses. The furniture is designed to be a toy and to transform to different activities. This transformation is made possible by add-on toy kits that change the P'kolino table from activity to activity (for example: from a Lego table to a painting table to a train table and so on). **Multi-purpose**.
4. We are organizing the play space by designing the toy kits to simply fold-up and store away in a child friendly storage unit. **Functional**.

In addition to these key differentiators P'kolino's products will be safe, beautiful and fun, as these are necessary attributes to succeed.

These solutions also address the challenges parents have of selecting the right toys for the right stage because our toy kits will be packaged for specific stages of child development.

The "grow with the child" capabilities of our products will reduce our customers' total costs of ownership and provide us with opportunities for follow-on sales. Follow-on products will be in the form of developmentally appropriate toy kits, upgrade packages and accessories.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



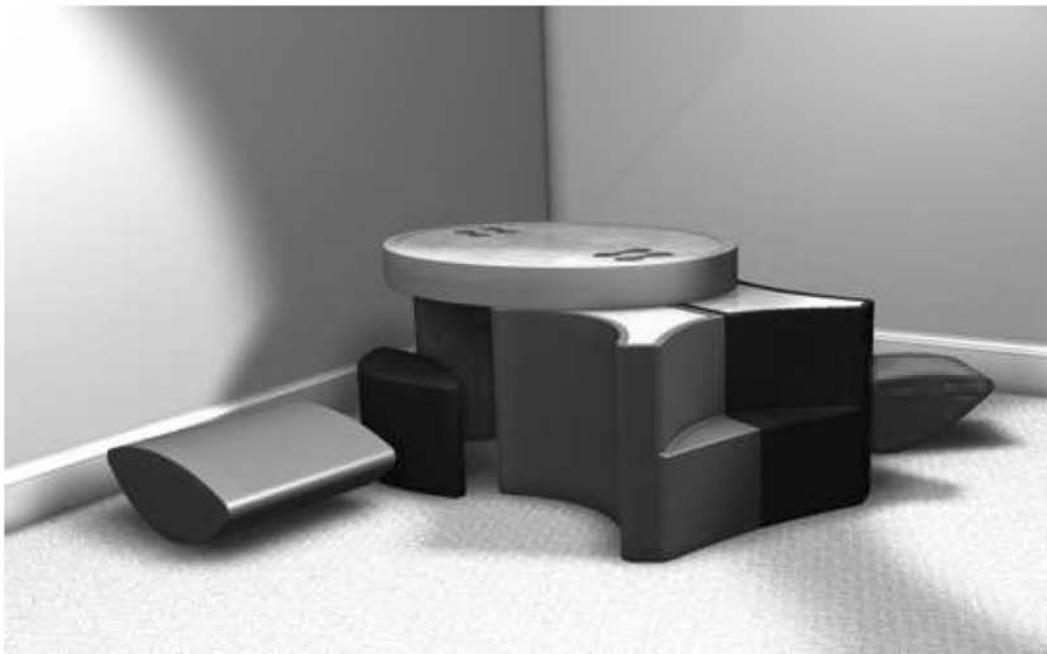
#### 4.3 Product Description

P'kolino's first product line will include two different table designs, a storage unit, and toy kits. Constant product innovation is part of our strategy, and it will be supported with a product development effort in order to expand our current offering and include accessories and new products every year.

##### Initial Product line

Table A shows a very contemporary, style driven concept, with plenty of multifunctional (i.e., grow with the child) capabilities resulting from its unique modular design. It is composed of 7 separate pieces and designed to accommodate at least four stages of the child's development. This product will be the hub for the toy kits and the foundation of our playroom offering. The product is made of wood, high-density foam and fabric.

**Note:** *the following are pictures of prototypes of Table A; the actual product may be different. They are presented here for the purpose of illustrating the concept.*



Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Prototypes designed at risd for P'kolino



Packaging Mode



Toddler Mode



Infant Mode



Two table Mode



Toddler Mode



Toddler 1 Mode

For more information please contact us at [info@pkolino.com](mailto:info@pkolino.com)  
-Page 19 -

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Children Interacting with Table "A"

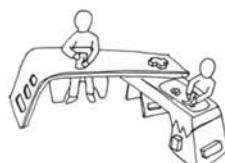


Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA

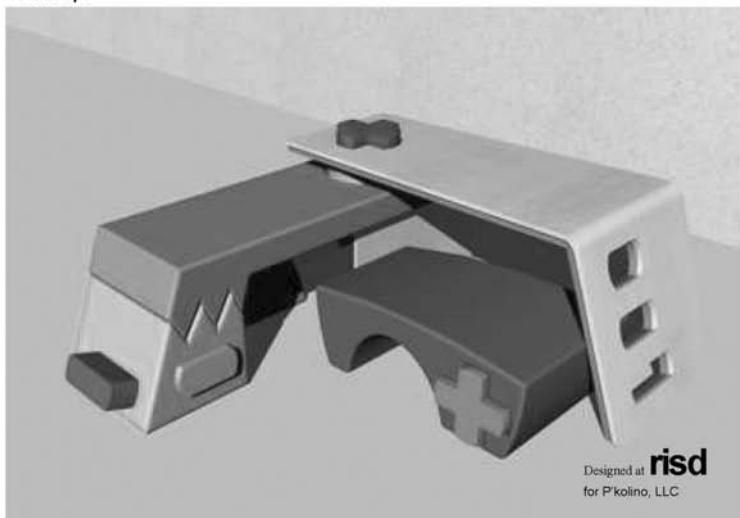


Table B shows a more playful design, with an almost endless array of configurations. This six-piece concept is designed around the belief that children can also play with the furniture itself. Most of the pieces are very light to facilitate child interaction and unit reconfiguration. This unit is intended for the more sophisticated parent, one that is willing to pay more for an exceptional product. This table is made of wood, high-density foam and fabric.

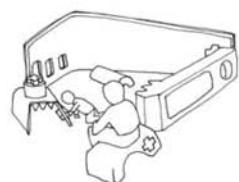
**Note:** the following are pictures of prototypes of Table B; the actual product may be different. They are presented here for the purpose of illustrating the concept



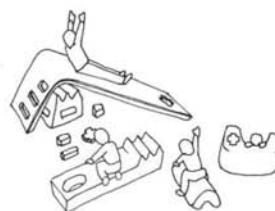
playtable  
age 4-6



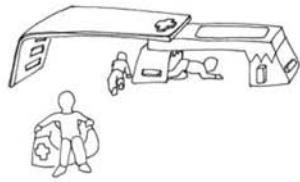
Designed at **risd**  
for P'kolino, LLC



playset  
age 2



playground 2  
age 3-6



playground  
age 2-4

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Prototypes designed at risd for P'kolino



Packaging Mode



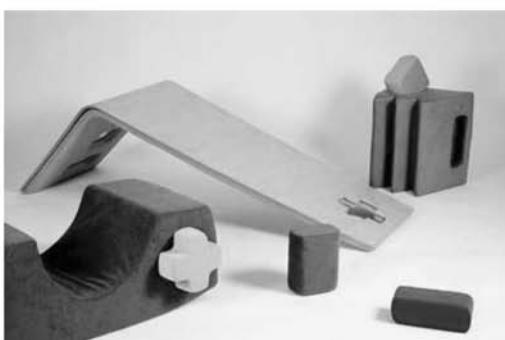
Table Mode



Table Mode



Playground Mode



Playground Mode



Table Mode

For more information please contact us at [info@pkolino.com](mailto:info@pkolino.com)  
-Page 22 -

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Children Interacting with Table "B"



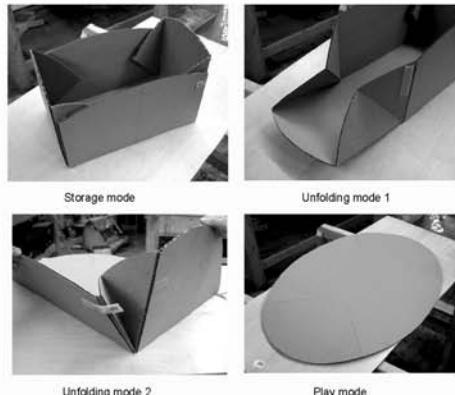
Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



**The Toy kits:** These pieces are the link between the furniture and the toy. They are storage compartments that unfold on top of Table A to change the table top into an activity or toy /play enhancer. The inside of the toy kit will be designed to accommodate the requirements of a specific activity and child stage of development.

For example: if we wanted to convert the table into a toddler “Lego” table, the interior of the toy kit will have stage appropriate Lego plates attached; the unit itself will also hold the Lego blocks. When unfolded, it locks on top of Table A, transforming it into a toddler Lego table. When done, simply fold it up and store it in our storage unit.

*Note: the following are pictures of prototypes of the Toy kits; the actual product may be different. They are presented here for the purpose of illustrating the concept*



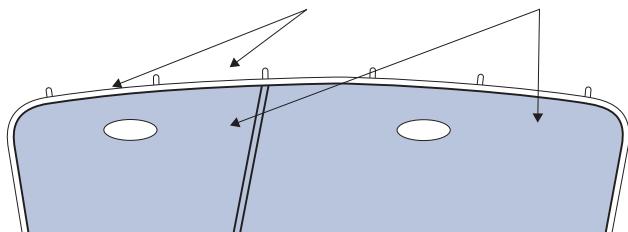
Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



**The Storage Unit:** this unit will hold up to 10 toy kits and is designed to fit the design style of Table A. It allows for ease of use and accommodates a child's height and strength. The unit is made out of wood, but the drawers will be light enough so that children can open them.

**Note:** the following are pictures of prototypes of the storage unit; the actual product may be different. They are presented here for the purpose of illustrating the concept

With capabilities of holding toy kits on top of the piece or in the drawers



Storage Unit



Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Prototypes designed at risd for P'kolino



(See more pictures in the appendix)

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



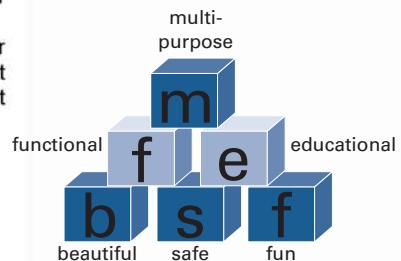
*"Our key differentiating benefits will be the increased functionality, the improved educational value and the multi-purpose nature of our products"*

#### 4.4 Competitive Advantage

P'kolino product attributes can be summed up as follows:

- **Multi-purpose:** modifies for changes in activity and grows with children through their stages of development,
- **Functional:** designed to better fit how children use the product (i.e. not miniature adult furniture),
- **Educational,**
- **Fun,**
- **Safe and**
- **Beautiful:** visually appealing.

Exhibit 4-A  
Key Product Attributes



(Please refer to Appendix 12.2 for details on the product attributes).

Safety, beauty and fun are absolute necessities in this market. They are the attributes that most competitors have and ones that we will build our differentiating attributes on. Our key differentiating benefits will be the increased functionality, the improved educational value and the multi-purpose nature of our products. By focusing our product development on these key attributes we will have a clear competitive advantage.

Exhibit 4-B

Attribute Comparison Chart – P'kolino's Assessment (rankings: 1 is best in the category, 10 is the worst)

Competitors	Mkt. Segment	Educational	Safe	Multipurpose	Fun	Functional	Beautiful
P'kolino	High / Mid	2	3	1	2	1	3
Brio	Mass	3	5	2	3	7	7
Fischer-Price	Mass	1	2	3	1	6	8
Imaginarium	Mass	4	4	4	4	4	9
Little Tykes	Mass	5	1	6	5	2	10
Pottery Barn Kids	Mid	8	8	5	6	5	1
Land of Nod	Mid	7	7	7	7	3	2
Truck	High	9	10	8	10	8	5
Casa Kids	High	10	9	9	9	9	6
Videl	High	6	6	10	8	10	4

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



#### **4.5 Our Strategy**

Our strategy is designed to accomplish four key objectives:

1. Develop a strong brand → “owning the play-space at home”
2. Develop a solid customer base → “loyalty and recurring revenue”
3. Achieve predictable and sustainable growth → “good margins and repeat purchases”
4. Develop a culture of innovation → “capability of generating champion products”

*“P'kolino targets the high-end segment because customers are market influencers, they value brand over price and offers better margins. P'kolino will later expand to the mid segment”*

##### **Overview:**

To penetrate the children's play market we will need to target influential customers and develop a strong brand. From this position we will expand our product line and extend into new markets expanding our customer base. We will maintain long relationships with our customers by offering them development stage appropriate upgrades, toy kits and accessories. This will provide us with recurring and predictable revenue.

##### **Market Entry:**

P'kolino will first target the high-end playroom market because of its favorable characteristics:

- it values innovation and brand over price,
- its consumers are market influencers, and
- it offers the highest margins.

We will focus on establishing and building a reputation for high quality products and target consumers that want the best for their children. Through a mix of public relations and grassroots marketing we will establish our products in the high-end market. Concurrently, we will develop toy-kits and accessories that integrate and complement the furniture to deliver a complete play experience.

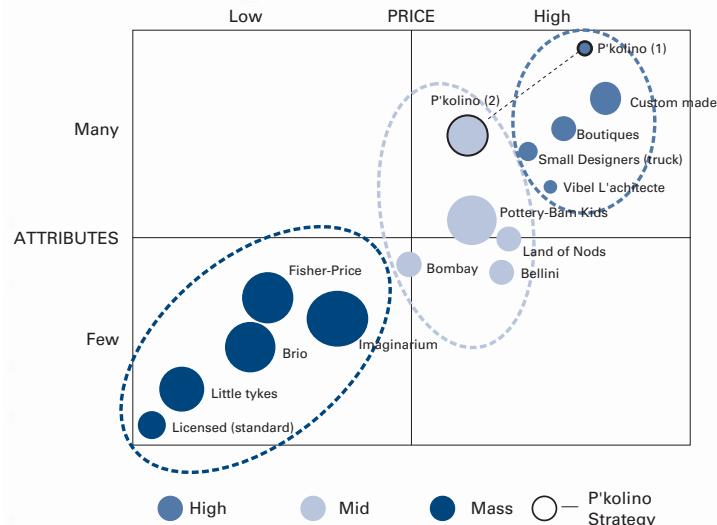
##### **Growth Strategy:**

Growth in the high-end market is limited due to its size. In order to increase our customer base for sales of additional P'kolino products we will need to expand into the larger mid-market segment. To do this we will leverage our high-end brand reputation and introduce lower cost tables and storage with similar attributes into the larger mid-market. We expect to execute this expansion in our third year of operation.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA

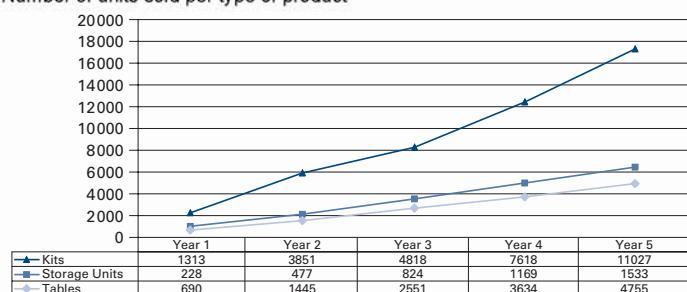


Exhibit 4-C  
Market Penetration Strategy



Growth will also be achieved by maintaining long term relationships with our customers to promote repeat purchases of upgrades, accessories and toy kits. Given the targeted age range (0-5 years) of our products and the average of over 2 children per household, a single customer relationship could last over 8 years with multiple sales per year. This will give us a recurring and predictable revenue stream. As we increase our customer base and product line the revenue from these repeat sales will increase dramatically.

Exhibit 4-D  
Number of units sold per type of product



Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Given the difficulties of the mass market, which include troubled distribution channels, intense price competition, and price sensitive customers, it is not currently part of our market extension plan. However, we will continue to evaluate it. Should conditions become more favorable, we may consider moving to this segment.

Continued product innovation is a key to this market penetration and expansion strategy. To achieve this we will focus internally on creating a culture of innovation through

- Proven product research and development methodologies,
- Creative work environments and employment arrangements, and
- Hiring proven talent that fits our dynamic, innovating culture.

## 5 Marketing Plan

**Overview:** We will bring this product to the market by targeting customers in the high-end market segment that want the best for their child. We will reach this audience through public relations, grassroots marketing, direct marketing and strategic distribution channels.

### 5.1 Understanding the Customer

Our primary customers will be parents who want the best for their children, and are willing and able to pay a premium for a better product.

*"Our primary customers will be parents who want the best for their children, and are willing and able to pay a premium for a better product"*

According to our research, our initial customers will be educated consumers who possess a strong desire to provide the best environment possible for their children to play at home. They are likely to spend a considerable amount of time researching the web for options, and have a strong bias toward friend and family recommendations (word-of-mouth).

We also see several key influencers in this purchasing decision, they are:

- "Authorities" – Experts in the field of child rearing/development. (e.g., Teachers, Care-givers, Publications).
- Children
- Grandparents
- Peers – Other parents

In addition to being influencers grandparents are also secondary customers. Grandparents are often richer than parents, more involved and

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



buy large gifts for their grandchildren. The percentage of buyers of relevant children's products that are grandparents.<sup>24</sup>

- Games and toys 26%
- Infant furniture 21%
- Children furniture 16%

There are nearly 60 million grandparents in the U.S. at present and they spend an estimated \$30 billion per year on their grandchildren<sup>25</sup>. Although grandparents exercise significant purchasing power, they are likely to ask for parent consent before they buy our products; making the parent our core customer.

## **5.2 Target Customer Profile**

**The demographics of our primary target customer are:**

- Household Income \$150K+ \*
- At least one child 0-5 years old.
- Female \*
- College educated\* (or higher)
- Live in the Northeast\*

\*These demographics have the highest indexes for infant, toddler and pre-school purchases.<sup>26</sup>

**Additionally these consumers are:**

- Not price sensitive.
- More influenced by the product benefits.
- The "concerned" parent, those who genuinely want the best for their child.
- Visionaries; they see the benefits and are going to set the trend for others in this segment to follow

These parents are in parenting groups such as Mothers Forums and Play Groups, and enroll children in early developmental classes (e.g., Creative Movements). They subscribe to parenting magazines, read parenting books or consult with Child Development/Parenting Experts. As a result, they are influenced by "Authorities" either through reading they have done themselves or by first-hand interaction with teachers and caregivers.

Other customer segments in this market are the "competitive" and "compensating" parents. They have the same demographic profile but have different interests. They are the followers. The "concerned" educated parent sets the bar and these others follow.

<sup>24</sup> Source: Simmons data cited by Interep

<sup>25</sup> Source: Simmons data cited by Interep

<sup>26</sup> Source: Simmons Market Research Bureau, Fall 2002 Study of Media and Markets; Packaged Facts

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



As we move down market to the mid-market, the primary customer demographics and behaviors are the same except for the following.

- Household Income drops to \$100K+.
- They are influenced by the premium market.
- Due to increased price sensitivity they are more pragmatic in their purchasing decisions.
- They are more likely to do their own research (more shopping around, talking to their friends). Word-of-mouth is very influential in this market.

### **5.3 Pricing Strategy**

Market Entry – High-end pricing strategy will be market-demand pricing to maximize per sale profit. We anticipate the following price ranges per product:

*"Market Entry – High-end pricing strategy will be market-demand pricing"*

- Table A = \$650
- Table B = \$1200
- Storage Unit = \$450
- Toy Kit = \$50 (average)
- Providing contribution margins between 50-60%

Expansion to the mid market will require a different pricing strategy. Lower table prices (around \$350) for better market penetration will increase the user/installed base and provide a larger marketing base for the toy kits and accessories.

### **5.4 Distribution Strategy**

*"P'kolino's distribution goal is to have over 85% of sales revenue come from channels direct-to-the-customer"*

P'kolino's distribution goal is to have over 85%<sup>27</sup> of sales come from direct-to-the-customer channels within five years. We expect that we will have to start with a distribution mix of approximately 65% of our sales through retail. Retail channels will enable customer exposure to, and interaction with, the products. As the understanding of our products grows and the brand develops we will shift the distribution mix to direct channels.

**Retail Stores:** Retailers will be chosen based on their clientele. We will target non-traditional retailers that give P'kolino a "showroom" for its designs. For example, we will target The Museum of Modern Arts (MoMA) store which features uniquely designed and educationally beneficial products as one of our first outlets. This strategy will help us reach the right

<sup>27</sup> Other furniture merchants have proven success in direct channels. Land of Nod estimated at nearly 100% sales are direct; through catalog and web. Pottery Barn Kids – direct sales = 72% of its \$392 million in revenue. As stated in the 11/18/04 Wall Street Journal "William Sonoma's, inc Third Quarter 2004 results."

Confidential Information  
 Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
 Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



customer and generate some exposure for our products. To encourage customer interaction with us we will offer a free Toy Kit to those who have purchased a table or storage unit through a retail channel. The customer will redeem the free kit through a direct channel (web or mail) so that we may capture relevant customer data. This customer data is critical to our direct marketing to support our migration of customers to the direct sales channels as well as to encourage future purchases.

**Direct-to-the-Customer:** The goal is to have 85% of our revenue come through direct channels (web, mail and phone). Based on the proven success of other furniture merchants in direct channels (Land of Nod estimated at nearly 100% sales from direct channels like catalogs and the web,<sup>28</sup> and Pottery Barn Kids direct sales equal 72% of its \$392MM in revenue)<sup>29</sup> we believe this is achievable.

The primary direct channel will be through the internet as 70% of our target customers have high-speed internet access. We will also offer mail and phone orders.

We will build a website that provides consumers with an easy product review, selection and purchasing experience. Proliferation of high-speed internet access enables us to show the many benefits of our products through the latest multi-media tools (streaming video demonstrations of our products in the form of infomercials through the web).

### **5.5 Communication Strategy – Year 1**

**Overview:** In the first year our communications strategy will focus on targeted marketing that can be directly attributed to sales. We will try many different tactics to determine what generates the best dollar spent to sales ratio. Additionally, we will build the brand through low cost, guerrilla marketing efforts such as public relations and grassroots marketing.

---

<sup>28</sup> Our estimate based on Land of Nod's business model of direct sales and no retail store to date.  
<sup>29</sup> As stated in the 11/18/04 WSJ's "William Sonoma's, inc Third Quarter 2004 results."

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



**Exhibit 5-A Marketing Communications Strategy**

Marketing Initiative	Estimated Cost	Estimated Table Sales	Estimated Storage Sales	Estimated Toy Kit Sales	Total Units Sold	Marketing Cost/Sale
Public Relations	\$5,000	30	10	57	96	\$52
GrassRoots	\$5,000	80	26	151	257	\$19
Word-of-Mouth	\$5,000	50	17	94	161	\$31
Online	\$25,000	80	26	151	257	\$97
Advertising	\$15,000	50	17	94	161	\$93
Direct Marketing	\$20,000	70	23	132	225	\$89
Retail Marketing Exp.	\$6,000	330	109	622	1061	\$6
Total	\$ 81,000	690	228	1300	2218	\$37

### **Public Relations**

Public Relations (PR) will be at the center of our communications plan. The first phase of this plan is to utilize the PR potential of cooperation with Babson, the #1 entrepreneurship program in the country, and RISD, the #1 school of design. We have brought together these school's PR departments and have agreements to promote the story at no cost to us. To that end, we are developing a video documentary of the product design process to be used as a PR asset for the schools and P'kolino. From this PR exposure we intend to interest target market publications (e.g. Parenting Magazine) in P'kolino's story.

The PR effort will be a company priority. Management will make constant and persistent efforts to get new and compelling stories to the media. We will become a source of information for key media authorities and eventually seek product placement opportunities. Management will also seek active relationships with key media personalities to support our brand and products.

### **Grassroots Marketing**

Grassroots Marketing will be how we get the customers interacting with the product and start the word-of-mouth engine running. We will start this grassroots effort in Boston targeting Mother's Forums, Play Groups and Day Care Centers (e.g., Bright Horizons). We will expand this effort strategically through major cities in the Northeast. These customers will be driven to the direct channels for purchase.

### **Word-of-Mouth**

As noted, word-of-mouth is a powerful tool in this market. We will encourage word-of-mouth by identifying key influencers in target markets and seeking to make them advocates of P'kolino products. Additionally, we will seek a child development expert endorsement to add additional

*"Word-of-mouth is a powerful medium in this market."*

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



credibility. Word-of-mouth (viral marketing) tools such as referral benefits and e-mail forwarding will also be used.

#### Email and Web

The Web ([www.pkolino.com](http://www.pkolino.com)) will be a powerful online catalog and direct purchase channel. At pkolino.com we will have product pictures, descriptions and video demonstrations to give customers as near to a physical world shopping experience as possible. The web will also be a means for us to generate awareness through targeted e-mail, keyword search, banner advertising and enhanced web advertising tools (such as rich media and dynamic banners).

#### Retail Sales Marketing Materials

Collateral materials such as brochures and point of purchase displays will be necessary to support our sales through retailers. Initially we will have a brochure from the RISD product development process that we can use for early discussions. We will also develop a high quality flyer for the two tables and the storage system (Storage unit and Kit). High-quality brochures and catalogs will be developed for use by retailers and distributed through mail and grassroots marketing campaigns.

#### Advertising

Our advertising goal will be to increase awareness of P'kolino in the high-end market. Our advertising efforts will focus on media that reach a high concentration of our target customer. The advertising will be primarily in print media because of its ability to show our product for a relatively low cost. These ads will drive customers back to [pkolino.com](http://pkolino.com) for more information or purchase.

#### Direct Mail

In the first year of operation and in preparation for the 2005 Christmas season we will run a direct mail test. This mailing will target high-end customers in the Northeast to keep resources and expenses to a minimum. A successful test would result in about 1+% purchase rate from mailed brochures. Should this test prove successful we will look to roll-out a larger direct campaign prior to the Christmas season.

### **5.6 Sales Strategy**

The founders will serve as the sales force making direct calls to strategically identified retailers. It will be our strategy to focus on a select number of local retailers so the founders can manage these relationships and still focus on other priorities. When we expand into the mid-market (in year 3) we will hire a dedicated sales manager.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## **5.7 Sales and Marketing Forecast**

We expect that sales will start slowly as our grassroots efforts and word-of-mouth campaign gain momentum. In the first year we expect to generate revenues of \$600K based on table unit sales of 690 units. Most of these sales will be achieved through grassroots marketing efforts, web direct sales and two or three retailers in the Northeast. On average the company will spend \$220 marketing dollars per each new customer, and each customer is expected to generate an average of \$887 in revenues during the first year. Our expectation is that this number will drop to \$451 in average revenue per customer per year as time passes.

Exhibit 5-B Marketing Dollars per Customer

Customer Base	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
<b>New Customers</b>	<b>690</b>	<b>1,445</b>	<b>2,551</b>	<b>3,634</b>	<b>4,755</b>
Customer Base	690	2,135	4,686	8,221	12,856
Customer Base Growth		409%	319%	275%	256%
Average Sales p/Customer	\$887	\$836	\$624	\$507	\$451
Marketing \$ p/New Customer	\$176	\$246	\$219	\$237	\$248
Marketing \$ p/Customer	\$176	\$166	\$119	\$105	\$92

## **5.8 Communications Strategy Years 2-5**

In Year 2 P'kolino's communications strategy will be similar to Year 1 but with a greater focus on marketing tactics that will give us a broader reach to expand our customer base. It will also differ in that it will introduce tactics to reach existing customers for repeat purchases. We will:

- Continue our Public Relations efforts but target more national publications.
- Continue our grassroots events and word-of-mouth efforts but expand their scale.
- Look more to direct marketing, advertising and the web to increase brand awareness and drive sales.
- Begin relationship marketing and efforts to gain repeat sales from existing customers.

Year 2 will serve as preparation and learning for expansion into the mid-market where some of the guerrilla tactics may still apply but our marketing efforts will have to grow to a new scale.

In Years 3-5 we will continue to shift our marketing mix to media that enable us to reach more customers. However, it will be critical to do so in an increasingly targeted manner. Direct marketing (mail and web) will be our primary medium because of its ability to target precise customer segments,

Confidential Information  
 Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
 Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



gather marketing and purchase behavior data and enable us to maintain one-to-one communications for an extended customer relationship. With this data we can become increasingly efficient at acquiring and retaining customers and thus reducing our marketing expense per sale.

It will also be important for us to maintain some advertising presence to keep brand awareness high in the general market. This awareness is necessary to help the targeted marketing break through the clutter.

## 6 The Team

**Antonio Turco-Rivas:** co-founder and Sales & Operations Manager is a Babson MBA 2005 and father of one. He has successfully launched two technology ventures in Latin America. Antonio's background also includes two years as a Corporate Finance consultant for Venezuela's most important Investment Bank and two years as a special assets Manager at the fifth largest Latin American Bank in the U.S. Antonio is a proven entrepreneur, manager and sales professional.

**J.B. (Joseph B.) Schneider:** co-founder and Marketing & Product Development Manager is a Babson MBA 2005 and father of three, with over 10 years of marketing strategy and communications experience. J.B. has been a project manager and led key customer acquisition and retention programs for several Fortune 500 companies. He has also been an integral part of entrepreneurial ventures and their products and marketing development.

**Rhode Island School of Design (RISD):** RISD's Furniture Department is ranked #1 by the US News & World Report as the best graduate industrial design program in the world, and is recognized for the creativity and quality of its students. Currently 15 designers and one faculty member are actively designing the first versions of the P'kolino products.

**Advisors:** Individuals for these roles are currently being evaluated and will be filled at a later date.

- Child Development Expert
- Manufacturing Expert
- Juvenile Product Market Expert

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## 7 Operations

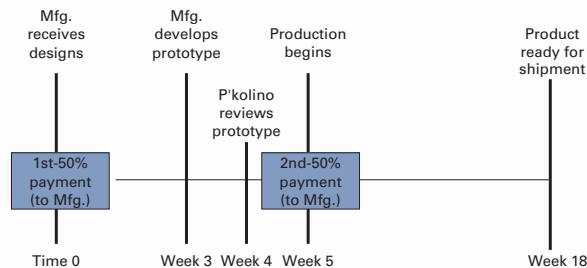
### 7.1 Operations Strategy

P'kolino's core functions (design and marketing strategy) will be the main operational activities performed in-house. All other operational activities like manufacturing, packaging, shipping and some office/administrative and customer service functions will be outsourced.<sup>30</sup>

For manufacturing, the company has identified several manufacturers in the Bento Goncalves region in Brazil that are currently operating with underutilized (excess) capacity and have the technology and expertise to manufacture our products. We have partnered with one of these companies to manufacture our first line of products. AFECOM, our first manufacturing partner, produces over 140,000 furniture pieces per year and is well known in Europe and Latin America. Late in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of operations, P'kolino will reexamine this strategy (when volumes increase) and evaluate alternative manufacturing options in Asia. P'kolino products are built with wood, high-density foam and fabrics. AFECOM's high density foam manufacturing technology, finishing quality, speed, volume requirements and logistic costs are better and more accommodating to P'kolino during this first stage.

The economics of the manufacturing process will be determined by our ability to negotiate with potential manufacturers. For the purpose of this document we will use industry averages.<sup>31</sup> For minimum orders of 150 units, the payment terms are 50% up front and 50% on shipment. For the first year of operations we plan to complete two 150 table orders. Production time is 4 weeks for prototypes and 10 weeks to manufacture and order shipment of the approved prototypes.<sup>32</sup>

Exhibit 7-A  
Operations Cycle



<sup>30</sup> Outsourcing cost for manufacturing, packaging, shipping are included in the Cost of goods sold, based on industry average (AFMA)

<sup>31</sup> Sources: AFMA – American Furniture Manufacturing Association

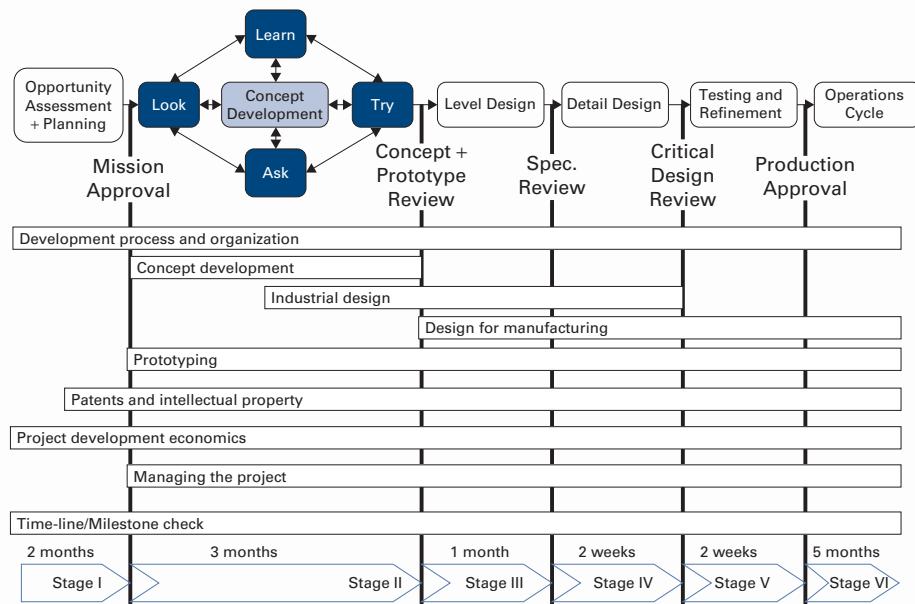
<sup>32</sup> Operations Cycle is a 14 week process for existing products, and an 18 week process for new products

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



Regarding the product development process for P'kolino, it takes 9 to 12 months to develop a new product (from concept to customer).<sup>33</sup>

**Exhibit 7-B**  
**P'kolino Product Development Process**



In developing the first product line, the company leveraged its relationship with RISD. For the second generation of products P'kolino will have to assemble a product development team composed of both full-time employees and collaborators. Marketing and sales will also require additional personal, as will in-house administrative and customer service responsibilities. Our staffing plan follows.<sup>34</sup>

<sup>33</sup> Based on the current P'kolino product development process.

<sup>34</sup> Salaries are based on Boston average salaries for the respective positions according to the Career Journal (Wall Street Journal online edition) salary search (Salaryexpert.com)

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



**Exhibit 7-C**  
**P'kolino Staffing Plan**

<b>Staffing Plan</b>	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
CEO	1	1	1	1	1
	\$40,000	\$70,000	\$120,000	\$150,000	\$220,000
COO	1	1	1	1	1
	\$40,000	\$70,000	\$120,000	\$130,000	\$130,000
Product Development Mgr.	1	1	1	1	1
	\$69,680	\$72,467	\$75,366	\$78,381	
Product Development Staff	1	1	1	1	1
	\$54,080	\$56,243	\$58,493	\$60,833	
Operations and Logistics Mgr.		1	1	1	1
		\$64,896	\$67,492	\$70,192	
Marketing Manager		1	1	1	1
		\$80,038	\$83,240	\$86,570	
Sales Manager	1	1	1	1	1
	\$35,000	\$70,000	\$72,800	\$75,712	\$78,740
Sales and Marketing Staff		1	2	2	2
		\$58,406	\$60,743	\$63,172	
Direct Channel Support		1	1	1	1
		\$64,896	\$67,492	\$70,192	
Customer Service Staff		1	1	1	1
		\$48,672	\$50,619	\$52,644	
Office Administration	1	1	1	1	1
	\$33,280	\$34,611	\$35,996	\$37,435	
Accounting			1	1	
			\$39,370	\$40,945	
Advisors	1	1	1	1	1
	\$20,000	\$31,200	\$32,448	\$33,746	\$35,096
<b>Total Headcount</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Total Salaries</b>	<b>\$135,000</b>	<b>\$398,240</b>	<b>\$863,334</b>	<b>\$989,010</b>	<b>\$1,087,371</b>
Benefits	\$20,250	\$59,736	\$129,500	\$148,352	\$163,106
<b>Total Compensation</b>	<b>\$155,250</b>	<b>\$457,976</b>	<b>\$992,835</b>	<b>\$1,137,362</b>	<b>\$1,250,476</b>

Benefits are estimated as a percentage of salaries (15%). Eventual hires are considered in the financial statements for the product development, sales, and marketing efforts.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## 7.2 Development Timeline

Exhibit 7-D  
Pkolino Timeline

Month/Activity	M1	M2	M3	M4	M5	M6	M7	M8	M9	M10	M11	M12	M13	M14	M15	M16	M17	M18	M19	M20	M21	M22	M23
Hire child development expert as advisor																							
Secure funding																							
Launch RISD/BABSON PR campaign																							
Production 150 tables + storage + kits																							
Web site development																							
Develop institutional sales channel																							
Hire marketing/tech intern																							
Office relocation																							
Launch grassroot marketing campaign																							
Team focuses on sales																							
Production 160 tables + storage + kits (2nd)																							
Collection efforts																							
Production ~400 tables + storage + kits																							
Hire Product Development Manager																							
Hire Marketing Manager																							
Web site improvements																							
Marketing campaign																							
Production 500 tables + storage + kits																							
Team focuses on sales																							
Collection efforts																							

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## 8 Critical Risks

- Highly competitive market – All segments of this market are highly competitive, and this is particularly true in the mid and mass segments. P'kolino will compete with a distinctive product and a different value proposition as a niche player. We will establish our brand in the high-end segment and then moving down to more competitive markets. However, the potential remains that competitors will identify our niche, before our brand has a foothold. We will rely on innovation and speed to compete if competitors attack our niche.
- Copycats – Intellectual property protection can be circumvented to produce competing and possibly cheaper version of our products. P'kolino will base its designs not only on beauty, but on improved usability to the end user (the child). Designing products that are better suited for children to play with, while creating identifiable differences and defining brand attributes that are more difficult to replicate.
- Lawsuits – Although we will take precautions to make our product safe for children it is possible that children may injure themselves while using one of our products. We will carry product liability insurance to protect us financially from such an event but the potential brand damage must be recognized.
- Product defects and/or recall – P'kolino will take precautions to develop durable, reliable and safe products using materials that have proven to stand the test of time. However, it is possible given the expected useful life of these products and the use by children that these products could break creating hazards for children. Should this occur and depending on the situation P'kolino may be obligated or feel it necessary to issue a recall of the defective product. Some manufacturers carry insurance in case the defect is caused by some error during the manufacturing process. We will further explore this possibility.
- Sales lower than expected – In case this happens P'kolino will have the capability of adjusting production volume and shifting strategy fairly quickly because of our size and structure. We will also retain sufficient cash to support an increase in the number of inventory days.

## Preparation Questions

P'kolino is a children's furniture company that was launched in 2005. As you read the business plan, keep the following questions in mind:

1. Does the business plan tell a coherent and compelling story?
2. Does the plan capture all of the learning that Antonio and JB have accumulated?
3. What three questions do you think Antonio and JB need to answer through further planning before they launch the venture?
4. What are the three strongest aspects of the plan?
5. What areas need improvement?



Financial stock chart. (Source: Photodisc/Kick Images/Getty Images, Inc.)

## BUILDING YOUR PRO-FORMA FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Many entrepreneurs are intimidated by numbers, even after they've gone through the business planning process. They understand their concept and they even have a good sense of the business model, but ask them to put together pro-forma financials or read an income statement and they have a panic attack.

You might feel that building your financials or understanding them isn't that important because you can always hire an accountant. Although an accountant is a useful advisor, in the pre-launch stage, the lead entrepreneur needs to understand the numbers inside and out. After all, the lead entrepreneur is the person who will be articulating her vision to potential employees, vendors, customers, and investors. If the entrepreneur is easily stumped by simple questions of profitability or costs, potential employees, customers, and other parties important to the new venture's success will lose confidence in the lead entrepreneur's ability to execute on the concept. Financial statements serve to bridge the entrepreneur's great idea and what that idea really means in terms of dollars and cents. So, although it can be painful, learn the numbers behind your business. The rewards of gaining this deep insight are often the difference between success and failure.



If for no other reason, the lead entrepreneur needs to understand the numbers so she can decide whether this business has the potential to provide her with a good living. It is too easy to get caught in a trap where a new venture is slowly draining away your investment or where you are working, in real terms, for less than the minimum wage.<sup>1</sup> The goal of this chapter is to give you an introduction to entrepreneurial financial planning. Unlike in existing businesses, which have an operating history, entrepreneurs must develop their financials from scratch. There are no previous trends in revenue and costs that you can use as a basis to project future revenues and costs. Yet the failure to come up with solid projections may cost you your initial investment as well as that of your investors. This chapter will help you generate sound projections.

## Common Mistakes

In preparing this chapter, we sent an e-mail to several acquaintances who are professional equity investors (either angels or venture capitalists). We asked them, “What are the most common mistakes you see when you review an entrepreneur’s business proposal?” We wanted to know what “red flags” made them hesitant to believe that the business could survive and succeed. Here are the six mistakes they consistently cited.

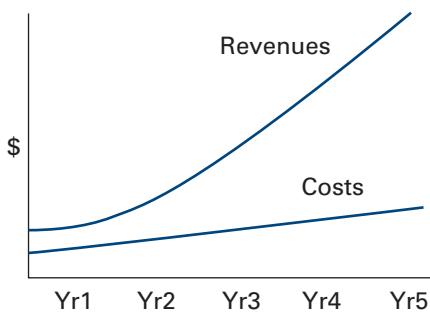


Figure 8.1

### Hockey stick sales growth

1. **Not understanding the revenue drivers.** Entrepreneurs need to know what the leverage points are that drive revenues. They need to understand how many customers are likely to see the product, how many of those who see it will buy it, and how much, on average, they will buy each time. Although every entrepreneur claims his estimates are “conservative,” 99% of the time entrepreneurs are overly optimistic in their projections. So avoid the “conservative” adjective; it strikes most sophisticated investors as naïve.
2. **Underestimating costs.** If you were to graph the revenue and cost projections of entrepreneurs over time, you would often see revenues growing in a “hockey stick” fashion, while costs slowly progress upward (see Figure 8.1). We often see revenue projections of \$15 million after five years on costs of only \$5 million. That is unbelievable. When we dig into those numbers, we often see that the firm has only five employees in year five. That assumes revenues per employee of \$3 million, which is nearly impossible. Often entrepreneurs underestimate how much infrastructure they need in the way of employees and physical assets to achieve that level of sales. Entrepreneurs also underestimate the cost of marketing expenditures to acquire and retain customers. Poor projections lead to cash crunches and ultimately to failure.
3. **Underestimating time to generate revenues.** Pro-forma financials often show sales occurring immediately. Typically, a business will incur costs for many months before it can generate revenue. For instance, if you are opening a restaurant, you will incur rent, inventory, and labor costs, among others, before you generate a dime in revenue. Another “red flag” is how quickly revenues will ramp up. Often projections show the business at full capacity within the first year. That is rarely realistic.
4. **Lack of comparables.** Investors typically think about the entrepreneur’s concept from their knowledge of similar businesses. They will compare your gross margins, net income margins, and other metrics to industry standards and selected benchmark companies. Yet many entrepreneurs’ projections have ratios that far exceed industry standards, and when questioned about this above-average performance, they can’t explain it. You need to understand your business model in relation to the industry and be able to explain any differences.

5. **Top-down versus bottom-up forecasting.** Investors often hear entrepreneurs claim that their revenues represent 3% of the market after year three. The implication is that it is easy to get that 3%. Investors know that, although it doesn't sound like much, the trick is how you get to that 3%. They want to see the process—the cost of acquiring, serving, and retaining the customer. Investors won't believe that you can get 3% without causing competitors to take notice and action.
6. **Underestimating time to secure financing.** The last pet peeve of investors is that entrepreneurs assume financing will close quickly. Whether entrepreneurs want to raise \$25,000 or \$1 million, they project it will happen in the next month. In reality, it often takes as long as six months to close a round of financing. Fred Adler, famed venture capitalist who invested in Data General, used to hand out t-shirts that said, "Happiness is a positive cash flow." Yet, if entrepreneurs are too optimistic about how quickly they can close a round of financing, they will quickly have negative cash flow, which often means they are out of business.

Understanding these pitfalls will help you generate realistic financials and, more importantly, enable you to convincingly articulate your business model so that you can sell your vision to employees, customers, vendors, and investors. Before we move on, here is a quick overview of financial statements.

## Financial Statement Overview

---

You'll need to include three standard financial statements in your business plan: the income statement, the statement of cash flows, and the balance sheet. Most people first want to know why there are three statements. The reason is simple: Each one provides a slightly different view of the company. Any one alone is only part of the picture. Together they provide a detailed description of the economics of your company.

The first of these statements, the **income statement**, describes how well a company conducted its business over a recent period of time—typically, a quarter (three months) or a year. This indicator of overall performance begins with the company's revenues on the top line. From that accounting of sales, subtract the company's expenses. These include

- Cost of the products that the company actually sold
- Selling, marketing, and administrative costs
- Depreciation—the estimated cost of using your property, plant, and equipment
- Interest on debts
- Taxes on profits

The bottom line of the statement (literally) is the company's profits—called *net income*. It is important to realize that the income statement represents a measurement of business performance. It is *not* a description of actual flows of money.

A company needs cash to conduct business. Without it, there is no business. The second financial statement, the **statement of cash flows**, monitors this crucial account. As the name implies, the statement of cash flows concerns itself exclusively with transactions that involve cash. It is not uncommon to have strong positive earnings on the income statement and a negative statement of cash flows—less cash at the end of the period than at the beginning. Just because you shipped a product does not necessarily mean you received the cash for it yet. Likewise, you might have purchased something like inventory or a piece of equipment that will not show up on your income statement until it is consumed or depreciated. Many noncash transactions are represented in the income statement.

What is curious (and sometimes confusing to those who have never worked with financial statements before) is the way the statement of cash flows is constructed. It starts with the bottom line (profits) of the income statement and works backward, removing all the noncash transactions. For example, since the income statement subtracted depreciation (the value of using your plant and equipment), the statement of cash flows adds it back in because you don't actually pay any depreciation expense to anybody. Similarly, the cash-flow statement needs to include things that you paid for but did not use that period. For example, you might have paid for inventory that has not yet sold, or you might have bought a piece of equipment that you will depreciate over time, so you would need to put those items on the cash flow statement. After all these adjustments, you are left with a representation of transactions that are exclusively cash.

The **balance sheet** enumerates all the company's assets, liabilities, and shareholder equity. **Assets** are all the things the company has that are expected to generate value over time—things like inventory, buildings, and equipment; accounts receivable (money that your customers still owe you); and cash. **Liabilities** represent all the money the company expects to pay eventually. These include accounts payable (money the company owes its suppliers), debt, and unpaid taxes. **Shareholder equity** is the money that shareholders have paid into the company as well as the company's earnings so far. Where the income statement describes a process or flow, the balance sheet is a snapshot of accounts at a specific point in time.

All your assets come from a liability or shareholder equity. Therefore, the sum of the asset accounts must equal the sum of the liabilities and shareholder equity account.

$$\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Shareholder Equity}$$

The assets are shown on the left side of the balance sheet, with the liabilities and shareholder equity on the right. The balance sheet *always* balances. If your balance sheet does not balance, you have made a mistake.

This is, of course, only a partial treatment of financial statements, but it should be enough for you to understand this chapter. We strongly recommend reading John Tracy's excellent book, *How to Read a Financial Report*.<sup>2</sup> It is a simple, short, and easy way for novices to quickly learn the basics. The remainder of this chapter will step you through a process to generate your financials.

## Building Your Pro-Forma Financial Statements

---

Figure 8.2 previews the points we will cover. Think of this as a checklist in developing your financials. Rigorously completing each step will lead to better financial projections and decisions. Underlying these steps are two methods: the **build-up method** and the **comparable method**. Our advice is to go through all the steps in an iterative fashion so that you not only know the numbers but also "own the numbers."

### Build-Up Method

---

Scientific findings suggest that people make better decisions by decomposing problems into smaller decisions. If you think about the business planning process, you are going through a series of questions that help you answer the big question: Is this an attractive opportunity? Thus, you evaluate the industry, the competition, the customer, and so forth. Based upon that analysis, you decide whether to launch the business or not. Constructing pro-forma financials is part of this process. In the build-up method, you look at the revenue you might generate

### **Build-Up Method**

1. Identify all your sources of revenues
2. Determine your revenues for a “typical day”
3. Understand your revenue drivers
  - a. How many customers you will serve
  - b. How much product they will buy
  - c. How much they will pay for each product
  - d. How often they will buy
4. Validate driver assumptions
  - a. Primary research (talk to customers, attend trade shows, etc.)
  - b. Secondary research (industry reports, company reports, etc.)
5. Recombine. Multiply the typical day by the number of days in a year
6. Determine Cost of Goods Sold (COGS) for a typical day
7. Recombine. Multiply COGS by number of days in a year
8. Determine operating expenses by most appropriate time frame
9. Refine operating costs
10. Create preliminary income statement

### **Comparable Method**

11. Compare revenue projections to industry metrics
12. Run scenario analysis
13. Compare common-sized cost percentages to industry averages

### **Building Integrated Financial Statements**

14. Derive monthly income statements for first two years
15. Create balance sheet
16. Create cash-flow statement

### **Final Steps**

17. Write a two- to three-page description of financial statements

### **Figure 8.2**

#### **Financial construction checklist**

in a typical day. You then multiple that day times the number of days you’re open in a year to come up with your yearly revenue. You then do a similar exercise for costs. Doing your revenues and costs on a daily basis helps you come up with more realistic annual projections.

The place to start is the income statement; the other two statements are in part derived from the income statement. First, identify all your revenue sources (usually the various product offerings). Second, identify all your costs. Once you have the business broken down into its component parts, the next step is to think about how much revenue you can generate in a year, but we can decompose this estimate as well.

## Revenue Projections

Instead of visualizing what you will sell in a month or a year, break it down into a typical day. For example, if you were starting the retail bookstore mentioned in the last chapter, you would estimate how many customers you might serve in a particular day and how much they would spend per visit based on the types of books and ancillary items they would buy. Figure 8.3 illustrates the process. First, it details the product mix and the average price for each item—books, maps, and other ancillary products. Second, it estimates the traffic that the store will draw on a typical day. It lists the assumptions at the bottom of the schedule. Then it estimates how many people will come into the store to buy an item and how many items they will buy. The last column gives total revenue per day by product category.

Figure 8.3 highlights critical revenue assumptions, or what we might call *revenue drivers*. Simply put, going through this exercise tells you how you will make money. It also helps you understand how you might be able to make more money. In other words, what revenue drivers can you influence? A retail shop might be able to increase its daily sales by increasing the traffic coming into the store through advertising or by increasing the number of people who buy and how much they buy through up-selling—“Can I get you anything else today?” Although this thought exercise is invaluable, your estimates are only as good as your assumptions.

How do you strengthen your assumptions? How do you validate the traffic level, the percentage of customers who buy, and so forth? The answer is through research. The first place to start is by talking to people who know the business. Talk to bookstore owners, book vendors, mall leasing agents, and others in the industry. A good way to interact with these participants is at industry trade shows. The next thing to do is to visit a number of bookstores and count how many people come in, what portion buy, and how much they spend. Although you might feel conspicuous, there are ways to do this field research without drawing attention to yourself or interfering in the store’s business. For example, you might go sit outside a bookstore and watch how many people who walk by enter the store and how many people

<b>Product/Service Description</b>	<b>Price</b>	<b>Units Sold/Day</b>	<b>Total Revenue</b>
1. Books	\$20	75 visitors*75%*1.5 books	\$1,687.50
2. Videos	\$30	75 visitors*15%*1 video	337.50
3. Maps	\$50	75 visitors*10%*1 map	375.00
4. Ancillary Items	\$100	75 visitors*5%*1 globe	375.00
5. Other (Postcards, Magazines, etc.)	\$5	75 visitors*20%*2 items	150.00
Totals			\$2,925.00

### Assumptions:

Traffic — 75 visitors a day

- Books — 75% of visitors will buy 1.5 books each
- Videos — 15% of visitors will buy 1 video each
- Maps — 10% of visitors will buy 1 map each
- Globes — 5% of visitors will buy 1 ancillary item each
- Other — 20% of visitors will buy 2 misc. items

50% of sales will happen during the holiday season

30% of sales will happen during summer tourist season (May through September)

**Figure 8.3**

### Revenue worksheet

come out of the store with a package. Finally, talk to your expected customers—avid readers in this example. Find out how often they buy history books. Ask them how much they spend on these items a month and where they currently buy them. By going through several iterations of primary research, you will sharpen your estimates.

In addition to conducting the research yourself, you can seek out secondary sources such as industry reports and Websites. For example, there are lots of excellent resources on retail bookstore operations such as the *Manual on Bookselling* edited by Kate Whouley and published by the American Booksellers Association (ABA) in 1996. The ABA also publishes the *ABACUS Financial Study*, which provides detailed information on all sorts of financial metrics in the industry.

Once you are comfortable that your assumptions are sound, you can then multiply the typical day by the number of days of operation in the year to arrive at yearly revenue estimates. This is a first cut. Clearly, a typical day varies by the time of the year. People do much of their shopping around the December holiday season. Therefore, most pro-forma projections for new companies typically show monthly income figures for the first two years. This allows the entrepreneur to manage seasonality and other factors that might make sales uneven for the business.

## Cost of Goods Sold

Once you have your revenue projections, you next consider costs. An income statement has two categories of costs—cost of goods sold and operating expenses. **Cost of goods sold (COGS)** is the direct costs of the items sold. For a bookstore, COGS is the cost of inventory that is sold in that period. As a first cut, you might assume that COGS for a retail outlet would be around 50% (assumes a 100% markup). Since sales from Figure 8.3 were approximately \$3,000 per day, COGS would be around \$1,500.

As with revenue assumptions, you need to sharpen your COGS assumptions. Use a schedule similar to that in Figure 8.3 to refine COGS by product (see Figure 8.4). After some investigation at Hoovers.com, you find that the gross margin on books is only 27% for the likes of Amazon.com, Borders, Barnes & Noble, and Books-A-Million. On other items you might sell, other companies' gross margins (for MTS and TransWorld Entertainment) are around 24%. Although these margins are lower than first estimated, these companies have a different business model—high volume, lower margins. Where will your bookstore operate? If it is high volume, your margins should be similar to these companies' margins. If you choose to offer a premium shopping experience, meaning a highly knowledgeable sales staff and unique historical artifacts, you would likely achieve higher margins. Remember that your financials need to mirror the story you related in your business plan—be consistent. Figure 8.4 shows the price per item, the gross margin (revenue minus COGS) per item, and the revenue per item (from Figure 8.3) and then calculates COGS in dollar terms [revenue times (1 - COGS)]. Since the gross margins for items differ, the overall gross margin is 44%.

## Operating Expenses

In addition to direct expenses, businesses incur operating expenses, such as marketing, salaries and general administration (SG&A), rent, interest expenses, and so forth. The build-up method forecasts those expenses on a daily, monthly, or yearly basis as appropriate (see Figure 8.5). For example, you might get rental space for your store at \$30 per square foot per year depending on location. You might need about 3,000 square feet, so your yearly rent would be \$90,000 (put in the yearly expense column). You'll pay your rent on a monthly basis, so you would show a rent expense of \$7,500 in the month-to-month income statement. At this point, however, you are just trying to get a sense of the overall business model and gauge whether this business can be profitable; showing it on a yearly basis is sufficient.

<b>Product/Service Description</b>	<b>Price</b>	<b>Gross Margin</b>	<b>Revenue</b>	<b>COGS</b>
1. Books	\$20	40%	\$1,687.50	\$1,012.50
2. Videos	\$30	50%	337.50	168.75
3. Maps	\$50	50%	375.00	187.50
4. Ancillary Items	\$100	50%	375.00	187.50
5. Other (Postcards, Magazines, etc.)	\$5	50%	150.00	75.00
Totals			\$2,925.00	\$1,631.25
Total Revenue		\$2,925.00		
COGS		<u>1,631.25</u>		
Gross Profit		\$1,293.75		
Gross Profit Margin		44%		

**Figure 8.4****Cost of goods worksheet**

<b>Expense</b>	<b>Daily</b>	<b>Monthly</b>	<b>Yearly</b>	<b>Total</b>
Store Rent			90,000	\$90,000
Manager Salary			60,000	\$60,000
Assistant Manager			40,000	\$40,000
Hourly Employees	176			\$63,360
Benefits	21		12,000	\$19,603
Bank Charges			10,530	\$10,530
Marketing/Advertising		1,000		\$12,000
Utilities		333		\$4,000
Travel			1,000	\$1,000
Dues			1,000	\$1,000
Depreciation		833		\$10,000
Misc.			4,000	\$4,000
				\$0
Totals				\$315,493

## Assumptions:

- Rent – 3,000 sq. ft. at \$30/sq. ft. = \$90,000  
 Hire 1 manager at \$60,000/year  
 Hire 1 assistant manager at \$40,000/year  
 Store is open from 9 a.m. to 7 p.m. daily, so 10 hours per day  
 Need 2 clerks when open and 1 clerk an hour before and after open  
 $2 \text{ clerks} \times 10 \text{ hours} \times \$8/\text{hour} + 1 \text{ clerk} \times 2 \text{ hours} \times \$8/\text{hour}$   
 Benefits are 12% of wages and salaries  
 Bank charges about 1% of sales  
 Advertising – \$1,000/month  
 Travel – \$1,000/year to attend trade shows  
 Dues – \$1,000/year for trade association  
 Depreciation – \$100,000 of leasehold improvements and equipment, depreciated over 10 years using the straight-line method

**Figure 8.5****Operating expenses worksheet**

Based on the first cut, your bookstore is projecting operating expenses of approximately \$315,000 per year. However, the “devil is in the details,” as they say, and one problem area is accurately projecting operating costs, especially labor costs. Constructing a headcount schedule is an important step in refining your labor projections (see Figure 8.6). Although the store is open on average 10 hours per day, you can see from the headcount table that Sunday is a shorter day and that the store is open 11 hours on the other days. The store operates with a minimum of two employees at all times (including either the store manager or the assistant store manager). During busier shifts, the number of employees reaches a peak of six people (afternoon shift on Saturday, including both managers). Looking at the calculation below the table, you see that the new wage expense is about \$66,000, a bit higher than the first estimate. This process of examining and reexamining your assumptions over and over is what leads to compelling financials.

Just as you refine the hourly wage expense, you need to also refine other expenses. For example, marketing expenses are projected to be \$12,000. Create a detailed schedule of how you plan on spending those advertising dollars. If you refer back to the last chapter, Figure 7.7a has a schedule of detailed expenses. This illustrates another point: *Financial analysis is really just the mathematical expression of your overall business strategy*. Everything you write about in your business plan has revenue or cost implications. As investors read business plans, they build a mental picture of the financial statements, especially the income statement. If the written plan and the financials are tightly correlated, investors have much greater confidence that the entrepreneur knows what she is doing.

	<b>Mon.</b>	<b>Tues.</b>	<b>Wed.</b>	<b>Thurs.</b>	<b>Fri.</b>	<b>Sat.</b>	<b>Sun.</b>	<b>Total</b>
Store Hours	10:00–9:00	10:00–9:00	10:00–9:00	10:00–9:00	10:00–9:00	10:00–9:00	11:00–5:00	
Hours Open	11	11	11	11	11	11	6	72
Shift 1	9:30–1:30	9:30–1:30	9:30–1:30	9:30–1:30	9:30–1:30	9:30–1:30	10:00–2:00	
Shift 2	1:30–5:30	1:30–5:30	1:30–5:30	1:30–5:30	1:30–5:30	1:30–5:30	1:00–5:00	
Shift 3	5:30–9:30	5:30–9:30	5:30–9:30	5:30–9:30	5:30–9:30	5:30–9:30		
Shift 1 Hrs.	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
Shift 2 Hrs.	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
Shift 3 Hrs.	4	4	4	4	4	4	0	
Total Shift Hours	12	12	12	12	12	12	8	80
Staff Headcount								
Shift 1	2	2	1	2	1	4	3	
Shift 2	1	1	0	1	1	4	4	
Shift 3	1	1	1	2	4	4	0	
Total Staff	4	4	2	5	6	12	7	40
Total Hours Worked								
Shift 1	8	8	4	8	4	16	12	
Shift 2	4	4	0	4	4	16	16	
Shift 3	4	4	4	8	16	16	0	
	16	16	8	20	24	48	28	160
Mgr.	0	0	8	8	8	8	8	40
Asst. Mgr.	8	8	8	0	8	8	0	40

$$\text{Total hourly employee hours/week} = 160$$

$$\text{Hourly rate \$8/hour} \quad 8$$

$$\text{Total wages per week} \quad \$1,280$$

$$\text{Total wages per year} \quad \$66,560$$

**Figure 8.6**

### Headcount table

## Preliminary Income Statement

Once you have forecasted revenues and expenses, you put them together in an income statement (Figure 8.7). Figure 8.3 forecasted average daily sales of almost \$3,000. You need to annualize that figure. You can expect the store to be open, on average, 360 days per year (assuming that the store might be closed for a few days such as Christmas and Thanksgiving). Note that the first line is called Total Revenues and then shows the detail that creates that total revenues line by itemizing the different revenue categories. COGS is handled in the same manner as revenues; you multiply the typical day by 360 days to get the annual total.

After adjusting the hourly wages per the headcount table (which also means adjusting employee benefits), take the operating expenses worksheet (see Figure 8.5) and put it into the income statement. If you believe that you can secure debt financing, put in an interest expense. However for the initial forecasts, you may not yet know how much debt financing you'll need or can secure to launch the business, so leave out the interest expense until you derive a reasonable estimate. Next compute taxes. Make sure to account for federal, state, and city taxes as applicable. Note that the right column calculates the expense percentage of total revenues. This is called a *common-sized income statement*. Although you have been rigorous in building up your statement, you can further validate it by comparing your common-sized income statement to the industry standards, which is where you start using the comparable method.

Total Revenues	\$1,053,000	100%
Historical Books	607,500	
Videos	121,500	
Maps	135,000	
Ancillary Items	135,000	
Other	54,000	
<b>Total COGS</b>	<b>\$587,250</b>	<b>55.8%</b>
Historical Books	364,500	
Videos	60,750	
Maps	67,500	
Ancillary Items	67,500	
Other	27,000	
<b>Gross Profit</b>	<b>\$465,750</b>	<b>44.2%</b>
<b>Operating Expenses</b>		
Store Rent	90,000	
Manager Salary	60,000	
Assistant Manager	40,000	
Hourly Employees	66,560	
Benefits	19,987	
Bank Charges	10,530	
Marketing/Advertising	12,000	
Utilities	4,000	
Travel	1,000	
Dues	1,000	
Depreciation	10,000	
Misc.	4,000	
<b>Total Operating Expenses</b>	<b>\$319,077</b>	<b>30.3%</b>
<b>Earnings from Operations</b>	<b>\$146,673</b>	<b>13.9%</b>
<b>Taxes</b>	<b>\$58,669</b>	<b>5.6%</b>
<b>Net Earnings</b>	<b>\$88,004</b>	<b>8.4%</b>

**Figure 8.7**

# Comparable Method

---

How can you tell whether your projections are reasonable? In the **comparable method**, you look at how your company compares to industry averages and benchmark companies. The first thing to do is gauge whether your revenue projections make sense and then see whether your cost structure is reasonable. Comparables help you validate your projections. For instance, a good metric for revenue in retail is sales per square foot. The bookstore is projecting sales of \$1 million in 3,000 square feet, which equates to \$351 per square foot. Secondary research into the average per bookstore<sup>3</sup> and also into what one or two specific bookstores achieve is a good place to start.<sup>4</sup> For example, \$351 is in line with independent bookstores (\$350/square foot) but higher than Barnes & Noble (\$297/square foot).

The projections seem reasonable considering that you will be selling certain items like maps, which have a much higher ticket price than books, but there are a couple of caveats to this estimate. First, it is likely to take a new bookstore some time to achieve this level of sales. In other words, the income statement that has been derived might be more appropriate for the second or third year of operation. At that point, the bookstore will have built up a clientele and achieved some name recognition.

Second, you should run some scenario analyses. Does this business model still work if your bookstore only achieves Barnes & Noble's sales per square foot (\$297)? Also run a few other scenarios related to higher foot traffic, recession, outbreak of war (sales of books on Islam increased with September 11 and escalating tensions in the Middle East), and other contingencies. Having some validated metrics, such as sales per square foot, helps you run different scenarios and make sound decisions about whether to launch a venture in the first place and then about how to adjust your business model so that the venture has the greatest potential to succeed.

Other metrics that are easily obtainable for this type of establishment include *sales per customer* or *average ticket price*. Figure 8.3 shows expected sales of \$2,925 per day from 75 unique store visitors. That translates into an average transaction per visitor of \$39. However, not every visitor will buy; many people will just come in and browse. Figure 8.3 assumed that 75% of visitors would buy a book and a lower percentage would buy other items. If that percentage holds true, 56 people will actually purchase something each day. Thus, the average receipt is \$52. This average ticket price is considerably higher than Barnes & Noble's rate of \$27.

As with all your assumptions, you have to gauge whether a higher ticket price is reasonable. An entrepreneur might reason that the bookstore isn't discounting its books and is also selling higher-priced ancillary goods. Run scenario analyses again to see whether your bookstore survives if its average ticket price is closer to Barnes & Noble's. In other words, see what happens to the model overall when you change one of the assumptions—in this case, the average selling price.

After you're comfortable with the revenue estimate, you next need to validate the costs. The best way is to compare your common-sized income statement with the industry averages or some benchmark companies. It is unlikely that your income statement will exactly match the industry averages, but you need to be able to explain and understand the differences. Figure 8.8 looks at the common-sized income statements for your store and for Barnes & Noble. The first discrepancy appears in the COGS. Your store projects COGS of 56% of revenue, whereas Barnes & Noble is projecting 70%. Why would Barnes & Noble's COGS be so much higher? Upon further investigation, you find that Barnes & Noble includes occupancy costs like rent and utilities in COGS. If you add your store's \$90,000 rent plus \$4,000 in utilities into COGS, COGS becomes 65% of revenue, which is still lower than Barnes & Noble's. However, COGS of 65% is in line with the specialty retail industry rate of 67%.<sup>5</sup> The reasoning for this discrepancy is similar to that for the higher ticket price. Your

	<b>Our Specialty Bookstore</b>		<b>Barnes &amp; Nobel (FY2007) (in millions)</b>		<b>Industry Average</b>
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$1,053,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>\$5,410</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>100%</b>
Historical Books	607,500				
Videos	121,500				
Maps	135,000				
Globes	135,000				
Other	54,000				
<b>Total COGS</b>	<b>\$587,250</b>	<b>55.8%</b>	<b>\$3,770</b>	<b>69.7%</b>	<b>60.0%</b>
Historical Books	364,500				
Videos	60,750				
Maps	67,500				
Globes	67,500				
Other	27,000				
<b>Gross Profit</b>	<b>\$465,750</b>	<b>44.2%</b>	<b>\$1,641</b>	<b>30.3%</b>	<b>40.0%</b>
<b>Operating Expenses</b>					
Store rent	90,000				
Manager Salary	60,000				
Assistant Manager	40,000				
Hourly Employees	66,560				
Benefits	19,987				
Bank Charges	10,530				
Marketing/Advertising	12,000				
Utilities	4,000				
Travel	1,000				
Dues	1,000				
Depreciation	10,000				
Misc	4,000				
<b>Total Operating Expenses</b>	<b>\$319,077</b>	<b>30.3%</b>	<b>\$1,432</b>	<b>26.5%</b>	<b>37.5%</b>
<b>Earnings from Operations</b>	<b>\$146,673</b>	<b>13.9%</b>	<b>\$209</b>	<b>3.9%</b>	<b>2.5%</b>
<b>Taxes</b>	<b>\$58,669</b>		<b>\$73</b>		
<b>Net Earnings</b>	<b>\$88,004</b>	<b>8.4%</b>	<b>\$136</b>	<b>2.5%</b>	

**Figure 8.8****Comparable analysis**

specialty bookstore's COGS is likely lower than Barnes & Noble's because it is not a discount bookseller (meaning it earns higher margins on every book sold than does Barnes & Noble). You also plan to sell other retail items that generate higher margins.

Since the gross profit margin is the inverse of COGS—revenue minus COGS—the explanation provided for COGS also holds for the gross margin. Barnes & Noble's gross margin is 30% versus 35% for your specialty bookstore (with rent included in COGS).

When you compare operating expenses for the two companies, you can see that your bookstore is projecting operating expenses to be 30% of revenue versus 27% for Barnes & Noble. However, we must once again adjust for the occupancy expense because you include occupancy in operating expenses, whereas Barnes & Noble includes it in COGS. With that

adjustment, your operating expenses are about 21% of revenue, somewhat less than Barnes & Noble. We would want to investigate to see if we are underestimating the number of employees we will need. Or are we paying lower rent because we aren't in a high-profile location. The key is to determine if lower costs are reasonable or not.

Based on the comparable analysis, it appears that your projections are reasonable. Your earnings from operations are higher (13.9%) than Barnes & Noble's (3.9%) and the independent book store average (2.5%), but that may be explained by the higher gross margins and the fact that you haven't yet included any interest expenses. For example, if you use debt financing for any of your startup expenses, such as leasehold improvements, you will have an interest expense that would reduce your net income margin to be more in line with the comparable companies.

This exercise has primarily used benchmark companies, but industry averages also provide useful comparable information. The *Almanac of Business and Industrial Financial Ratios* published by CCH and *Industry Norms and Key Business Ratios* published by Dun and Bradstreet are excellent sources to use as starting points in building financial statements relevant to your industry. Specifically, these sources help entrepreneurs build income statements by providing industry averages for cost of goods sold, salary expenses, interest expenses, and other costs. Again, your firm will differ from these industry averages, but by going through scenario analyses and understanding your business model, you should be able to explain why your firm differs.

## Building Integrated Financial Statements

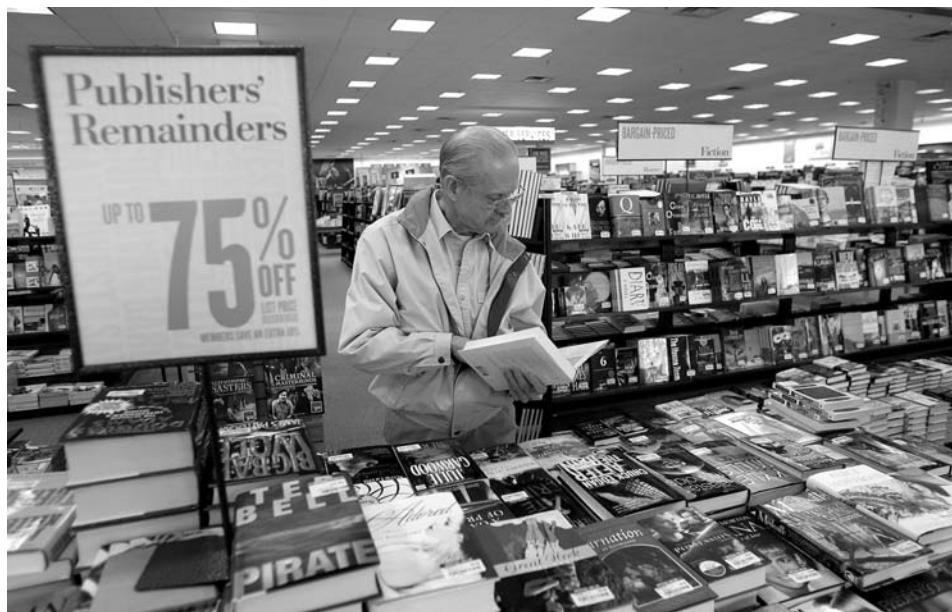
---

Once you have a baseline income statement, the next step is to construct monthly income and cash-flow statements for two years (followed by years 3 through 5 on a yearly basis) and a yearly balance sheet for all five years. Five years is standard for many business plans because it usually takes new firms some time to build sales and operate efficiently. Five years also gives the entrepreneur a sense of whether her investment of time and energy will pay off. Can the business not only survive but also provide the kind of financial return to make the opportunity costs of leaving an existing job worthwhile?

The income statement, cash-flow statement, and balance sheet are the core statements for managing any business. Changes in one statement affect all others. Understanding how these changes affect your business can mean the difference between survival and failure. Many entrepreneurs will find their businesses on the verge of failure, even if they are profitable, because they fail to understand how the income statement is related to the cash-flow statement and balance sheet. How is that possible, you might ask?

Entrepreneurs need to finance rapid growth. For example, a bookstore needs to buy inventory in advance of selling to its customers. The owner needs to ensure that he has enough books and other products on hand that he doesn't lose a sale because a customer is frustrated that the book isn't in stock. (Americans are notorious for wanting instant gratification.) Yet having inventory on hand drains cash. If the bookstore expects sales of \$500,000 in December, then it must have \$280,000 worth of inventory at the end of November ( $\$500,000 \times 56\%$ —the average COGS). How does the bookstore pay for this? Internal cash flow? Vendor financing? Equity? Having strong pro-forma financials helps the entrepreneur anticipate these needs far enough in advance to arrange the appropriate financing.

The bookstore example illustrates why a new business wants to show the income and cash-flow statements on a monthly basis for the first two years; there is likely to be seasonal fluctuations in demand for which you need to anticipate and plan. Moreover, the first two years are the most vulnerable period in a new venture's life. It takes time to build up your clientele (during which you earn lower revenues), learn how to efficiently operate (during which you have higher costs), develop a track record so you can secure vendor financing



Tim Boyle/Getty Images, Inc.

**Tom Iverson shops for sale-books at a Barnes & Noble book store March 16, 2006 in Arlington Heights, Illinois. Tim Boyle/ Getty Images, Inc.**

monthly basis because this is when a company is most vulnerable to failure. Monthly forecasts help you understand these issues and prepare for them. For years 3 through 5, yearly projections are sufficient because the further out one goes, the less accurate the projections become. Nevertheless, your longer-term projections communicate your vision of the upside potential of your opportunity. The exercise of going through the projection process is more important than the accuracy of the projections. The process helps you gain a deeper understanding of the business and whether you should pursue the opportunity or not.

As the bookstore example indicates, changes in one statement affect other statements. Figure 8.9 formally shows how the pro-forma financials are integrated. You can see that the income statement drives the balance sheet, which drives the cash-flow statement (although the cash from financing and uses of cash from the cash-flow statement feed back into the balance sheet). We'll briefly touch on how to move from our base income statement to a full set of pro-forma financial projections, but going into a step-by-step process is beyond the scope of this chapter.

## Income Statement

The base income statement generated shows the level of operations that might be achievable in year 3 or 4. Thus, you need to make a number of adjustments to generate the other years. First, you need to create monthly statements for the first two years. That means you need to understand the seasonality of your business and the sales cycle. One mistake that many entrepreneurs make is showing revenues from the first day they launch the business. Remember that most new businesses incur expenses well in advance of generating revenue. In thinking about the bookstore, you would consider the business launched soon after the first round of financing has closed. At this point, the entrepreneur can start spending money to establish the business. For instance, he might sign a lease, contract for equipment, and so forth. Show those expenses as incurred. Thus, show expenses for three months (the time to build out the store before opening) before you show your first revenue.

The next consideration in generating your monthly forecasts is seasonality. Revenues in retail are not evenly spread across the 12 months. Figure 8.10 estimates how sales might be spread for a retail operation. The make-or-break time is the holiday season, and you see sales

(remember the cash-flow implications), and understand seasonality (which will make demand vary). For instance, monthly projections allow the entrepreneur to anticipate and understand any seasonality that might happen in the business. In addition to the financing issue discussed previously, seasonality affects other key operations and decisions. For example, your bookstore will need to hire more salespeople during the holiday season. Integrated financials can help the entrepreneur plan for that hiring increase.

In sum, it is critical to show the first two years of pro-forma projections on a

EXHIBIT D-MASTER EXHIBIT  
(Dollar amounts in thousands)

INCOME STATEMENT FOR FIRST YEAR		BALANCE SHEET AT END OF FIRST YEAR		CASH FLOW STATEMENT FOR FIRST YEAR	
		Cash	\$ 162		
Sales Revenue	\$ 4,212	Accounts Receivable:	486	<b>Cash Flow from Operations</b>	
Cost of Goods Sold	2,808	Inventory	702	Net Income (from Income Statement) \$ 150	
Gross Profit	\$ 1,404	Prepaid Expenses	90	Negative Cash Flow Factors:	
Operating Expenses	\$ 936	Machinery, Expenses, Furniture, and Fixtures	\$464	Accounts Receivable	\$486
Depreciation Expenses	116	Accumulated Depreciation	(116)	Inventory Increase	702
	1,052	Undepreciated Cost	348	Prepaid Expenses	90
Operating Earnings	\$ 352	Total Assets	\$1,788	Increase	(\$1,278)
Interest Expense	52	Accounts Payable:		Positive Cash Flow Factors:	
Earnings before Tax	\$ 300	Inventory	\$216	Depreciation	\$116
Income Tax Expense	150	Operating Expenses	54	Accounts Payable	
Net Income	\$ 150	Accrued Expenses:	\$108	Increase	270
		Operations	9	Accrued Expenses	117
		Interest	117	Income Tax	
		Income Tax Payable	30	Payable Increase	30
		Short-Term Notes Payable	220	<b>Cash Flow from Operations</b>	(\$ 595)
		Long-Term Notes Payable	300	<b>Cash from Financing</b>	
		Paid-in Capital	701	Short-Term Borrowing	\$220
		Retained Earnings	150	Long-Term Borrowing	300
		Total Liabilities & Stockholders' Equity	\$1,788	Capital Stock issue	701
				Uses of Cash	1,221
				Cash Dividends to	
				Stockholders	-0-
				Purchases of	
				Long-Lived Assets	\$464
					(464)
				Increase in Cash during Year	\$ 162

Source: Reprint of Exhibit D from *How to Read a Financial Report*, Second Edition, by John Tracy. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1983.

**Figure 8.9**

**Interrelated financial statements**

	(000)												
	Jan. 3%	Feb. 2%	Mar. 3%	Apr. 4%	May 6%	June 7%	July 9%	Aug. 8%	Sept. 5%	Oct. 3%	Nov. 10%	Dec. 40%	Year 100%
Year 1				\$24.0	\$36.0	\$42.0	\$54.0	\$48.0	\$30.0	\$18.0	\$60.0	\$240.0	\$552.0
Year 2	\$22.5	\$15.0	\$22.5	\$30.0	\$45.0	\$52.5	\$67.5	\$60.0	\$37.5	\$22.5	\$75.0	\$300.0	\$750.0
Year 3	\$31.5	\$21.0	\$31.5	\$42.0	\$63.0	\$73.5	\$94.5	\$84.0	\$52.5	\$31.5	\$105.0	\$420.0	\$1,050.0

**Figure 8.10**

### Seasonality projections

jumping dramatically in November and December. Another important spike might be the tourist season (if you were to locate your store in Boston, demand might jump if you focused on Revolutionary War and colonial goods). Based on these projections, it makes sense to lease and build out the retail space in the January to March time frame when sales levels are expected to be low.

Another consideration is how long it will take your new business to build its clientele and ramp up its revenues. You are projecting sales of \$350 per square foot once you hit your optimal operating position. In the first year of operation, that number might be significantly lower—say, \$200 per square foot, which is well below the Barnes & Noble average of \$297 and the independent bookstore average of \$350. In year 2, a reasonable estimate might be that average sales per square foot hit \$250, and finally in year 3, you might hit the independent bookstore average of \$350. And as you've seen, the business is not generating sales for the first three months of year 1 due to the time it takes to build out the store, so you need to adjust the sales accordingly.

## Balance Sheet

The *balance sheet* can be the most difficult to integrate into your other financial statements. For pro-forma projections, yearly balance sheets are sufficient. Again, going into great detail is beyond the scope of this chapter, but there are a few items that often cause confusion.

First, will your business sell on credit? If so, it will record accounts receivable. Figure 8.9 shows how your sales from the income statement drive your accounts receivable on the balance sheet (some portion of those sales), which then drive an accounts receivable increase on the cash-flow statement. While you record the sale when the customer takes possession, you may not actually receive payment until some point in the future. Recording the sale has a positive impact on your profitability but does not affect your cash flow until the customer actually pays.

If your business is buying equipment, land, or a plant or is adding leasehold improvements, you will have an asset of plant and equipment. A common error is to show this as a capital expense, meaning that it appears in full on your income statement the moment you contract for the work. This assumes you will fully use that equipment within the year (or whatever length your income statement covers). To accurately reflect the acquisition of the asset, instead show the full outflow of money as it occurs on your cash-flow statement and then depreciate the cost per year of life of the asset on your income statement. You would also have an accumulated depreciation line item on your balance sheet showing how much of the asset has been used up. Referring back to Figure 8.5, you see the bookstore is projecting leasehold improvements of \$100,000, which it expects to use up over 10 years (\$10,000 per year or \$833 per month).

Accounts payable acts in a manner similar to accounts receivable, except that it is a loan to your company from a supplier (see Figure 8.9). Once the new store is able to secure vendor financing on inventory, for example, it will show the COGS as it sells its books, but it may not have to pay the publisher until later (assuming that the book is a fairly fast-moving

item). So the expense would show up on your income statement but not on your cash-flow statement—until you paid for it. Until then, it is held in accounts payable on the balance sheet.

The final problem area is retained earnings. Entrepreneurs know that the balance sheet should *balance*. A common error is to use the retained earnings line to make the balance sheet balance. Retained earnings is actually

$$\text{Previous Retained Earnings} + \text{Current Period Net Income} \\ - \text{Dividends Paid That Period}$$

If you find that your balance sheet isn't balancing, the problem is often in how you have calculated accounts receivable or accounts payable. Balancing the balance sheet is the most frustrating aspect of building your pro-forma financial statements. Yet hardwiring the retained earnings will ultimately lead to other errors, so work through the balancing problem as diligently as possible.

## Cash-Flow Statement

If you have constructed your financial statements accurately, the **cash-flow statement** identifies when and how much financing you need. You might want to leave the financing assumptions empty until after you see how much the cash-flow statement implies you need (see Figure 8.11).

	<b>Month 1</b>	<b>Month 2</b>	<b>Month 3</b>	<b>Month 4</b>	<b>Month 5</b>	<b>Month 6</b>
<b>OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>						
Net Earnings	(17,000)	(12,882)	(2,244)	(7,079)	(1,277)	8,394
Depreciation	1,115	1,115	1,115	1,115	1,115	1,115
Working Capital Changes						
(Increase)/Decrease Accounts Receivable	0	(64)	(88)	40	(48)	(80)
(Increase)/Decrease Inventories	(104,562)	(19,605)	32,676	(39,211)	(65,351)	71,886
(Increase)/Decrease Other Current Assets	0	(230)	(316)	144	(172)	(287)
Increase/(Decrease) Accts Pay & Accrd Expenses	0	3,215	4,421	(2,010)	2,411	4,019
Increase/(Decrease) Other Current Liab	0	3,445	4,737	(2,153)	2,584	4,306
Net Cash Provided/(Used) by Operating Activities	(120,446)	(25,005)	40,301	(49,154)	(60,737)	89,354
<b>INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>						
Property & Equipment	(101,000)	0	0	0	0	0
Other						
Net Cash Used in Investing Activities	(101,000)	0	0	0	0	0
<b>FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>						
Increase/(Decrease) Short-Term Debt						0
Increase/(Decrease) Curr. Portion LTD						0
Increase/(Decrease) Long-Term Debt						0
Increase/(Decrease) Common Stock						0
Increase/(Decrease) Preferred Stock						0
Dividends Declared						0
Net Cash Provided/(Used) by Financing	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>INCREASE/(DECREASE) IN CASH</b>	<b>(221,446)</b>	<b>(25,005)</b>	<b>40,301</b>	<b>(49,154)</b>	<b>(60,737)</b>	<b>89,354</b>
<b>CASH AT BEGINNING OF PERIOD</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>(221,446)</b>	<b>(246,451)</b>	<b>(206,150)</b>	<b>(255,304)</b>	<b>(316,041)</b>
<b>CASH AT END OF PERIOD</b>	<b>(221,446)</b>	<b>(246,451)</b>	<b>(206,150)</b>	<b>(255,304)</b>	<b>(316,041)</b>	<b>(226,687)</b>

**Figure 8.11**

One of the many benefits of this process is that it will help you determine exactly how much you need, so as to protect you from giving up too much equity or acquiring too much (or not enough) debt. The bookstore cash-flow statement shows some major outlays as the store is gearing up for operation, such as inventory acquisition and equipment purchases. You can also see from the cash-flow statement that the business is incurring some expenses prior to generating revenue [(\$17,000) listed as net earnings]. This net earnings loss is reflected on the company's monthly income statement and is primarily attributable to wage expenses to hire and train staff.

You can see that in the first six months, the cash position hits a low of just over -\$316,000. This is how much money you need to raise in order to launch the business. For a new venture, most of the money will likely be in the form of equity from the entrepreneur, friends, and family. However, the entrepreneur may be able to secure some debt financing against his equipment (which would act as collateral if the business should fail). In any event, once you recognize your financing needs, you can devise a strategy to raise the money necessary to start the business. To provide some buffer against poor estimates, you might raise \$350,000. This amount would show up on both the cash-flow statement and the balance sheet.

## Putting It All Together

---

Once you have completed the financial spreadsheets, write a two- to three-page explanation to precede them. Although you understand all the assumptions and comparables that went into building the financial forecast, the reader needs the background spelled out. Describing the financials is also a good exercise in articulation. If your reader understands the financials and believes the assumptions are valid, you have passed an important test. If not, work with the reader to understand her concerns. Continual iterations strengthen your financials and should give you further confidence in the viability of your business model.

This section of the business plan should include a description of the key drivers that affect your revenues and costs so that the reader can follow your pro-forma financials. This description is typically broken down into four main sections. First, the “overview” paragraph briefly introduces the business model.

The first subsection should discuss the income statement. Talk about the factors that drive revenue, such as store traffic, percentage of store visitors that buy, average ticket price, and so forth. It is also important to talk about seasonality and other factors that might cause uneven sales growth. Then discuss the expense categories, paying attention to the cost of goods sold and major operating expense categories, such as rent, interest expense, and so forth. Based on your description, the reader should be able to look at the actual financials and understand what is going on. The key focus here is to help the reader follow your financials; you don't need to provide the level of detail that an accountant might if he were auditing your company.

The next subsection should discuss the cash-flow statement. Here, you focus on major infusions of cash, such as equity investments and loan disbursements. It is also good to describe the nature of your accounts receivable and accounts payable. How long, for instance, before your receivables convert to cash? If you are spending money on leasehold improvements, plant and equipment, and other items that can be depreciated, you should mention them here. Typically, the discussion of the cash-flow statement is quite a bit shorter than the discussion of the income statement.

The final subsection discusses the balance sheet. Here, you would talk about major asset categories, such as the amount of inventory on hand and any liabilities that aren't clear from the previous discussion.

## CONCLUSION

Going through these exercises allows you to construct a realistic set of pro-forma financials. It's a challenge, but understanding your numbers "cold" enables you to articulate your business to all stakeholders, so you can build momentum toward the ultimate launch of your business. Just as we said in the last chapter that the business plan is a live document, so too, are the financial statements a set of live documents. They are obsolete immediately after they come off the printer. As you start your launch process, you can further refine your numbers, putting in actual revenues and expenses as they occur, and adjusting projections based on current activity. Once the business is operating, the nature of your financial statements changes. They not only help you to assess the viability of your business model but also help you to gauge actual performance and adjust your operations based on that experience.

Although most entrepreneurs tell us that drafting the financials induces some pain, they also concede that going through the process is gratifying and rewarding. They learn to master new management skills, build their business, and protect their investment. So dig in.

### Reflection Point

### Your Thoughts...

1. What are your revenue sources? How can you influence these revenues (what are your drivers)?
2. Identify some companies that you can benchmark. What are their revenue sources? How do they drive revenue?
3. Refine your projections. Who can you talk to that is knowledgeable about your business (customers, vendors, competitors)? What secondary sources can you find (Hoovers.com, Robert Morris and Associates database)?
4. Compare your common-sized financials to those of your benchmark company. Can you validate or explain differences between you and the benchmark company?
5. Are there other metrics you can use (sales per employee or sales per square foot) to verify your projections?
6. What happens to the viability of your business when you run some scenario analyses based on the different metrics you've identified?

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

## WEB EXERCISE

Look for some comparison metrics (the *Business Week* site [www.businessweek.com/smallbiz/bizminer/bizminer.htm](http://www.businessweek.com/smallbiz/bizminer/bizminer.htm) is useful, but see if you can find others). How do your sales per employee figures match the benchmark reports? How does your pro-forma balance sheet match up to some of the presented ratios? Can you explain any differences?

## NOTES

- <sup>1</sup> By minimum wage, we mean that the money the entrepreneur can take out of the business is less on an hourly basis than the minimum wage.
- <sup>2</sup> Tracy, John. *How to Read a Financial Report*. Sixth edition. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley. 2004.
- <sup>3</sup> 1999 ABACUS Financial Survey. Annual Survey conducted by the American Booksellers Association. <http://bookweb.org>.
- <sup>4</sup> Look for publicly traded companies on your favorite database, such as <http://SEC.gov>.
- <sup>5</sup> <http://bizstats.com/otherretail.htm>.

## P'kolino Financials

CASE

We revisit the P'kolino business plan in this chapter. Study the financial projections and evaluate how realistic you think they are.

CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION



## Business Plan May-2005

**Prepared by:**  
J.B. Schneider &  
Antonio Turco-Rivas N.

**Contact Information:**

Phone: (781) 497-0913  
Email: [jb@pkolino.com](mailto:jb@pkolino.com)  
[atm@pkolino.com](mailto:atm@pkolino.com)

Address:  
600 West Cummings Park  
Suite 5350  
Woburn, MA 01801

The information contained in this document is highly confidential. Except if stated herein, none of the material may be copied, reproduced, distributed, republished, downloaded, displayed, posted or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, but not limited to, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written authorization from P'kolino, LLC.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## 9 Financial Plan

### 9.1 Basis of Presentation

This plan contains five-year projected financial information for our company. While management believes that the assumptions underlying the projections are reasonable, there can be no assurance that these results can be realized or that actual results will meet management expectations. It is important to notice that our first month of operations is expected to be April 2005, causing the holiday season to be reflected in the financial statement as the third quarter in our projections. Monthly financial statements for the first two years are available on request.

### 9.2 Income Statement Assumptions – Revenues

The number of tables sold each month is the main driver of revenues for P'kolino. This number is estimated based on the expected outcome of the marketing efforts the company has planned for each year. At the beginning the company will sell two different types of tables targeting the high-end segment of the market. However, at the beginning of the third year the company plans to introduce a third table that will target the mid segment.

For the Storage Unit, management assumes that 30% of those customers that purchase tables are likely to buy the Storage Unit as well. The Storage Unit is designed so that it holds up to 10 toy kits (three are offered as a bundled package with the Storage Unit).

Every time a new table is sold, a new customer has been gained. P'kolino projections assume that one out of every two customers will purchase one Toy Kit every 12 months for a period of 3 to 4 years. Gift purchases of the Toy Kits are also estimated as a percentage of the existing customer base. One out of every two existing customers will trigger (influence) one Toy Kit gift purchase every 12 months.

Accessories will enter the revenue stream at the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of operations. It is estimated that as the product line expands accessories will eventually represent up to 25% of our sales.

The numbers of new customers are expected to increase at an average rate of 35% for years 3,4 & 5 for products targeting the high-end segment and at 45% for those targeting the mid-segment of the market (as a benchmark Pottery Barn Kids sales increased 35% in 2004).

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



**Exhibit 9-A**  
**The Playroom Furniture Market**

# Units	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
<b>Tables</b>	<b>690</b>	<b>1,445</b>	<b>2,551</b>	<b>3,634</b>	<b>4,755</b>
Table A	449	939	1,268	1,712	2,311
Table B	242	506	683	922	1,244
Table C			600	1,000	1,200
Storage Unit	228	477	824	1,169	1,533
Toy Kits	1,313	3,851	4,814	7,618	11,027
Accessories	0	9,925	15,606	21,068	28,442

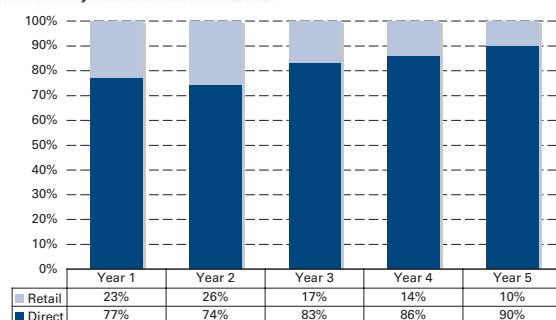
P'kolino will remain in the high-end segment of the market for its first 2 years of operations and has priced its products accordingly. All products are priced as a function of both their manufacturing costs and their marketing positioning strategies. At year 3 a \$400 table with a 45% contribution margin will be introduced to the mid-segment.

**Exhibit 9-B**  
**Prices and Manufacturing Cost**

Product	Selling Price	Manufacturing Cost	Contribution in US\$	Contribution as % of Price
Table A	\$650	\$280	\$390	60%
Table B	\$1,200	\$260	\$940	78%
Table C	\$300	\$130	\$170	57%
Storage Unit	\$450	\$140	\$310	69%
Toy kit version 1	\$30	\$10	\$20	67%
Toy kit version 2	\$55	\$26	\$29	53%
Accessories	\$60	\$28	\$32	53%

P'kolino will sell its products both online (direct) and through specialty retailers. Retailers are expected to markup our products by 50% (according to our primary research). Thus, our wholesale price will need to account for this markup. Management estimates that even though 80% (30% after year 2) of the units sold will be sold through retailers, only 23% of the revenue will come from this distribution channel. The percentage sold through retailers will drop over time as P'kolino gains brand recognition and further develops its direct distribution channel.

**Exhibit 9-C**  
**% of Revenues by Distribution Channel**



Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



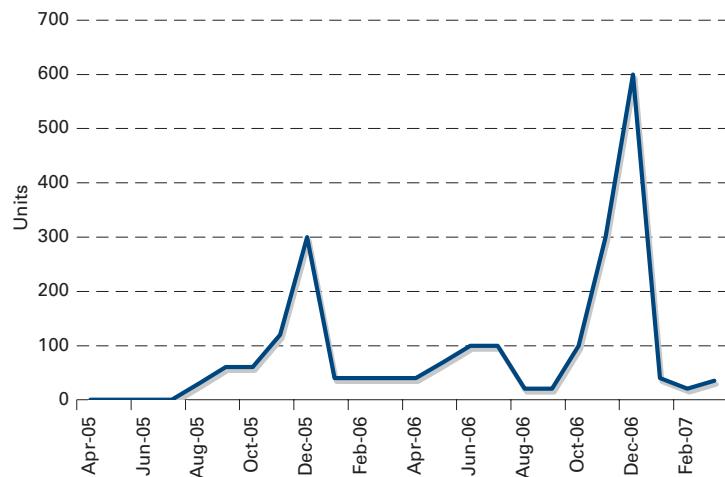
As stated earlier in this document the Toy kits and accessories are the main vehicles for generating recurrent revenue from existing customers.

**Exhibit 9-D**  
Revenue Mix (% of revenue by type of product)

Revenue Mix	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Tables	79%	57%	54%	55%	54%
Storage	13%	9%	11%	11%	11%
Kits	8%	9%	6%	7%	8%
Accessories	0%	25%	28%	27%	27%

Revenues for P'kolino will increase significantly during the winter holiday season. As is the case in the toy industry, playroom products are seasonal and more than 50% of total revenues will be generated during this period. Summer will be the second best season because children are out of school and spending more time at home.

**Exhibit 9-E**  
Seasonal Sales – Number of tables sold per month Year 1 & 2



Confidential Information  
 Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
 Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



**Exhibit 9-F**  
**Revenue Forecast**

Revenue per year	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
<b>Tables</b>	<b>\$481,501</b>	<b>\$1,008,361</b>	<b>\$1,589,988</b>	<b>\$2,274,038</b>	<b>\$3,134,920</b>
Table A	\$220,101	\$460,937	\$711,113	\$976,358	\$1,354,885
Table B	\$261,400	\$547,424	\$698,876	\$997,680	\$1,420,035
Table C	\$0	\$0	\$180,000	\$300,000	\$360,000
<b>Storage Unit</b>	<b>\$79,871</b>	<b>\$167,267</b>	<b>\$334,359</b>	<b>\$474,521</b>	<b>\$656,146</b>
<b>Toy Kits</b>	<b>\$50,772</b>	<b>\$158,621</b>	<b>\$189,781</b>	<b>\$310,663</b>	<b>\$462,848</b>
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>\$0</b>	<b>\$449,603</b>	<b>\$807,891</b>	<b>\$1,109,235</b>	<b>\$1,539,278</b>
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$612,145</b>	<b>\$1,783,851</b>	<b>\$2,922,020</b>	<b>\$4,168,457</b>	<b>\$5,793,191</b>
Revenue Growth		191%	64%	43%	39%

**Exhibit 9-G**  
**Revenue Monthly Forecast**

Monthly Revenues	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Month 1	\$0	\$39,182	\$64,182	\$91,560	\$127,247
Month 2	\$0	\$67,346	\$110,316	\$157,373	\$218,712
Month 3	\$0	\$101,212	\$165,789	\$236,510	\$328,694
<b>Total 1st Quarter</b>	<b>\$0</b>	<b>\$207,741</b>	<b>\$340,287</b>	<b>\$485,443</b>	<b>\$674,653</b>
Month 4	\$0	\$124,420	\$203,804	\$290,740	\$404,062
Month 5	\$25,314	\$29,350	\$48,076	\$68,584	\$95,316
Month 6	\$50,627	\$30,775	\$50,411	\$71,915	\$99,945
<b>Total 2nd Quarter</b>	<b>\$75,941</b>	<b>\$184,545</b>	<b>\$302,292</b>	<b>\$431,240</b>	<b>\$599,323</b>
Month 7	\$50,627	\$127,270	\$208,474	\$297,402	\$413,320
Month 8	\$102,680	\$366,132	\$599,739	\$855,567	\$1,189,040
Month 9	\$255,986	\$729,413	\$1,194,808	\$1,704,473	\$2,368,823
<b>Total 3rd Quarter</b>	<b>\$409,293</b>	<b>\$1,222,815</b>	<b>\$2,003,020</b>	<b>\$2,857,442</b>	<b>\$3,971,183</b>
Month 10	\$36,602	\$57,750	\$94,596	\$134,948	\$187,547
Month 11	\$39,453	\$39,327	\$64,420	\$91,899	\$127,719
Month 12	\$50,856	\$71,674	\$117,405	\$167,485	\$232,766
<b>Total 4th Quarter</b>	<b>\$126,911</b>	<b>\$168,751</b>	<b>\$276,421</b>	<b>\$394,333</b>	<b>\$548,032</b>
<b>Total for year</b>	<b>\$612,145</b>	<b>\$1,783,851</b>	<b>\$2,922,020</b>	<b>\$4,168,457</b>	<b>\$5,793,191</b>
Average Revenue					
by Month	\$51,012	\$148,654	\$243,502	\$347,371	\$482,766
by Quarter	\$153,036	\$445,963	\$730,505	\$1,042,114	\$1,448,298

Note: the Third quarter represents the holiday season.

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



### **9.3 Income Statement Assumptions – Cost of Sales**

Our business model assumes that manufacturing of all P'kolino products will be outsourced to Brazil and then eventually to an Asian manufacturer. The average cost of sales will be 47% of revenues. Cost of sales is estimated based on manufactured units.

**Exhibit 9-H  
Cost of Sales**

<b>Manufacturing Costs</b>	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
Table A	\$116,610	\$244,205	\$329,677	\$445,064	\$600,836
Table B	\$62,790	\$131,495	\$177,518	\$239,650	\$323,527
Table C	\$0	\$0	\$84,000	\$140,000	\$168,000
Storage Unit	\$31,878	\$66,759	\$115,325	\$163,668	\$214,652
Kits	\$25,818	\$85,988	\$95,251	\$157,954	\$237,232
Accessories	\$0	\$277,900	\$436,968	\$589,907	\$796,374
Other	\$29,193	\$54,504	\$200,357	\$219,636	\$245,602
<b>Total COGS</b>	<b>\$266,289</b>	<b>\$860,851</b>	<b>\$1,439,096</b>	<b>\$1,955,879</b>	<b>\$2,586,223</b>

### **9.4 Income Statement Assumptions – Expenses**

Expenses for P'kolino are centered on three main areas: 1) Sales and Marketing, 2) General Administration Expenses and 3) Research and Development.

For the first year, sales and marketing expenses are close to 20% of sales. Developing our website, generating initial marketing materials and a direct mail campaign are the main uses of these funds. Again after year 3, marketing efforts intensify as P'kolino makes an effort to enter the mid-segment of the market with a new product.

Over time, General and Administration expenses converge towards the industry average. However, P'kolino's business model calls for a lean organization that concentrates on sales, product development and marketing. Management will make every effort to outsource all areas of the business not directly related to the core competency of the company. By year 5, the company will have 10 employees. The company will open an office at a business incubator during its first and second year of operations. P'kolino will relocate to a new facility by the end of year 2.

Product development (or R&D) is central to the P'kolino business model. It will require 10% of revenues during the first and second year and 9% on average thereafter (the R&D for the first year has been partially funded and executed prior to starting operations). During years 1&2 the company will

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



develop a table for the mid-segment of the market as well as new Toy kits and accessories.

Other expenses such as legal expenses, insurance, etc. are estimated based on industry averages.

**Exhibit 9-I**  
**Projected Financial Statements**

	Year 1	%	Year 2	%	Year 3	%	Year 4	%	Year 5	%
Revenues	\$612,145	100%	\$1,783,851	100%	\$2,922,020	100%	\$4,168,457	100%	\$5,793,191	100%
Cost of Sales	\$266,289	44%	\$860,851	48%	\$1,439,096	49%	\$1,955,879	47%	\$2,586,223	45%
<b>Gross Profit</b>	<b>\$345,856</b>	<b>56%</b>	<b>\$923,000</b>	<b>52%</b>	<b>\$1,482,924</b>	<b>51%</b>	<b>\$2,212,578</b>	<b>53%</b>	<b>\$3,206,968</b>	<b>55%</b>
<b>Expenses</b>										
<b>Sales &amp; Marketing</b>	<b>\$121,379</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>\$354,768</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>\$559,581</b>	<b>19%</b>	<b>\$861,467</b>	<b>21%</b>	<b>\$1,180,662</b>	<b>20%</b>
Salaries & Benefits	40,250	7%	80,500	5%	242,932	8%	322,503	8%	335,403	6%
Advertising	15,000	2%	50,000	3%	60,000	2%	150,000	4%	300,000	5%
Direct Mail Campaign	20,000	3%	150,000	8%	150,000	5%	250,000	6%	350,000	6%
Free Kit	15,008	2%	31,429	2%	42,429	1%	57,279	1%	77,327	1%
Web Expenses Marketing	25,000	4%	25,000	1%	35,000	1%	40,000	1%	60,000	1%
Other Marketing Expenses	6,121	1%	17,839	1%	29,220	1%	41,685	1%	57,932	1%
<b>General and Administration</b>	<b>\$103,333</b>	<b>17%</b>	<b>\$201,583</b>	<b>11%</b>	<b>\$369,867</b>	<b>13%</b>	<b>\$424,276</b>	<b>10%</b>	<b>\$531,254</b>	<b>9%</b>
Salaries & Benefits	90,000	15%	178,250	10%	319,534	11%	367,276	9%	449,587	8%
Depreciation	1,333	0%	3,333	0%	10,333	0%	17,000	0%	21,667	0%
Rent & Utilities	5,000	1%	10,000	1%	20,000	1%	20,000	0%	35,000	1%
Corporate Office	7,000	1%	10,000	1%	20,000	1%	20,000	0%	25,000	0%
<b>Product Development (R&amp;D)</b>	<b>\$61,000</b>	<b>10%</b>	<b>\$227,324</b>	<b>13%</b>	<b>\$288,017</b>	<b>10%</b>	<b>\$318,938</b>	<b>8%</b>	<b>\$450,095</b>	<b>8%</b>
Salaries & Benefits		0%	142,324	8%	148,017	5%	153,938	4%	160,095	3%
Testing	1,000	0%	5,000	0%	10,000	0%	15,000	0%	20,000	0%
Product Development	60,000	10%	80,000	4%	130,000	4%	150,000	4%	270,000	5%
<b>Other Expenses</b>	<b>\$91,304</b>	<b>15%</b>	<b>\$112,096</b>	<b>6%</b>	<b>\$120,551</b>	<b>4%</b>	<b>\$129,211</b>	<b>3%</b>	<b>\$169,830</b>	<b>3%</b>
Legal	15,000	2%	20,000	1%	25,000	1%	25,000	1%	25,000	0%
Relocation		0%	10,000	1%		0%		0%		0%
Other	1,000	0%		0%		0%		0%		0%
Insurance	15,304	3%	44,596	2%	73,051	3%	104,211	2%	144,830	3%
Interest	60,000	10%	37,500	2%	22,500	1%		0%		0%
<b>Total Expenses</b>	<b>\$377,016</b>	<b>62%</b>	<b>\$895,771</b>	<b>50%</b>	<b>\$1,338,016</b>	<b>46%</b>	<b>\$1,733,892</b>	<b>42%</b>	<b>\$2,331,841</b>	<b>40%</b>
<b>Profit Before Taxes</b>	<b>(\$31,160)</b>	<b>-5%</b>	<b>\$27,229</b>	<b>2%</b>	<b>\$144,908</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>\$478,686</b>	<b>11%</b>	<b>\$875,127</b>	<b>15%</b>
<b>Taxes</b>		0%	5,446	0%	28,982	1%	95,737	2%	175,025	3%
<b>Net Income</b>	<b>(\$31,160)</b>	<b>-5%</b>	<b>\$21,783</b>	<b>1%</b>	<b>\$115,926</b>	<b>4%</b>	<b>\$382,949</b>	<b>9%</b>	<b>\$700,102</b>	<b>12%</b>

Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## **9.5 Balance Sheet Assumptions**

P'kolino outsources manufacturing of their products allowing it to minimize investment on fixed assets. Inventory is assumed at 45 days (meaning 8 inventory turns per year, equal to the industry average according to Hoover's online database). Management believes it will be able to maintain this level due to its emphasis on direct distribution.

Accounts receivable will average 30 days due to expected receivables from sales to retailers. Direct sales will have limited receivables, occurring mostly by credit card.

Table designs will be considered intangible assets and supported by constant product development efforts.

Accounts payable will be 25 days during the first few years because vendors will require most of our purchases to be paid in advance. Over time, accounts payable will lengthen as we develop a credit history.

**Exhibit 9-J**  
**Projected Balance Sheet Statements**

	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>ASSETS</b>					
Cash	\$ 289,628	\$ 133,388	\$ 106,278	\$ 338,241	\$ 1,036,185
Accounts Receivable	\$ 50,856	\$ 71,674	\$ 92,140	\$ 131,444	\$ 182,677
Inventory	\$ 70,582	\$ 91,338	\$ 138,210	\$ 197,167	\$ 274,016
<b>Total current assets</b>	<b>\$ 411,066</b>	<b>\$ 296,400</b>	<b>\$ 336,629</b>	<b>\$ 666,852</b>	<b>\$ 1,492,879</b>
Net fixed assets	\$ 6,595	\$ 18,476	\$ 37,357	\$ 44,571	\$ 47,119
<b>Fixed Assets</b>	<b>\$ 8,000</b>	<b>\$ 24,000</b>	<b>\$ 54,000</b>	<b>\$ 79,000</b>	<b>\$ 104,000</b>
<b>Fixed Assets Acum. Deprec.</b>	<b>\$ 1,405</b>	<b>\$ 5,524</b>	<b>\$ 16,643</b>	<b>\$ 34,429</b>	<b>\$ 56,881</b>
Other assets	\$ 6,103	\$ 8,601	\$ 11,057	\$ 15,773	\$ 21,921
Net Intangibles	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700
Patents + Intangibles	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 474,463</b>	<b>\$ 374,177</b>	<b>\$ 435,743</b>	<b>\$ 777,897</b>	<b>\$ 1,612,619</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>					
Accounts and trade notes payable	\$ 42,719	\$ 60,206	\$ 77,398	\$ 110,413	\$ 153,449
Income Taxes payable	\$ -	\$ 5,446	\$ 28,982	\$ 95,737	\$ 175,026
Other	\$ 12,205	\$ 17,202	\$ 22,114	\$ 31,547	\$ 43,843
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 54,924</b>	<b>\$ 82,854</b>	<b>\$ 128,493</b>	<b>\$ 237,697</b>	<b>\$ 372,317</b>
Convertible LT debt	\$ 400,000	\$ 250,000	\$ 150,000	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 454,924</b>	<b>\$ 332,854</b>	<b>\$ 278,493</b>	<b>\$ 237,697</b>	<b>\$ 372,317</b>
Paid-in capital	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700	\$ 50,700
Retained earnings	\$ (31,161)	\$ (9,377)	\$ 106,550	\$ 489,499	\$ 1,189,602
<b>Total liabilities and net worth</b>	<b>\$ 474,463</b>	<b>\$ 374,177</b>	<b>\$ 435,743</b>	<b>\$ 777,897</b>	<b>\$ 1,612,619</b>

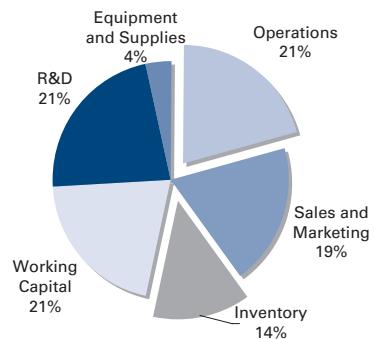
Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



### **9.6 Funding Assumptions**

The company will fund its operations through equity and convertible long-term debt. Founders have issued \$50.7K worth of equity. Proceeds will be used to pay for the product development of the initial product line. Additional funding will come in the form of long-term convertible debt (convertible into equity at the lender's discretion) for up to \$400K over the next five years, at a 15% annual interest rate. Friends and family will be the primary investors initially.

Exhibit 9-K  
Use of Funds (average)



Confidential Information  
Business Plan - Dated May-2005  
Woburn, Massachusetts – USA



## 9.7 Cash Flow Assumptions

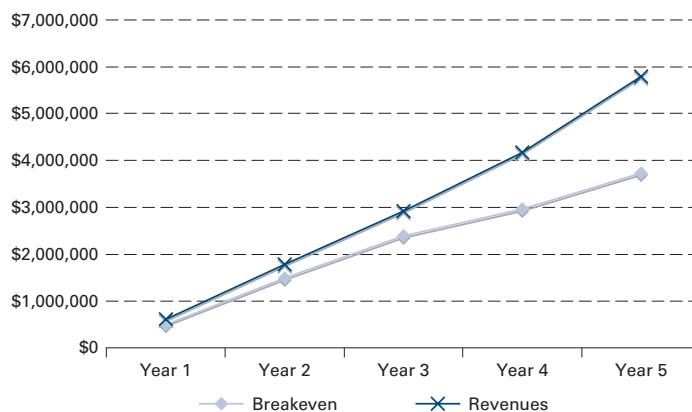
Investments will maintain positive cash flow the first 2 years. After this period, P'kolino estimates that it will generate enough cash from operations to repay the long-term debt and finance future growth.

Exhibit 9-L  
Projected Cash Flow Statements

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Net Income	\$ (31,161)	\$ 21,784	\$ 115,927	\$ 382,950	\$ 700,102
Accounts receivable (increase)	\$ (50,856)	\$ (20,818)	\$ (20,467)	\$ (39,304)	\$ (51,233)
Inventory (increase)	\$ (70,582)	\$ (20,755)	\$ (46,873)	\$ (58,956)	\$ (76,849)
Depreciation	\$ 1,405	\$ 4,119	\$ 11,119	\$ 17,786	\$ 22,452
Other Liabilities	\$ 12,205	\$ 4,996	\$ 4,912	\$ 9,433	\$ 12,296
Accounts Payable	\$ 42,719	\$ 17,487	\$ 17,192	\$ 33,015	\$ 43,036
Tax payable	\$ -	\$ 5,446	\$ 23,536	\$ 66,756	\$ 79,288
<b>Operating Cash Flow</b>	<b>\$ (96,270)</b>	<b>\$ 12,259</b>	<b>\$ 105,346</b>	<b>\$ 411,680</b>	<b>\$ 729,092</b>
Purchase of PPE	\$ (8,000)	\$ (16,000)	\$ (30,000)	\$ (25,000)	\$ (25,000)
Other Assets	\$ (6,103)	\$ (2,498)	\$ (2,456)	\$ (4,716)	\$ (6,148)
Change Intangibles	\$ (50,700)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Cash from Investing</b>	<b>\$ (64,803)</b>	<b>\$ (18,498)</b>	<b>\$ (32,456)</b>	<b>\$ (29,716)</b>	<b>\$ (31,148)</b>
Convertible LT debt	\$ 400,000	\$ (150,000)	\$ (100,000)	\$ (150,000)	\$ -
Issued Stock	\$ 50,700	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Cash from Finance</b>	<b>\$ 450,700</b>	<b>\$ (150,000)</b>	<b>\$ (100,000)</b>	<b>\$ (150,000)</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>Change in cash</b>	<b>\$ 289,628</b>	<b>\$ (156,240)</b>	<b>\$ (27,110)</b>	<b>\$ 231,963</b>	<b>\$ 697,944</b>
Cash Flow:	\$ 289,628	\$ 133,388	\$ 106,278	\$ 338,241	\$ 1,036,185

## 9.8 Breakeven Analysis

Exhibit 9-M  
Breakeven vs. Revenues



For more information please contact us at [info@pkolino.com](mailto:info@pkolino.com)  
-Page 11 -

## Preparation Questions

1. How do the common-sized income sheet ratios compare to industry standards? Can you explain the variances in a way that makes the projections seem sound?
2. How do the revenues per employee compare to industry standards? Again, can you explain the variances?
3. Do the financial projections accurately capture all the expenses that are implied in the written plan (refer back to previous chapter)?
4. Is the proposed financing sufficient to cover the company's cash flow needs? What happens if sales are not as high or quick to materialize as expected?



Grameen Bank Managing Director and Nobel Peace Prize Laureate Muhammad Yunus speaks during the lecture 'A world without poverty' on February 1, 2010 in Milan, Italy. (Source: Vittorio Zunino Celotto/Getty Images, Inc.)

## FINANCING ENTREPRENEURIAL VENTURES WORLDWIDE

A new business searching for capital has no track record to present to potential investors and lenders. All it has is a plan—sometimes written, sometimes not—that projects its future performance. This means that it is very difficult to raise debt financing from conventional banks because they require as many as three years of actual—not projected—financial statements and assets that adequately cover the loan. And even established entrepreneurs are now finding that their longtime deposit relationships aren't proving as useful, as many lenders restrict loan and credit terms to keep more cash on hand, says David S. Waddell, the CEO of investment strategy firm Waddell & Associates in Memphis, Tennessee. (According to the Federal Reserve's most recent Senior Loan Officer Opinion Survey in April 2009, 75% of domestic banks said they tightened credit for small firms—up from 70% in the Fed's January 2009 survey.) In addition, credit card companies like American Express and Advanta are either tightening their terms or cutting small businesses off entirely.<sup>1</sup> Hence, almost every new business raises its initial money from the founders themselves and what we call informal investors: family, friends, neighbors, work colleagues, and strangers; a few raise it from lending institutions, primarily banks; and a minuscule number raise it from venture capitalists, who are sometimes called *formal investors*. This chapter examines funding from entrepreneurs

themselves, informal investors, and venture capitalists in the United States and throughout the world. Chapter 10 will explain how to raise equity capital, and Chapter 11 will look at nonequity sources of financing, including banks.

Before we examine conventional means of financing startups in medium- and higher-income nations, we'll begin by looking at how many would-be entrepreneurs eking out subsistence livings in some of the most impoverished regions of the world are being financed by microcredit organizations.

## Entrepreneurial Financing for the World's Poorest

"To 'make poverty history,' leaders in private, public, and civil-society organizations need to embrace entrepreneurship and innovation as antidotes to poverty. Wealth-substitution through aid must give way to wealth-creation through entrepreneurship."<sup>2</sup> But the challenge is, "Where do nascent entrepreneurs living in poverty get any money to start a micro-business?" In Africa, for instance, 600 million people live on less than \$3 per day based on purchasing power parity (PPP). For China, the number may be 400 million and for India 500 million.<sup>3</sup>

La Maman Mole Motuke lived in a wrecked car in a suburb of Kinshasa, Zaire, with her four children. If she could find something to eat, she would feed two of her children; the next time she found something to eat, her other two children would eat. When organizers from a microcredit lending institution interviewed her, she said that she knew how to make chikwangue (manioc paste) and that she needed only a few dollars to start production. After six months of training in marketing and production techniques, Maman Motuke got her first loan of US\$100 and bought production materials.

Today Maman Motuke and her family no longer live in a broken-down car; they rent a house with two bedrooms and a living room. Her four children go to school consistently, eat regularly, and dress well. She currently is saving to buy some land in a suburb farther outside the city and hopes to build a house.<sup>7</sup>

In the developing world, 1.4 billion people (one in four) were living below \$US1.25 a day in 2005, down from 1.9 billion (one in two) in 1981. Poverty has fallen by 500 million since 1981 (from 52% of the developing world's population in 1981 to 26% percent in 2005), and the world is still on track to halve the 1990 poverty rate by 2015. But at this rate of progress, about a billion people will still live below \$1.25 a day in 2015.<sup>4</sup>

Conventional banking is based on the principle that the more you have, the more you can borrow. It relies on collateral, which means that a bank loan must be adequately covered by assets of the business or its owner—or in many cases, both. But half the world's population is very poor, so about 5 billion people are shut out of banks. For example, fewer than 10% of adults in many African countries have bank accounts. Even in Mexico, the number of families with bank accounts is less than 25%.

### Microfinancing

In 1976, in the village of Jobra, Bangladesh, Muhammad Yunus, an economist, started what today is the Grameen Bank. This was the beginning of the microfinance concept, which is best known for its application in rural areas of Bangladesh but which has now spread throughout the world. Yunus believes that access to credit is a human right. According to him, "one that does not possess anything gets the highest priority in getting a loan." And he practices what he preaches. Even beggars can get loans from the Grameen Bank. They are not required to give up begging but are encouraged to take up an additional income-generating activity, such as selling popular consumer items door to door or at the place of begging.<sup>5</sup> The bank provides larger loans, called *microenterprise loans*, for "fast-moving members." As of June 2009, almost 1.9 million Bangladeshis had taken

microenterprise loans. The average microenterprise loan was US\$360, and the biggest was US\$23,209 to purchase a truck. The Grameen Bank total loan recovery rate is 97.81%, which is remarkable because the bank relies entirely on personal trust and not collateral.<sup>6</sup>

Microfinancing is now available in many nations. It is generally agreed that it is a powerful tool in the fight to reduce poverty in poorer nations. The following is a microfinance success story from Mexico, excerpted from an article in *The Financial Times*.<sup>8</sup>

*Oscar Javier Rivera Jimenez stands on the corrugated steel roof of his warehouse and surveys the urban wasteland around him. “We constructed all of this with the money from Compartamos,” he says. “Before, there was nothing. We built it ourselves. That made it possible. And the help of God as well, which is the secret of everything.” Compartamos is Latin America’s biggest provider of microfinance—small loans aimed at budding entrepreneurs, targeted at areas of severe poverty.*

*Mr. Rivera, who set up his business six years ago in the municipality of Chimalhuacan, one of the poorest slums on the outskirts of Mexico City, is one of Compartamos’ most successful clients. Starting at the age of 21 by delivering parts on a tricycle—much of the area lacks paved roads, while both water and electricity supplies are unreliable—he now controls an impressive warehouse, where builders can buy an array of different girders. He recently opened a second branch about a mile away. He now has nine employees, four from outside the family—showing that his brand of enthusiastic entrepreneurship might yet rescue the neighborhood.*

*Compartamos (“Let’s share” in Spanish) started life as a nongovernmental organization, and gained its seed capital from multilateral funds. Now with more than 300,000 clients, its next plan is to convert itself into a bank, so that it can take in savings and also start to offer life insurance. Its portfolio grew by 58% last year, and Carlos Danel and Carlos Labarthe, its joint chief executives, intend to keep that growth going. By 2008, they aim to have one million clients. Compartamos’ average loan is for \$330,<sup>9</sup> and as is typical of microcredit elsewhere in the world, only 0.6% of its loans are 30 or more days late.*

## Microcredit for the Poorest of the Poor

The first Microcredit Summit Campaign was held in 1997. Its aim was “to reach 100 million of the world’s poorest families, especially the women of those families, with credit for self-employment and other financial and business services by the year 2005.”

In November of 2006, the campaign was relaunched to 2015 with two new goals: (1) working to ensure that 175 million of the world’s poorest families, especially the women of those families, are receiving credit for self-employment and other financial and business services by the end of 2015 and (2) working to ensure that 100 million families rise above the US\$1 a day threshold, adjusted for purchasing power parity (PPP), between 1990 and 2015.<sup>10</sup> The campaign defines the “poorest” people as those who are in the bottom half of those living below their nation’s poverty line, or any of the 1.2 billion people (240 million families) in the world who live on less than US\$1 per day based on PPP.

In January 2009, to coincide with the release of the *State of the Microcredit Summit Campaign Report 2009* (SOCR 2009), the Microcredit Summit Campaign announced that over 100 million of the world’s poorest families had received a microloan. SOCR 2009 provides the data shown in Figure 9.1.<sup>11</sup>

Women accounted for 83.4% (88.7 million) of the total number of “poorest” clients. Assuming 1 client and 4 other persons per family, the 106.6 million poorest clients reached by the end of 2007 affected some 533 million other family members.<sup>12</sup> Figure 9.2 shows the relationship between the number of families living in absolute poverty in each region (living on under US\$1 a day, adjusted for PPP) and the number of poorest families reached in each region at the end of 2007. Put another way, assuming these 5 persons per family, microcredit reached 500 million, or 42% of the world’s poorest persons.

Year	Number of Institutions Reporting	Total Number of Clients Reached	Number of "poorest" clients reported
1997	618	13,478,797	7,600,000
1998	925	20,938,899	12,221,918
1999	1,065	23,555,689	13,779,872
2000	1,567	30,681,107	19,327,451
2001	2,186	54,932,235	26,878,332
2002	2,572	67,606,080	41,594,778
2003	2,931	80,868,343	54,785,433
2004	3,164	92,270,289	66,614,871
2005	3,133	113,261,390	81,949,036
2006	3,316	133,030,913	92,922,574
2007	3,552	154,825,825	106,584,679

Source: Daley-Harris, S. *State of the Microcredit Summit Campaign Report 2009*. Microcredit Summit Campaign. 2009. p.25. [https://promujer.org/empowerment/dynamic/our\\_publications\\_5\\_Pdf\\_EN\\_SOCR2009%20English.pdf](https://promujer.org/empowerment/dynamic/our_publications_5_Pdf_EN_SOCR2009%20English.pdf)

**Figure 9.1**

### Growth in the implementation of microcredit, 1997–2007

	Asia	Africa/ Middle East	Latin America/ Caribbean	Europe
Number of Poorest Families	123.0	60.4	9.4	0.8
Number Reached by Microfinance	96.5	7.5	2.2	0.2
Percent Coverage	78%	12%	24%	29%

Source: Daley-Harris, S. *State of the Microcredit Summit Campaign Report 2009*. Microcredit Summit Campaign. 2009. p. 30. [https://promujer.org/empowerment/dynamic/our\\_publications\\_5\\_Pdf\\_EN\\_SOCR2009%20English.pdf](https://promujer.org/empowerment/dynamic/our_publications_5_Pdf_EN_SOCR2009%20English.pdf)

**Figure 9.2**

### Microfinancing by region, 2007 (in millions)

In the following sections, we will examine how entrepreneurs in all financial circumstances, from the poor in developing nations to the well-off in developed nations, raise money to start their new businesses.

## Entrepreneurs and Informal Investors

Self-funding by entrepreneurs, along with funding from informal investors, is the lifeblood of an entrepreneurial society. Founders and informal investors are sometimes referred to as the **Four Fs**: founders, family, friends, and foolhardy investors. One of the most noteworthy findings of the Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM) studies is the amount and extent of funding by the Four Fs. The prevalence rate of informal investors among the adult population of all the GEM nations combined is 3.6%, and the total sum of money they provide to fund entrepreneurship is equal to 1.2% of the combined gross domestic product (GDP) of those nations. The entrepreneurs themselves provide 65.8% of the startup capital for their

new ventures; assuming that the remainder of the funding comes from informal investors, the funding from entrepreneurs and informal investors combined amounts to 3.5% of the GDP of all the GEM nations.

The informal investor prevalence rate among the GEM nations participating in the 2009 study is shown in Figure 9.3. Among the G7 nations, the United States and France have the highest prevalence rates (both 3.8%), and the United Kingdom has the lowest (1.1%). The annual amount of funding provided by informal investors as a percentage of the GDP of the GEM 2009 nations is shown in Figure 9.4. The total amount of funding is the product of the number of informal investors and the average amount that each investor provides annually. A nation with a high prevalence rate and a high average amount per informal investor relative to its income per capita—China, for instance—ranks high in Figure 9.4. Russia, on the other hand, ranks low because its prevalence rate and the average amount per informal investor relative to its income per capita are both low. Of course, it is to be expected that in general the wealthier a nation, the higher the average amount per investor. Nonetheless, there is considerable variation, as we can see in Figure 9.5, which compares the average amount per investor with GDP per capita. Informal investors in nations above the trend line provide more investment per capita than predicted, and those below the trend line provide less; for example, Japan and the Netherlands provide more, and Norway, Finland, and the United States less.

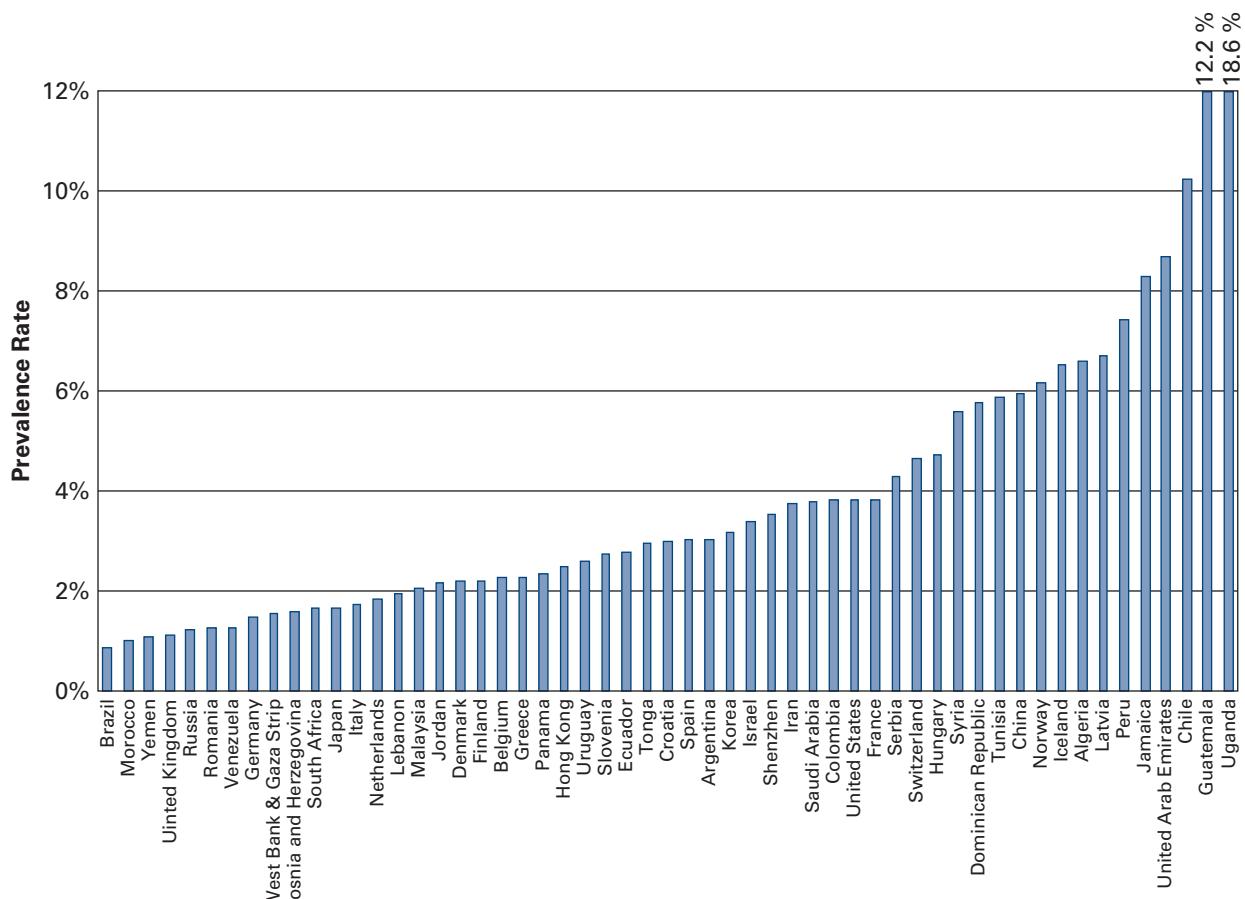
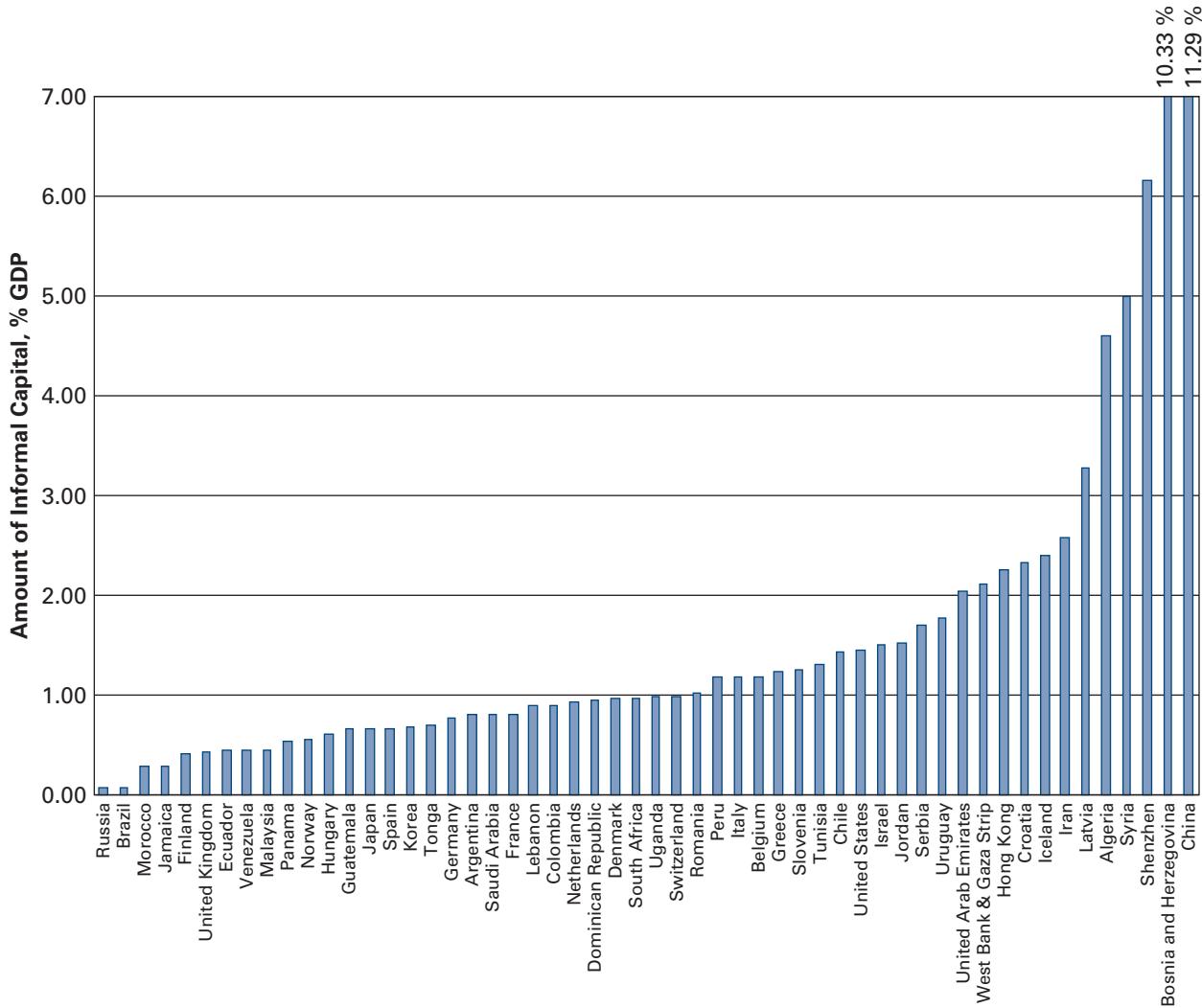


Figure 9.3

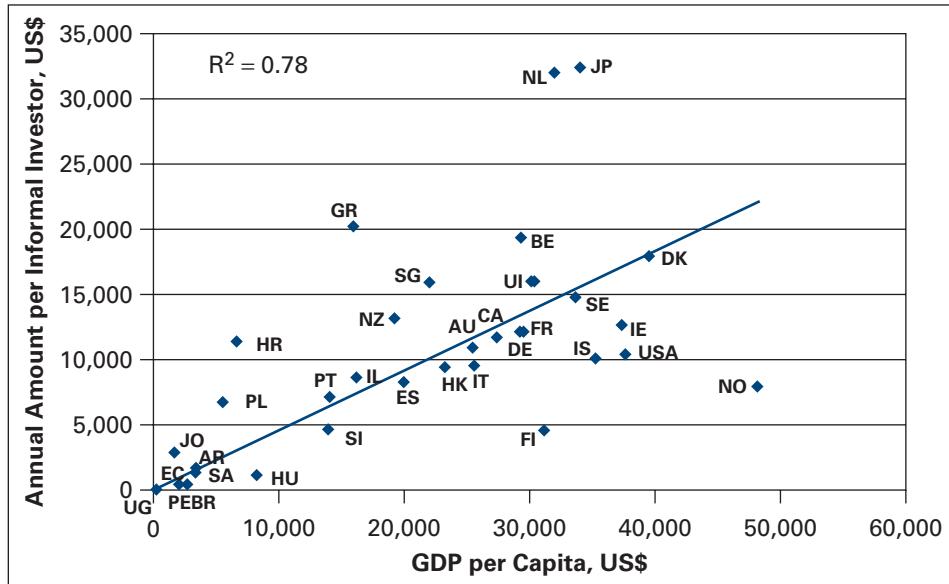
Informal investor prevalence rate, 2009

**Figure 9.4****Annual informal investment as a percentage of GDP, 2009**

However, the amount of informal investment in a nation is only one side of the financing equation; the other side is the startup funding needed by entrepreneurs.

## Amount of Capital Needed to Start a Business

The amount of capital that entrepreneurs need to start their ventures depends, among other things, on the type of business, the ambitions of the entrepreneur, the location of the business, and the country where it is started. In the United States, the average amount required to start a business is \$62,594, with entrepreneurs providing 67.9% of the funding. For all the GEM nations combined, the average amount needed to start a business is \$53,673, and as expected, more is needed for an opportunity-pulled venture (\$58,179) than for a necessity-pushed one (\$24,467). The amount needed to start a business is highest in the business services sector (\$76,263) and lowest in the consumer-oriented sector (\$39,594). The businesses that need



$R^2$  is the proportion of the variation that is explained by the trend line. An  $R^2$  of 0.78 indicates that 78% of the variation in annual amount per informal investor is explained by GDP per capita.

**Figure 9.5**

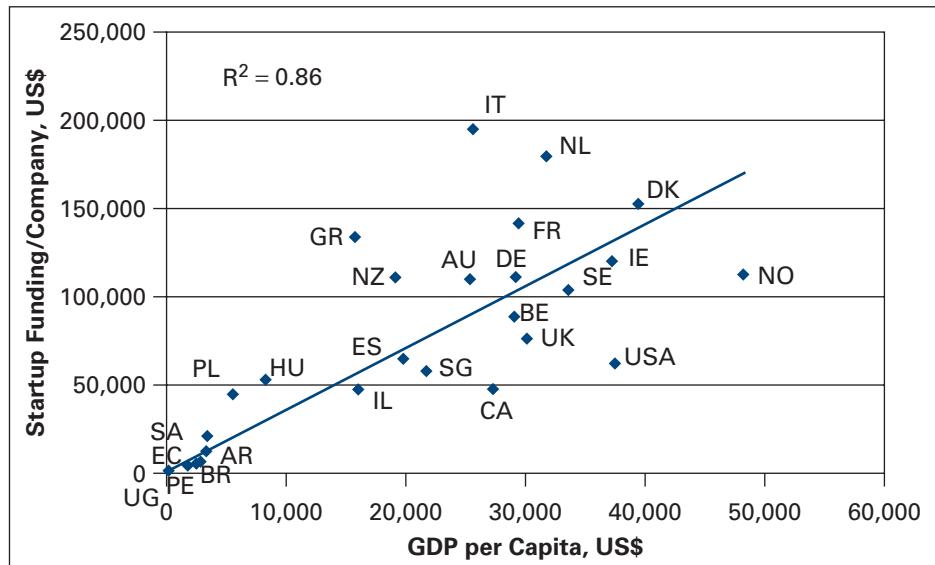
### Annual amount per informal investor vs. GDP per capita (US\$)

the most startup capital are those created with the intent to grow and hire employees. For example, nascent businesses that expect to employ 10 or more persons five years after they open require an average of \$112,943 of startup money. Business started by men require more capital than those started by women (\$65,010 vs. \$33,201); a partial explanation is that women are more likely than men to start necessity-pushed businesses, which are more likely to be consumer-oriented and less likely to be business services.

To put nations on an approximately equal footing on the basis of wealth, we plot the amount of funding needed to start a business against a nation's GDP per capita, as seen in Figure 9.6. Entrepreneurs in countries falling below the trend line have a comparative advantage over entrepreneurs in countries above the trend line because it costs less to start a business relative to the income per capita in those countries, all other things being equal. This finding partially explains why the United States and Canada have the highest total entrepreneurial activity (TEA) rates among the G7 nations and Italy the second-lowest rate. It might also explain to some extent why Norway has a higher TEA rate than its Scandinavian neighbors Sweden and Denmark.

## Characteristics of Informal Investors

Entrepreneurs provide 65.8% of their startup capital; hence, others, principally informal investors, provide the remaining 34.2%. Who are informal investors? We can categorize them as follows: close family and relatives of the entrepreneurs (49.4%) are first; next are friends and neighbors (26.4%); these are followed by other relatives (9.4%), work colleagues (7.9%), and strangers (6.9%), as shown in Figure 9.7. Strangers—the foolhardy investors among the Four Fs—are usually called *business angels*.



$R^2$  is the proportion of the variation that is explained by the trend line. An  $R^2$  of 0.86 indicates that 86% of the variation in startup funding per company is explained by the GDP per capita.

**Figure 9.6**

### Startup funding per company vs. GDP per capita (US\$)

Relationship: Investor-Investee	Percent Total	Mean Amount Invested US\$	Median Payback Time	Median X Return
Close family	49.4%	23,190	2 years	1 x
Other relative	9.4%	12,345	2 years	1 x
Work colleague	7.9%	39,032	2 years	1 x
Friend, neighbor	26.4%	15,548	2 years	1 x
Stranger	6.9%	67,672	2–5 years	1.5 x
	100.0%	24,202	2 years	1 x

**Figure 9.7**

### Relationship of informal investor to investee

Using GEM data for the United States, Bygrave and Reynolds<sup>13</sup> developed a model that predicted whether or not a person was an informal investor. They found that the informal investor prevalence rate among entrepreneurs was 4.3 times the rate among nonentrepreneurs. With just one criterion, whether someone was an entrepreneur, their model correctly classified 86% of the entire population as being or not being informal investors. And with just two criteria, whether a person was an entrepreneur and that person's income, the model correctly identified an informal investor 56% of the time across the entire population, of whom slightly less than 5% were informal investors. Looked at another way, the model was 11 times better than a random choice at singling out an informal investor from the entire adult population. In general, this means that entrepreneurs in search of startup funding should target self-made entrepreneurs with high incomes. More specifically, they should first talk with the entrepreneurs among their close relatives, friends, and neighbors.

## Financial Returns on Informal Investment

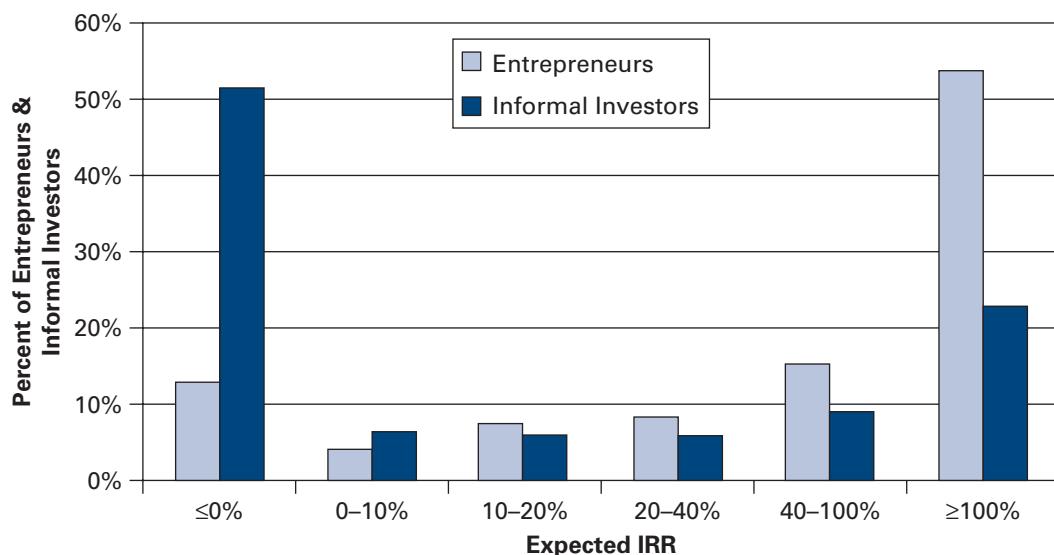
What financial return do informal investors expect? The median expected payback time, as you can see in Figure 9.7, is two years, and the median amount returned is one times the original investment. In other words, there is a negative or zero return on investment for half the informal investments. It seems that altruism is involved to some extent in an informal investment in a relative's or a friend's new business.<sup>14</sup> Put differently, investments in close family are often made more for love, not money.

The amount invested by strangers is the highest. What's more, the median return expected by strangers is 1.5 times the original investment, compared with just 1 for relatives and friends. The most likely reason is that investments by strangers are made in a more detached and businesslike manner than are investments by relatives and friends.

There is a big variation in the return expected by informal investors: 34% expect that they will not receive any of their investment back, whereas 5% expect to receive 20 or more times the original investment. Likewise, there is a big variation in the payback time: 17% expect to get their return in six months, whereas 2% expect to get it back in 20 years or longer.

Entrepreneurs are much more optimistic about the return on the money that they themselves put into their own ventures: 74% expect the payback time to be two years or sooner, and their median expected return is 2 times their original investment, while 15% expect 20 or more times that investment.

The expected **internal rate of return** or IRR (compound annual return on investment) is calculated from the expected payback time and the times return for informal investors and entrepreneurs who reported both (see Figure 9.8). The returns expected by entrepreneurs are almost the reverse of those expected by informal investors: 51% of informal investors expect a negative or zero return, and only 22% expect a return of 100% or more; by contrast, only 13% of entrepreneurs expect a negative or zero return, but a whopping 53% expect a return of 100% or more.



**Figure 9.8**

**Expected IRR for entrepreneurs and informal investors**

## Supply and Demand for Startup Financing

Is the amount of funding sufficient to supply the external capital that entrepreneurs need to finance their new ventures? The average amount of an informal investment (\$24,202) is more than the average amount of external financing that entrepreneurs need (\$18,678). So for those entrepreneurs who are successful in raising money from informal investors, the amount on average more than meets their needs. But is there enough informal investment to supply all the nascent entrepreneurs in a given country?

The percentage of nascent businesses that could be funded with the available informal investment, assuming it all went to nascent businesses, is shown in Figure 9.9. Singapore has the highest percentage of nascent businesses that could be funded, and Brazil the lowest. Of course, not all nascent businesses deserve to get funded. Without knowing the merits of each nascent business, and hence whether or not it deserves to be funded, we cannot say whether the available informal investment is adequate. But it seems likely that a country with enough informal investment to fund 40% or more of all its nascent entrepreneurs probably has sufficient informal investment because, in the end, the majority of new businesses never become viable in the long-term,<sup>15</sup> failing to produce a satisfactory return on investment for either their owners or their investors.

However, just because a country has sufficient startup capital overall does not mean that every deserving nascent business gets funded. An entrepreneur's search for startup capital from informal investors is a haphazard process. If an entrepreneur is unable to raise sufficient money from relatives, friends, and acquaintances, there is no systematic method of searching for potential investors who are strangers. Granted, there are organized groups of informal investors (*business angels*) in many nations, but the number of companies they finance is tiny in proportion to the number of entrepreneurs who seek capital. In addition, most business angel networks in developed nations look for high-potential startups that have prospects of

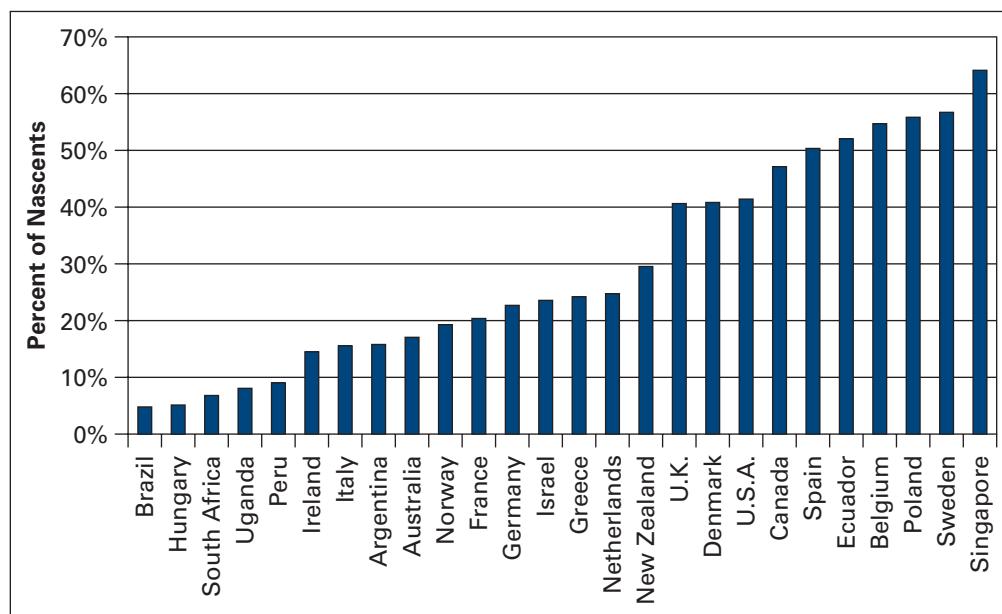


Figure 9.9

Percentage of nascent businesses that could be funded by available informal investment

growing into substantial enterprises of the sort that organized venture capitalists would invest in at a subsequent round of funding.

## Venture Capital

By far the rarest source of capital for nascent entrepreneurs is venture capital.<sup>16</sup> In fact, nascent companies with venture capital in hand before they open their doors for business are so rare that even in the United States—which has almost two-thirds of the total of classic venture capital<sup>17</sup> in the entire world—far fewer than one in ten thousand new ventures gets its initial financing from venture capitalists. In general, venture capital is invested in companies that are already in business rather than in nascent companies with products or services that are still on paper. For example, out of 3,192 U.S. businesses in which \$28.4 billion of venture capital was invested in 2008, only 1,179 received venture capital for the first time, and of those, relatively few were seed-stage companies. From 1970 through 2008, the venture capital industry invested \$466 billion in 60,700 companies at all stages of development.<sup>18</sup> It is estimated that over the same period, informal investors provided more than a trillion dollars to more than 10 million nascent and baby businesses. In every nation, there is far more informal investment from the Four Fs than formal investment from venture capitalists (see Figure 9.10).

### Classic Venture Capital

While classic venture capitalists finance very few companies, some of the ones that they do finance play a very important—many say a crucial—role in the development of knowledge-based industries, such as biotechnology; medical instruments and devices; computer hardware,

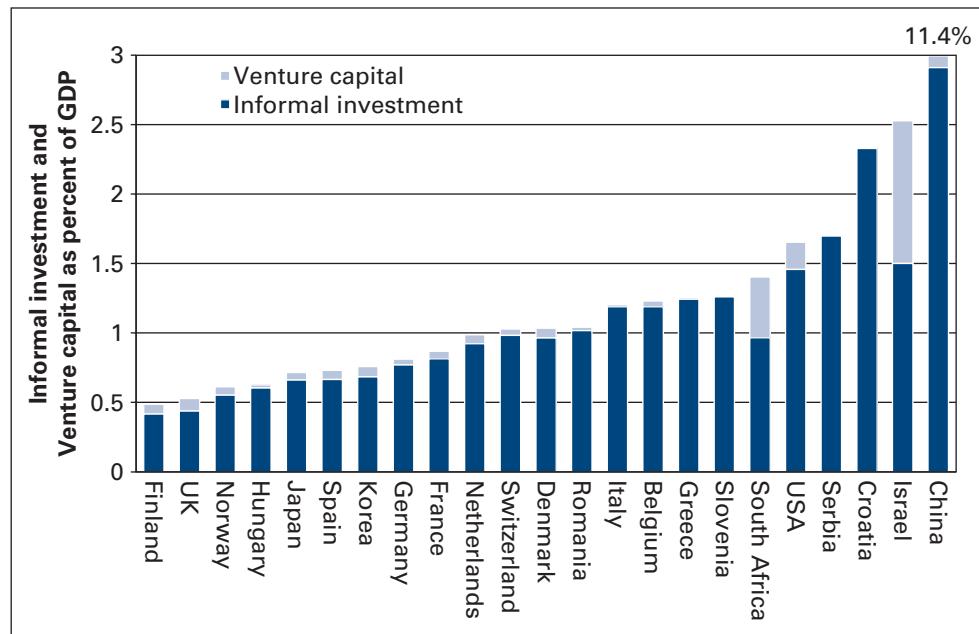


Figure 9.10

Informal investment and venture capital as a percentage of GDP, 2008

software, and services; telecommunications hardware and software; Internet technology and services; electronics; semiconductors; and nanotechnology. Venture capitalists like to claim that the companies they invest in have the potential to change the way in which people work, live, and play. And, indeed, an elite few have done just that worldwide; some famous examples are Intel, Apple, Microsoft, Federal Express, Cisco, Genentech, Amazon, eBay, Google, and Twitter.

It's not by chance that almost all the venture-capital-backed companies with global brand names are American; rather, it is because the United States is the predominant nation with respect to classic venture capital investments. In 2008, 74% of all the classic venture capital invested among the G7 nations was invested in the United States. The amount of classic venture capital as a percentage of GDP for the GEM nations is shown in Figure 9.11. Israel, which of all the GEM nations has a venture capital industry most like that in the United States, has the highest amount of venture capital in proportion to its GDP (1.1%), while Italy has the lowest among the G7 nations.

While 74% of the classic venture capital invested in the G7 nations was in the United States, only 36% of the companies that received that investment were there because the amount invested per company in the United States was \$8.9 million compared with an

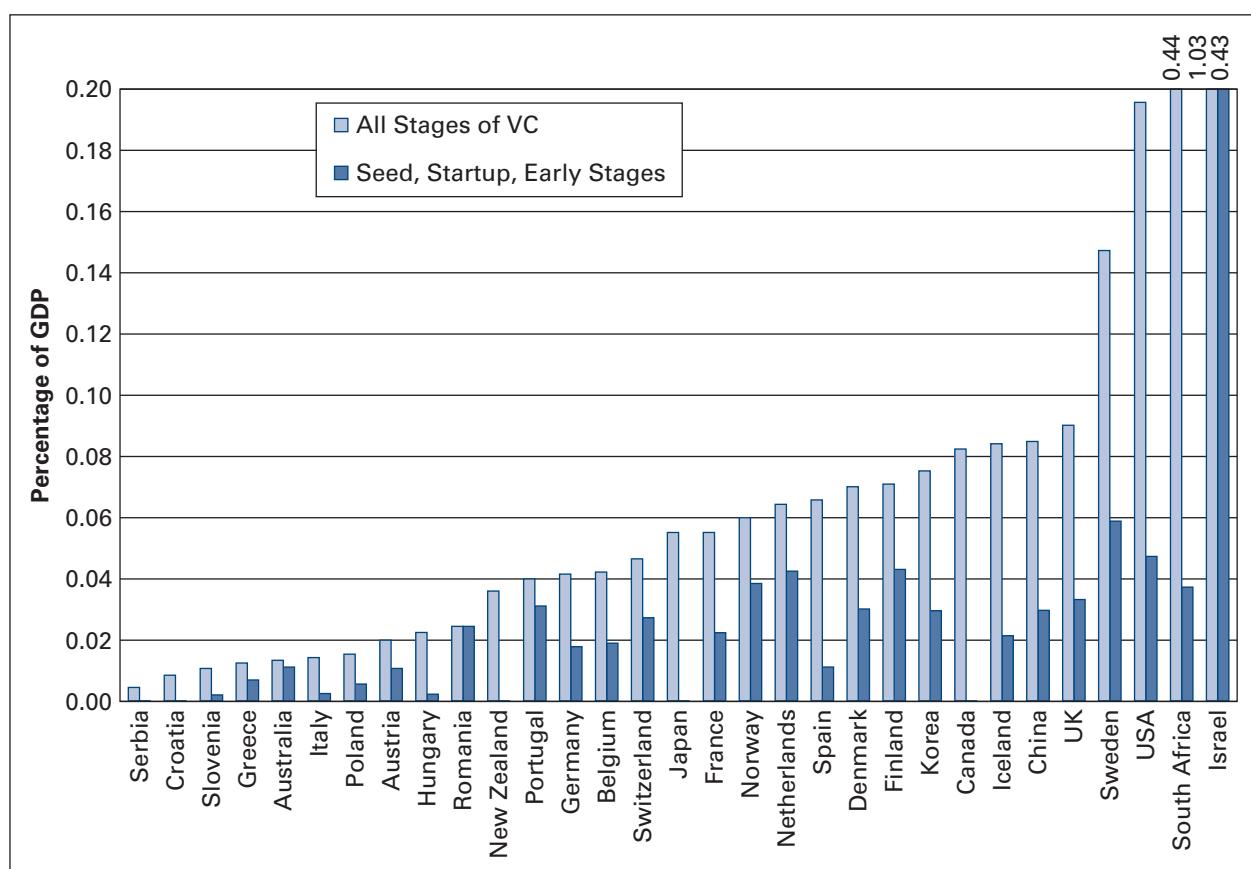
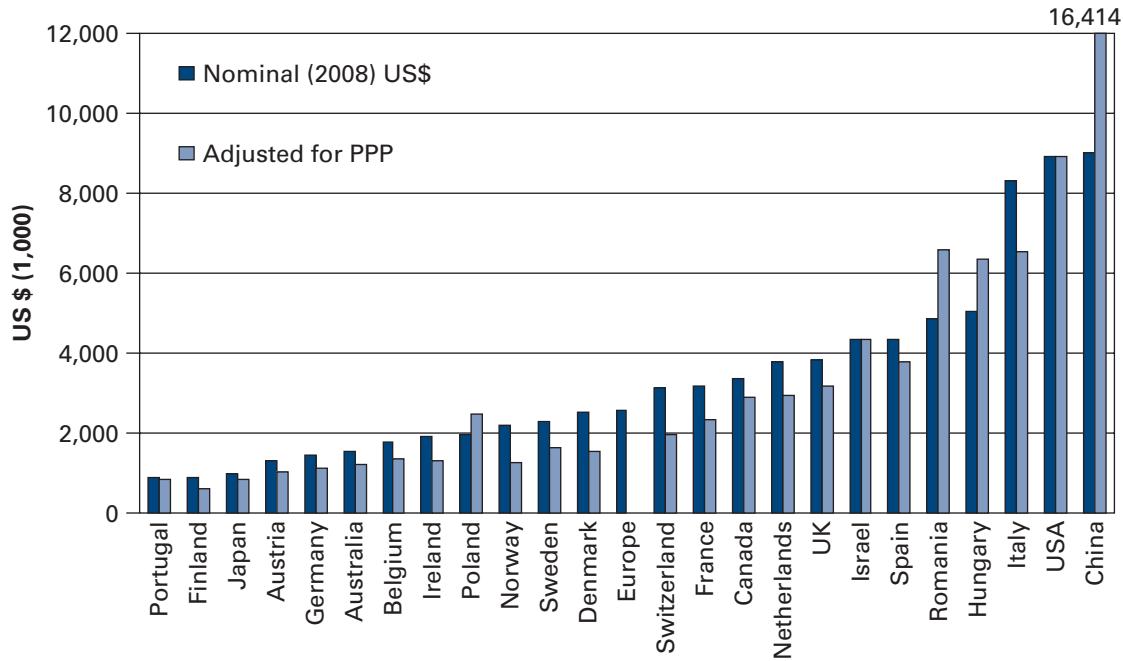


Figure 9.11

Classic venture capital investment as a percentage of GDP, 2008

**Figure 9.12****Classic venture capital investment per company, 2008**

average of \$1.7 million per company in the other G7 nations. Figure 9.12 shows the amount invested per company for all the GEM nations, including the G7. It is hard to see how companies in Japan, for example, which received on average \$972,000 of venture capital, can hope to compete in the global market against companies in the United States that received \$8.9 million. It is just as costly to operate a company in Japan as in the United States, if not more so; in fact, entrepreneurs work just as long hours in the United States as they do in Japan. Furthermore, the home market where startups initially sell their products and services is more than twice as big in the United States as in Japan. Although the average amounts of venture capital per company in Germany (\$1.4 million) and the United Kingdom (\$3.2 million) are higher than in Japan, these amounts still appear to be wholly inadequate in comparison with the United States. And when the nominal amount of venture capital per company is adjusted for purchasing power, the gap between the United States and the other G7 nations is even wider. China and the United States are almost equal in the amount invested per company in nominal dollars, but when purchasing power is considered, China tops the United States by almost 100%. If the present trend continues, it is likely that by 2012, China will overtake the whole of Europe in the amount of venture capital invested domestically. It will be interesting to see if Chinese venture-capital-backed companies develop global brands that rival those of their U.S. counterparts.

Since the main purpose of classic venture capital is to accelerate the commercialization of new products and services, U.S. companies have a very considerable advantage in the global marketplace. What's more, successful U.S. companies can build on their venture capital backing by subsequently raising very substantial financing with initial public offerings (IPOs) in the stock market.

## American Free Enterprise Versus Government-Sponsored Innovation

Google was developed entirely with money from the founders themselves, about \$1 million from informal investors, \$24 million from two venture capital firms, and \$1.67 billion from its IPO. It is a classic example of American free enterprise at its best. Here is how the French and German governments were planning to create a European rival to Google in 2006—a decade after Google was founded in a dorm room by two 23-year-old Stanford graduate students.

### A Franco-German Search Engine

In his 2006 New Year's speech, President Jacques Chirac said that France needed "to take up the global challenge posed by Google and Yahoo."<sup>19</sup> By then, France and Germany had already started to develop a new search engine, Quaero ("I seek" in Latin). It was conceived in 2005 by Chirac and Gerhard Schröder,

who was then the German Chancellor, as the Franco-German response to U.S. dominance in the search engine market.

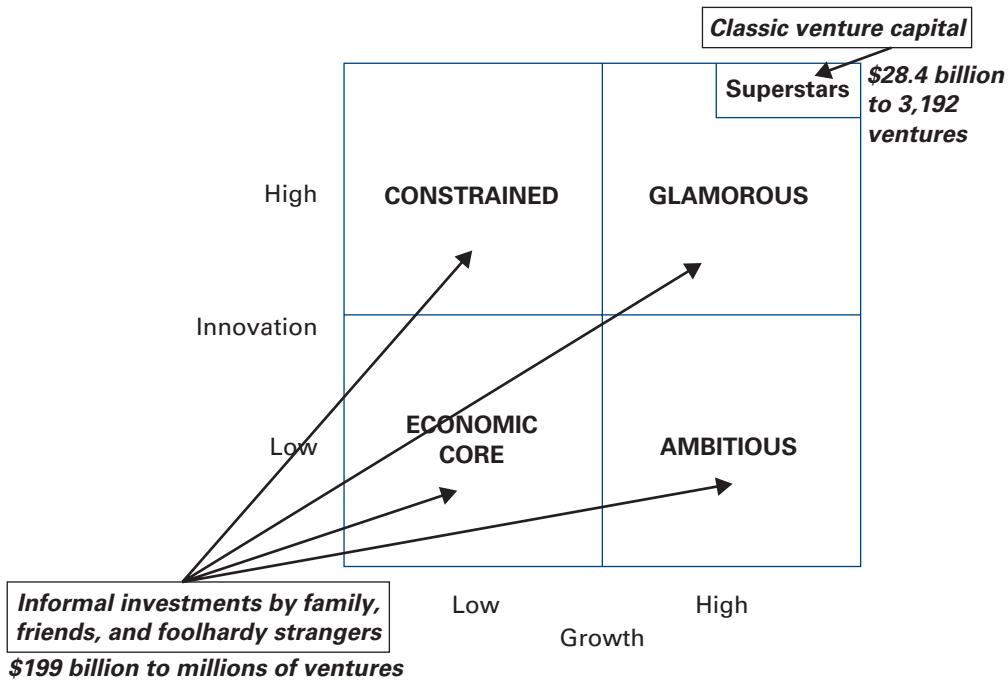
Rather like the origin of Airbus Industrie in 1970 as a Franco-German challenge to Boeing's dominance of the global commercial aircraft market, Quaero is being developed by French and German companies backed with substantial government financing. In April 2006, Chirac announced that France's subsidy for Quaero was €90 million. The official estimate of the cost of developing Quaero is €450 million over five years,<sup>20</sup> but unofficial estimates put it much higher.<sup>21</sup>

Some industry experts are concerned that Quaero is driven more by national pride than the marketplace. They point out that Quaero's budget of €90 million (\$115 million) per year for five years is dwarfed by Yahoo's \$547 million and Google's \$484 million annual research and development (R&D) expenditures in 2005. They are concerned that, by the time that Quaero is developed, the market will have moved on. By 2009, the Quaero consortium had not launched a commercial product but was planning a demonstration sometime in 2010.<sup>22</sup>

About 80% of the venture capital invested in the United States finances high-technology companies; by contrast, only 29% of the venture capital invested in the other G7 nations, except Canada, is in high-technology companies. Seventy-three percent of the venture capital invested in high-technology companies at all stages from seed through buyouts in the G7 nations goes to companies in the United States. But when the investment is narrowed down to classic venture capital, the proportion invested in U.S. high-technology companies increases to an estimated 80%, with the U.S. share of classic venture capital invested in biotechnology at 81% and in computer hardware and software at 83%. When it comes to investment in all stages of consumer-related companies, the situation is reversed—only 13% of them are in the United States and 87% are in the other G7 nations.

### Importance of Venture Capital in the U.S. Economy

One way of classifying young ventures is by their degree of innovation and their rate of growth<sup>23</sup> (see Figure 9.13). In the bottom left quadrant of the figure are companies that are not very innovative and grow comparatively slowly. They provide goods and services that are the core of the economy; for the most part, they have lots of competitors, and they grow at the same rate as the economy. In the upper left quadrant are companies that are innovative but that are not fast growing because for one reason or another they are constrained—often because they are started and managed by entrepreneurs with limited ability. In the bottom right quadrant are companies that are not particularly innovative but that outpace the growth rate of many of their competitors because they are run by ambitious entrepreneurs with



**Figure 9.13**

### Financing entrepreneurial ventures in the United States, 2008

superior management skills. And in the top right quadrant are companies that are innovative and have superior management; among them are the superstar companies that attract media attention.

Informal investment goes to companies in all quadrants. In contrast, classic venture capital goes only to the companies in the uppermost corner of the glamorous quadrant. They are the companies with potential to become the superstar companies in their industries—and in a few instances, to be central in the creation and development of a new industry segment. By and large, they are led by entrepreneurial teams with excellent management skills. The companies are usually already up and running when the first venture capital is invested, although in a few rare instances venture capital is invested before the company is operational. Looked at another way, classic venture capital accelerates the growth rate of young superstar companies; it seldom finances nascent entrepreneurs who are not yet in business. A relatively sophisticated subset of informal investors, business angels, invests primarily in the glamorous companies, especially those with the potential to become superstars. Business angels are often entrepreneurs themselves, or former entrepreneurs, who invest some of their wealth in seed- and early-stage businesses. Angel investment frequently precedes formal venture capital.

If venture capital dried up in the United States, there would be no noticeable change in the number of companies being started because so few have venture capital in hand when they open their doors for business, whereas everyone has funding from one or more of the Four Fs. But in the long-term, the effect on the economy would be catastrophic because venture-capital-backed companies generate a disproportionate number of good-paying jobs and create many of the new products and services. Those companies make a major contribution to the U.S. economy. For instance, by 2008, venture-capital-backed companies accounted for 11% of jobs in the U.S. private sector and 21% of its GDP (see Figure 9.14).<sup>24</sup>



*Source:* National Venture Capital Association

**Figure 9.14**

### Economic Benefits of Venture-Capital-Backed Companies



**Georges Doriot (1899–1987) founded the venture capital industry when he started American Research and Development in Boston in 1946. His venture capital firm made many seed-stage investments, the most famous of which was \$70,000 for 77% of the startup equity of Digital Equipment Corporation. (1979 photo)**

Venture-capital-backed companies in general outperformed other companies in job creation and sales growth between 2006 and 2008. For example, venture-backed-company sales grew by nearly 5.3% compared with 3.5% for all U.S. companies. The computer software industry provides a strong example of the differential. Venture-backed computer software companies' sales increased 31% between 2000 and 2003 compared with the growth rate of just 5% for the industry sector as a whole. In 2008, the headquarters of venture-capital-backed computer software companies with the highest combined sales revenue were located in California, New York, Texas, Pennsylvania, and Minnesota.

Venture-capital-backed companies create jobs across the nation. California, New York, Texas, Massachusetts, and Georgia led the nation in employment created by the venture-backed firms headquartered in their states in 2008. Venture-capital-backed companies headquartered in California alone were responsible for employing almost 3.9 million people nationwide in 2008 (see Figure 9.14).<sup>25</sup>

Venture-capital-backed companies, adjusted for size, spend over twice as much on R&D as other companies. In particular, small firms in the venture-dominated information technology and medical-related sectors are big spenders on R&D. Small firms—mainly venture-capital-backed ones—accounted for about 40% of the R&D spending in biotech in 2003 compared with 18% by large companies. Three of the top 10 U.S. spenders on R&D were venture-capital-backed companies: Microsoft, Cisco Systems, and Intel.

### Mechanism of Venture Capital Investing

The formal venture capital industry was born in Massachusetts at the end of World War II when a group of investors inspired by General Georges Doriot, a legendary professor at the Harvard Business School, put together the first venture capital fund, American Research and Development. They did so because they were concerned that the commercial potential of technical advances made by scientists and engineers at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology during World War II would be lost unless funding was available to commercialize them.

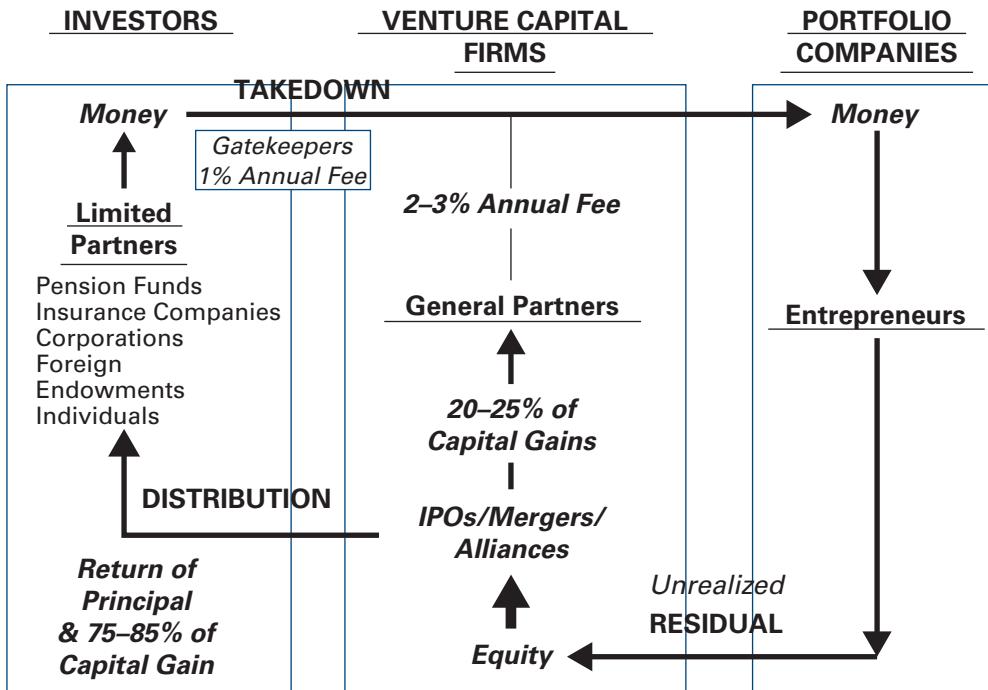


Figure 9.15

### Flow of venture capital

The fledgling venture capital industry grew and evolved; eventually, the most common form of organization for U.S. venture capital funds became the limited partnership.

The mechanism of venture capital investing is shown in Figure 9.15.<sup>26</sup> At the center of the process are the general partners of venture capital funds, which are limited partnerships with a 10-year life that is sometimes extended. The general partners of venture capital funds raise money from limited partners. In return for managing the partnership, the general partners receive an annual fee of 2% to 3% of the principal that has been paid into the fund. The general partners then invest money in portfolio companies in exchange for equity. If all goes well, the investment in the portfolio companies grows, and the equity is eventually harvested, usually with an IPO or a trade sale to a bigger company. The capital gain on the harvest is shared 80% – 20% between the limited partners and the general partners once the limited partners have received back all the principal they put into the limited partnership. The general partners' share is called the *carried interest*, which is usually 20%. Sometimes gatekeepers (formally called *investment advisors*) are employed by limited partners to advise them on what venture capital funds they should invest in and to watch over an investment once it has been made. The gatekeeper's fee is approximately 1% of the capital invested.

In 2005, approximately 50% of the money invested by limited partners came from pension funds—in both the public and the private sectors—with the balance coming from endowments, foundations, insurance companies, banks, and individuals. As we've mentioned, each venture capital partnership (called a *venture capital fund*) has a 10-year life. If a venture capital fund is successful, measured by the financial return to the limited partners, the general partners usually raise another fund four to six years after the first fund. This, in essence, means that successful venture capital firms generally have two to four active funds at a time, since each fund has a life of 10 years.

## Kleiner Perkins Caufield and Byers: A Legendary Venture Capital Firm

Eugene Kleiner and Tom Perkins formed their venture capital firm, then known as Kleiner Perkins, in 1972. Kleiner was one of the founders of Fairchild Semiconductor, and Perkins was a rising star at Hewlett-Packard. It is probably the most successful venture capital firm ever. Today it is known as Kleiner Perkins Caufield and Byers (KPC&B). Headquartered on Sand Hill Road in the heart of Silicon Valley, since 1972 it has invested in more than 400 companies, among them AOL, Amazon,

Compaq, Genentech, Intuit, LSI Logic, Netscape, Sun, and Google.

In 2008, KPC&B raised a \$700 million fund, Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byers XIII. The limited partner investors in the 13th fund since 1972 are largely the same ones that have invested in KPC&B funds over the last 25 years or so. This family of funds has been so successful that it is virtually impossible for new limited partners to invest because the general partners can raise all the money they need from the limited partners who invested in previous funds. The \$700 million was to be invested by the general partners over three years, mainly in early-stage companies with innovations in greentech, information technology, and life sciences.

## Financial Returns on Venture Capital

A rule of thumb for a successful venture capital fund is that, for every 10 investments in its portfolio, two are big successes that produce excellent financial returns; two are outright failures in which the total investment is written off; three are walking wounded, which in venture capital jargon means that they are not successful enough to be harvested but are probably worth another round of venture capital to try to get them into harvestable condition; and three are living dead, meaning that they may be viable companies but have no prospect of growing big enough to produce a satisfactory return on the venture capital invested in them.

Approximately 3,000 of the 27,000 or so companies (about 11%) financed with venture capital between 1970 and 2004 have had IPOs.<sup>27</sup> Of the others that were harvested, mergers and acquisitions were the most common exit. In comparatively rare instances, the company's managers bought back the venture capitalist's investment.

The highest return on a venture capital investment is produced when the company has an IPO or is sold to or merged with another company (also called a *trade sale*) for a substantial capital gain. In general, however, trade sales do not produce nearly as big a capital gain as IPOs do because most trade sales involve venture-capital-backed companies that aren't successful enough to have an IPO. For instance, one way of harvesting the walking wounded and living dead is to sell them to other companies for a modest capital gain—or in some cases, a loss. The average post-IPO valuation of venture-capital-backed companies that went public in the five years through 2008 was \$523 million<sup>28</sup> compared with an average valuation of \$122 million for those that were exited through mergers and acquisitions.<sup>29</sup>

The overall IRR to limited partners of classic venture capital funds, over the entire period since 1946 when the first fund was formed, has been in the mid-teens. But during those six decades, there have been periods when the returns have been higher or lower. When the IPO market is booming, the returns on venture capital are high, and vice versa. The returns of U.S. venture capital are shown in Figure 9.16. Over most of the 10- and 20-year horizons, seed- and early-stage funds outperformed balanced and later-stage ones. This is what we might have expected because the earlier the stage of investment, the greater the risk, and hence, the return should be higher to compensate for the risk. The seed- and early-stage risk premium is spectacular for the 10-year horizon (36.0% versus 7.5% for later-stage funds) because the

Fund Type	Investment Horizon IRR Through December 31, 2008				
	1 Year	3 Years	5 Years	10 Years	20 Years
Seed/Early Stages	-20.6	1.7	3.7	36.0	21.8
Balanced Stages	-26.9	4.6	8.4	13.5	14.5
Later Stage	-6.8	9.5	8.7	7.5	14.5
All Venture Funds	-20.9	4.2	6.4	15.5	17.0
NASDAQ	-38.1	-10.3	-4.6	-3.2	7.3
S&P 500	-36.1	-10.0	-4.0	-3.0	6.1

Source: Venture Economics/NVCA<sup>22</sup>

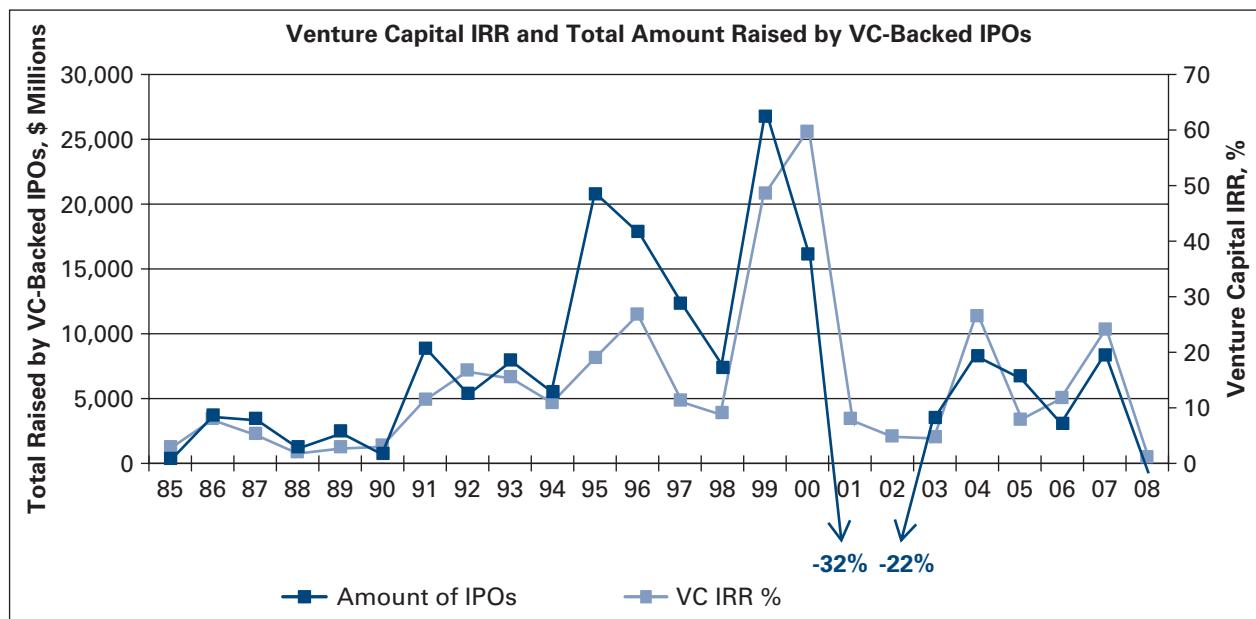
Source: Thompson Reuters/NVCA. April 27, 2009

**Figure 9.16**

### Venture capital IRRs and NASDAQ and S&P 500 Returns

10-year horizon includes the years 1999 and 2000, which were the peak of the Internet bubble, when year-to-year returns on all venture capital funds were 62.5% and 37.6%, with returns on seed- and early-stage funds being much higher. The one-year returns for 2008—the year of the banking industry meltdown—were awful because the IPO market was dismal, with only 6 IPOs in the entire 12 months compared with 86 in 2007; indeed, the IPO market was so dreadful in 2008 that no venture-capital-backed companies went public in the second quarter; the last time that happened was more than 30 years ago!

The importance of the IPO market for venture capital is demonstrated in Figure 9.17, which shows the year-to-year IRRs of venture capital and the total amount of money raised by IPOs of companies backed with venture capital. This shows a close correlation between the



**Figure 9.17**

### Venture capital year-to-year IRR and total raised by venture-capital-backed IPOs

two lines—when the IPO market is thriving, as it was in 1999 and early 2000, the returns on venture capital are high. Not only do lucrative IPOs directly produce spectacular returns on venture capital invested in the companies going public, but also they indirectly raise the returns on acquisitions and mergers because IPO market valuations tend to set the valuations of all private equity deals. For instance, in 2000 during the Internet bubble, the average valuation for a venture-capital-backed merger/acquisition was \$338.4 million, but by 2002, after the bubble burst, the average valuation fell to \$52.2 million.

Beginning in the second quarter of 2003, the number of venture-capital-backed IPOs and the amount raised in the offerings in the United States began an upward trend that built substantial momentum in 2004, when 83 venture-capital-backed companies had IPOs. Google's spectacular IPO in the third quarter of 2004 boosted the confidence of the venture capital industry. Some industry leaders expected that it would herald the start of a new cycle in venture capital investing, with more money being invested in seed-, startup-, and early-stage businesses. What they were hoping for was another revolutionary innovation that would fire up the enthusiasm of investors such as personal computers did at the beginning of the 1980s and the Internet and the World Wide Web (Web) did in the mid-1990s. They hoped it would be nanotechnology, and now in 2010, they are betting on clean technology.

Clean technology is attracting a lot of venture capital, with the amount invested increasing 10-fold from \$0.4 billion in 2004 to \$4.1 billion in 2008. Silicon Valley's preeminent venture capital firm, Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byers, recruited Al Gore as a partner. According to Gore, who was cited for "informing the world of the dangers posed by climate change" when awarded the 2007 Nobel Peace Prize, clean technology will be "bigger than the Industrial Revolution and significantly faster."<sup>30</sup> But an IPO boom in clean technology stocks has yet to materialize. Investors are still shy of the IPO market after the financial beating they took when the Internet IPO bubble burst. Most of them had negative returns on their stock portfolios over the the last 10 years, with the NASDAQ returning -3.2% per year and the S&P500 -3.0% (Figure 9.16).

## Venture Capital in Europe

Since the mid-1990s, venture capital grew rapidly, as most nations strived to emulate the impact that classic venture capital was having on the U.S. economy. It has happened before: at the end of the 1960s, when the United States enjoyed a boom in classic venture capital, and again at the start of the 1980s, when the rest of the world marveled at the success of the personal computer industry and the emerging biotech sector in the United States. Unfortunately, in both instances it turned out to be a false dawn. Returns on classic venture capital outside the United States were—to say the least—disappointing, and classic venture capital floundered.

One of the principal reasons for the failure of classic venture capital in Europe at the start of the 1990s was the failure of the secondary markets after the general stock market crash of October 1987. The Unlisted Securities Market in London, the Second Marché in Lyon, the Marché Hors-Côte in Paris, the Mercato Restrito in Milan, and the Secondary Market in Brussels had been significant contributors and enabling factors for the introduction of venture capital in those European countries in the early 1980s because they provided ready markets for floating IPOs of venture-capital-backed companies. Unfortunately, those European secondary markets, unlike the NASDAQ in the United States, did not recover, and so they faded, which left European venture capitalists without their favorite and most bountiful exit route from their investments: IPOs.<sup>31</sup>

In the late 1990s, markets for IPOs in Europe started to prosper, especially the AIM in the United Kingdom, but just as in the United States after 2001, it again became very difficult to float venture-capital-backed IPOs in Europe; consequently, classic venture capital returns fell and investments declined. Once more it demonstrated that classic venture capital cannot do well without a robust IPO market.

# Factors Affecting Availability of Financing

---

The three fundamental elements of an entrepreneurial society are an abundance of would-be entrepreneurs, plenty of market opportunities for new ventures, and sufficient resources—of which financing is a major component—for entrepreneurs to launch their new ventures.<sup>32</sup> Numerous environmental and societal factors affect the three basic elements, and in combination with the basic elements, they determine the degree of entrepreneurial activity in a region. We will now look at how financing correlates with entrepreneurial activity and the factors that affect the availability of financing. Because GEM includes many nations, we can see how informal investment and venture capital are related to environmental, societal, and governmental factors.

## Total Entrepreneurial Activity and Informal Investing

The prevalence of informal investors correlates positively with the overall TEA index and three component TEA indices—opportunity, market expansion potential, and high job growth potential. And the amount of informal investment as a percentage of GDP correlates positively with two TEA indices—necessity and high job growth potential. Those correlations are convincing evidence that nations with more informal investing have more entrepreneurial activity, but they do not separate cause from effect. Informal investing and entrepreneurship depend on each other: Informal investment facilitates entrepreneurship, and entrepreneurship brings about a need for informal investment.

## Factors Affecting Informal Investing

Money for informal investing comes from a person's after-tax income and savings, which more often than not are accumulated from after-tax income. Thus, it seems reasonable to hypothesize that the higher the rate of taxation, the less likely that a person will have discretionary money to invest, and vice versa. In many nations, especially developed ones, the biggest taxes are social security, income taxes, indirect taxes such as sales tax on goods and services, and taxes on capital and property.

For all the GEM nations, the prevalence rate of informal investors is negatively correlated with social security taxes and with taxes on capital and property. For nations with an income of at least \$5,000 per capita, the amount of informal investment per GDP correlates negatively with social security taxes, the highest marginal income tax rate, indirect taxes, and taxes on capital and property. Stated another way, nations with higher taxes on individuals have lower rates of informal investing. High tax rates inhibit informal investing.

## Factors Affecting Classic Venture Capital

In contrast to informal investing, the amount of classic venture capital as a percentage of GDP does not correlate with taxes on individuals or corporations. The explanation is that only a small proportion of classic venture capital comes from individuals and corporations. Far more comes from pension funds, which are essentially investing money that has been entrusted to them by others, and hence, they are not directly affected by taxes nearly as much as individuals are.

The amount of classic venture capital as a percentage of GDP correlates with the amount of informal investment as a percentage of GDP. This occurs because almost all companies start out with informal investment; then, if they show superstar potential, they attract classic venture capital. Thus, vigorous informal investing paves the way for robust classic venture

capital investing. So, although there is no direct link between classic venture capital investment and taxation, there is an indirect link via informal investors, who are influenced by how much they pay in taxes.

As we pointed out earlier, there is a correlation between the returns on venture capital and the IPO market in the United States. In turn, this correlation means that the amount of venture capital provided by limited partners depends on the IPO market because, when the returns on venture capital are good, limited partners put more money into venture capital funds, and vice versa. In 2008, for instance, when the one-year return on venture capital dropped to  $-20.8\%$ , commitments of new money by limited partners fell 21%.



## CONCLUSION

Financing is a necessary but not a sufficient ingredient for an entrepreneurial society. It goes hand in hand with entrepreneurs and opportunities in an environment that encourages entrepreneurship.

Grassroots financing from the entrepreneurs themselves and informal investors is a crucial ingredient for an entrepreneurial society. Close family members and friends and neighbors are by far the two biggest sources of informal capital for startups. Hence, entrepreneurs should look to family and friends for their initial seed capital to augment their own investments in their startups. Many entrepreneurs waste a lot of valuable time by prematurely seeking seed capital from business angels and even from formal venture capitalists—searches that come up empty-handed almost every time. Entrepreneurs must also understand that they themselves will have to put up about two-thirds of the initial capital needed to launch their ventures.



## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

### Reflection Point

### Your Thoughts . . .

1. How much equity financing do you need to get your business launched? When do you need it?
2. Where will you get your initial financing? How much money can you invest from your personal resources (savings, second mortgage, etc.)?
3. Create a strategy for other equity financing. Build a list and rank order Four F funding sources. Estimate how much each of these investors might be able and willing to invest.
4. Do you think your business has the potential to raise formal venture capital (high-tech, high-innovation, high-growth prospects, etc.)? If so, when might you be ready for venture capital? How much would you raise?

What can you learn about equity financing on the Web? Search for some investor/entrepreneur matching sites (e.g., [www.angelinvestmentnetwork.ca](http://www.angelinvestmentnetwork.ca)). Do you think these services are effective? Would they work for your business? What can you learn about venture capital on the Web? Look at [www.pwcmoneytree.com/moneytree/index.jsp](http://www.pwcmoneytree.com/moneytree/index.jsp). What regions and sectors are receiving the most money? Which venture capital funds are the most active? Are they investing in your sector?

## WEB EXERCISE

- <sup>1</sup> Ransom, D. Five Alternatives Sources of Funding. *The Wall Street Journal*. July 22, 2009. <http://online.wsj.com/article/SB124827141870672175.html>.
- <sup>2</sup> Prahalad, C. K. Commentary: Aid Is Not the Answer. *The Wall Street Journal*. August 31, 2005. p. A8.
- <sup>3</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>4</sup> World Bank. *New Data Show 1.4 Billion Live on Less Than \$1.25 a Day, but Progress Against Poverty Remains Strong*. August 26, 2008. [www.worldbank.org/in/WBSITE/EXTERNAL/COUNTRIES/SOUTHASIAEXT/INDIAEXTN/0,,contentMDK:21880805~pagePK:141137~piPK:141127~theSitePK:295584,00.html](http://www.worldbank.org/in/WBSITE/EXTERNAL/COUNTRIES/SOUTHASIAEXT/INDIAEXTN/0,,contentMDK:21880805~pagePK:141137~piPK:141127~theSitePK:295584,00.html)
- <sup>5</sup> Yunus, M. *Grameen Bank at a Glance*. Dhaka, Bangladesh: Grameen Bank. 2004.
- <sup>6</sup> [www.microcreditsummit.org/involve/page1.htm](http://www.microcreditsummit.org/involve/page1.htm).
- <sup>7</sup> [www.microcreditsummit.org/about/what\\_is\\_microcredit](http://www.microcreditsummit.org/about/what_is_microcredit).
- <sup>8</sup> Authers, John. Major Victories for Microfinance. *Financial Times*. May 18, 2005.
- <sup>9</sup> [www.accion.org/more\\_about\\_microfinance](http://www.accion.org/more_about_microfinance).
- <sup>10</sup> [www.microcreditsummit.org/about/about\\_the\\_microcredit\\_summit\\_campaign](http://www.microcreditsummit.org/about/about_the_microcredit_summit_campaign).
- <sup>11</sup> Daley-Harris, S. *State of the Microcredit Summit Campaign Report 2009*

Microcredit Summit Campaign. [www.microcreditsummit.org/pubs/reports/socr/2004/SOCR04.pdf](http://www.microcreditsummit.org/pubs/reports/socr/2004/SOCR04.pdf).

- <sup>12</sup> As of November 9, 2004, 6,321 institutions were members of the Microcredit Summit Campaign's 15 councils. Of that number, 3,844 institutions from 131 countries were members of the Microcredit Summit Council of Practitioners. Data in Figure 9.1 were collected from 2,931 institutions, which is 43% of the 6,321 institutions worldwide. Hence, the numbers in Figure 9.1 underestimate the number of clients served throughout the world.

<sup>13</sup> Bygrave, W. D., and Reynolds, P. D. Who Finances Startups in the U.S.A.? A Comprehensive Study of Informal Investors, 1999–2003. In S. Zahra et al., eds., *Frontiers of Entrepreneurship Research 2004*. Wellesley, MA: Babson College.

<sup>14</sup> Bygrave, W. and Bosma, N. 2009, Investor Altruism: Financial returns from informal investments in businesses owned by relatives, friends, and strangers. To be published in Minniti, M. (Ed) *The Dynamics of Entrepreneurial Activity*, Oxford University Press.

<sup>15</sup> Headd, Brian. *Business Success: Factors Leading to Surviving and Closing Successfully*. Center for Economic Studies, U.S. Bureau of the Census, Working Paper #CES-WP-01-01. January 2001.

<sup>16</sup> Venture capital data were obtained from the following sources: National

## NOTES

- Venture Capital Association Yearbooks, European Venture Capital Association Yearbooks, Australian Venture Capital Association, Canadian Venture Capital Association, IVC Research Center (Israel), and South African Venture Capital and Private Equity Association.
- <sup>17</sup> Classic venture capital is money invested in seed-, early-, startup-, and expansion-stage companies.
- <sup>18</sup> *Venture Impact 2009*, p 9. National Capital Venture Association.
- <sup>19</sup> Chrisafis, Angelique. Chirac Unveils His Grand Plan to Restore French Pride. *The Guardian*. April 26, 2006.
- <sup>20</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>21</sup> O'Brien, Kevin J. Europeans Weigh Plan on Google Challenge. *The International Herald Tribune*. January 18, 2006.
- <sup>22</sup> *Editorial*. October 2009. [http://quaero.org/modules/movie/scenes/home/index.php?fuseAction=article&rubric=editos&article=edito\\_13112009](http://quaero.org/modules/movie/scenes/home/index.php?fuseAction=article&rubric=editos&article=edito_13112009).
- <sup>23</sup> Kirchhoff, B. A. In W. D. Bygrave, ed., *The Portable MBA in Entrepreneurship*. New York, NY: Wiley. 1994. p. 429.
- <sup>24</sup> *Venture Impact: The Economic Importance of Venture Capital Backed Companies to the U.S. Economy*. Fourth edition. National Venture Capital Association. [www.nvca.org/index.php?option=com\\_docman&task=doc\\_download&gid=359&Itemid=93](http://www.nvca.org/index.php?option=com_docman&task=doc_download&gid=359&Itemid=93).
- <sup>25</sup> *Venture Impact: The Economic Importance of Venture Capital Backed Companies to the U.S. Economy*. Fifth edition. IHS Global Insight, Inc., and National Venture Capital Association. 2008. National Venture Capital Association
- <sup>26</sup> Bygrave, W. D. *Venture Capital Investing: A Resource Exchange Perspective*. Dissertation, Boston University. 1989.
- <sup>27</sup> National Venture Capital Association. [www.nvca.com/def.html](http://www.nvca.com/def.html).
- <sup>28</sup> *National Venture Capital Association: Yearbook 2009*. New York, NY: Thomson Venture Economics.
- <sup>29</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>30</sup> Al Gore's Next Act: Planet-Saving VC. February 12, 2008. [http://money.cnn.com/2007/11/11/news/newsmakers/gore\\_kleiner.fortune](http://money.cnn.com/2007/11/11/news/newsmakers/gore_kleiner.fortune).
- <sup>31</sup> Peeters, J. B. A European Market for Entrepreneurial Companies. In William D. Bygrave, Michael Hay, and J. B. Peeters, eds., *Realizing Investment Value*. London, England: Financial Times/Pitman. 1994.
- <sup>32</sup> This is excerpted from Financing entrepreneurs and their businesses presented by William D. Bygrave at the Entrepreneurial Advantage of Nations Symposium at the United Nations Headquarters, New York, NY. April 29, 2003.

## DayOne

### CASE

In an uncharacteristic show of frustration, Andrew Zenoff nearly tossed the phone into its cradle on his desk when his latest funding lead—number 182—had decided not to invest. With the 2003 winter holiday season in full swing, the 38-year-old seasoned entrepreneur knew that his fund-raising efforts would now fall on deaf ears until after the New Year holiday.

Andrew stared out from the open office at a group of young mothers in the retail area—all cradling newborns—chatting with the nursing staff and with each other as they waited for the morning lactation class to begin.

*Those new moms out there need us; that's why we're doing well despite a terrible location, a recession, and no money for advertising! So why can't I seem to convince investors what a great opportunity this is?! Am I—along with my staff and all of our satisfied customers—suffering from some sort of collective delusion?*

He closed his eyes, breathed deeply, and calmed down. After all, he quickly reminded himself, his San Francisco-based DayOne Center—a one-stop resource for new and expectant parents—was doing just fine as it approached its third year of operations. What Andrew and his team were being told, though, was that, before funds would flow, they would need to provide additional proof of concept—a second center, sited and scaled to match the DayOne business plan. The chicken-egg challenge, of course, was that they would need about a million dollars to build that proof. Andrew leaned back to consider his best options for moving forward.

## My Brest Friend

A graduate of Babson College in Wellesley, Massachusetts, Andrew was no stranger to entrepreneurial mountain-climbing. For three years, he had strived to build a national distribution channel for My Brest Friend, the most popular nursing pillow in a fragmented market. By 1996, he had secured an overseas manufacturer, office space in a San Francisco warehouse, and a few volume accounts that were yielding a decent—but far from satisfying—cash flow. He was still wrestling with the issue of how to educate the buyer about the advantages of his product when suddenly his venture had come under siege:

*A nursing pillow company that was not doing well somehow thought that I had copied their design. There was no infringement, but they sued us anyway, and I decided to fight. The owner of this company was a woman with kids, and as the suit dragged on, my lawyers convinced me that, if this thing went to trial, a jury might side with her instead of a guy who has no kids and has never been married. If she won, they'd get an injunction against me, and that would be the end of my business.*

*That year I switched law firms three times, spent over \$250,000 on legal fees, and ended up paying a settlement in the low six figures. I was emotionally drained, and nearly entirely out of cash, but I had managed to save my business.*

## A Question of Distribution

Following that painful settlement in the spring of 1997, Andrew set about to devise a more effective delivery model for his nursing pillow enterprise. He soon came to the realization that the solution he was looking for didn't exist:

*We definitely had the best product in the category. The problem was that people needed to be educated to that fact—either outright or through trusted word of mouth. The various channels I had worked with—big retailers, hospitals, Internet sites, catalog companies, lactation consultants—each offered only a certain facet of what a new parent needed, and so none of them had been really efficient at delivering my product to the marketplace. What it needed was a combination of education, retailing, and community.*

Later that summer, Andrew got a call from one of his customers, Sallie Weld, Director of the Perinatal Center at the California Pacific Medical Center. An active promoter of My Brest Friend, Sallie had come to a frustrating juncture in her own career:

*During the mid to late 90s, I had spent a lot of time and energy setting up a new type of perinatal center. New moms were coming in asking for support and advice on various products—breast pumps in particular. When we started carrying pumps, that sort of opened up a Pandora's Box; now people wanted other products to go with the pumps. Andrew's pillow, for example, was the best on the market, so we started carrying that.*

*And after a couple of years, this retail aspect of our childbirth and parenting education program began to turn a profit—and the minute it did, the hospital got greedy. They told us that we were not going to be able to hire more trained staff to handle the increased demand for our consults, and they said that all of our retailing profits would be channeled back into the general fund to support other departments. That was incredibly frustrating. I knew I was onto something, though, and I started a consulting business to help other perinatal centers. The problem was, they couldn't pay much for my services. That's when I decided to give Andrew a call.*

They agreed to meet at Zim's Restaurant, an aging diner in the upscale Laurel Hill neighborhood of San Francisco. It was a meeting that would change their lives.

## DayOne—Beginnings

In August of 1997, Sallie and Andrew met at Zim's for coffee and carrot juice, respectively. Sallie explained that no single service provider had ever been able to adequately serve the various needs of new moms:

*A hospital setting would seem to be the natural place to set up an educational support and product center for these women, but the bureaucracy just won't let that happen. There are also plenty of examples where nurses have tried to offer outside consulting services to new mothers, but while that's a great thought, they never seem to get very far without the business and retail component. And retailing without knowledgeable support is just products on a shelf.*

After 90 minutes of brainstorming, the pieces suddenly fell into place. Andrew had found the unique distribution model he'd been searching for:

*I said to Sallie, "Let's move these hybrid health-services retailing ideas into a private care center outside of the hospital—a retail center that could provide new and expecting parents with*

*everything they needed in one place.” We’d be backing up the hospitals and supporting women at a critical and emotionally charged period in their lives.*

*This was like a lightning bolt of a vision for both of us, and at that moment, we decided that we were going to build a national chain of these centers. That was the beginning of DayOne.*

Having already built one business from scratch, Andrew noted that he wasn’t surprised that it was months before they were ready to take a material step:

*I had told Sallie that, even though this sounded great, she shouldn’t think about quitting her job at the hospital until I had a chance to lead us in an exercise to see if this business was a viable idea. I conducted a ton of focus groups, and every week Sallie and I would get together to talk about what I had learned—and what kind of center DayOne would be. After about nine months, in the summer of 1998, we decided, yes, this makes sense; let’s do it.*

## Seed Funding

Andrew called investor Mark Anderssen, a shareholder and an active supporter of My Brest Friend. When Mark seemed receptive to the DayOne concept, Andrew paid him a visit:

*I flew to Norway to meet with him in person. I was sure that after we opened up one of these, we’d be able to attract enough capital to start a chain. I figured that we would need about \$300,000 to fund the next year and a half; we would be writing the business plan and working on the build-out requirements so that, when we were ready, we could move through the construction process quickly and get it opened. He said great and put up about half the money to get us started.*

As Sallie focused in on staffing requirements and retail offerings, Andrew began writing the plan, defining the target market (see Exhibit 9.1), designing the space, and looking for the right retail location: upscale, ground floor, easy parking, with excellent signage potential.

That summer, about a year after their momentous meeting of the minds, the Zim’s restaurant block fell to the wrecking ball to make way for a brand new office and retail complex. Andrew saw that the location was close to the hospitals, was in a vibrant retail area, had good stroller accessibility, and offered lots of parking. When the developer pointed out the street-level retail availability on the blueprints, Andrew saw that it was precisely where Zim’s had been; DayOne would be growing up in the exact spot where Andrew and Sallie had had their first meeting.

Andrew secured the space with a sizable deposit, engaged the architects, and scheduled a contractor to handle the build-out. With their sights now set on an April 2000 Grand Opening, Sallie left her job to become DayOne’s first paid employee. Everything was on schedule and proceeding as planned. Then, suddenly, nothing was.

## Scrambling to Survive

In January, Andrew contacted his funding partner for the other half of the seed funding allocation. The investor, who had recently suffered some losses in high tech, explained that he would be unable to extend any more money. Andrew was in shock:

*Things were already rolling along; I had architects working, Sallie and two assistants on payroll, a huge locked-in lease—and now, suddenly, with the bills mounting up, we were out of capital!*

**EXHIBIT 9.1****Business Plan Excerpt: The Market**

The Center for New & Expectant Parents

### **The Market**

According to the United States Department of Health and Human Services, women in the United States are having more children than at any time in almost thirty years. With four million births annually — more than half are first-time parents — the United States produces more than 2.2 million potential new customers each year. Indeed, the current baby boom is projected to continue until 2018. Spending an average of \$8,100 on baby-related products and services during their baby's first year (excluding primary medical care), new parents represent more than \$17.8 billion in annual purchasing power.

In recent years, the size of the juvenile products industry alone — i.e., products for babies 0–18 months — has grown to \$16 billion annually. The company plans to reach the most commercially attractive part of this market — approximately 1,350,000 first-time parents each year with a college education and at least middle-income households. Additionally, the company expects to reach the market of more than 1,000,000 second-time parents annually, who comprise 25% of DayOne's target customer base.

The percentage of women in the United States who choose to breastfeed their babies continues to rise dramatically each year. According to a 2001 survey of 1.4 million mothers, the prevalence of breastfeeding in the United States is at the highest rate ever recorded, with 69.5% of new mothers now initiating breastfeeding, and 32% still breastfeeding at 6 months. (*Breastfeeding Continues to Increase into the New Millennium*, Pediatrics, Vol. 110, No. 6, Dec., 2002.) Moreover, 78.3% of college-educated mothers with household incomes of greater than \$50,000 breastfeed versus a national average of 59.2%, and 59.2% of second-time mothers are breastfeeding.

As an ever-increasing number of studies confirm the advantages of breastfeeding for babies' immune systems and intellectual development, DayOne expects the incidence of breastfeeding to remain on the rise. Indeed, according to the United States Department of Health and Human Services, 75% of all first-time mothers will try to breastfeed their child compared to less than 50% only fifteen years ago.

More than two-thirds of breastfeeding women experience difficulty during breastfeeding and seek outside help. The majority of these problems surface after the brief hospital stay, when access to hospital-based lactation consulting programs is no longer available. Most mothers first turn to their pediatricians and OBGYNs, who are increasingly referring first-time mothers to lactation consultants because they lack the time and specific expertise. DayOne provides pediatricians, OBGYNs, and new mothers with a high-availability support solution.

*There are numerous other market factors that favor DayOne's solution:*

- The existing market is highly fragmented. In order to receive necessary services, products, and support, new and expectant parents must navigate between baby specialty stores, catalogs, Internet sites, hospitals, and independent childbirth educators and lactation consultants.
- Pregnant women and new mothers desire community for support, information, and the opportunity to share common experiences.
- Hospitals continue to downsize, reducing staffs and shortening the duration of maternity visits, forcing new mothers to rely on outside sources for needed support and services.
- Baby specialty stores continue to disappear off of the retail landscape in the face of big-box operators, reducing the personal touch that new parents seek.

Andrew had been pitching the DayOne vision to other investors all along, and that same week an individual came forward with a substantial amount of money to invest. Andrew explained that, while the promise of cash got him motivated, he soon concluded that this wasn't just about the money:

*This investor approached me and said that since I clearly understood the baby industry, he could get me a million and a half bucks for an Internet company. So I spent four weeks trying to figure out how I could do this on the Internet. Then I realized that, even though I probably could come up with something, it wouldn't really provide new parents with what they needed. And so I went back to them and said that I can't do it; it's not in line with my values and my beliefs.*

Although he was now sure that the DayOne model wouldn't work as a Web business, Andrew saw that there still might be a way to leverage the red-hot Internet space to garner the funding he so desperately needed:

*I met with a big online company that was doing baby-related things and told them that I thought their model had issues; first-time parents need to touch and feel and learn before they buy. I suggested that in order to survive long-term, they would need to partner with a bricks-and-mortar business like the kind we were building.*

*Well, at the time their stock was worth several hundred million; those two guys told me that they were doing just fine and that they had no interest in what we were doing at DayOne. You know, a year later, they were out of business.*

DayOne centers were designed to be a key distribution channel for Brest Friend products, so Andrew aggressively leveraged resources at his wholesale venture in an effort to keep the flagship store on schedule. That had worked well for awhile, but ever since Andrew began working long hours to open DayOne, sales of his nursing pillows had fallen precipitously. It was now achingly clear that, if this innovative distribution concept failed, My Brest Friend would be facing a long road back.

By March 2000, DayOne had amassed \$200,000 in payables that Andrew couldn't begin to cover—at least not in the near term. Two architectural firms had already walked out on the project when they became aware that the startup was suffering from a severe funding gap. Andrew convinced the third one to come on board by pointing out that he himself wasn't drawing a salary—that his partner Sallie had resigned from a good job at the hospital to do this, and that they had already begun to interview and hire additional staff. This was real; they would find a way. That's just about the time that things began to get really ugly.

## Nightmare on the Second Floor

By mid-March, DayOne had endured 45 days without cash, and Andrew had spoken with nearly 50 investors, without success. The landlord called. Construction, it seemed, was behind schedule—a fact that, under the circumstances, suited Andrew just fine. When the landlord requested a face-to-face meeting as soon as possible, Andrew was pretty sure that the guy wasn't calling him in to apologize a second time for the occupancy delay:

*The landlord tells me that because of our financial position, they are not going to let us have a ground floor space; he's afraid that DayOne couldn't cover the rent. He says the only space they have for us is on the second floor—end of story. I said, "I don't know what to do; I don't have the money. I need to get out of this lease." He said, "Well, you're on the second floor, and you can't get out of the lease." Great; a lease for a top-floor space that I couldn't pay for.*

Andrew returned the following day with a stronger argument:

*I said look, you can't squeeze blood from a stone. And anyway, I am out of this lease because your building has taken so long to deliver that my investors have backed out! I told him that I can't honor the lease because he hadn't honored his deal. He didn't really respond to me, but we both knew that I was all done.*

Andrew was trying to visualize how he was going to break this devastating news to his partner Sallie when he received an astounding call on his cell phone:

*I had been pitching the business plan to everyone I could think of and hadn't gotten anywhere. All of a sudden here was an investor calling to say that he and three others were interested in putting up \$150,000 apiece. \$450,000 was about half of what I would need to open, and a lot less than the \$1.5 million I was trying to raise as a first round. But it was a start; I pushed the "Go" button again.*

*I went back to the real estate guy and said, "You know, you're right; even if this is on the second floor, this is my space. I'll keep it." That's when he told me that he had already rented out half of our space to someone else. So, not only were we going to be way in back on the second floor with half the space we needed, but also we were now going to have to pay to completely reconstruct our architectural drawings.*

Understanding that he was still a half a million dollars shy of what they would need to open the doors, Andrew continued to dole out just enough money to keep his various service providers on board. In June, the landlord informed him that the building was now ready for occupancy—meaning that the first \$10,000 monthly rent payment was due. Andrew made sure to pay that bill on time, and in full.

## Grand Opening

The construction business, like many trades, was a close-knit community of craftspeople and professionals. It was not surprising, then, that word was out on the slow-paying, underfunded project up on Laurel Hill that had already gone through three architectural firms and at least that many plan revisions. After a long search, Andrew located a contractor who apparently was not aware of DayOne's precarious financial situation. Along the way, he had signed up another minor investor, so when construction began in August of 2000, DayOne had \$480,000 on hand. In late November—as the build-out neared completion—the contractor suddenly announced that he would not release the occupancy permits until he and his crew were paid in full for the work they had completed. Andrew recalled that it was another one of those pivotal moments:

*I owed these guys something like \$200,000, and I didn't have anything left. I just wanted to get to the opening party in January because I felt that, if we got enough people to come and enjoy it and get excited about what we were doing, we'd be able to raise the money we needed.*

*I convinced the contractor to let us open, and at that party, two different guests pulled me aside and said that they wanted to invest. One woman wired me \$50,000 the following Monday without so much as glancing at the business plan. I got another \$50,000 from a couple who had just had their baby. When we officially opened later that week, the contractor was paid in full, but we were again out of money.*

As they had always planned to do, Andrew and Sallie called the area hospitals to let them know that DayOne was open for business and ready to serve. Andrew recalled that the response from the medical community took them completely by surprise:

*One reason we thought we could make do with a second-floor location was because our plan had always been to drive traffic by being the type of place that medical professionals would want to send their patients. Instead, hospital directors were telling us that they considered us to be the competition and that they were going to tell all the docs in San Francisco not to support our efforts in any way.*

With no help from the hospitals, ineffective signage, cramped facilities (see Exhibit 9.2), and no capital for marketing and advertising, Sallie and Andrew were faced with a harsh reality: Either customers would love the experience enough to spread the word, or their business would quickly wither and die.

## Delivering a Unique Customer Experience

DayOne immediately began attracting a base of young, mostly affluent new and expectant moms seeking advice on everything from the latest baby carriers to sore nipples. Many signed up for the \$99 annual membership on the spot to take advantage of discounts offered on programs and workshops (see Exhibit 9.3). Some dropped by out of curiosity or with specific questions for the professional staff. Sallie quickly established a ground rule that she felt struck a fair balance between the needs of these mothers and the need to advance the business:

*When someone comes in with a question, we have a 10-minute rule. If your question is so involved that one of us cannot answer it in 10 minutes, then you need to make an appointment, and we need to charge you.<sup>1</sup> Ideally, these are people who are members, but many times, if they are not, we can convert them by giving them those 10 minutes and maybe recommending some classes or products right there on the shelves that might be just what they were looking for. And they leave here thinking, wow, where else can I go where I can get that kind of knowledgeable service without having to be a member first?*

Sallie noted that, because of their customer-care orientation, she and her nursing staff were always looking out for ways to help—without first trying to calibrate whether a particular act of humanity or assistance would generate profits for the business. Pointing to a basic plastic and metal chair in the corner of her office, Sallie said that she wasn't surprised to see that simple kindness had its rewards:

*Our favorite story is about that chair. We like new moms to be sitting up straight when they first start nursing—versus a rocking chair. I had one mom—not a member—who said every time she came in for a consult that the only way she could breast feed was in that type of chair. Every time she came in she said it, so finally I said, “Hey, why don’t you take the chair home with you until you’re feeling more comfortable with the whole process?” She looked at me and said, “Really?”*

*So she took the chair home. The next day she became a member, she bought a breast pump from us instead of the one she was eyeing on eBay, and she went around telling all of her friends that we lent her that chair. She brought it back a few weeks later and has become one of our best customers.*

---

<sup>1</sup>Personal consulting service was offered at \$89/hour, a competitive rate in the Greater Bay area.

**EXHIBIT 9.2** | **Signage and Facility**



**EXHIBIT 9.3****DayOne Membership Flyer**

**DayOne Membership**



The Center For New & Expectant Parents

**Why DayOne Membership?**

A DayOne Membership provides a valuable opportunity for customers to save money, receive personalized attention, fully access our many resources, and connect with a community of new and expectant parents, seven days a week.

**DayOne Membership Includes All of the Following:**

- 40% Savings on DayOne Value Packages
- 30% Savings on Parent Groups
- 30% Savings on Workshops
- 25% Savings on Classes
- 20% Savings on Lactation Consultations
- Special Membership Prices on Selected Retail Items
- Unlimited Use of Resource Library
- Free Book & Video Rental
- Unlimited Use of Precision Baby Weigh Station
- Unlimited Use of Changing Stations
- In-Store Internet Access
- An Easy Way to Register for Classes & Purchase Products



DAY ONE MEMBERSHIP  
Annual renewal fee \$49

\$99

**Memberships are non-refundable**

[www.DayOneCenter.com](http://www.DayOneCenter.com) • 3490 California St. San Francisco, CA 94118 • 415.440.DAY1 (3291)

*What goes around comes around, and when we give a little bit, it's such a shock to them that they've gotten good service. I have this rule that if there's a mom hanging out in the rocking chair area, one of us goes over and asks if we could get her a glass of cold water. I swear it's like you've just offered them a million dollars! They'll start to ask you questions, and it almost always turns into a sale. It's so funny—and a bit pathetic—that nobody ever thinks about these moms; everybody talks to, and about, the baby.*

*That's what we do differently. We make them feel good, knowing that if we take care of them, they'll take care of the baby. And all of that is definitely good for business.*

Despite an encouraging level of customer interest and loyalty right from the start, the retailing side of the business continued to struggle. Andrew knew what the problem was:

*The thing is, I am not a retailer. So everything we did early on was shooting from the hip. Sallie had some experience selling retail products at the hospital, but she was better on the service side. We had hired one retail buyer who lasted two months; didn't know what she was doing. Then another; same thing. The problem was, these people knew a lot about retailing, but we needed somebody who also understood the baby industry.*

DayOne had begun to cover its operating expenses by the end of the summer of 2001, but the business was still in dire need of funding. As the capital markets continued to deteriorate that year, fund-raising became an even more arduous task than ever before. While the 9–11 terrorist attacks on the East Coast hurt retail sales and drove potential investors further underground, satisfied clients continued to drive new customers to the center.

In January 2002, the retail buyer that Andrew and Sallie had been searching for showed up on their doorstep. Ten-year retailing veteran Jennifer Morris had come over from The Right Start, the largest chain of specialty stores for infants and children in the United States. She recounted how she was drawn to the new venture and alluded to why her predecessors might have been overwhelmed by the task:

*I found out about DayOne through working at The Right Start in San Francisco. I would either see a DayOne tote bag or customers would tell me all about it. I started to investigate and found out that DayOne is not the kind of place you'd stumble onto. I was immediately attracted to the energy in this place; from the customers, the staff, the nurses, to the classes and the workshops, everyone just really seemed to love it.*

*The biggest challenge for us is trying to be a one-stop shop. We have quite a few product categories (see Exhibit 9.4), and I buy from over 100 vendors—sometimes just one item from one vendor. A lot of those decisions are made by listening to our customers. If they come in with a terrific product, we can then go research that item and bring it in. We have no limits on that, really; we carry products from New Zealand, from Australia—from all over the world. If there's a great new product out there, we'll find it.*

Sallie pointed out that in a similar way, she and the nursing staff were always looking for instructors and programs<sup>2</sup> that would distinguish DayOne as a premiere care center:

*We search for the best and invite them to teach their classes here. More and more, though, the good ones come looking for us. We have started a lot of fresh and exciting workshops, but almost immediately other places in town copy what we're doing. Sometimes I wonder how long we can keep it fresh and exciting, but then again, that's what we thrive on.*

The DayOne team began its second year of operations finding ways to trim overhead, enhance the customer experience, and refine the retail operations. To further this effort, Andrew tapped New York-based Stephen Cooper—an expert in retailing and finance—to serve as the company's Chief Operating Officer.

---

<sup>2</sup>In addition to a core of standard classes and support groups dealing with childbirth, breastfeeding, and exercise, the center offered other workshops such as Infant & Child CPR, Infant Massage, Musical Play, First Foods, and Practical First Aid & Safety.

**EXHIBIT 9.4****Retail Product Offerings**

<b>Category</b>	<b>Approximate Profit Margins</b>
Maternity Products	40%
Infant Clothing	54%
Nursing Clothes	52%
Breastfeeding Equip.	50%
Gifts	55%
Baby Accessories	47%
Infant Safety & Health	57%
Book Sales	42%
Toys	53%
Preemie Clothing	53%
Skin Care	47%
Hardgoods	44%
Bras	51%
Food & Beverages	10%

By early summer, the company—which in May had been honored with a “Best of SF” accolade (see Exhibit 9.5)—was signing up a steady stream of new members. Many of those clients were now being referred to the facility by local physicians who were quietly ignoring the sentiments of their hospital administrators. One such referral was Lisa Zoener, a new mom who said that she found out about DayOne from her obstetrician:

*I have told lots of people about this place; it's definitely a word of mouth type of thing. My husband and I drop a ton of dough here on baby vitamins and other stuff. DayOne products are definitely higher priced than in other stores, but I'm already here for the classes—and a lot of us feel that buying DayOne products is a way to support what they're trying to do here. I don't find the second floor to be a problem—there is a parking garage right downstairs. It was full today, though.*

Although he now had actual operating figures, a slew of customer testimonials, and an appropriate town picked out for the second DayOne, Andrew was still unable to raise the money he would need to proceed with those expansion plans. Then, in November, Andrew received a call that he was sure would change everything.

## The Saudi Connection

Unknown to the DayOne staff, one of their very satisfied new moms was the daughter of a Saudi prince. Her father, Samir, was visiting from his home in London and, through her experience, had learned a lot about what DayOne was doing. Andrew described their two-hour meeting at the center:

*Samir said that he had an eye for businesses and that he thought what we were doing was brilliant. He said that he was the president of a multinational conglomerate out of London and Saudi Arabia; he wanted to fund our U.S. rollout and also help us export it to other countries.*

**EXHIBIT 9.5 SF Weekly Best of 2002 Feature**

**Best Place to Go After You've Had a Baby**
**Day One**

Your new baby has finally arrived. You're excited, anxious, sleep-deprived, and frankly a little concerned that medical professionals have let you leave the hospital with this newborn. You've forgotten everything you learned in parenting classes, and nothing you were told in childbirth class has happened the way they said it would. In short, you need support, reassurance, help, *something* ... and not from your mother-in-law. Look no more. Strap the little bundle into a carrier and get yourself to the knowledgeable, calm, and compassionate folks at Day One. As a business, the center is an odd mix: a retailer of higher-end baby tools and accessories, a lending library of books and tapes, the home of parenting classes, and a kind of lounge to hang out and nurse, chat, change diapers, or just get the heck out of your living room. As if all of that were not enough, Day One has medical scales to monitor your baby's weight and lactation consultants to help mother and baby get the hang of nursing. An annual membership is only \$99, which also gets you a 5 percent discount on merchandise. The center is open seven days a week to fulfill its mission: "to provide new and expectant parents with a single-source, time-efficient solution for the essentials needed during this special and often challenging time of life." A brilliant idea that we're glad has finally arrived.

**Details**

Address: 3490 California (at Locust),  
Suite 203, 440-3291,

[sfweekly.com](http://sfweekly.com) | originally published: May 15, 2002

Andrew sent the prince on his way with a detailed business plan. Due diligence indicated that Samir was indeed who he said he was, so Andrew's excitement grew when the Saudi called a week later to say that he wanted to take it to the next level. That next step was having a colleague of his—a woman based in Arizona who had run four different billion-dollar retail businesses—work as his eyes and ears to determine the best way to move the venture forward.

Ann Pearson, 60, a self-described workaholic and leading advisor to a separate \$5 billion new venture fund, spent the entire day at the center and was thrilled with the concept. She explained that to move ahead, she and Andrew would need to build a business plan that would warrant her stamp of approval. Andrew recalled that that's when the real work began:

*For the next three months, Ann was flying here every few weeks, and Steve, our COO, was flying in from New York for three days at a time. She had us rewrite an entirely new business plan to sort of grind down to the nitty-gritty every aspect of the business so that she felt that she could put her stamp on it. We spent hundreds of hours, many tens of thousands of dollars. She was like this manic corporate raider-type, driving us really hard.*

Along the way, Andrew had begun to notice that Ann didn't seem to have a high regard for his DayOne staff and kept implying that, before the business could begin its rollout, management

changes would have to be discussed. It was bad enough when she suggested that Samir's daughter—a junior investment banker—might make a good choice for CFO, but when Ann began to infer that Andrew might not make the cut as CEO, he'd heard enough:

*We had gotten into these heavy negotiations, and we had also started getting into huge fights. Ann ended up being an absolute animal; she wanted to drive everyone out of the business and take it over. But if you know me, I am not somebody who is going to get pushed around like that, and I wasn't going to sell out for anything. Then, all of a sudden, Samir calls and says that he's not interested anymore.*

It was nearly mid-spring of 2003 by the time Andrew turned away from that mirage—and several more months before the next major investor prospect would surface. The DayOne team now had a positive operating income for the center (see Exhibit 9.6), a detailed business plan with five-year pro-formas (see Exhibits 9.7–9.10), proven managerial performance, and, as always, a need for investment capital.

## Prove It—Again

The DayOne plan called for opening 42 centers in five years, but so far the team found itself in a holding pattern around their flagship location. Andrew thought it ironic that, by overcoming challenges and making compromises to get the first store open, they had developed a business that investors seemed unwilling to accept as a proof of concept:

<b>EXHIBIT 9.6 DayOne Income Statement—San Francisco Actuals</b>			
	<b>2001</b>	<b>2002</b>	<b>2003</b>
<b>Retail Sales</b>			
Product Sales	\$ 533,676	\$687,492	\$816,000
Memberships	55,566	62,774	76,050
Total Retail Sales	<b>\$589,242</b>	<b>\$750,266</b>	<b>\$892,050</b>
Total Service Sales	<b>181,761</b>	<b>222,947</b>	<b>272,000</b>
<b>TOTAL SALES</b>	<b>771,003</b>	<b>973,213</b>	<b>1,164,050</b>
Total Cost of Retail Sales	288,569	346,213	434,627
Total Cost of Service Sales	196,144	156,680	190,624
<b>TOTAL COST OF SALES</b>	<b>484,713</b>	<b>502,893</b>	<b>625,251</b>
Gross Margin Retail Sales	300,673	404,053	457,423
Percent of Sales	51.0%	53.9%	51.3%
Gross Margin Service Sales	(14,383)	66,267	81,376
Percent of Sales	-1.9%	29.7%	29.9%
<b>TOTAL GROSS MARGIN</b>	<b>286,290</b>	<b>470,320</b>	<b>538,799</b>
Percent of Sales	37.1%	48.3%	46.3%
<b>TOTAL CENTER EXPENSES</b>	<b>426,134</b>	<b>374,684</b>	<b>417,852</b>
<b>CENTER EBITDA</b>	<b>(139,844)</b>	<b>95,636</b>	<b>120,947</b>
Percent of Sales	-18.1%	9.8%	10.4%

**EXHIBIT 9.7****Five-Year Income Statement Projections—Rollout**

	Total Stores	Year 1 2	Year 2 6	Year 3 14	Year 4 26	Year 5 42
	New Stores	2	4	8	12	16
<b>RETAIL SALES</b>						
Product Sales		\$1,904,000	\$3,581,614	\$10,713,896	\$24,506,943	\$46,011,931
Memberships		201,050	398,000	1,226,000	2,804,000	5,282,000
Total Retail Sales		2,105,050	3,979,614	11,939,896	27,310,943	51,293,931
Total Service Sales		647,000	1,250,800	3,713,000	8,470,000	15,882,000
<b>TOTAL SALES</b>		<b>2,752,050</b>	<b>5,230,414</b>	<b>15,652,896</b>	<b>35,780,943</b>	<b>67,175,931</b>
<b>COST OF SALES</b>						
Total Cost of Retail Sales		1,025,629	1,913,567	5,785,809	13,276,595	24,956,361
Total Cost of Service Sales		393,484	623,048	1,694,132	3,735,912	6,859,763
<b>TOTAL COST OF SALES</b>		<b>1,419,113</b>	<b>2,536,615</b>	<b>7,479,941</b>	<b>17,012,507</b>	<b>31,816,124</b>
<b>GROSS MARGIN</b>						
Gross Margin Retail Sales		1,079,421	2,066,047	6,154,087	14,034,348	26,337,570
Percent of Sales Gross		51.3%	51.9%	51.5%	51.4%	51.3%
Margin Service Sales		253,516	627,752	2,018,868	4,734,088	9,022,237
Percent of Sales		39.2%	50.2%	54.4%	55.9%	56.8%
<b>TOTAL GROSS MARGIN</b>		<b>1,332,937</b>	<b>2,693,800</b>	<b>8,172,956</b>	<b>18,768,436</b>	<b>35,359,807</b>
<b>TOTAL CENTER EXPENSES</b>		<b>1,011,450</b>	<b>1,752,576</b>	<b>4,762,754</b>	<b>10,787,758</b>	<b>20,177,895</b>
<b>CENTER EBITDA</b>		<b>321,486</b>	<b>941,224</b>	<b>3,410,202</b>	<b>7,980,678</b>	<b>15,181,913</b>

*We are now one of the most trusted brands in San Francisco. People love us. Investors are saying, well, this first center has done great for what it is, but your plan talks about a center that would be on the ground floor with street-side visibility, have support from the hospitals, and be in a bigger, more appropriate space. So because we are talking about a bigger center with bigger economics, they don't want to take the risks.*

Andrew estimated that he was going to need about \$1.3 million to pay off current debt and open up a center that was more reflective of the business plan model (see Exhibit 9.11). That second DayOne would be sited in an affluent town about 35 miles to the south:

*Palo Alto would be the next spot. It's in our back yard, and it's got the right demographics. It would be a bigger center, with more space, twice as many classrooms; twice the business, twice the sales.*

Sallie noted that, because of the rave reviews her group had received, some investors wondered aloud if that magic could be replicated in other centers:

*We have a great reputation in the community, and we set a tone here of warmth; we respect these women. Can we find as good a staff for Palo Alto, and can we train them well enough? Absolutely. Sure, it won't ever be what we have here, but it doesn't have to be to make the business work. I have no doubt that in every community we choose to locate in we can find qualified, caring nurses who would love the chance to do what we are doing here.*

<b>EXHIBIT 9.8</b>	<b>Five-Year Cash Flow Projections—Rollout</b>				
	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>Operating Activities</b>					
Net Income	(974,692)	(592,920)	971,764	4,522,301	11,111,776
Adjustments for Non-Cash Items					
FFE	—	—	—	—	—
Leasehold	102,857	308,571	720,000	1,337,143	2,160,000
Pre-Opening Costs	18,571	55,714	130,000	241,429	390,000
Product Promotions					
Total Adjustments for Non-Cash Items	121,429	364,286	850,000	1,578,571	2,550,000
Changes in Working Capital					
Current Assets	—	—	—	—	—
Current Liabilities	(312,188)	—	—	—	—
Net Changes in Working Capital	(312,188)	—	—	—	—
<b>Net Cash — Operating Activities</b>	<b>(1,165,452)</b>	<b>(228,634)</b>	<b>1,821,764</b>	<b>6,100,873</b>	<b>13,661,776</b>
<b>Investing Activities</b>					
Investing Activities					
FFE	—	—	—	—	—
Leasehold	(720,000)	(1,440,000)	(2,880,000)	(4,320,000)	(5,760,000)
Pre-Opening Costs	(130,000)	(260,000)	(520,000)	(780,000)	(1,040,000)
Inventory	(300,000)	(600,000)	(1,200,000)	(1,800,000)	(2,400,000)
Security Deposits	(120,000)	(240,000)	(160,000)	(240,000)	(320,000)
<b>Net Cash — Investing Activities</b>	<b>(1,270,000)</b>	<b>(2,540,000)</b>	<b>(4,760,000)</b>	<b>(7,140,000)</b>	<b>(9,520,000)</b>
<b>Financing Activities</b>					
Proceeds from Class B Unit Offering	—	—	—	—	—
Founder Investment	—	—	—	—	—
Payments on Notes Payable and LT Debt	(624,758)	—	—	—	—
Common Stock Repurchases	—	—	—	—	—
Proceeds from Exercised Stock Options	—	—	—	—	—
Net Increase (Decrease) in Short-Term Debt	—	—	—	—	—
<b>Net Cash — Financing Activities</b>	<b>(624,758)</b>				
<b>Inc/(Dec) in Cash Equivalents</b>	<b>(3,060,210)</b>	<b>(2,768,634)</b>	<b>(2,938,236)</b>	<b>(1,039,127)</b>	<b>4,141,776</b>
<b>Cash and Equivalents Beginning Balance</b>	7,232	(3,052,978)	(5,821,612)	(8,759,847)	(9,798,975)
<b>Cash and Equivalents at Ending balance</b>	(3,052,978)	(5,821,612)	(8,759,847)	(9,798,975)	(5,657,199)

<b>EXHIBIT 9.9 Five-Year Balance Sheet Projections—Rollout</b>					
	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>Total Stores</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>New Stores</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>ASSETS</b>					
Cash	\$ (2,632,978)	\$ (4,621,612)	\$ (5,994,847)	\$ (5,093,975)	\$ 1,257,801
Other Current Assets	\$ 25,316	\$ 25,316	\$ 25,316	\$ 25,316	\$ 25,316
Total Current Assets	(2,607,662)	(4,596,296)	(5,969,531)	(5,068,659)	1,283,117
Inventory	416,516	1,016,516	2,216,516	4,016,516	6,416,516
Fixed Assets					
Leasehold	1,352,424	2,792,424	5,672,424	9,992,424	15,752,424
Accumulated Depreciation	(102,857)	(411,429)	(1,131,429)	(2,468,571)	(4,628,571)
Net Leasehold	1,249,567	2,380,995	4,540,995	7,523,853	11,123,853
Security Deposit	172,000	412,000	572,000	812,000	1,132,000
Pre-Opening Expenses	130,000	390,000	910,000	1,690,000	2,730,000
Accumulated Depreciation	(18,571)	(74,286)	(204,286)	(445,714)	(835,714)
Net Pre-Opening Expenses	111,429	315,714	705,714	1,244,286	1,894,286
Total Fixed Assets	1,532,995	3,108,710	5,818,710	9,580,138	14,150,138
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<b>\$ (658,150)</b>	<b>\$ (471,070)</b>	<b>\$ 2,065,694</b>	<b>\$ 8,527,996</b>	<b>\$ 21,849,772</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>					
Short-Term Liabilities					
Trade Payables	—	—	—	—	—
Trade — Zenoff Products	—	—	—	—	—
Van — Note Payable	—	—	—	—	—
Other Payables	13,806	13,806	13,806	13,806	13,806
Total Current Liabilities	13,806	13,806	13,806	13,806	13,806
Long-Term Liabilities	—				
Accrued Compensation	—				
Notes Payable	—				
Total Long-Term Liabilities	—	—	—	—	—
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<b>13,806</b>	<b>13,806</b>	<b>13,806</b>	<b>13,806</b>	<b>13,806</b>
<b>EQUITY</b>					
Retained Earnings — Prior Year	(1,454,355)	(2,009,048)	(1,821,967)	714,797	7,177,099
Retained Earnings — Current Year	(554,692)	187,080	2,536,764	6,462,301	13,321,776
Additional Paid-In Capital	1,064,304	1,064,304	1,064,304	1,064,304	1,064,304
Partnership Earn/(Loss)	272,787	272,787	272,787	272,787	272,787
Total Equity	(671,957)	(484,876)	2,051,888	8,514,190	21,835,965
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY</b>	<b>\$ (658,151)</b>	<b>\$ (471,070)</b>	<b>\$ 2,065,694</b>	<b>\$ 8,527,996</b>	<b>\$ 21,849,771</b>

She paused—and then added:

*We hit bumps, and then we move on. And all the while we keep refining this model; the quality of our workshops, the way we work; it's all so much better than it was even one year ago. So it will happen; I'm sure of it—this struggle is for a reason. Andrew is big on that; it's all about the journey, not the destination.*

<b>EXHIBIT 9.10</b>	<b>Five-Year Corporate</b>				
	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>Executive</b>					
CEO	175,000	175,000	200,000	200,000	200,000
Chairman			150,000	150,000	150,000
COO	150,000	175,000	200,000	200,000	200,000
CFO	75,000	100,000	125,000	150,000	150,000
<b>Office and Finance</b>					
Controller			90,000	90,000	90,000
Finance Clerk		85,000	40,000	40,000	40,000
IT Manager			85,000	85,000	85,000
Inventory Manager			85,000	85,000	85,000
Office Clerk	40,000	40,000	40,000	40,000	40,000
Office Clerk			40,000	40,000	40,000
<b>Service</b>					
Service Director	45,000	95,000	100,000	200,000	200,000
Service Manager				75,000	150,000
Service Assistant			40,000	80,000	80,000
<b>Marketing</b>					
Marketing Director		100,000	125,000	125,000	125,000
Marketing Assistant			45,000	80,000	80,000
<b>Operations</b>					
Operations Director			100,000	100,000	100,000
Operations Manager		60,000	60,000	120,000	180,000
Operations Assistant			40,000	40,000	40,000
Operations Assistant				40,000	40,000
Operations Assistant					40,000
<b>Purchasing</b>					
Buyer			60,000	60,000	120,000
Assistant Buyer			40,000	80,000	120,000
<b>Total Salaries</b>	485,000	830,000	1,665,000	2,090,000	2,410,000
Benefits Load (15%)	557,750	954,500	1,914,750	2,403,500	2,771,500
Increase (2%)		11,155	19,090	38,295	48,070
<b>Total Corporate Payroll</b>	1,042,750	1,795,655	3,598,840	4,531,795	5,229,570

## Moving Forward

Andrew checked his cash-on-hand balance. After three years, he had still not taken a dime of salary, and yet he had to smile as he penned this particular company check. The cabinetry work at the facility had cost \$85,000, and with this disbursement, Andrew would be making good on his promise to pay those guys—not quickly—but in full. There were plenty of others who were still waiting, but in time, they would be paid as well.

The phone rang, and on the other end was a young venture capitalist whose partner's pregnant wife had heard about DayOne from her sister's friend's pediatrician . . . .

**EXHIBIT 9.11 Typical Center—Development Budget**

**PRE-OPENING COSTS**

Store Build-Out (~3,800 sq. ft.)	418,000
6 Months Management Salary	110,000
Pre-Opening Expenses	65,000
Operations Consultant — Travel	10,000
Operations Consultant	30,000
Real Estate Acquisition	10,000
Inventory	155,000
Security Deposit	40,000
Miscellaneous	50,000
<b>Total Pre-Opening Costs</b>	<b>888,000</b>

**CORPORATE OVERHEAD**

Legal, Acctg, Other Prof Fees	15,000
Payroll and Benefits	225,000
FFE	10,000
Insurance	20,000
Utilities & Rent/Whse	12,000
Miscellaneous	20,000
<b>Total Corporate Overhead</b>	<b>302,000</b>

**TOTAL CASH REQUIREMENTS****1,190,000**

## Preparation Questions

1. What more can the members of the DayOne team do to build credibility and improve their chances of securing the capital they need to implement the business plan?
2. What other options might be considered for raising the funds needed to move the company ahead?
3. Imagine Andrew has approached you as a potential investor. Has DayOne proven the model yet? What are your concerns? Would you invest?



Jim Poss and BigBelly® solar-powered trash compactor. (Source: Courtesy James Poss)

## RAISING MONEY FOR STARTING AND GROWING BUSINESSES

---

You've developed your business idea and written a business plan in which you have forecast how much money you'll need for your new venture. Now you're wondering where you will get the initial money to start your business and the follow-on capital to grow it. In this chapter, we discuss the mechanics of raising money from investors, including business angels, venture capitalists, and public stock markets. First, we revisit the Jim Poss case, which you studied in Chapter 3, to examine how Jim scraped together the resources to start his business.

### **Jim Poss, BigBelly Solar**

---

During the second year of his MBA studies, Jim enrolled in Babson's Entrepreneurship Intensity Track, which is for students who want to develop a new venture that they will run full time as soon as they graduate. Jim's first product, the BigBelly® is an automatic, compacting trash bin powered by solar energy. The innovative BigBelly® dramatically cuts



emptying frequency and waste handling costs, trash overflow, and litter at outdoor sites with high traffic and high trash volume. The BigBelly's® target end users, such as municipalities and outdoor entertainment venues, face massive volumes of daily trash and very high collection costs. By the time he graduated in May 2003, Jim had a company, originally named Seahorse Power Company, and a business plan, and he was developing a prototype.

While still in school, Jim won \$1,500 worth of legal services at an investors' forum held by Brown Rudnick Berlack Israels, LLP, a leading Boston law firm. Jim used this as part payment for the legal fees associated with his patent application. He invested \$10,000 from his savings in BigBelly Solar (BBS) and was awarded \$12,500 through the Babson Hatchery Program. He recruited two unpaid Olin College engineering students to help with the design, manufacture, and testing of the prototype. Jim then developed a partnership with Bob Treiber and his firm, Boston Engineering, from which he received a "ton of work" pro bono and free space in which to assemble and test the prototype. Vail Ski Resort ordered a BigBelly® and paid Jim the full purchase price (\$5,500) in advance. In fact, he presold nearly half the first production run, and there was a 50% down payment with each order.

Jim's parents invested \$12,500. A business angel invested \$12,500. Spire Corporation, a 30-year-old publicly traded solar energy company, invested \$25,000. Jim won the Babson Business Plan Competition, which brought in \$20,000 in cash, which he shared among the team members—the first compensation they had ever received from the project. The award also brought in \$40,000 worth of services and lots of publicity. Over the next year, Jim raised \$250,000 with an "A" round of private investment from 17 individuals and companies, in amounts ranging from \$12,500 to \$50,000 with convertible debt. By the fall of 2005, BBS had sold about 100 compactors. In November 2005, Jim closed a round of equity financing.

As of September 2009, BigBelly Solar had sold over 3,000 trash compactors. The company expected total sales in 2009 to approach 2,000 units. The purchase price of a BigBelly® had decreased to \$3,900 in 2009 (before any bulk discounts).<sup>1</sup> BBS added wireless SMS text capabilities to its most recent compactors to alert trash collectors when the bins reach capacity. Among BigBelly Solar's most notable customers are the City of Philadelphia, the U.S. Forest Service, Harvard University, the Boston Red Sox, the Chicago Transit Authority, and PepsiCo.

## Bootstrapping New Ventures

---

Jim Poss is a typical example of how an entrepreneur bootstraps a startup by scraping together resources, including financing, services, material, space, and labor. In Chapter 2, you read about how Steve Jobs and Stephen Wozniak at Apple and Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google raised their capital. Jobs and Wozniak developed their first computer, Apple I, in a parent's garage and funded it with \$1,300 raised by selling Jobs' Volkswagen and Wozniak's calculator. They then found an angel investor, Armas Markkula, Jr., who had recently retired from Intel a wealthy man. Markkula personally invested \$91,000 and secured a line of credit from Bank of America. Brin and Page maxed out their credit cards to buy the terabyte of storage that they needed to start Google in Larry's dorm room. Then they raised \$100,000 from Andy Bechtolsheim, one of the founders of Sun Microsystems, plus approximately \$900,000 from family, friends, and acquaintances. Both Apple and Google subsequently raised venture capital and then went public.

There is a pattern in the initial funding of BigBelly Solar, Apple, and Google that is repeated over and over in almost every startup. The money comes from the Four Fs introduced in Chapter 9: First, the founders themselves dip into their own pockets for the initial capital; next they turn to family, friends, and foolhardy investors (business angels). If their companies grow rapidly and show the potential to be superstars (see Figure 9.13 in Chapter 9), they raise venture capital and have an initial public offering (IPO) or are acquired by a bigger company.

The money from family and friends might be a loan or equity or a combination of both, but when it is raised from business angels, from venture capitalists, or with an IPO, it will be equity. Before they raise money in exchange for equity, entrepreneurs must know the value of their companies, so they know how much equity they will have to give up. Before we discuss the mechanics of raising money, let's examine how to value a company.

## Valuation

---

There are four basic ways of valuing a business:

- Earnings capitalization valuation
- Present value of future cash flows
- Market-comparable valuation
- Asset-based valuation

No single method is ideal because the value of a business depends among other things on the following:

- Opportunity
- Risk
- Purchaser's financial resources
- Future strategies for the company
- Time horizon of the analysis
- Alternative investments
- Future harvest

The valuation of a small, privately held corporation is difficult and uncertain. It is not public, so its equity, unlike that of a public company, has very limited liquidity or probably none at all; hence, there is no way to place a value on its equity based on the share price of its stock. What's more, if it is an existing company rather than a startup, its accounting practices may be quirky. For instance, the principals' salaries may be set more by tax considerations than by market value. There may be unusual perquisites for the principals. The assets such as inventory, machinery, equipment, and real estate may be undervalued or overvalued. Goodwill is often worthless. There might be unusual liabilities or even unrecognized liabilities. Perhaps the principals have deferred compensation. Is it a subchapter S or limited liability corporation or a partnership? If so, tax considerations might dominate the accounting.

When valuing any business, especially a startup company with no financial history, we must not let finance theory dominate over practical rule-of-thumb valuations. In practice, there is so much uncertainty and imprecision in the financial projections that elaborate computations are not justified; indeed, they can sometimes lead to a false sense of exactness.

The following sections describe the four methods to determine the valuation.

*"The engine that drives enterprise is not thrift, but profit."*

—John Maynard Keynes

### Earnings Capitalization Valuation

We can compute the value of a company with the earnings capitalization method as follows:

$$\text{Company Value} = \text{Net Income}/\text{Capitalization Rate}$$

This method is precise when net income is steady and very predictable but not useful when valuing a company, particularly a startup, whose net income is very uncertain. Even for an existing small business, the method is fraught with problems: For example, should the net income be that for the most recent year, or next year's expected income, or the average income for the last five years, or . . . ? Hence, we seldom use the earnings capitalization method for valuing small, privately held businesses.

## Present Value of Future Cash Flows

The present value of a company is the present value of the future free cash flows, plus the residual (terminal) value of the firm:

$$PV = \sum_{t=1}^N (FCF_t)/(1 + K)^t + (RV_N)/(1 + K)^N$$

where  $K$  is the cost of capital,  $FCF_t$  is the free cash flow in year  $t$ ,  $N$  is the number of years, and  $RV_N$  is the residual value in year  $N$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Free Cash Flow} &= \text{Operating Income} \\ &\quad - \text{Interest} \\ &\quad - \text{Taxes on Operating Income} \\ &\quad + \text{Depreciation \& Other Noncash Charges} \\ &\quad - \text{Increase in Net Working Capital} \\ &\quad - \text{Capital Expenditures (Replacement \& Growth)} \\ &\quad - \text{Principal Repayments} \end{aligned}$$

**Free cash flow** is cash in excess of what a firm needs to maintain its optimum rate of growth. A rapidly growing, high-potential firm will not generate any free cash flow in its first few years. In fact, entrepreneurs and investors want it to use excess cash to grow faster. Therefore, we determine the value of such a firm entirely by its residual value.

## Market-Comparable Valuation (Multiple of Earnings)

This valuation method is the company's net income (NI) multiplied by a ratio of the market valuation to net income (P/E) of a comparable public company, or preferably the average for a number of similar public companies. Ideally, the comparable companies should be in the same industry segment as the company that we are valuing. If the company is private, we usually discount its valuation because its shares are not liquid.

$$\text{Total Equity Valuation} = NI \times P/E$$

For a public company, the total equity valuation is the same as the market capitalization. If we substitute net income per share (earnings per share or EPS) for total net income in this formula, we have the price per share instead of market capitalization.

Variations on this method use earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA) multiplied by the ratio of price per share to EBITDA per share of comparable companies, or simply the operating income (EBIT) multiplied by the ratio of price per share to EBIT per share.

The  $NI \times P/E$  method is the most common technique for valuing rapidly growing companies that are seeking investment from professional investors such as venture capitalists or that are going public. For a fast-growing company with no free cash flow,  $NI \times P/E$  is the same as the residual value,  $RV_N$ , in the equation in the previous section.

## Asset-Based Valuation

There are three basic variations on the asset-based method:

- Modified (adjusted) book value
- Replacement value
- Liquidation value

*Modified book value* is appropriate for an established company that is stable or growing slowly. In this case, the value of the company is its book value, which is paid-in equity plus retained earnings or, looked at another way, assets minus liabilities. The problem with taking the book value on the existing balance sheet is that it assumes that accounting records accurately reflect the economic value of the assets and the liabilities. Unfortunately, the accounting of most businesses distorts the economic value of an organization—none more so than private, closely held companies. Hence, we must make adjustments to assets and liabilities before we can determine an accurate value. The major weakness of the modified book value is that it reflects the past instead of the future. It is static, not dynamic, because it is based on existing assets and liabilities rather than future earnings.

*Replacement value* is appropriate when someone is considering whether to set up a similar business from scratch or to buy an existing business.

*Liquidation value* is appropriate for a business that has ceased to be a going concern. It might be in bankruptcy, or it might simply be a business for sale that no one is willing to buy as a going concern. Just as the name implies, the valuation of the business is what someone is willing to pay for the assets.

## Example of Market-Comparable Valuation

Here is a simplified illustration of market-comparable valuation, which is the most commonly used method for valuing a potential superstar company that is trying to raise venture capital:

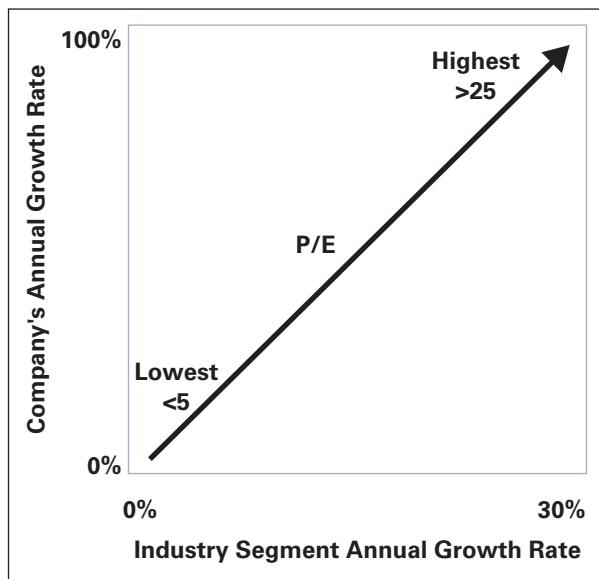
*Bug-Free Web Software (BFWS), a 12-month-old Internet software company, has successfully beta-tested its product and is seeking \$4 million of venture capital to go into full-scale production and distribution. BFWS is forecasting sales revenue of \$50 million with net income of \$5 million in five years. What percentage of the equity will the venture capitalists require?*

To value this company and estimate the amount of equity that the venture capitalists will need to get their required rate of return (internal rate of return or IRR), we need the following:

1. Future earnings (NI)
2. Comparable price-to-earnings ratio (P/E)
3. Amount being invested (at time 0) ( $INV_0$ )
4. Risk-adjusted cost of capital (IRR)
5. Number of years before the investment will be harvested (N)

BFWS's financial projections forecast that the net income in five years will be \$5 million, so NI is \$5 million and N is 5 years. What is the P/E? The P/E will be the average for public companies that are comparable to BFWS. In general, P/E ratios are determined by the rate of growth of a company and of the industry segment the company is in. This is illustrated in Figure 10.1.

In the bottom left corner are companies in slow-growing industries; they grow at approximately the same rate as the industry—for example, automobile manufacturers. If the company is growing faster than the overall industry, its P/E should be higher than the industry average, and if it is growing slower, its P/E should be lower than average (of course, if a company

**Figure 10.1****Price to earnings**

A *seed-stage* company is one with not much more than a concept; a *startup* company is one that is already in business and is developing a prototype but has not sold it in significant commercial quantities; a *first-stage* company has developed and market-tested a product and needs capital to initiate full-scale production. *Second-stage* and *third-stage/mezzanine* financings fuels growing companies; and *bridge* financing may be needed to support a company while it is between rounds of financing, often while it waits to go public.

BFWS has a prototype that has successfully passed its beta test and now wants to go into full-scale production, so it is classified as being at the startup stage, where the expected IRR is 60%. Now we need to find out what percentage of BFWS's equity the venture capitalists will need to meet a 60% return. Figure 10.3 shows the percentage of the equity needed to produce a return of 60% on a \$4 million investment for various future values (from \$20 million to \$100 million) and holding periods (from two to eight years).

The future value of BFWS is expected to be \$100 million in five years; hence, the venture capitalist will require 42% of BFWS's equity.

The market-comparable valuation formula is as follows:

$$\text{Percentage of Equity} = \frac{\text{INV}_0 \times (1 + \text{IRR}/100)^N \times 100}{\text{NI}_N \times (\text{P/E})_N}$$

Company Stage	Expected Annual Return (IRR)
Seed	80%
Startup	60%
First-stage	50%
Second-stage	40%
Third-stage/Mezzanine	30%
Bridge	25%

**Figure 10.2****Expected IRR of investors by stage of investment**

is losing money, its NI is negative, so it does not have a positive P/E ratio, in which case you might use a multiple of revenues). In the upper right corner are rapidly growing companies in high-growth industry segments, which is where BFWS expects to be. As we will see when we discuss venture capital later in this chapter, P/E ratios for superstar software/Internet companies in the top right corner are sometimes much higher than 25, but when valuing a very young company such as BFWS with no history of sales and income, venture capitalists will be conservative and use a P/E of approximately 20.

Using BFWS's financial projections, the future value of the company in five years will be as follows:

$$\text{FV}_5 = \text{NI}_5 \times (\text{P/E})_5$$

$$\text{FV}_5 = \text{NI}_5 \times (\text{P/E})_5 = \$5\text{million} \times 20 = \$100\text{million}$$

We now want to calculate the percentage of the equity that the venture capitalists will need to get their required IRR. The expected return depends on the risk involved. In general, the younger the company, the greater the risk. Figure 10.2 shows the expected IRR for the various stages of a company in which the investment is being made.

Holding Period Years	Future Value, \$million				
	20	40	60	80	100
2	51%	26%	17%	13%	10%
3	82%	41&	27%	20%	16%
4	NA	66%	44%	33%	26%
5	NA	NA	70%	52%	42%
6	NA	NA	NA	84%	67%
7	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

**Figure 10.3**

### Percentage of equity to produce a 60% IRR on a \$4 million investment

Applying this formula to BFWS:

$$\text{Percentage of Equity} = \frac{4,000,000 \times (1 + 60/100)^5 \times 100}{5,000,000 \times 20} = 42\%$$

There is a lot of uncertainty in this computation: Will BFWS achieve the net income it has forecasted? If so, will it reach it in five years, or longer? Will the price-to-earnings ratio for comparable public companies be 20, or higher? Or will it be lower? Will the window for floating IPOs be open in five years, or will it be shut and delay BFWS's IPO? Any of these contingencies will affect the IRR when the venture capitalists harvest their investment in BFWS. Occasionally, a venture-capital-backed company does better than expected. However, more often than not it does not meet its financial forecast; consequently, the actual IRR is usually less than expected.

## Asset-Based Valuation Example

Most companies are ordinary rather than glamorous superstars. In this section, we'll examine how to value an ordinary company that does not have the potential to attract venture capital or go public.

Suppose you want to become an entrepreneur by buying out an ordinary business—let's call it XYZ Corporation—that is well established in an industry that is growing about as fast as the overall economy and is an average performer. You will probably hope to buy it for its *modified book value*. The balance sheet for XYZ Corporation is shown in Figure 10.4. It lists the assets and liabilities as they are reported on the latest financial statements. The reported book value (total shareholder equity) is \$5,159,000. In the second column are the adjustments that the accountants make to bring the assets and liabilities to actual market value; the footnotes explain the adjustments. The third column shows the restated numbers, which are the reported values (column 1) plus the adjustments (column 2). The restated book value is \$6,309,000. That is probably what the seller will ask for the company.

Here are the critical questions the buyer should ask before buying an existing business:

- ◻ What is the growth rate of the industry?
- ◻ By how much is the company's growth rate above or below the industry average?
- ◻ What adjustments need to be made to the income and cash-flow statements and the balance sheet to reflect how the new owners will operate the business?
- ◻ How do the adjusted earnings and cash flows compare with industry averages?
- ◻ How does the balance sheet compare within industry averages (especially debt to equity)?

Assets	As Reported	Adjustments	Restated	Liabilities	As Reported	Adjustments	Restated
Cash	1,500		1,500				
Accounts Receivable (net) (1)	3,300	(100)	3,200	Capitalized Leases	500		500
Inventory (2)	<u>3,419</u>	<u>450</u>	<u>3,869</u>	Long-Term Debt	<u>600</u>		<u>600</u>
TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS	8,219	350	8,569	TOTAL LIABILITIES	4,860	100	4,960
Land and Buildings (3)	1,000	750	1,750				
Machinery & Equipment (4)	750	200	950	SHAREHOLDER EQUITY			
Other Assets (5)	<u>50</u>	<u>(50)</u>	<u>0</u>	Capital Stock	500		500
TOTAL ASSETS	<u>10,019</u>	<u>1,250</u>	<u>11,269</u>	Retained Earnings (7)	<u>4,659</u>	<u>1,150</u>	<u>5,809</u>
LIABILITIES				TOTAL SHAREHOLDER EQUITY	<u>5,159</u>	<u>1,150</u>	<u>6,309</u>
Accounts Payable	1,700		1,700				
Short-Term Debt	1,410		1,410				
Accruals (6)	<u>650</u>	<u>100</u>	<u>750</u>	TOTAL LIABILITIES			
TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES	3,760	100	3,860	& SHAREHOLDER EQUITY	<u>10,019</u>	<u>1,250</u>	<u>11,269</u>

## RESTATEMENT NOTES:

- (1) Deduct \$100 K for uncollectible receivables
- (2) LIFO reserve adjustment of inventory to fair market value
- (3) MAI appraisal of land & building reflect value of \$950 K
- (4) Machinery & equipment appraisal reflects current market value of \$950 K
- (5) Other assets were principally goodwill from expired patents — deduct
- (6) Investigation found accruals unrecorded of an additional \$100 K
- (7) The net pretax effect of change in (1) through (6)

**Figure 10.4****XYZ balance sheet adjusted to reflect fair market value of assets and liabilities (\$000s)**

- How is the purchase being financed, and how will that change the income and cash-flow statements and balance sheet?
- How will the new owner's strategies affect the company's future performance?

When these questions have been answered, the buyer should make five-year pro-forma financial statements and do some sensitivity analysis of the critical factors such as sales revenue, cost of sales, and interest and repayment of both the old debt the buyer takes over and any new debt added to help finance the purchase of the business.

## Financing a New Venture

The first financing for your new business will come from you and your partners if you have any. It will be cash from your savings and probably from your credit card. According to the GEM study (see Chapter 1), the average amount of startup financing for a new business in the United States is about \$150,000, of which more than 70% is provided by the entrepreneurs themselves. Perhaps you will also contribute tangible assets such as intellectual capital, like software and patents, and hard assets such as computer equipment. As the company gets under way, you will also be contributing to your company financially by working very long hours for

substantially less than the salary you could get working for someone else; 7-day work weeks and 12-hour days are not unusual for entrepreneurs starting up businesses.

Before you turn to family and friends for startup money, you should look at all the possibilities of getting funding from other external sources, just as Jim Poss did. Sources might include the following:

- ◻ Services at reduced rates (some accounting and law firms offer reduced fees to startup companies as a way of getting new clients)
- ◻ Vendor financing (getting favorable payment terms from suppliers)
- ◻ Customer financing (getting down payments in advance of delivering goods or services)
- ◻ Reduced rent from a landlord (some landlords, such as Cummings Properties in Massachusetts,<sup>2</sup> offer entrepreneurs reduced rents or deferred rents for the first six months or perhaps a year)
- ◻ An incubator that offers rent and services below market rates
- ◻ Leased instead of purchased equipment
- ◻ Government programs such as the Small Business Innovation Research awards for technology companies

You probably should talk to a bank. But keep in mind that banks expect loans to be secured by assets, which include the assets of the business and its owner or of someone else, such as a wealthy parent, who is willing to guarantee the loan with personal assets. The U.S. Small Business Administration (SBA) can help when you are unable to secure a bank loan through personal or business assets. When a bank believes that issuing a loan to your small or prospective business would be too risky, you may ask it to apply for an SBA guarantee. If the SBA approves your lender's request, it will guarantee 50%–85% of the loan. You will need to secure the remaining percentage through other means, but SBA support makes you a much more attractive borrower. The SBA will not help you to repay your loan, but in the event that you or your business defaults on the loan, the administration will reimburse the lender for a portion of the remaining principal. If you and your business fit the required criteria, the overall amount that the SBA will guarantee depends upon how you plan to use the proceeds.<sup>3</sup> In 2007, the SBA program provided more than \$50 million in loans per day to small businesses.<sup>4</sup> However, even if you qualify for an SBA loan, you will have to guarantee the loan personally, and the bank granting the loan will expect that at least 25% of the startup financing will be owners' equity. This means that, if you want to borrow \$75,000 under the SBA program, you must have \$25,000 invested in the company. The SBA figure of \$50 million loaned per day is impressive, but most of that money goes to existing businesses rather than new companies. An excellent SBA loan FAQ sheet can be found at [www.sba.gov/idc/groups/public/documents/wa\\_seattle/sdo2008loanfactsheetshort.pdf](http://www.sba.gov/idc/groups/public/documents/wa_seattle/sdo2008loanfactsheetshort.pdf).

## Informal Investors

After you have exhausted all the other potential sources of financing, you should turn to informal investors for help with the initial funding of your new business. As you read in the preceding chapter, informal investors are by far the biggest source of startup financing after the entrepreneurs themselves. In the United States, informal investors provide more than \$100 billion per year to startup and young businesses.<sup>5</sup> Approximately 50% of informal investment goes to a relative's business, 28.5% to a friend's or neighbor's, 6.1% to a work colleague's, and 9.4% to a stranger's.<sup>6</sup> In this section, we will look at informal investors who are inexperienced when it comes to funding startup companies; in the next section, we will look at an important subset of informal investors, business angels, who are more sophisticated.

Half of all informal investors in the United States expect to get their money back in two years or sooner, according to the GEM study. This suggests that they regard their money as a short-term loan instead of a long-term equity investment. We are using the term *investment* loosely in this context because it may be more like a loan rather than a formal investment. Whether it is a loan or an equity investment, the downside financial risk in the worst case is the same because, if the business fails, the informal investors will lose all their money. It is important to make clear to informal investors what the risks are. If you have a business plan, you should give them a copy and ask them to read it. But assume that they probably will not read it thoroughly; hence, you should make sure you have discussed the risks with them. A guiding principle when dealing with family and friends is not to take their money unless they assure you they can afford to lose their entire investment without seriously hurting their standard of living. It may be tempting to borrow from relatives and friends because the interest rate is favorable and the terms of the loan are not as strict as they would be from a bank, but if things go wrong, your relationship might be seriously impaired, perhaps even ended.

How should you treat money that a relative or friend puts into your business in the early days? At the beginning, the business has no operating experience, and it is very uncertain what the outcome will be. Thus, it is extremely difficult—maybe impossible—to place a valuation on the fledgling venture. It is probably better to treat money from friends and family as a loan rather than as an equity investment. As in any loan, you should pay interest, but to conserve cash flow in the first year or two, make the interest payable in a lump sum at the end of the loan rather than in monthly installments. You should give the loan holders the option of converting the loan into equity during the life of the loan. In that way, they can share in the upside if your company turns out to have star potential, with the possibility of substantial capital gains for the investors.

When you are dealing with relatively small amounts of money from relatives and friends—especially close family such as parents, brothers, and sisters—you may not need a formal loan agreement, particularly if you ask for money when you are under pressure because your business is out of cash. But at a minimum, you should record the loan in writing, with perhaps nothing more than a letter or a note. If you want something more formal, Virgin Money US sets up loan agreements for small businesses with informal investors.<sup>7</sup> A documented loan agreement could be important if you subsequently start dealing with professional investors such as sophisticated business angels and venture capitalists.

## Business Angels

In the previous chapter, you saw that informal investors are most likely to be entrepreneurs. In the case of the funding of Apple, Google, and many other companies not as famous, such as BigBelly Solar, wealthy entrepreneurs play a key role in the funding of many new ventures. We call those types of informal investors **business angels**.

Business angels fund many more entrepreneurial firms than venture capitalists do.<sup>8</sup> Angels invest in seed-stage and very early-stage companies that are not yet mature enough for formal venture capital or companies that need financing in amounts too small to justify the venture capitalist's costs, including evaluation, due diligence, and legal fees.

We do not know how many wealthy persons are business angels, but we do know that Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 501 defines an “accredited investor” as a person with a net worth of at least \$1 million, or annual income of at least \$200,000 in the most recent two years, or combined income with a spouse of \$300,000 during those years. According to Forrester Consulting, the number of households in the United States that fit that profile is approximately 630,000.<sup>9</sup> So that is the number of business angels qualified to invest in private offerings governed by SEC rules.

## Angels on Broadway: The Color Purple<sup>10</sup>

The term *angel* was first used in a financial context to describe individual investors who put up money to produce new plays and musicals in the theater. Putting together a new theatrical production is not unlike starting up a high-potential business. It costs between \$10 million and \$12 million to produce a Broadway musical. Occasionally, a show is a gigantic success, for example, *Cats*, but more often than not it either fails or is mediocre. Seventy-five percent of Broadway shows fail.<sup>11</sup> It is said that you can make a killing on Broadway, but you can't make a living—in contrast to Wall Street, where you can make a steady living with an occasional killing.

The musical version of *The Color Purple* opened on Broadway in December 2005—eight years after producer, Scott Sanders, first recognized the opportunity of producing a musical stage version of Stephen Spielberg's 1985 movie, in which Oprah Winfrey was one of

the stars. Oprah called it one of the greatest experiences of her life. After Sanders persuaded the author, Alice Walker, to allow him to produce a musical based on her 1982 Pulitzer Prize-winning novel, Walker wrote to Oprah in 1997 and asked her "to do a little angel work for the show." But there was no response from Oprah until July 2005.

In the meantime, Sanders had raised almost all the \$11 million needed to put the show on Broadway. He put in some of his own money; then in 2002 he raised \$2 million from AEG Live—a strategic partner—with a commitment for another \$2 million of follow-on investment. With the initial \$2 million he produced a month-long trial run of *The Color Purple* in Atlanta to sold-out audiences and standing ovations in 2004. This attracted Roy Furman, a Wall Street financier and frequent Broadway angel, who had worked with Sanders in the past. Furman agreed to raise half the \$11 million that Sanders needed and made a seven-figure investment himself. Furman took an active interest in the production, attending rehearsals and management meetings. Then when the show was fully



Peter Kramer/Getty Images News and Sports Services

**Author Alice Walker (L), Producer Scott Sanders, TV Personality Oprah Winfrey and actor LaChanze at the curtain call for "The Color Purple" at the Broadway Theater on December 1, 2005 in New York City.**

financed, Oprah called. She agreed to allow Sanders to put, “Oprah Winfrey presents *The Color Purple*” on the theater marquee. To make room for Oprah to invest \$1 million, other investors’ commitments were trimmed. Oprah also offered to feature a couple of songs from the musical on her hugely successful TV show. A book endorsement by Oprah almost guaranteed a place on the best-sellers list; Sanders and Furman hoped that by featuring *The Color Purple* on her show, Oprah would help to make it a Broadway hit.

Sanders and Furman estimated that if the average audience was 75% of full capacity in the 1,718-seat Broadway Theatre, *The Color Purple* would pay back the original investment in 12 months. Five months after its opening, *The Color Purple* was grossing more than \$1 million a week, making it one of the top five shows on Broadway. The show recouped its investment within the first year and grossed more than \$100 million before it closed on Broadway in 2008.<sup>12</sup>

## Searching for Business Angels

Most nascent entrepreneurs do not know anyone who is a business angel, so how should they search for one? The good news is that today there are “formal” angel groups, which are angels who have joined together to seek and invest in young companies. Most of them are wealthy entrepreneurs; some are still running their businesses, while others are retired. Angel investor groups have been around for many years, but they started to proliferate in the late 1990s when it seemed as if everyone was trying to make a fortune by getting in early on investments in Internet-related startups. Although many angels lost a lot of money on their investments when the Internet bubble burst, angel groups continued investing in seed- and early-stage companies, albeit at a much reduced rate.<sup>13</sup>

Angel groups have different ways of selecting potential companies to invest in. A few groups consider only opportunities that are referred to them, but most welcome unsolicited business plans from entrepreneurs. They evaluate the plans and invite the entrepreneurs with the most promising ones to make a presentation to the group at one of their periodic (usually monthly) meetings. A few of those presentations eventually result in investments by some of the angels in the group. Some groups charge the entrepreneurs a fee to make a presentation, and a few even require a fee when an entrepreneur submits a business plan. The size of each investment ranges from less than \$100,000 to as much as \$2 million—and in a few instances, considerably more.

Important as angel groups have become, they comprise only a few thousand investors compared with hundreds of thousands of business angels who invest on their own. Entrepreneurs are much more likely to raise money from angels who invest individually rather than in packs. Unfortunately, individual business angels are very hard to find. Searching for them requires extensive networking. But according to Bill Wetzel, professor emeritus at the University of New Hampshire who pioneered research into angel investing and who started the first angel investment network as the forerunner of ACE-Net (Angel Capital Investment Network), “Once you find one angel investor, you have probably found another half dozen.”<sup>14</sup>

Consider how other entrepreneurs found business angels. Steve Jobs and Stephen Wozniak found Armas Markkula through an introduction by a venture capitalist who looked at Apple and decided it was too early for him to invest. Sergey Brin and Larry Page were introduced to Andy Bechtolsheim by a Stanford University faculty member. Jim Poss worked for Spire Corporation and got to know Roger Little, founder and CEO of Spire Corporation and a leading expert on solar power; he met another of his angel investors at a wind energy conference sponsored by Brown Rudnick. When a leader in an industry related to the one the new company is entering becomes a business angel, it sends an important signal to other potential investors. For instance, once Andy Bechtolsheim had invested in Google, Brin and Page soon put together \$1 million of funding. And Jim Poss’s parents said they would invest only if Roger Little invested.

## Types of Business Angels

Business angels range from silent investors who sit back and wait patiently for results, to others who want to be involved in the operations of the company, as a part-time consultant or as a full-time partner. Richard Bendis classifies business angels in the following categories: entrepreneurial, corporate, professional, enthusiast, and micromanagement.<sup>15</sup>

*Entrepreneurial angels* have started their own businesses and are looking to invest in new businesses. Some have realized substantial capital gains by taking their companies public or merging them with other companies. Others are still running their businesses full-time and have sufficient income to be business angels. In general, entrepreneurial angels are the most valuable to the new venture because they are usually knowledgeable about the industry, and just as important, they have built substantial businesses from the ground up and so understand the challenges that entrepreneurs face. They can be invaluable advisors and mentors. Armas “Mike” Markkula is a famous example of a business angel who had made his fortune in two entrepreneurial companies, first Fairchild and then Intel. He had “retired” at the age of 38 when Steve Jobs and Stephen Wozniak were introduced to him. He invested in Apple; worked with Steve Jobs to write Apple’s first business plan; secured a bank line of credit; helped raise venture capital; recruited Michael Scott, Apple’s first president; and then became president himself from 1981 to 1983. According to Stephen Wozniak, “Steve [Jobs] and I get a lot of credit, but Mike Markkula was probably more responsible for our early success, and you never hear about him.”<sup>16</sup>

*Corporate angels* are managers of larger corporations who invest from their savings and current income. Some are looking to invest in a startup and become part of the full-time management team. Corporate angels who have built their careers in big, multinational corporations can be a problem for a neophyte entrepreneur because they know a lot about managing companies with vast resources but have never worked in a small company with very limited resources. Here is an example of what might go wrong: A fish importing wholesaler was started and run by two young men. The company grew fast, but it ran out of working capital. Two angels, one of them a marketing executive with a huge multinational food company, invested \$500,000 on condition that the young company hire the marketing executive as its marketing/sales vice president. Very soon there was a clash of cultures. The founders continued to work 12-hour days, while the new vice president was traveling first class and staying in fancy hotels when he made sales trips. Within a year, the business angels took control of the company. The two founders left, and a year later it closed its doors.

*Professional angels* are doctors, dentists, lawyers, accountants, consultants, and even professors who have substantial savings and incomes and invest some of their money in startups. Generally, they are silent partners, although a few of them, especially consultants, expect to be retained by the company as paid advisors.

*Enthusiast angels* are retired or semiretired entrepreneurs and executives who are wealthy enough to invest in startups as a hobby. It is a way for them to stay involved in business without any day-to-day responsibilities. They are usually passive investors who invest relatively small amounts in several companies.

*Micromanagement angels* are entrepreneurs who have been successful with their own companies and have strong views on how the companies they invest in should be run. They want to be a director or a member of the board of advisors and get regular updates on the operations of the company. They do not hesitate to intervene in the running of the business if it does not perform as expected.

There is no ideal type of business angel. And in general, most entrepreneurs cannot pick and choose because it is so hard to find business angels who are prepared to invest. But just as a wise angel will carefully investigate the entrepreneur before investing, likewise a smart entrepreneur will find out as much as possible about a potential business angel. There is probably no better source of information than other entrepreneurs in whom the

angel has previously invested. Ask the business angel whether he or she has invested in other entrepreneurs and whether you may talk with them.

## Putting Together a Round of Angel Investment

If you're raising a round of investment from business angels, you'll need a lawyer knowledgeable in this area because there are various SEC rules that you need to comply with. The SEC Website has a good brochure on private placements that you should read.<sup>17</sup> Most private placements by startup entrepreneurs are made under Regulation D, Rule 504, dealing with offerings up to \$1 million; fewer are made under Rule 505, dealing with offerings up to \$5 million. (There is a brief explanation of these in Chapter 12 on legal and tax issues.)

The first thing you'll want to do is place a value on your startup. Valuation of a seed-stage company is more art than science. It's also very subjective, with entrepreneurs placing a substantially higher value than business angels. Informed business angels will determine the value based on similar deals made by other angels and venture capital firms. The comparable-market valuation method will provide a back-of-the-envelope estimate to see whether the company has a chance of meeting the business angel's required return.

In general, business angels are satisfied with a lower return than venture capitalists are because, unlike venture capitalists, they have only minimal operating costs and they do not have to pay themselves carried interest on any capital gains. You saw in Chapter 9 that venture capitalists charge as much as 3% per year on the money they invest, and on top of that, they deduct carried interest of 20%—sometimes more—from the capital gain they pass on to their investors. So, to produce a return of 25% for their investors, venture capitalists need to get a return of 35% or more from their investment portfolio. According to Wainwright, business angels expect an IRR of 15% to 25%, with a payback time between five and seven years.<sup>18</sup> A Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) study found that the business angels expected returns between 3:1 and 10:1 on their investments and that actual returns ranged from losses on 32% of their investments to higher than 10:1 on 23%.<sup>19</sup> The same MIT study found that business angels were evenly split between preferring IPOs and acquisitions as their exit strategy; none preferred a buyback. In practice, 27% of business angel investments ended with an IPO, 35% with an acquisition, and 5% with a buyback, and 32% were losses.

While financial returns are very important to business angels, they also invest for nonfinancial reasons. These include a desire to give back and mentor budding entrepreneurs, to be involved in startups without total immersion, to have fun, to be part of a network of other business angels, to stay abreast of new commercial developments, to be involved with the development of products and services that benefit society, and to invest in entrepreneurs without the pressure of being a full-time venture capitalist.<sup>20</sup>

Most angel investments are for preferred stock convertible into common stock on a 1-to-1 ratio. Preferred stock gives investors priority rights over founders' common stock, which relates to liquidation and voting. The potential problem with convertible preferred stock is that it sets a valuation on the stock at the first round. If that valuation turns out to be higher than the venture capitalist's valuation at the second round, negotiations between the venture capitalist and the entrepreneur will be difficult. The shortfall might even be a deal breaker.

Jim Poss placed a pre-money valuation of \$2.5 million on BigBelly Solar when he was raising his first round of funding from business angels. He raised \$250,000, so the post-money valuation was \$2.75 million. Investors would have owned 9.1% ( $250,000/2,750,000 \times 100\%$ ) of the equity if Jim had issued stock. But instead of stock, he issued convertible debt. Some seed-stage companies that expect to get venture capital investment in later rounds of financing use convertible debt rather than convertible preferred stock. **Convertible debt** is a bridge loan that converts to equity at the next round of investment, assuming that it is an equity round. Convertible debt securities allow the next-round investors, who are usually venture capitalists, to set the value of the company and provide the first-round angel investors

with a discount. Business angels would like to get a 30% discount, but actual discounts range from 10% to 30%. Convertible debt has the advantage over convertible preferred stock because it reduces or eliminates squabbling over the valuation between venture capitalists and the entrepreneur on behalf of the angels.<sup>21</sup>

The major conditions of a proposed deal are spelled out in a term sheet. Three examples of business angel term sheets are found in *Venture Support Systems Project: Angel Investors*.<sup>22</sup>

## Venture Capital

Over the five years from 2004 to 2008, a total of 5,629 companies received venture capital for the first time—for a yearly average of only 1,126 companies—and most of those were not seed- or startup-stage companies.<sup>23</sup> The reality is that a person has a better chance of winning \$1 million or more in a lottery than getting seed- or startup-stage venture capital.<sup>24</sup> It is extremely rare that entrepreneurs have venture capital in hand when their new businesses begin operating.

Venture capital is almost always invested in companies that are already in business and have demonstrated the potential to become stars or, better yet, superstars in their industry. Nothing excites venture capitalists more than a company with a product or service that is already being bought by satisfied customers. Venture capital accelerates the commercialization of new products and services; it seldom pays for the initial development of concepts. It is also important to keep in mind that the bulk of venture capital in the United States goes to high-technology-based companies. In 2008, for example, 60% of the companies that received venture capital were in the information technology sector, 23% were in medical/life sciences, and only 17% were not high-technology companies.<sup>25</sup>

## Candidates for Venture Capital

Here, in order of importance, are the six top factors venture capitalists look at when evaluating a candidate for investment:<sup>26</sup>

1. Management team
2. Target market
3. Product/service
4. Competitive positioning
5. Financial returns
6. Business plan

**Management Team.** We've said that the crucial ingredients for entrepreneurial success are a superb entrepreneur with a first-rate management team and an excellent market opportunity. Entrepreneurs should have most of the startup team identified before they approach venture capitalists. If they are sufficiently impressed with the progress a startup company has made, venture capitalists will sometimes help recruit a key member of the team. They will even help recruit a new CEO if they have reservations about the lead entrepreneur's ability to build a rapidly growing company with the potential to go public. The best venture capitalists have extensive contacts with potential candidates for management positions in their portfolio companies.

**Target Market.** The target market should be fragmented, accessible, and growing rapidly. The Internet triggered a stampede of venture capital investing in the late 1990s because it promised to become a huge market with many different segments; there were no dominant players in the new segments, and the segments were readily accessible to new entrants.

“...there’s plenty of technology, market opportunity, and venture capital, but too few great entrepreneurs and teams [in 2004].”<sup>27</sup>

—John Doerr, legendary venture capitalist, Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byers

**Product/Service.** The product or service should be better than competing products or services, and it should be protected with patents or copyrights, as appropriate. It does not have to be the first product in its market segment. For example, Google was not the first Web search engine; it simply was superior to the existing ones. Again, it is important to stress that a company with a working prototype—or better yet, satisfied customers—has a much better chance of raising venture capital than does an entrepreneur with just an idea and a business plan.

**Competitive Positioning.** There is no dominant competitor in the market niche. Distribution channels are open. And the

company has an experienced marketing manager with expert knowledge of market segment. SolidWorks positioned its CAD/CAM software in a niche where it was difficult for well-established competitors, especially Parametric Technology, to move in without cannibalizing their business models.

**Financial Returns.** The potential financial return is important, but classic venture capital does not depend on sophisticated financial computations. Venture capitalists have a rule of thumb for early- and expansion-stage companies—they will invest only if the company has the potential to return at least seven times their investment in five years—in venture capital jargon, “seven x” in five years. A 7x return in five years produces an IRR of 47.6%; a 10x return in five years produces an IRR of 58.5%.

**Business Plan.** Every entrepreneur seeking money from business angels or professional venture capitalists must have a competent written business plan. But no matter how good a business plan may be, it will not impress investors nearly as much as a product or service that is already being sold to customers. Too many entrepreneurs spend too much effort refining and polishing their business plans rather than implementing their businesses.

## Ideal Candidates for Venture Capital

The *ideal* candidate for a first round of venture capital meets the following criteria:

- CEO/lead entrepreneur has significant management and entrepreneurial experience with demonstrated ability to manage a rapidly growing company in a fast-paced industry segment.
- Vice president of engineering is recognized as a star in the industry (if it is a technology-based business).
- Vice president of marketing has a proven track record.
- Some members of the top management team have worked together before.
- The product/service is better than those of its competitors.
- Intellectual capital such as patents and copyrights is protected.
- The market segment is fragmented, growing rapidly, and expected to be big.
- There are no dominant competitors.
- The company has satisfied customers.
- The company projects sales of \$50 million in five years.
- The gross income margin is expected to be better than 60%, with a net income margin better than 10%.

	Medians			
	Internet	Software	Hardware	Semiconductor
<b>Marketing and Operations</b>				
Market Growth Rate	135.7%	23.5%	37.5%	15.5%
Annual Sales Growth Trend (all years)	87.0%	54.3%	55.7%	24.7%
Sales Growth Trend (12 months)	93.3%	45.9%	54.3%	30.1%
Annualized Sales Revenue	\$9,720,000	\$23,396,000	\$27,268,000	\$39,940,000
Gross Margin	72.7%	75.6%	39.1%	42.2%
Profit Margin	-36.7%	3.4%	-0.5%	7.9%
Net Income (last year)	(\$2,414,530)	\$308,000	(\$639,000)	\$1,495,000
Net Income (last quarter annualized)	(\$3,462,921)	\$1,644,000	\$2,140,000	\$3,226,000
R&D Ratio	27.0%	18.4%	14.5%	14.6%
# of Employees	124	134	92	213
<b>Financial</b>				
IRR	506.9%	124.8%	148.0%	30.5%
Times Return	7.16	6.67	10.71	4.94
Years from 1st VC Investment to IPO	0.96	2.53	4.04	5.00
Time from Incorporation to IPO	5	8	7	11
Price/Share 1st Round of VC	\$1.25	\$1.50	\$1.13	\$2.79
IPO Price	\$14	\$12	\$10	\$11
P/E Ratio	70	54	32	26
Size of IPO	\$34,000,000	\$27,600,000	\$22,320,000	\$29,130,000
Market Capitalization after IPO	\$163,488,290	\$105,510,812	\$89,244,768	\$77,468,542

**Figure 10.5**

### Venture-capital-backed public companies

- ☐ The amount of investment is between \$5 million and \$10 million.
- ☐ The company has the potential to go public in five years.
- ☐ Potential return of 7× or higher.
- ☐ IRR of 60% or higher.

## Actual Venture-Capital-Backed Companies

Venture-capital-backed companies that have IPOs are the cream of the crop, so by examining profiles of companies at the time they go public, we can see how the best companies measure up to the ideal. Figure 10.5 shows the results of a study of 122 venture-backed-companies that went public in the years 1994–1997,<sup>28</sup> when the stock market indices were rising but before the Internet bubble (which ran from the end of 1997 to the beginning of 2001).

The management of those companies came close to the ideal. For instance, half of the top management teams had a combined 114 years of experience or more. Seventy-one percent of the companies had at least one founder with previous startup experience. And in about two-thirds of the companies, two or more founders had worked together before starting their present venture.

Market and operating performance at the time of the IPO was quite different among the industry segments (see Figure 10.5). The industry segments appear in order of their maturity from left to right, with the Internet being the least mature and the semiconductor the most mature. Much of the difference between companies in the four industries is explained by the maturity of their industry segment. The Internet market segments were growing much faster

than were the semiconductor ones, as was the annual growth rate of sales revenue. There was a big difference between the characteristics of Internet and semiconductor companies.

Internet companies had the least sales revenue at the time of the IPO and semiconductor companies the most. None of the four segments attained the ideal of at least \$50 million in annual sales revenue. Not one of the industry segments met the net income margin of at least 10% prescribed for the ideal, but the Internet and software companies exceeded the gross margin requirement of at least 60%, whereas the hardware and semiconductor companies fell short. In all segments except the Internet, the annualized net income improved dramatically in the quarter before the IPO.

However, despite the shortcomings on sales revenue and net income, the venture capitalists met their hoped-for times return on the first round of venture capital in all industries except semiconductors. And their IRR handily topped their expectations. The median IRR for Internet companies was a whopping 507% because they went public only one year after they received their first round of venture capital. In contrast, five years elapsed for semiconductor companies between the first round of venture capital and the IPO. So, although the times return in the semiconductor segment was almost 5 compared with just over 7 in the Internet segment, the IRR in semiconductors was only 30.5% because the longer an investment is held, the lower the IRR. The P/E ratios were 70 for the Internet companies that were profitable, 54 for software, 32 for hardware, and 26 for semiconductors. The differences in the P/E ratios mainly explain the differences in market capitalization among the different industry segments.

What does this mean for entrepreneurs who are seeking venture capital? First, there is not one set of ideal criteria for a company, but there are tendencies based on the industry sector. Second, the management team must be excellent. Third, the faster the growth of the industry and the growth of the company, the more likely it is to get the attention of venture capitalists. Fourth, entrepreneurs should focus on sales growth rather than profitability in the first few years and then show a profitability spurt in the year before the IPO. Fifth, on average, companies are several years old and have developed products or services before they get their first venture capital investment.

## Dealing with Venture Capitalists

The first big challenge for an entrepreneur is reaching a venture capitalist. It is easy to get names and contact information for almost every venture capital firm from the Internet and subscription data sources such as VentureXpert.<sup>29</sup> However, venture capital firms pay much more attention to entrepreneurs who are referred to them than to unsolicited business plans that arrive by mail. Entrepreneurs are referred to venture capitalists by accountants, lawyers, bankers, other entrepreneurs, consultants, professors, business angels, and anyone else in contact with venture capitalists. But most of them are reluctant to recommend an entrepreneur to a venture capitalist unless they are confident that the entrepreneur is a good candidate for venture capital.

Entrepreneurs should be wary of “finders” who offer to raise venture capital for the entrepreneur. Most venture capitalists do not like dealing with finders because they charge the company a fee based on the amount of money raised—a fee that comes out of the money the venture capitalists invest in the company. What’s more, it’s the entrepreneur, not the finder, who has to deal with the venture capitalists.

If the entrepreneur is fortunate enough to find a venture capitalist who would like to learn more about the new business, a meeting will take place at either the company’s or the venture capital firm’s office. The first meeting is usually an informal discussion of the business with one of the partners of the venture capital firm. If the partner decides to pursue the opportunity, he or she will discuss it with more of the partners; if they like the opportunity, they will invite the entrepreneur to make a formal presentation to several partners in the firm. This meeting is the crucial one, so it is important to make as good a presentation as possible. Not only are

the venture capital partners assessing the company and its product or service, but also they are carefully scrutinizing the entrepreneur and other team members to see whether they have the right stuff to build a company that can go public.

If the venture capital partners like what they see and hear at this meeting, the firm will pursue the entrepreneur with the intent to invest and will begin its due diligence on the entrepreneur, other team members, and the company. Entrepreneurs who get to this stage will be evaluated as never before in their lives. It is not unusual for a venture capital firm to check dozens of references on the entrepreneur. Any suggestion of dubious conduct by the entrepreneur will be investigated. After all, the entrepreneur is asking the venture capital firm to trust him or her with several million dollars that in most cases is not secured by any collateral. All entrepreneurs should get a copy of their credit reports and be prepared to explain any delinquencies.

Entrepreneurs who get to this stage may be wondering whether the venture capital firm is the right one for them and be tempted to approach other venture capital firms to see what they might offer. But instead, they should conduct due diligence on the venture capital firm. Ask for a list of the entrepreneurs the firm has invested in and permission to speak with them. Here are some things to look for.

**Value Added.** The best venture capitalists bring more than money to their portfolio companies.<sup>30</sup> They bring what they call *value added*, which includes help with recruiting key members of management, strategic advice, industry contacts, and professional contacts such as accountants, lawyers, entrepreneurs, consultants, other venture capitalists, commercial bankers, and investment bankers.

**Patience.** Some venture capital firms, especially newer ones with relatively inexperienced partners, are more likely to get impatient when a portfolio company fails to meet expectations. Studies of venture-capital-backed companies that have not yet gone public or been acquired find that approximately 50% to 60% of them have changed CEOs at some time after the first round of venture capital;<sup>32</sup> only 18% of those that have had IPOs have changed CEOs.<sup>33</sup> Another indication of lack of patience is a venture capital firm quick to invoke covenants in the investment agreement, which contains a couple of hundred pages. There are all manner of covenants in those agreements, and it is not unusual for a company to violate one or perhaps more. An experienced venture capitalist will usually waive a covenant unless the violation is so severe that it jeopardizes the viability of the company.

**Deep Pockets.** Will the firm have enough money to invest in follow-on rounds of venture capital if the company needs them? Venture capital firms that have been in business for a long time have established a reputation of producing good returns for their limited partners, so they are able to raise new funds from time to time. In contrast, a young venture capital firm with only one small fund without a proven track record of producing satisfactory returns for its limited partners will have difficulty raising a second fund.

**Board of Directors.** Does the venture capitalist sit on the board and regularly attend meetings? How often does the board meet? And how many boards does the venture capitalist serve on? A rule of thumb is that a venture capitalist should not be on more than half a dozen boards of portfolio companies.

## VENTURE CAPITAL IS “RELATIONSHIP” CAPITAL

*Brook Byers and Ray Lane, talking about how Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byers helps entrepreneurs.<sup>31</sup>*

*Brook Byers (referring to Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byers’ network): It’s not keiretsu, it’s relationship capital.*

*Ray Lane: Whether you call it a network, a Rolodex, keiretsu, or whatever, it is something that entrepreneurs crave, because they’re looking for help. As Brook said, money is not a differentiator in our business, but they’re looking for help. Either you have knowledge in their domain, and you can help them get from startup to a company that actually gets something in the market, or you help them scale through relationships. In this world, at least in the enterprise world, it helps to know somebody.*

**Accessibility.** Is the venture capitalist readily available when the entrepreneur needs advice? Conversely, does the venture capitalist interfere too much in the day-to-day running of the company?

## Negotiating the Deal

The valuation of the company is probably the biggest issue to be negotiated. Generally, the entrepreneur's valuation is higher than the venture capitalist's. Entrepreneurs can make valuations of the company based on computations like the one earlier in this chapter for BFWS; they can also talk to other entrepreneurs who have recently received venture capital. In general, venture capitalists have more information about pricing than entrepreneurs do because they know the valuations of similar deals that have been recently completed, and those will be the basis for the valuation.

Let's return to BFWS. The entrepreneur's calculations show that the venture capital firm will be looking for 42% of the equity after it has put in its \$4 million. Hence, the company will be worth \$9.42 million ( $\$4\text{ million}/0.42$ ) after the money has been invested—what is called the *post-money valuation*. The pre-money valuation is thus \$5.42 million ( $\$9.42\text{ million} - \$4\text{ million}$ ).

The venture capitalist knows that comparable deals have been valued at \$4 million pre-money. So the venture capitalist needs 50% of the equity post-money. After negotiations, the entrepreneur and the venture capitalist settle on a pre-money valuation of \$4.5 million for BFWS, which means that the venture capitalist will get 47.1% of the equity, with a post-money valuation of \$8.5 million, and the entrepreneurs and any angel investors who have already put money into BFWS will be left with 52.9%. The venture capitalists will expect that a pool of stock, about 15% of the issue, will be reserved for key employees who will be hired in the future.

The next step is for the venture capitalist to provide a *term sheet* listing the main conditions of the deal. (You can find samples on the Web.<sup>34</sup>) The term sheet will specify how much money the venture capital firm is investing, how much stock it is getting, a detailed listing of all the stock issued or reserved for stock options *before* the venture capital is invested—and *after*. The venture capitalists will in almost every case get convertible preferred stock. The rights of the preferred stock will be spelled out; they will include dividend provisions, liquidation preferences, conversion rights (usually one share of preferred stock converts to one share of common stock), antidilution provisions, voting rights, and protective provisions.

The term sheet will also have clauses covering information rights, such as a requirement for the company to supply timely unaudited quarterly and audited annual financial statements, board membership, a description of how the venture capital will be used, employment agreements, stock registration rights, and terms under which management can sell stock privately. It will also specify the date when the deal will close.

Term sheet provisions are subject to negotiation. But the sheet will contain a date and time when the venture capitalist's offer will expire unless the entrepreneur has accepted the offer in writing.

## Follow-On Rounds of Venture Capital

It is quite likely that there will be subsequent rounds of venture capital. In 2008, for instance, 1,179 companies received first-round venture capital financing and 2,169 received follow-on financing in the United States. Let's see what might happen in a second round of financing for BFWS.

Two years after the first round of venture capital, BFWS has met its milestones set out in its business plan, so the venture capitalists are happy. They had expected that the company would go public to raise more money, but the IPO window is closed (as it was in 2002 and 2003, after the Internet bubble burst and investors lost their appetite for IPO stocks not

only of Internet-related companies but also of information technology companies in general). BFWS estimates it needs \$6 million to stay on its rapid-growth trajectory for the next two years, when it hopes the IPO window will again be open.

When a company has met its milestones, its valuation has increased. It's not unusual for venture capitalists to agree to a valuation three times what it was at the first round. BFWS will be talking both to its present venture capitalists, who will be eager to invest in a second round, and to other venture capitalists so as to get more than one valuation. We'll assume the deal will be struck at a pre-money valuation three times the post-money valuation of the first round, or \$25.5 million ( $3 \times \$8.5$  million). The post-money valuation will be \$31.5 million. So the venture capitalist will get an additional 19% of the stock for his \$6 million investment at the second round of financing. If all goes well and the IPO window opens up during the next two years, BFWS expects to go public.

## Harvesting Investments

---

When business angels or venture capitalists put money into a business, there has to be a way they can realize their investments at a future date. This is called the **exit** or **harvest** for the investor. There are three ways to exit an investment: an initial public offering, an acquisition, and a buyback of the investor's stock by the company itself. We've mentioned that most investors prefer an IPO because it produces the highest valuation in most cases—but not in every case. An acquisition is the second choice. And a buyback is a distant third because in almost every instance it produces a mediocre return.

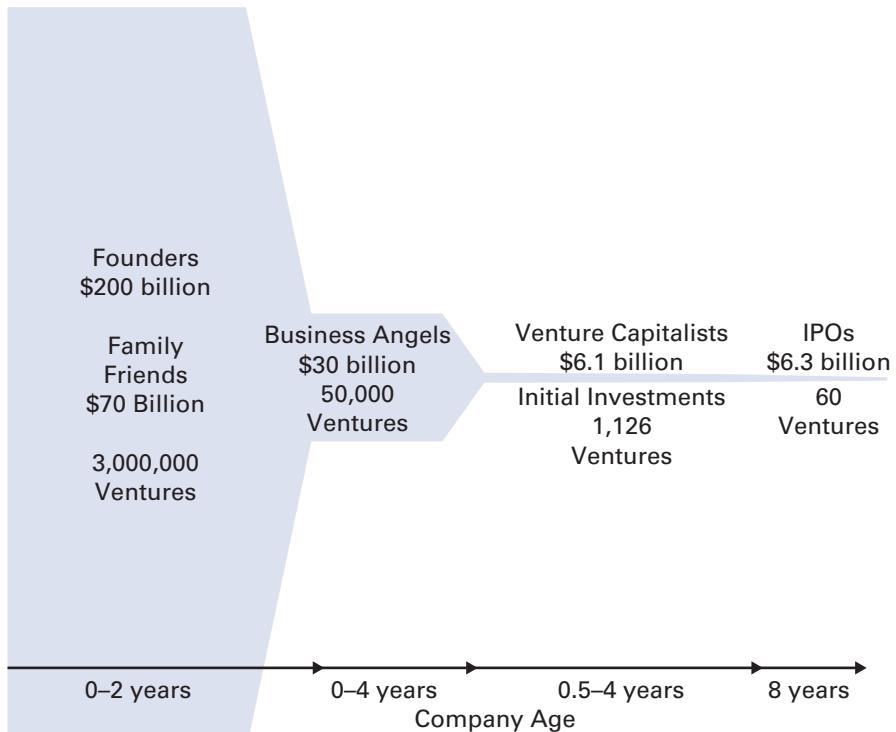
One of the questions neophyte entrepreneurs seeking external equity financing most often ask is, "Can I buy back the investors' equity?" The answer is, "In principle yes, but in practice it is extremely unlikely." Buybacks are rare because a successful and rapidly growing company needs all the cash it can get just to keep on its growth trajectory. It has no free cash to buy out its external investors. A firm doing a buyback is more likely to be one of the living dead for which an IPO or acquisition is not feasible, but somehow the company arranges a refinancing in which it buys back the stock owned by the original investors. Sometimes a venture capital agreement includes a redemption (buyback) clause that allows the venture capital firm to exit its investment by selling it back to the company at a premium if an IPO or acquisition does not occur within a specified time period.

### Initial Public Offering

Only a minuscule number of companies raise money with a firm commitment IPO.<sup>35</sup> Over the period 2004–2008, 299 venture-capital-backed companies went public, which averages out at only 60 IPOs per year.<sup>36</sup> When this is divided by the number of companies that raise venture capital each year, it turns out that roughly 5% of them go public. In 2004, 43% of all IPOs were by venture-capital-backed companies. Figure 10.6 shows the funding filters that most venture-capital-backed companies must pass through to get to an IPO.

Without doubt, IPOs are glamorous and generally yield the biggest returns for the pre-IPO investors, but in the long run, they're not always satisfactory for the entrepreneurs and the management team, for a variety of reasons. Granted, many entrepreneurs such as Bill Gates (Microsoft), Larry Ellison (Oracle), Robert Noyce and Gordon Moore (Intel), Bernie Marcus and Arthur Blank (Home Depot), and Sergey Brin and Larry Page (Google) took their companies public and never looked back, but that is not always the case.

Joey Crugnale took his small chain of brick-oven pizza restaurants, Bertucci's, public in 1991 at \$13 per share. But he was unable to satisfy Wall Street's appetite for ever-increasing sales and earnings. By 1998, Bertucci's stock, which at one time peaked at \$25, was languishing at \$6. Crugnale decided that he wanted to take his company private so that he would be free from the continual scrutiny of investors. He made an offer to buy out the investors for \$8 per

**Figure 10.6****Financing filters: Three Fs to IPO based on 2004–2008 data**

share. He knew that, once he proposed to buy back the company, there was a possibility other companies might bid for it, but he assumed that was very unlikely because he founded the company and he ran it. He soon found out his assumption was wrong. Quite unexpectedly, New England Restaurant Company handily topped his offer with a bid of \$10.50 per share. Crugnale agonized over it but decided not to make a counteroffer. He walked away from Bertucci's a wealthy man at 46, but with a feeling of loss because he no longer was running the business he had built from scratch into a chain of 84 restaurants in 11 states and the District of Columbia. He sometimes regrets taking Bertucci's public instead of keeping the company private and building his personal wealth from the cash flow that his restaurants were generating.

Crugnale has subsequently started Cajun-Mexican, Latin-fish, and Italian restaurants—each one with several outlets—hoping to repeat his success with Bertucci's. So far it has eluded him. But he consoles himself with the knowledge that it took several years before Bertucci's was a hit. However, one thing he knows for sure is that his restaurants will not go public. “I have no investors, I own everything myself, so I don't have to answer to anybody.... There are no restrictions, and I like that freedom.”<sup>37</sup>

## Pros and Cons of an IPO

The following are the upsides of going public.

**Financing.** The principal reason for a public offering is to raise a substantial amount of money that does not have to be repaid. For example, the average amount of money raised by the 299 venture-capital-backed companies that floated IPOs during the period 2004–2008

was \$106 million. The average post-money valuation of the companies was \$523 million. On average, the companies sold 20.3% of their equity at the IPO.

**Follow-On Financing.** A public company can raise more capital by issuing additional stock in a secondary offering.

**Realizing Prior Investments.** Once a company is public, shareholders prior to the IPO know the value of their investment. What's more, their stock is liquid and can be sold on the stock market after the lockup period is over. The **lockup period** is a length of time after the IPO date (usually 180 days) when the prior shareholders are not permitted to sell any of their stock.

**Prestige and Visibility.** A public company is more visible and has more prestige. This sometimes helps the company with marketing and selling its products, outsourcing, hiring employees, and banking.

**Compensation for Employees.** Stock options presently held by employees or granted in the future have a known value.

**Acquiring Other Companies.** A public company can use its shares to acquire other companies.

And here are the downsides of going public.

**High Expenses.** Expenses associated with going public are substantial. They include legal and accounting fees, printing costs, and registration fees, which can range from \$100,000 to \$400,000 or more. Those expenses are not recoverable if the company does not actually go public, which happens to about half the companies that embark on the IPO process and fail to complete it. If the company does go public, the underwriter's commission takes approximately 7% of the money raised.

**Public Fishbowl.** When a company goes public, SEC regulations require that it disclose a great deal of information about itself that until then has been private and known only to insiders. That information includes compensation of officers and directors, employee stock option plans, significant contracts such as lease and consulting agreements, details about operations including business strategies, sales, cost of sales, gross profits, net income, debt, and future plans. The IPO prospectus and other documents that have to be filed with the SEC are in the public domain; they are a gold mine for competitors and others that want to pry into the company's affairs. At the peak of the Internet bubble in November 1999, Cobalt Networks went public; its market niche was inexpensive thin servers for small and mid-sized organizations. Before the IPO, the inexpensive thin-server market hadn't attracted much competition from big companies such as Dell, IBM, Hewlett-Packard, and Sun Microsystems. However, after Cobalt's spectacular IPO, they became aware that the niche was growing rapidly. Ten months later Sun announced it was acquiring Cobalt.

**Short-Term Time Horizon.** After an IPO, shareholders and financial researchers expect ever-increasing performance quarter by quarter. This expectation forces management to focus on maximizing short-term performance rather than on achieving long-term goals.

**Post-IPO Compliance Costs.** To meet SEC regulations, a public company incurs accounting costs it never had when it was private. Those can amount to \$100,000 or more annually.

**Management's Time.** After an IPO, the CEO and the CFO have to spend time on public relations with the research analysts, financial journalists, institutional investors, other stockholders, and market makers—so named because they make a market for the company’s stock. This is a distraction from their main job, which is running the company for optimal performance. Some public companies have executives whose main job is dealing with investor relations.

**Takeover Target.** A public company sometimes becomes the target of an unwelcome takeover by another company.

**Employee Disenchantment.** A rising stock price boosts the morale of employees with stock or stock options, but when it is sinking, it can be demoralizing—especially when an employee’s options go “underwater” (the stock price falls below the options price). Underwater options can make it difficult to motivate and retain key employees.

## The Process of Going Public

Before a company can have an IPO, it must file a registration statement with the SEC to ensure that the prospectus discloses everything the public needs to know before deciding whether to buy its shares. The IPO cannot go forward until the SEC has approved the registration statement. A delay sometimes wreaks havoc on a company’s finances if the IPO window closes suddenly. When the Internet bubble burst, many CEOs who had anticipated using the proceeds from IPOs to finance their companies were unable to float public offerings. Some companies were sold at fire-sale prices, and others shut their doors with huge losses to private investors, especially venture capital firms.

Entrepreneurs with serious aspirations to take their companies public should be farsighted and run their companies from the beginning as if they will have a future IPO. In practice, this means their accounting and law firms should be well-known national firms with lots of clients who have had IPOs. Of course, this is more expensive than starting out with small, local firms, but it will pay off in the long run if there is an IPO or acquisition by a public company.

When a company decides it’s time to go public, the first step is to select an investment banker. This is where professional advisors such as accounting firms, law firms, and venture capitalists are valuable. Studies have shown that companies backed by leading venture capital firms and taken public by leading underwriters have the highest market capitalizations.<sup>38</sup> Leading investment bankers are not shy. They aggressively pursue companies that they would like to take public. Banks compete for a company’s IPO in what’s called a *beauty contest* or *bake-off*. They present their credentials to the company’s CEO and board of directors and place a preliminary valuation on the company using the market-comparable ( $NI \times P/E$ ) method. The company usually selects the underwriter that has had the most success with IPOs in the same industry during the previous few years. If the company selects more than one underwriter, the bank managing the IPO is the *lead underwriter*, and the other banks are called the *syndicate*.

As soon as the underwriter has been selected, the IPO process begins in earnest with an “all-hands” meeting in which the key players—including the lead underwriter, accounting and law firms, and company executives—decide what they will do and when. They then prepare the prospectus with all the information the SEC deems the public needs to know before investing. This document includes details of the offering, what the company plans to do with the proceeds, the company’s financial history and its future strategy, information about company management, and the company’s industry niche, especially its competition. Risks are spelled out in detail. The preliminary prospectus is colloquially called the *red herring* because on the front page is a notice printed in red stating that some information is subject to change—in particular, the price per share and the number of shares to be offered. After filing the preliminary prospectus with the SEC, the company waits for the SEC, the National

Association of Securities Dealers (NASD), and perhaps state securities organizations to review the documents for any omissions or problems that it must correct before the IPO can proceed. A *quiet period* lasts from the moment the company files the preliminary prospectus with the SEC until 25 days after the IPO. During this time, the company is forbidden to distribute any information about itself that is not contained in its prospectus.

Once the preliminary prospectus has been approved, the lead underwriter and the CEO embark on a whirlwind tour of leading financial centers such as New York, San Francisco, Los Angeles, Chicago, Boston, and perhaps overseas centers such as London, Paris, Frankfurt, Hong Kong, and Tokyo. The purpose of the tour, or “road show,” is to promote the upcoming IPO and gauge the level of interest from potential investors. During the road show and immediately after, the underwriter builds a book of investors who say they want to buy the stock. The underwriter and the company meet the day before the IPO and use the order book to set the price of the stock and the size of the offering. The more the stock is oversubscribed, the higher the price will be. The underwriter commits to deliver the agreed-upon proceeds to the company regardless of whether it sells all the stock at the offering price. This commitment creates tension between the company, which is pushing for a high price, and the underwriter, which wants to set a price that will enable it to sell all the stock at the offering price. Once the price had been set, the company distributes stock to the banks in the syndicate, which then allocate it to their clients.

The underwriter hopes the price at the end of the first day’s trading will be about 15% higher than the offering price; this is known as the *first-day pop*. The number of shares in the offering multiplied by the pop is known as *money left on the table*; it is the additional amount of money the company would have received if the offering price had been the same as the first day’s closing price (academic researchers refer to it as *underpricing*). During the Internet bubble, when the public’s appetite for Internet-related stocks was insatiable, first-day pops of more than 100% were not unusual.

If the share price shoots up and stays there, some companies have a secondary public offering and raise more money, usually before the 180-day lockup expires and the market is flooded by insiders selling shares and depressing the price. Sycamore Networks, for example, raised \$284 million at its IPO in October 1999. It had a first-day pop of almost 400%. About five months later, with the stock about 500% above its IPO price, it had a secondary offering and raised about \$1.2 billion.

## A Successful IPO in a Down Market

After a whirlwind day, Tom Adams, the 37-year-old President and CEO of Rosetta Stone, Inc., walked out of the New York Stock Exchange under the four-story, yellow banner bearing his company’s name. On that day, April 16, 2009, Rosetta Stone Inc. (NYSE: RST) completed its first public offering amidst one of the most difficult economic downturns for the IPO market in decades. Adams had just witnessed the “end of the beginning” for Rosetta Stone.<sup>39</sup>

As the company’s name implies, Rosetta Stone teaches customers how to learn other languages. It sells software that relates the words of a foreign language

to familiar objects and activities rather than using the more traditional, word-for-word translation method.

Rosetta Stone’s IPO was only the fourth IPO of 2009. The offering was oversubscribed, partially due to the drought of promising IPOs. The floundering stock market led many companies and investors to shy away from new public offerings. The underwriters set Rosetta’s initial price at \$18 per share, and by the close of the market, RST was trading at \$25.12 per share. The 39.6% increase was the largest such increase for any IPO in 12 months. The IPO grossed \$112 million. From that amount, the company raised \$48 million, after portions for the private equity firms, fees, and commissions are subtracted.<sup>40</sup> Though the closing price indicates that the company could have priced the shares higher, Tom Adams was satisfied by the results.<sup>41</sup>

After the company's founder, Allen Stoltzfus, passed away in 2002, Tom Adams was asked to take over as CEO of this promising family business. Under Adams' leadership, Rosetta Stone grew from \$10 million in annual revenue and 90 employees in 2003 to an

estimated \$246 million in revenue and 965 employees in 2009.<sup>42</sup> This growth, as well as the successful IPO, earned Adams the Ernst & Young 2009 Entrepreneur of the Year Award.<sup>43</sup>

## BFWS Goes Public

Let's return to our example. Two years after raising its second round of venture capital and five years after it was founded, the IPO window for software companies is open, so BFWS decides to go public. It has exceeded its forecasts and has revenue of \$75 million, with net income of \$8.33 million. Revenue is growing at 50% per year. It wants to raise \$50 million gross with an IPO. Based on the prevailing industry P/E ratio of 30, the investment bank values the company post-IPO at \$250 million ( $\$8.33 \text{ million} \times 30$ ). To raise \$50 million, BFWS will have to sell 20% of its equity ( $50/250 \times 100$ ). That leaves the existing stockholders with 80% of the company.

Everyone should be happy with the return on their investments. At the IPO price, the \$4 million of first-round venture capital is worth \$64.8 million ( $16.2 \times \text{return and IRR of } 100\%$ ), and the \$6 million of second-round venture capital is worth \$38.1 million ( $6.3 \times \text{return and IRR of } 152\%$ ). The founders and the original investors hold stock worth \$72.9 million, and the stock option pool is worth \$24.3 million. The original founders and stockholders own 29.1% of BFWS, the venture capitalists 41.1%, the stock option pool 9.7%, and the public 20%. And the company receives the proceeds of \$50 million minus the underwriters' 7% commission; that is \$46.5 million.

## Selling the Company

By far the most common way for investors to realize their investment, if a company has done well and chooses not to go public, is to sell the business to another company. A company is usually bought by a bigger company for strategic reasons, such as when a big pharmaceutical company buys out a young biotech company that has developed a promising drug but lacks the resources and experience to take it through the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval process or to market it, once it receives FDA approval.

## A Strategic Acquisition: LowerMyBills.com

Matt Coffin started LowerMyBills.com in 1999. His vision was to provide consumers with a free, one-stop Internet destination to obtain better deals on all their recurring monthly expenses, including mortgages, utilities, automobile loans, insurance, and credit cards. LowerMyBills.com attracts customers for mortgage lenders and others by advertising on a wide variety of Websites, including Yahoo!, AOL, and MSN. Consumers who click through on mortgage ads, for example, are taken to the LowerMyBills.com Website, where they enter information relevant to the mortgage approval process. The Website matches this against the lending criteria of the clients of LowerMyBills.com and passes qualifying leads on to several different lenders. The lenders contact the consumer, who can choose the most appropriate offer. LowerMyBills.com is paid for every lead it passes to a lender.

In the last quarter of 2001, LowerMyBills.com posted its first profit. By 2005, it had a leading position in the U.S. market. The company, based in Santa Monica, California, was

financed with \$12 million, first from business angels and then from venture capital firms. Coffin, who still owned 25% of the equity, commented:<sup>44</sup>

*By 2004, I knew personally that I was way in the money, but I also knew that I had 99% of my net worth tied up in the business. Back when the Internet crashed, I had a bunch of friends that had started online companies that had gone up and come down fast. One guy who had turned down an offer for \$700 million went bankrupt a year later.*

*Investment banks were calling me like crazy to say it was time for us to go public. We looked at the possibility of raising additional capital from new investors—recapitalize with new shareholders so that current stakeholders could get some liquidity. There was also the option of selling to a corporate buyer, while staying on in some sort of earn-out arrangement.*

*The team hired an investment bank, gave nine presentations, and within short order had received eight offers from corporate buyers ranging from two to four hundred million dollars. Private equity firms that were interested in a partial buyout were putting forward valuations that averaged half of what the acquirers were offering. This decision was about a lot more than finance.*

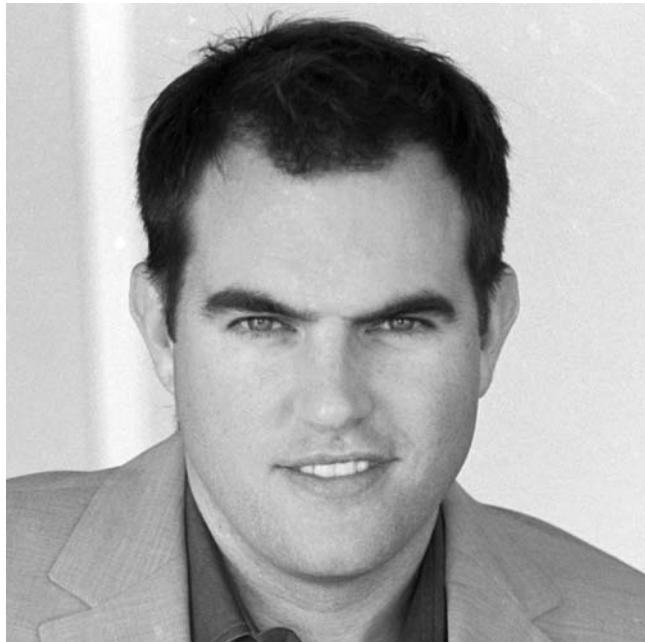
*Every employee owns stock in this business, and they have worked really hard to get us to this point. We did need some sort of harvest, but I also knew that we still had a lot of growth ahead of us, and every option has its own set of risks and potential ramifications.*

Coffin was in the enviable position of having a business that was growing rapidly in an industry segment that was expanding extremely quickly. LowerMyBills.com had 176 employees. On a pro-forma basis, sales in the year ended March 31, 2005, were \$120 million, with operating profit of \$26 million. Clearly, the company could have gone public, but Coffin decided to explore being acquired by a strategic partner. In May 2005, LowerMyBills.com was acquired by Experian, then a member of GUS, plc, the British retail and services group. Here are excerpts from a press release by GUS plc:<sup>45</sup>

#### ***Acquisition of LowerMyBills.com by Experian***

*GUS plc, the retail and business services group, today [May 5, 2005] announces that Experian has acquired 100% of the share capital of LowerMyBills.com, a leading online generator of mortgage and other loan application leads in the United States. LowerMyBills.com is complementary to Experian's existing direct-to-consumer activities and operates in large, fast-growing markets. The purchase price is \$330 million, plus a maximum performance-related earn-out of \$50 million over the next two years. Further strong growth in sales and profit is expected in the current financial year and beyond. The acquisition is being funded from GUS' existing banking facilities. The acquisition is expected comfortably to exceed GUS' financial target of generating a double-digit post-tax return on investment over time.*

*Experian is establishing leading positions in various markets in connecting consumers with companies via the Internet. Its strategy is to offer a wide range of products that assist consumers in managing the financial aspects of key life events such as moving house or buying a car. Experian enables consumers to find financial products and services that best suit their needs, while helping companies to find new customers quickly and effectively. As well as LowerMyBills.com, the newly-formed Experian Interactive operation includes Consumer Direct (selling credit reports, scores, and monitoring products to consumers) and MetaReward and Affiliate Fuel (both of which generate online leads for clients).*



Courtesy Matt Coffin

*This acquisition is attractive because:*

*LowerMyBills.com operates in large, fast-growing markets. More than 20 million American households take out a new mortgage each year. In 2004, home lenders spent \$22 billion on acquiring customers, an amount which has grown by over one-third in the last five years. Of the \$22bn, about \$1 billion is currently spent online and this is growing by about 30% a year. For example, Experian estimates that the percentage of mortgages originated online will treble between 2003 and 2008.*

*LowerMyBills.com has a strong market position. LowerMyBills.com is the most visited home loan service on the Internet. In a highly fragmented market, it is one of only two players of scale with its online leads generating more loans than any individual lending institution. It has strong relationships with more than 400 lenders, including five of the top ten mortgage providers in the United States.*

*Over time, LowerMyBills.com will benefit from the skills, expertise, and client relationships within Experian:*

*Consumer Direct, MetaReward, and LowerMyBills.com all work in the same Internet space and can share expertise and traffic. Combined, these businesses have more than 29 million visitors to their Websites each month; and there are also benefits of LowerMyBills.com working more closely with Experian's Credit business. The introduction of Experian's modeling and analytical capabilities will allow it to improve the quality of leads passed to lenders. Experian will also be able to sell LowerMyBills.com's services to its existing financial services clients, where it has strong relationships.*

*Don Robert, Chief Executive Officer of Experian, commented:*

*"This acquisition represents a step-change in building Experian's direct-to-consumer activities. With LowerMyBills.com, we will now assist consumers in making the most cost-effective financial services decisions, while also providing our lender clients with high-quality leads for new borrowers. The strategic fit could not be better and we are delighted to welcome the talented people of LowerMyBills.com to Experian."*

## Why Be Acquired?

The acquisition of LowerMyBills.com by Experian is a very good example of what the seller and the acquirer are seeking from a strategic acquisition. The following are the advantages and disadvantages of an acquisition from the perspective of the seller.

**Management.** By selling the company rather than going public, the managers can stay focused on what they do best—continuing to build the company—rather than having to spend a lot of time on public relations with the financial community. Also, they probably will not be as driven by quarter-by-quarter results as they would be if the company were public. For example, LowerMyBills.com will have a relatively small effect on Experian's net income; it can probably focus on rapid sales growth rather than optimizing quarterly profits for the next few years.

**Founder and CEO.** Selling a company the entrepreneur has built from nothing into a thriving enterprise can be traumatic. Edward Marram (co-author of Chapter 14 of this book) sold his company, GeoCenter, in 2005. He said his head told him that it was the right thing to do, but his heart told him not to do it. After all, he was selling a company he started from nothing in 1975 and built into an organization with 1,100 employees. When a company is private, the CEO reports only to a board of directors, but when it is acquired, he or she has to report to a boss; if the acquirer is a big company, that boss may report to a boss. It can be very frustrating for the CEO/founder who has been making all the important decisions to find that his or her ideas have to be approved by a hierarchy before they can be implemented.

**Company.** Experian has very deep pockets; it will be able to provide capital to LowerMyBills.com if it needs it.

**Investors.** Acquisitions are often paid for in cash rather than stock. Thus, investors get cash immediately after the deal is completed, unlike in a public offering, when pre-IPO investors have stock they cannot sell for 180 days, meaning they face the risk that the stock will go down before they can sell it. Of course, if the company is bought with the acquirer's stock instead of cash and if there are restrictions on the sale of the stock, there is still a risk that the stock price will go down before the investors can sell it.

**Entrepreneur and Employee Stock.** If it is a cash transaction, as it was in the LowerMyBills.com acquisition, the entrepreneurs and employees get cash immediately. The potential disadvantage is that they no longer hold stock, so they have no upside potential if the company continues to do well. True, there is usually an *earn-out*, which is additional compensation to be paid in a few years if the company meets targets specified at the time of the acquisition. In the case of LowerMyBills.com, the earn-out is \$50 million compared with \$330 million paid when the acquisition was completed. It is well worth getting the earn-out, but it is only 15.2% more, so it might not be enough to motivate key employees to stay.

**Employment Agreement.** Key employees will have an employment agreement that forbids them to compete with the company for a specific number of years—usually no more than two—if they leave. That will probably be the same agreement they had with the company before it was acquired. However, the CEO and top management will almost certainly be required to sign new noncompete agreements as part of their employment contracts with the acquirer.

**Culture.** Initially, the acquirer will not interfere in the management of the purchased company, but eventually it will probably want to put in its own management system and maybe its own executives in a few key positions. When it does that, there is a risk there will be a clash of cultures.

**Expenses and Commissions.** The expenses and investment banker's commission are substantially lower for an acquisition than for an IPO.

When an entrepreneur accepts money from a financially sophisticated investor such as a business angel or a venture capitalist, there has to be a future harvest when the investment can be realized. Generally, that harvest occurs when the company is acquired; occasionally, it happens when the company goes public. The harvest is primarily for the investors rather than the entrepreneurs. If entrepreneurs are not careful, they can give would-be investors the impression that they themselves are planning to exit the company at the harvest. That is not what professional investors like to hear. They want to invest in entrepreneurs whose vision is to build a business and continue building it after the harvest, not in entrepreneurs who are in it to get rich quick. Remember that Bill Gates made almost all his huge fortune by the appreciation of Microsoft's stock after its IPO; so did Microsoft employees and investors who held onto their stock for many years after the IPO.

After a long negotiation between a Boston area entrepreneur and a venture capitalist for seed-stage financing of a medical device company, the venture capitalist asked the entrepreneur, "Where do you personally want to be in 10 years' time?" The entrepreneur replied that he

## CONCLUSION

hoped he would have built a \$200 million company that was the leader in its market niche and that he would still be the CEO. The venture capitalist immediately shook the entrepreneur's hand and said, "You have your money." The entrepreneur was very surprised because it seemed to him that the venture capitalist already knew about how big the company might become if things went well, so he asked what triggered the spontaneous decision to invest. The venture capitalist replied, "If you had said, 'retired to a house on the beach in Maine,' we would not have invested. We want entrepreneurs who are focused on building businesses for the long haul, rather than short-term personal wealth." The venture capitalist added, "Congratulations, you have just completed the most difficult selling job you will ever do. You have convinced a venture capitalist to invest in a seed-stage company."



## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

Reflection Point	Your Thoughts ...
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>How can you bootstrap your venture? What services can you get for free or at reduced rates? What equipment can you lease or buy used?</li> <li>In the last chapter, you created a funding strategy. Now think about how you will gain access to angels and venture capitalists. Who can make introductions on your behalf?</li> <li>What valuation method makes the most sense for your company? What comparable companies can you refer to as you prepare your valuation?</li> <li>Imagine your harvest. What companies might likely acquire you? How can you prepare for that future acquisition?</li> <li>Is there a possibility that your company could go public (high-growth industry)? What do you need to do to prepare for that?</li> </ol>	



## WEB EXERCISE

Identify several companies that you can use as comparables in a valuation. What P/E ratios currently prevail across the companies? Can you explain the variance in P/Es? Which comparable company is yours most similar to? Where does its P/E fall in the range? Compute a valuation for your firm. What adjustments should you make?

## NOTES

<sup>1</sup> Gross, Daniel. *BigBelly: A Solar Powered Garbage Solution?* Newsweek Web Exclusive. September 10, 2009. [www.newsweek.com/id/215120](http://www.newsweek.com/id/215120).

<sup>2</sup> Cummings Properties works with local colleges and universities to promote entrepreneurship. Cummings helps sponsor several local business plan competitions and also provides special rate packages for new businesses growing out of college programs. The following site has links to colleges with Cummings Properties sponsorship programs: [www.cummings.com/how\\_to\\_lease\\_space.htm#entrep](http://www.cummings.com/how_to_lease_space.htm#entrep).

<sup>3</sup> Be sure to review the SBA options carefully because so many exist. The majority of loan guarantees fall within the 7(a) classification. These loans can be used for a wide variety of reasons, and the SBA will guarantee up to 85% of the loan or \$1.5 million. Additional options exist if the capital will be used to improve your building or to fund working capital or if you fit certain sociological criteria. [www.sba.gov/financialassistance/borrowers/guaranteed/index.html](http://www.sba.gov/financialassistance/borrowers/guaranteed/index.html).

<sup>4</sup> This amount fell by 11% in 2008 due to the banking crisis.

<sup>5</sup> Bygrave, W. D., and Reynolds, P. D. Who Finances Startups in the U.S.A.? A Comprehensive Study of Informal Investors, 1999–2003. In S. Zahra, *et al.*, eds., *Frontiers of Entrepreneurship Research 2004*. Wellesley, MA: Babson College, 2004.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid.

<sup>7</sup> Virgin Money US. [www.virginmoneyus.com](http://www.virginmoneyus.com). Although borrowing money from relatives, friends, and business associates is common, very little has been written about how to do it well. Virgin Money US is a pioneering company that has developed a set of products and services to facilitate these transactions (see [www.virginmoneyus.com](http://www.virginmoneyus.com)). Based in Waltham, Massachusetts, the company manages loans between relatives, friends,

and other private parties in over 45 U.S. states and offers information online you can use to get financing quickly. Generally, the process works like this:

1. Identify a lender and agree on financing terms, such as loan amount, interest rate, and term.
2. Formalize the loan with a legally binding document, such as a promissory note.
3. Create a system for repayment that is affordable for you and reassures your lender that the loan will eventually be repaid.

Virgin Money has found a way to keep private loans on track by restructuring them if your business goes through difficult times along the way. Tracking the payments during a restructuring is critical in order to deduct the interest as a business expense. The company can also help you develop a credit rating for your business by reporting the performance of private loans to credit bureaus. By structuring your private financing in a businesslike manner, you will be able to demonstrate to your investors that you are serious about your endeavor.

<sup>8</sup> Sohl, Jeffrey. *The Angel Investor Market in 2008: A Down Year in Investment Dollars but Not in Deals*. Center for Venture Research. March 26, 2009. [www.wsbe.unh.edu/files/2008\\_Analysis\\_Report\\_Final.pdf](http://www.wsbe.unh.edu/files/2008_Analysis_Report_Final.pdf). National Venture Capital Association/Pricewaterhouse Coopers. *MoneyTree Report™*. October 20, 2009. [www.nvca.org/index.php?option=com\\_docman&task=doc\\_download&gid=496&Itemid=93](http://www.nvca.org/index.php?option=com_docman&task=doc_download&gid=496&Itemid=93).

<sup>9</sup> Wainwright, F. *Note on Angel Investing*. Case # 5 001. Hanover, NH: Tuck School of Business at Dartmouth, Center for Private Equity and Entrepreneurship. 2005.

<sup>10</sup> Excerpted from *The Making Of The Color Purple*, *Business Week*. November 21, 2005. pp. 105–112.

- <sup>11</sup> Seitz, Patrick. What's a Dream Team's DNA? Businesses Could Learn Some Team Dynamics from Broadway, Scientists. *Investor's Business Daily*. June 6, 2005.
- <sup>12</sup> [www.playbill.com/news/article/114543-Broadways-The-Color-Purple-Will-Close-Feb24](http://www.playbill.com/news/article/114543-Broadways-The-Color-Purple-Will-Close-Feb24).
- <sup>13</sup> As of the writing of this book, a comprehensive list of angel groups can be found at [www.inc.com/articles/2001/09/23461.html](http://www.inc.com/articles/2001/09/23461.html).
- <sup>14</sup> <http://activecapital.org>.
- <sup>15</sup> Cited in David R. Evanson and Art Berof. Heaven Sent: Seeking an Angel Investor? Here's How to Find a Match Made in Heaven. *Entrepreneur*. January 1998.
- <sup>16</sup> [www.failuremag.com/index.php/site/print/steve\\_wozniak\\_interview](http://www.failuremag.com/index.php/site/print/steve_wozniak_interview).
- <sup>17</sup> [www.sec.gov/info/smallbus/qasbsec.htm](http://www.sec.gov/info/smallbus/qasbsec.htm). Section 6.
- <sup>18</sup> Wainwright, F. *Note on Angel Investing*. Case #5 001. Hanover, NH: Tuck School of Business at Dartmouth, Center for Private Equity and Entrepreneurship. 2005.
- <sup>19</sup> *Venture Support Systems Project: Angel Investors*. Release 1.1. Cambridge, MA: MIT Entrepreneurship Center. February 2000.
- <sup>20</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>21</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>22</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>23</sup> *NVCA Yearbook 2009*.
- <sup>24</sup> [www.lottery.state.mn.us/qanda.html#0](http://www.lottery.state.mn.us/qanda.html#0).
- <sup>25</sup> *NVCA Yearbook 2009*.
- <sup>26</sup> Baccher, Jagdeep. Venture Capitalists' Investment Criteria in Technology-Based New Ventures. Dissertation. University of Waterloo. 2000.
- <sup>27</sup> [www.siliconbeat.com/entries/2004/11/13/qa\\_with\\_kleiner\\_perkins\\_caufield\\_byers.html](http://www.siliconbeat.com/entries/2004/11/13/qa_with_kleiner_perkins_caufield_byers.html).
- <sup>28</sup> Bygrave, W. D., Johnstone, G., Lewis, J., and Ullman, R. Venture Capitalists' Criteria for Selecting High-Tech Investments: Prescriptive Wisdom Compared with Actuality. *Frontiers of Entrepreneurship Research* 1998. Wellesley, MA: Babson College, 1998. [www.babson.edu/entrep/fer/papers98/XX/XX\\_A/XX\\_A.html](http://www.babson.edu/entrep/fer/papers98/XX/XX_A/XX_A.html).
- <sup>29</sup> [www.ventureexpert.com/VxComponent/vxhelp/VentureXpert\\_Fact\\_Sheet.pdf](http://www.ventureexpert.com/VxComponent/vxhelp/VentureXpert_Fact_Sheet.pdf).
- <sup>30</sup> Rosenstein, J., Bruno, A. V., Bygrave, W. D., and Taylor, N. T. CEO Appraisal of Their Boards in Venture Capital Portfolios. *Journal of Business Venturing*, 8(2): 99–113. 1993.
- <sup>31</sup> [www.siliconbeat.com/entries/2004/11/13/qa\\_with\\_kleiner\\_perkins\\_caufield\\_byers.html](http://www.siliconbeat.com/entries/2004/11/13/qa_with_kleiner_perkins_caufield_byers.html).
- <sup>32</sup> Rosenstein, J., Bruno, A. V., Bygrave, W. D., and Taylor, N. T. How Much Do CEOs Value the Advice of Venture Capitalists on Their Boards? *Frontiers of Entrepreneurship Research*, 1990. Wellesley, MA: Babson College. 1990. Bygrave, W. D., Marram, E., and Scherzer, T. *Boards of Directors of Venture-Capital-Backed Companies*. Presentation at Babson-Kauffman Entrepreneurship Research Conference, Boulder, Colorado. June 2002. Summary published in *Frontiers of Entrepreneurship* 2002. Wellesley, MA: Babson College, 2002.
- <sup>33</sup> Bygrave, W. D., Johnstone, G., Lewis, J., and Ullman, R. Venture Capitalists' Criteria for Selecting High-Tech Investments: Prescriptive Wisdom Compared with Actuality. *Frontiers of Entrepreneurship Research* 1998. Wellesley, MA: Babson College, 1998. [www.babson.edu/entrep/fer/papers98/XX/XX\\_A/XX\\_A.html](http://www.babson.edu/entrep/fer/papers98/XX/XX_A/XX_A.html).
- <sup>34</sup> [www.netpreneur.org/funding/anatomy\\_term\\_sheet.pdf](http://www.netpreneur.org/funding/anatomy_term_sheet.pdf).
- <sup>35</sup> In a firm commitment IPO, an underwriter guarantees to raise a certain amount of money for a company; in contrast, with a best efforts offering, an underwriter does its best to sell as many of the shares as it can at the offering price. Firm commitment offerings are far superior to best efforts offerings. All IPOs that are listed on the NASDAQ,

- the New York Stock Exchange, and the American Stock Exchange are firm commitment offerings. The statistics given in this book refer to firm commitment offerings.
- <sup>36</sup> McGinn, Daniel. Reinventing Mr. Bertucci. January 18, 2004. [www.boston.com/news/globe/magazine/articles/2004/01/18/reinventing\\_mr\\_bertucci?mode=PF](http://www.boston.com/news/globe/magazine/articles/2004/01/18/reinventing_mr_bertucci?mode=PF).
- <sup>37</sup> Bygrave, W. D., and Timmons, J. *Venture Capital at the Crossroads*. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press. 1992.
- <sup>38</sup> [www.rosettastone.com/global/about](http://www.rosettastone.com/global/about).
- <sup>39</sup> Wahba, Phil. *Rosetta Stone Ends Up 40 Percent, Best Debut in a Year*. Reuters News. April 16, 2009.
- <sup>40</sup> Kolodny, Lora. Going Public in the Throes of a Recession. *The New York Times*. June 30, 2009.
- <sup>41</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>42</sup> CapitalIQ. *Rosetta Stone, Inc. Public Company Profile*. Standard & Poor's. 2009.
- <sup>43</sup> Leiber, Nick. Meet the Entrepreneurs of the Year. BusinessWeek.com. November 16, 2009. [www.businessweek.com/smallbiz/content/nov2009/sb20091116\\_077429.htm](http://www.businessweek.com/smallbiz/content/nov2009/sb20091116_077429.htm).
- <sup>44</sup> Matt Coffin. *143-T06A-U*. Wellesley, MA: Babson College. 2006.
- <sup>45</sup> Excerpted from [www.experianplc.com/en/news/company-news/2005/05-05-2005.aspx](http://www.experianplc.com/en/news/company-news/2005/05-05-2005.aspx).

**CASE****BladeLogic**

BladeLogic, a high flier in the large and growing market of data center automation software, had reached a critical juncture. The company, which had already garnered two rounds of venture funding and closed deals with dozens of blue-chip firms, appeared to be headed in the right direction. Revenues, however, were becoming harder to forecast.

As Chief Executive Officer (CEO), Dev Ittycheria's leadership position was entirely based on his ability to execute in a tough, high-stakes environment. Monthly board meetings were becoming increasingly tense; BladeLogic was becoming vulnerable to missing its revenue forecasts unless one or two "big" deals came through at the end of each quarter.

With less than 12 months of cash left at the firm's current burn rate, Dev knew that they were going to need another round of capital well ahead of schedule. Current investors were in no mood to put more money in at a higher valuation. In fact, BladeLogic was facing the real prospect of a down round.<sup>1</sup> Dev knew they had to get additional capital fast... but how could he secure a new financing round without the participation of existing investors? At what price would the current investors participate?

**Caught in the Frenzy**

Not long ago, first entrants were seen as trailblazers that would open the curtain and set the stage for more established firms. First movers often failed because they were unable to attract the massive resources required to fund their learning curve. All of that changed during the Internet boom in the late 1990s. As the dot-com gold rush reached a feverish pace, investors sought "first-mover advantage" by placing huge bets on "high-concept" startups. Business fundamentals (such as revenues and profitability) were suddenly less critical than the startup's potential reach into the cyberspace. A new lexicon emerged. Valuations were driven by "sticky sites" and "killer apps" that would make money by "monetizing eyeballs with deep and wide e-commerce platforms." The prevailing view was that a leadership position could be purchased by rolling up a broad portfolio of players in the same general market. Investors amassed fortunes as their picks went public, and those initial public offerings (IPOs) made young millionaires of founders and line workers alike. Some, however, were less fortunate.

In 1999, a pair of entrepreneurs began working together when their respective firms were purchased by Breakaway Solutions, a venture-backed "full service provider of strategy, e-business implementation, and application hosting solutions to growing enterprises."<sup>2</sup> Dev Ittycheria was a founder at Applica Corporation, an e-business services provider that also hosted e-commerce and customer-relation management applications. When Breakaway purchased Applica, Dev's equity was converted into approximately 450,000 shares of Breakaway stock, and he became a Senior Vice President in charge of the application hosting business. Vijay Manwani arrived at the company when his systems integrator, Eggrock Partners, was acquired in an all-stock merger transaction valued at nearly \$250 million.

When Breakaway went public in October 1999, Dev and Vijay were vaulted into the ranks of Internet centi-millionaires—on paper, at least. Within less than a year, the party was

This case was prepared by Carl Hedberg under the direction of Professors Jennifer Walske and Andrew Zacharakis. © Copyright Babson College. Funding provided by the John H. Muller Chair in Entrepreneurship. All rights reserved.

<sup>1</sup> Down round: This is common jargon within venture capital. It refers to an investment round wherein investors value a company at a lower price per share than was garnered in the prior investment round.

<sup>2</sup> E-commerce businesses on the Internet were enabled by third-party networked computer sites known as "hosts." As an application service provider (ASP), Breakaway relied on these hosting firms as their technology backbone.

over; Breakaway was headed for bankruptcy.<sup>3</sup> As Dev would later note, “the only thing worse than being poor, is being poor again . . .”

## Entrepreneurs in Residence

Well before the final dissolution of Breakaway, Dev and Vijay were separately approached by a pair of prominent venture capitalists with offers to work as entrepreneurs in residence (EIRs).<sup>4</sup> Dev, an engineering major from Rutgers University, said that, while corporate employment was still an option, he had seen enough of that world:

*After graduation, I had worked in sales and completed a management training program at Bell Labs [later AT&T]. After a time, I realized that advancing in the [corporate] ranks was about conforming to the established system and having the right connections; what you knew was never as important as who you knew. Even after losing everything, I was still committed to an entrepreneurial path. I just didn't want to be a small cog in a wheel, patiently waiting for a promotion. I wanted to make an impact and get on a faster track to wealth creation.*

Dev went to Bessemer Venture Partners in Larchmont, New York, and Vijay joined Battery Ventures, located in Waltham, Massachusetts. Dev was drawn to finding a solution for a significant point of pain he'd experienced at Breakaway:

*As head of the ASP group, I had seen that operating and building a hosting environment was very costly and labor intensive. Eighty to ninety percent of our labor costs were devoted to managing the servers at our 11 data centers. When the business was going well, to some extent we could just hire a lot of bodies to solve those needs. But when the economy was hurting in 2000 and we became very focused on containing costs, then the problem managing servers became excruciating. I had my staff working seven days, 12–18 hours a day—it wasn't possible to hire technical personnel fast enough to support our server infrastructure.*

*The tools that were in the marketplace just weren't designed to manage complex server environments, and we began to devise some homegrown solutions at Breakaway. It then hit me that mainstream corporate America had to be experiencing the same challenges, so there was definitely a need for software that could manage complex computing environments across multiple data centers.*

Dev noted that data center automation was a very evident next step in the evolution of server systems:

*Every server has backup software, monitoring software, virtualization software, and an operating system. The next most common server component that firms like HP, Sun, and IBM will be selling is going to be server automation software. What is interesting from an opportunity point of view is that at every layer in that stack [of server programs], billions of dollars have been made. We could see that this was a huge opportunity.*

Dave Tabors, a General Partner at Battery, agreed:

*In early 2001, we embarked on an in-depth research project in this space. First, we went out and met with the people who ran data centers and got a sense of what was most important to them in terms of problems they wanted to solve. We also spoke with potential vendors who could solve those problems. Once we realized that there was a real market opportunity, we began to look at a number of potential investments.*

<sup>3</sup> Breakaway Solutions filed a voluntary petition for Chapter 11 bankruptcy in September 2001.

<sup>4</sup> An entrepreneur in residence was a short-term post that gave promising entrepreneurs a chance to assess and investigate a range of new venture markets and opportunities. Typically, EIRs focused their efforts on one of three areas: turnarounds of existing portfolio companies, evaluation of potential deals, or investigation of new opportunities.

Based on their experience at Breakaway, Dev and Vijay knew that server management could no longer be addressed by simply increasing manpower. Using an analogy of telephone operators, Dev explained that in the late 1950s AT&T realized that it would have to hire every woman in America as a telephone operator in order to handle forecasted telephone traffic. This realization was the catalyst for AT&T's invention of the automated telephone switch. Similarly, many firms were realizing they could not hire enough systems administrators to keep their servers operating around the clock. Goldman Sachs ex-CTO observed:

*I had 1,500 people in IT working for me. UNIX administrators are expensive, and I would throw money to improve the efficiency and visibility of operational activities.*

At Sony, the VP Operations reiterated the same concern. Heterogeneity introduced even greater complexity to the management and operations of the data center environment:

*We currently have 12 Internet applications at four difference data centers. Understanding what we have in those environments, and using that information to help us consolidate our infrastructure, is a key initiative.*

Meanwhile, Vijay had spent some time and money at Battery investigating a product idea in the collaborative commerce space. When that didn't pan out, he began to focus on opportunities in bioinformatics.<sup>5</sup> While he found that market technically appealing, the market opportunity seemed years away. He was also spending a lot of time looking at data server automation concepts, but when Dev called about doing something in that space, Vijay gritted his teeth:

*This was the space I was least attracted to. Sure, it was very obvious from a business perspective that it was the most lucrative of anything I was working on, but it was a very tough customer mix to deal with. The technical data center administrators, who we call "admins," can be very difficult to sell to.*

*Windows admins are very different from UNIX admins. The Windows admins are more point and click, and they are not as technical as the UNIX ones. On one end of the spectrum, there are the generalists who just want to get the job done, and on the other end, there are the experts who want to be the architects. For any entrant to win in that space, their solution would have to resonate with that entire complex and divided community. It was a huge challenge.*

As their concept came together, they invited two more Breakaway veterans to join the team. Vance Loiselle had been with Vijay at Eggrock as the head of their ASP Division, and at Breakaway, he'd served as the Managing Director of ASP Business Operations. Prior to those adventures, he'd developed one of the first online trading products and was named in two patents for the first XML-based messaging platform in the travel industry. The fourth partner, Steven Kokinos, had been the founder of WebYes, an Internet application outsourcing and deployment company that provided the electronic software distribution platform for all of Sun Microsystems software products, including Java. WebYes had been acquired by Breakaway in May 1999.

Vijay had developed a keen understanding of the possibilities in server management:

*We were fortunate that almost anyone and everyone in the space came by [Battery Ventures] for funding. We looked at all their architectures and were able to improve our understanding of what the best possible architecture might be. Essentially, each one had a little aspect of the secret sauce, and we had the practical experience to determine whether their concept was an academic solution or a practical solution.*

---

<sup>5</sup> Bioinformatics and computational biology involved the use of techniques including applied mathematics, informatics, statistics, computer science, artificial intelligence, chemistry, and biochemistry to solve biological problems, usually on the molecular level. (Source: wikipedia.com.)

Through their discussion with many other technology ventures, BladeLogic identified one technology that would allow it to hit the ground running. Dave Tabors said that Battery had been eying the target for quite some time:

*Network Shell was a company on the West Coast with an innovative product that customers<sup>6</sup> were already buying—but it lacked the management team and industry expertise to scale the business. When we saw a demo of its product, we were excited and saw the tremendous potential of that IP [intellectual property] as a starting point for BladeLogic.*

*After many phone calls and meetings, we found there was a lot of synergy between the different parties. We decided that, if we combined the power of the Network Shell technology with a strong management team—along with the support of top venture capital firms with experience in this market—we'd have a winning formula.*

In addition, as Vijay explained, it worked with their vision for capturing market share:

*We knew that everyone had a bias from one platform to the other, and from a cross-platform perspective, we knew that one plus one equals three. We also knew that, if we could build a product that appealed to both novices and experts, we'd have a home run.*

*The Network Shell application appealed to experts, so what we needed to add was an application that appealed to novices. The combination would allow us to sell low and sell high—from the admins all the way up to the senior managers who would ultimately write the check.*

The team incorporated as BladeLogic in July 2001. Dev, a passionate leader and a skillful negotiator, would serve as CEO. As Chief Technology Officer (CTO), Vijay would be responsible for translating the market opportunity into compelling technology solutions.<sup>7</sup> Vance, a jack of all trades, would be responsible for driving their marketing strategy, product positioning, and marketing communications activities. Steven, who had a lot of experience around hosting and a solid understanding of how admins operate, would manage their sales and business development efforts. Based on a proposed purchase of Network Shell, the team invited Network Shell's founder, Thomas Kraus, to serve as BladeLogic's chief product evangelist.<sup>8</sup> The new management team created a 15-page PowerPoint slide presentation that Dev and Vijay presented to venture capitalists. They forecasted revenue of \$250,000 in 2001, growing to \$3 million by 2002. They further showed that their market, the change and configuration management segment, was large and growing. IDC projected it to grow from \$1.15 billion in 2002 to \$2.7 billion by 2003, with target customers including Cisco, e-Trade, KPMG, and Fidelity Investments. For more information on BladeLogic's market segment, see Exhibit 10.1.

With the economy continuing to weaken and a soft equities market for high-technology stocks (see Exhibit 10.2), the team quickly moved forward to secure the seed capital they needed to pursue their aggressive plan.

## Raising Venture Capital

Dev said that after his experience at Breakaway, he wanted to preserve as much founders' equity as possible:

*We were planning to raise smaller amounts of capital from multiple investors and through multiple rounds. As an entrepreneur, I didn't want to put all my eggs in one basket. If our*

---

<sup>6</sup> Network Shell customers included Alliance Capital, AT&T Wireless, Bank of New York, BellSouth, Fleet Bank, Fidelity Investments, Global Crossing, ING Advisors Network, Lucas Films, Microsoft, Qwest, and RSA Security.

<sup>7</sup> Vijay described their technology goal as enabling companies to more easily provision, configure, and manage change across their disparate systems and application infrastructure.

<sup>8</sup> Thomas had over 18 years of experience working in the software industry, including 4 spent overseas in Germany at the then fledgling UNIX development group of Siemens. Before founding Network Shell, Thomas served as architect and author of the administration portion of Enlighten DSM, the 1996 winner of *UNIX Review* magazine's "Outstanding Product of the Year" award for system administration.

*relationship with one of our investors went awry, I wanted other investors to balance the equation. I also knew that as long as we could meet our projections, we could increase our valuation at each round. This would prevent a high level of dilution, but the risk was that we could run short of cash if funding didn't come through on time or if we missed our [revenue] numbers.*

<b>EXHIBIT 10.1 Change and configuration customer segment (\$1.2B)</b>				
<b>Segment</b>	<b>Potential Customers</b>	<b>Number of Customers</b>	<b>Deal Size</b>	<b>Total</b>
Financial Services	Schwab, Fidelity	300	\$300K	\$90 M
Large IT	Cisco, e-Trade	3,000	\$300K	\$900M
Top 100 ASPs	Exodus, Qwest	100	\$500K	\$50M
IT Outsourcers	EDS, KPMG	100	\$500k	\$50k
VARs, Sis	Compucom, Advisix	400	\$150k	\$60M

*Source:* BladeLogic & IDC.



*Source:* MSN.money.  
([http://moneycentral.msn.com/detail/stock\\_quote?Symbol=%24COMPX&FormatAs=Index](http://moneycentral.msn.com/detail/stock_quote?Symbol=%24COMPX&FormatAs=Index)).

Since BladeLogic had no revenue or tangible assets, comparables were used to assess the company's valuation. Although fewer IT startups were being funded, comparable deals pointed to a pre-money valuation of \$6 million. Dev also had to negotiate the size of the option pool, which is essential in order to attract future employees, with investors:

*In addition to founder's stock, there is an option pool of stock that is used to attract and compensate key employees. The amount of options we can offer is based on the size of that option pool. Everyone at the table—the investors and founders—want to see a large option pool. The tug-of-war is over which side of the table will provide them and in what amount.*

On 5th September in 2001, BladeLogic closed on \$6 million in funding from Battery and Bessemer on a post-money valuation of \$12 million.<sup>9</sup> Dave Tabors explained that the deal was a bit unusual for Battery:

*We typically prefer to invest alone in seed-stage funding. We generally syndicate our investments only when capital requirements are high or when a small venture firm has so much expertise that it's beneficial to have them in as a co-investor. We'll co-invest in early rounds if the management team insists on two investors, which is what occurred with BladeLogic.*

Six days after the closing, the terrorist attacks sent worldwide financial markets into a tailspin. Dev described the difficult environment:

*Even before 9–11, the bubble had burst. People had lost a ton of money, and venture capitalists were focusing on keeping their current portfolio companies afloat. In the marketplace, a lot of big firms had been burnt by dot-coms, and now they were very cautious about doing business with startups of any sort. The terrorist attacks shut everything down for awhile. I am sure that if we had not closed before then, the investors would have taken a “wait and see” position.*

Dev added that they were also confronting the stark reality that data center automation was not exactly an obscure market opportunity:

*Nearly all the major tech firms were looking at the same market opportunity, including Sun Microsystems, Hewlett-Packard, Computer Associates, and Veritas. We were going head-to-head with 12 different companies addressing data center management software. IBM's chief investment officer publicly stated that IBM was going to invest \$10 billion to address this problem. Even with a first-mover advantage in this space, one seasoned venture capitalist told me that, based on just the competition alone, that we had “no chance.”*

Vijay's team adopted an iterative approach to development. According to Dev:

*Most people who came at this problem had experience in data centers as superintelligent software geeks. They made a fatal mistake by presuming that they had the answer, and now it was just an issue of bringing it to market. In contrast, we built something fast, took it to market, got feedback, and made modifications. It was a very market-driven, iterative development process. By getting feedback from admins who were naturally skeptical about a one-for-all solution, we were able to hone the product much more quickly than were firms that had spent 18 months in the lab.*

In early 2002, that strategy paid off when they secured a \$500,000 order from Sprint. Dev explained:

*The deal at Sprint revolved around us having the most innovative technology. They said, “We don't like anything we see out there, but we can bet on [the BladeLogic technology] and build something on it.” They had looked at a lot of solutions but chose us because we were the only player that wasn't simply repackaging older technology.*

By March, the company had a client list of over 50 *Fortune* 500 companies, including a recent deal with Priceline. Dave Tabors was impressed by the relative speed at which traditionally cautious and conservative multinationals were adopting the new technology:

*From the time BladeLogic first met a potential client to the time they closed the deal and the product was deployed at the customer's site was less than 60 days. That was quite a feat in a market that typically has a six-month deal cycle.*

---

<sup>9</sup> The Series A investment was convertible redeemable preferred stock, and although Battery Ventures' investment was slightly less than Bessemer's (\$2.88 million versus \$3.12 million), Battery was the designated lead investor.

With BladeLogic's dual suite of software (see Exhibit 10.3) scoring consistent wins with an A-list of clients, Dev sought more fuel for the fire.

## The Series B

While overall IT spending was still down, BladeLogic continued to make encouraging headway with large companies from several industries, including financial services, travel, e-business, and technology. Dev could see that it was a perfect time to raise the next round:

*We had good momentum where people were saying this is a pretty cool area, and there weren't many companies our size talking to companies like Priceline, GE, and Sprint. I was sure that our current investors would be happy to re-up, but I also wanted to cultivate other possibilities.*

Dev met with Ullas Naik, the Managing Director at Globespan Capital Partners in Boston and Palo Alto. Globespan's investment philosophy was to invest half of its fund in early-stage investments and half its fund in later-stage investments. Given Ullas' expertise in data center-related IT products, Ullas assured Dev that he was interested in participating:

*I was not as intrigued with systems management in general, especially in 2002. IT infrastructure in 2002 was just a difficult space to get really comfortable with. However, I was fascinated with Dev and Vijay. The founding team was dynamic, they had a vision, and they certainly had a chip on their shoulder... all of the things you see in entrepreneurs who end up building big enterprises.*

### EXHIBIT 10.3 BladeLogic Product Descriptions

*BladeLogic offers two modules in its software suite:*

**BladeLogic Network Shell** is a command-line product that gives system administrators distributed cross-platform access to servers across the enterprise. With Network Shell, administrators have seamless and secure access to all local and remote servers from one central console, enabling them to transfer and manipulate files, patches, and data on multiple servers; stop and start processes remotely; and execute commands or entire shell scripts on multiple systems in parallel.

**BladeLogic Configuration Manager** is a robust GUI-based complement to BladeLogic Network Shell that delivers the power and flexibility of the command-line in a rich user interface for all levels of users, making it easy to securely provision and manage servers running various applications across multiple operating systems. Whether distributing new content, analyzing live data, or resolving a problem, this tool offers real-time inventory and analysis of all software assets along with software deployment and application management to ensure consistency, availability, and security across all servers.

Using this software, systems administrators can manage disparate and distributed servers using one central console to address three key areas of data center operations:

**Remote administration:** To access, control, and update hundreds of UNIX, NT, or Linux servers individually or simultaneously to improve staff productivity;

**Compliance management:** To track, compare, identify, and fix configuration objects — files, patches, packages, registry settings, and other detailed server objects — in a closed-loop process to reduce security breaches and other system vulnerabilities;

**Application management:** To provision, configure, and roll back updates to complex distributed applications to increase responsiveness and reduce mean-time-to-repair.

**Pricing:** The software ranges from \$300 to \$900 per server, depending on the module.

Dev let Battery and Bessemer know that another venture capitalist was waiting in the wings. The current investors, in response to the competition, agreed to fund the \$5 million Series B, which closed in late May 2002, with a share price of 75 cents. Battery led the round with a \$2.25 million investment. Bessemer invested \$1.375 million, and select individuals contributed the balance of the round. For more information on the Series A and B investment rounds, see Exhibit 10.4.

#### EXHIBIT 10.4 BladeLogic capitalization table

##### Series A (9/2001)

Shares Issued	12,000,000
Shares Outstanding	24,000,000
Price/Share (\$)	\$0.50
Round Amount	\$6,000,000
Post Valuation	\$12,000,000

Number of  
Shares All  
Rounds

Investors	Capital	Shares	Number of Shares All Rounds	% Pref. Stock
Founders	\$0	12,000,000	12,000,000	50%
Battery Investment Partners	\$2,880,000	5,760,000	5,760,000	24%
Bessemer Venture Partners	<u>\$3,120,000</u>	<u>6,240,000</u>	<u>6,240,000</u>	<u>26%</u>
Total Invested per Round	\$6,000,000	24,000,000	24,000,000	100%
Total Shares Outstanding	24,000,000			

##### Series B (5/2002)

Shares Issued	6,666,666
Price/Share (\$)	\$0.75
Round Amount	\$5,000,000
Post Valuation	\$23,000,000

Number of  
Shares All  
Rounds

Investors	Capital	Shares	Number of Shares All Rounds	% Pref. Stock
Founders	\$0	-	12,000,000	39%
Battery Investment Partners	\$2,250,000	3,000,000	8,760,000	29%
Bessemer Venture Partners	\$1,375,000	1,833,333	8,073,333	26%
Other Investors	<u>\$1,375,000</u>	<u>1,833,333</u>	<u>1,833,333</u>	<u>6%</u>
Total Invested per Round	\$5,000,000	6,666,666	30,666,666	100%
Total Shares Outstanding	30,666,666			

Source: VentureXpert.

By the end of the third quarter, BladeLogic had released its Version 4 and was being billed in the press as the leader in the fast-growing server configuration management market. Behind the scenes, however, there were significant challenges.

## Customer Traction Begins to Slow

The Sprint and Priceline deals earlier that year had demonstrated—internally, and to many outside observers—that BladeLogic’s solution had huge potential. Dev spent the first half of 2002 hiring engineers, developers, and salespeople in anticipation of a surge of business. The

VP of Sales at BladeLogic had initiated talks with a wide range of prospects, but the closing rate for his team was far below expectations. Dev had to decide fast whether to support the manager's efforts or let him go:

*Selling to tech people is often a very tough thing to do—especially when it's an automation product. In some ways, it's like trying to sell automated check-out counters to cashiers. They are going to resist because automation is all about reducing head count. Our sales staff was working a lot of good leads, but it was hard to tell with admins—because they love technology so much—whether they were just playing around or intended to buy. You can spend months and months trying to make a sale with these people.*

*I was inclined to give our sales VP a bit more time, but there were some definitely tense board conversations—even though we were still making progress. It wasn't any sort of disaster; it just wasn't ramping up as quickly as we had planned.*

With revenue forecasts becoming more precarious, Dev could see that they were “going to be in trouble by the second or third quarter of 2003.” BladeLogic was going to have to raise additional capital quickly in order to stay within a 12-month comfort zone for cash. And yet venture capitalists were still recovering from the Internet boom and then bust.

## A Tight Spot

If Dev didn’t raise capital, he might be forced to reduce the company’s cash burn by cutting back the workforce and infrastructure he’d just put in place. That was not the sort of message he wanted to convey at a time when buyers were already skittish about working with startups. His venture investors were clearly in no mood for a C round so soon after the A and B rounds; if they did invest, it would be on terms that would likely run counter to Dev’s equity preservation goals. And Dev knew they had to determine why their selling strategy wasn’t working as well as they had expected. The voice of the venture capitalist that chose not to invest kept haunting him—did he stand “no chance”?

## Presentation Questions

1. Discuss the risks and challenges of building an enterprise-software firm when there are numerous large competitors. What was unique about BladeLogic’s approach to customer engagement?
2. Given the well-articulated customer pain by Goldman Sachs and Sony, why was BladeLogic having trouble closing large deals?
3. Should Dev retain his VP of Sales? What are the risks of replacing his VP of Sales now?
4. What options does Dev have, given BladeLogic’s looming illiquidity? What are the pros and cons of each option?



Siamak Taghaddos, Grasshopper. (Source: Courtesy Siamak Taghaddos)

## DEBT AND OTHER FORMS OF FINANCING

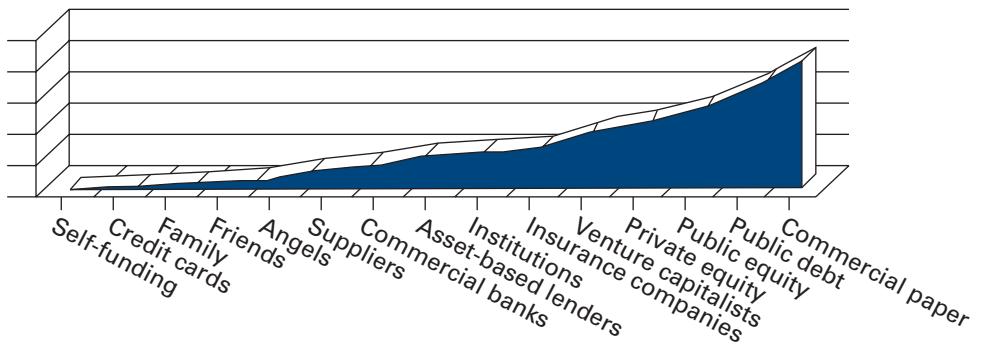
Entrepreneurs at small, growing firms, unlike finance treasurers at most *Fortune* 500 companies, do not have easy access to a variety of inexpensive funding sources. In the entire world, only a handful of very large firms have access to funding sources such as asset-backed debt securitizations, A-1 commercial paper ratings, and below-prime lending rates. Most financial managers of small- to medium-sized firms are constantly concerned about meeting cash-flow obligations to suppliers and employees and maintaining solid financial relationships with creditors and shareholders. Their problems are exacerbated by issues concerning growth, control, and survival. Moreover, the difficulty of attracting adequate funds exists even when firms are growing rapidly and bringing in profits.

This chapter describes various financing options for entrepreneurs and identifies potential financing pitfalls and solutions. We also discuss how these issues are influenced by the type of industry and the life cycle of the firm and how to plan accordingly.

### **Getting Access to Funds—Start with Internal Sources**

Entrepreneurs requiring initial startup capital, funds used for growth, and working capital generally seek funds from *internal* sources. Managers or owners of large, mature firms, in contrast, have access to profits from operations as well as funds from external sources.



**Figure 11.1****Sources of outside funding: Levels of funding and firm maturity**

We distinguish internal from external funds because internal funding sources do not require external analysts or investors to independently appraise the worthiness of the capital investments before releasing funds. External investors and lenders also don't share the entrepreneur's vision, so they may view the potential risk/return trade-off in a different vein and demand a relatively certain return on their investment after the firm has an established financial track record.

Figure 11.1 shows a listing of funding sources and approximately when a firm would use each. In the embryonic stages of a firm's existence, as we've discussed, much of the funding comes from the entrepreneur's own pocket, including personal savings accounts, credit cards, home equity lines, and other assets such as personal computers, fax machines, in-home offices, furniture, and automobiles.

Soon after entrepreneurs begin tapping their personal fund sources, they may also solicit funds from relatives, friends, and banks. Entrepreneurs would generally prefer to use other people's money (OPM) rather than their own because, if their personal investment turns sour, they still have a nest egg to feed themselves and their families. The need to protect a nest egg may be particularly acute if the entrepreneur leaves a viable job to pursue an entrepreneurial dream on a full-time basis. The costs to the entrepreneur in this case include

- The opportunity cost of income from the prior job
- The forgone interest on the initial investment
- The potential difficulty of being rehired by a former employer (or others) if the idea does not succeed

Add to this the embarrassment of having to beg for a new job while paying off old debts, and the prospective entrepreneur quickly realizes that the total cost of engaging in a new venture is very high. Family and friends may volunteer to fund the entrepreneur's project in the early stages and often will do so without a formal repayment schedule or specified interest cost. However, the funds are far from free. Total costs—including nonfinancial indirect costs, such as family pressure, internal monitoring, and strained relations—are probably extremely high. Moreover, family and friends make poor financial intermediaries, since they have limited financial resources, different repayment expectations, and narrow loan diversification. This will contribute to the entrepreneur's desire to get outside funding from a traditional source as soon as possible. The question is, "Where can you go before a bank will give you money?"

## Start with Credit Cards and Home Equity Lines

Entrepreneurs who require an immediate infusion of cash often don't have the luxury of time to await the decision of a prospective equity investor or credit lender. They're prone to tapping their personal credit cards for business purchases or borrowing against a low-interest-bearing

home equity line of credit. According to a Federal Reserve report,<sup>1</sup> at the end of 2008, consumers had personal credit outstanding close to \$2.6 trillion, with approximately one-third applied to revolving credit (credit cards). Nonrevolving credit includes personal credit associated with loans for automobiles and vacations but does not include home equity lines. This credit, which is derived from commercial banks, finance companies, credit unions, and savings institutions, is for personal consumption. Presumably, entrepreneurs have applied some of it to their businesses. Many banks set up credit cards for either personal or business use. And “points” systems that provide credit toward frequent-flyer miles or future purchases may give consumers an economic incentive to maximize their use of credit cards, whether for personal or business purposes. Home equity lines of credit (HELOCs) are another important way in which consumers provide funding for their businesses. In mid-2009, there was over \$600 billion in outstanding HELOCs, according to the Federal Reserve.<sup>2</sup> Several studies have shown that many entrepreneurs use HELOCs to raise capital. For example, in August 2008 a Rasmussen Report found 30% of respondents use home loans for funding. And another study by the Small Business Research Board found 54% of entrepreneurs use home equity.<sup>3</sup>

## Laugh at Your Own Risk

Back in 2000, Adam Lowry and Eric Ryan did not plan on going into the comedy business, but they seemed to make everyone laugh. They both lived in the Bay Area, the Internet start-up capital of the world. Yet potential investors thought they were crazy for trying to start up their company called Method, a household products company that would sell soap and cleaning supplies from environmentally friendly ingredients in cool packaging. They pooled together \$100,000 in personal savings to start. By the spring of 2001, Lowry and Ryan had hired Alastair Dorward as CEO. And they

were \$300,000 in debt, split among the three partners’ credit cards. By this time, the tech-bubble had burst, and all of a sudden venture capitalists were no longer laughing at their idea. In late 2001, the partners received a term sheet for \$1 million. To celebrate, the partners took their investors, lawyers and accountants out to dinner. The three entrepreneurs’ credit cards were all declined. Thank goodness Lowry knew the owner of the restaurant. Lowry said, “We convinced him we were good for it—that the guy over there was about to give us a million bucks.” As of 2009 sales were “north of \$100 million” and the company had 130 products sold in more than 8,000 stores.<sup>4</sup>

## Cash Conversion Cycle

One of the most important considerations in setting up a business is deciding when to pay the bills.

The business operating cycle for a traditional manufacturer begins with the purchase of raw materials and ends with collections from the customer. It includes three key components: the **inventory cycle**, the **accounts receivable cycle**, and the **accounts payable cycle**. The **inventory cycle** begins with the purchase of the raw materials, includes the work-in-process period, and ends with the sale of the finished goods. The **accounts receivable cycle** then begins with the sale and concludes with the collection of the receivable. During this operating cycle, the business generally receives some credit from suppliers.

The **accounts payable cycle** begins with the purchase of the raw materials or finished goods, but it ends with the payment to the supplier. The vast majority of organizations, particularly manufacturing operations, experience a gap between the time when they have to pay suppliers and the time when they receive payment from customers. This gap is known as the **cash conversion cycle (CCC)**. For most companies, the credit provided by suppliers ends long before the accounts receivables are paid. This means that, as companies grow sales levels,

they need to get external financing to fund working capital needs. One of the primary causes of bankruptcy is the inability to finance operations, shutting down potentially successful ventures.

Some companies generate payments from customers before they need to pay their suppliers. Their cash conversion cycle is negative, though from a cash-flow perspective it is very positive. Your industry's typical cash conversion cycle is one of the most important things you should find out about your overall financing scheme. It makes a big difference to your chances for success and growth—if you are fortunate enough to receive payments before providing the service or paying your supplier.

## Negative Cash Conversion Cycle

In 2000, a Babson College sophomore by the name of Siamak Taghaddos set up a new venture, Grasshopper, that provided emerging growth companies with a professional telephone-answering service. Virtually all Taghaddos's sales were generated through an automated system that he created on the Internet. Customers paid upfront monthly fees ranging from \$9.95 to \$39.95 that were charged automatically to their credit cards. Taghaddos paid his own expenses a few weeks later. This negative cash conversion cycle enabled him to grow exponentially with little need for

external capital (since he initially leased the equipment required for the service).

By his senior year, Taghaddos was generating over \$500,000 in revenues and outearned all but a handful of his professors. Two years after his graduation, he had revenues over \$5 million and 20 employees and was named, along with his partner David Hauser, by *Business Week* as one of the top five entrepreneurs in the United States under the age of 25. Though this successful entrepreneur clearly generated the majority of his growth based on unique skill and marketing insight, had he not established a company with a negative cash conversion cycle, it's likely that his meteoric growth would have been constrained due to a severe cash crunch.

## Working Capital: Getting Cash from Receivables and Inventories

The timing of collection of accounts receivable and payment of accounts payable is a key determinant in whether a firm is cash rich or cash poor. For example, an increase in net working capital (that is, current assets minus current liabilities) doesn't necessarily translate into an increase in liquidity. One reason is that increases in net working capital often result from increases in operating assets, net of increases in operating liabilities. These operating assets, such as accounts receivable or inventory, are usually tied up in operations, and firms don't commonly liquidate them (prematurely) to pay bills, typically paying with liquid financial assets, such as cash and marketable securities, instead. Thus, we can use only liquid financial assets to assess a firm's liquidity.

Further, corporate insolvency usually results when the firm fails to service debt obligations or callable liabilities on time. We can estimate corporate liquidity fairly accurately by taking the difference between liquid financial assets and callable liabilities, referred to as the *net liquid balance*. The net liquid balance is actually a part of net working capital. *Net working capital* is easy to calculate in one of two ways:

- Take the difference between current assets and current liabilities (as described earlier), or
- Take the difference between long-term liabilities, including equities, and long-term assets (such as fixed assets).

The first formula is often misinterpreted to be the difference between two liquid components, whereas the second definition suggests that the residual of long-term liabilities minus long-term assets is used to finance current assets, some of which may be liquid. The second definition also enables us to analyze the current assets and liabilities as consisting of both liquid financial/callable components and operating components.

Net working capital is actually the sum of the working capital requirements balance. This suggests that only a part of net working capital is liquid. Clearly, as a small firm grows, current operating assets will increase. If current operating liabilities don't increase at the same rate as the increase in current operating assets (which is true when an entrepreneur pays suppliers before receiving payment from customers), then the entrepreneur will find that the firm's net liquid balance will decrease (assuming the firm does not increase its long-term funding arrangements). This may be true even though the firm is generating paper profits. As long as the increase in working capital requirements *exceeds* the increase in profits, then the firm will find itself reducing its liquidity levels.

This highlights one of the fundamental weaknesses of the traditional liquidity ratios, such as the current ratio or quick ratio. These ratios include both liquid financial assets and operating assets in their formulas. Since operating assets are tied up in operations, including these assets in a liquidity ratio is not very useful from an ongoing-concern perspective. Note the difference between a liquidity perspective and a liquidation perspective. A liquidation perspective assumes that in the event of a crisis, the firm may sell assets off in order to meet financial obligations, while a liquidity perspective assumes that the firm meets its financial obligations without impairing the viability of future operations. From an ongoing perspective, a new ratio—*net liquid balance to total assets*—may be more indicative of liquidity than either the current ratio or the quick ratio.

## Using Accounts Receivable as Working Capital

---

Accounts receivable—that is, the money owed to the company as a result of sales made on credit for which payment has not yet been received—are a major element in working capital for most companies. And they are one of the reasons we can assert that *working capital* is not the same as *available cash* and that the timing of short-term flows is vitally important.

If a company is selling a major part of its output on credit and giving 30 days' credit, its accounts receivable will be about equal to sales of 30 days—that is, to one-twelfth of its annual sales—if sales are reasonably stable over the year. And if the company's collection policies are so liberal or ineffective that in practice customers are paying an average of, say, 45 days after they are billed, accounts receivable are no less than one-eighth of annual sales. Investment in accounts receivable is a use of funds. The company has to finance the credit it is giving to its customers by allowing its money to be tied up in this way instead of being available for investment in productive uses. Therefore, accounts receivable, like cash, have an opportunity cost.

The magnitude of a company's accounts receivable obviously depends on a number of factors:

- The level and the pattern of sales
- The breakdown between cash and credit sales
- The nominal credit terms offered
- The way these credit terms are enforced through a collection policy

We'll discuss each of these factors in detail in the following sections.

## The Sales Pattern

The basis of all receivables and collections is clearly *actual net sales*—that is, sales sold minus any returns. From actual sales come the assumptions about receipts from future cash sales and collections of future credit sales. These are the key inputs in forecasting cash flow, as discussed later in this chapter. Techniques for forecasting future sales fall into two broad groups:

- Techniques that use external or economic information
- Techniques that are based on internal or historical data from the company's own past sales

Most managers are more familiar with the techniques in the second group than they are with economic forecasting. The methods for forecasting from historical data range from the very simple (such as a straightforward moving average) to fairly sophisticated models. For instance, variations on exponential smoothing make it possible to take into account both long-term trends in the company's sales and seasonal variations. Simply put, although the more sophisticated techniques are useful, no forecasting method based *only* on historical sales data is completely satisfactory. You cannot be sure that either total industry sales or the company's share of the sales will be the same as they have been; you must consider a variety of external factors.

Methods of forecasting environmental change also fall into two broad groups. One group is primarily concerned with *forecasting the future performance of the economy as a whole*, particularly future levels of the gross national product (GNP) and the national income. These *GNP models*, as they are called, are highly complex, computer-based models. Their construction may be beyond the capabilities of most entrepreneurs, but you can easily purchase their output. The other group is more concerned with *forecasting sales for individual industries and products*. One way to do this is to identify economic time series to use as leading indicators to signal changes in the variable being forecast. Again, this technique is best wielded by an experienced economist with a computer. The important point for the entrepreneur is that forecasting techniques are becoming progressively less of an art and more of a science.

## Cash Versus Credit Sales

The relative proportions of cash sales and credit sales may make an important difference to expected cash flows. Unfortunately, this is a variable over which most entrepreneurs have little control. For example, a company in retail sales can certainly take steps to increase its cash sales, either by banning credit entirely or by offering a discount on cash sales. But a company selling primarily to other corporate organizations—other manufacturing companies, wholesalers, distributors, or retail chains—has few cash sales. Its best hope is to set its credit terms to encourage prompt payment, but the sales will still be credit sales, not cash sales.

## Credit Policies

Credit policies boil down to two general questions:

- To whom should we give credit?
- How much credit should we give?

These two questions are closely interconnected. The business needs to evaluate most potential credit sales on their own merits, and this is costly and time consuming. In fact, the salaries and overhead of the credit analysts are likely to be the largest single item in the cost of giving credit to customers.

How much freedom a company has in setting the terms on which it will grant credit depends very much on its *competitive position*. For example, an organization in a monopolistic position has considerably more flexibility than does one that faces aggressive competition. But real monopolies are rare. Most companies approach such a position only during very short periods, after they have introduced radically new products and before their competitors have

had time to introduce similar ones. A company in such a position may be tempted to take advantage of it through product price, but it is unlikely to tighten up its credit policy as well. The advantage of restricting credit will be fairly short-lived, but the damage to customer relations could continue for a long time.

Nevertheless, economic factors do play an important part in credit policy. The key issue is *elasticity of demand* for the entrepreneur's product (we assume that the credit terms are a component of the overall price as the customer sees it and that customers will resist a reduction in credit, just as they will resist a price increase). If demand for a product is *inelastic*—that is, if an increase in price or a restriction in the terms of credit will produce a relatively small drop in demand, with the result that net sales revenues actually increase—then there is some potential flexibility in the terms of sale. Even here, however, it will be the industry as a whole that enjoys this flexibility; individual companies will probably have to accept general industry practice. If demand for a product is *elastic*, on the other hand, there will be little room to change the terms of the sale at either the company or the industry level.

Finally, a company operating below full capacity or below its optimal output may well be tempted to offer unusually generous credit terms in order to stimulate demand. The key question then is whether the cost of the additional funds tied up in accounts receivable will be more than offset by the additional sales and reduced operating costs. Alternatively, a company working at full capacity, with its product back-ordered, is in a position to tighten up on its credit policies to reduce its investment in receivables.

## Setting Credit Terms

The terms of credit include both the *length of time* given before payment is due and the *discount* given for prompt payment. Terms expressed as "2/10, net 30" mean that payment is due within 30 days (from the date of the invoice) and that the payer can deduct 2% from the bill if he makes the payment in 10 or fewer days. Some companies, on the other hand, set their net terms as payment by the end of the month following the month in which the sale is invoiced. Obviously, this latter policy is considerably more generous than "net 30" and is likely to result in a much larger investment in receivables.

An entrepreneur's failure to take advantage of cash discounts available on its accounts payable may be a very expensive mistake, equivalent to borrowing short-term funds at 36%. Is it an equally serious mistake for a company to offer the same terms to its customers? The answer is that it depends on whether giving a cash discount really does speed up collections and whether the *opportunity cost* of the funds that would otherwise have been locked up in receivables justifies the reduction in net sales revenues.

For example, assume that an entrepreneur's terms are 2/10, net 30 and that 25% of its customers actually take advantage of this discount. Annual sales are \$36 million, of which \$9 million are discounted, and the company recognizes profits when the sales are made. The discount's cost, therefore, is 2% of \$9 million, or \$180,000. Assuming that 25% of the customers pay in 10 days and the rest pay in 30, the average collection period (including both discount and nondiscount sales) is 25 days, giving average accounts receivable of \$2.5 million, as shown in the following equation:

$$\$36,000,000 / (360/25) = \$2,500,000$$

If the company did not give a discount, none of its customers would pay within 10 days, and the average collection period would fall from 25 to 30. In that case, average accounts receivable would be \$3 million:

$$\$36,000,000 / (360/30) = \$3,000,000$$

The question is, then, whether the added return the company makes on the \$500,000 by which the discount policy has reduced the average accounts receivable exceeds \$180,000, the cost of the discount policy. As this represents a return on investment of more than 36%, the answer is probably no.

A change in the net terms, however, is likely to make a greater difference to the average accounts receivable balance than giving or withholding a discount for prompt payment. Even if you give terms of 2/10, net 30, you can assume that a relatively small percentage of customers will take advantage of the discount. But if you change the net terms from 30 days to 45, doubtless a high percentage of customers *will* take advantage. Going back to the previous example and assuming that 25% of customers pay within 10 days and the rest at the end of 45 days, the average payment period now is approximately 36 days  $[(10 \times .25) + (45 \times .75)]$ , and the average accounts receivable is \$3.6 million, as shown:

$$\$36,000,000 / (360/36) = \$3,600,000$$

In this example, we assumed that, if the net terms are set at 30 or 45 days, everyone who does not take advantage of the discount for prompt payment will pay by the end of the net period. This is unrealistic. Many entrepreneurs and the companies they do business with make a practice of reducing their requirements for funds by paying all their bills late. True, the most commonly offered terms are 2/10, net 30, but a survey revealed that the actual experience of U.S. companies is that their average receivables run between 45 and 50 days. A company's accounts receivable depend not only on the terms of credit offered but also on how well those terms are enforced through the company's collection policy.

## Collection Policies

Some of a company's accounts receivable will be paid some time after the theoretical time limit has expired. Others will never be paid at all and will have to be written off as bad debts. Neither of these variables is completely within the company's control, but both can be controlled to some extent.

The collection techniques of companies selling directly to the ultimate consumer are often highly standardized and even automated. The firms store master records of customers in computer data files and periodically search for overdue accounts. Each customer whose account has been outstanding for more than the net terms receives a series of increasingly stronger letters asking for payment. A system like this provides little opportunity to match the collection technique to the particular customer and situation. The average amount owed is probably small, however, and more individualized techniques are hard to justify in such circumstances.

When an entrepreneur's firm sells primarily in the industrial market and its customers are businesses, it will look at each individual case and determine how best to collect. If the other company is able to pay, the entrepreneur should rigorously attempt to secure payment before the situation becomes any worse. The methods include:

- Refusing any further orders or supplying only for cash
- Threatening legal action
- Actually undertaking legal proceedings, using a specialized collection agency

If the other company is already in serious financial trouble, however, an all-out collection attempt may simply force the customer into insolvency, followed by liquidation or reorganization. The wisest approach in this case may be to continue to give credit, or at least not to try to collect existing receivables, in the hope of keeping the other company in business. But if your company is one of a number of creditors, you gain nothing by being generous unless the other creditors are willing to do the same. Otherwise, you are simply subordinating your claims to those of others and increasing the chance that the debt will never be paid at all.

It's safe to say that collection procedures are expensive and therefore are justifiable *only when the expected results exceed the cost*. Collection operations are, in fact, an excellent demonstration of the economists' law of diminishing returns. For a given volume of overdue accounts, the first few thousand dollars spent on collection will probably produce worthwhile results. But further expenditure is likely to yield less and less return.

How much should you be willing to spend on collection? The answer depends on the reduction you expect in accounts receivable and the return you'd expect if these additional funds were available for reinvestment in productive operations. Assume that you can reduce overdue accounts receivable \$250,000 by hiring an assistant for \$25,000. To cover the assistant's salary, you need to earn at least a 10% return on the funds released from accounts receivable. This represents a fairly reasonable rate of return and should be attainable. However, consider all the other nonwage costs of hiring an assistant, including FICA taxes, health care, and benefits, which could easily push the costs of the assistant up another \$10,000, or 40%. Whenever you consider reducing excess receivables, examine the size and scope of the collection attempts and judge whether or not the costs justify the expenditure.

## Setting Credit Limits for Individual Accounts

Another method of reducing overdue accounts and limiting bad debts is setting limits to the credit allowed on individual accounts. Again, as in collections, entrepreneurs need to distinguish between *sales to individual consumers* and *sales to corporate buyers*. An entrepreneur selling directly to consumers clearly cannot afford to undertake a thorough credit investigation of each one (unless the product being sold is a very expensive item, such as a boat or an automobile) and will set fairly arbitrary limits on the basis of limited information. But if the customers are business organizations, the setting of credit limits requires more thorough analysis, especially when the firm adds a new customer to its files and when it suspects an existing customer's circumstances have deteriorated.

Dun & Bradstreet offers resources and business reports through its Website ([www.dnb.com](http://www.dnb.com)). You can check others' business credit ratings and your own business credit information. These ratings range from "high" to "limited" and include an estimate of the company's financial strength, usually based on net worth. If more detail is needed, Dun & Bradstreet and other agencies sell reports that include information about a company's principal officers, any past bankruptcies, and, most important, the company's credit history in relationship to its existing suppliers.

There are a number of other sources of information:

- ◻ Some industry associations operate credit advisory services for the benefit of their members.
- ◻ Companies selling directly to the consumer can get information from local credit bureaus.
- ◻ Commercial banks are also a useful source of credit information. An entrepreneur considering an extension of credit to a customer can ask her bank to carry out a credit investigation, which the bank will do by approaching the customer's bank for information about the customer.

You can cut short much of the work of appraising the creditworthiness of new customers by using external sources of information, but monitoring accounts receivable and deciding whether to increase credit limits or ban further credit represent a continuing task for your own staff. The decisions are often difficult. No company likes to turn down orders. Once again, you face a trade-off: the potential profit on the sale versus the cost of financing increased receivables and the probability of bad debt. Since the cost of the latter far exceeds the cost of the former, most entrepreneurs are very careful about granting credit.

The two major determinants of the credit decision are the character of the individual creditor or management of the creditor firm and the capacity of the firm to repay the loan. Entrepreneurs will find that the same simple set of guidelines they use in extending credit to customers is what banks use in extending credit to entrepreneurs. They're known as the Five Cs of credit:

- ◻ *Character* refers to the customer's integrity and willingness to repay the financial obligation.

- ❑ *Capacity* addresses the borrower's cash flow and ability to repay the debt from ongoing business operations.
- ❑ *Capital* is the borrower's financial net worth; consequently, a wealthy borrower may be a desirable customer even if her annual cash flows are relatively low.
- ❑ *Collateral* refers to the resale value of the product in the event repossession becomes necessary.
- ❑ *Conditions* refer to national or international economic, industrial, and firm-specific prospects during the time period of the credit.

The credit-granting decision is only part of the entrepreneur's concern. Another important task is monitoring accounts receivable balances. Since receivables tied up in operations may represent a large opportunity cost, either in lost investment returns or in greater borrowing balances, entrepreneurs are careful not to let the accounts receivable balances get too large.

Although the opportunity costs for accounts receivable may be quite large, the largest current asset balances are usually in inventories. As the entrepreneur's business grows, inventory balances rise, and resulting operating cash flows decline. You need to monitor both accounts receivable and inventories and keep the levels as low as possible without interfering with profitable sales. This is especially true if you have a shortage of capital or credit limitations.

## Inventory

Inventory represents the most important current asset of most manufacturing and trading companies, yet money invested in inventory doesn't earn a return. In fact, it costs money to maintain inventories. Some inventory will be devalued or become a total loss because it deteriorates or becomes obsolete before it can be used or sold. These costs can easily add up to 20% or more of the inventory value annually. Since the money tied up in inventory might otherwise be invested profitably, the real costs plus the opportunity costs of carrying inventory may add up to 30%, 40%, or even more. As with accounts receivable, the dollar amount of inventory depends on when the entrepreneur chooses to recognize profit: Is it at the time of production or the time of sale? A strong argument can be made for valuing inventories at cost or market, whichever is lower. Given uncertainty about how much cash flow the inventory will actually generate, a conservative approach to valuation is best.

Entrepreneurs usually also want to keep inventory levels as low as possible, not only to reduce the inventory carry charges such as storage costs and insurance but also to ensure that as little capital as possible is tied up in inventory.

But carrying too little inventory also incurs heavy costs. These include:

- ❑ The costs of too frequent reordering
- ❑ The loss of quantity discounts
- ❑ The loss of customer goodwill or plant efficiency due to items being unavailable when needed

You'll want to weigh these costs against those of carrying excessive inventory in order to be able to judge the optimal level of inventory.

The control of investment in inventories is particularly important to the *management of working capital*. Inventories are likely to represent your largest current investment and to be the least liquid of your current assets. Marketable securities can be turned into cash in a matter of hours, and most accounts receivable will usually be collected within the next 30 days. But three months' supply of inventory will take three months to turn into cash, if forecasts of demand or usage prove accurate. If your forecasts were optimistic, you might need even more time. The alternative—an immediate forced sale—is hardly attractive. You can sell marketable securities for their market value and sell, or factor, receivables for something like 80% of their face value. But inventories, other than some raw materials for which a ready

market always exists, traditionally sell for little more than 10% of their acquisition cost in a forced sale. Thus, controlling a company's investment in inventory is of critical importance to managing your working capital.

## One Company's Old Inventory Is Another's Treasure

Patrick Byrne could not raise money from any of the 50 venture capital firms to which he pitched his idea. His investment banker closed 181 out of 182 deals in 1999, and Overstock.com was the only deal that did not receive an investment. Byrne then got his break when a company named Miadora.com, an online

jewelry e-tailer that received over \$51 million in venture capital, was about to go bankrupt. The venture capitalists needed someone to purchase and liquidate the inventory fast. Overstock.com was officially born. Over the next few months, Overstock.com liquidated 18 different companies, all backed by venture capitalists. And Byrne finally received some venture capital backing himself.<sup>5</sup>

Overstock.com has grown from \$1.8 million in revenue in 1999 to over \$834 million by 2008.

## Sources of Short-Term Cash: More Payables, Less Receivables

Entrepreneurs usually don't have all the cash they need all the time. Very often an entrepreneurial firm needs to build up its inventory, thus reducing cash levels. Or an entrepreneur's customers may place unusually large orders, thus increasing accounts receivable financing or reducing company cash levels. This section describes the many ways entrepreneurs obtain additional short-term cash to restore their cash balances to the required levels.

As a rule, entrepreneurs look for short-term cash at the lowest possible rates. For example, an entrepreneur faced with a cash shortage might look first to her company's suppliers because they extend credit to the company by collecting for goods and services after supplying them. The entrepreneur can enlarge this credit by paying bills more slowly—and also obtain additional cash by collecting from her customers more quickly.

### Cash from Short-Term Bank Loans

Although supplier financing is convenient, it is often cheaper to pursue bank financing if possible. Entrepreneurs faced with a severe cash shortage may also try to convert into cash two of their working capital assets: accounts receivable and inventory. An entrepreneur may pledge her accounts receivable to a finance company in exchange for a loan, or she may sell them to a factoring company for cash. Similarly, an entrepreneur may pledge her inventory (often using a warehousing system) in exchange for a loan.

### Cash from Trade Credit

Trade credit is one important and often low-cost source of cash. Nearly all entrepreneurs make use of trade credit to some degree by not paying suppliers immediately for goods and services. Instead, companies bill the entrepreneur, and the entrepreneur pays in 10 days, 30 days, or more. From the time the supplier first provides the goods or services to the time the customer finally pays for them, the supplier has, in effect, loaned the entrepreneur money. The sum of all these loans (bills) represents an entrepreneur's trade credit. By paying bills more slowly, an entrepreneur can increase the amount of these loans from his suppliers.

One way to take more time to pay bills (or stretch payables) is to stop taking discounts. For example, if your company normally takes advantage of all prompt-payment discounts, such as 2% for payment within 10 days, you can increase your company's cash by passing up the discount and paying the bill in the expected 30 days. Of course, this is an expensive source of cash. If you lose a 2% discount and have the use of the funds for 20 more days, you've paid approximately 36% interest (annual rate) for using the money.

In practice, though, the interest cost wouldn't really be 36% because, by forgoing discounts and aggressively stretching payables, you wouldn't pay the bill in 30 days. Instead, you might try to pay it in 60 days. Now the equivalent interest rate is only about 15% (50 days' extra use of the money for 2%).

This brings up the subject of late payments. Many entrepreneurs don't consider 30 days (or any other stated terms) a real deadline. Instead, they try to determine the exact point at which further delay of payment will bring a penalty. For example, if a company pays too slowly, the supplier may take one of the following actions:

- ❑ Require payment in full on future orders
- ❑ Report the company to a credit bureau, which would damage the company's credit rating with all suppliers
- ❑ Bring legal action against the company

Many cash managers believe, however, that as long as they can pay company bills just before incurring any of these penalties, they maximize their company's cash at little or no cost. The *hidden costs* of this approach include such risks as a damaged reputation, a lower credit limit from suppliers, higher prices from suppliers to compensate for delayed payment, and the risk of exceeding the supplier's final deadline and incurring a penalty.

## Cash Obtained by Negotiating with Suppliers

If an entrepreneur wants more credit and would like to stretch out her payables, very often she can negotiate with her suppliers for more generous credit terms, at least temporarily. If she and her supplier agree on longer credit terms (say, 60 or 90 days), she can get the extra trade credits she needs without jeopardizing her supplier relations or credit ratings. One way suppliers compete is through credit terms, and you can use that fact to your advantage.

Some suppliers use generous terms of trade credit as a form of sales promotion that may well be more effective than an intensive advertising campaign or a high-pressure sales team. The credit may be a simple extension of the discount or net terms, or it may take a modified form such as an inventory loan.

## Cash Available Because of Seasonal Business Credit Terms

If the entrepreneur is in a highly seasonal business, as many types of retailers are, he will find large differences in credit terms in different seasons. For example, as a retailer, he might be very short of cash in the fall as he builds up inventory for the holiday selling season. Many suppliers will understand this and willingly extend their normal 30-day terms.

Furthermore, some suppliers will offer exceedingly generous credit terms in order to smooth out their own manufacturing cycle. Consider a game manufacturer that sells half its annual production in the few months before Christmas. Rather than producing and shipping most of the games in the late summer, this manufacturer would much rather spread out its production and shipping schedule over most of the year. To accomplish this, the manufacturer may offer seasonal dating to its retail store customers. **Seasonal dating** provides longer credit

terms on orders placed in off-peak periods. For example, the game manufacturer might offer 120-day terms on May orders, 90-day terms on June orders, and so on. This will encourage customers to order early, and it will allow the game manufacturer to spread out production over more of the year.

## Advantages of Trade Credit

Trade credit has two important advantages that justify its extensive use. The first advantage is convenience and ready availability; because it is not negotiated, it requires no great expenditure of executive time and no legal expenses. If a supplier accepts a company as a customer, it automatically extends the usual credit terms even though it may set the maximum line of credit low at first.

The second advantage (closely related to the first) is that the *credit available from this source automatically grows as the company grows*. Accounts payable are known as a spontaneous source of financing. As sales expand, production schedules increase, which in turn means that larger quantities of materials and supplies must be bought. In the absence of limits on credit, the additional credit becomes available automatically simply because the firm has placed orders for the extra material. Of course, if the manufacturing process is long and the company reaches the deadline for the supplier's payment before selling the goods, it may need some additional source of credit. But the amount needed will be much less than if no trade credit had been available.

## Cash Obtained by Tightening Up Accounts Receivable Collections

Rapidly growing accounts receivable tie up a company's money and can cause a cash squeeze. However, these same accounts receivable become cash when collected. Some techniques—such as lockboxes and wire transfers—enable firms to collect receivables quickly and regularly. But how can the firm increase the rate of collection temporarily during a cash shortage?

The most effective way is simply to *ask for the money*. If the entrepreneur just sends a bill every month and shows the amount past due, the customer may not feel a great pressure to pay quickly. But if the entrepreneur asks for the money, with a handwritten note on the statement of account, a phone call, or a formal letter, the customer will usually pay more quickly. Of course, more aggressive collection techniques also have costs, such as the loss of customer goodwill, the scaring away of new customers, the loss of old customers to more lenient suppliers, and the generation of industry rumors that the company is short of cash and may be a poor credit risk.

The entrepreneur can also *change his sales terms* to collect cash more quickly. Options include the following:

1. *Introduce, increase, or eliminate discounts.* A company can initiate a discount for prompt payment (for example, a 2% discount for payment within 10 days). Similarly, a company with an existing discount may increase the discount (for example, increase the discount from 1% to 2%). Finally, a company can eliminate the discount altogether and simply demand cash immediately or upon delivery (COD). Companies will have difficulty instituting these measures if competitors offer significantly more lenient credit terms.
2. *Emphasize cash sales.* Some entrepreneurs, particularly those selling directly to consumers, may be able to increase their percentage of cash sales.
3. *Accept credit cards.* Sales made on bank credit cards or on travel or entertainment cards are convertible within a couple of days into cash. The credit card companies charge 3% to 7% of the amount of the sale for this service.

# Obtaining Bank Loans Through Accounts Receivable Financing

One approach to free up working capital funds is to convert accounts receivable into cash more quickly through aggressive collection techniques. However, if you fear aggressive collection may offend customers and cause them to take their business to competitors, you may decide to convert accounts receivable to cash through a financing company, using either pledging or factoring. The following sections describe both methods. In practice, finance companies and banks offer many variations on them.

## Pledging

**Pledging** means using accounts receivable as collateral for a loan from a finance company or bank. The finance company then gives money to the borrower, and as the borrower's customers pay their bills, the borrower repays the loan to the finance company. With this form of accounts receivable financing, the borrower's customers are not notified that their bills are being used as collateral for a loan. Therefore, pledging is called *non-notification financing*. Furthermore, if customers do not pay their bills, the borrower (rather than the finance company) must absorb the loss. Thus, if the customer defaults, the lender has the right of recourse to the borrower.

A finance company will not usually lend the full face value of the accounts receivable pledged. Typically, a company can borrow 75% to 90% of the face value of its accounts receivable if it has a good credit rating and its customers have excellent credit ratings. Companies with lower credit ratings can generally borrow 60% to 75% of the face value of their receivables. Pledging receivables is not a cheap source of credit. It's used mostly by smaller companies that have no other source of funds open to them.

## Pledging with Notification

Another form of pledging is called **pledging with notification**, in which the borrower instructs its customers to pay their bills directly to the lender (often a bank). As checks from customers arrive, the bank deposits them in a special account and notifies the borrower that money has arrived. Here, the lender controls the receivables more closely and does not have to worry that the borrower may collect pledged accounts receivable and then not notify it. The company loses under this system, however, because it must notify its customers that it has pledged its accounts receivable, which can reduce its credit rating.

## Factoring

**Factoring** is selling accounts receivable at a discount to a finance company known as the *factor*. The factor takes over credit checking and collection. If the factor rejects a potential customer as an unacceptable credit risk, the company must either turn down the order or insist on cash payment.

The fees that factors charge vary widely. They include

- ◻ An interest charge, usually expressed on a daily basis for the time the bill is outstanding
- ◻ A collection fee, usually in the range of an additional 6% to 10% (on an annual basis)
- ◻ A credit-checking charge, either a percentage of the invoice or a flat dollar amount

The factor keeps a hold-back amount to more than cover these various fees and charges, deducts the total from the hold-back amount, and sends the remainder to the company.

## Recourse

Factoring may be with or without recourse. *Factoring without recourse* means that, if the customer doesn't pay its bill (it is a true deadbeat), the factor must absorb the loss. *Factoring with recourse*, on the other hand, means that, if the customer doesn't pay the bill within a prenegotiated time (for example, 90 days), the factor collects from the selling company. The company must then try to collect from the customer directly.

Naturally, a factor charges extra for factoring without recourse, typically 6% to 12% (on an annual basis) added to the interest rate it charges the selling company. For factoring without recourse, factors generally come out ahead because they minimize bad-debt expense by carefully checking each customer's credit. Nevertheless, the selling company might prefer factoring without recourse for two reasons:

- The company does not have to worry that any bills will be returned. In this way, factoring without recourse is a form of insurance.
- The factor expresses the extra charge for factoring without recourse as part of the daily interest rate. This daily interest rate may look very small.

Most factoring is done with notification. This means the customer company is notified and instructed to pay its bill directly to the factor. When factoring is without notification, the customer sends payment either directly to the supplier or to a post office box. In general, factoring is more expensive than pledging. On the other hand, factors provide services, such as credit checking and credit collection, that a company would otherwise have to carry out itself. For a small company, using a factor is often less expensive than providing the same services for itself.

## Obtaining Loans against Inventory

---

An entrepreneur's inventory is an asset that can serve as collateral for a loan, providing needed cash without jeopardizing access to the inventory. There are four basic ways to use inventory as security for a loan, depending on how closely the lender controls the physical inventory:

1. *Chattel mortgage*, in which specific inventory is used to secure the loan
2. *Floating (or blanket) lien*, in which the loan is secured by all the borrower's inventory
3. *Field warehousing*, in which the lender physically separates and guards the pledged inventory right on the borrower's premises
4. *Public warehousing*, in which the lender transfers the pledged inventory to a separate warehouse.

## Obtaining "Financing" from Customer Prepayments

---

Some companies are actually financed by their customers. This situation typically occurs on large, complex, long-term projects undertaken by defense contractors, building contractors, ship builders, and management consulting firms. These companies typically divide their large projects into a series of stages and require payment as they complete each stage. This significantly reduces the cash they require, compared with firms that finance an entire project themselves and receive payment on completion. In some companies, customers pay in advance for everything they buy. Many mail-order operations are financed this way.

## Choosing the Right Mix of Short-Term Financing

---

The entrepreneur attempts to secure the required short-term funds at the lowest cost. The lowest cost usually results from some combination of trade credit, unsecured and secured bank loans, accounts receivable financing, and inventory financing. Though it is virtually impossible to evaluate every possible combination of short-term financing, entrepreneurs can use their experience and subjective opinion to put together a short-term financing package that will have a reasonable cost. At the same time, the entrepreneur must be aware of future requirements and the impact that using certain sources today may have on the availability of short-term funds in the future. In selecting the best financing package, the entrepreneur should consider the following factors:

- The firm's current situation and requirements
- The current and future costs of the alternatives
- The firm's future situation and requirements

For small firms, the options may be somewhat limited, and the total short-term financing package may be less important. On the other hand, larger firms may face myriad possibilities. Clearly, the short-term borrowing decision can become quite complex, but choosing the right combination of options can be of significant financial value to the entrepreneur's firm.

## Traditional Bank Lending: Short-Term Bank Loans

---

After an entrepreneur has fully used her trade credit and collected her receivables as quickly as competitively possible, she may turn to a bank for a short-term loan. The most common bank loan is a *short-term, unsecured loan* made for 90 days. Standard variations include loans made for periods of 30 days to a year and loans requiring collateral. Interest charges on these loans typically vary from the prime rate (the amount a bank charges its largest and financially strongest customers) to about 3% above prime.

Commercial banks are the most important suppliers of debt capital to small firms, supplying more than 80% of lending in the credit line market and more than 50% in other markets, such as commercial mortgages and vehicle, equipment, and other loans.

In July 2008, the Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (FFIEC) released 2007 data regarding the loan originations by 998 commercial banks and savings institutions to over 13.5 million small businesses. According to these data (which are estimated to represent approximately 96% of all small business loan transactions and 94% of all business loans by dollar amount), outstanding small business loans owed to commercial banks and other savings institutions amounted to approximately \$329 billion.<sup>6</sup> As of June 2007, very large banks with assets of at least \$10 billion dominated the micro business loan (under \$100,000) market. These banks wrote 66% of the loans and accounted for 58% of the value of these loans.<sup>7</sup>

Very often, an entrepreneur doesn't immediately need money but can forecast that she will have a definite need in, say, six months. The entrepreneur will not want to borrow the required money now and pay unnecessary interest for the next six months. Instead, she will formally apply to her bank for a *line of credit*, which is an assurance by the bank that, as long as the company remains financially healthy, the bank will lend the company money (up to a specified limit) whenever the company needs it. Banks usually review a company's credit line each year. A line of credit is not a guarantee that the bank will make a loan in the future. Instead, when the company actually needs the money, the bank will examine the company's current financial statements to make sure that actual results coincide with earlier plans.

Banks also grant *guaranteed lines of credit*, under which they guarantee to supply funds up to a specified limit regardless of circumstances. This relieves the company of any worries that money may not be available when it's needed. Banks usually charge extra for this guarantee, typically 1% a year on the unused amount of the guaranteed line of credit. For example, if the bank guarantees a credit line of \$1 million and the company borrows only \$300,000, the company will have to pay a commitment fee of perhaps \$7,000 for the \$700,000 it did not borrow.

In return for granting lines of credit, banks usually require that an entrepreneur maintain a *compensating balance* (that is, keep a specified amount in its checking account without interest). For example, if an entrepreneur receives a \$1 million line of credit with the requirement that she maintain a 15% compensating balance, the entrepreneur must keep at least \$150,000 in her demand account with that bank all year. The bank, of course, does not have to pay interest on this demand account money, so the use of this money compensates it for standing ready to grant up to \$1 million in loans for a year. Of course, when the bank actually makes loans, it charges the negotiated rate of interest.

## Maturity of Loans

The most common time period, or maturity, for short-term bank loans is 90 days; however, an entrepreneur can negotiate maturities of 30 days to one year. Banks often prefer 90-day maturities, even when the entrepreneur will clearly need the money for longer than 90 days, because the three-month maturity gives the bank a chance to check the entrepreneur's financial statements regularly. If the entrepreneur's position has deteriorated, the bank may refuse to renew the loan and thus avoid a future loss.

Entrepreneurs, on the other hand, prefer maturities that closely match the time they expect to need the money. A longer maturity (rather than a series of short, constantly renewed loans) eliminates the possibility that the bank will refuse to extend a short-term loan because of a temporary weakness in the entrepreneur's operations.

## Interest Rates

The rates of interest charged by commercial banks vary in two ways:

- The general level of interest rates varies over time.
- At any given time, different rates are charged to different borrowers.

The base rate for most commercial banks traditionally has been the *prime rate*, which is the rate commercial banks charge their very best business customers for short-term borrowing. This is the rate that makes the news every time it changes. Congress and the business community speculate about the prime's influence on economic activity because historically it has been the baseline for loan pricing in most loan agreements. "Prime plus two" or "2% above prime" was a normal statement of the interest rate on many loan contracts. However, as the banking industry has begun to price its loans and services more aggressively, the prime is becoming less important and compensating balances less popular.

The current trend in loan pricing is to *price the loan at a rate above the marginal cost of funds* as typically reflected by the interest rates on certificates of deposit. The bank then adds an interest rate margin to the cost of funds, and the result is the rate charged to the borrower. This rate changes daily in line with the changes in money market rates offered by the bank. As liability management becomes more of a way of life for bankers, the pricing of loans will become a function of the amount of competition, both domestic and international, that the banker faces in securing loanable funds. As a result of this competition for corporate customers and enhanced competition from the commercial paper market, large, financially stable corporations are often able to borrow at a rate below prime.

The interest borrowers pay depends on several factors:

- The dollar amount of the loan
- The length of time involved
- The nominal annual rate of interest
- The repayment schedule
- The method used to calculate the interest

The various methods used to calculate interest are all variations of the simple interest calculation. *Simple interest* is calculated on the amount borrowed for the length of time the loan is outstanding. For example, if you borrow \$1 million at 10% and repay in one payment at the end of one year, the simple interest is \$1 million times 0.10, or \$100,000. In the *add-in interest* method, the lender calculates interest on the full amount of the original principal and immediately adds it to the original principal, calculating payments by dividing principal plus interest by the number of payments to be made. If there is only one payment, this method is identical to simple interest. However, with two or more payments, this method results in an effective rate of interest greater than the nominal rate. Continuing with the add-in interest example, if you repaid the \$1 million loan in two six-month installments of \$550,000 each, the effective rate is higher than 10% because you don't have the use of the funds for the entire year.

The *bank discount method* is common in short-term business loans. Generally, there are no immediate payments, and the life of the loan is usually one year or less. Interest is calculated on the amount of the loan, and the borrower receives the difference between the amount to be paid back and the amount of interest. In our example, the lender subtracts the interest amount of \$100,000 from the \$1 million, and you have the use of \$900,000 for one year. If you divide the interest payment by the amount of money you actually used (\$100,000 divided by \$900,000), the effective rate is 11.1%.

If the loan were to require a compensating balance of 10%, you have the use of the loan amount less the compensating balance requirement. The effective rate of interest in this case would be 12.5% minus the interest amount of \$100,000 divided by the funds available, which is \$800,000 (\$1,000,000 minus \$100,000 interest and minus a compensating balance of \$100,000). The effective interest cost on a *revolving credit* agreement includes both interest costs and the commitment fee. For example, assume the TBA Corporation has a \$1 million revolving credit agreement with a bank. Interest on the borrowed funds is 10% per annum. TBA must pay a commitment fee of 1% on the unused portion of the credit line. If the firm borrows \$500,000, the effective annual interest rate is 11%  $[(0.1 \times \$500,000) + (0.01 \times \$500,000)]$ .

Because many factors influence the effective rate of a loan, when evaluating borrowing costs, use only *the effective annual rate* as a standard of comparison to ensure that you compare the actual costs of borrowing.

## Collateral

To reduce their risks in making loans, banks may require collateral from entrepreneurs. Collateral may be any asset that has value. If the entrepreneur does not repay the loan, the bank owns the collateral and may sell it to recover the amount of the loan.

Typical collateral includes both specific high-value items owned by the company (such as buildings, computer equipment, or large machinery) and all items of a particular type (such as all raw materials or all inventories). Banks use blanket liens as collateral when individual items are of low value, but the collective value of all items is large enough to serve as collateral.

The highest level of risk comes in making loans to small companies, so it's not surprising that a high proportion of loans made to small companies—probably 75%—are secured.

Larger companies present less risk and have stronger bargaining positions; only about 30% of loans made to companies in this class are secured.

One aspect of protection that most banks require is *key person insurance* on the principal officers of the company taking out the loan. Because the repayment of the loan usually depends on the entrepreneur's or managers' running the company in a profitable manner, if something should happen to them, there may be some question about the safety of the loan. If the officer or officers die, the proceeds of the key person policy are paid to the bank in settlement of the loan.

When making loans to very small companies, banks often require that the owners and top managers personally sign for the loan. Then, if the company does not repay the loan, the bank can claim the signer's personal assets, such as houses, automobiles, and stock investments.

## Applying for a Bank Loan

To maximize the chances of success in applying for a bank loan, make personal visits to the bank, and make quarterly delivery of income statements, balance sheets, and cash-flow statements to sustain good relationships.

You'll need to conduct the actual process of obtaining bank credit (whether a line of credit or an actual loan) on a personal basis with the bank's loan officer. The loan officer will be interested in knowing the following information:

- How much money the company needs
- How the company will use this money
- How the company will repay the bank
- When the company will repay the bank

You should be able to fully answer these questions and support your response with past results and realistic forecasts.

## Restrictive Covenants

Bank term loans are negotiated credit, granted after formal negotiations take place between borrower and lender. As part of the conditions, the bank usually seeks to set various restrictions, or **covenants**, on the borrower's activities during the life of the loan. These restrictions are tailored to the individual borrower's situation and needs; thus, it is difficult to generalize about them. This section introduces some of the more widely used covenants and their implications. All are (at least to some degree) negotiable; it is wise for the financial executive to carefully review the loan contract and try to moderate any overly restrictive clause a bank may request.

The restrictive covenants in a loan agreement may be

- General provisions* found in most loan agreements and designed to force the borrower to preserve liquidity and limit cash outflows
- Routine provisions* found in most loan agreements and normally not subject to modification during the loan period
- Specific provisions* used according to the situation to achieve a desired total level of protection

Let's look at each in more detail.

## General Provisions

The most common of all general provisions is a requirement relating to the *maintenance of working capital*. This may simply be a provision to keep net working capital at or above a specified level. And if the company is expected to grow fairly rapidly, the required working

capital may be set on an increasing scale. For example, the bank may stipulate that working capital is to be maintained above \$500,000 during the first 12 months of the loan, above \$600,000 during the second, above \$750,000 during the third, and so on. If the borrower's business is highly seasonal, the requirement for working capital may have to be modified to reflect these seasonal variations.

The provision covering working capital is often set in terms of the borrower's current ratio—current assets divided by current liabilities—which must be kept above, for example, 3 to 1 or 3.5 to 1. The actual figure is based on the bank's judgment and whatever is considered a safe figure for that particular industry. Working capital covenants are easy to understand and very widely used. Unfortunately, they are often of rather doubtful value. As we discussed earlier in this chapter, a company may have a large net working capital and still be short of cash.

Another widely used covenant is *a limit on the borrower's expenditures for capital investment*. The bank may have made the loan to provide the borrower with additional working capital and does not wish to see the funds sunk into capital equipment instead. The covenant may take the form of a simple dollar limit on the investment in capital equipment in any period. Or the borrower may be allowed to invest up to, but not more than, the extent of the current depreciation expense. This provision may prove to be a serious restriction on a rapidly growing company. And clearly, any company will find such a covenant damaging if the maximum expenditure is set below the figure needed to maintain productive capacity at an adequate and competitive level.

Most term loan agreements include *covenants to prevent the borrower from selling or mortgaging capital assets without the lender's permission*. This may be extended to cover current assets other than the normal sale of finished goods, in which case the borrower is prohibited from factoring accounts receivable, selling any part of the raw material inventory, or assigning inventory to a warehouse finance company without the bank's express permission.

*Limitations on additional long-term debt* are also common. The borrower is often theoretically forbidden to undertake any long-term debt during the life of the term loan, though in practice the bank usually allows new debt funds to be used in moderation as the company grows. The bank may extend the provision to prevent the borrower from entering into any long-term leases without authorization.

One type of covenant that clearly recognizes the importance of cash flows to a growing company is a *prohibition of or limit to the payment of cash dividends*. Again, if dividends are not completely prohibited, they may be either limited to a set dollar figure or based on a set percentage of net earnings. The latter approach is obviously the less restrictive.

## Routine Provisions

The second category of restrictive covenants includes routine provisions found in most loan agreements that usually are not variable. The loan agreement ordinarily includes the following requirements:

- The borrower must furnish the bank with periodic financial statements and maintain adequate property insurance.
- The borrower agrees not to sell a significant portion of its assets. A provision forbidding the pledging of the borrower's assets is also included in most loan agreements. This provision is often termed a *negative pledge clause*.
- The borrower is restricted from entering into any new leasing agreements that might endanger the ability to repay the loan.
- The borrower is restricted from acquiring other firms unless prior approval has been obtained from the lender.

## Specific Provisions

Finally, a number of restrictions relate more to the borrowing company's management than to its financial performance. For example:

- Key executives may be required to sign employment contracts or take out substantial life insurance.
- The bank may require the right to be consulted before any changes are made in the company's top management.
- Some covenants prevent increases in top management salaries or other compensation.

Restrictive covenants are very important in term loans. If any covenant is breached, the bank has the right to take legal action to recover its loan, probably forcing the company into insolvency. On the other hand, covenants may protect the borrowing company as well as the lender, in that their intention is to make it impossible for the borrower to get into serious financial trouble without first infringing one or more restrictions, thus giving the bank a right to step in and apply a guiding hand. A bank is very reluctant to force any client into liquidation.

## Equipment Financing

---

Capital equipment is often financed by intermediate-term funds. These may be straightforward term loans, usually secured by the equipment itself. Both banks and finance companies make equipment loans of this type. The nonbank companies charge considerably higher interest rates; they are used primarily by smaller companies that find themselves unable to qualify for bank term loans. As with other types of secured loans, the lender will evaluate the quality of the collateral and advance a percentage of the market value. In determining the repayment schedule, the lender ensures that the value of the equipment exceeds the loan balance. In addition, the loan repayment schedule is often made to coincide with the depreciation schedule of the equipment.

One further form of equipment financing is the *conditional sales contract*, which normally covers between two and five years. The buyer agrees to buy a piece of equipment by installment payments over a period of years. During this time, the buyer has the use of the equipment, but the seller retains title until the payments have been completed. Companies unable to find credit from any other source may be able to buy equipment on these terms. The lender's risk is small because it can repossess the equipment at any time if the borrower misses an installment. Equipment distributors who sell equipment under conditional sales contracts often sell the contract to a bank or finance company, in which case the transaction becomes an interesting combination of equipment financing for the buyer and receivables financing for the seller.

The credit available under a conditional sales contract is less than the full purchase price of the equipment. Typically, the buyer is expected to make an immediate down payment of 25% to 33% of the full cash price, and only the balance is financed. The cost of the credit given may be quite high. Equipment that is highly specialized or subject to rapid obsolescence represents a greater risk to the lender than widely used standard equipment, and the interest charged on the sale of such specialized equipment to a small company may exceed 15% to 20%.

# Obtaining Early Financing from External Sources

It's almost impossible for a brand-new company to get a conventional bank loan because it has no trading history and usually no assets to secure the loan. Even after a young company is up and running, it is still difficult to get a bank loan. Many entrepreneurs overlook the possibility of getting an SBA-guaranteed loan.

## SBA-Guaranteed Loans<sup>8</sup>

The U.S. Small Business Administration (SBA) administers three separate loan programs. The SBA sets the guidelines for the loans, while its partners (lenders, community development organizations, and microlending institutions) make the loans to small businesses. The SBA does not make direct loans but works with thousands of lenders and other intermediaries. The SBA guarantees these loans, thereby eliminating some of the risk to the lending partners. The SBA guarantees 85% of a loan under \$150,000 and up to 75% of a loan greater than that figure. Interest rates on SBA-guaranteed loans are negotiated between the borrower and the bank, but they are subject to SBA maximums and generally cannot exceed 2.75% over the prime rate for loans greater than \$50,000. The bank has to pay a one-time guarantee fee of 2% to 3.75% of the principal; that fee is usually passed on to the borrower.

To qualify for SBA loan assistance, a company must be operated for profit and fall within size standards. It cannot be a business engaged in the creation or distribution of ideas or opinions, such as newspapers, magazines, and academic schools, or in speculation or investment in rental real estate. SBA-guaranteed loans can be used for the following purposes:

- Expand or renovate facilities
- Purchase machinery, equipment, fixtures, and leasehold improvements
- Finance receivables and augment working capital
- Refinance existing debt (for compelling credit reasons of benefit to the borrower)
- Provide seasonal lines of credit
- Construct commercial buildings
- Purchase land or buildings

## Applying for an SBA Loan

The bank will require your company to have adequate paid-in equity, which usually means that the owners have invested sufficient money in the company that the debt-to-equity ratio will be no more than 4:1. Put another way, if you are seeking a \$100,000 loan, your paid-in equity must be at least \$20,000. For a startup company, the bank will also expect that the paid-in equity will be cash. Another important condition is that everyone who owns 20% or more of the company must provide personal guarantees.

You'll have a better chance of getting a loan in a timely manner from a bank that processes lots of SBA loans rather than one that processes only a few. Visit the SBA Website and click on "Local Resources," then on the state where your business is located, and then on "2009 Lender Ranking." This will produce a list of banks that have made at least one SBA-guaranteed loan in the most recent reporting period. For example, at the time of this writing, a Massachusetts entrepreneur would find Citizens Bank at the top of the list, with 256 loans totaling \$11.4 million—followed by Sovereign Bank, with 128 loans totaling \$9.8 million; TD Bank, with 87 loans totaling \$15.8 million; Rockland Trust Company, with 87 loans totaling \$8.9 million; and Bank of America, with 54 loans totaling \$1.6 million. At the bottom of the rankings are banks that made only one or two loans in the same period.<sup>9</sup>

Once you've selected a bank:

- ❑ Prepare a current business balance sheet listing all assets and liabilities and the net worth. Startup businesses should prepare an estimated balance sheet including the amount invested by the owner and others.
- ❑ Prepare a profit-and-loss statement for the current period and the most recent three fiscal years. Startup businesses should prepare a detailed projection of earnings and expenses for at least the first year of operation.
- ❑ Prepare a personal financial statement of the proprietor and each partner or stockholder owning 20% or more of the business.
- ❑ List collateral to be offered as security for the loan.
- ❑ List any existing liens.
- ❑ State the amount of the requested loan and the purposes for which it is intended.

If your loan request is refused, contact the local SBA office regarding other loans that may be available from the SBA.

## Getting Traction with an SBA-Guaranteed Loan

Fred Curtis, Sr., founded Curtis Tractor Cab, Inc., in 1969 when he saw the opportunity to serve a niche market for the manufacture of after-market cab enclosures for small tractors. The company initially operated out of a small garage in Worcester, Massachusetts. Fred Curtis, Jr., started working full-time at his father's company in 1991 at the age of 21, when total sales were approximately \$1 million. Under Fred Jr.'s leadership, the company has made periodic capital investments and refinements to its manufacturing systems, including the company's major expansion in 1995 when it acquired and renovated its manufacturing facility using SBA's 504/Certified Development Loan Program. The project total was \$1 million, with Banknorth Massachusetts providing the first mortgage and the SBA the second mortgage. The loan enabled the company to manufacture its products from "soup to nuts" onsite and to significantly diversify its product line.

At the time the 504 project was approved, the company employed 62 people and generated revenues of \$5.5 million; since then, the number of employees has skyrocketed to 220 and revenues to \$44 million—increases of 249% in the number of employees and 700% in revenues since 1995. Because of this



**Kubota cab manufactured by Curtis Industries. The Curtis family has designed, manufactured, and distributed vehicle cab systems and snowplows for over 35 years.**

phenomenal growth in revenues and numbers of jobs, Fred Jr. was named the 2005 Massachusetts Small Business Person of the Year and placed third in the SBA's national competition.<sup>10</sup>

## Planning Cash Flow and Planning Profits

Although there is a relationship between them, cash flows are not the same as profit. **Profit** is an accounting concept designed to measure the overall performance of the company. It is a somewhat nebulous concept, open to variations in measurement techniques and accounting conventions, each of which produces somewhat different results, which are then open to different interpretations.

In contrast, **cash flows** are not always a direct measure of a company's performance. For example, take two opposite extremes: a young, profitable company sinking as many funds as it can get into a new venture and an old, unprofitable company heading for bankruptcy. The results in terms of cash flow are likely to be the same: *declining cash balances*. A company can earn a handsome profit and have a net cash outflow in the same month if it pays for new capital equipment in that month. It can equally well show substantial loss and an increased cash balance in one month if the results of new financing or the proceeds from the sale of substantial fixed assets are received in that month.

However, the concept of *cash* is not nebulous: Either the company has a certain amount of cash or it does not. And a lack of cash is critical. A company can sustain losses for a time without suffering, but a company that has no cash is insolvent and in imminent danger of bankruptcy, no matter what its profit picture may be.

Thus, many financial transactions that do not enter into the calculation of profit—such as buying new fixed assets, getting additional financing, and paying dividends—do enter into cash flows. Similarly, some transactions that enter into the determination of profit—notably, the deduction of depreciation and the amortization of expenses—do not directly enter into cash flows (although there are cash-flow benefits related to taxes) because they are noncash transactions with no effect on cash balances.

Many entrepreneurs and bankers are becoming increasingly interested in a concept called *free cash flow*. Free cash flow is equal to the firm's cash flow from operations minus investments in capital expenditures that are required to maintain the company's competitiveness. For example, a firm that has \$1,500,000 in cash from operations and that spends \$2,000,000 in property, plant, and equipment has a *negative* free cash flow of \$500,000 (\$1,500,000 – \$2,000,000). This implies that the firm does not have surplus funds from operations, as it is, in fact, borrowing in order to maintain appropriate levels of capital investments.

Another term that is becoming more common is *pretax undedicated cash flow*. Undedicated cash flow is equal to free cash flow plus tax plus interest expense. Undedicated cash flow, or “raider” cash flow, is emerging as an important variable in appraising the investment attraction of engaging in leveraged buyouts, restructuring, and mergers of publicly owned companies. Prospective buyers (raiders) often add back interest and taxes so that they can get the broadest possible picture of the company's available cash. Then the investors determine how they could redirect the cash flows. Since the prospective buyers are going to be owners and not passive shareholders, they are more concerned about having control of the cash than about operating profits. Often much of the operating cash flow is devoted to servicing debt after the transaction. As the firm begins to service the debt arrangement, the equity in the company automatically grows.



### CONCLUSION

*Working capital* is often misinterpreted as being synonymous with *firm liquidity*. In fact, only a part of net working capital is liquid; the balance of net working capital is tied up in firm operations. *Liquidity* is largely a function of a firm's growth and the timing of receipts and payments. In situations where payments are made to suppliers before customers pay, growth in sales generally results in lower liquidity.

Preparing a cash-flow forecast assists entrepreneurs in assessing the timing and maturity of funding needs. With a cash-flow forecast, the entrepreneur can more easily determine the type of funding to procure and the small, growing firm's ability to grow with available funds. This includes efficiencies in accounts receivable, inventories, payables, and accruals. To the extent that entrepreneurs can successfully negotiate with customers and suppliers, they will be able to manage future growth. However, small firms are rarely afforded the benefits associated with growth funded exclusively through internal cash generation. The more common occurrence includes external debt sources, leasing, cash innovations, and small firm/governmental programs. Such is the fate of the small business entrepreneur. Early growth stages result in large funding requirements and huge risks for those who can't meet payroll and supplier demands. However, once an entrepreneur has negotiated for a level of funds from external sources, including bank financing, privately placed debt, leasing options, and other financing innovations, that entrepreneur has a better chance for long-term corporate survival.

**Reflection Point****Your Thoughts ...**

1. What sources of capital do you have? Are you willing to take on a home equity loan? Use your personal credit cards? How much of a "nest egg" do you need to feel comfortable pursuing a new venture?
2. What do you expect your cash conversion cycle to be? Is there a way to improve it? What accounts receivable terms are common in your industry? How should you manage accounts receivable?
3. How much inventory does your business need to carry to avoid stock-outs? What terms can you get on inventory (accounts payable)?
4. Can you finance your accounts receivable? What means (bank loans, factoring, etc.) are most available to you? Can you get loans on your inventory?
5. What short-term loans are needed for your business (e.g., line of credit)? When will you be bank creditworthy?

**YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL**

Visit the SBA Website ([www.sba.gov](http://www.sba.gov)). The Website has useful information on a number of startup issues. Take a look at the SBA loan programs. What steps do you need to undertake to qualify for these programs?

**WEB EXERCISE**

## NOTES

---

- <sup>1</sup> *Federal Reserve Statistical Release: Consumer Credit.* February 2009. [www.federalreserve.gov/releases/g19/current/g19.pdf](http://www.federalreserve.gov/releases/g19/current/g19.pdf).
- <sup>2</sup> *Federal Reserve Statistical Release: Assets and Liabilities of Commercial Bank in the US.* [www.federalreserve.gov/releases/h8/Current](http://www.federalreserve.gov/releases/h8/Current).
- <sup>3</sup> *Financial Services for Small Businesses in the U.S.* Rockville, MD: Packaged Facts. March 2008. p. 272.
- <sup>4</sup> Excerpted from R. McCarthy, N. Heintz, and B. Burlingham. Starting Up in a Down Economy. *Inc.* May 1, 2008. [www.inc.com/magazine/20080501/starting-up-in-a-down-economy.html](http://www.inc.com/magazine/20080501/starting-up-in-a-down-economy.html).
- <sup>5</sup> O'Malley, T. 50 VCs Say No and I Still Did It. *American Venture*, p. 36. December 2005.
- <sup>6</sup> Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council. *Reports—Findings from Analysis of Nationwide Summary Statistics for 2007 Community Reinvestment Act Data Fact Sheet (July 2008)*; Author. July 2008. [www.ffiec.gov/hmcrpr/cra\\_fs07.htm](http://www.ffiec.gov/hmcrpr/cra_fs07.htm).
- <sup>7</sup> Williams, V., and Ou, C. *Small Business and Micro Business Lending in the United States for Data Years 2006–2007*. Small Business Research Summary No. 237. June 2008. [www.sba.gov/advo/research/rs327.pdf](http://www.sba.gov/advo/research/rs327.pdf).
- <sup>8</sup> Excerpted from the SBA Website. [www.sba.gov](http://www.sba.gov).
- <sup>9</sup> [www.sba.gov/idc/groups/public/documents/ma\\_boston/ma\\_08loanvolume.pdf](http://www.sba.gov/idc/groups/public/documents/ma_boston/ma_08loanvolume.pdf).
- <sup>10</sup> Excerpted from the SBA Website. [www.sba.gov/ma/MA\\_SS2005\\_10.html](http://www.sba.gov/ma/MA_SS2005_10.html).

## FEED Resource Recovery

CASE

It was the spring of 2006 and Shane Eten had just won a \$20,000 sustainability award at the highly competitive Rice University Business Plan Competition. Shane was already thinking about how he would use the \$20,000. This wasn't the first time his idea, Feed Resource Recovery (**feed**), had won or placed well in a business plan competition—he'd finished second at the Babson College, second at the University of Colorado, and second at the UC–Berkeley competitions. Although the prize money and services in kind were helpful, Shane knew that he couldn't successfully launch his business on prize money alone. Shane estimated that he would need \$150,000–\$250,000 to build the anaerobic digester prototype and much more money after that to scale production and sell the system across the country. Where would he get the money?

Based upon his success in the business plan competitions and through strong personal networking, Shane had talked to several venture capitalists and they all expressed strong interest in the business. Potential investors seemed to be coming out of the woodwork, but still Shane was uneasy. How much of the company would he have to give up if he was going to secure their investments? Even from his preliminary conversations with the venture capitalists, he knew that the valuation<sup>1</sup> of the company was only going to be part of the problem. He was discouraged by the grim prospect of having to jump through hoops, answering the venture capitalists endless list of questions. He figured it would take at least six months of battling back and forth over equity and shares during which time the venture capitalists would be looking over his shoulder, and all this before a prototype was ever built. Furthermore, several of the venture capitalists were saying “this is a great idea, come back when you have a prototype built,” so Shane wasn't even sure if they were really interested or just talking. But what other choice did he have? How could he raise the substantial amount of funding that he would require to assemble a team and build a working prototype? And how could he accomplish all of this without giving up all rights to his idea? The task was daunting and the answers were scarce.

### From Athlete to Entrepreneur: The History of Shane Eten

Shane Eten was born in Philadelphia and lived in a number of places while his father attended medical school. The family eventually settled in Cape Cod, Massachusetts, where his father and mother started a family-owned medical practice. Living near the sea inspired Shane's father.

*My father built a sailboat in our back yard. He started when I was in sixth grade. He told me he was going to build a sailboat and sail it around the world. He was probably a little crazy, but he actually built a thirty-six foot trimaran.<sup>2</sup>*

For as long as Shane could remember, his father had a dream of building the sailboat. He would wake Shane up early in the morning on weekends and make him help work on the boat, sometimes working 12-hour days. After several years of effort, they successfully launched it and saw it sail.

---

This case was prepared by Reuben Zacharakis-Jutz under the direction of Professor Andrew Zacharakis. © Copyright Babson College. Funding provided by the John H. Muller Chair in Entrepreneurship. All rights reserved.

<sup>1</sup> The valuation of a company is broken into two parts. The pre-money valuation is how much the company is deemed to be worth prior to the investment. The post-money valuation is the pre-money valuation plus the investment. The percentage of equity that the investor receives is the investment/post-money valuation. The percentage that the entrepreneur retains is the pre-money valuation/post-money valuation.

<sup>2</sup> A trimaran is a fast pleasure sailboat with three parallel hulls.

*Although at the time I really hated working on that boat, looking back I realize that it was a very important part of my childhood because it taught me the importance of hard work and taking a dream you have and making it reality.*

Like many boys, Shane was more interested in playing sports than school. He always enjoyed the team aspect and the competitive nature that came with athletics. His goal was to play Division I basketball in college. Hampered by knee injuries but still wanting to pursue his dream of playing college basketball, Shane chose to attend Trinity College, a Division III school and play ball there. Unfortunately, his knees never fully recovered from a series of knee surgeries, so Shane never had a chance to play in college.

At Trinity, Shane majored in psychology and graduated in 2000. Although he enjoyed studying psychology, Shane didn't want to pursue a career in the field, but he didn't know exactly what he wanted.

*I really didn't enjoy school and to continue down the psychology career path would require me going back to school almost immediately. I like getting out there and getting my hands dirty with real work. In the field of psychology, I would have been doing a lot of research and theoretical education-based work. I wasn't ready for that. I wanted to get out in the world and make something happen.*

After graduating from Trinity, Shane went on many interviews and eventually found a job working for an up and coming computer company, Angstrom Microsystems. Angstrom Microsystems built supercomputers from off-the-shelf components and Linux software. Shane loved working for this fast growing entrepreneurial company because his job was never the same day-to-day. He had the opportunity to work with many different aspects of the business. His original job was working with vendors. Then he moved his way up to product development, and finally he settled in customer account management. While Shane was with Angstrom, the company grew from \$500,000 to \$15 million in sales in his first eight months. With the hands-on experience he gained and the opportunity of being able to see how so many aspects of a company worked, Shane realized:

*Entrepreneurship is fun and, most importantly, competitive. There's a real science to starting a company. It was at this time that I first started thinking about building my own company.*

Unfortunately, Angstrom's success was short-lived as the market took a turn for the worse when one of Angstrom's largest customers stopped growing. The CFO of Angstrom left for a position at a candle company. He called Shane and convinced him to come along for the ride. The position that Shane had been offered was 180 degrees different from his job at Angstrom and an opportunity to test his abilities in a new way. Although Shane liked the tech industry, he decided to give it a shot. So at age 24 he started as a manager of a candle manufacturing plant.

*It was a drastic change. Laurence Candle Company was a sixty-year-old, third-generation company, and I was managing people mostly older than me—some who had been working there for thirty years.*

He was forced to get on the floor and get dirty learning the process of making candles.

The Laurence Candle Company was struggling because its product was very similar to another established brand, Yankee Candle. The company needed new ideas so Shane raised his hand and asked if they would give him a shot at designing a new line of candles. After doing a bunch of market research and going to trade shows to see what was out there, he launched a new line of candles made from a new type of wax made out of soy. Soy wax was environmentally friendly because the wax was made from an all-natural crop; it was considered

renewable and therefore sustainable. The soy wax candle line took off. Not only was soy cheaper than traditional paraffin wax, but also it could be sold as all-natural for 30%–40% more than traditional candles. Sales jumped instantly. It saved the company.

*There was a new consumer emerging at this time, and if you could say that it was all-natural, then you could say that it was sustainable or noble. This new brand of customer was willing to pay a premium for environmentally friendly products.*

Shane put in 60- to 70-hour workweeks developing the line of soy candles. He also started research on adding biodegradable plastic wrappers to the candles. It was at this point that Shane knew if he was going to put in this much time and effort toward an idea, the next time it would be for himself and his own company.

Working for small companies, Shane had learned a lot about how the business world worked, but he knew that he needed a stronger foundation in accounting and working with numbers. If he was going to be successful in starting and managing his own ventures, he was going to have to go back for an MBA. At 28 years of age, he decided it was time to go back to school. Soon after he applied, Shane was accepted to Babson College.

## The CleanTech Industry

Shane entered Babson with a goal of finding an idea to launch his own business. He was intrigued with opportunities in the Clean Technology space, especially around combating global warming. Investment and growth in the CleanTech industry exploded in 2007, passing the record set in 2006 in the first three quarters.<sup>3</sup> Exhibit 11.1 shows an explosive upward investment trend.<sup>4</sup>

The increased growth and investment in the CleanTech industry has been brought on not only by the large price increases in gas and other fossil fuels but also by the raised awareness of global warming by prominent figures such as former Vice President Al Gore. Gore's work with the United Nations Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, his winning the Nobel Peace Prize, and his involvement in the Academy Award-winning documentary *An Inconvenient Truth* have brought to light the serious issues of climate change and global warming. These works have also brought legitimacy and an increased interest in the CleanTech industry.

*Taken at face value, the surprisingly entertaining “An Inconvenient Truth” provides an idealistic, persuasive and compelling dissection of the perils of global warming. Frightening and timely, the smartly organized documentary is an urgent plea for responsibility and action as well as an impassioned call to heed the ominous warnings of science.<sup>5</sup>*

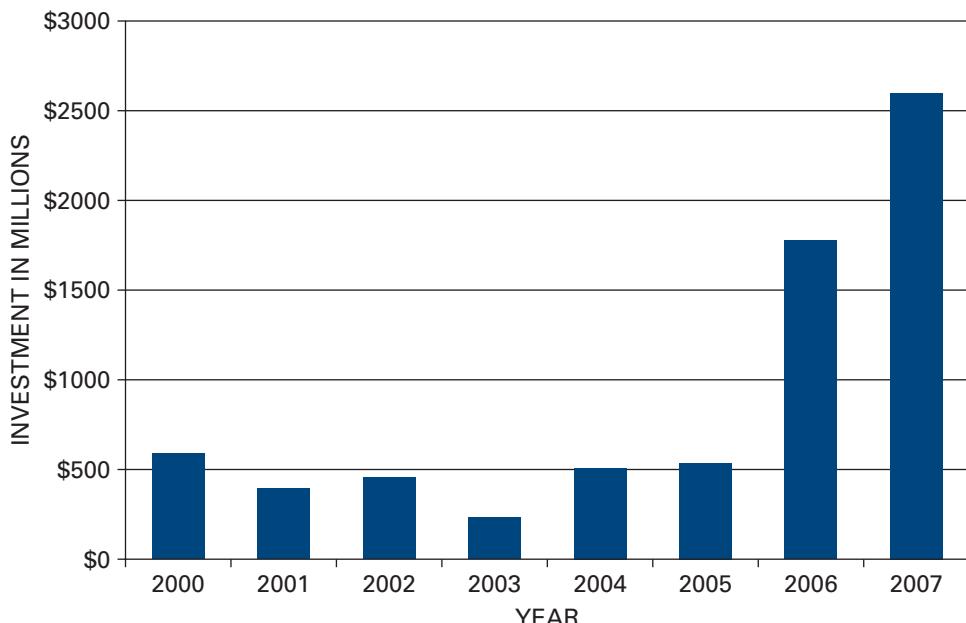
*Gore's words resonated with Shane. As Gore stated:*

*But along with the danger we face from global warming, this crisis also brings unprecedented opportunities. What are the opportunities such a crisis also offers? They include not just new jobs and new profits, though there will be plenty of both, we can build clean engines, we can harness*

<sup>3</sup> November 28, 2007. *CleanTech Venture Investments by US Firms Break Record in 2007*. National Venture Capital Association (NVCA). Thompson Financial Press Release. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from <http://nvca.org/pdf/CleanTechInterimPR.pdf>.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid.

<sup>5</sup> Ogle, C. June 9, 2006. Seeing Entertaining Documentary Makes You Want to Save the World. *Miami Herald* online movie review. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from <http://ae.miami.com/entertainment/ui/miami/movie.html?id=616935&reviewId=20952>.

**EXHIBIT 11.1****Annual CleanTech Investment**

*Source:* National Venture Capital Association.

*the sun and the wind; we can stop wasting energy; we can use our planet's plentiful coal resources without heating the planet.*

*The procrastinators and deniers would have us believe this will be expensive. But in recent years, dozens of companies have cut emissions of heat-trapping gases while saving money. Some of the world's largest companies are moving aggressively to capture the enormous economic opportunities offered by a clean energy future.*

*But there's something even more precious to be gained if we do the right thing. The climate crisis also offers us the chance to experience what very few generations in history have had the privilege of knowing: a generational mission; the exhilaration of a compelling moral purpose; a shared and unifying cause; the thrill of being forced by circumstances to put aside the pettiness and conflict that so often stifle the restless human need for transcendence; the opportunity to rise.<sup>6</sup>*

Consumers and the public in general are expecting companies to be more eco-friendly; they want to see real efforts made toward carbon reduction and recycling. This has encouraged companies to race toward new technologies in order to capture a piece of this new market. One example of the efforts that mainstream companies are making is Google's recent pledge to become a carbon neutral company.

*Google today announced a new strategic initiative to develop electricity from renewable energy sources that will be cheaper than electricity produced from coal. The newly created initiative, known as RE<C, will focus initially on advanced solar thermal power, wind power technologies, enhanced geothermal systems and other potential breakthrough technologies.*

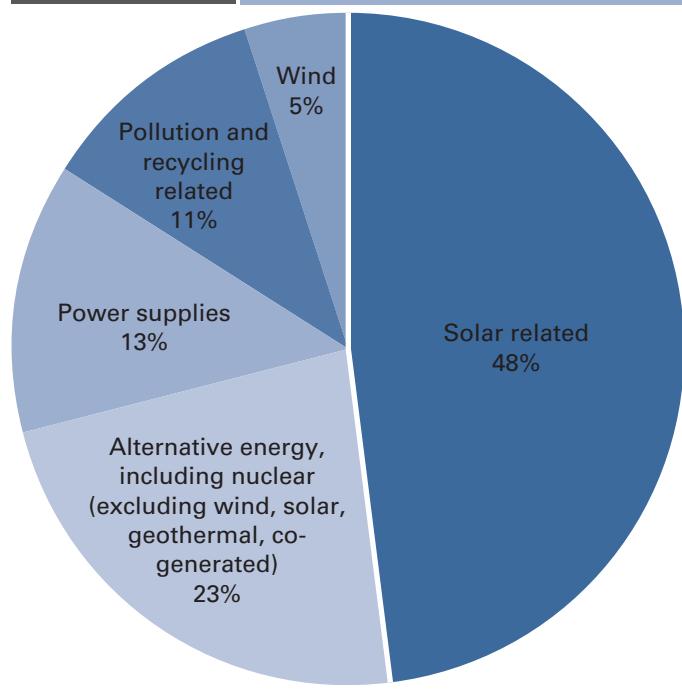
<sup>6</sup> Excerpt from Gore, A. 2006. *An Inconvenient Truth: The Planetary Emergency of Global Warming and What We Can Do About It.* Paramount Classics.

*RE<C is hiring engineers and energy experts to lead its research and development work, which will begin with a significant effort on solar thermal technology, and will also investigate enhanced geothermal systems and other areas. In 2008, Google expects to spend tens of millions on research and development and related investments in renewable energy. As part of its capital planning process, the company also anticipates investing hundreds of millions of dollars in breakthrough renewable energy projects which generate positive returns.<sup>7</sup>*

Another example is Walmart. Although Walmart has faced much criticism for its energy consumption and pollution practices, the company has invested large amounts of money in green technologies. For example, Walmart installed solar power in 22 of its super centers, which accounts for roughly 1% of the U.S. super centers. Walmart has also made other green commitments promising to decrease its carbon footprint. It has pledged to eventually run off 100% of renewable energy sources. In the short run, company officials say they will adapt old stores to be 25% more efficient and new stores 30% more efficient.<sup>8</sup>

The increased interest in clean technology has attracted many investors. Exhibit 11.2 shows the distribution of investment in the CleanTech industry by subcategory.<sup>9</sup>

## EXHIBIT 11.2 U.S. CleanTech Investment by Industry



Source: National Venture Capital Association.

<sup>7</sup> Fuller, J. November 27, 2007. *Google's Goal: Renewable Energy Cheaper than Coal Creates Renewable Energy R&D Group and Supports Breakthrough Technologies*. Google Press Center, Mountain View, CA. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.google.com/intl/en/press/presrel/20071127\\_green.html](http://www.google.com/intl/en/press/presrel/20071127_green.html).

<sup>8</sup> Walmart. *Environmental Overview*. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.walmartstores.com/GlobalWMStoresWeb/navigate.do?catg=345](http://www.walmartstores.com/GlobalWMStoresWeb/navigate.do?catg=345).

<sup>9</sup> NVCA 2007.

With the wealth of interest by angel investors and venture capitalists alike, many new companies have hit the ground running and have found success. This explains the high interest that Shane has received from these investors. The CleanTech Venture Network estimates that over 240 CleanTech companies could be positioned for a liquidity event between 2007 and 2009.<sup>10</sup> A small niche within the CleanTech sector known as waste conversion technologies is beginning to catch on. One such example is Converted Organics Inc. Converted Organics, based in Boston, is a development-stage company dedicated to producing a valuable all-natural, organic soil additive through food waste recycling. Started in 2003, Converted Organics Inc. is a five-employee operation that has just recently gone public raising \$9.9 million in an IPO and has a market capitalization of \$14.3 million.<sup>11</sup> Other examples of recent transactions involving waste conversion providers are noted in Exhibit 11.3.

### EXHIBIT 11.3 | Sample Investments into Clean Tech Companies

- **BlueFire Ethanol, Inc.** is established to deploy the commercially ready, patented, and proven Arkenol Technology Process for the profitable conversion of cellulosic ("Green Waste") waste materials to ethanol. They acquired a \$15,000,000 investment from Quercus Trust.<sup>12</sup>
- **Disenco Energy PLC**, a UK-based developer of a revolutionary home power generating unit known as the Disenco Home Power Plant, closed their initial IPO for \$2,750,000.<sup>13</sup>
- **Oakleaf** merged with Greenleaf, which rents stationary compactors, containers, balers, and other waste management and recycling equipment to commercial businesses and haulers.<sup>14</sup>
- Scotts paid \$20 million last year for **Rod McLellan Co.**, which focuses on naturally derived fertilizers.<sup>15</sup>
- The Carlyle Group acquired residuals recycler **Synagro Technologies** for about \$447.5 million in cash, including the assumption of ~\$310 million in debt. Synagro operates at over 1,000 wastewater treatment plants throughout the country, providing operations and residuals management services. Many of these wastewater treatment plants employ anaerobic digestion. The company is using this experience to expand into the agribusiness market with its first operational facility, which was designed and built in Chino, California. This digester is designed for 225 wet tons of fresh cow manure per day. It employs dewatering and onsite cogeneration using Capstone Micro turbines.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>10</sup> Parker, N. February 14, 2007. CleanTech Is Ripe for Growth. *Israel Venture Capital & Private Equity Journal (IVCJ)*. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.altassets.com/casefor/sectors/2007/nz9921.php](http://www.altassets.com/casefor/sectors/2007/nz9921.php).

<sup>11</sup> Van der Pool, L. March 16, 2007. Spurned by VCs, Waste Conversion Startup Goes Public. *Boston Journal Online*. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.bizjournals.com/boston/stories/2007/03/19/story8.html](http://www.bizjournals.com/boston/stories/2007/03/19/story8.html).

<sup>12</sup>January 8, 2008. *BlueFire Ethanol Closes \$15.5 Million in Financing*. BlueFire Press Release. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from <http://bluefireethanol.com/pr/45/>.

<sup>13</sup>February 26, 2007. *Disenco Energy PLC Closes IPO for US\$2,750,000 and Lists on the TSX Venture Exchange*. PR Newswire Europe Ltd. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.prnewswire.co.uk/cgi/news/release?id=191571](http://www.prnewswire.co.uk/cgi/news/release?id=191571).

<sup>14</sup>July 26, 2004. *Greenleaf Compaction, Inc. Has Merged with Oakleaf Waste Management*. Oakleaf News Releases. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.oakleafwaste.com/oakleaf/news/releases/2004/072604\\_2.asp](http://www.oakleafwaste.com/oakleaf/news/releases/2004/072604_2.asp).

<sup>15</sup>Lambert, E. September 4, 2006. *Organic Miracle Needed*. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.forbes.com/forbes/2006/0904/066.html](http://www.forbes.com/forbes/2006/0904/066.html).

<sup>16</sup>January 29, 2007. *The Carlyle Group to Acquire Synagro Technologies for \$5.76 per Share*. Carlyle Group News. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from [www.carlyle.com/News/NewsArchive/2007/item7052.html](http://www.carlyle.com/News/NewsArchive/2007/item7052.html).

## Roots of Feed Idea

At Babson, the entrepreneurship professors stress the importance of opportunity and an entrepreneur's fit to that opportunity. So Shane thought he should leverage his past experience and start his own candle line. However, copyright laws and low profit margins discouraged him. Next he looked at biodegradable packaging lines.

*When I had an idea, I would do research for maybe three weeks, and see who else was out there, if the product was feasible, and who the customers were. . . . I would usually find a really big obstacle. Or I just found a company that does this or a big brand that does this or someone that tried to start it and it didn't work. And when I got to biodegradable plastic, I realized there was no way to compost it, so it wasn't as environmentally friendly as I had first imagined. But during this search, I came across composting technology. This seemed like a big idea and a big opportunity. The key with composting that makes it so unique is that someone is getting paid for their raw materials, which is basically trash. Companies paid to have trash hauled away, so that meant composters could get their raw material for free or even be paid to take it away.*

Shane started doing research into the composting industry and was intrigued by waste conversion technology. He looked at gasification,<sup>17</sup> plasma arc,<sup>18</sup> aerobic composting,<sup>19</sup> and finally anaerobic digestion.<sup>20</sup> Anaerobic digestion caught his eye. Anaerobic digestion was a relatively proven and cheap technology, and it seemed the most viable option. Next Shane began to look at the waste stream market. He wanted to know who the largest waste producers were, what kind of waste they produced, and what the competition looked like in those industries. He looked at households and small restaurants and found that in most cases they would not generate enough waste to justify an onsite digester and the cost of transporting the waste to a central location would be prohibitive. After further research, Shane found that the food waste produced by processing plants and supermarkets turned out to be the most promising. This was because they both were producing large amounts of food waste and the volume was concentrated in a single location (see Exhibit 11.4).

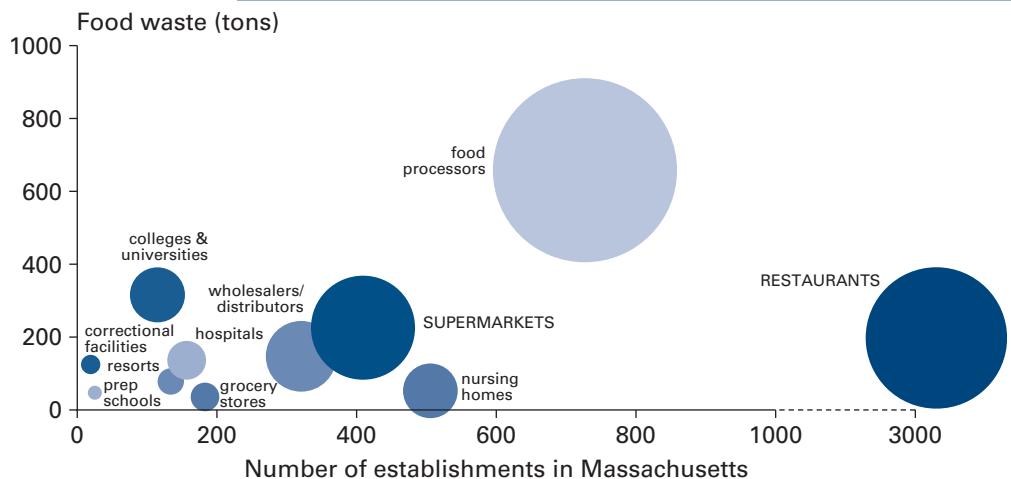
*Babson is great because there are tons of ideas floating around. The professors give us the tools to analyze whether an idea is an opportunity. You start with a problem, and if there's a problem, there's potentially an opportunity. So you have a bunch of students running around with two-page summaries on their ideas, sharing their thoughts, and seeking feedback during breaks from class. The school also has a "Rocket Pitch" event where you get three minutes to convince the audience that your idea has real potential. It takes a lot of work to learn how to pitch your concept in three minutes, but that process really helps you understand the issues around the idea.*

<sup>17</sup> **Gasification** is a process that converts organic material or biomass into gasses or liquid fuels by a combination of high temperatures and reduced oxygen supply. (Schilli, J. Using Gasification to Process Municipal Solid Waste. Environmental and Resource Management Group of HDR: *HDR Innovations*, Vol. 12.)

<sup>18</sup> **Plasma arc gasification** is a process in which solid waste is shredded and fed into a furnace where extreme electrical charges bring the temperature above 3,000 degrees. After an hour or so, waste material breaks down into its molecular building blocks, leaving three marketable byproducts: a combustible synthesis gas, or syngas, that can be converted into steam or electricity; metal ingots that can be resold and melted down again; and a glassy solid that can be processed into material for floor tiles or gravel. (Durst, S. March 5, 2007. PROBLEM NO. 3: WASTE DISPOSAL. *Fortune*, Vol. 155, Issue 4, p. B-4.)

<sup>19</sup> **Aerobic composting** is the process of decomposing organic waste using microorganisms and an aerobic or oxygenated environment. (Pace, M., Miller, B., and Farrell-Poe, K. October 1, 1995. The Composting Process. Utah State University Extension. AG-WM 01.)

<sup>20</sup> **Anaerobic digestion** is a biochemical process in which particular kinds of bacteria digest biomass in an oxygen-free environment. Several different types of bacteria work together to break down complex organic wastes in stages, resulting in the production of "biogas." (Retrieved April 1, 2008, from [www.oregon.gov/ENERGY/RENEW/Biomass/biogas.shtml#Anaerobic\\_Digestion](http://www.oregon.gov/ENERGY/RENEW/Biomass/biogas.shtml#Anaerobic_Digestion).)

**EXHIBIT 11.4 Identifying Target Waste Generation Segments<sup>24</sup>**


*Source:* Feed Business Plan.

Shane's two-page opportunity was about the company he wanted to start, which he called Biospan. He would build a large anaerobic digester that would be at a centralized plant and he would collect food waste from restaurants, grocery stores, and even homes to feed the digester and produce compost and biogas. The basic idea made sense—taking waste and producing a usable byproduct. Shane decided that this idea was worth investing time and effort to really understand it. Shane applied to Babson's Entrepreneur Intensity Track (EIT)<sup>21</sup> program with the idea of launching this business.

Through the EIT program, Shane met with a venture capitalist who asked him tough questions like "How are you going to get six million dollars to build a big plant and how are you going to keep Waste Management from doing it bigger and better than you?" Six million dollars was a lot of money, and Shane didn't like the idea of competing with a company like Waste Management who did \$13 billion in revenue each year. By asking the right questions, Shane also realized that a large centralized plant was inefficient. Transporting the waste to the plant and then sending the energy back to users added costs, used energy (gasoline for dump trucks), and wasn't as "Green" as a decentralized unit located where the waste was produced.

Shane then began to look at the industry and who might gain the greatest benefit from a mobile anaerobic system. Food processors, like large pig and chicken farms, already were starting to use anaerobic digestion systems. After more research, Shane found that grocery stores looked like the best option. They already were sorting their waste and sending it to composters, and the volume was low enough to discourage large players from entering. This seemed like a great marketplace for his decentralized systems.

*You didn't have to ask them to change their habits. They were already sorting their waste, and the system could be implemented on location without disrupting their day-to-day operation.*

Shane wanted to get into the industry as efficiently as possible, so he started to look for existing anaerobic systems that he could adapt to his target. He couldn't find any systems that could handle high solid content; they were mostly set up for human or animal waste.

<sup>21</sup> EIT is a curriculum focused on deep business planning and launch of a business during the final year of a student's education.

Furthermore, those companies building these systems were targeting larger scale, centralized plants, not smaller, decentralized systems that Shane envisioned. Many people, mainly the business professionals in anaerobic digestion, were saying that decentralized systems would be too small to be effective. In Europe, they were already using anaerobic digestion for food waste but only on a large scale. From the previous business models and the waste industry's frame of mind, the onsite model was not seen as profitable, but with the increases in energy prices and raised awareness in green tech, it started to make more sense. Shane believed if the technology could be produced, the idea would be easy to market in a food retail industry where the profit margins were razor thin and competition fierce.

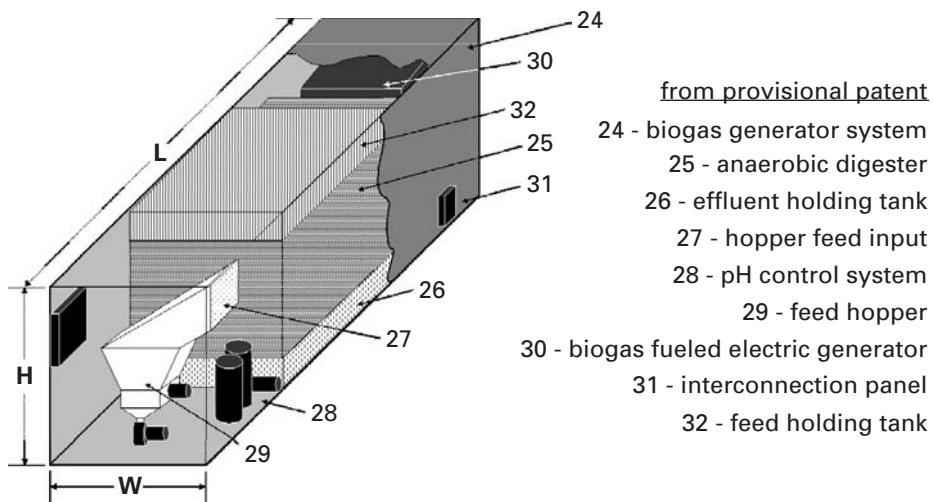
## The Product

The **feed** system, known as the R2, would utilize anaerobic digestion (AD), a clean, safe, and proven technology, to turn biodegradable waste into fuel (biogas) for a distributed electricity generation unit. AD is the breakdown of organic material by microorganisms in the absence of oxygen. Although this process occurs naturally in landfills, AD usually refers to an artificially accelerated operation that processes organic waste to produce biogas and a stable solid residue. People have been turning waste into biogas for hundreds of years, and many developing countries rely on small-scale AD systems for cooking. AD has grown rapidly in Europe, mostly in large centralized plants using advanced technologies. The R2 is a combination of the cheap, compact systems of India and China and the large-scale, expensive, and technologically sophisticated systems of Europe: a fully automated system that enables the customers to process waste and generate energy onsite without changing current waste disposal behavior.

*The decentralized nature of our system meant that you could place the R2 (see Exhibit 11.5) at the back of the store right in the same space that the organic waste dumpster currently occupied. It was critical to our potential customers that this system didn't require more space or alter the footprint of the current store (see Exhibit 11.6).*

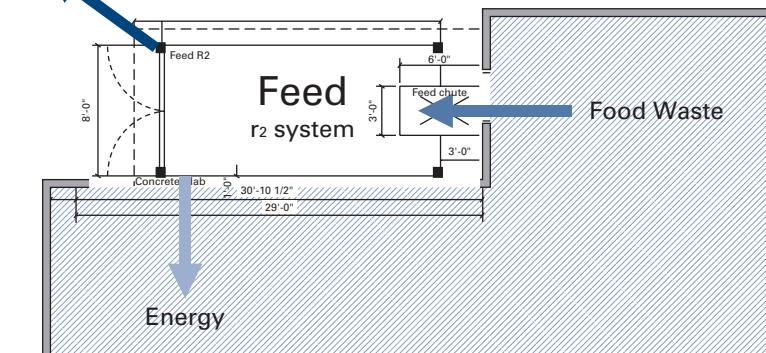
### EXHIBIT 11.5

#### The R2 system: Compact onsite waste conversion for supermarkets



**EXHIBIT 11.6**    **Onsite waste conversion**

Fertilizer



*Source:* Feed Business Plan.

The automation is made possible by the integrated control technology that operates the patented pH-balancing unit to continually optimize system performance. Other novel and patented ideas that differentiate the system include an integrated biogas generator unit, a gravity-fed system that increases efficiency while reducing cost and complexity, a multi-tank system for system reliability and flexibility, and pH balancing of the waste stream to handle diverse waste. Other than biogas, the R2 produces nutrient-rich compost that could potentially be sold to farmers. The projected price that the grocery store would pay for its R2 was around \$300,000.

## Lots of Interest

Craig Benson, a professor at Babson, told Shane that the best way to attract investors was to go and talk to the biggest customer you could find. *“If you can find a customer for your product, investors will be more than willing to get on board,”* Craig noted. Shane started to make as many connections as possible. He called several grocery store chains in the Northeast, including Stop and Shop, Shaw’s, Walmart, and Whole Foods, but it was always hard to get in front of anyone very high up in the ranks. He was always sent to someone who, even if interested, had no power to do anything about it. How could he get in front of the right person?

The success of **feed** in business plan competitions was also bringing a great deal of interest to his anaerobic digester idea. Many of the venture capitalists and investors that were present at the competitions were serious about its investment possibilities. During the Rice Business Plan Competition in spring 2006 when **feed** won the sustainability award, Dow Chemical Venture Group showed an especially strong interest and said they could introduce Shane to Walmart. The Dow group flew Shane to their headquarters and put him on the phone with top executives at Walmart. Shane said the conversation went something like this:

*Does it have a 24 month payback time? I said no and they basically hung up.*

The problem was that Dow and most of the venture capitalists were looking for quick returns and proven ready technology. That meant that Shane had to figure out how to get customer payback down to two years. Moreover, once the investors realized that the final

product was still in the distant future, they were reluctant to invest the time and resources needed. This meant that Shane needed to build a prototype before the venture capitalists would be interested. Shane started looking elsewhere for the needed capital.

Through the grapevine Shane heard about a Massachusetts Technology Collaborative (MTC) grant for onsite energy providers. To be eligible you needed to meet a set power output and find a buyer for the electricity that would sign on to the project. The MTC grant would then pay a certain amount of money for each kilowatt you could generate from the green energy method. Shane had a connection through a friend of the family at Ring Brothers grocery store, a small local grocery store on Cape Cod. Ring Brothers agreed to sign on as the company sponsor and **feed** won the grant for \$195,000.

The grant required that **feed** first run a feasibility study before it could actually start to build the prototype, and the grant provided \$20,000 for the research study. So Shane took a look at how much actual food waste Ring Brothers produced and found that they weren't producing enough waste to make the system feasible for the required energy output of 50 kw that was needed for the grant. Without the proper energy production output, they were forced to tell MTC that they were not going to be eligible for the \$195,000 grant.

## Team Building

Based upon his experience with Ring Brothers and the knowledge that he needed to build a prototype, Shane realized that he didn't have the skill set to do this venture on his own. He needed some technical expertise on the founding team. Shane knew that he would need an engineer to run the actual research and production of the first prototype. He needed someone who could take over a large part of the company and have the ability to get things done without supervision. A friend of Shane's that worked at Raytheon told him that he worked with a young engineer who fit the profile that Shane was looking for.

Ryan Begin specialized in product development at Raytheon, where he led a multidisciplinary team of engineers in the integration of advanced missile defense hardware. While Ryan enjoyed the big paycheck, he was looking for something different. Before Raytheon, Ryan had worked on multiple renewable energy and non-energy products through Clarkson University and other private organizations.

*I wanted to get out of the large corporation and saw the feed concept as really interesting. It was in the green space, where I had done some work before. But most importantly, I could be on the ground floor of something potentially huge.*

When they met, Shane knew that he had found the business partner he was looking for and that Ryan would be a strong addition to the team.

*Ryan has the unique ability to get his hands dirty in putting the prototype together, but at the same time he is also very smart and brings a lot of expertise to the table. He has a great work ethic, and he's the kind of guy that works so hard and is so driven that he makes you feel guilty if you're not working just as hard.*

After their initial meeting, Ryan began to run some of the numbers Shane had presented him regarding the biogas and electricity production of the suggested system. Although he found that many of numbers were on the high end of possibility, they still were within the range of having some real potential.

*I could see that some of Shane's projections were off by a lot, but the potential was there. Also the fact that he already had interested customers and investors reaffirmed my feelings that this could be a great opportunity for me.*

Ryan was leaving a high-paying job at Raytheon with stability and benefits for a job with a new company and little or no salary.

*I had a choice to make, I could continue to take the safe route with Raytheon, or I could put it all on the line to test my skills and have the chance to do something big and exciting. I didn't feel like I was doing any real engineering at Raytheon. Being able to lead product development within the renewable energy field was very appealing to me. I could also see that Shane had real business savvy and really believed strongly in his idea and had what it would take to sell it.*

To entice and reward Ryan, Shane agreed to take him on as a co-founder and to give him some founder's shares. After some back and forth on the amount of stock Ryan would receive in the company, they settled on 20% of the founder's shares and the goal of paying a salary once they had raised a significant amount of investment.

### EXHIBIT 11.7 Feed Income Statement Projections

Income Statement Years 1 to 5 (\$)											
	Year 1		Year 2		Year 3		Year 4		Year 5		
<b>NET REVENUES</b>	320,000	100%	1,880,000	100%	6,555,000	100%	13,985,000	100%	24,345,750	100%	
<b>COST OF REVENUE</b>	332,800	104%	1,440,629	77%	4,939,057	75%	8,794,486	63%	15,538,904	64%	
<b>GROSS PROFIT</b>	(12,800)	-4%	439,371	23%	1,615,943	25%	5,190,514	37%	8,806,846	36%	
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>											
<b>Sales &amp; Marketing</b>	<b>29,600</b>	<b>9%</b>	<b>96,400</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>315,150</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>521,550</b>	<b>4%</b>	<b>838,373</b>	<b>3%</b>	
Salaries & Benefits	0	0%	0	0%	58,500	1%	102,000	1%	108,000	0%	
Initial Branding Efforts	20,000	6%	40,000	2%	60,000	1%	0	0%	0	0%	
Other	9,600	3%	56,400	3%	196,650	3%	419,550	3%	730,373	3%	
<b>Research &amp; Development</b>	<b>14,600</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>190,900</b>	<b>10%</b>	<b>349,300</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>727,550</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>1,062,373</b>	<b>4%</b>	
Salaries & Benefits	9,600	3%	90,900	5%	249,300	4%	527,550	4%	862,373	4%	
Product Development	5,000	2%	100,000	5%	100,000	2%	200,000	1%	200,000	1%	
<b>General and Administration</b>	<b>17,067</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>171,100</b>	<b>9%</b>	<b>485,790</b>	<b>7%</b>	<b>742,417</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>1,048,495</b>	<b>4%</b>	
Salaries & Benefits	0	0%	103,500	6%	300,690	5%	405,600	3%	504,000	2%	
Depreciation	667	0%	4,000	0%	9,000	0%	11,667	0%	11,667	0%	
Rent & Utilities	0	0%	6,000	0%	15,000	0%	15,450	0%	15,914	0%	
Legal Feed	10,000	3%	20,000	1%	30,000	0%	30,000	0%	30,000	0%	
Other	6,400	2%	37,600	2%	131,100	2%	279,700	2%	486,915	2%	
Total Operating Expenses	61,267	19%	458,400	24%	1,150,240	18%	1,991,517	14%	2,949,241	12%	
<b>EARNINGS FROM OPERATIONS</b>	(74,067)	-23%	(19,029)	-1%	465,703	7%	3,198,997	23%	5,857,605	24%	
<b>TAXES</b>	0	0%	0	0%	(149,043)	-2%	(1,279,599)	-9%	(2,343,042)	-10%	
<b>NET EARNINGS</b>	(74,067)	-23%	(19,029)	-1%	316,660	5%	1,919,398	14%	3,514,563	14%	

## Next Steps

With the start of a team and a strong customer interest, Shane and Ryan knew they had to build a functioning prototype. They had run some preliminary numbers and put together some pro-forma financials (see Exhibits 11.7–11.9 for pro-forma financials). They showed that **feed** needed investment now. Where could they get the \$250,000 dollars needed to build the prototype (see Exhibit 11.10)? While most venture capitalists wouldn't invest at this stage, there were a few who might—but at what valuation and how long would it take to close the deal? Shane also could raise the money through family and friends, but this would take time as well. Shane and Ryan were anxious to get started, but they knew if they couldn't build a prototype, **feed** would never get off the ground.

EXHIBIT 11.8 Feed Balance Sheet Projections		Begin	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
<b>ASSETS</b>							
<b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>							
Cash	250,000	174,926	140,904	866,314	3,127,462	7,174,275	
Accounts Receivable		1,200	10,159	40,000	234,000	772,000	
Inventories		0	0	60,000	130,000	331,200	
Other Current Assets		204	1,224	60,000	130,000	276,000	
Total Current Assets	250,000	176,330	152,287	1,026,314	3,621,462	8,553,475	
<b>PROPERTY &amp; EQUIPMENT</b>	0	1,500	16,000	29,250	32,500	31,250	
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	250,000	177,830	168,287	1,055,564	3,653,962	8,584,725	
<b>LIABILITIES &amp; SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>							
<b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>							
Short-Term Debt	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Accounts Payable & Accrued Expenses		1,693	10,159	522,000	1,131,000	2,401,200	
Other Current Liabilities		204	1,224	60,000	130,000	276,000	
Current Portion of Long-Term Debt	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Total Current Liabilities	0	1,897	11,383	582,000	1,261,000	2,677,200	
<b>LONG-TERM DEBT (less current portion)</b>	0	0	0	0	0	0	
<b>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>							
Common Stock	250,000	250,000	250,000	250,000	250,000	250,000	
Preferred Stock	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Retained Earnings		(74,067)	(93,096)	223,564	2,142,962	5,657,525	
Total Equity	250,000	175,933	156,904	473,564	2,392,962	5,907,525	
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES &amp; EQUITY</b>	250,000	177,830	168,287	1,055,564	3,653,962	8,584,725	

**EXHIBIT 11.9****Feed Cash-Flow Projections**

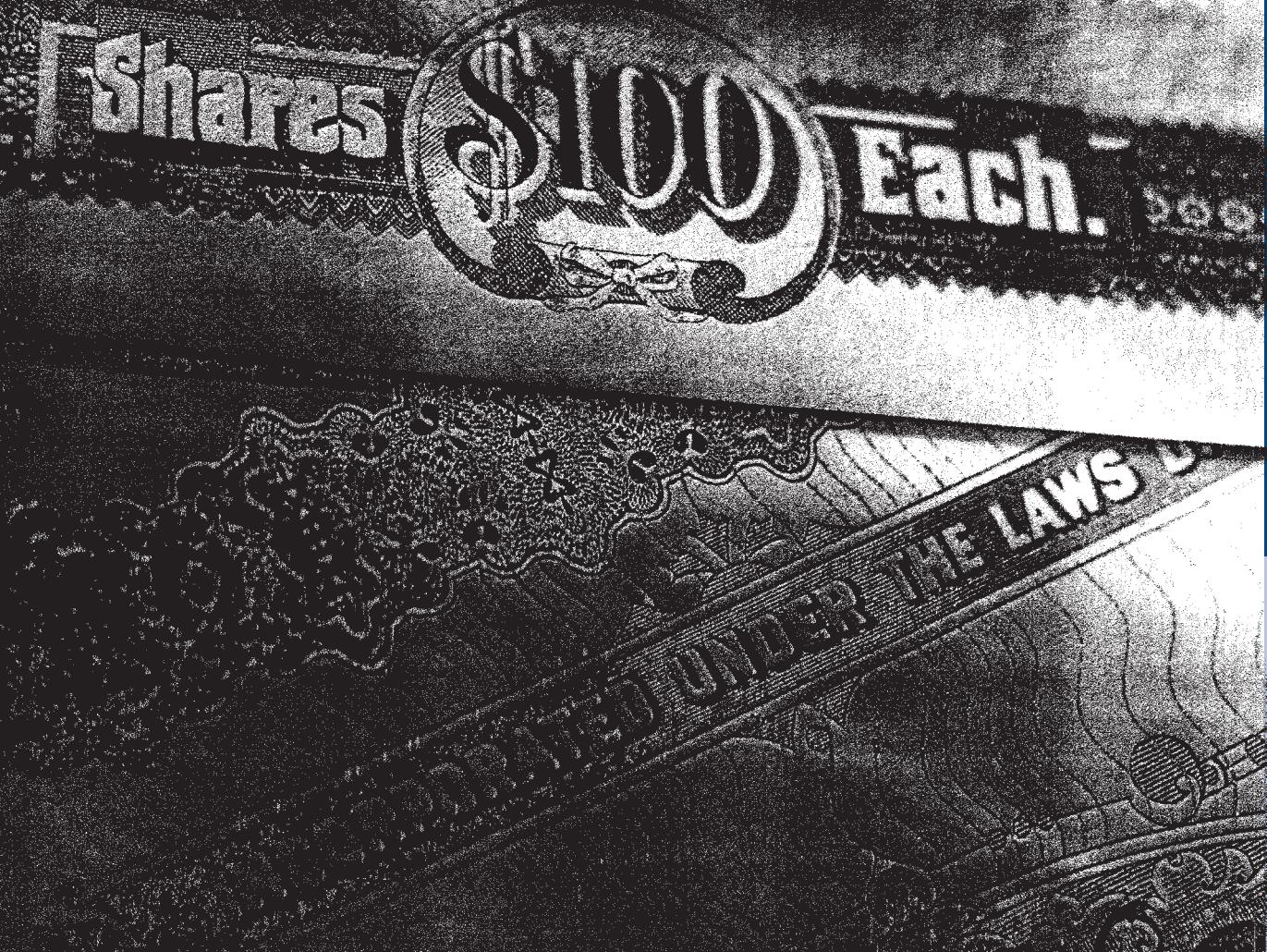
	<b>Year 1</b>	<b>Year 2</b>	<b>Year 3</b>	<b>Year 4</b>	<b>Year 5</b>
<b>OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>					
Net Earnings	(74,067)	(19,029)	316,660	1,919,398	3,514,563
Depreciation	500	5,500	11,750	16,750	21,250
Working Capital Changes					
(Increase)/Decrease Accounts Receivable	(1,200)	(8,959)	(29,841)	(194,000)	(538,000)
(Increase)/Decrease Inventories	0	0	(60,000)	(70,000)	(201,200)
(Increase)/Decrease Other Current Assets	(204)	(1,020)	(58,776)	(70,000)	(146,000)
Increase/(Decrease) Accts Pay & Accrd Expenses	1,693	8,466	511,841	609,000	1,270,200
Increase/(Decrease) Other Current Liab	204	1,020	58,776	70,000	146,000
Net Cash Provided/(Used) by Operating Activities	(73,074)	(14,022)	750,410	2,281,148	4,066,813
<b>INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>					
Property & Equipment	(2,000)	(20,000)	(25,000)	(20,000)	(20,000)
Other					
Net Cash Used in Investing Activities	(2,000)	(20,000)	(25,000)	(20,000)	(20,000)
<b>FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>					
Increase/(Decrease) Short-Term Debt	0	0	0	0	0
Increase/(Decrease) Curr. Portion LTD	0	0	0	0	0
Increase/(Decrease) Long-Term Debt	0	0	0	0	0
Increase/(Decrease) Common Stock	0	0	0	0	0
Increase/(Decrease) Preferred Stock	0	0	0	0	0
Dividends Declared	0	0	0	0	0
Net Cash Provided/(Used) by Financing	0	0	0	0	0
<b>INCREASE/(DECREASE) IN CASH</b>					
	(75,074)	(34,022)	725,410	2,261,148	4,046,813
<b>CASH AT BEGINNING OF YEAR</b>	250,000	174,926	140,904	866,314	3,127,462
<b>CASH AT END OF YEAR</b>	250,000	174,926	140,904	866,314	3,127,462
					7,174,275

**EXHIBIT 11.10****Startup Capital Needed to Build Prototype**

Components of Digester	\$150,000
Engineering Salaries	75,000
Other/Misc	25,000
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$250,000</b>

**Preparation Questions**

1. Is feed an opportunity?
2. Where can Shane raise the necessary money to build the prototype?
3. What are the implications on valuation for the different sources?



A stock certificate (also known as a share certificate) is a document indicating legal ownership of shares of stock in a corporation. Stock certificates are made out to the shareholder or the brokerage firm and identify the issuer, the number of shares, the par value, and the stock class. (*Source: PhotoDisc/Getty Images, Inc.*)

## LEGAL AND TAX ISSUES

After college, Deborah and Dave worked in the information technology division of a large corporation. In their five years there, the two friends had twice replaced all the desktop and laptop computers distributed to company employees with new machines. They understood the need to give their employees the best and most current computers and to clean the drives of the old machines of sensitive information. But they didn't understand why, after all that effort, only a few were donated to local nonprofit organizations, while the rest were simply disposed of. After all, the old machines might not be powerful enough to support the employees of a major corporation, but they certainly would have value to many smaller, less technologically oriented businesses. The problem, they were convinced, was the lack of any organized market for buyers and sellers of these machines to find each other.



One night after work, the two budding entrepreneurs decided to establish their own company to develop and market a Website where large companies could sell their “obsolete” computers to interested buyers, paying a small commission for the service. They could develop the Website fairly quickly with their personal funds, but they would need significant bank and investor financing to fund the sophisticated marketing effort needed to bring their service to the attention of likely customers. Furthermore, although the two of them could probably perform all necessary tasks in the short run, they expected that additional programmers and sales professionals would be necessary in the long run. Both knew of fellow employees who would be perfect for these positions.

After discussing their idea with friends and business associates and drafting a business plan, Deborah and Dave were excited to learn that a prominent angel investor was interested in investing. They prepared to submit their resignations to their present employer.

## Leaving Your Present Position

---

Many enthusiastic entrepreneurs are so excited about where they’re going that they forget to consider where they’ve been. They’re surprised to learn that there may be serious limitations imposed upon their freedom of action arising out of their former employment. Some of these limitations may be the result of agreements signed by the entrepreneur while employed in her former position. Others may be imposed as a matter of law, without any agreement or even knowledge on the part of the employee.

### Corporate Opportunity

The **corporate opportunity** doctrine is an outgrowth of the traditional obligation of loyalty owed by an agent to a principal. In its most common form, it prohibits an officer or director of a corporation, a partner in a partnership, or a person in a similar position from identifying a business opportunity that would be valuable to his company and using that information for his own benefit or the benefit of a competitor.

Thus, a corporate director who discovers that one of the corporation’s competitors may shortly be put on the market cannot raise money and purchase the competitive company himself. In order to discharge his legal obligation to the corporation of which he is a director, he would be required to disclose the opportunity to his board and allow the board to decide (without his participation) whether the corporation will make the purchase. Only after the corporation has been fully informed and decided *not* to take advantage of the opportunity may the director use that information for himself. Even then, as the new owner of a competitor, he would be required to resign his director position with the previous business.

The scope of this **duty of loyalty** is normally adjusted by the law to reflect the individual’s position within the business. While the president and members of the board may be required to turn over knowledge of all opportunities that may be in any way related to the business of the company, lower-level employees probably have such an obligation only with regard to opportunities that are directly relevant to their positions. Thus, arguably, a sales manager may be required to inform her company of any sales opportunities she may encounter that are relevant to the company’s products, but she may not be required to inform the company of a potential business acquisition.

Deborah and Dave must consider the corporate opportunity doctrine, since the opportunity to create a market for obsolete computers is directly relevant to one of their job responsibilities (replacing old employee computers with new ones). Yet both Deborah and Dave have positions low enough in the company hierarchy that their responsibilities with regard to corporate opportunities are probably very limited. The resale of old computers is likely very different from the business their present employer is in.

## Recruitment of Fellow Employees

Another aspect of the duty of loyalty owed by an employee to an employer is the legal requirement that the employee not knowingly take action designed to harm the employer's business. This is, perhaps, pure common sense. We would not expect the law to countenance a paid salesperson's regularly recommending that customers patronize a competitor, nor would we expect the law to endorse an engineer's giving his best ideas to another company. Similarly, courts have held that it is a breach of the duty of loyalty to solicit and induce fellow employees to leave their jobs.

Once again, the likelihood that a court would enforce this obligation against an employee depends to some extent on the nature of the employee's activities and her position in the company. Neither Dave nor Deborah need fear reprisals for their having convinced each other to leave. Nor would there be much likelihood of liability if they convinced another employee to leave with them, especially if these conversations took place after working hours. However, if either of them worked in the human resources department, where their job descriptions would include recruiting and retaining employees, this same activity might well expose them to liability. Further, if their plan included the wholesale resignation of a relatively large number of employees, such that the company's ability to continue to efficiently function might be compromised, a court might be more likely to intervene with an injunction or other relief. This would be especially true if the defendants' job descriptions included maintaining the efficient operation of the departments they were involved in destroying.

## Proprietary Information

Yet another potential complication arising out of the present employment of Deborah and Dave is their possible use of information or technology belonging to their former employer. Such information need not be subject to formal patent or copyright protection to be protected from such use. Any information that the company has successfully kept confidential and that is not otherwise known to outsiders is likely to be protected by law as a trade secret. It may include not only inventions and technology but also other valuable information such as customer lists, pricing strategies, and unique operating methods.

If Deborah had developed this computer resale concept as part of her job, that concept might well belong to the company and be unavailable to her and Dave as a new enterprise. Or if their current employer had compiled an extensive list of potential buyers of obsolete equipment, Deborah and Dave might be prohibited from marketing to that list. Of course, it is not enough for a concept or list to be developed by or for the company; the information must be unique and unknown to the industry at large, and the company must have taken steps to keep it that way. Thus, the company should label any physical manifestations of the information as "confidential" and should restrict its distribution to those who have either a legal or a contractual obligation to keep such information private. If, on the other hand, the company had deliberately or carelessly allowed the distribution of the information to outsiders, it has likely lost the right to restrict its use.

Many companies require their employees to sign agreements that specifically spell out the employees' obligation to protect trade secrets. This has led some employees to believe that such an obligation must attach only to those who have signed such an agreement, leaving the remaining employees free to make whatever use of their employers' information they may choose. This is a misconception, however. The obligation to respect an employer's trade secrets and keep them confidential is imposed by law and is not dependent upon contract. Furthermore, it continues after the employment relationship has been terminated, for whatever reason, and indefinitely until the information makes its way into the public domain by other means.

Employers who require a confidentiality agreement from their employees generally do so as a method of making sure that their employees are aware of their responsibilities in this

regard. After all, if an employee releases proprietary information to the outside, it is small comfort to the employer that it may have the right to sue said employee for damages. And a requirement that employees sign such agreements can be evidence that the employer has taken reasonable steps to keep its information confidential, thus making the information more likely to be deemed a trade secret.

## Entrepreneur Indicted for Stealing Trade Secrets from Former Employer

The United States Attorney's Office for the Northern District of California announced that Trieu Lam, 44, of San José, California, was arraigned today [November 4, 2004] on an indictment charging him with one count of conspiracy to possess stolen trade secrets, and two counts of theft of trade secrets. Thanh Tran, aka David Tran, 45, of Milpitas, California, was charged in the same indictment with one count of conspiracy to possess stolen trade secrets. He was also arraigned today. An indictment simply contains allegations against an individual and, as with all defendants, Mr. Lam and Mr. Tran must be presumed innocent unless and until convicted.

According to the indictment, Mr. Lam was an employee at C&D Semiconductor Services Inc. (C&D)

located in Milpitas, California, before starting his own company, More Technology Services Inc. (MTS) in San José. Mr. Lam and others allegedly used trade secrets stolen from C&D to produce and sell re-engineered and refurbished semiconductor equipment, called track systems that apply photo-sensitive film to silicon wafers. Mr. Lam also allegedly recruited C&D employees, including Mr. Tran, to remove documentation and tooling from C&D, including drawings, assembly schematics, and similar equipment. Mr. Lam and MTS used these trade secrets to solicit business from C&D customers. The value of the trade secrets involved, as determined by the cost of their production, was alleged to be approximately \$1.19M. FBI agents executed a search warrant at MTS in San José, California on November 6, 2002. C&D Semiconductor Services Inc. cooperated fully with the authorities in the investigation.

—Department of Justice, Northern District of California, November 4, 2004<sup>1</sup>

Fortunately for Deborah and Dave, they appear to have merely identified a need that is known generally to the industry and have not begun to develop the specific software solution to the problem. And it does not appear that their employer has undertaken any organized effort to identify and list likely buyers of obsolete computers. On that set of facts, it is extremely doubtful that this new enterprise will make use of any information that legally belongs to Dave and Deborah's former employer.

However, it's equally likely that by the time Dave and Deborah have developed a business that meets this identified need, they will have created a body of proprietary information of their own. At that point, they will be forced to turn their attention to protecting that information from use by competitors and end users who have failed to pay for the privilege.

A measure of protection can be had from the copyright laws and, depending on the nature of their business process, from the patent laws. Both require disclosure of the information in exchange for the protection granted by the government and thus present the risk that others may engineer around the patent or reconfigure the software around the copyright. In that case, Dave and Deborah will not likely have resources adequate to bring the necessary lawsuits to protect their rights. Thus, they may choose to forgo statutory protection and protect their assets by a policy of nondisclosure as a trade secret, along with restrictive licensing agreements with the users of their Website (we discuss these issues and the relative advantages and risks of these various modes of intellectual property protection in Chapter 13).

## Noncompetition

Related to the obligation not to disclose proprietary information is the obligation not to compete with one's employer. Like most of the obligations we've already discussed, this duty is derived from the fiduciary relationship between employer and employee—specifically, the duty of loyalty. How can we justify accepting a paycheck from our employer while we are simultaneously establishing, working for, or financing a competing business?

The law imposes this duty not to compete on all employees, officers, directors, and partners while their association with the employer remains in effect. Unlike the obligation to protect proprietary information, however, the noncompete duty does not extend to the period after the termination of the relationship. To extend the obligation, the employer must obtain the employee's contractual promise. Thus, in the absence of a contract, as soon as Dave and Deborah quit their present jobs (but not before), they are free to go into direct competition with their former employer, so long as in doing so they do not use any of the employer's proprietary information.

We can analyze noncompetition agreements along many different dimensions, like the scope of the obligation. In an extreme case, an employee may have agreed not to engage in any activity that competes with any aspect of the business his former employer engaged in, or planned to engage in, at the time of the termination of the employee's association with the company. At the other end of the spectrum, the employee may have agreed only to refrain from soliciting any of his former employer's customers or (somewhat more restrictively) from dealing with any of the same, no matter who initiated the contact. We can also measure such agreements by the length of time they extend beyond the termination of employment and by their geographic scope.

Such measurements are important because, in the employment context, many states take the position that noncompete agreements contravene basic public policies, such as encouraging competition and allowing each individual to make the best use of his talents. A few such states actually refuse to enforce all noncompetition agreements. Most, however, purport to enforce only those deemed reasonable, recognizing the employer's interest in protecting its business and goodwill. Only those restrictions that prevent likely harm to the employer's legitimate interests will be enforced.

Thus, a medical practice that does business only with customers located within a 25-mile radius would not likely be able to enforce a noncompetition agreement that extends much beyond that geographic area. Furthermore, although a manufacturer may be able to enforce such an agreement against an officer, salesperson, or engineer who has either direct contact with customers or knowledge of the company's processes and products, it might not be able to enforce the same agreement against a bookkeeper, whose departure would have little effect on the company's goodwill. Even the officer, salesperson, or engineer might be able to resist an agreement that purports to remain in effect beyond the time that the employer might reasonably need to protect its goodwill and business from the effects of new competition.

Another factor that may affect the enforceability of a noncompetition agreement is whether the employer agrees to continue part or all of the former employee's compensation during the noncompetition period. Similarly, a noncompetition agreement that might be unenforceable against an employee might nonetheless be enforceable against the seller of a business or a major stockholder having his stock redeemed. Finally, some courts that find the scope or length of a noncompetition agreement objectionable nonetheless enforce it to the maximum extent they rule acceptable. Others take an all-or-nothing approach.

Since there is no indication Dave and Deborah have signed a noncompetition agreement, they would need only to resign from their current positions before taking any affirmative steps to establish a competitive enterprise. After their resignations, they would be under no further noncompetitive restrictions. Deborah and Dave's new business would probably not be deemed competitive with their present employer at all. Thus, they may be able to begin this business

at night and on weekends while remaining employed by their present employer, so long as the time devoted to the new business does not detract from their obligation to devote their full business time to their present jobs.

Sometimes companies are completely justified in taking action against former employees who have stolen trade secrets, but sometimes companies take legal action against former employees mainly to hinder them. If a former employee is starting a new business, lawsuits tie up the would-be entrepreneur in the legal process and may deter investors from putting money into the new venture. A well-heeled company knows that a costly, protracted court battle will drain the limited resources of the former employee.

Within the first month or so following the initiation of legal action, the company will seek a temporary restraining order and file a civil lawsuit for injunctive relief and alleged damages; if it loses, it may file an appeal. A temporary restraining order or preliminary injunction essentially sidelines the would-be entrepreneur until the court battle is resolved.

## Choosing an Attorney and an Accountant

---

Many people perceive engaging an attorney and an accountant as unnecessary expenses when beginning a new venture. However, the earlier you can consult these professionals, the more likely your business will avoid costly mistakes.

The laws in the United States do not officially recognize legal specialties. In practice, however, the U.S. legal profession has become highly specialized. Thus, most patent attorneys do very little else, and most good litigation attorneys concentrate on litigating. The representation of startups and small businesses has become a specialty as well.

Dave and Deborah would do well to ask their prospective attorney to describe her experience in representing small businesses and to supply some clients as references. An attorney experienced in the problems of startups will also be familiar with their unique cash-flow problems and may be willing to work out installment payments or other arrangements to avoid postponing essential early planning.

Many of the same considerations inform the choice of an accountant. Although the level of expertise in national and international accounting firms is unmatched, most have little experience with startups such as that proposed by Dave and Deborah, since their fee structures are inappropriate for the size of such businesses. Many local firms have all the skills necessary to serve the startup and can be sensitive to its cash-flow issues.

Engage the accountant as early as possible so he can establish the information management systems and recommend the computer software that will get your company's records off on the right track. This gives you the tools necessary to gauge the success of your efforts against budget before it is too late to adapt and avoids the expensive and frustrating task of reconstructing the company's results from fragmented and missing records at the end of the year.

## Choice of Legal Form

---

One of the first issues Deborah, Dave, and their professional advisors will confront, after weaving their way through the thicket of issues associated with leaving their current jobs, is what legal form they should choose to operate their new venture. Many choices are available.

The most basic business form is the **sole proprietorship**, owned and operated by one owner who is in total control. No new legal entity is created; the individual entrepreneur just goes into business, either alone or with employees, but without any co-owners. This entity will not be attractive to Deborah and Dave unless one of them chooses to forgo ownership and act only as an employee.

The default mode for Dave and Deborah is the **general partnership**. This is the legal form that results when two or more persons go into business for profit, as co-owners, sharing profits and losses.

Another choice available to our entrepreneurs is the **corporation**. This form is created by state government, as a routine matter, upon the entrepreneurs' filing an application and paying a fee. It is a separate legal entity, with legal existence apart from its owners, the stockholders. Deborah and Dave might well choose to form a corporation, allocating its stock initially between them.

A variation of the corporate choice is the **subchapter S or small business corporation**. If a corporation passes a number of tests, it may elect to be treated as a subchapter S corporation, a designation that affects only its tax status. In all other respects, a subchapter S corporation is indistinguishable from all other corporations.

Another variation of the corporate form is the so-called **professional corporation**. This type of corporation is typically available only to businesses that render professional services, such as medical, legal, accounting, architectural, and social work practices. Dave and Deborah will not be practicing a profession, so this business form will not be available to them.

Related to the professional corporation is the **limited liability partnership (LLP)**, which is the entity of choice for many law firms, accounting firms, and the like, but it is not widely used by other businesses, such as the one planned by Dave and Deborah.

Another possible legal form is a hybrid of the corporate and partnership forms, known as the **limited partnership**. Such a business would have one or more general partners, who would conduct the business and take on personal risk, and one or more limited partners, who would act as passive investors (similar to stockholders with no other interest in the business). This form of entity has over time faded into use in only a few niches such as venture capital funds and a number of hedge funds; it is no longer attractive to most businesses.

An increasingly popular form of business entity is the **limited liability company (LLC)**. This entity is owned by "members" who either manage the business themselves or appoint "managers" (either outsiders or a subset of the members) to run it for them. All members and managers have the benefit of limited liability (as they would in a corporation) and, in most cases, are taxed similarly to a subchapter S corporation without having to conform to the S corporation restrictions described later in this section.

Finally, a **nonprofit (or not-for-profit)entity** will typically take the form of a corporation or trust and elect nonprofit status as a tax matter. Although many startups do not make a profit, nonprofit status is available only to certain types of activities, such as churches, educational institutions, social welfare organizations, and industry associations. If an organization so qualifies, its income is exempt from taxation (as long as it doesn't stray from its exempt purpose), and if certain additional tests are met, contributions to it may be tax deductible. Deborah and Dave might consider such status if their purpose is simply to collect obsolete machinery and donate it to charitable and educational entities, but since they plan to operate as a profit-making venture, distributing profits to themselves and investors, we need not explore this option further.

Although we can compare these forms of business on an almost endless list of factors, the most relevant include control issues, exposure to personal liability, tax factors, and administrative costs. We discuss these in detail in the following sections, and Figure 12.1 provides an overview of the issues and how they play out in each business form.

## Control

Since there is only one principal in the sole proprietorship, he wields total control over all issues. In the general partnership, control is divided among the principals in accordance with their partnership agreement (which need not be written but should be, to encourage specificity). The parties may decide that all decisions must be made by unanimous vote, or

	<b>Control</b>	<b>Liability</b>	<b>Taxation</b>	<b>Administrative Obligations</b>
Sole proprietorship	Owner has complete control	Unlimited personal liability	Not a separate taxable entity	Only those applicable to all businesses
Partnership	Partners share control	Joint and several unlimited personal liability	Not a separate taxable entity	Only those applicable to all businesses
Corporation	Control distributed among shareholders, directors, and officers	Limited personal liability	Separate taxable entity unless subchapter S election	Some additional
Limited partnership	General partners control; limited partners do not	General partners: joint and several unlimited personal liability; limited partners: limited personal liability	Not a separate entity unless affirmatively chosen	Some additional
Limited liability company	Members share control or appoint managers	Limited personal liability	Not a separate entity unless affirmatively chosen	Some additional

**Figure 12.1****Comparison of various business forms**

they may adopt a majority standard (making their angel investor the swing vote). More likely, they may require unanimity for a stated group of significant decisions and allow a majority vote for others. In addition, Deborah and Dave may delegate authority for certain types of decisions to one or both of the active partners.

Regardless of how power is allocated in the partnership agreement, each of the partners will have a free hand to contract with third parties, subject only to the consequences of the partner's breaching his agreement with the others. This is also true for the consequences of torts committed by any partner acting in the course of partnership business.

All of this applies equally to the limited liability partnership (since it is merely a general partnership that has elected liability protection). The looseness of the rules in general partnerships may well be enough to discourage Deborah and Dave from choosing the general partnership option.

A corporation, whether professional or business, and regardless of whether it has elected subchapter S status, is controlled by three levels of authority. Broadly speaking, the stockholders vote, in proportion to the number of shares they own, on the election of the board of directors, the sale or dissolution of the business, and amendments to the corporation's charter. In virtually all cases, these decisions are made either by the majority or by two-thirds of the votes cast. Thus, if Dave, Deborah, and their investor each owned one-third of the issued stock, Dave and Deborah (if they voted together) could elect the entire board and sell the business over the objections of the investor. Unless agreed otherwise, the investor would not even be entitled to a minority position on the board. He would, however, be the swing vote should Deborah and Dave ever disagree, perhaps prompting them to consider nonvoting stock or some similar device for the investor.

The board of directors in turn makes all the long-term and significant policy decisions for the business as well as electing the officers of the corporation. Votes are virtually always decided by majority. The officers, consisting of a president, treasurer, and secretary at a minimum, run the day-to-day business of the corporation and are the only level of authority that can bind the corporation by contract or in tort. In this case, either Dave or Deborah would probably be president and the other, perhaps, executive vice president/treasurer or CEO. It is not uncommon for the corporation's attorney to act as secretary, since the attorney presumably has the expertise to keep the corporate records of the company in an accurate manner. Deborah and Dave will likely convince their investor not to insist upon a title, thus eliminating his or her ability to deal with third parties on the corporation's behalf.

The limited partnership concentrates all control in the general partners, who exercise that control as set forth in the limited partnership agreement (just as such control is allocated in a general partnership agreement). Limited partners have virtually no control unless the limited partnership agreement has granted them some influence over significant issues such as sale or dissolution of the business. Only the general partners have the apparent authority to bind the partnership in contract or tort with third parties.

The limited liability company can operate much like a general partnership. All members can share in control to the extent set forth in their agreement, known in most states as an *operating agreement*. However, members may choose to appoint one or more "managers" to control most of the day-to-day operations of the business. We might expect the three members to appoint Deborah and Dave as managers.

Based on control issues alone, therefore, Dave and Deborah would likely be leaning toward the limited partnership, limited liability company, or corporation. Their decision will, however, be greatly affected by considerations of personal liability.

## Personal Liability

Should the business incur current liabilities beyond its ability to pay, must the individual owners risk personal bankruptcy to make up the difference? This unhappy result need not occur only as a result of poor management or bad business conditions. It could just as easily be brought about by an uninsured tort claim from a customer or a victim of a delivery person's careless driving.

In both the partnership and the sole proprietorship, the business is not recognized as a legal entity separate from its owners. Thus, the debts of the business are ultimately the debts of the owners if the business cannot pay. This unlimited liability is enough to recommend against these forms for virtually any business, with the exception perhaps of the one-person consulting firm, all of whose liability will be the direct result of the wrongdoing of its owner in any case.

If this unlimited liability is uncomfortable for Deborah and Dave, imagine what it would mean to an angel investor, such as the person interested in Dave and Deborah's business. The investor no doubt has significant assets to lose and will likely have only limited control over the business decisions that may generate liability. This risk is made even worse by the fact that all partnership liabilities are considered joint and several obligations of all partners. Thus, the investor will be responsible for full payment of all partnership liabilities if Deborah and Dave have no significant assets of their own.

In return for giving up their influence over the operation of the business in a limited partnership, investors are granted limited liability for its debts. Thus, if the limited partnership cannot meet its obligations, an investor will lose his investment, but his personal assets will generally not be exposed to partnership creditors. However, the general partners retain unlimited exposure. Dave and Deborah may believe they can afford to take this risk, especially if they currently have no significant assets, but that may not be the case when a later liability is incurred.

The answer lies in the corporation and the limited liability company, both of which afford limited liability to all owners. If the business ultimately becomes insolvent, its creditors will

look only to business assets for payment; any shortfall will be absorbed by the unfortunate creditors. Such protection is also afforded to the owners of a limited liability partnership.

This solution is not quite as all-encompassing as it sounds. To begin with, creditors know these rules as well as entrepreneurs do. Thus, large or sophisticated creditors, such as banks and other financial institutions, will insist upon personal guarantees from the owners of the business before extending credit.

In addition, the law allows creditors to “pierce the corporate veil” and go after the owners of a failed corporation or LLC under certain conditions. The first situation in which this can occur involves a business that was initially underfunded or “thinly capitalized.” A business should start out with a combination of capital and liability insurance adequate to cover the claims to which it might normally expect to be exposed. As long as the capital was there at the outset and has not been depleted by dividends or other distributions to owners, causing insolvency, the protection of the separate entity survives even after the capital has been depleted by unsuccessful operation.

The second situation that may result in the piercing of the corporate (or LLC) veil is the failure of the owners to treat the corporation or LLC as an entity separate from themselves by

- Failing to use *Inc., Corp., LLC*, or a similar legal indicator when dealing with third parties, or
- Commingling business and personal assets in a personal bank account or allowing unreimbursed personal use of corporate assets, or
- Failing to keep business and legal records and hold regular directors’, stockholders’, or members’ meetings.

Both the corporate and the LLC forms should look rather attractive to Dave and Deborah. They should make no significant business decision, however, without a look at the tax consequences.

## Taxation

Income taxes, both personal and corporate, that will be paid as a result of starting up and operating a business are an important consideration in Deborah and Dave’s choice of the legal entity for their new venture. The ideal entity from the perspective of income taxes should do the following:

- Minimize or eliminate any personal income tax that might result from Deborah’s and Dave’s receipt of founder stock
- Maximize the tax shelter for the investors when the business has an annual loss
- Minimize taxes paid by the business, Deborah, Dave, and the investors when the business has an annual profit
- Minimize capital gains taxes payable by Deborah, Dave, and the investors if they sell all or some of their stock

No entity encompasses all the above income tax considerations and at the same time shields Dave, Deborah, and the investors from liabilities incurred by the business. Although various forms of partnership might be more favorable tax shelters for the investors, operating businesses such as Deborah and Dave’s are almost always set up as a corporation for reasons that we will examine in the remainder of this and the next section.

Dave and Deborah would doubtless be warned about the *double taxation* that arises when a corporation makes a profit, pays income tax on it, and then distributes part or all of its profit after tax as a dividend to its stockholders, who in turn pay income tax on that dividend; this

means that the same money is taxed twice (although at a quite favorable, reduced dividend rate the second time).

In reality, however, double taxation is more a myth than a legitimate threat to the small business. In fact, in most cases, it presents an opportunity for significant economic savings. To begin with, most small corporations lower or even eliminate their profit by increasing deductible salaries and bonuses for their owners up to the limit deemed “unreasonable” by the Internal Revenue Service. The owners then pay only their own individual income tax on the money.

On the other hand, if it is necessary to retain some of these earnings, the corporation will normally pay income tax at a lower rate than the stockholders would have, since tax will be imposed at the lowest marginal corporate rate rather than the stockholders’ highest rate. When the corporation is later sold, the stockholders will be taxed at favorable capital gain rates, and the corporation will have had the use of the money in the meantime to create greater value. Thus, it is the rare small corporation that will actually pay double tax.

Furthermore, if the corporation meets certain eligibility requirements, it can elect, under subchapter S of the Internal Revenue Code, to be taxed essentially as if it were a partnership. Whatever profit or loss it may generate will appear on the tax returns of the stockholders in proportion to the shares of stock they own, and the corporation will file only an informational return. To take advantage of this option, the corporation must have 100 or fewer stockholders, all of whom must be individuals (with some exceptions) and either resident aliens or citizens of the United States. The corporation can have only one class of stock (with the exception of classes based solely on different voting rights) and is ineligible to participate in most multiple-entity corporate structures. Note that despite the name *small business corporations*, there is no size limit on subchapter S eligibility.

The subchapter S election can be very useful in a number of circumstances. For example, if the business is expected to be profitable and investors insist upon a share of those profits, Dave and Deborah could not otherwise avoid double taxation by increasing salaries and bonuses. Since an investor performs no services for the business, any compensation paid to him would automatically be deemed “unreasonable.” But under subchapter S, since there is no corporate tax, a dividend to the stockholders would be taxed only at the stockholder level.

If the business were to become extremely successful, Deborah and Dave could reap the rewards without fear that their salaries might be attacked as “unreasonable,” since, again, there are no corporate compensation deductions to disallow. An early subchapter S election can also avoid double taxation should the corporation eventually sell all its assets and distribute the proceeds to the stockholders in liquidation.

Furthermore, if the business is expecting losses in the short term, the investors might be able to use their share of the losses (determined by percentage of stock) as a shelter subject to the passive loss considerations described previously. Dave and Deborah could use their losses against the salary from their former jobs in the earlier part of the year or against income earned by their spouses if they filed joint returns. However, they may find this advantage limited by another Internal Revenue Code rule that generally restricts the amount of loss usable by any owner to the amount of investment made by such owner.

On the other hand, Deborah and Dave will find that their election to form a subchapter S corporation, a limited liability company, or a limited liability partnership (all three of which are often referred to as *pass-through entities*) will make it difficult for them to receive tax-free employee benefits. Also, only the stockholders of a nonelecting corporation (or *C corporation*) can exclude one-half of their capital gain upon sale of their stock after a five-year holding period. This latter benefit would be undercut anyway, for the most part, by the alternative minimum tax.

After having considered all of this, Deborah and Dave might wish to form a corporation, elect subchapter S treatment, and arrange their affairs such that, when the angel investor contributes his investment, he can make as much use of short-term losses as could be

supported by the “substantial economic reality” and “passive loss” rules. However, since profits and losses in an S corporation must be allocated in accordance with stock ownership and only one class of stock is allowed, any disproportionate allocation of losses to the investor would have to be accompanied by a disproportionate allocation to him of later profits. More creative allocations of profit, loss, and control could be accomplished in a general or limited partnership, but one or more of the owners would have to accept exposure to unlimited liability in those entities.

Limited liability companies were designed for just this circumstance. If structured carefully, they afford the limited liability and “pass-through” tax treatment of the S corporation, while avoiding the S corporation’s restrictive eligibility requirements. Freed from these restrictions, limited liability companies can use creative allocations of profit, loss, and control that would constitute prohibited multiple classes of stock in the S corporation context. However, since limited liability companies (as well as limited partnerships and limited liability partnerships) are required to calculate their income and loss in accordance with partnership tax rules (as opposed to the corporate tax rules used by S corporations), there may be some negative effects from this choice. For example, certain tax-free methods of selling the company may not be available to a limited liability company. On the other hand, in some circumstances involving significant company borrowings, partnership tax rules may allow greater losses to pass through to the owners who are eligible to make use of them.

At this point in the analysis, Dave and Deborah are probably still not sure of the solution. The limited liability company appears attractive, since it shields all its owners from personal liability, and as managers, they might gain a measure of control of the company apart from the angel investor. The limited liability company would also allow them to allocate the maximum amount of short-term loss available under applicable tax rules to their investor, recognizing that Dave’s and Deborah’s small initial investment would make any such losses useless to them. However, the angel investor may also have little ability to use these losses due to his lack of material participation in the business. Worse yet, the investor would certainly not be enthusiastic at the notion of “phantom income” when the company’s financial performance turns positive. Perhaps a further investigation of the tax implications of their initial investment will lead Deborah and Dave to an answer.

## Initial Investment of the Founders

Left to their own devices, Dave and Deborah would likely arrange the issuance of their stock in the corporation for no tangible investment whatsoever. After all, they intend to look to angel investors for working capital in the short run, and their investment will be the services they intend to perform for the business in the future.

It is common to authorize stock with minimal par value (e.g., \$0.01 per share) or even to authorize stock with no par value at all. The corporation then issues stock for whatever it believes to be its fair value. In addition, it has long been possible to issue stock in exchange for intangible assets such as past services rendered. However, although many proposals have been made to legitimize it, stock issuance for future services remains illegal under most corporate statutes.

This type of problem is minimized in limited liability companies and their cousins, such as limited partnerships and limited liability partnerships. In these business forms, tangible investments are reflected as credits to the member’s or partner’s capital account, while service contributors normally are given no such credit. The company’s creditors have no particular statutory protections analogous to par value or watered stock.

Of more practical concern, however, is the fact that any property (including stock or membership interests) transferred to an employee in exchange for the employee’s services is considered taxable income under the Internal Revenue Code. Thus, even if it were possible to issue Deborah and Dave corporate stock in exchange for future services under corporate law, they would face an unexpected tax liability as a result.

The solution to all this in the corporate context may be to require Dave and Deborah to reach into their limited resources and contribute some minimal cash amount to the corporation in exchange for their stock. So long as the cash amount exceeds the par value (which will be minimal or nonexistent), this would avoid the corporate and tax problems associated with issuance for future services. In the LLC or partnership context, the Internal Revenue Service will, in most cases, value the ownership interest granted to the partner or member as equivalent to the amount credited to the capital account. Thus, as long as a noncontributing owner's capital account begins at zero and grows only to the extent of future profits, there will be no current taxation at the time of issuance. However, as noted earlier, if Deborah's and Dave's minimal investment were the full extent of the business's initial capitalization, the limited liability protection (the "corporate veil") might well be in danger.

Of course, Deborah and Dave will have no reason to fear exposure to personal liability on this account, since, at approximately the same time that they will be making their minimal investment, the angel investor will be putting in the real money. However, since the angel investor will be paying substantially more for his stock than Deborah and Dave are paying for theirs, the Internal Revenue Service will likely take the position that they are getting a bargain in exchange for the services they are providing to their company. Thus once again, Dave and Deborah may be facing an unexpected income tax on the difference between the price per share of the angel's stock and the price of theirs.

One way to solve this problem is to postpone the angel's investment until Dave and Deborah can argue for an increase in the value of the corporation's stock. Aside from the essentially fictional nature of this approach, Deborah and Dave probably cannot wait that long. Instead, the parties must design a vehicle for the angel's investment sufficiently different from Dave's and Deborah's interests to justify the higher price. This is taken care of in the LLC or partnership context by the difference in capital accounts. But the corporate context is a bit more complicated.

It may seem advisable to create some sort of senior security for the angel investor, such as preferred stock with a liquidation preference of approximately the amount he invested. Demonstrating the sometimes frustrating interrelated character of tax and corporate law, however, the issuance of preferred stock would render a corporation ineligible for subchapter S status, as it would then have more than one class of stock. The LLC and its cousins are not bound by any such restriction.

Another solution to this problem could lie in the utilization of debt securities. If the angel investor pays the same price per share for his stock as Deborah and Dave and injects the remainder of the investment in the form of a loan, Deborah and Dave will not face taxable compensation income, and the business will retain the opportunity to benefit from subchapter S, if desired.

Investment as debt also affords the angel investor the potential for future nontaxable distributions from the company in the form of debt repayment, and he also gains priority as a creditor should the corporation be forced to liquidate. All the while, the investor protects participation in growth through the additional ownership of equity.

As with all benefits, it is possible to get too much of a good thing. Too high a ratio of debt to equity may expose all the owners to the accusation of thin capitalization, resulting in the piercing of the corporate (or LLC) veil. And abusively high debt/equity ratios or failure to respect debt formalities and repayment schedules might induce the Internal Revenue Service to reclassify the debt as equity, thus imposing many of the adverse tax results described earlier.

How does all this inform the choice of entity, then? Essentially, the pass-through form exposes the angel to potential "phantom income" if the company does well, while failing to provide practical use of losses on his personal return if the company loses money. On the other hand, preferred stock in a C corporation provides the liquidation, dividend, participation, and conversion privileges the angel investor desires without the risk of phantom income. And from Deborah and Dave's point of view, issuance of preferred stock to their investor has the

benefit of solving their potential income tax problems without saddling them with restrictive repayment schedules or the risk of unintended personal liability. The parties will likely agree on the C corporation as the best choice of entity in this case.

## Administrative Obligations

Upon entering business, Dave and Deborah should obtain an Internal Revenue Service federal identification number. On the state level, the business should obtain a sales and use tax registration number, both to facilitate reporting and collection of such taxes and to qualify for exemption from such taxes when it purchases items for resale. A nonprofit entity has 18 months to file for and secure nonprofit status from the Internal Revenue Service. Furthermore, all business entities will incur a certain amount of additional accounting expense, specifically for the calculation and reporting of taxable profit and loss.

Corporations, limited liability companies, limited liability partnerships, and limited partnerships, however, bring some additional administrative burden and expense. All four must file an annual report with the state government in addition to their tax return. This document usually reports only the business's current address, officers, directors, managers, general partners, and similar information, but it is accompanied by an annual maintenance fee. The fee, in addition to any income tax that the state may levy, must be paid to avoid eventual involuntary dissolution by the state.

In addition, corporations are sometimes formed under the laws of one state, while operating in another. In particular, the state of Delaware has a corporate law particularly sympathetic to management that has also been thoroughly interpreted by its long history of complex corporate litigation. Although these are questionable advantages in the context of a small business (where management and stockholders are generally the same people), Delaware does offer a method of calculating its fees that does not penalize a corporation for having a large number of authorized shares. This allows a corporation whose compensation strategy includes stock grants or stock options to use much larger numbers of shares in these grants, creating a psychological appearance of generosity that may not mathematically exist. Even corporations that have not adopted such a strategy often form in Delaware merely to share in an appearance of sophistication.

In all such cases, the corporation must pay not only initial and maintenance fees to the state of Delaware (or whichever state is chosen for formation), along with the costs of maintaining an address for service of process there, but also initial and annual maintenance fees to qualify to do business in each state in which it actually operates. Many large, national concerns pay these fees in virtually all 50 states. Although Deborah and Dave could avoid these fees by operating as a partnership, they'll likely conclude that the advantages of the corporate and limited liability forms are worth the price. They would likely be well advised, however, to form their entity in the same state as their operations in order to avoid duplicate fees. They can always reincorporate in Delaware in the future, generally just preceding a public offering.

## Choosing a Name

---

The choice of a name for a business may seem at first to be a matter of personal taste, without many legal ramifications. However, since the name of a business is ultimately the repository of its goodwill, the owner should choose a name that will not be confused with the name of another business.

Although partnerships and sole proprietorships need not do so, corporations, limited liability companies, limited liability partnerships, and limited partnerships obtain their existence by filing charters with the state. As part of this process, each state will check to see

whether the name of the new entity is “confusingly similar” to the name of any other entity currently registered with that state. Some states will also deny the use of a name they deem misleading, even if it is not similar to the name of another entity. Selecting and protecting marks such as corporate and product names is covered in more detail in Chapter 13.

Once Deborah and Dave have chosen a name for their business and product, and elected the level of protection with which they are comfortable, they can turn their attention to the initial funding of their enterprise.

## Stockholders' and Operating Agreements

---

Deborah, Dave, and their investor's respective investments will normally be memorialized in an operating agreement in the case of an LLC and in a combination of a stock purchase agreement, charter amendments, and stockholders' agreement in the case of a corporation. In the unlikely event that this business was a partnership or limited partnership, very similar provisions allocating equity interests and rights to distributions of profit and cash flow would appear in a Partnership Agreement. In all these cases, however, the parties would be well advised to go beyond these subjects and reach written agreement on a number of other potentially thorny issues at the outset of their relationship.

### Negotiating Employment Terms

Dave and Deborah should reach agreement with the investor about their commitment to provide services and the level of compensation for doing so. It would be very unusual for Dave and Deborah to forgo compensation solely to share the profits of the business with their investor. For one thing, what would they be living on in the interim? For another, the profits of the business are properly conceived of as the amount left over after payment of the expenses of the business—including reasonable compensation to its employees. Thus, Deborah and Dave should negotiate employment terms into the operating or stockholders' agreement, setting forth their responsibilities, titles, compensation, and related issues.

This is especially important in this case, since each of the three stockholders may hold only a minority interest in the corporation (depending upon the voting rights given to the preferred stock). Both Dave and Deborah may wish to foreclose the possibility that the investor may ally with one of them and employ a majority of the shares to remove the other as a director, officer, or employee of the company. Given the lack of any market for the shares of this corporation, such a move would essentially destroy any value the shares had for the holder in the short run.

Although a concise description of each party's obligations and rewards is still advisable to avoid dispute, this negative scenario would be illegal in a partnership (in the absence of serious misconduct by the party being removed), since the majority partners would be violating the fiduciary duty of loyalty imposed upon each partner toward the others under partnership law. Although no such duty formally exists among stockholders in a corporation, many states (not including Delaware) have imported the fiduciary duties of partners to the relationship among the founders of a closely held corporation. Similar doctrines may be developed for LLCs. Thus, in many states, were Deborah to be removed without cause from her employment and corporate positions by Dave and the angel investor, she would have effective legal recourse even in the absence of a stockholders' agreement.

### Disposition of Equity Interests

As for other items that might be covered in the agreement among Deborah, Dave, and the investor, many address the disposition of equity held by the owners under certain circumstances.

**Transfer to Third Parties.** To begin with, although sale of stock in a close corporation or LLC is made rather difficult by federal and state securities regulation and the lack of any market for the shares, transfers are still possible under the correct circumstances. To avoid that possibility, stockholder and operating agreements frequently require that any owner wishing to transfer equity to a third party must first offer it to the company and/or the other owners, who may purchase the equity, often at the lower of a formula price or the amount being offered by the third party.

**Disposition of Equity upon the Owner's Death.** Stockholder and operating agreements should also address the disposition of each owner's equity upon death. Again, it is unlikely that each owner would be comfortable allowing the deceased owner's stock to fall into the hands of the deceased's spouse, children, or other heirs, although this may be more acceptable in the case of a pure investor. Moreover, should the business succeed over time, each owner's equity may well be worth a significant amount upon death. If so, the Internal Revenue Service will wish to impose an estate tax based on the equity's value, regardless of the fact that it is an illiquid asset. Under such circumstances, the owner's estate may wish to have the assurance that some or all of such equity will be converted to cash so the tax may be paid. If the agreement forbids free transfer of the equity during lifetime and requires that the equity be redeemed at death for a reasonable price, the agreement may well be accepted by the IRS as a persuasive indication of the equity's value, thus also avoiding an expensive and time-consuming valuation controversy.

Any redemption provision at the death of the owner, especially one that is mandatory at the instance of the estate, immediately raises the question of the availability of funds. Just when the business may be reeling from the effects of the loss of one of its most valuable employees, it may be expected to scrape together enough cash to buy out the deceased's ownership. To avoid this disastrous result, many of these arrangements are funded by life insurance policies on the lives of the owners. This would be in addition to any key person insurance held by the business for the purpose of recovering from the effects of the loss. In structuring such an arrangement, however, the parties should be aware of two quite different models.

The first, and more traditional, model is referred to as a *redemption agreement*. Under it, the business owns the policies and is obligated to purchase the equity upon death. The second model is referred to as a *cross-purchase agreement* and provides for each owner to own insurance on the others and to buy a proportional amount of the deceased's equity. Figure 12.2 illustrates the primary differences between the two forms of agreement. While a cross-purchase is more complicated, especially if there are more than a few stockholders, it has significant benefits compared with a redemption agreement.

**Disposition of Equity upon Termination of Employment.** Stockholder and operating agreements normally also address disposition of equity upon events other than death. Repurchase of equity upon termination of employment can be very important for all parties. The former employee whose equity no longer represents an opportunity for employment

	<b>Effect on Tax Basis</b>	<b>Effect on Alternative Minimum Tax</b>	<b>Need for Adequate Corporate Surplus</b>
Redemption agreement	No stepped-up basis	Risks accumulated current earnings preference for larger C corporations	Needs adequate surplus
Cross-purchase agreement	Stepped-up basis	No risk	Surplus is irrelevant

**Figure 12.2**

**Comparison of stock redemption agreement and stock cross-purchase agreement**

would like the opportunity to cash in her investment. The company and other owners may resent the presence of an inactive owner who can capitalize on their later efforts. Thus, both operating and stockholder agreements will normally provide for repurchase of the interest of a stockholder or member who is no longer actively employed by the company. This, of course, applies only to stockholders or members whose efforts on behalf of the company were the basis of their participation in the first place. Such provisions would not apply to Dave and Deborah's angel investor, for example, since his participation was based entirely upon his investment.

This portion of the agreement presents a number of additional problems peculiar to the employee-owner. For example, the company cannot obtain insurance to cover an obligation to purchase equity upon termination of employment. Thus, it may encounter an obligation to purchase the equity of the former employee at a time when its cash position will not support such a purchase. Furthermore, in addition to the requirement of adequate surplus, courts uniformly prohibit repurchases that would render the company insolvent. Common solutions to these problems commit the company to an installment purchase of the affected equity over a period of years (with appropriate interest and security) or commit the remaining owners to make the purchase personally if the company is unable to do so for any reason.

Furthermore, these agreements frequently impose penalties upon the premature termination of a stockholder or member's employment. In our example, the angel investor is relying on the efforts of Dave and Deborah in making his investment, and Dave and Deborah are each relying on the other's efforts when entering this risky situation. Should either Deborah or Dave be entitled to a buyout at full fair market value if he or she simply decides to walk away from the venture? Often these agreements contain so-called vesting provisions that require a specified period of service before repurchase will be made at full value. As an example, such a vesting provision might state that unless Dave had stayed with the venture for a year, all his equity would be forfeited upon his departure. After a year, one-quarter of his equity would be repurchased for full value, but the rest would be forfeited. Another 25% would vest at the end of each ensuing year.

Such provisions, in addition to providing incentive to remain with the company, have complicated tax implications as well. As discussed earlier, if an employee receives equity for less than fair market value, the discount would be considered taxable compensation. The Internal Revenue Code provides that compensation income with regard to unvested equity is not taxed until the stock is vested. But at that time, the amount of income is measured by the difference between the price paid for the equity and its value *at the time of vesting*. The only way to avoid this result is to file an election to pay the tax on the compensation income measured at the time of the purchase of the equity, even though the equity is not then vested. For Dave and Deborah, this provision acts as a trap. Although they have arranged the initial investments of the parties such that there is no compensation income at the time they purchased their stock, if it is not then fully vested, their taxable income will be measured at the end of each future year as portions of the stock vest. Thus, they must file the election to have their income measured at the time of purchase in order to avoid a tax disaster, even though there is then no income to measure. And contrary to what they might think, that election must be filed within 30 days of their receipt of the stock, not at the end of the year.

## Distributions of Company Profits

Stockholder and operating agreements may also include numerous other provisions peculiar to the facts and circumstances of the particular business. Thus, pass-through entities often provide for mandatory distributions of profit to the members or stockholders at least in the amount of the tax obligation each will incur as a result of the profits of the business. Other agreements might include provisions to resolve voting deadlocks between owners, since otherwise a 50-50 split of voting stock might paralyze the company. Various types of arbitration provisions might avoid this problem.

## Redemption Provisions

Further, some stockholder or operating agreements provide investors like Deborah and Dave's angel with the right to demand repurchase of his equity at some predetermined formula price at a designated future time, so he will not be forever locked into a minority investment in a closely held company. Conversely, some such agreements provide the company with the right to repurchase such equity at a predetermined price (usually including a premium) should the capital no longer be needed. Other agreements protect investors against being left behind if the founders sell their equity to third parties. The presence or absence of all these provisions depends, of course, on the relative negotiating strengths of the parties.

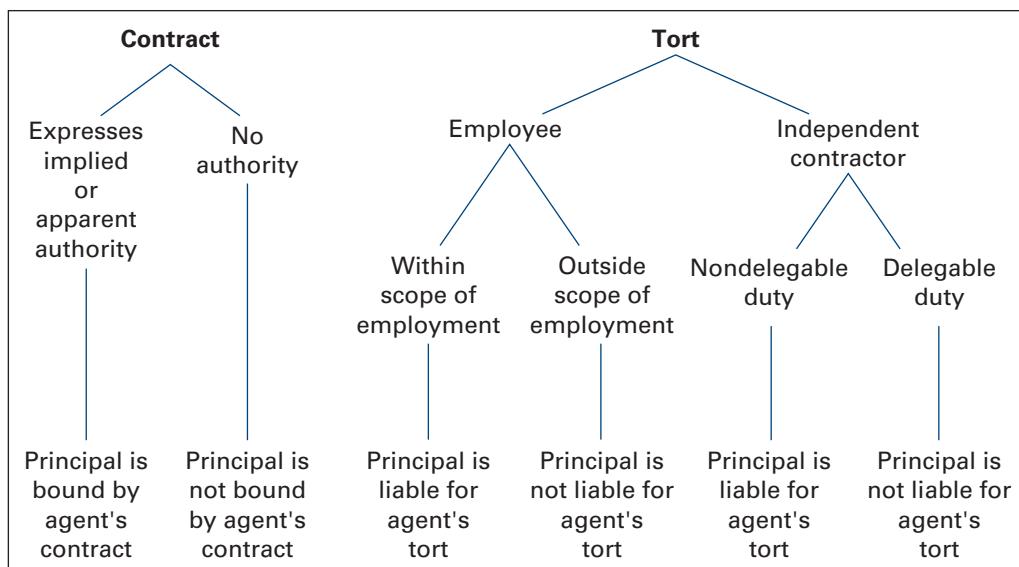
# Legal and Tax Issues in Hiring Employees

From the beginning of this venture, Dave and Deborah have known that, if they were successful, they would soon have to hire employees for both the software engineering and the marketing and sales functions. Thus, they need to consider some of the issues raised by the presence of employees.

## Employees as Agents of the Company

Employees are agents of the company and, as such, are governed by many of the agency rules that already affect the relationships of partners to a partnership and officers to a corporation. Thus, employees have the duty of loyalty to the company and obligations to not compete, to respect confidentiality, and to account for their activities.

Yet Deborah and Dave are probably more interested in the potential of their employees to affect the business's relationships with third parties, such as customers and suppliers. Here, the rules of agency require that a distinction be drawn between obligations based on contractual liability and those resulting from noncontractual relationships such as tort actions. Figure 12.3 provides an overview of these relationships.



**Figure 12.3**

**Power of employees/independent contractors to create contractual and tort liability for principals**

Employees are authorized to bind their employers to contracts with third parties if such actions have either been expressly or impliedly authorized. Thus, if Dave and Deborah hire a sales manager and inform her that she has the authority to close any sale up to \$50,000, she may wield that authority without further consultation with her principals. She also has the implied authority to do whatever is necessary to close such deals (such as sign a purchase order in the company's name, arrange delivery, and perhaps even alter some of the company's standard warranty terms).

However, the employee has authority that often extends beyond that expressly or impliedly given her. To illustrate this, suppose Dave and Deborah's sales manager decides to close a sale for \$100,000. This goes beyond her express authority and is not within her implied authority since it was expressly prohibited. Yet, from the point of view of the customer, the company's sales manager appears to have the authority to close all sales transactions.

Unless the customer has been informed of the limitation imposed on the employee, he has no reason to think that anything is wrong. The law vindicates the customer in this situation by providing that the employee has apparent authority to conclude contracts within the scope of authority she appears to have due to actions of her employer. Since she was put into that position by her employer and the employer has not informed the customer of the limits imposed on the employee, the employer is bound by the employee's actions.

Outside the contract arena, the employee's power to bind the employer is based on similar considerations. The employer, under the doctrine of respondeat superior (or vicarious liability), is responsible for any actions of the employee occurring within the scope of her employment. Thus, if the sales manager causes a traffic accident on her way to a sales call, the employer is responsible for damages. This imposition of liability is not, in any way, based on the employer's fault. It is liability without fault imposed as a result of the economic judgment that employers are better able to spread losses among customers and insurance companies. Consistent with this approach, employers are normally not liable for the tort or criminal actions of employees *outside* the scope of their employment, such as actions occurring after hours or while the employee is pursuing his own interests. Furthermore, employers are normally not liable for the torts or criminal actions of agents who are not employees (so-called independent contractors), since they are more likely to be able to spread these costs among their own customers and insurers.

However, employers should not take this as an invitation to avoid all liability by the wholesale hiring of independent contractors. To begin with, the labeling of a potential employee as an independent contractor is not necessarily binding by law. Courts will look at the level of control exerted by the employer and other related factors to make this determination. In addition, many activities of employers are considered nondelegable (such as disposal of hazardous waste). Employers cannot escape the consequences of such activities by hiding behind independent contractors.

Similarly, someone's status as an employee (or, for that matter, as an independent contractor) does not relieve him of responsibility for tortious or criminal acts. Notwithstanding any liability of the employer, the agent is always still jointly responsible for his own wrongful acts.

## Employment Discrimination

In addition to these common-law considerations, there are, of course, a number of statutory rules of law that govern the employer-employee relationship. Perhaps the best known of these are the laws prohibiting employment discrimination. Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, the Age Discrimination in Employment Act, and laws protecting disabled and pregnant employees collectively prohibit employment discrimination on the basis of sex, race, national origin, religion, age, and disability. They do not prohibit discrimination on the basis of sexual orientation, although a number of state and local laws do.

Prohibited discrimination can occur not only in hiring but also in promotion, firing, and conditions of employment. In fact, sexual discrimination has been found in cases of sexual harassment that created a "hostile environment" for the employee.

These statutes are exceptions to the age-old common law concept of employment at will that allowed employers to hire and fire at their whim, for any reason or no reason at all. This rule is still in force in situations not covered by discrimination laws and, of course, not involving employment contracts. Notwithstanding that rule, however, courts in many states have carved out exceptions to employment at will for reasons of public policy, such as cases involving employees fired for refusing to perform illegal acts or employees fired in bad faith to avoid paying commissions or other earned compensation to the employee. Furthermore, courts in some states have been willing to discover employment contracts hidden in employee manuals or personnel communications that employers may not have thought legally binding.

## Other Employment Statutes

When they begin taking on employees other than themselves, Dave and Deborah will encounter a variety of other statutes that regulate the employment relationship and the workplace itself. For example, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act and the Internal Revenue Code closely regulate the form and amounts of any pension, profit-sharing, 401(k), or welfare plans that they may wish to maintain, generally prohibiting discrimination in favor of owners and highly paid employees. They will also find that Occupational Safety and Health Act and the regulations adopted under it closely regulate safety and health conditions in the workplace, imposing heavy fines for violations. The Fair Labor Standards Act provides minimum wages and overtime pay for employees in nonexempt (generally nonexecutive) positions as well as prohibiting child labor and other practices.

The corporation will find itself contributing to the Social Security system and an unemployment compensation fund for each of its employees as well as withholding Social Security and income taxes from its employees' wages. The amount of their unemployment contribution may depend on the number of employees laid off over the years, causing Deborah and Dave to contest claims from employees who may have left voluntarily or been fired for cause.

In addition, the corporation will probably be required to carry workers' compensation insurance to cover claims under that system. Although the premiums may seem burdensome, workers' compensation is a welcome compromise of the interests of employers and employees. In exchange for avoiding the costs and uncertainties of litigation, employees were assured payment for job-related injuries but lost the opportunity to sue for increased amounts based on pain, suffering, and punitive damages. Employers gave up many common-law defenses that could be used against employees but now avoid disastrously high jury judgments formerly available under common law.

## Employment Agreements

The attraction of employment agreements comes, in the main, from their protection against firing without cause. Thus, a major item of negotiation will likely be the length of the contract. Courts have universally held that an employee cannot be forced to work for an employer against her will. Thus, an employment contract is essentially a one-way street. The employee is promised employment for a period of time, with accompanying salary, bonus, and incentive provisions, but she can leave the company at any time without consequence (unless legally enforceable consequences are specifically provided). As a result, Dave and Deborah would be well advised to avoid employment agreements whenever possible and, if forced to grant one, at least to obtain some accompanying benefit for the company.

Such benefit usually comes in the form of the noncompetition and proprietary information covenants discussed at the beginning of this chapter. For example, a software engineer may promise, in exchange for a two-year employment agreement, not to work in the computer sales industry for a year after the termination of his employment. Yet, as mentioned earlier in the context of Dave and Deborah's former employment, proprietary information obligations exist quite apart from any employee agreement, and courts may refuse to enforce noncompetition

provisions against the employee. Detailed information on employment agreements and consultant contracts is presented in Chapter 13.

## Equity Sharing

In addition to demanding job security, higher-level employees will frequently ask to participate in the company's success. A grant of stock might well upset the corporate balance of power and expectations of economic return among the major stockholders. A better solution might be an incentive bonus plan tied to the success of the company or, more effectively, to the accomplishment of individual goals set for the employee.

If this is unacceptable to the employee, her return could be tied to the fortunes of the company by the use of phantom stock or stock appreciation rights (or similar devices in the context of an LLC) that simulate the effect of equity without involving actual equity ownership. These plans grant the employee bonuses equal to any distributions that would have been made to her if she had owned a certain number of shares, while additionally rewarding her through payment of any increase in value such shares would have experienced. However, in certain cases it may be necessary to grant the employee stock in some form.

A direct grant of stock to an employee is considered a taxable event. The employee pays income tax on the difference between the value of the stock and the amount she paid for it, if any. However, the imposition of tax can be postponed if the stock is forfeitable, say, upon the employee's leaving the employ of the company before the passage of a designated period of time. No doubt Deborah and Dave would condition the grant of stock to any employee on her remaining employed for a substantial period, so this rule would apply.

The negative side of this rule, of course, is that, when the stock is finally vested, the taxable income is measured by the difference between the amount paid, if any, and the value of the stock *at the time of vesting*. Worse yet, this tax will be payable before the employee has received any cash from this transaction. Cash will be available upon sale of the stock, but typically the employee will not wish to sell at this time, and there will be no market for stock in a closely held corporation in any case.

**Stock Options.** With a stock option, the employee is given the right to purchase stock in the corporation (or membership interests in an LLC) at a fixed price for a significant period of time. Thus, without investing any money, the employee can watch the value of this right increase as the value of the stock increases over the amount she would have to pay to purchase it.

Unfortunately, however, when the employee ultimately exercises the option and purchases the stock, the Internal Revenue Code requires recognition of income in the amount of the difference between the amount paid and the value of the stock at that time. Again, this occurs at a time when the employee has received no cash and likely has little desire or ability to sell.

Recognizing this problem, Congress has provided more favorable tax treatment for an employee stock option that meets a number of requirements (although this treatment is, unfortunately, available only in the context of corporations). This is called an *incentive stock option (ISO)*. Among other requirements,

- ❑ The ISO must be issued pursuant to a stock option plan approved by the corporation's stockholders;
- ❑ The exercise price must be the fair market value of the stock at the time of issuance;
- ❑ Each option cannot last more than 10 years, and no more than \$100,000 of exercise price may become exercisable in any one year;
- ❑ And perhaps most significantly, the employee must hold onto any stock purchased pursuant to the option for the longer of one year after exercise or two years after the grant of the option.

<b>Equity Grant</b>	<b>Date of Grant</b>	<b>Risk Removed</b>	<b>Sale of Equity</b>
Vested equity	Ordinary income	Not applicable	Capital gain
Risk of forfeiture	No income	Ordinary income	Capital gain
Risk of forfeiture – Sec. 83(B) election	Ordinary income	No income	Capital gain
<b>Stock Options</b>	<b>Date of Grant</b>	<b>Date of Exercise</b>	<b>Sale of Stock</b>
Nonqualified stock option with readily ascertainable value	Ordinary income	No income	Capital gain
Nonqualified stock option with no ascertainable value	No income	Ordinary income	Capital gain
Incentive stock option (ISO)	No income	No income	Capital gain

**Figure 12.4****Comparison of equity sharing methods**

If these requirements are met, unless she is subject to the alternative minimum tax, the employee is not taxed until she actually sells the stock acquired under the option (and has cash to pay tax). The income is then taxed at favorable long-term capital gain rates.

The corporation can still require the employee to sell such shares back to the corporation upon termination of employment. From the corporation's point of view, the only drawback is that it loses any deduction that would otherwise be available for compensation paid to employees. Dave and Deborah may find this plan to be an attractive way to grant the requested incentive to their key employees.

Figure 12.4 compares these various methods of sharing equity with employees.

## Insurance

The expenses associated with beginning a business are not inconsiderable. As employees are added to the organization, Social Security, unemployment compensation, and other costs increase, and workers' compensation insurance is required by many states. But such insurance is not the only insurance that it may be advisable to obtain.

### Property Insurance

To begin with, Dave and Deborah should consider property insurance for any equipment or inventory that they may have on hand. In fact, should they ever obtain a loan for their business, the lender will likely take inventory and equipment as collateral and insist that it be insured (with the proceeds payable to the lender).

### Liability Insurance

Deborah and Dave should also consider purchasing liability insurance to cover claims against their business for product liability and other possible tort claims. And although the corporate veil protects Deborah's and Dave's personal assets against claims of undercapitalization, they no doubt hope that someday soon their business will have its own considerable net worth to protect. Automobile liability insurance is required by many states as a condition to register a car, and we have already discussed the dangers of tort liability caused by employees.

## Key Person Life Insurance

We've discussed life insurance to cover stock redemptions under cross-purchase or redemption agreements. But also consider what would occur upon Dave's untimely death. Not only may Deborah or the corporation be required to repurchase his stock, but also the operations of the corporation would likely grind to a standstill while it searched for someone to replace Dave. If the corporation owned additional life insurance on Dave's life, known as *key person insurance*, it would have funds to tide it over during this business slowdown as well as money to apply to the search for and compensation of Dave's successor.

## Business Interruption Insurance

Business interruption insurance will, in many cases of catastrophic business shutdown, replace some of the company's cash flow. Such a policy is usually quite expensive, however, and may not be within the reach of a typical startup.

## Group Life, Disability, and Health Insurance for Employees

As the company grows and adds employees, there will be increasing demand for insurance as employee benefits. Many corporations provide group life insurance and/or group disability insurance for employees. Recent changes in the tax law may make more- affordable, high-deductible policies an appropriate choice.

The corporation may provide these three group policies tax-free and deduct the costs of premiums. The only exception to this favorable tax result is for partners in partnerships, members of LLCs, and significant shareholders of subchapter S corporations, all of whom must report these benefits as taxable income (although they may receive a corresponding deduction for a portion of the health insurance premiums). Thus, one additional positive aspect of the choice of a C corporation for Deborah and Dave is that any group life, disability, or health insurance provided to them by the corporation would be free of income tax.

# Raising Money

---

Thoughts of future hirings will inevitably bring Deborah and Dave to consideration of another of the challenges they anticipated. Raising money from their potential investor (as well as probable future rounds of investors) involves another set of complex legal issues.

## Legal Issues in the Sale of Securities to Investors

As an alternative to institutional lending, Deborah and Dave plan to turn to an outside investor. Although it will be difficult to attract venture capitalists to such a small startup, other sources of capital in the form of friends and family or local professionals and other individuals or entities with an interest in ground-floor investing may be available. Having chosen to take this route, it is crucial that they purge themselves of two common misconceptions.

Although most businesspeople are aware of the fact that both federal and state law regulates the offer and sale of securities, many believe that these statutes apply only to the offerings of large corporations. Small companies, they believe, are exempt from these acts. Unfortunately, this is one of the dangerous misconceptions held by many persons in the position of Deborah and Dave. In fact, these laws (specifically, the federal Securities Act of 1933, the federal Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and states' "Blue Sky" statutes) apply to all issuers and their principals.

Further, even those businesspeople who are aware of the reach of these acts believe that they only apply to issuers of equity securities, mainly stock. This, too, is a misconception. All these statutes apply to issuers of “securities,” not just stock. Securities include, in addition to stock, most debt (other than very short-term loans or loans for very specific purposes such as real estate mortgages), options, warrants, LLC membership interests, and any other form of investment in which the investor buys into a common enterprise and relies on the efforts of others for the investment’s success. Thus, such disparate items as orange groves, Hawaiian condominiums, and even worms have been held to be regulated securities under the circumstances of their respective cases.

Franchisors are required to disclose virtually the same range of information to potential franchisees that would have been required under a securities registration statement. Many states have enacted similar franchise registration laws, requiring dual federal and state registration in most franchise offerings.

In general, then, the securities laws prohibit the offering of securities to the public without prior (and very expensive) registration with an appropriate government authority such as the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). The SEC also punishes fraudulent activities in connection with such offerings, including not only affirmatively false statements but also mere nondisclosure of material facts about the investment. Due to the complex and expensive nature of registration, these laws provide exceptions to the registration requirement in specific circumstances, but even these offerings are subject to the antifraud provisions of the laws. Thus, the challenge to our two entrepreneurs is to identify provisions in the securities laws that will offer them an exemption from registration, understanding that they must still provide sufficient disclosure to potential investors (in the form of either an “offering circular” or, in appropriate circumstances, an unlimited opportunity to perform due diligence) to avoid “antifraud” liability.

One such exemption contained in the Securities Act of 1933 is the so-called intrastate offering exemption. Based on the general principle that the federal government can constitutionally regulate only *interstate* commerce, the statute necessarily exempts offerings that are purely local. However, the scope of this exemption is relatively narrow. Not only must all persons who purchase the securities be residents of one state, but all offerees must be residents there as well. Furthermore, the company offering the securities must be incorporated under the laws of that state (disqualifying many Delaware corporations) and have most of its assets and do most of its business there. Due to these restrictions, this exemption may be useful only in the case of the smallest of offerings. Besides, the exemption only excuses the offering from registration with the SEC. The state’s securities laws may still require expensive and time-consuming state registration.

The more popular exemption from registration under the federal act is the *private placement exemption*, which excuses from registration transactions “not involving a public offering.” The SEC has relied in part on this exemption to issue regulations designed to facilitate the raising of capital by small businesses in small offerings. Thus, as of this writing, Regulation D under the act exempts from registration any offering of under \$1,000,000 of securities. Above that amount, the regulation requires increasing levels of disclosure (still short of full registration, however) and limits the number of offerees to 35 plus an unlimited number of *accredited* investors. For these purposes, accredited investors are certain institutions, as well as individuals with net worth or annual income at levels that argue a need for less protection. Even apart from the regulation, however, issuers can argue under the statute that offerings made only to relatively sophisticated investors with prior relationships to the issuer qualify as transactions “not involving a public offering.”<sup>2</sup>

Of course, exemption from registration under the federal act does not grant exemption under state acts. In fact, offerings made to investors in a number of states require attention to the Blue Sky statutes of each such state. Fortunately, however, federal law has preempted state regulation in offerings beyond a certain size, and even in the absence of preemption, virtually all state statutes contain similar exemptions for private placements, typically exempting offerings to 25 or fewer persons.

Thus, Dave and Deborah will likely be able to seek out the investment they will ultimately need without the necessity of registering with either the federal or the state government. However, it cannot be overemphasized that they remain subject to the antifraud provisions of these acts. Thus, they will be well advised to seek professional assistance in identifying the applicable statutory exemptions, drawing up a comprehensive offering circular for their offering if appropriate, and disclosing all that an investor would need to know about their company to make an intelligent investment decision.

## CONCLUSION

Considering all the legal and tax pitfalls described in this chapter, you may be tempted to ask whether Deborah, Dave, or any other entrepreneur would choose to go down the road of the startup if fully aware of the complications lying in wait. But not to be aware of these matters is to choose consciously to play the game without knowing the rules. These issues are there whether the entrepreneur prepares for them or not. Surely, Dave and Deborah are much more likely to succeed in their venture for having taken the time to become aware of the legal and tax issues facing the entrepreneur.

### Reflection Point

### Your Thoughts ...

1. What fiduciary duty do you have to your current employer? Does your proposed new venture rely on proprietary information belonging to your previous employer? Are you materially interfering with your previous employer's business by recruiting away key employees?
2. When should you engage an attorney? What criteria will you use in your decision?
3. What legal form should you choose for your new company (sole proprietorship, corporation, etc.)? What criteria will you use in your decision?
4. What will you name your company? Have you registered your name with the state government? Are there other companies using the same or a similar name (check the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office database)?
5. What provisions should you have in your shareholders' agreement? What kind of salary will you draw? When will you draw it? What provisions do you have for disposition of equity (e.g., upon death, termination, etc.)?
6. What type of equity sharing (if any) will you implement with your key employees?
7. What type of insurance is needed to protect your company? When will you secure this insurance?

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

**WEB  
EXERCISE**

Many Websites offer legal form templates (e.g., shareholders' agreements). Studying these templates helps you talk with your lawyer and can reduce your legal fees (time spent with lawyers), especially if you draft the documents and then have the lawyer approve them (rather than having your attorney draft the documents from scratch). Search out Websites that offer legal templates.

**NOTES**

<sup>1</sup> [www.cybercrime.gov/lamIndict.htm](http://www.cybercrime.gov/lamIndict.htm).

<sup>2</sup> More information on private placements can be found on the SEC Website at

[www.sec.gov/info/smallbus/qasbsec.htm  
#eod6.](http://www.sec.gov/info/smallbus/qasbsec.htm#eod6)

# Cadence Design Systems and Avant! (A)

**CASE**

## A NEST OF SOFTWARE SPIES<sup>1</sup>

The Avant! trade-theft suit could begin to rein in Silicon Valley's freewheeling ways

*Business Week*, May 19, 1997

Peter Burrows in San Mateo, California

Cadence Design Systems CEO Joseph B. Costello traces his crusade against rival software maker Avant! Corp. to the day in 1994 when Vice President Gerald "Gerry" C. Hsu resigned. Four top employees had left to create Avant! three years before, so Costello wondered if Hsu planned to cross enemy lines, too. According to Costello, Hsu claimed merely to be taking time off at the beach—but was stone silent when asked if Avant! fit into his future plans. A few days later, Costello's suspicions proved correct when Hsu answered the phone at Avant! offices in Sunnyvale, California. "So is this the beach, Gerry?" Costello asked. Hsu declined to comment on the conversation.

Thus began what prosecutors now say was the most blatant case of trade-secret theft in the history of Silicon Valley. On April 11 [1997], Hsu and six other former Cadence officials were indicted on breathtaking charges: They allegedly had used stolen software to build a company with a market value that at one time exceeded \$1 billion. The news sent Avant! stock down nearly 60% immediately after the arrests, to \$9.81, though it has since bounced back up to \$16.75. The defendants, who have all pleaded not guilty, each face up to seven years in prison and civil lawsuits.

## "Over the Edge"

The tale that prosecutors tell is a sobering illustration of how far some executives will apparently go to gain a competitive edge. Many people are saying it also shows how little respect is accorded to other people's intellectual property these days in Silicon Valley, where the temptation to cut corners to get a product to market is acute. With engineers changing jobs like shirts, it's easy to look the other way when a new employee borrows ideas from a previous employer. And with Internet links and laptops, such heists are only a mouse-click away. "There's no clear border between right and wrong out here, and everyone goes a little over the edge at times," says Vincent F. Sollitto, CEO of San José-based Photon Dynamics Inc., a Cadence customer. "If Joe is right, this would make an example of someone who went over and didn't come back."

The Cadence story, if true, is also an object lesson in the difficulties software companies face trying to protect their intellectual assets. While trade-secret theft is rising by all accounts, busting the pilferers is expensive and time-consuming. It took pit-bull persistence by Costello, lucky breaks, and \$10 million worth of lawyers and private investigators to get the case to this point. What's more, litigation is considered bad form in Silicon Valley, where the honorable way to win market share is through innovation. During the fight, Costello was lambasted in the media as a bully and his board, customers, and friends urged him to give up the chase. Says Costello, "When it's a solid-steel case, you have to do something about it. But there's so many things moving against you. It's uphill all the way."

This case was prepared by Professor William Bygrave. Funding was provided by the Arthur M. Blank Center for Entrepreneurship.  
© Copyright Babson College, 2006. All rights reserved.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from the May 19, 1997 issue of *Business Week* by special permission, copyright © 1997 by McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.  
[www.businessweek.com/1997/20/b352792.htm](http://www.businessweek.com/1997/20/b352792.htm)

## Nimble Rival

Naturally, Avant! (pronounced Ah-VON-tee) sees things differently. Lawyers for the company insist it never received stolen software code and point out that the company even removed some suspicious code from its products to be sure it was clean. In written comments to *Business Week*, Avant! CEO Hsu suggests the conflict is more about personalities than felonies. “[Costello] seems intent on attacking me personally—particularly in the press. I can understand why he would prefer to talk about me instead of Cadence’s . . . software products: Avant!’s are vastly superior to Cadence’s tools, and chipmakers are voting with their pocketbooks,” says Hsu.

Avant! backers claim Costello’s crusade is little more than a dangerous vendetta against a small, nimble rival. If he succeeds, they say, it could have serious implications for startups, the lifeblood of Silicon Valley. In fact, Avant! claims Cadence is the one fighting dirty. It has countered Cadence’s civil suit and seeks hundreds of millions of dollars to compensate for the company’s swooning stock price. Among other things, Avant! claims Cadence employees have shorted Avant! stock and spread negative rumors to drive it out of business. Costello says these are diversionary tactics to take the focus off the evidence.

## Sleaze Factor

Santa Clara (California) county prosecutors, who have heard both sides of the tale, believe Cadence’s version. According to those prosecutors and court documents filed by Cadence in connection with its civil suit, this is no mere case of an employee grabbing a diskette or two on the way out the door. Rather, they allege that Hsu and the other indicted Avant! executives are guilty of a multiyear conspiracy to steal the “source code” to key Cadence “place-and-route” programs, used by microchip designers to arrange circuits on a slice of silicon. “We don’t file unless there’s a high sleaze factor,” says District Attorney Julius Finkelstein. “We want people actually walking out the door with property, and that’s what we got.”

Ordinarily, place-and-route programs take years to develop. Not at Avant!. By stealing from Cadence on three separate occasions, prosecutors allege, Avant! was able to bring products to market with implausible speed. In the process, its sales soared from \$39 million in 1994 to \$106 million in 1996. In all, Costello figures Cadence has lost as much as \$100 million in sales to Avant!.

According to Finkelstein, Avant! (then called ArcSys Inc.) from its very inception was built on stolen code. Avant! denies the charge. Finkelstein points to an electronic log found during a joint FBI and police raid on Avant!’s offices in December, 1995, that suggests Avant! founder Stephen Tzyh-Lih Wuu spent his final weeks as a Cadence research and development manager in 1991 copying a basic place-and-route program called Symbad. That, court documents say, is how Avant! was able to launch its first place-and-route offering, called ArcCell, in just two years—versus the six years it took Cadence to finish Symbad. Wuu says the 47,000 lines of code mentioned in his log were original work that he completed in 19 days. But Cadence disputes this claim, arguing that 100 lines is a normal day’s work.

Prosecutors claim that in 1994, Avant! persuaded former Cadence engineer Mitsuru “Mitch” Igusa to commit the second theft. This time the target was allegedly a key enhancement to place-and-route software—a so-called area-based program that lets the computer do more of the grunt work in chip design. While Igusa never took a job at Avant!, prosecutors allege that indicted Avant! executive Shiaoli Huang paid him at least \$15,000 for stealing Cadence code. The money allegedly came from a shell company Huang was

administering called the Saurus Fund, which was set up by some of the indicted executives purportedly to fund future startups. [In 1995, Hsu asked the board of directors to reconsider hiring Igusa. The board refused to hire someone who was under criminal investigation, but the suggestion was made that while Avant! could not give financial help to Igusa, individuals could.<sup>2]</sup>] Igusa now faces six felony counts for theft, stemming from a raid on his home in November, 1995, in which police found a hard drive full of Cadence source code, much of it stripped of the company's copyright notices.

## Miracle Grow

Avant! says that the money it gave Igusa was for a potential startup project, and that the company never received stolen code from Igusa. For his part, Igusa has pled not guilty and could not be reached for comment. But once again, the speed with which the company released an area-based place-and-route program strikes at least one competitor as suspicious. About a year before Avant! released the product, Hsu allegedly approached rival Silicon Valley Research Inc. about a merger to bring in such technology—and was turned down. One Silicon Valley Research manager was shocked when Avant! later released the software: “They miraculously developed it overnight.” Avant! Chief Financial Officer John Huyett declined to comment directly on the company’s dealings with Silicon Valley Research but said that “Hsu has talked to just about everyone with something to offer in our industry.”

The third theft allegedly occurred in January, 1995. According to prosecutors, on his next-to-last day at Cadence before leaving for Avant!, engineer Chin-Liang “Eric” Cheng copied a program he had written over the previous two years onto a file he named “byebye” and stored it on a backup tape. Called V-Size, the program lets designers figure how big a chip must be to handle a given number of circuits. While Avant! never marketed the product, it had planned to do so in 1996, according to documents seized by the FBI, which has been working with Santa Clara county prosecutors since 1994. Avant! denies any wrongdoing, and Cheng declined to comment.

## Lucky Break

In retrospect, Costello finds it shocking how little loyalty his former employees appear to have had to the company. “The same people came into my house three times and stole some of my most valuable belongings. It’s not right, and we can’t live this way,” he says. By his own admission, Costello learned of the alleged thefts remarkably slowly. Originally, he wasn’t alarmed when Avant!’s founders and other employees refused to sign forms promising to respect Cadence’s trade secrets. But he reconsidered after a surprising discovery in August, 1995. A Cadence engineer was on a routine visit to a customer when he happened to look at some of their Avant! software. He spotted a tiny flaw he had unintentionally written into a Cadence product years before—a misaligned edge of a rarely used screen that made it appear fuzzy. To confirm the engineer’s hunch, Costello asked a customer to compare the two products. The results: 4,000 identical lines of code and even identical grammatical mistakes. Avant! denies that any theft took place.

<sup>2</sup>Cadence vs. Avant! Case #E-61. Stanford University Graduate School of Business.

Now armed with what he considered conclusive evidence that Avant! had ripped off Cadence code, Costello declared war. But even as his legal case was jelling, he found little support in tight-knit Silicon Valley. Industry reporters and customers alike accused him of using the courts to beat up on a feisty rival. A customer at chipmaker S3 Corp. sent him a heated e-mail message saying “this posturing in the courts is a waste of everyone’s time,” Costello recalls. Wall Street analysts urged him to stop mentioning the affair at financial meetings—it was detracting from their Avant! stock sales pitches. Through it all, customers continued to snap up Avant! software—usually without even investigating Costello’s charges. “The thing that’s mind-boggling is how people tried to dismiss it,” says Costello. “It’s like, ‘So, they stole some things.’”

As the heat rose against Cadence in mid-1996, even personal friends and backers questioned Costello’s judgment. Nervous about the expense and bad publicity, members of Cadence’s board began to reconsider their support of the lawsuit. Says one Cadence manager, “Our board just didn’t want to go to the mat.” Friends and trusted advisers at Motorola Inc. and Siemens wrote off the issue, predicting that “you’ll end up settling,” Costello says. And as former Cadence colleague Prabhu Goel planned to sell his company, Frontline Design Automation Inc., to Avant! in late 1996, Costello couldn’t even get Goel on the phone to discuss the ethical implications. Goel says he had made a “judgment call” that Hsu was innocent and didn’t want to do anything that could scotch the deal.

Others questioned Costello’s motives. After all, Avant! was winning away key customers, and Costello, a slick marketer, wasn’t above playing dirty pool to hurt his rival’s reputation, they said. Before the indictment, “I thought this could have been without cause—just two companies and two men fighting with each other,” admits Walden C. Rhines, CEO of Mentor Graphics Corp. in Wilsonville, Oregon.

Now the indictments have given Costello at least partial vindication. But the story is hardly over. On April 30, a determined Hsu vowed at an industry conference to “take the offensive” against Cadence with an aggressive marketing and advertising campaign. “We are not going to stop until we win completely,” said Hsu. Hsu went on to project that Avant! would quadruple in size by 2000. But for that to happen, he’s going to have to keep himself and his executive team out of jail. Win or lose, Avant!’s tangle with Cadence has been a wake-up call to the rest of Silicon Valley.

## Funding ArcSys/Avant!

Venture capital firms invested a total of \$7.8 million in two rounds in ArcSys/Avant!. The venture capital firms were the following:

- Advanced Technology Ventures
- Amerindo Investment Advisors
- August Capital
- Newbury Ventures
- Sutter Hill Ventures

In June 1995, ArcSys/Avant! raised \$31 million with its IPO.

## Board of Directors (1997)

- Gerald C. Hsu, Chairman—Avant!
- Eric A. Brill, Secretary

Y. Eric Cho—Avant!  
 Tench Coxe—Venture Capitalist, Sutter Hill Ventures  
 Charles St. Clair

## The Case Against Avant!

How software maker Avant! allegedly stole trade secrets from rival Cadence—and got nabbed—resulting in one of the computer industry's biggest espionage prosecutions.

*March, 1994:* Gerry Hsu quits Cadence, reportedly telling CEO Joe Costello that he would probably leave high tech altogether. A few days later, Hsu emerges as CEO at competitor ArcSys, Avant!'s predecessor.

*September, 1994:* Key Cadence engineer Mitch Igusa quits. Subsequent investigation reveals that Igusa allegedly e-mailed four crucial files containing trade secrets to his home PC before leaving.

*May, 1995:* ArcSys, allegedly using stolen Cadence technology, goes public. Its market value quickly surpasses \$1 billion.

*August, 1995:* Igusa is charged. Private investigators for Cadence discover an alleged “slush fund” set up by Avant! to pay him for his efforts.

*December, 1995:* FBI officers raid Avant!'s offices.

*May, 1996:* Cadence files for a preliminary injunction to prevent Avant! from selling possibly tainted software. In March, the injunction was denied, but the presiding judge suggested there was evidence that at least some Cadence code had been stolen.

*April, 1997:* Six Avant! managers are charged with trade-secret theft and conspiracy.

## Fight to the Death

After six Avant! managers were charged in 1997 with conspiracy and theft of trade secrets from Cadence, Hsu responded by declaring war on his former employer. “He'd say, ‘I'm going to fight this to the death. They don't know who they're dealing with,’ ” recalls one former executive.

Fight he did. On the legal front, Hsu assembled a defense dream team that included many of the Bay Area's top criminal lawyers. The attorneys ran a scorched-earth . . . campaign. Using a variety of tactics, the attorneys managed to get three judges in a row to leave the case. They also made three unsuccessful attempts to disqualify prosecutor Finkelstein. “The defense left no legal stone unturned,” says Finkelstein.

Hsu also worked the public-relations angle. He launched an advertising campaign to turn public opinion. Avant! hired media consultant Mark Fabiani, who had helped the Clinton administration through the Whitewater scandal. That October, the company ran a full-page newspaper ad headed “The Ugly Truth,” with a grotesquely morphed photo of Costello, claiming Cadence was using the courts to hurt a nimble competitor.

Then, in 1998, Hsu set up the Avant! Foundation, which bombarded Silicon Valley residents with syrupy radio ads offering to give away everything from college scholarships to free PCs for the elderly. According to state records, the Avant! Foundation spent almost \$1.4 million promoting itself in 1999 and 2000, nearly twice what it had given away. Matt Lipschultz, the foundation's director of operations, said the promotions were necessary to find candidates for funding and that it was spending “more on programming.”

## Avant! and Six Executives Cop a Plea<sup>3</sup>

A long protracted legal battle ensued as Hsu and his partners in crime brazened it out. They proclaimed innocence and blamed their predicament on Cadence. They stalled the prosecution with a variety of tactics that stretched the law to the limits. But the prosecutors were persistent and they eventually got their day in court. Trial proceedings began May 14, 2001.

On May 22, 2001, Avant! and six current or former employees and/or directors entered pleas of no contest to conspiracy to misappropriate trade secrets, two counts of trade secret misappropriation, and a violation of California corporate securities law. In connection with the plea agreement, Avant! agreed to pay a fine of \$27 million and to pay restitution in an amount to be determined by the court. On July 25, 2001, the court fixed the total restitution amount to be paid to Cadence at \$195.4 million, any unpaid portion of which accrued interest at the statutory rate of 10% beginning July 25, 2001. In addition to the plea by Avant!, the individual defendants resolved the charges against them in the following manner:

- Gerald Hsu pleaded no contest to conspiracy to misappropriate trade secrets, failure to return stolen property, and a violation of California corporate securities law and agreed to pay a \$2.7 million fine.
- Leigh Huang, Y.Z. Liao, and Eric Cho pleaded no contest to trade secret conspiracy and a violation of California corporate securities law. Huang, Liao, and Cho agreed to pay fines of \$0.1 million, \$2.7 million, and \$0.1 million, respectively. Huang was sentenced to three years' probation. Liao and Cho were each sentenced to three years' probation and one year in county jail.
- Stephen Wuu pleaded no contest to trade secret misappropriation and a violation of California corporate securities law. Wuu agreed to pay a \$2.7 million fine. Wuu was sentenced to two years in prison and three years' probation.
- Eric Cheng pleaded no contest to trade secret misappropriation. Cheng agreed to pay a \$27,000 fine and was sentenced to three years' probation and 364 days in county jail. Effective July 25, 2001, Cheng resigned his position at Avant!.
- All charges were dismissed against former Avant! executive Mike Tsai.
- Mitch Igusa, who was never an Avant! employee, pleaded no contest. He was fined \$27,000 and sentenced to one year in the county jail.

## Joe Costello (Former Cadence CEO), May 2001<sup>4</sup>

Joe Costello in an interview with *Electronic News* hoped that the successful prosecution of the Avant! executives would encourage district attorneys throughout the country to pursue others who steal corporate trade secrets. He also hoped that companies would stand up and not put up with corporate theft.

He was still appalled at the number of companies that had turned a blind eye to Avant!'s behavior. Costello said, "That's the most interesting part of the story at this point: All of these

<sup>3</sup>Excerpted from Synopsys 10K filing with the SEC. [www.synopsys.com/corporate/invest/final18-K\\_73002.pdf](http://www.synopsys.com/corporate/invest/final18-K_73002.pdf).

<sup>4</sup>Excerpted from *Electronic News*, May 28, 2001. [www.reed-electronics.com/Electronicnews/index.asp?layout=articlePrint&articleID=CA83984](http://www.reed-electronics.com/Electronicnews/index.asp?layout=articlePrint&articleID=CA83984).

people who told me to just drop it and go out and compete in the market . . . who told me they didn't want to hear it. I was there saying, 'Hey, none of that makes it right to steal!'"

"It really surprised me. I'd say 10% to 15% of the customers, people like T.J. Rodgers [Founder, President, and CEO, Cypress Semiconductor Corp.], said it's stolen property, and we won't buy it. Then another 10%, or 15%, these people just said they didn't care. And I'm not talking about low-level engineers; I'm talking high-up executives said this. I'd ask them, 'Would you buy a stolen car?' They were just brazen about it. Nearly 70% were in between the two. They'd say this is between you and Avant!"

Avant!'s admitting to three separate thefts of Cadence's property had Costello waiting to see how customers would respond. Now he would find out if they had been sincere when they previously vowed never to use Avant!'s software were it proven to have been stolen. He was not optimistic. One customer had just sent him an e-mail that more or less said that the crime did not bother him. "If that is how we feel about this, we have got a sickness in our high-tech society," Costello observed.

## Maybe We Need Corporate Death Penalty<sup>5</sup>

Dan Gillmor is a noted American technology writer and former columnist for the *San José Mercury News*. He was so outraged by Avant!'s admission that it stole trade secrets that he posed a provocative question: "Should there be a corporate death penalty?" He continued, "It's worth asking that question in the wake of the stunning news Tuesday that Avant!, its chief executive, Gerald Hsu, and five current or former executives had copped [a plea] to criminal behavior. The bottom line was simple. These guys had created a computer-aided design company with software code they stole from the company several had recently left, Cadence Design Systems, and used the code to compete with their former employer."

Gillmor echoed the words of the district attorney that Avant!'s entire existence was a fraud, founded on criminal acts. He suggested that in a case as egregious as Avant!'s, "you have to ask whether the system would be improved with an ultimate corporate penalty—a sanction that would truly deter such misconduct."

### The Avant! Saga: Does Crime Pay?<sup>6</sup>

#### The inside story of a company that stole software code

*Business Week*, September 3, 2001 by Peter Burrows in San Mateo, California

In early 1993, at a team-building exercise at the posh Claremont Hotel in Berkeley, California, executives from software maker Cadence Design Systems Inc. were asked to draw an image that described themselves. While many people pondered what to draw, division president Gerry Hsu—a talented artist, according to two attendees—quickly dashed off a picture of a big, powerful bird flying off into the distance, droppings falling all the way. "I always know where I'm going, and I get there very fast," he explained at the time, "but I tend to leave a trail of s behind me." Who could have predicted he would leave behind this much of it?

Since departing Cadence for Avant! Corp. in 1994, Hsu has transformed the tiny software boutique from a \$2 million-a-year startup into a roaring profit machine that earned \$70.9

<sup>5</sup> *San José Mercury News*, May 23, 2001.

<sup>6</sup> Reprinted from the September 3, 2001 issue of *Business Week* by special permission, copyright © 2001 by McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. [www.businessweek.com/magazine/content/01\\_36/b3747087.htm](http://www.businessweek.com/magazine/content/01_36/b3747087.htm).

million on sales of \$358 million in 2000. But on May 22 [2001], Hsu and five top managers pleaded no contest to charges that they conspired to steal Cadence software. Now the company has been struggling to come up with enough cash to pay \$195 million in additional criminal penalties. And the worst may be yet to come because Avant! is facing a potentially crippling civil suit by Cadence. From May 21 to August 22, the share price has tumbled from \$18.55 to \$7.55.

## Criminal Origins

The Avant! case is probably the most dramatic tale of white-collar crime in the history of Silicon Valley. Hsu & Co. parlayed a product containing purloined code into a thriving 1,500-employee public company, with a gleaming, modern office complex in Fremont, California, and a highly visible charitable foundation that has blanketed the Bay Area with radio ads. “What makes the case unique is that you have a large, publicly traded company that was founded and built on stolen property,” says Santa Clara County Deputy District Attorney Julius Finkelstein, the one-time computer-science graduate student who prosecuted the case.

That’s bad enough. But in a month-long investigation, *Business Week* has learned that the problems at Avant! go beyond the issues raised in the criminal case. Hsu has been running the company almost as if it were his family business—seemingly without regard for many common tenets of corporate governance, according to more than a dozen former co-workers and customers. He pays CEO-level salaries to his son and a former flight attendant, though former employees say that both have limited business backgrounds. Under Hsu’s watch, Avant! has also invested or made business deals with at least four other companies in which he has personal stakes. “To Gerry, every system is made to be manipulated. You push the line as far as it can go—hopefully without breaking it,” says one associate.

Hsu, 56, declined repeated requests for interviews and did not respond to written questions. But in court, his lawyers have said that the software in question was unimportant and that the company made every effort to remove stolen code. As for questions of improper governance, Avant! executives say employees are paid appropriately, that all the deals with companies owned by Hsu have been negotiated at arm’s length, and that the primary reason for Avant!’s success is its innovative engineering—a point echoed by others in the industry. “Avant! is a leading company with very strong products,” says Bernd U. Braune, CEO of Get2chip Inc., a rival design software company. “Some individuals made some mistakes, and they are going to have to pay. But if someone says they were only successful because they stole some code, I think that’s definitely wrong.”

## Avant! Cleans Up?

Avant! is also making an effort to clean up its image. On July 25, the company announced that Hsu would pass day-to-day control to former Chief Operating Officer Paul Lo, who would replace Hsu as president. Lo’s first move: to issue a public apology. “Avant! Corp. is sorry for the events of the past,” he wrote in a public letter. “We pledge to work hard to deserve the trust and support of our industry.”

But few outside the company believe there has been any real change—and they point to Hsu as the main reason. Although he pled no contest to securities fraud, conspiracy to steal trade secrets, and failure to return stolen property, Hsu managed to avoid jail time, largely because there was no evidence that he directly participated in the thefts, according to

Finkelstein. By contrast, co-conspirators Mitch Igusa, Eric Cheng, and Stephen Wuu were caught with Cadence code.

To alleviate the sting of the criminal proceeding, the board is paying Hsu's entire fine as well as all of his legal expenses. More important, he is remaining as the chairman of Avant's board and its chief strategist—roughly akin to Bill Gates' . . . title and role at Microsoft Corp. Despite all the rogue behavior, fellow board members seem untroubled by Hsu's record. When the company announced his new role, it cited a mild heart attack as the reason, with no mention of the Cadence case. According to board member Daniel Taylor, a retired U.S. Forest Service park ranger, directors never considered asking Hsu to leave. "He's too precious," Taylor says.

In fact, the board will increase Hsu's \$1.6 million salary by 5% a year through 2008, according to documents filed on July 25. That's five times more than Lo's \$310,000 annual pay. The board is even trying to cement a continued role for Hsu with a new "poison pill." According to new employment contracts also unveiled on July 25, any decision by shareholders not to reelect Hsu as chairman would be deemed a "change in control." That, in turn, would allow many managers to cash out their options, thereby raising the cost of any hostile attempt to oust Hsu.

All of this conduct raises red flags with corporate governance experts. Despite conduct that would be completely unacceptable at most public companies, Hsu has skated through the Cadence debacle without any meaningful punishment. And though the stock has plummeted, most analysts believe Avant! will ultimately survive. "The Number 1 question is why they didn't fire the guy," says Nell Minow of the Corporate Library, a shareholder rights Website. "There's something really, really wrong here."

## Public Company or Sole Proprietorship?

Based on Hsu's assurances that the charges against him were bogus, investors ponied up \$31 million in a June, 1995, initial public offering. Profits soared, and the share price zoomed from \$13 to \$45 by late July. Hsu cashed in on the company's success by embarking on a 13-company, \$230 million acquisition spree, enabling Avant! to take on rivals Cadence and Synopsys Inc.

Even as a public company, though, Avant! was run almost like a sole proprietorship. According to several present and former employees, many family members have always been on the payroll. Hsu's son, John H. Hsu, is head of Avant's Asia operation, though he only received his master's degree in marketing from Loyola Marymount University in 1998. According to company documents, John was 27 as of July 27, and earned \$209,996 in salary and a \$778,629 bonus in 2000. "He's a nice kid, but he's extremely inexperienced," says one former executive. "He's a good softball player," says another. John Hsu did not respond to repeated requests for comment.

The second-highest-paid executive at the company is Noriko Ando, who earned \$1.46 million in salary and bonuses in 2000. Previously a Japan Airlines flight attendant, Hsu hired her when he was at Cadence to help him arrange travel in Asia and coordinate meetings with executives from big Japanese customers, say several Cadence sources. Fiercely loyal to Hsu, she quickly rose through the ranks to become head of operations.

"She's good at doing what Gerry tells her to do," says a former Avant! executive, who adds that Ando's salary and power have become a source of bitter controversy within the company. "She doesn't know anything about technology," says another source. Ando declined

to comment on her salary or qualifications. Since Lo became president, Ando and John Hsu have been moved to new positions, but there has been no change in their compensation, says a company spokesman.

So far, the board of directors has let Hsu get away with such actions. Of the six members other than Hsu, five have connections to Avant! insiders. Former park ranger Taylor is a friend of Hsu's sister. Also on the board are a venture capitalist in whose fund Avant! has invested \$10 million, a former Avant! customer who now runs one of its distributors, and a former Avant! manager. The board has always been generous with Hsu. Thanks to a \$2.8 million bonus in 2000, Hsu made twice as much as the CEOs of rivals Synopsys and Mentor Graphics Corp., although both of those companies are bigger than Avant!, and their stocks have performed much better. The company's general counsel, Clayton Parker, says, "Avant! is far and away the most profitable company in the [electronic design] industry. Perhaps it should be no surprise that the CEO is well compensated for that."

Hsu may get along well with the board, but he has had a harder time with outside auditors. In 2000, Avant! dismissed KPMG as its outside auditor. Not long afterward, the auditor filed a legally required document with the Securities and Exchange Commission in which it expressed concerns about fiscal years 1999 and 2000, including "incomplete and missing contract documentation," "inadequate internal communications in connection with recording revenue," and "lack of timely and accurate account reconciliations in a number of areas, including cash, unbilled accounts receivable, prepaid commissions, and investments in affiliates." KPMG won't comment further. While not necessarily an indication of fraud, says David F. Larcker, an accounting professor at the Wharton School, such a long list of grievances is unusual and indicates that KPMG may have believed its auditors were not getting sufficient information from the company. Avant! Finance Chief Viraj J. Patel denies any impropriety. "We're not cooking the books."

Critics say Hsu's history with the board and the KPMG incident are troubling, given Avant!'s history of making deals with other companies that Hsu has invested in. In 1997, for example, he, Ando, and a few others created a new Japan-based company called Maingate Electronics to distribute Avant! software. Hsu personally owns 50% of Maingate, with the rest held by Ando and an investment fund in which other Avant! insiders are investors.

The Maingate deal is legal, to be sure. But it does create an opportunity for abuse. For example, Avant! has refused to disclose what price Hsu and other insiders paid for shares of Maingate recently bought back from Avant!. That raises a question of whether Hsu, with the support of the board, granted himself a low purchase price. And given Hsu's big stake in Maingate, it could be in his interest to pay Maingate overly cushy commissions—a potential means of shifting profits from U.S. shareholders to Maingate's owners. "The CEO should never be investing alongside the company," says Corporate Library's Minow. "That's just terrible. The temptation is too great to have the company prop up your investment."

Apparently, Maingate isn't an anomaly. When Avant! decided in 2000 to spin off its Taiwan operation into a new entity called Avant! Hi Tech Inc., Hsu ended up with a 5% share and his son John got 3%, making John the second-largest owner. Avant! would not say what price per share the Hsus paid for their stakes. And in 2000, Hsu invested \$1 million of his own money in SMIC, a China-based startup that will build semiconductors on a contract basis. Later that year, Avant! committed \$100 million. Since that corporate investment came in a later round of financing, the company could have paid a higher price per share. The company declined to provide detailed information on Maingate, Avant! Hi Tech, or SMIC.

## Down but Not Out

Avant! still faces a civil suit filed by Cadence, which will probably seek damages of more than \$1 billion but is likely to take at least another year before it's resolved. Some customers, worried about Avant!'s financial picture and angered by Hsu's prior insistence on his innocence, say they may look to newer design software companies with hotter technology. The biggest concern: that many of the top-notch engineers who believed Hsu's claims may now leave Avant! to escape the legal cloud.

But few people are willing to count Hsu out entirely. He's nothing if not a survivor. "Gerry's favorite book has always been Sun Tzu's *The Art of War*," says his old nemesis, former Cadence CEO Costello. "Well, the general is a little bit down and has lost a few battles. But he's still alive." No doubt. But if history is any guide, Hsu will simply regroup and prepare for the next fight.

## Preparation Questions

1. What is your opinion of the behavior of the following actors:
  - a. Joe Costello
  - b. Gerry Hsu
  - c. Former Cadence employees that went over to Avant!
  - d. Customers and potential customers of Cadence and Avant!
  - e. Avant!'s auditors
  - f. Avant!'s lawyers
  - g. The prosecutors
2. What is the responsibility of the venture capitalist(s) who funded ArcSys (Avant!)?
3. What is the responsibility of the underwriter who handled ArcSys/Avant!'s IPO?
4. Evaluate Avant!'s board of directors.
5. What should the board do now (September 2001)?
6. Should there be a corporate death penalty as Dan Gillmor proposed?

*This page intentionally left blank*



Halloween pumpkin leaf bags. (Source: Melissa King/iStockphoto)

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Entrepreneurship and **intellectual property** (IP) go hand in hand. Intellectual property refers to creations of the mind, such as inventions; literary and artistic works; and symbols, names, images, and designs used in commerce. Business intellectual property includes patents, trade secrets, trademarks, and copyrights.

*Patents* protect inventions. *Trade secrets* cover proprietary information, whether it's in the form of a recipe, a customer list, or a unique way of conducting business. *Trademarks* are key in differentiating a business's products and services from those of others as well as in franchising arrangements. *Copyrights* protect authors' original creations, including literary, musical, artistic, software, and other intellectual works.

Investors need to be assured not only that you've considered IP but also that you've implemented a plan to protect your company's crown jewels. And because IP protection costs money, you need to budget for and manage it.



In a survey we conducted, nearly 90% of venture capital firms in New England ranked IP as important

or extremely important in making an investment decision.

There are few guarantees in the area of IP. Not every patent application is granted; a name you've chosen for your company might not be available or be registrable as a trademark for a variety of reasons; not every noncompete agreement will pass muster in the courts. Sometimes entrepreneurs must take risks. To do that wisely, you'll want to understand the IP environment, which is slow to change in its legal underpinnings but continually being pushed to keep up with technological advances.

Even when it's successful, however, protecting IP is not the endgame. A patent, for example, doesn't generate revenue—it's just a document. A patent taken out for a great new idea is nothing unless people are willing to pay for that idea implemented in a product or service. Timing can play a crucial role in IP, just as it does in exploiting an entrepreneurial opportunity.

Finally, IP is everywhere. Just because your business isn't about technology, don't be misled into thinking you won't ever face IP issues. Patents today cover nonengineering subject matter ranging from holders for floral bouquets to business methods; trademark law is invoked in Internet search engines, pop-up ads, and Websites in general; and even users of another company's products, for example, can be sued for patent infringement.

## The Basics: What Is Protectable and How Should It Be Protected?

When someone conceives a new idea or designs a new product or method, two of the first questions to arise are these: Can I protect this? Can I keep competitors from copying this?

There are very practical reasons for protecting a new idea. Investors are loathe to put money into a venture that cannot establish a unique product niche. Stockholders will challenge a corporation's investment of its resources in a program that can be easily copied once it is introduced to the market. All the time, effort, and money you invest in perfecting a product, as well as advertising and promoting it, may be wasted if imitators can enter the market on your heels with a product just like yours. Moreover, the imitators can cut prices because they have not incurred the startup expenses you had to endure to bring the idea from conception to a mass-producible, reliable, and appealing product or service.

The next question is, "Does my new product infringe the IP rights of anyone else?" Only by understanding the basics of IP can you answer that.

Once you have determined that your new idea, product, or method is eligible for one or more forms of IP protection—*patent, trade secret, trademark, or copyright*—secure the rights as quickly as the budget allows. A single product can qualify for different forms of protection, each obtained in a different manner and providing a different set of rights. For example, consider a typical modern product—a handheld microprocessor-based device. It bears the name of the manufacturer and a brand name and is accompanied by a user's manual. What is protectable, and how should you protect it? Where might others have IP that you must consider? The following sections provide information to help answer these questions.

# Patents

---

Although there are actually three different kinds of patents, the kind you will usually seek to protect an invention is a **utility patent**. Think utility patent whenever you think “better, cheaper, faster.” But don’t confuse *invention* in the patent sense with “eureka”-type ideas. Most patents are simple combinations of well-known components. Consider the following examples.

In one case, a patent allegedly protected the notion of a document scanner equipped with a USB (universal serial bus) port. A USB is simply a connection between a computer and a peripheral device such as a scanner. The USB connection transfers data between the two and also allows the scanner to be powered from the computer. That way, with a USB connection, you don’t have to plug the scanner into an electrical wall socket. Indeed, the scanner can even be powered by the computer’s battery in the case of a portable computer. The “inventors” of this particular patent didn’t invent either the USB or the scanner. But when they decided to put the two together, they won a patent.

Consider also aerogel, listed in the *Guinness Book of World Records* as the world’s lightest substance. A block of aerogel as big as you weighs less than a pound but can support a small car. Recently, numerous companies have been patenting new uses for aerogel—as insulation, in fuel cells, and as building structures, just to give a few examples. Engineers at those companies didn’t invent aerogel—a Stanford University researcher discovered it in the early 1930s. Still, the Patent Office will readily grant patents for new uses of aerogel.

Technically speaking, utility patents cover these classes of inventions:

- *Chemical inventions* include new compounds, new methods of making old or new compounds, new methods of using old or new compounds, and new combinations of old compounds. Assays, biological materials and methods, drugs, foodstuffs, drug therapy, plastics, petroleum derivatives, synthetic materials, adhesives, pesticides, fertilizers, and feeds are all protectable.
- *General/mechanical inventions* include everything from gears and engines to tweezers and propellers, from zippers to Jacques Cousteau’s scuba regulator. For example, complex textile-weaving machines, space capsule locks and seals, and diaper pins are all protectable.
- *Electrical inventions* include everything from lasers to light switches, from the smallest circuit details to overall system architectural concepts.

Computer software is also patentable in various forms:

- Application programs, such as the software that runs in a computer used to control a chemical-processing plant or a rubber-molding machine, are patentable.
- Software for running a cash management account at a brokerage house or bank is patentable.
- The microcode in a ROM that embodies the entire inventive notion of a new tachometer is patentable.
- Internal or operations programs that direct the handling of data in the computer’s own operations are patentable.

## Obtaining a Utility Patent

So there is no rule that patents cover only remarkable inventions. Instead, the basic requirement for a utility patent is that the idea be different in some way from what came before. Most

importantly, patent protection can be broad: The owner of the patent has the right to exclude others from making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the patented invention during the term of the patent.

Historically, the term of a U.S. patent was 17 years from the date of issue. Patents now have a term of 20 years from the date of filing. Patents already issued before June 8, 1995, maintain their 17-year term. Those patents issued after June 8, 1995, based on patent applications filed before June 8, 1995, have either 17 years from issuance or 20 years from filing, whichever is longer. On average, though, given that a patent application takes 3 years to process through the Patent Office, the patent term is usually about 17 years from the date the patent is granted.

A common misconception is that software, Internet-based business ideas, and so-called “business methods” are not patentable. The truth is software has long been patentable. And, in 1998, the high patent court put to bed the notion that business methods were an exception to patentable subject matter when Signature Financial Group’s patent for a mutual fund administration system was upheld as valid. Another well-known example is Amazon’s “One-Click” Internet shopping patent (No. 5,960,411) litigated in 1999 against Barnes & Noble.

The patenting effort begins when the inventor or inventors conceive of an invention. Typically, a registered patent attorney acting on the inventor’s behalf prepares a patent application and files it in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. From the date the application is filed, there is a *patent pending*. There are no real legal rights associated with “patent pending.” Full protection applies only if and when the Patent Office agrees that the invention is patentable and issues the patent. But with patent pending, a would-be competitor doesn’t always know exactly what will be patented or when, and thus, he must proceed with caution in making the decision to offer the same or a similar product.

The patent application must contain a complete and understandable explanation of the invention. It doesn’t have to be a nuts-and-bolts instruction manual. It is enough to convey the inventive concept so that a person “skilled in the art” can make and use the invention without undue experimentation. Further, the explanation must contain a full description of the best mode known by the inventor for carrying out the invention. For example, the inventor cannot use the second-best version or embodiment of the invention as an illustration for the patent application disclosure and keep secret the best embodiment. That could make the resulting patent invalid.

The *timing* of the filing is critical. In the United States, the patent application must be filed within one year of the first public disclosure, public use, sale, or even offer for sale of the product, or the filing will be barred and the opportunity to obtain a patent lost forever. This is known as the one-year period of grace. It may change in the future to a system in which there is no period of grace (then the application must be filed *before* any of these activities occurs) to conform to the laws of most other countries. And if patent protection is beneficial in foreign countries, a patent application must be filed in the United States before any public activity occurs.

Market testing, exhibitions, or even use by the inventor himself can be a public use sufficient to activate the one-year period. One exception is a public use for experimental purposes. The test for whether a public use is an excepted experimental use is rigorous. The inventor must show that it was the operation and function of the invention that was being tested, not the appeal or marketability of the product employing the invention. Further, he should establish some evidence of the testing. For example, if samples were sent to potential customers for evaluation, it would be good to show that the customers returned filled-out evaluation forms and that the inventor considered and even made changes based on those evaluations.

The idea is that an inventor should be given only one year in which to file her patent application after she has begun to commercially exploit or to attempt to commercially exploit her invention. And it is not just an actual sale that triggers the one-year period: An offer for sale is sometimes enough, even if the sale is never consummated.

## Criteria for Obtaining a Utility Patent

A patent “application” is not a form to be filled out. Instead, each patent application is unique, although all patent applications contain the same three basic sections:

- Drawings showing an embodiment of the invention;
- A written description of the invention referring to the drawings akin to an engineering specification; and
- One or more **claims**—hybrid legal and technical language that “captures” the invention in words.

The definition of the patented invention—the protected property—is not what you disclose in the drawings and the specification portion of the application; these are only descriptions of one or more specific embodiments or versions of the invention. Instead, the coverage of the patent is defined by the third part of the application, the legal claims.

To qualify the invention for a patent, the claims must describe something both novel and unobvious. *Novelty* is a relatively easy standard to define: If a single earlier patent, publication, or product shows the entire claimed invention, the invention is not novel, and no patent will be issued. *Obviousness* is somewhat more difficult to grasp, and, worse, the test for obviousness is fairly subjective: Are the differences between the invention and all prior knowledge (including patents, publications, and products) such that the invention would have been obvious to a person having ordinary skill in the art? If so, the invention is not patentable even if it is novel.

Consider an example of what “novelty” and “unobvious” mean in the area of patentability. Suppose a person is struggling to screw a wood screw into hard wood, and he realizes the problem is that he cannot supply enough twisting force with the blade of the screwdriver in the slot in the head of the screw. So he gets the bright idea of making the slot a little deeper, so that the screwdriver blade can bite a little deeper and confront more surface area of the slot, thus applying more force to turn the screw. This is a good idea, but it creates another problem. The deeper slot extends much closer to the sides of the screw head. There is less support, and fatigue lines develop that eventually cause the screw head to crack. The inventor then gets the idea to use a new screwdriver with two shorter, crossed blades, which will give increased surface-area contact with two crossed slots in the head of the screw.

But a problem still exists. Although the twin blades do not require such deep slots, there are now twice as many slots, and the screw head is seriously weakened. Now the inventor sees another path: Keep the double-blade configuration, but chop off the corners, so that the slots need not extend out so close to the edge of the new screw head.

The result: He has invented the Phillips head screwdriver, for use with a Phillips head screw. Certainly, the invention is “novel”: No one else had made that design before. It is also “unobvious” and thus patentable. The addition of the second blade and the elimination of the corners have resulted in a wholly new screwdriver concept. The concept is patentable.

Now suppose another party, seeing the patent issued on this double-blade Phillips head, comes up with an improvement of her own. Her invention is to use three crossed blades (cutting the head of the screw into six equal areas), with their corners removed. This design may

Obviously is a somewhat subjective determination, but many ideas have ultimately been deemed patentable even though they were originally rejected as obvious by an examiner of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. In one notable case, Anita Dembicza came up with the idea of a plastic leaf bag configured to look like a giant Halloween-style pumpkin when stuffed with leaves. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office essentially concluded that, since leaf bags were well known and pumpkins drawn on paper lunch sacks were also well known, the idea of a pumpkin leaf bag was obvious and therefore not patentable. Not so, said the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit: The Patent Office failed to prove there was any motivation to combine the idea of a Halloween pumpkin with a leaf bag. As a result, the patent for the leaf bag pumpkin was issued. Obviousness rejections are to be expected from the Patent Office.

not be patentable. Certainly it is novel, but is it unobvious? Not likely. Once the first inventor has originated the idea of increasing the number of blades and eliminating corners, it may be obvious to simply add more blades. Even so, patents still regularly issue today for new screw heads and even more mundane items such as the shape of the arbor hole in a circular saw blade.

## Drafting the Patent Claims

Once you have decided that a patentable invention exists, you must protect it with properly drafted patent claims. It is the claims that the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office examiner analyzes and accepts or rejects in considering the issuance of the patent; it is the claims that determine whether someone has infringed a patent; and it is the claims that define the patented property.

Claims, then, are clearly the most important part of a patent. It is no good to have claims that cover the invention and yet do not protect your product or process from being copied by competitors. Does this sound contradictory? Study the following example and you will understand.

Suppose an entrepreneur meets with a patent attorney and shows the attorney a new invention for carrying beverages on the slopes while skiing. The invention eliminates the risk of smashing glass, denting metal, or squashing a wineskin, and it also eliminates the need to carry any extra equipment: It's a hollow ski pole. The ski pole has a shaft, a chamber, and a handle. The handle has a threaded hole opening into the hollow shaft. Partway down the inside of the hollow shaft is a plastic liner that creates a chamber for holding liquids; this plastic liner is sealed to the shaft. The chamber is closed by a threaded plug. The entrepreneur wants to patent this invention, and so he assists the patent attorney in writing a description of the ski pole. They write the following claim:

A hollow ski pole for carrying liquids, comprising:

- a hollow shaft,
- a plastic liner inside the shaft to define a chamber for containing liquid,
- a handle on the shaft,
- a threaded hole in the handle that opens into the chamber, and
- a threaded plug for sealing the threaded hole.

The patent application is filed. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office examines the application and three years later issues the patent with that claim. The inventor is happy: The claim describes exactly what the entrepreneur markets and sells. But not for long—because a competitor comes out with a similar hollow ski pole that doesn't use a liner. The competitor simply welds a piece of metal across the inside of the shaft to make a sealed chamber. The competitor has avoided infringing the patent because there is no liner, which was one of the requirements of the patented claim. Still another competitor replaces the threaded plug with an upscale mahogany cork. Again, the patent is not infringed because there is no threaded plug, as required by the claim. Patent claims are akin to requirements, and a competitor who can sell a competing product without meeting *all* the claim requirements doesn't infringe the patent.

You can avoid this problem by exploring the various ways in which you can build your product before you file the patent application. You may need input from sales, marketing, engineering, and production people as well as from the inventor. After a thorough study, a better claim might emerge as follows:

A hollow ski pole for carrying liquids, comprising:

- a hollow shaft,
- a chamber in the hollow shaft for containing a liquid,
- a handle on the shaft having a hole opening into the chamber, and
- a closure for the hole in the handle.

June 23, 1964

J. S. KILBY

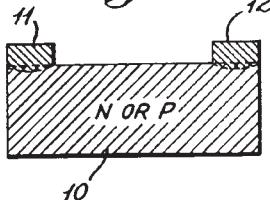
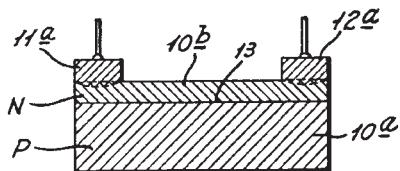
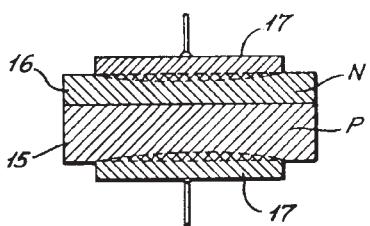
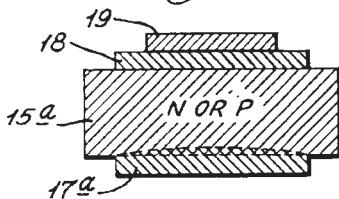
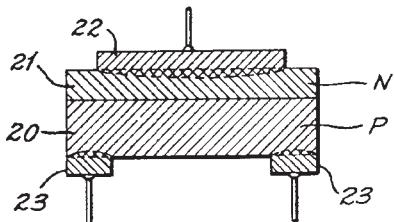
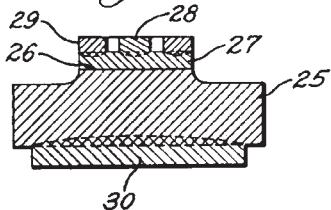
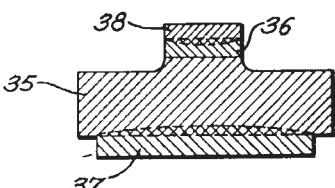
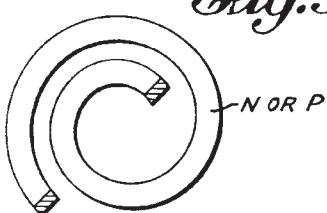
3,138,743

MINIATURIZED ELECTRONIC CIRCUITS

Filed Feb. 6, 1959

4 Sheets-Sheet 1

Courtesy US Patent Office

*Fig. 1.**Fig. 1a**Fig. 2.**Fig. 2a**Fig. 3.**Fig. 4.**Fig. 5.**Fig. 5a*

INVENTOR

Jack S. Kilby

BY  
Stevens, Davis, Miller & Mosher  
ATTORNEYS

Now the liner and the threaded plug are not required. This claim, then, would likely be good enough to keep competitors at bay. There is a limit to how broadly you can word the claim, however. Eventually, if it becomes broader and broader and does not specify the ski pole or hollow shaft, it may apply to a bottle or a pot with a cover, and the patent will not be obtainable—it is not new. Careful claim drafting is thus critical.

If you don't remember anything else about patents, remember this: It's the claims that matter.

## Provisional Patent Applications

A new type of patent application, referred to as a **provisional**, is now available. People like provisionals because they don't have to include patent claims—indeed, a paper, specification, or report can be filed as a provisional. Be careful, though. In one case, a product embodying an invention was sold in the spring of 1996, a provisional application for the invention was filed in the spring of 1997, and a full patent application was filed in the fall of 1997. But, the provisional failed to adequately describe the invention actually claimed in the full patent application. The result? The patent was held invalid because the provisional failed to provide the necessary disclosure. When the patent owner sued a competitor for patent infringement, a court found the resulting patent claims contained detailed information not present in the provisional patent application. As a result, the patent was invalidated, and the competitor was free to use the patented invention.

Provisionals have found favor because they are typically less expensive than full patent applications and allow companies to advertise “patent pending.” In 2002, over 80,000 provisional patent applications were filed. But as this case proves, provisionals are only as good as the details they contain. If you don't actually draft the legal claims for the invention, you should at least envision them to ensure that the provisional application adequately supports the claims you file later in the full utility application.

## Design Patents

Another type of patent is the **design patent**. Hockey uniforms, ladies' dresses, computer housings, automobile bodies, buildings, shoes, and game boards are all protectable with design patents. But this type of patent covers only the *appearance* of the product, not the idea, underlying concept, or functionality of the product. What you see is what you get. Design patents are generally less expensive to obtain than utility patents but typically also offer far less protection.

## Managing Patent Costs

Patents are expensive: Plan on spending between \$8,000 to \$15,000 to prepare and file a patent application and between \$4,000 and \$6,000 to **prosecute** the patent application. Prosecution is what occurs in the two to three years following filing of the application as you attempt to convince the Patent Office that the invention is worthy of a patent in the face of inevitable rejections. Foreign patents can cost \$5,000 to \$10,000 per country in filing fees alone. But you have to put these costs in perspective. Consider the price of a mold for a plastic part, for example, or the cost of a marketing study undertaken by a consultant. Because of the potential value of a patent, the cost of filing is often well worth it. If, for example, Gillette's patent for the three-bladed Mach3 razor can really be used to stop all competitors from introducing razors with three or more blades, the cost of the Gillette patent and even the cost of patent litigation (typically \$1 million or more) is well worth the protection afforded, especially given the enormous cost of Gillette's advertising campaigns surrounding the Mach3 razor.

On the other hand, some patents may not have enough potential value to provide a return on the investment. Consider a patent for aerogel used as an insulative liner in deep-sea oil-well

piping. If other insulating materials work as well or almost as well, the patent might not be worth the cost—unless it is worth something to advertise “the only deep-sea oil-well piping with aerogel!”

The problem is that, at the time the patenting decision must be made, the value of the patent might be hard to measure. Big companies regularly file for numerous patents and have a yearly IP budget in the millions of dollars. Entrepreneurial companies cannot typically afford those costs and thus must be particularly adept at planning and managing patents and other IP, all the while remembering the deadlines and the fact that the value of a given patent is measured by its claims.

Finally, don’t forget to make sure your new product or service doesn’t infringe someone else’s patent. In our survey of venture capitalists, 63% had experienced IP lawsuits against companies they had funded.

## Trade Secrets

One benefit of trade secrets is they can cover everything patents cover—and much more. A trade secret is defined as knowledge, which may include business knowledge or technical knowledge, that is kept secret for the purpose of gaining an advantage in business over one’s competitors. Customer lists, sources of supplies of scarce materials, or sources of supplies with faster delivery or lower prices may be trade secrets. Certainly, secret processes, formulas, recipes, techniques, manufacturing know-how, advertising schemes, marketing programs, and business plans are all protectable.

Another benefit of trade secrets is there is no standard of invention to meet, as there is with a patent. If the idea is new in this context and if it is secret with respect to this particular industry or product, then it can be protected as a trade secret. Also unlike the case for patents, trademarks, and copyrights, there is no formal government procedure for obtaining trade secret protection. Protection is established by the nature of the secret and the effort to keep it secret.

Finally, a trade secret can be protected eternally against disclosure by all those who have received it in confidence and from all who would obtain it by theft for as long as the knowledge or information is kept secret.

The key disadvantage of trade secrets is that, unlike the case with patents, there is no protection against discovery by fair means, such as accidental disclosure, independent inventions, and reverse engineering. Many important inventions, such as the laser and the airplane, were developed more or less simultaneously by different persons. Trade secret protection would not permit the first inventor to prevent the second and subsequent inventors from exploiting the invention as a patent would.

This example illustrates the distinction between patents and trade secrets. A woman designed a novel keyholder and immediately filed a patent application. It was a simple design and could be easily copied. While the patent was still pending, she licensed it to a manufacturer for a 5% royalty, with the agreement that, if the patent didn’t issue in five years, the royalty would drop to  $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ . The patent was never issued, and the royalty was dropped to  $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ . Over the next 14 years, on sales of \$7 million, the manufacturer’s edge eroded as others freely copied the design. The manufacturer repudiated the royalty contract on the ground that it required payment forever for the small jump that the manufacturer got on its competitors, whereas the patent, had it issued, would have allowed only 17 years of exclusivity. The court held the manufacturer to its requirement to pay. The ruling allowed the inventor to receive a  $2\frac{1}{2}\%$  royalty for as long as the manufacturer continued to sell the keyholder. Had the patent been issued, royalties would have lasted only 17 years!

In 2008, for the 12th consecutive year, IBM was granted more U.S. patents than any other company. It earned 4,186 patents—671 more than the second-ranked company, Samsung. It was the 11th consecutive year that IBM received more than 2,000 U.S. patents; it was the only company ever to have received more than 2,000 patents in one year. Approximately 50% of IBM’s patents were related to software.

But don't be misled into thinking trade secrets are a fallback position to patents or that they offer "free protection." Consider the feature of the Windows program that allows you to open two files at the same time, display them on the screen, and drag content from one into the other. Nice feature, but it cannot be a trade secret. Why not? Because you and everyone else can see the feature in operation every time you use it. Microsoft even advertises it. It's not a secret. Any competitor of Windows can write code that affords the same functionality. Microsoft's exact code that carries out that functionality is secret, to be sure, but even that is not "free" protection when you consider the overhead costs Microsoft incurs to ensure the code is always kept under wraps and that its numerous employees and consultants are subject to secrecy agreements.

Many companies use both approaches, filing a patent application and during its pendency keeping the invention secret. When the patent is ready to be issued, the company reevaluates its position. If the competition is close, they let the patent issue. If not, they abandon the patent application and rely on trade secret protection. But, following a change in law, patent applications are now published 18 months after their earliest filing date, voiding trade secret protection unless the filer takes active steps to prevent publication (such as an agreement not to file an application for the invention in any foreign country).

Despite the problems with trade secrets, some have been appraised at a value of many millions of dollars, and some are virtually priceless. For example, the formula for Coca-Cola is one of the best-kept trade secrets in the world. Known as "Merchandise 7X," it has been tightly guarded since it was invented over 100 years ago. It is known by only two persons within the Coca-Cola Company and is kept in a security vault at the Trust Company Bank in Atlanta, Georgia, which can be opened only by a resolution from the company's board of directors. The company refuses to allow the identities of those who know the formula to be disclosed or to allow the two to fly on the same airplane. The company elected to forgo producing Coca-Cola in India, a potential market of 550 million people, because the Indian government requires the company to disclose the secret formula as a condition for doing business there. While some of the mystique surrounding the Coca-Cola formula may be marketing hype, it is beyond dispute that the company possesses trade secrets that are carefully safeguarded and extremely valuable.

Secrecy is essential to establishing trade secret rights; without it, there is no trade secret property. There are four primary steps for ensuring secrecy:

1. Negotiate confidential disclosure agreements with all employees, agents, consultants, suppliers, and anyone else who will be exposed to the secret information. The agreement should bind them not to use or disclose the information without permission.
2. Take security precautions to keep third parties from entering the premises where the trade secrets are used. Sturdy locks, perimeter fences, guards, badges, visitor sign-in books, escorts, and designated off-limits areas are just some of the ways that a trade secret owner can exercise control over the area containing the secrets.
3. Stamp specific documents containing the trade secrets with a confidentiality legend and keep them in a secure place with limited access, such as a safe, locked drawer, or cabinet.
4. Make sure all employees, consultants, and others who are concerned with, have access to, or have knowledge about the trade secrets understand that they are trade secrets, and make sure they recognize the value to the company of this information and the requirement for secrecy.

Trade secret owners rarely do all these things, but they must do enough so that a person who misappropriates the secrets cannot reasonably excuse his conduct by saying that he didn't know or that no precautions were ever taken to indicate that something was a trade secret. This is important because, unlike patents, trade secret protection provides no "deed" to the property.

Since there is no formal protection procedure, the necessary steps for establishing a trade secret are often not taken seriously until a lawsuit is brought by the owner against someone who has misappropriated it. In each specific case, the owner must show that the precautions taken were adequate. Those precautions can incur significant overhead costs, especially as the numbers of secrets, employees, and consultants grow.

Trade secret misappropriations generally fall into one of two classes: someone who has a confidential relationship with the owner violates the duty of confidentiality, or someone under no duty of confidentiality uses improper means to discover the secret.

Trade secret theft issues frequently arise with respect to the conduct of ex-employees. Certainly, a good employee will learn a lot about the business during her employment. And some of that learning she will take with her as experience when she leaves. We cannot prevent that. The question is, "Did she simply arrive smart and leave smarter, or did she take certain information that was exclusively the company's?"

For example, in one case a company that had been making widgets for the government for many years did not get its annual contract renewal. When the company questioned the loss of the contract, it discovered that a competitor was supplying widgets of equal quality at a lower price. Upon investigation, the company determined that the competitor was located in the same town, that the competitor's widgets were uncannily identical in every dimension, and that the competitor was owned by an ex-employee of the company who had left over a year before. Amicable approaches failed, and a lawsuit was instituted during which the company discovered that the ex-employee had copied its detailed engineering drawings to make the widgets. This eliminated all engineering and design costs and enabled the competitor to sell the widgets to the government at a much lower price.

But the ex-employee had not stolen anything. It seems the man knew that every year his ex-employer reissued important engineering drawings that had become torn and tattered or that needed updating and threw out the old ones. The ex-employee testified that, while driving by one day, he had seen the old drawings sticking out of the dumpster. He drove in, took them out of the dumpster, put the ones he wanted in his car, and chucked the rest back. That's how he got a widget with identical dimensions. The court held him liable for misappropriation of trade secrets. He had trespassed to obtain the drawings, and he had learned of the ex-employer's practice of disposing of old drawings while an employee with a duty of confidentiality to the company. The court granted an injunction preventing the ex-employee from selling widgets for a period of months equal to the jump he got by not having to develop his own engineering drawings.

But what if the ex-employee had not trespassed to obtain the drawings from the trash? What if he had waited for the trash collector to remove them and then asked whether he could look over the trash? Or what if he had gone to the dump and picked the drawings out of the mud? When does the owner part with ownership of trade secret materials it has discarded?

In summary, trade secrets can be valuable, but they are not a form of "free protection," nor is protection available for secrets that can be discovered. Still, in a survey, venture capitalists ranked trade secrets as at least as important as patents when they make an investment decision in a startup company.



Bruno Vincent/Getty Images News and Sports Services

---

**Managing director of Apple Corps, Neil Aspinwall leaves the Royal Courts of Justice during a break for lunch on March 29, 2006 in London. The Beatles' record label Apple Corps is suing Apple Computer over use of the Apple name and logo in the music business which they say is in breach of a 1991 agreement.**

---

# Trademarks

---

**Trademarks** are the stuff of advertising. Technically speaking, trademark protection is obtainable for any word, symbol, or combination thereof that is used on goods to indicate their source. Any word—even common words such as “look,” “life,” and “apple”—can become a trademark, so long as the word is not used descriptively. “Apple” for fruit salad might not be protectable, but Apple for computers certainly is, and so, too, is Apple for a record company. Interestingly, the Beatles’ company, Apple Corps, which owns the trademark Apple in the context of recorded music, unsuccessfully sued Apple Computer on the grounds that the Apple iPod, which downloads and plays recorded music, infringes the Beatles’ trademark.<sup>1</sup> It was expected that Apple Corps would appeal the ruling, which was made by a British judge in May 2006. In February, 2007, Apple Inc. and Apple Corps announced a settlement of their trademark dispute under which Apple Inc. will own all of the trademarks related to “Apple” and will license certain of those trademarks back to Apple Corps for their continued use.

Common forms such as geometric shapes (circles, triangles, squares), natural shapes (trees, animals, humans), combinations of shapes, and colors may also be protected. Even the single color pink has been protected as a trademark for building insulation. Three-dimensional shapes such as bottle and container shapes and building features (for example, McDonald’s golden arches) can serve as trademarks.

While people generally speak only of trademarks, that term also encompasses other types of marks. A trademark is for products. A **service mark** is a word or symbol or combination used in connection with the offering and provision of services. Blue Cross/Blue Shield, Prudential Insurance, and McDonald’s are service marks for health insurance services, general insurance services, and restaurant services, respectively. McDonald’s is a service mark (fast-food restaurant services) and also a trademark (the McDonald’s brand Big Mac hamburger).

If you use any such name or feature to identify and distinguish your products, then think trademark protection. Ownership of a trademark allows you to exclude others from using a similar mark on similar goods that would be likely to confuse consumers as to the source of the goods. This right applies for the duration of ownership of the mark—that is, as long as the owner uses the mark.

Trademarks can be more valuable to some companies than patents and trade secrets combined. Consider the sudden appearance and abrupt increase in the worth of trademarks such as Cuisinart, Häagen-Dazs, and Ben & Jerry’s. Consider also the increased value that a trademark name such as IBM, Microsoft, or GE brings to even a brand-new product. But don’t be misled—trademarks and service marks protect the *names* of products and services, not the products and services themselves.

You can establish a trademark, unlike a patent, without any formal governmental procedure. You acquire ownership of a trademark simply by being the first to use the mark on the goods sold in commerce. It remains your property as long as you keep using it. And keep using it you must—because nonuse for a period of three years or more may constitute abandonment.

The mark should not be too descriptive of the goods on which you use it, and it is best to select a mark that is arbitrary and fanciful with respect to the goods. The reason is that every marketer, including a competitor, has the right to use a descriptive term to refer to its goods. Therefore, no one can secure exclusive rights to descriptive marks.

A trademark owner should also take care to prevent the mark from becoming generic, as happened to Aspirin, Cellophane, Linoleum, and other product names. Thus, it is not proper to refer to, for example, a *xerox*—the correct form of description is a Xerox brand photocopier.

If a name is too descriptive, you cannot register it, and competitors may freely use it as is or in a slightly modified form. The more descriptive the mark, the less advertising required to inform consumers what the product is for. But so descriptive a mark enjoys a much lower level of protection.

On the other hand, a highly protectable arbitrary mark (Exxon, Kodak) requires significant expenditures in advertising dollars in order to inform consumers what the product or service associated with the mark actually is. Pick trademarks that are suggestive enough

to adequately inform consumers but that are not too descriptive. Examples of marks held to be too descriptive include "Beer Nuts," "Chap-Stick," "Vision Center" (for an optical clinic), "Professional Portfolio System" (stock valuations), "5 Minute" (glue that sets in five minutes), "Body Soap" (body shampoo), "Consumer Electronics Monthly," "Light Beer," and "Shredded Wheat." The trademark Windows itself has more than once been the subject of legal action in which evidence existed that "windows" was descriptive before Microsoft adopted it.

It is wise to research a proposed new mark to be sure the mark is *clear* before you use it; that is, verify that no one else is already using or has registered the same or a similar mark on the same or similar products. It's confusing to customers and expensive to change a mark and undertake the costs of all new printing, advertising, and promotional materials when you later discover that your mark has previously been used by another company. Moreover, in a due diligence study, whether at the time someone invests in your entrepreneurial company, at the time you make a public offering, or during a sale or merger, you can be sure a trademark search will be conducted. It would be unfortunate, for example, if you've been incorporated in one state for five years under a company name used earlier by another company in another state. If you plan to enter foreign markets, make sure your mark does not mean something unintended in a foreign language.

## Registering a Mark

Although trademarks don't have to be registered, there are significant benefits that make it worthwhile. You can register in individual states, or you can obtain a federal registration. A state registration applies only in the particular state that granted the registration and requires only use of the mark in that state. A federal registration applies to all 50 states, but to qualify, you must use the mark in interstate or foreign commerce. A distinct advantage of federal registration is that, even if you initially use a mark only locally—say, in New England—you can establish federal protection in all 50 states. Without a federal registration, you may later be blocked from using your mark in other states if a later user of the same mark, without knowledge of your use of the mark, federally registers it.

Also, you can file an application to register a mark that is not yet in use. After the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office examines the application and determines that the mark is registrable, you must show actual use within six months. The six-month period can be extended if good cause is shown for nonuse. Nevertheless, before registration, even before actual use, the mere filing of the application establishes greater rights over others who actually used the mark earlier but did not file an application for registration.

A typical search and registration costs between \$1,000 and \$3,000 per mark. Given these fairly low costs, entrepreneurial companies regularly seek federal registration for all trademarks and service marks. Do a search to increase the odds your registration will be successful, since the Trademark Office primarily evaluates two things: Is the mark too descriptive, and is it too similar to another already registered mark? If the answer to both these questions is "no," the registration is typically issued about a year after you file the trademark application.

## Ownership of a Mark

Be careful with your trademark properties. You cannot simply sell a trademark by itself or transfer it like a desk, car, patent, or copyright. You must sell it together with the business or goodwill associated with the mark, or the mark will be considered abandoned. Further, if you license a mark for use with a product or service, provide for quality control of that product or service. That is, require the licensee to maintain specific quality levels for products or services with which it uses the mark. Exercise that control through periodic inspection, testing, or other monitoring that will ensure that the licensee's product quality is up to a prescribed level.

Claiming ownership of a mark can be an important business decision. When Cuisinart started selling its food processors, it promoted them vigorously under the trademark *Cuisinart*. A good part of the business's success was due to the fact that the machines were sturdily made by a quality-conscious French company, Robot Coupe, which had been making the machines for many years before they became popular among U.S. consumers under the mark Cuisinart. When price competition reared its head, Cuisinart found cheaper sources. Robot Coupe owned no patents and had no other protection. Cuisinart began selling brand X under the name Cuisinart, and a wild fight ensued through the courts and across the pages of major newspapers in the United States—but to no avail. The whole market had been created under the name Cuisinart, and Cuisinart had the right to apply its name to any machine made anywhere by anyone it chose. Robot Coupe, whose machine had helped create the demand for food processors, was left holding its chopper.

## Copyright

---

**Copyrights** cover all manner of writings, and the term *writings* is very broadly interpreted. It includes books, advertisements, brochures, spec sheets, catalogs, manuals, parts lists, promotional materials, packaging and decorative graphics, jewelry, fabric designs, photographs, pictures, film and video presentations, audio recordings, architectural designs, and software.

Exact copying is not always required in order to engage in infringement. For example, you can infringe a book without copying every word; the theme may be protected (even though upon successive generalizations the theme will devolve to one of seven nonprotectable basic plots). One example exists in the software area, where using the teachings of a book to write a program has resulted in copyright infringement of the book by the computer program. In another case, a program was infringed by another program even though the second program was written in an entirely different language and for an entirely different computer. Copyright, then, can sometimes be a good source of protection, but be careful: It doesn't generally protect engineering, inventions, marketing or advertising ideas, or business plans. The good news is that a copyright registration is easy to obtain, protection lasts a long time, and it is inexpensive (typically less than \$500). But unless your business is related to some form of the arts (music, movies, books, photography) or software, copyright usually only offers very limited protection because ideas and functionality are not generally protected by copyright.

Copyright registration is not compulsory, but it bestows a few valuable benefits. If the copyright owner has registered the copyright, special damages can be recovered. This can be a real advantage in copyright cases where actual damages can be difficult and expensive to prove or actual damages are limited.

Registration simply requires filling out the proper form and mailing it to the Copyright Office with the proper fee and copies of the work to be registered. Accommodations are made for filing valuable or difficult deposit copies; for example, deposits for large computer programs may consist of only the first and last 25 pages. Further, if the program contains trade secrets, there is a provision for obscuring those areas from the deposit, since the Copyright Office's records are public. The Copyright Office doesn't really check to make sure the material is

	<b>Patents</b>	<b>Trade Secrets</b>	<b>Trademarks</b>	<b>Copyright</b>
<b>Subject Matter</b>	Inventions and innovation, i.e., new products, features, and functionality	Only what can be kept secret	Names of companies, their products and services	Works of authorship, i.e., the arts and software
<b>Cost</b>	Expensive: \$10–20K per patent per country	Depends on the volume of those secrets and the number of employees and consultants; definitely not “free”	Moderate: \$1–3K per mark	Inexpensive: less than \$500
<b>Government Review</b>	Yes — extensive and mandatory	No	Yes — moderate and optional but a good idea	Yes — but it is a rubber stamp
<b>Term of Protection</b>	On average, 17 years from issuance	Potentially forever — as long as the secret is kept secret	Potentially forever, as long as the mark is used	Long time — 100 years
<b>How Long to Achieve Protection</b>	A fairly long time: 3–5 years	Immediately	Immediate — when the mark is used; registration takes about a year	Immediate, and registration takes only about a month
<b>Pros</b>	Can provide very broad protection even when an infringer didn’t know about your patent	No government review; protects things not protectable by patents	Cost is moderate and the odds of achieving a registration can be determined beforehand	Inexpensive and immediate
<b>Cons</b>	Value is commensurate with the claims; high level of government scrutiny; strict time requirements	Cannot be used if the “secret” really isn’t; others have the right to discover the secret on their own	Only protects names — not the products or the services themselves	Outside of software and the arts, copyright usually doesn’t offer extensive protection

**Figure 13.1**

### IP considerations

copyrightable; provided the form is filled out correctly, the Copyright Office will stamp it and you have a registration.

## Summing Up

Now consider the question posed at the beginning of this chapter: What parts of a handheld microprocessor-based product are protectable, and how can you protect them? You can cover the circuitry, the programming of the microprocessor, and the overall architecture and functionality of the product by patents and/or trade secrets. All the other software resident in the device could be protected by patent, too, and you could protect that same software and the screen displays by copyright. You could protect the user’s manual for the product by copyright. The company name and the product name could be trademarks. The business and marketing studies and plans surrounding the product’s introduction could be trade secrets—at least until the product is formally released. Sources of supplies, lists of customers, and ideas for later versions of the product could also be trade secrets. Figure 13.1 summarizes a few key aspects of the different avenues of IP protection.

## International Protection for Intellectual Property

Obtaining protection for patents, trademarks, and copyrights in the United States alone is no longer sufficient in the modern arena of international competition and global markets. International protection often needs to be extensive and can be quite expensive, but there are ways to reduce and postpone the expense in some cases. You will want to consider protection

in countries where you intend to market the new product or where competitors may be poised to manufacture your product.

A patent in one country does not protect the product in any other country: You must protect a novel product or method by a separate patent in each country. In addition, different countries have different conditions that you must meet to obtain any patent protection. The first and most important restriction is the *time limit* within which you must file an application to obtain a patent in a country or else forever lose your right to do so.

## Patent Filing Deadlines

Not all countries are the same with respect to filing deadlines. There is no period of grace in any other country but the United States, and each country has a slightly different view of what constitutes making an invention public. In Japan, for example, public use before the filing of an application bars a patent only if the public use occurred in Japan; in France, any public knowledge of the invention *anywhere* bars the patent.

Thus, whereas the United States allows a business one full year to test market its new product (see the earlier discussion), most other countries require that the patent application be filed *before any public disclosure*—that is, before the owner can begin to determine whether the new product will be even a modest success. Meeting this requirement is not inexpensive, especially when the U.S. dollar is down against the currencies of other major countries.

## How to Extend Patent Filing Deadlines

There are ways around having to file immediately in all foreign countries. If you file in the United States and then file in another country within one year of that date, the U.S. filing date applies as the filing date for that country. In this way, by filing one application for the invention in the United States, you can preserve your initial U.S. filing date for up to one year and then immediately make the invention public through advertising, published articles, and sales. If within one year the product appears to be a success, you can then file in selected foreign countries, even though the prior public use of the invention would ordinarily bar your filing in those countries.

You can even delay up to 20 or even 30 months before incurring the costs of filing in individual countries. By filing a special Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) patent application in a specially designated PCT office within one year of your U.S. filing and by designating certain countries, you can preserve your right to file in those countries without further expense for 20 or 30 months after the U.S. filing date. That will provide an additional 8 or 18 months for test marketing the product. This does introduce the extra cost of the PCT application filing, but if you are considering filing in, say, six or more countries, it may be well worth the cost for three reasons:

- It delays the outflow of cash that you may not presently have or may require for other urgent needs.
- It provides for a uniform examination of the patent application.
- If the product proves insufficiently successful, you can decide not to file in any of the countries designated under the PCT and save the cost of all six national application filings.

Another cost-saving feature of international patent practice is the **European Patent Convention** (EPC), which is compatible with a PCT filing and which enables you to file a single European patent application and designate any one or more of the European countries in which you wish the patent to issue.

A number of international treaties affect trademark rights and copyrights as well. A “European” trademark registration is now available, for example, known as a Community Trade Mark (CTM). A single registration will cover the entire European Union (EU)—with the benefit of a single filing, you obtain plenary protection. However, there are certain drawbacks. For example, a single user in any country of the EU could block registration everywhere, and cost considerations make a CTM filing uneconomical unless you seek trademarks in at least three countries. Registration is also now possible simultaneously in the United States and other foreign countries via a treaty known as the Madrid Protocol.

Let's now take yet another look at the handheld microprocessor-based product. You filed two U.S. patent applications last week, and you did it before anything was made public about the product. The product introduction will occur in a few weeks. You now have nearly a year to file your foreign PCT patent application at a cost of \$3,000 to \$5,000. It will then be a year and a half after that before you have to file in the specific countries, at a cost of between \$3,000 and \$10,000 per country. But it is not too early to begin planning now. Where will you sell the product? Where will your competitors be located? Also, do you need trademark registrations in any of these countries?

## Licensing and Technology Transfer

Large and small businesses regularly “license out” their intellectual property and also “license in” the intellectual property of others. A **license** is simply a special form of contract or agreement. Each party promises to do or pay something in return for the other party doing or paying something. Contracts that deal with the transfer of technology or, more broadly, intellectual property—patents, trade secrets, know-how, copyrights, and trademarks—are generally called licenses. The licensed property can be anything from the right to use Mickey Mouse on a tee shirt or make copies of the movie *Star Wars*, to the right to operate under the McDonald’s name, to manufacture or sell a patented product (such as a handheld microprocessor-based product), or to reproduce, use, or sell a piece of software. Software licenses are just one of the many types of licenses. The basic considerations are the same as for any other license, but specific clauses and language are tailored to the software environment.

### Common Concerns and Clauses

The term *license* typically refers to a number of different types of contracts covering intellectual property, including primarily an assignment, an exclusive license, and a nonexclusive license. We'll use this broad reference in this section.

An **assignment** actually is an outright sale of the property. Title passes from the owner, the assignor, to the buyer, the assignee. A license is more like a rental or lease. The owner of the property, the licensor, retains *ownership*; the buyer, the licensee, receives the *right to operate* under the property, be it a patent, trade secret, know-how, copyright, or trademark. An **exclusive license** gives the licensee the sole and exclusive right to operate under the licensed property to the exclusion of everyone else, sometimes even the licensor. A **nonexclusive license**, in contrast, permits the licensee to operate under the licensed property but without any guarantee of exclusivity. The licensor can try to find more licensees and license them, there may be others who are already licensed, and the licensor can also operate under the property.

Sometimes the so-called boilerplate provisions of a license or other technology agreement can come back to haunt one or both parties. A court held that the contractual language “jurisdiction for any and all disputes arising out of or in connection with this agreement is California” was *permissive* rather than mandatory, allowing the defaulting company to file suit in a location remote from the licensor. In other cases, courts have found inconsistencies between various boilerplate provisions, placing important contractual rights in jeopardy. Even the contractual boilerplate is important. Draft it carefully with legal advice and think it through.

By definition, an assignment is exclusive, since the assignee acquires full right and title to the property. Many licensees prefer an assignment or exclusive license because they want a clear playing field with no competitors in order to maximize their revenue from the property and justify the license cost. Licensees, though, generally pay more for an exclusive than a nonexclusive license.

Besides the nonexclusive versus exclusive consideration in licensing, there are a lot of other considerations and possibilities. Here are just a few:

- Can the licensee sublicense or transfer the license?
- How long does the license last?
- What happens if there is a dispute concerning the license? Where and how it is settled?
- Are there any guarantees or warranties?
- What happens if improvements are made by the licensee to the property licensed?
- What happens if either the licensee or the licensor goes bankrupt?

No consideration in a license, however, is more important than defining the property being licensed.

## Defining the Property Being Licensed

Take great care to clearly define the property being licensed. For example, consider the following questions:

- Is it more than one patent, just one patent, or only a part of one patent?
- Is it just the trademark or the entire corporate image—names, advertising, and promotional scheme and graphics?
- If it concerns copyright, does it cover just the right to copy a book or other printed material in the same print form, or does it include any of the following rights?
  - Translation into another language
  - Adaptation for stage, screen, or video
  - Creation of derivative works
  - Merchandising its characters and events on tee shirts and toys
- If it involves know-how or trade secrets, where are they defined?

Licensees must be sure they are getting what they want and need, and a licensor must make clear the limits of the grant. In a software license, if the grant is only to use the software, not to modify it or merge it with other software, that must be expressly stated.

## Limitations on Licenses

A license may have numerous different limitations, including time, the unit quantity, and the dollar value of products or services sold. The license can also be limited geographically. Field-of-use limitations are quite common, too. This limitation restricts the licensee to exploiting the licensed property only in a designated field or market.

## Assigning Value to a License

Perhaps the most universal concern in negotiating a license is how to assign a dollar value to intellectual property. First, determine what it cost to acquire or build that property. For example, all the following are hard costs that go into creating a property:

- ☐ The research and development cost of coming up with a new invention
- ☐ The design cost of coming up with a new trademark or copyrighted work
- ☐ The cost of commercializing the invention
- ☐ The cost of advertising and promoting the trademark or copyrighted work
- ☐ Incidental costs, such as legal costs, engineering costs, and accounting costs

Second, determine how this intellectual property affects the profitability of the product or the business. Can you charge more because the product has a famous name or because of the new features the invention has bestowed on the product? Can you cut your costs because of the new technology of the invention? If so, determine dollar values for those advantages.

You might also determine how much the intellectual property increases gross revenues, whether by opening new markets or acquiring a greater percentage of established markets. Convert all these figures into dollar amounts for valuation.

## Royalty Rates

A “typical” royalty rate for a nonexclusive license to a patent, trade secret, or know-how is universally stated to be 5%, but that rule is breached as often as it is honored. Nonexclusive license royalty rates in patent licenses can be 10%, 20%, 25%, or even higher. Exclusive license royalty rates tend to be higher because the licensee receives total exclusivity and the licensor is at risk if the licensee does not perform. Exclusive licensors generally demand initial payments for the same reason. In determining a reasonable royalty as a damage award in an infringement suit, courts have considered the following factors:

- ☐ The remaining life of the patent
- ☐ The advantages and unique characteristics of the patented device over other, prior devices
- ☐ Evidence of substantial customer preference for products made under the patent
- ☐ The lack of acceptable noninfringing substitutes
- ☐ The extent of the infringer’s use of the patent
- ☐ The alleged profit the infringer made that is credited to the patent

## Negotiating License Agreements

In any commercial agreement in which the consideration promised by one party to the other is a percentage of profits or receipts or is a royalty on goods sold, there is nearly always an implied promise of diligent, careful performance and good faith. But licensors generally seek some way to ensure that the licensee will use its best efforts to exploit the property and maximize the licensor’s income. One approach is simply to add a clause in which the licensee promises to use its “best efforts.” Another approach is to compel certain achievements by the licensee. The license may require a minimum investment in promotion and development of the property, which may be expressed in dollars, human labor hours, or even specific stated goals of performance or sales. Or you can use the simpler approach of a minimum royalty: The licensee pays a certain minimum dollar amount in running royalties annually, whether or not the licensee’s sales actually support those royalties—not a pleasant condition for the licensee, but one that provides a lot of peace of mind for the licensor.

Perhaps the best assurance of performance is a competent, enthusiastic licensee. A little preliminary investigation of the licensee (in terms of net worth, credit rating, experience, reputation, manufacturing/sales capability, and prior successes/failures) can assuage a lot of fears and eliminate risky licensees. A *reverter clause*, which evicts the licensee and returns control to the licensor in the event of unmet goals, is the ultimate protection. Often the

licensor's greatest concern is that the licensee might now or later sell one or more competing products, leading to a plain conflict of interest. A *noncompetition clause* can prevent this, but antitrust dangers are raised by such clauses, and licensees do not like this constraint on their freedom. Other approaches are safer, such as specified minimum performance levels.

*Confidential disclosure clauses* are necessary in nearly all license agreements, especially those involving trade secrets, know-how, and patent applications. Such clauses are necessary to protect not only the property that is the subject of the license but also all the technical, business, financial, marketing, and other information the parties will learn about each other during the license term, and even during negotiations before the license is executed.

## Foreign Licenses

The clauses and concerns mentioned pertain generally to all licenses, domestic U.S. as well as foreign. In addition, there are other clauses more peculiarly suited to foreign agreements because of the somewhat different treatment of intellectual property in each country. You can limit the manufacture and use of the product related to the patent, trade secret, or know-how to the United States but permit sales worldwide. You'll define payment in terms of the currency to be used and stipulate who will pay any taxes or transfer charges. The parties must provide for government approval of the transfer of royalties and repatriation of capital.

A license agreement is a special form of contract in which each party promises to do something in exchange for promises by the other party. It is based on a business understanding between the parties and common sense applied to the attainment of business goals. But it is more complex than a normal contract because of the uniqueness of its subject matter, intellectual property—patents, trademarks, copyrights, trade secrets, and know-how. These properties require special action for their creation and maintenance, and great care is necessary in licensing such properties to maximize their returns and prevent their loss.

# Software Protection

---

Protection for computer software has been the subject of debate for many years. There has always been strong opposition to the awarding of patents for inventions embodied in or involving software. Still, software is now commonly patented. Trade secret protection is available, but only if you keep the software secret, and the Copyright Office has a procedure whereby you can register software copyrights and specifically preserve trade secrets contained in the software.

## Patents for Software

Broad patent protection is available for software. The scope of patent protection extends beyond the coding or routines, beyond the structure and organization, beyond the user interface and menus of the program, to the broad underlying concept of an algorithm. All manner of software is protectable by patent regardless of how it is perceived—as controlling industrial equipment or processes, as effecting data processes, or as operating the computer itself.

For example, software implementation of steps normally performed mentally may be patentable subject matter. In one case, the software implementation of a system that, upon the occurrence of preset conditions, automatically transferred a customer's funds among a brokerage security account, several money funds, and a Visa/checking account was held to be patentable subject matter. Also, a software method of translating from one language to another (Russian to English) was found to be protectable.

Many patents have been issued on software. Here are some examples:

- The “one-click” Amazon patent
- A system for registering attendees at trade shows and conventions
- A securities brokerage cash management system
- An automated securities trading system
- An insurance investment program for funding a future liability
- Software for managing an auto loan
- Software for optimizing industrial resource allocation
- Software for automatically determining and isolating differences between text files (word processing)
- Software for returning to a specified point in a document (word processing)
- Software for determining premiums for insurance against specific weather conditions

Software specific to the operation of the computer itself is patentable, too. For example, patents have been issued on

- Software for converting a source program to an object program
- Programs that translate from one programming language to another
- A cursor control for a pull-down menu bar
- Software that displays images in windows on the video display
- A computer display with windowing capability

The software may be composed of old routines as long as they are assembled in a different way and produce a different result, for it is well established in patent law that a combination of old parts is patentable if the resulting whole is new. Indeed, as we've seen, most inventions are a new assembly of well-known parts or steps.

## Software Copyrights

Copyright protection is applicable to software, though it is not as broad as patent protection. All forms of computer programs are protectable by copyright—from source code to machine code. And it makes no difference whether the program is an operating system or an applications program: No distinction is made concerning the copyrightability of programs that directly interact with the computer user and those that, unseen, manage the computer system internally. Protection is also afforded microcode or microprograms that are buried in a microprocessor, and even programs embedded in a silicon chip.

## Software Trade Secret Protection

You can also protect software through a trade secret approach, separately or in conjunction with patent and copyright protection. Normally, all information disclosed in a published copyrighted work is in the public domain. However, the U.S. Copyright Office fully recognizes the compatibility of copyright and trade secret

Software “law” is really a collection of many different federal and state laws: patent law broadly protecting the functionality of the software; copyright law protecting the code itself and, to a limited extent, the structure of the code; trademark law protecting the commercial name given the software; trade secret law (in some cases); contract law for licenses associated with the software (click-wrap licenses, shrink-wrap licenses, user agreements, development agreements, and other software agreements); tort law (you want to disclaim warranties in all licenses); and even criminal law. The Digital Millennium Copyright Act further defines what is and what is not permissible in the area of reverse engineering and breaking access protection schemes implemented in software.

One useful approach to exposing copiers is to include a short routine that does nothing. Then, if a competitor copies the program as is or even codes it in another language, it will be easier to prove infringement if the “do-nothing” routine ends up in the competitor's product. A company desiring to develop a software program that competes with an existing product should employ “clean-room” techniques, wherein the company's programmers are given functional specifications but have no access to the competitor's program or code.

protection, and its rules provide special filing procedures to protect trade secrets in copyrighted software.

## The Internet

---

Internet activity is placing new pressures on intellectual property practice. Uploading and downloading of copyrighted material on the Internet can be copyright infringement. Copyright infringement has also been found in some cases against bulletin board operators and administrators who have received and stored such material.

Domain names are taking on some of the characteristics of trademarks. Further, there have been some instances where a party has incorporated a well-known name or mark of another in his own domain name, resulting in infringement. And there is now a domain name dispute-resolution system offering trademark owners a less expensive alternative to court when pursuing cybersquatters. Webpages can be fraught with IP issues. Google, for example, was sued by Geico because, when a user typed in “Geico” using the Google search engine, Geico’s competitors were listed as sponsors. Adware, spyware, pop-up ads, links, and other features of Websites are regularly litigated but often with unpredictable results. Dual-use software—software that has legitimate purposes but that can also be used to download or traffic in protected content—can also raise IP issues. Licensing via the Internet using “click-wrap” agreements can be problematic if not in accordance with general contract law precepts. Finally, the dust has yet to settle on the question of whether a company located in one state can be sued in a distant state merely on account of the company’s Website.

## IP Agreements

---

When you think of protecting a new idea or product, your thoughts probably turn to patents, trade secrets, and copyrights. But the game can be won or lost long before you have the opportunity to establish one of those forms of protection. That’s why a fundamental form of protection—confidential disclosure agreements, employment contracts, and consultant contracts—is so important. Whether or not an idea or product is protectable by an exclusive statutory right such as a patent or copyright, before you obtain such protection *keep the basic information confidential* in order to prevent public use or disclosure, which can result in the loss of rights and inspire others to seek statutory rights before you.

Confidential disclosure agreements, employment agreements, and consultant agreements have some things in common. They define the obligations of the parties during the critical early stages of development of a new concept, product, or process. Entrepreneurs often overlook them until it’s too late—after the relationship is well under way and a problem has arisen. One of the worst things that can happen in due diligence is to discover a programmer hired by the company as an independent consultant never signed over his copyright in the company’s flagship product. For proper protection of the business, work out agreements with employees, consultants, and in some cases suppliers and customers to keep secret all important information of the business and to assign to the business all rights to that information.

Many people think that only technical information can be protected. This is not so. All of the following can be protectable information:

- Ideas for new products or product lines
- A new advertising or marketing program
- A new trademark idea

- The identity of a critical supplier
- A refinancing plan

And all these can be even more valuable than the technical matters when it comes to establishing an edge over the competition and gaining a greater market share.

Employment contracts, consultant contracts, and confidential disclosure agreements all should be put in writing and signed before the relationship begins, before any work is done, before any critical information is exposed, and before any money changes hands. A business must not be in such a rush to get on with the project that it ends up without full ownership of the very thing it paid for. And the employees, consultants, or other parties must not be so anxious to get the work that they fail to understand clearly at the outset what they are giving up in undertaking this relationship.

## Preparing Employment Contracts

Employment contracts must be fair to both parties and should be signed by all employees—at least those who may be exposed to confidential company matters or may contribute ideas or inventions to the business. They should also be short and readable if they are ever to be effectively enforced.

Employment contracts, like all agreements, must have consideration flowing both ways. If I agree to paint your house for \$5,000, my consideration to you is the painting of your house. Your consideration to me is the \$5,000. In an employment contract, the consideration from the employee includes all promises to keep secrets secret and to assign all ideas and inventions to the business; the consideration from the business is to employ the employee. Thus, it is best to present these contracts to the prospective employee well before she begins work.

After the job has begun, the consideration will be the employee’s “continued” employment, and that sounds a bit threatening. Although “continued” employment is certainly proper consideration, in construing these contracts courts can easily see that the employer usually has the superior bargaining position, so they generally like to know that, when the contract was offered for signature, the employee had a fair opportunity to decline without suffering severe hardship. It is not a good idea to present the employment contract in a packet of pension, hospitalization, and other forms to be signed the day the employee shows up to begin work after having moved the entire family across the country in order to take the job.

## Transfer of Employee Rights to Company Innovations

One of the most important clauses in an employment contract is the agreement by the employee to transfer to the company the entire right, title, and interest in and to all ideas, innovations, and creations—that is, designs, developments, inventions, improvements, trade secrets, discoveries, writings, and other works, including software, databases, and other computer-related products and processes. The transfer is required whether or not these items are patentable or copyrightable. They should be assigned to the company if they were made, conceived, or first reduced to practice by the employee. This obligation should hold whether the employee was working alone or with others and whether or not the work was done during normal working hours or on the company premises. So long as the work is within the scope of the company’s business, research, or investigation or resulted from or is suggested by any of the work performed for the company, its ownership is required to be assigned to the company.

This clause should not seek to compel transfer of ownership for everything an employee does even if it has no relationship to the company’s business. For example, an engineer employed to design phased-array radar for an electronics company may invent a new horseshoe or write a book on the history of steeplechase racing. An attempt to compel assignment of ownership of such works under an employment agreement could be seen as overreaching and

unenforceable. The same may be true of a clause that seeks to vest in the employer ownership of inventions, innovations, or other works made for a period of time after employment ends or before employment begins.

Ancillary to this transfer or assignment clause is the agreement of the employee to promptly disclose the inventions, innovations, and works to the company or to any person designated by the company and to assist in obtaining protection for the company, including patents and copyrights in all countries designated by the company. The employee at this point also agrees to execute

- Patent applications and copyright applications
- Assignments of issued patents and copyright registrations
- Any other documents necessary to perfect the various properties and vest their ownership clearly in the company

If these activities are called for after the employee has left the company, she is still obligated to comply but must be paid for time and expenses.

## How Employee Moonlighting Might Compromise Confidentiality

Be careful if employees use so-called open source code. Such code is indeed open, but it's not free. Often the originator of the code requires that any patents relating to products containing any open source code in it be freely licensed to all. In due diligence, one question that might be asked of your company is, "Was any open source code used in your products?" Expect a frown by the investors if the answer is "yes."

Another important concern is **moonlighting**. While a company that sells CAD/CAM workstations doesn't care if its programmers drive fish delivery trucks on their own time, there are extremely sensitive situations that the company, as well as the employee, must take care to avoid. In one case, a CAD/CAM company discovered huge telephone charges for various lengthy periods from 3:00 P.M. to 8:00 P.M. on most days of the week, including Saturdays and Sundays. The company challenged the telephone bill and found that the calls were indeed made from the company's own phones to a major computer manufacturer many miles away. The computer manufacturer claimed ignorance. But after a lengthy investigation, it was discovered that an employee of the company had been hired on a consulting basis by a middle manager at the manufacturer to develop a software system. The employee had been doing his consulting for the computer manufacturer over the telephone lines from his computer terminal while sitting at his desk in his company office. The employee was not shortchanging the company as far as hours were concerned; he was working long hours to make up for his moonlighting, and the software he was developing was not in the company's

CAD/CAM area. But the revelation was chilling. The mere awareness that an information line existed between this giant computer manufacturer and the company, and what might have transpired over that line, haunted the company's officers and managers for some time afterward.

To prevent this, the employee should agree in the employment contract that during employment by the company there will be no engagement in any employment or activity in which the company is now or may later become involved, nor will there be moonlighting on the company's time or using the company's equipment or facilities.

## Noncompetition Clauses

A closely related notion is a **noncompetition provision** whereby the employee agrees not to compete during his employment by the company and for some period after leaving the company's employ. This is a more sensitive area. It may be perfectly understandable that a company does not want its key salesperson, an officer, a manager, or the head of marketing

or engineering to move to a new job with a competitor and have the inside track on his ex-employer's best customers, new product plans, manufacturing techniques, or new marketing program. But the courts do not like to prevent a person from earning a livelihood. They do not compel a lifelong radar engineer, for example, to turn down a job with a competitor in the same field and instead take a job designing cellular phones.

However, the higher up and the more important a person is in the operation of the company, the greater the probability that that person will be prevented from competing if the employment agreement provides for it. Officers, directors, founders, majority stockholders, and other key personnel have had such provisions enforced against them, but even then the scope of the exclusion must be fair and reasonable in terms of both time and geography. A few months, a year, or even two years could be acceptable, depending on how fast the technology and market are moving. Worldwide exclusion might be acceptable for a salesperson who sells transport planes. In the restaurant business, a few miles might be all that is necessary. A contract that seeks to extend the exclusion beyond what's fair will not be enforced. In general, courts will very carefully scrutinize noncompete agreements.

One way to ensure that an ex-employee does not compete is to allow the company to employ the person on a consultant basis over some designated period of time. In this way, the employee's involvement in critical information areas can gradually be phased out, so that by the time the employee is free to go to a competitor, there is no longer a threat to the company, and at the same time, the employee has been fairly compensated.

Bear in mind, however, that, even if ex-employees are free to compete, they are not free to take with them (in their memories or in recorded form) any trade secrets or any information confidential or proprietary to the company or to use it or disclose it in any way. To reinforce this, the employment contract should provide that the employee will not, during employment by the company or at any time thereafter, disclose to others or use for her own benefit or for the benefit of others any trade secrets or any confidential or proprietary information pertaining to any businesses of the company—technical, commercial, financial, sales, marketing, or otherwise. The restriction could also protect such information pertaining to the business of any of the company's clients, customers, consultants, licensees, affiliates, and the like.

Along with this, the employment contract should provide that all documents, records, models, electronic storage devices, prototypes, and other tangible items representing or embodying company property or information are the sole and exclusive property of the company and must be surrendered to the company no later than the termination of employment, or at any earlier time upon request of the company. This is an important provision for both the employer and the employee to understand. In some states, the law imposes serious criminal sanctions and fines for the removal of tangible trade secret property.

Courts in different jurisdictions take different approaches to noncompetes. In New Hampshire, for example, an ex-employee cannot be prohibited from soliciting *all* the employer's customers. Instead, solicitation is prohibited only to the customers the ex-employee had contact with during his employ. In contrast, neighboring Massachusetts may uphold noncompete agreements that prohibit solicitation of all the company's customers irrespective of whether the ex-employee had contact with them. That being said, Massachusetts's courts have completely invalidated noncompetes when, for example, the employee changed jobs within the company and was not required to execute a new non-compete.

## Preventing Employee Raiding

Another potential area of conflict is employee raiding, the hiring away of employees by an ex-employee who is now employed by a competitor or who has founded a competing business. This is a particularly sensitive situation when the ex-employee holds a position of high trust and confidence and was looked up to by the employees she is now attempting to hire. And it is particularly damaging when the employees being recruited are critical to operations because of either their expertise or their sheer numbers. In all circumstances, such an outflow of employees

is threatening because of the potential loss to a competitor of trade secrets and know-how. You can address this with a clause prohibiting an employee, during her employment period and for some period thereafter, from hiring away fellow employees for a competing enterprise.

## Employee Ownership of Copyright

One of the most hazardous areas of ownership is the title to copyrights. If a copyrighted work is created or authored by an employee, the company automatically owns the copyright. But the employee must be a bona fide employee. If a dispute arises over ownership between the company and the author, the courts will seek to determine whether the author was provided a full work week, benefits, withholdings, unemployment insurance, worker's compensation, and an office or workspace. If the author was anything less than a full employee, the copyright for the work belongs to the person, not to the company.

This means that, if the company hires a part-time employee, a consultant, a friend, or a moonlighter, when the nonemployee completes the software system that will revolutionize the industry and bring income cascading to the enterprise, the employee, not the company, will own the copyright. The company will own the embodiment of the system that the employee developed for the company, but the employee will own the right to reproduce, copy, and sell the system over and over again. It has happened. A company that spent hundreds of thousands of dollars to develop a software system owned the finished product but not the copyright in the product. The nonemployee owned the copyright and had the right to reproduce the product without limit and sell it to those who most desire it—typically the company's competitors and customers.

This is a chilling scenario but one that is easy to avoid with a little forethought. Simply get it in writing. Before any work starts, payment changes hands, or plans are revealed, *have the proposed author sign a written agreement* specifying that, whether or not the author is subsequently held to be an employee or a nonemployee, all right, title, and interest in any copyrightable material is assigned to the company. The lack of such a clear understanding in writing can wreck great dreams, ruin friendships and partnerships, and hamstring businesses to the point of insolvency while the parties fight over who owns the bunny rabbit, the book, the software, the poster, or the videotape on how to be a successful entrepreneur.

## Rights of Prior Employees

Here is another issue to consider under employment contracts. When a new employee is to be hired, obtain a copy of the employment contract with the last employer or the last few employers to determine whether this employee is free to work for your company now in the capacity he seeks. Prior employers have rights, too, that can conflict, rightly or wrongly, with the employee's new employment.

## Consultant Contracts

Consultant contracts should contain provisions similar to those in an employment contract, along with some additional ones. A consultant agreement should clearly define the task for which you've hired the consultant—for example, to research a new area; analyze or solve a problem; design or redesign a product; set up a production line; or assist in marketing, sales, management, technical, or financial matters. The agreement should show

- Why the consultant was hired
- What the consultant is expected to do
- What the consultant may be exposed to in the way of company trade secrets and confidential and proprietary information
- What the consultant is expected to assign to the company in the way of innovations, inventions, patents, and copyrights

A company hiring a consultant wants to own the result of whatever the consultant was hired to do, just as in the case of an employee. But a consultant's stock in trade is her expertise and ability to solve problems swiftly and elegantly in a specific subject area. Draw sharp lines around what the consultant will and will not assign to give both of you peace of mind.

Consulting relationships by their nature can expose each of the parties to a great deal of the other party's trade secrets and confidential and proprietary information. The company can protect itself with clear identification of the pertinent information and by employing the usual safeguards for trade secrets. It must limit disclosure to the consultant to what is necessary to do the job and also limit the consultant's freedom to use the information in work for others and to disseminate it. Consultants must protect themselves in the same way to prevent the client company from misappropriating their special knowledge, problem-solving approaches, and analytical techniques.

An often overlooked area is the ownership of notes, memos, and failed avenues of investigation. False starts and failures can be as important as the solution, especially to competitors. Related to this is the question of the ownership of the raw data. Raw data may be extremely valuable in their own right, but they can also provide a way to easily reconstruct the end result of the consultant's work, like a market survey.

## Confidential Disclosure Agreements

Whenever you are going to reveal an idea, information, an invention, or any knowledge of peculiar value, have the receiving party sign a **confidential disclosure agreement** (aka a *nondisclosure agreement*) for your protection. The disclosure may be necessary for any of the following reasons:

- To interest a manufacturer in taking a license to make and sell a new product
- To hire a consultant to advise in a certain area
- To permit a supplier to give an accurate bid
- To allow a customer to determine whether or not she wants a product or wants a product modified

Disclosure agreements are important not only to protect the knowledge or information itself but also to preserve valuable related rights such as *domestic and foreign patent rights*. These agreements should be short and to the point.

Basically, the recipient should agree to keep confidential all information disclosed. *Information* in this context means all trade secrets and all proprietary and confidential information, whether tangible or intangible, oral or written, and of whatever nature (for example, technical, sales, marketing, advertising, promotional, merchandising, financial, or commercial).

The recipient should agree to receive all such information in confidence and not to use or disclose it without your express written consent. Make it clear that no secrecy obligation is incurred for any information proven in the public domain.

Limit the receiver to disclosing the information to only those of its employees who need to know in order to carry out the purposes of the agreement and who have obligations of secrecy and confidentiality to the receiver. Further, the receiver should agree that all its employees to whom any information is communicated are obligated under written employment agreements to keep the information secret. The receiver should also represent that he will exercise the same standard of care in safeguarding this information as he does for his own—and in no event less than *a reasonable standard of care*. This latter phrase is necessary because some businesses have no standard of care or a very sloppy attitude toward even their own important information.

Provide for the return of all tangible embodiments of the confidentially disclosed information, including drawings, blueprints, designs, parameters of design, monographs, specifications, flowcharts, sketches, descriptions, and data. You can also include a provision preventing the receiving party from entering a competing business or introducing a competing product or service in the area of the disclosed information. The receiver can request a time

limit, after which she is free to disclose or use the information. Such a time period could extend from a few months to a number of years depending on the life cycle of the information, tendency to copy, competitive lead time, and other factors present in a particular industry. Strong, clear language will establish that no license or any other right, express or implied, to the information is given by the agreement.

While such confidential disclosure agreements between the discloser and receiver are the ideal, they are not always obtainable. The receiver may argue that no such agreement is necessary, saying in effect, "Trust me." Or the receiver may flatly refuse on the grounds that it is against her policy. Some large corporations turn the tables and demand that the discloser of information sign the company's own standard *nonconfidential* disclosure agreement before the disclosure of any information.

Under a nonconfidential disclosure agreement, often referred to as an *idea submission agreement*, the discloser gives up all rights to the information except as covered by a U.S. patent or copyright. Outside those protections, the receiver is free to use, disclose, or do whatever he wishes with the information. This is not due simply to arrogance or orneriness. A large corporation has many departments and divisions where research and development of new ideas is occurring unknown to other areas of the corporation. In addition, in a number of cases courts have held corporations liable for misappropriation of ideas and information where no written agreement existed, and even where a *nonconfidential* disclosure agreement purported to free the receiver from any restriction against dissemination and use of the idea.

If you cannot reach agreement or if the receiver makes a counteroffer of a non-confidential disclosure agreement, you must decide whether to keep the idea under the mattress or take a chance on the honesty of the receiver. In the latter case, you are wise to reduce the initial disclosure to a minimum in order to cut your losses should a careless or unscrupulous receiver make public or misappropriate the idea.

A middle ground that courts have recognized is an implied confidential relationship evidenced by the actions of the parties. In one case, a letter soliciting a receiver's interest in a particular field and indicating that the matter was confidential resulted in a face-to-face meeting between the discloser and receiver, where the full idea was revealed. Later, when the receiver came out with a product using the idea, the discloser sued and won. The letter set up a confidential relationship that the receiver did not reject but rather accepted by meeting with the discloser and accepting the idea without any comment or exclusion. The letter was not signed by the receiver, but it bound the company nevertheless under the totality of the circumstances.

These basic forms of protection—employment contracts, consultant contracts, and confidential disclosure agreements—need not be complex or lengthy, but they are essential at the earliest stages of idea generation to protect and preserve for the business some of its most valuable and critical property.



## CONCLUSION

Consider now again the hypothetical handheld microprocessor-based product. Suppose you need a supply agreement for the microprocessor itself, a consultant to write the software, and a manufacturing house to deliver the main circuit board to you for final assembly. A license to a patent covering a component you want to incorporate in the product is required, and you also need a designer to develop your Website that will advertise the product for sale. Confidentiality concerns probably exist with respect to all the resulting agreements, as do ownership and noncompetition issues.

Time passes and the product is an unqualified success. Have any of your ex-employees, suppliers, consultants, or vendors begun competing unfairly? With your own IP—patents, copyrights, trademarks, and trade secrets—in place, you have a good chance of protecting

your market share. And with your written agreements clearly spelling out the ownership, noncompetition, and confidentiality issues, you further protect your valuable IP.

Or did you rely on the wrong form of IP protection or forget to address IP ownership issues and/or the IP of others? Did your provisional patent application lack sufficient details? Did you fail to meet a deadline imposed by law, cut out certain types of protection because of budget constraints, or fail to conduct the necessary searches to make sure, for example, your trademark was clear? Now, not only might the people you once trusted compete but others, too, might start eroding your market share, or, worse, levy a charge of IP infringement against you.

One premise of this book is that entrepreneurship can be taught. IP, being synonymous with entrepreneurship, too can be learned. IP doesn't guarantee product sales or the success of a new service, but without it, the entrepreneur has little chance of fending off the inevitable competition.

### Reflection Point

1. Does your business have IP? If not, why not? What is your strategy to protect your IP?
2. Does your new venture potentially infringe anybody else's IP?
3. Do you have IP that can be patented? When will you file (remember that you have to file within one year of initial public disclosure in the United States, and prior to any disclosure in many other countries)?
4. What "trade secrets" underlie your business? How do you plan to protect these secrets?
5. Will you trademark your company name or symbol? What about your product name? Will you use copyright protection at all?
6. Do you need to seek international IP protection? When and how?

### Your Thoughts ...

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

Use the U.S. Patent Office searchable database ([www.uspto.gov/patft/index.html](http://www.uspto.gov/patft/index.html)) to look at issued patents and published applications in your area of interest. How many patents have been filed? How are the applications written? Is this something you can do on your own, or do you need a lawyer's assistance?

## WEB EXERCISE

<sup>1</sup> [http://news.com.com/Beatles+judge+finds+iTunes+nothing+to+get+hung+about/2100-1027\\_3-6069490.html](http://news.com.com/Beatles+judge+finds+iTunes+nothing+to+get+hung+about/2100-1027_3-6069490.html).

**CASE****Cadence Design Systems and Avant! (B)****Avant! Pays Fines and Legal Costs of Six Current and Former Employees, August 2001<sup>1</sup>**

In connection with the plea agreement, Avant! agreed to pay a fine of \$27.0 million and to pay restitution in an amount to be determined by the court. On July 25, 2001, the court fixed the total restitution amount to be paid to Cadence at \$195.4 million, any unpaid portion of which accrued interest at the statutory rate of 10% beginning July 25, 2001. Avant! recognized the resulting expense of \$222.4 million in the second quarter of 2001. During the third quarter of 2001, Avant! paid the \$27.0 million fine and made restitution payments to Cadence totaling \$170.0 million. Avant! made a final payment of \$26.5 million to Cadence on October 3, 2001, to conclude payment of the restitution owed to Cadence. These payments included \$1.1 million of interest.

As part of the settlement, Avant! agreed to indemnify all of the current and former Avant! employees named in Exhibit 13.1, with the exception of Mr. Cheng, for the fines assessed against them, and indemnify them for the taxes levied as a result of this indemnification. Avant! recognized the resulting expense of \$14.1 million in the second quarter of 2001. Under the applicable law, Avant! was authorized to pay the defense expenses and fines of its officers, directors, and employees if the Avant! board found that “the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the person’s conduct was unlawful.” The Avant! board, having determined that these criteria were met, paid, or agreed to pay, the amounts shown in Exhibit 13.1 in litigation expenses and fines for the listed individuals in connection with the Santa Clara criminal action.

**EXHIBIT 13.1**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Fines<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Litigation and Related Expenses<sup>1</sup></b>
Gerald C. Hsu	\$ 2,700,000	\$ 518,019
Stephen Wuu	\$ 2,700,000	\$ 1,813,009
Y.Z. Liao	\$ 2,700,000	\$ 1,044,457
Eric Cho	\$ 100,000	\$ 617,685
Leigh Huang	\$ 100,000	\$ 866,765
Eric Cheng	—	\$ 1,410,100 <sup>2</sup>
Michael Tsai	—	\$ 502,402

<sup>1</sup> Amounts do not include amounts to indemnify each of the individuals for any actual tax liability attributable to amounts received from or paid on their behalf by Avant!.

<sup>2</sup> Amounts include litigation expenses related to both the Santa Clara criminal action and the Avant!/Cadence litigation.

On July 25, 2001, Eric Cheng, Y.Z. Liao, and Stephen Wuu resigned from Avant!. Eric Cho, Leigh Huang, and Mike Tsai were former Avant! employees.

All told, Avant! engaged 10 high-powered law firms and paid them \$30 million; in contrast, the government case was initially led by Finklestein on his own; later, he was joined by two associates.

## Securities Class Action Claims (March–April 2001)<sup>2</sup>

On December 15, 1995, Paul Margetis and Helen Margetis filed a securities fraud class action complaint against Avant! in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California. This lawsuit alleged securities laws violations, including omissions and/or misrepresentations of material facts related to the events and transactions which are the subject of the claims contained in Cadence's civil lawsuit against Avant!. In addition, on May 30, 1997, Joanne Hoffman filed a securities fraud class action in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California on behalf of purchasers of Avant!'s stock between March 29, 1996 and April 11, 1997, the date of the filing of a criminal complaint against Avant! and six of its employees and/or directors. The plaintiffs alleged that Avant! and its officers misled the market as to the likelihood of the criminal indictment and as to the validity of the Cadence allegations.

In March 2001, Avant! reached agreement with counsel for the plaintiff classes in both securities actions for a voluntary resolution of the cases. Under that agreement, Avant! paid a total of \$47.5 million in exchange for dismissal of the actions and a release of claims by members of the classes. The District Court entered an order on June 22, 2001, that gave final approval to the settlement and dismissed the litigation with prejudice. Avant! paid the full settlement amount of \$47.5 million in April 2001. Avant! recognized the settlement as an expense in the fourth quarter of 2000.

## Synopsys to Acquire Avant!, December 2001<sup>3</sup>

Mountain View, California—An acquisition that promises to fundamentally alter the EDA landscape unfolded Monday (Dec. 3) as Synopsys Inc. announced its intent to purchase Avant! Corp. Valued at \$830 million at current stock prices, the acquisition is by far the largest in EDA history—and likely the riskiest from a legal and financial point of view.

If successfully completed, the acquisition will give Synopsys most of the IC design flow for “power users,” and could possibly unseat Cadence as the EDA market revenue leader. But Synopsys will inherit a civil lawsuit in which Cadence is seeking up to a billion dollars from Avant!, and so far, Cadence is showing no inclination to settle.

“The bottom line is that this merger is a bold move that instantly puts us in the leadership position in IC design automation,” said Aart de Geus, chief executive officer of Synopsys. “It instantly brings the best front- and back-end design tools together under a single roof.”

The acquisition will bring to an end the most controversial chapter in EDA history—the long-running criminal and civil prosecution for source-code theft. Gerry Hsu, the former Avant! president and CEO who pled “no contest” to several criminal charges this spring, will not join Synopsys but will probably receive a payment of around \$40 million. [As it turned

<sup>2</sup>Ibid.

<sup>3</sup>EE Times. December 3, 2001. [www.eet.com/story/OEG20011203S0077](http://www.eet.com/story/OEG20011203S0077).

out, actual payment to Hsu was \$43 million; it was part of the \$177 million in severance and other payments made by Synopsys to Avant! employees and board members.<sup>4]</sup>

"This merger opens up a new chapter in the history of the EDA industry," said Paul Lo, president of Avant!. "Two acknowledged leaders are joining forces to become what we believe will soon be the preeminent supplier in the EDA business."

## Cadence and Avant! Settle Lawsuit, November 2002<sup>5</sup>

Chip-design software maker Cadence Design Systems agreed to settle its civil lawsuit against rival Avant! for \$265 million, closing the chapter on a long-running case that centered on stolen trade secrets.

Under the terms of the settlement, the two companies and individuals named in the suit have agreed to dismiss all pending claims and counterclaims, which date back to 1994. In addition, they agreed to enter into reciprocal licenses covering the intellectual property at the heart of the lawsuit.

The money Avant! must pay in this latest civil settlement is in addition to the amount it was ordered to pay in the criminal case, bringing its total payments to more than \$460 million.

Synopsys, a large chip-design software maker that purchased Avant! in June [2002], will pay the money out of an insurance policy from Illinois National Insurance Company, a policy it bought upon completion of the acquisition. Under the terms of the settlement, Cadence will accept \$265 million in two installments; \$20 million will be paid on or before November 22, and \$245 million will be paid on or before December 16.

When it acquired Avant! Synopsys took out an insurance policy to limit its financial exposure in any future settlement of Cadence's civil lawsuit against Avant!. Synopsys paid a one-time \$85 million premium for the policy with a \$250 million deductible. If the settlement was above the \$250 million deductible, Illinois National would pay the additional amount up to a maximum of \$500 million (i.e., a total settlement of \$750 million). Hence if the settlement was less than \$335 million (\$250 million deductible plus \$85 million premium), Illinois National would make a profit. As the settlement was for \$265 million, Illinois National made a profit of \$70 million on the policy. So the settlement cost Synopsys \$335 million (\$265 million settlement minus \$15 million from Illinois National plus \$85 million premium for the policy).

Synopsys's total cost of acquiring Avant! was approximately \$1.25 billion.<sup>6</sup>

## Preparation Question

1. What could Cadence have done to better protect its intellectual property?

---

<sup>4</sup>Cadence vs. Avant!. Case #E-61. Stanford University Graduate School of Business.

<sup>5</sup>CNET News.com. November 14, 2002. [http://news.zdnet.com/2100-9595\\_22-965890.html](http://news.zdnet.com/2100-9595_22-965890.html).

<sup>6</sup>Synopsys Faces Unusual Acquisition Costs. *The Wall Street Journal*. June 5, 2002.



Yankee Candle Company (Source: Courtesy Yankee Candle Co.)

## ENTREPRENEURIAL GROWTH

---

While entrepreneurship begins with an opportunity, sustainable success comes from creating an organization that can execute on that opportunity. But as organizations start to gain more sales and customers, managing growth becomes a critical challenge that, if not handled appropriately, can lead to venture failure.

Why do entrepreneurs fail to manage growth? Often they have limited time and resources to spend on organization building. They're constantly fighting fires in the business's day-to-day operations or they're chasing too many opportunities, leaving little time for planning. Entrepreneurs without organizational or business skills may retreat into something they do know and are more comfortable doing, like product development. They may hire salespeople or engineers to handle sales and technical support before bringing in someone with organizational and business skills. But eventually growth overwhelms the operation. In order to survive and continue to grow, entrepreneurs need to pay attention to the requirements of a firm in its growth phase. They cannot neglect the planning and preparation required for long-term success.

Many believe that entrepreneurial skills and managerial skills are mutually exclusive and operate at different phases of the firm's life. Entrepreneurial skills *are* critical during the venture's launch, while managerial skills become increasingly important thereafter.



- The objectives of any entrepreneur wishing to create a sustainable enterprise should include building an efficiently operating organization while developing an organization-wide entrepreneurial capability.

Yet the organization will need to retain its entrepreneurial spirit as it grows. It can't function over the long term by simply managing what it has previously created. Customer needs inevitably change. Competitors eventually offer superior products or services. Economic conditions, politics, technology, and a variety of other external shifts will create a constantly changing opportunity set that leads to new possibilities while rendering old opportunities obsolete.

It's no wonder that half the businesses started today will not be around in eight years. And far fewer firms will continue to grow and stay profitable—as few as one in seven.<sup>1</sup> What distinguishes those firms that not only survive but also thrive? Entrepreneurs and leaders who build an efficient operating organization, while maintaining the organization's entrepreneurial ability.

## Making the Transition from Startup to Growth

---

During startup, the business opportunity is taking shape, but as yet there are no significant sales. The founders are acquiring resources and organizing initial operations—and they do everything. At the other end, in the mature stage and beyond, the business must deal with the problems of a well-established organization. Systems and structures can become entrenched and the culture can impede efforts to grow further, leading to decline. In this chapter, we look at how entrepreneurs operate once they've started and, we assume, their companies have reached a point of initial success with their opportunity. The primary task beyond this startup stage is to create a professional organization capable of managing its current growth, while setting the stage for continued entrepreneurship to ensure the organization can sustain growth as it matures and avoid decline.

The chapter is organized around four driving forces in the growth stages: leadership, the opportunity domain, resources and capabilities, and execution. Before we get to this discussion, let's review a key decision every entrepreneur must consider beyond startup: whether to sell, maintain, or grow the venture.

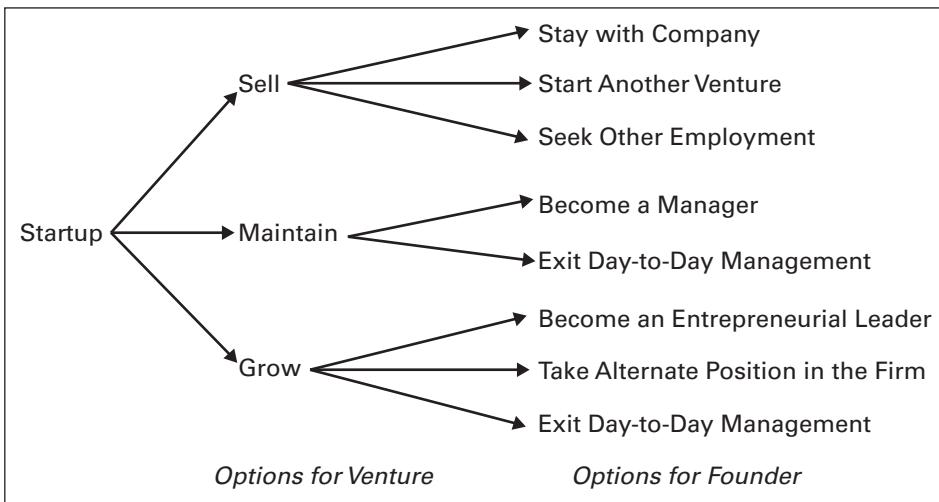
### Looking Forward: The Choice to Grow, or Not, . . . or Sell

Figure 14.1 presents post-startup options for an entrepreneurial business. Each option presents at least two alternatives for the founder.

If a new venture is successful in generating sales, entrepreneurs can reap capital gains by finding a suitable buyer. If the entrepreneur decides to sell the business, she may stay with the acquiring company, or she may leave and either seek other employment or start another company. The first situation is perhaps the most common; the entrepreneur sells to reap a capital gain but stays on with the organization for several years to help in the transition. Michael London and Stephen Kramer, the founders of College Coach (the case we covered in Chapter 5) sold their company to Bright Horizons in 2006. Both Michael and Stephen remained with the company. The buyer wants the entrepreneur to stay in order to reduce risk.

A typical acquisition might give the entrepreneur one-third of the price in cash, one-third in the acquiring company's stock (vested over the term of an employment contract), and one-third in an earn-out that is tied to the performance of the acquired company. If the acquired company meets certain milestones, the entrepreneur earns the full amount of the earn-out. If it falters, the entrepreneur's earn-out is at risk. Thus, the entrepreneur has an incentive to work hard after the acquisition takes place.

If a company is publicly traded, on the other hand, it is easier for the entrepreneur to sell and leave. Jim Clark, who co-founded Silicon Graphics in 1981, sold his remaining



**Figure 14.1**

### Post-startup options

interest in the company in 1994 and left. He subsequently went on to co-found Netscape with Marc Andreessen. When selling a business, the founders often have contractual agreements to consider, like restrictions on their activities if they exit; for example, noncompete clauses may place limitations on their next venture. If you sell your business, the acquirer will prohibit you from starting a new, directly competing business.

When maintaining a business, the entrepreneur is faced with two basic choices. He can continue to lead the organization or exit day-to-day operations. Google co-founders Sergey Brin and Larry Page started the company up in 1998. They both stayed as co-presidents until 2001, when they recruited former Sun Microsystems and Novell executive Eric Schmidt as Chairman and CEO. They recognized they needed someone with experience and business acumen to grow the company.<sup>2</sup> Having an experienced CEO has freed Brin and Page to focus on the aspects of the business they have the most passion for. Brin heads up the technology group at Google, while Page runs the products group.

While our focus is on growing a business, it's true that many entrepreneurs choose to operate lifestyle businesses that pay enough salary for them to have a comfortable lifestyle, with less risk and complexity. These firms usually aren't large or successful enough to be sold, and the entrepreneurs don't have the desire to grow the business. One of the authors of this chapter, for example, was working with an ergonomics consulting company that hired her to grow the business. They explored a number of options, but growth would mean hiring more employees and moving out of the founder's basement. The founder decided he preferred the flexibility, lower risk, and greater control associated with staying small. After two engineers who had worked with him part-time finished college and moved on to other jobs, he maintained the business as a one-person operation, outsourcing any additional expertise, and keeping his commute to "a walk downstairs." What this example illustrates is that the decision to grow (or not) is multifaceted. It should take into account not only the ability to grow (the company could capture more customers if it were larger) but also the desires of the entrepreneur.

We'll now assume the company is currently growing, and the owner chooses to sustain a growing organization rather than selling or maintaining a lifestyle business. We'll focus on the founder as CEO, although most of the concepts also apply in the case where the founder is replaced. We next present our model of driving forces in the entrepreneurial firm's growth stages.

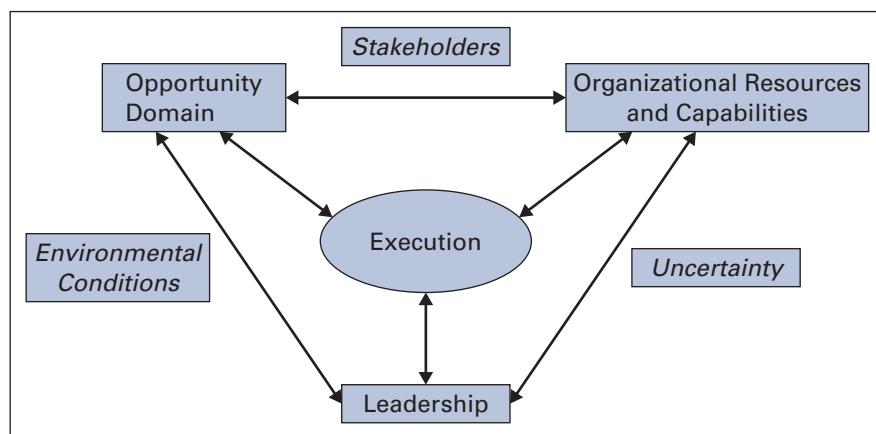
## A Model of Driving Forces of Growth

Chapter 2 offers a model describing three driving forces that must be in balance during the startup process: the entrepreneur, the opportunity, and resources. In the growth stage, these three driving forces shift to *leadership*, the *opportunity domain*, and *organizational resources and capabilities*, as Figure 14.2 illustrates. While the business plan is at the core of Chapter 2's model, the growth model has *execution* as its core and fourth driving force. These forces must all come into balance and remain so during the growth phase.

Both the startup and the growth models are affected by uncertainty and environmental conditions. Whether at startup or in its growth phase, an organization is unable to predict many events, such as a competitor introducing a superior product soon after launch or customers adopting a product much more slowly than anticipated. Environmental conditions, such as economic cycles, the regulatory environment, and technological change, can also affect a venture's viability and success. In all phases of its life, the organization will need to balance the driving forces amid conditions it cannot control.

Stakeholders have the largest impact on a firm's growth potential. **Stakeholders** are those having a stake in the venture's success, like investors, customers, suppliers, and employees. As a new venture grows, it accumulates a range of insiders and outsiders who become increasingly dependent on the firm and exert heavy influence on its decisions. The organization will need to balance the current needs of these stakeholders with its need to think about how to sustain itself over the long term.

When Kodak, for example, announced in 2004 that it would stop selling film-based cameras and switch to digital photography, it reduced its workforce and threatened its long-standing relationship with Walgreen drugstores, which relied heavily on sales of Kodak film cameras. The announcement also angered Kodak's stockholders, who thought that milking the core business would provide them with higher dividends. Kodak, however, foresaw the end of film and knew it needed to make a huge commitment that couldn't wait and couldn't be accomplished by appeasing stakeholders who had more to gain from business as usual. Starting in 2006, Kodak split its consumer business into two groups—the Consumer Digital Imaging Group and the Film and Photofinishing Systems Group—to effectively address differences in how to manage a growing and a declining business. By the end of 2008, Kodak shipped over



**Figure 14.2**

**Driving forces of growth**

14 million digital cameras.<sup>3</sup> Yet Kodak's film division declined from \$7.0 billion in 2004 to \$3.0 billion in 2008. If Kodak had stubbornly stayed as a film-only company, it would be greatly diminished today.

## The Growth Process

---

Figure 14.3 shows the challenges associated with the four driving forces outlined in Figure 14.2, and the key imperatives the firm needs to address to achieve overall balance among the forces.<sup>4</sup> The table differentiates between a venture's early and later growth stages. This distinction is important because the problems facing a company at an early stage of growth are different from those it faces later, and therefore the decisions and solutions will change. By knowing where the organization stands in the life cycle, an entrepreneur can tell which problems are normal and which require special attention. For example, while an entrepreneur needs to focus her firm's strategy during early growth, she will need to look toward expansion in later growth stages.

## Execution

---

The growth model has execution at its core. Execution depends on the other components in the model—leadership, the opportunity domain, and organizational resources and capabilities—but it has the most direct link to profits. The startup is commonly loosely managed, with few controls, very little performance assessment, and a lack of responsibility for outcomes. It often puts an emphasis on sales over profits, with chasing a new customer taking priority over considering the costs of serving that customer, for example. Growth will soon overwhelm operations, however, leaving the company capable only of reacting to inventory outages, overdue collections, diminishing cash flows, and delivery restrictions by suppliers. In addition, uncontrolled growth can lead to poor coordination between activities such as sales and inventory planning.

Without an adequate system of controls, the company can't optimize its decision making and prevent the waste of resources. One startup, for example, had a printing and paper supplier that charged the company more than three times the normal price for copy paper. The owner of the printing business told an employee (who later relayed the remark to the owners of the startup), "They're too caught up in their own growth to notice."

With only so many hours in a day and so many days in a week, it is hard to step back, develop and implement new processes, hire and train people, and ensure everything functions adequately. Yet these control tasks are essential to creating an organization that can continue to thrive and grow. Therefore, your most critical first task in transitioning beyond startup is to create an efficient operation. This will eventually overlap with your efforts to sustain an entrepreneurial organization, but the firm will first need to catch up to its burgeoning growth—then it can set the stage for creating new sources of growth in the future. The key objectives for a control system should be to institute controls, track performance, and manage cash.

### Instituting Controls

Your first **control system** in early growth should be relatively simple. The organization should quickly and easily be able to get it up and running and train people to use it. With a simple system, there's less that can go wrong, and as employees and managers get accustomed to control practices, you can upgrade the system later to handle a larger and more complex

	Early Growth		Later Growth	
	Challenges	Key Imperatives	Challenges	Key Imperatives
Execution	Emphasis on sales over profits. Reactive orientation (fighting fires). Rapid growth overwhelms operations. Inadequate systems and planning leads to inefficiency, poor control, and quality problems. Informal communication and processes create confusion and lack of accountability.	Develop basic systems to manage cash, control receivables, inventory, and payables. Develop simple budgets and metrics to track performance and expenditures.	Profit orientation can constrain later growth. Organization outgrows initial systems and planning structure. Difficulties with coordination and control as decentralization increases.	Upgrade and formalize systems for control and planning for the longer term/future – before they are needed. Proactive planning replaces reactive approach. Maintain balance between control and creativity; ensure processes don't constrain innovation.
Opportunity Domain	Tendency to over-commit, pursue many diverse opportunities. Lack of clear strategy for how the venture competes.	Develop a focused strategy that leverages the company's unique value. Maintain the consistency of this strategy with all company activities (such as product development, marketing, operations).	Original opportunity domain may provide fewer opportunities for growth. Competitive pressures and changes in the market may threaten current businesses.	Establish competitive uniqueness and move beyond "one-product" orientation. Expansion into the periphery with products and markets. Also, develop strategy for future that provides new momentum and long-run effectiveness. Anticipate/respond to changes in industry/market environment.
Organizational Resources and Capabilities	Financial and human resources constrained as rapidly expanding sales require more people and financing. Generalized skills increasingly incapable of handling increased complexity.	Get profitability and cash flow in check. Tap early financing sources. Hire people with specialized expertise. Protect intellectual property.	Insufficient resources for growth.	Maintain bootstrap mentality. Manage cash for internal growth resources. Secure growth financing.
Leadership	Company outgrows entrepreneur's abilities. Entrepreneur unable to delegate. Internally promoted managers often lack adequate skills.	Start the process of delegating responsibility to others. Promote/hire functional managers/supervisory-level managers. Invest in management training.	Management lacks the managerial sophistication required for the increasing size and complexity of a growing organization. Inadequate communication throughout organization. Tensions between professional management and entrepreneur, between new and old managers and employees.	Recruit key professional management talent. Build fully functioning Board of Directors. Ensure leadership team shares in strategic planning and preserves entrepreneurial capability. Create decentralized reporting structure.

**Figure 14.3**

**Challenges and key imperatives for managing growth**

organization. You can also implement the system stepwise—for example, by starting with components having the greatest gap between actual and desired performance or with those that are easiest to put in place and therefore will have immediate impact.

An effective control system includes the following (all of which were covered in detail in Chapter 11):

- ❑ Accounts receivable and collections policies
- ❑ An inventory management system
- ❑ Account payable policies
- ❑ Assessment of performance and expenditures
- ❑ Metrics to track trends in cash, receivables, inventory, payables, expenditures, and performance

Managing costs requires both making decisions about expenditures and instituting controls that monitor spending. A growing firm's selling and administrative costs often expand rapidly with its escalation in sales. This expenditure is often appropriate because you need marketing to generate sales and administrative overhead to support the burgeoning organization. Yet you do need to monitor these areas to determine effectiveness and detect overspending. For example, certain advertising approaches may be more effective than others, or they may work in one region but not another.

As the company begins to sell more and more products in multiple markets, you will want to analyze its performance in different product or market segments, along with how effectively it is spending its resources. You need to understand what each product costs and whether you are truly making a profit. All the costs going into each product are those costs, both variable and fixed, that would disappear if the product were discontinued. What remains after these costs are deducted from the selling price contributes toward company overhead and profit.

You can also develop performance metrics to aid in decisions about investments and expenditures. Performance measures in an early-stage company are designed less for evaluating actual outcomes against a plan (as they would be in a more stable, established organization) than for helping in entrepreneurial decision making. As the company's operations expand, managers can develop metrics to help them answer the following questions:

- ❑ Which products or markets generate the highest revenues and margins?
- ❑ Which customers or customer groups are reliable accounts (make timely payments, are at low risk of default)?
- ❑ How effective are our expenditures in areas such as marketing and sales, and does this differ across markets?

## Tracking Performance

How do you determine what's good or bad when examining key metrics? For some financial ratios, published sources can provide industry averages for comparison. Entrepreneurial firms, however, often adopt policies that differ from those of more stable, established firms, such as spending on marketing while building brand awareness. Thus, it may be more useful to look at trends in metrics over time; for example, an increase in your collection period for receivables could indicate a relaxing in collection efforts, or a decrease in inventory turns could indicate you are at increasing risk of stock-outs. If you see significant changes and they are not the result of policy shifts in your firm, look for causes and consider making adjustments in policy.

One key point is to make performance measures as simple and inexpensive to track as possible, while providing information that helps you make better decisions. One very successful consulting firm had simple but useful measures. The entrepreneur tracked performance through his “B-Report.” The B-Report was a simple Excel spreadsheet, with each consultant occupying a row, and columns representing every week of the year. If consultants expected to bill in a given week, they put a “B” in the column. If they did not, they left it blank. If the entrepreneur did not see a lot of B’s, he knew he had a problem.

► Performance measures for a growing organization should be as simple and inexpensive to track as possible, while providing information leading to better decision making.

The company can also develop simple budgeting practices to estimate cash and inventory needs, schedule production, determine staffing requirements, and set sales and profitability goals. It should upgrade and formalize these controls, metrics, and budgets as it moves toward later growth. But more importantly, these tools should evolve to provide the best information possible in aiding the company’s decision making. The value they provide should more than justify the time and effort spent to develop and maintain them.

There may be times when it’s appropriate to slow the pursuit of new growth in order to give the company room to improve its ability to manage growth. Joel Kolen, former president of Empress International Ltd., a seafood distributor, emphasizes that:

*By taking a break from growth and putting in controls such as those at a large company, an entrepreneur can ease the growth transition and ensure that the qualities that helped build the company don’t get lost in the rush to fill new orders.<sup>5</sup>*

## Managing the Cash Cycle

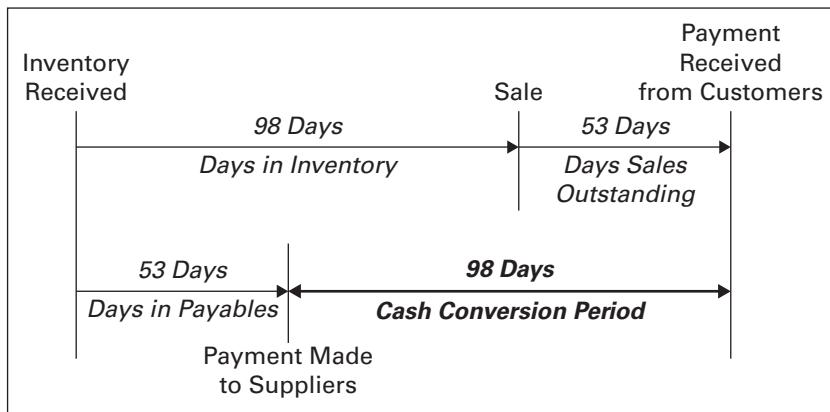
The **cash cycle** shows the amount of time that passes between cash outlays and cash inflows during the company’s sales process. It also shows the relationship between three key measures: days in payables, days in inventory, and days sales are outstanding. Let’s use Albercan Drilling Supply to illustrate the cash cycle—and how better controls can conserve resources. Albercan’s sole business was the sale of drill pipes and collars to drilling contractors in the local area. In 2009, as the company was growing, it seemed to have a constant need for cash. At the same time, its bankers were hesitant to extend more credit. A review of the key measures in Figure 14.4 shows that all have increased substantially in two years, more than doubling the cash conversion period.

As Figure 14.5 illustrates, the cash conversion period extends from the time of cash outlay (to suppliers) to cash inflow (from customers). Looking at this diagram, you can imagine how an increase in sales would actually decrease cash inflows in the short term. The company would need to borrow money to cover the costs associated with this increase in sales until cash comes in 98 days later. In the meantime, as it makes additional sales, the company would need to cover these costs. When cash finally comes in, the company would likely need that cash for more inventory!

Albercan Drilling Supply	2007	2008	2009	Increase 2007–2009
Days sales outstanding	39	45	53	37%
Days in inventory	44	86	98	122%
Days in payables	36	38	53	48%
Cash conversion period	47	92	98	108%

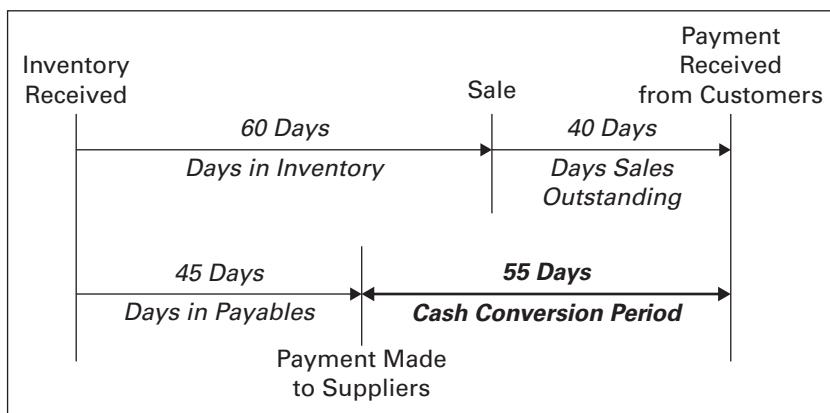
Figure 14.4

Albercan cash conversion analysis

**Figure 14.5****Cash conversion period for Albercan: 2009**

Another problem revealed in this analysis is the length of time Albercan takes to pay suppliers. If typical payment terms are 30 days (whereas Albercan is paying in 58 days), the company may be testing its relationship with suppliers. This could lead them to refuse to ship additional product until Albercan pays past invoices, or in the worse case, they might refuse to do business with the company.

The easy solution would be to borrow from a bank or other debt source, preferably using a revolving line of credit that allows the company to draw funds as needed and pay them back when it receives cash. These are short-term loans designed to cover shortfalls such as this. Borrowing can get expensive, though, so why not think about reducing the average cash conversion period? This is much more difficult, but it instills a sense of resource parsimony that boosts a company's efficiency. What if Albercan can reduce its days in inventory to 60 and its days' sales outstanding to 40? We'll also assume Albercan needs to reduce days in payables to 45. This all leaves a cash conversion period of 55 days, as Figure 14.6 below shows. Not only will that reduce the period of time the company would need to borrow, but also it

**Figure 14.6****Adjusted cash conversion period for Albercan: 2009**

would reduce the average amount needed, because cash comes in more quickly and is therefore available for more inventory.

The cash management practices Dell Computer instituted in 1997 offer an extreme example. Systems and improvements, which included input from employees, suppliers, and customers, led to substantial reductions in inventory holding and receivables collection periods. That, combined with an extension of days in payables, transformed the company's cash conversion period from 40 days in Q4 1996 to -5 days in Q4 1997.<sup>6</sup> Dell was basically getting cash in before it delivered products. Imagine the impact on interest expenses.

## Leveraging the Value Chain

We commonly represent a value chain as a series of steps showing the activities and entities that we need to coordinate in order for the company to execute its product or service. A startup may outsource more than it wants to at first because it doesn't have the resources or capabilities to do everything in-house. Often it designs a product with as many off-the-shelf parts as possible to minimize design and tooling charges. On the other hand, the firm may need to take on some value chain activities because there is no reliable or ready source for them; this is particularly true for new products or services for which there is little infrastructure. Or value chain players may not cooperate, leaving the company to, for example, sell its product direct rather than creating channel conflict for distributors who deal with more stable, older companies.

As the company grows, you should decide which value chain positions are capable of creating the most value and for which you can establish unique advantage. For example, the founders of Paratek,<sup>7</sup> a small computer peripheral startup, initially thought they would build what they could themselves, including wiring their own circuit boards. It didn't take them long to realize it would take them about half a day to build one board, when it could be done in minutes—and more reliably—by a board house. As they worked with their suppliers and gained experience with the product, they eventually had their suppliers take on more and more steps. The board house, for example, would build and test the boards and then ship them directly to the housing manufacturer, which would then install the boards into the housing. Eventually, the company needed only to insert a drive mechanism, test the completed unit, add any accessories to the order, and ship the product. This enabled it to run a leaner operation that focused on product development and the coordination of value chain activities, many of which were performed more quickly, cheaply, and reliably by others than the firm could do in-house.

Outsourcing can enable a growing company to focus on those activities it can perform particularly well and those underlying its source of competitive advantage. It makes sense to outsource those activities other companies can do more reliably and less expensively, like the board house just mentioned. But recognize that, while moving activities outside reduces the steps the firm performs in-house, it will also reduce the control you have over those activities—and often consume substantial time just for managing the relationship. The firm will therefore need to weigh some considerations, such as how it will maintain quality and how responsive the value chain partner needs to be in reducing or increasing production in response to fluctuations in sales.

## Maintaining the Entrepreneurial Organization

With all this talk about efficiency and controls, it's hard to imagine how anything entrepreneurial can happen. That is sadly the case with many companies. A history of success creates preferences for recreating the past rather than building toward the future. Efficiency in current operations often does not accommodate new initiatives, like those requiring different sales channels or different value chain partners. Customers want the company to

improve the products they know best rather than forcing them to change their behavior and endure the switching costs of adapting to a new product.

How, then, can a well-run organization maintain the ability to create new businesses? It's primarily a combination of the remaining driving forces of the growth model: how leadership views and manages its opportunity domain and the organization's people and resources.

## Opportunity Domain

While a startup is focused on shaping an opportunity and bringing it to life, as the organization grows, its leadership needs to define a strategic arena that guides decisions on how it competes in its industry and creates value for its targeted markets. An organization defines this arena through a balance of the unique capabilities it builds and its ability to differentiate itself in its competitive environment. This balance then guides decisions about how the company markets and sells its products and about which opportunities it pursues in expanding its business.

The impact of Stonyfield Farm's strategic focus can be seen in many aspects of its business. Stonyfield positioned itself as producing high-end yogurt products with quality, natural ingredients. It first sold its product through natural food and specialty stores, building a plant to better control its supply of hormone-free milk. The firm's marketing consisted of developing awareness and word of mouth by educating consumers about the quality of the product, promoting the company's social and environmental mission, and building a loyal following through plant tours, newsletters, and other customer relationship-focused programs. Stonyfield introduced new yogurt flavors, low-fat yogurt, and frozen yogurt. Its strategic focus shaped its distribution, manufacturing, marketing, and product development activities.

A focused strategy in early growth helps to guide the firm through the maze of opportunities that materialize once it experiences initial success. All too often, a startup chases diverse opportunities without defining what it can do distinctly well. During early growth, define your firm's core focus and develop capabilities around this, spending your limited resources and time close to this core, just as Stonyfield focused on building awareness of its unique brand and strengthening this brand with new yogurt flavors.



Courtesy Stonyfield Farm

---

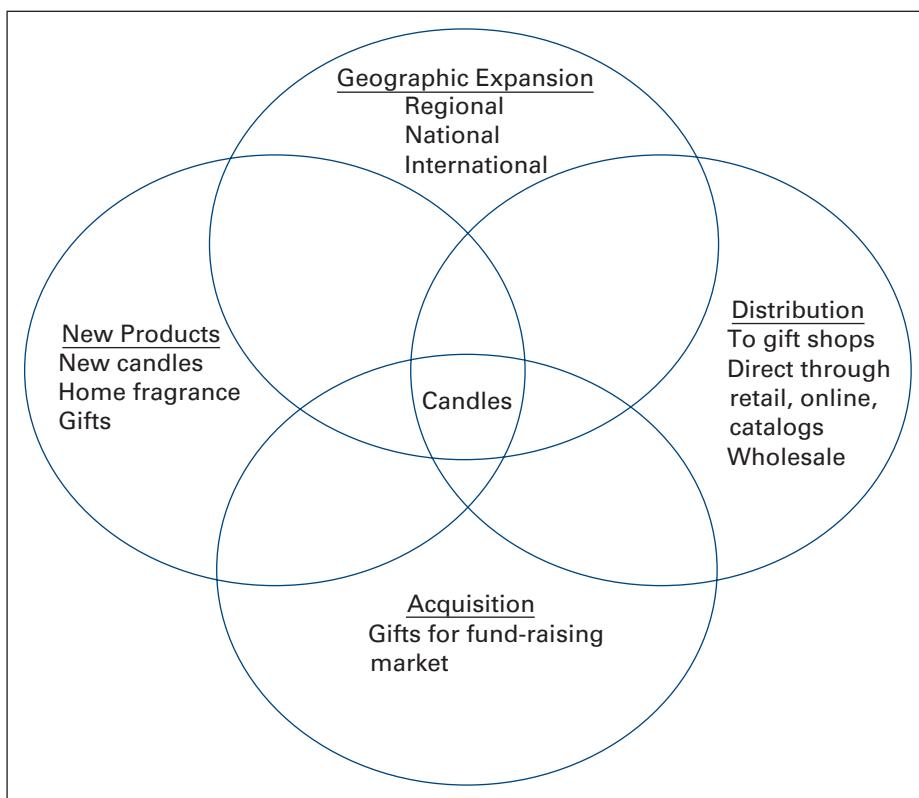
**Gary Hirshberg, founder of Stonyfield Farm.**

---

In later growth, your company has established its competitive uniqueness and can now leverage this, while training a strategic eye on the future. It may continue to extend its advantage in its current position by, for example, upgrading its products. Over time, however, opportunities will eventually diminish in a particular product space, and you will need to combine incremental extensions with expansion into the periphery. A company may create a next-generation product that includes improvements and new features for existing customers, while exploring new products and new markets. A restaurant chain can start offering Sunday brunch to its customers, for example, or it can launch a catering business.

Pay attention, however, to new developments in the industry and market environment. These may determine where you should best focus your strategic efforts at specific points in time. For instance, you may emphasize a current product to gain maximum returns before competition comes in. Or you may seek new ground if the market is becoming crowded by large competitors or if a technology foundation is becoming obsolete.

Yankee Candle Company illustrates how a company can expand over time within an existing product/market space and into the periphery. The company traces its origins to young Michael Kittredge's home operation, which soon expanded to an old paper mill. The company grew its sales of candles through gift shops and expanded into the international market through distributors. It started selling online and through catalogs. The company also opened its own retail stores, including a flagship store in South Deerfield, Massachusetts, which serves as a tourist destination, with a candle museum, a restaurant, and sales of toys, gifts, home accessories, and other products, along with candles of all shapes and sizes.



**Figure 14.7**

**Yankee Candle's opportunity domain**

While this expansion continued, the company entered the home fragrance market with products such as electric home fragrancers, room sprays, potpourri, and bath care products. The primary target audience was still women ranging in age from 20 to 60. But the company started to test new markets through its acquisition of GBI Marketing, a distributor of selected gift products (including Yankee Candle products) to fund-raising organizations.

As Figure 14.7 shows, Yankee Candle has taken a multipronged approach to expanding its business: geographic expansion, new products, new distribution methods, and acquisition. There is a common logic surrounding all these methods, extending from core elements relating to its original product: candles. You've probably encountered small, single-operation candle shops. The Yankee Candle example shows how a seemingly slow-growth business can become a high-potential venture.

As a company grows, it may experience stagnating growth in its core business but see little opportunity for expansion into the periphery. It may need to make drastic shifts in its business. As Channing Bete's experience illustrates (see the box on expanding through acquisitions), however, the company should make these forays outside the periphery carefully.

## A Cautionary Note on Expanding Through Acquisitions: The Channing Bete Setback

Channing Bete enjoyed years of success with its information pamphlets providing advice on a range of topics, from managing diabetes to handling bullies. The company had a broad range of customers that included schools, hospitals, and government agencies. With its acquisition of Developmental Research Programs, Channing Bete set the stage for expanding from its single business of publishing printed information to a consulting operation focused on helping youth steer clear of drug use, delinquency, and pregnancy.

A few years later revenues from the largest division of the acquired business fell 21.4%, and the division

was shut down. A customer commented that Channing Bete's contributions to the business were little more than cosmetic but increased costs substantially. Losses spread to the core business, and the company fired one-fifth of its workforce. Tension mounted within the company as changes were imposed, such as replacing "flextime" with a 9-to-5 workday, even while the company touted its family-friendly culture. One former employee commented that the company got in over its head; it put a great deal of money and energy into the acquisition, neglecting lines of business that had been profitable.

Adapted from Bete Consulting Bet Falls Short: Move Brings Losses, Firings, Retrenchment, by Sunshine Dewitt. *Daily Hampshire Gazette*. July 18, 2005. Vol. 219, No. 271, pp. A1 and D1. Reprinted with the permission of the *Daily Hampshire Gazette*. All Rights Reserved.

Acquisitions can provide inroads into new businesses for a company, but this undertaking requires an underlying logic. While Channing Bete attempted to move from publishing to consulting, Yankee Candle was already in the gift market when it made its acquisition. The central precept is the connection between organizational resources and capabilities and the opportunity domain, as illustrated in Figure 14.2. The growing organization should not consider external opportunities that simply appear attractive unless it has some particular ability to pursue them better than do competitors.

Obviously, a company cannot be driven only by opportunities that leverage current capabilities. Expansion opportunities will stretch these capabilities, and the company may choose to build new ones over time. Think about how this likely happened for Yankee

Candle. The company can experiment or partner to reduce risk. It can adopt an options strategy, spreading exploratory resources across multiple business options with the logic that a few, as yet unknown, will warrant more substantial commitments. The company can also stage its investments, as venture capitalists do, investing a minimal amount in a new business opportunity and tying further investment to the achievement of milestones or the reduction of uncertainty. These practices minimize impact on the organization until more is known.

The one uncertainty entrepreneurs can count on, however, is change. You will need to anticipate, respond to, and even sometimes drive change. Professor Richard Osborne examined 26 privately held firms, all of which experienced initial success. Six of these firms were able to sustain growth beyond the entrepreneurial phase, while the rest saw their growth stalled. Factors such as inadequate resources, poor managerial capabilities of the entrepreneur, and bureaucracy were minor factors in the growth stall, according to this research. The main factor was the inability to perceive and respond to changing opportunities and conditions in their environment.<sup>8</sup>

The growing company therefore needs to be responsive to impending environmental shifts, maintaining its ability to transform its strategy and establish a new source of uniqueness in a changed environment. Crunch Fitness, for example, enjoyed tremendous success in the late 1980s as a startup in the competitive aerobics studio market in New York City by offering innovative aerobics classes, creating a unique brand image, and employing creative marketing techniques. While other aerobic studios fell victim to the decline of the aerobics craze and the emergence of multiactivity health clubs in the mid-1990s, Crunch shifted its strategy by transforming to a full-service facility, while maintaining the uniqueness it was founded on. In December 2001, Bally Total Fitness acquired Crunch Fitness, which had 19 clubs still based in New York City, for \$90 million in cash and stock. Founder Doug Levine stayed as a consultant to Crunch and Bally.<sup>9</sup> Since Bally sold Crunch in 2006, it has grown to 28 state-of-the-art gyms in locations such as Los Angeles, San Francisco, Miami, Chicago, Atlanta, and New York.

As your company grows, its strategic planning efforts will benefit from the input of others inside and outside the company with critical knowledge that can influence the company's direction. Customers, particularly lead users, can provide information about market needs. Specialist employees who are close to markets and technologies can identify future opportunities. The firm can institute a function that gathers and monitors outside information and examines external trends and opportunities.

## Organizational Resources and Capabilities

---

- A bootstrap mentality does not end once the company is launched and successful; it is a lasting orientation toward maximizing value from resource parsimony.

Efforts to finance growth internally go hand in hand with controls. By improving its cash flow, your growing company can better avert a cash crisis and avoid being at the mercy of reluctant or expensive lenders or investors. You may even be able to self-finance some of its future growth, reducing reliance on more expensive sources of funding. The key lesson is this: A bootstrap mentality does not apply just to starting a company; it is a lasting orientation that maximizes returns through resource parsimony.

### Obtaining Financial Resources for the Growing Company

Shortening operating cash cycles and increasing margins are vital for conserving cash. They essentially represent costless financing. The rapidly growing organization, however, will likely need to tap additional sources to finance its growth. Not only will you need financing to

support accelerating sales, but also new policies, such as granting customer payment terms or taking on bulk orders, as well as investments in new products or services, will create a drain on cash.

Despite its success and future prospects, however, a company early in its growth cycle may have only certain options available. For example, a bank would not typically extend credit to a firm with little operating history and fluctuating sales. But as we discussed in Chapter 11, a supplier who is motivated to make a sale and gain a loyal, growing customer might. After a company has been established for a year, a bank might be willing to loan monies against a portion of its receivables, based on the founders' good credit, or with signed guarantees, perhaps requiring loan covenants to maintain certain numbers or ratios.

It's therefore useful to think in terms of stages when financing growth. Sources closed to the firm earlier in its life may open up later. Undertake periodic surveys of the firm's current financing options, and consider any changes that may open up new and cheaper financing sources. In this way, you may recognize new opportunities for refinancing at lower rates.

As we covered in Chapters 9, 10, and 11, sources of financing for early growth include:

- ▢ Investment from key management
- ▢ Founder loans
- ▢ Family and friends
- ▢ Angel investors
- ▢ Venture capital
- ▢ Loans on assets, such as receivables, inventory, and equipment
- ▢ Equipment leases
- ▢ Credit cards

As the company moves into later growth and undertakes expansion efforts, such as selling internationally or launching new products or services, it will need financing from sources more appropriate for higher-risk and longer-term investment. Banks typically will not loan substantial funds, unsecured, for riskier expansion efforts that won't generate returns for quite some time. The firm will likely need to rely on equity sources.

But there are other ways to finance future growth. Look to strategic partners who may provide more favorable financing terms. You may also decide to expand by franchising. Take the risks of these financing modes into consideration: For example, potential customers who compete with your strategic partner may view a relationship with you as too risky because your partner has some control over your firm or has greater access to information that could unfavorably affect the customer. Determine your resource needs by your firm's range of value chain activities. Reducing activities to those considered core to the business and achieving better coordination throughout the chain can reduce your resource requirements and risk, as we detailed in the execution section.

## Intangible Resources and Capabilities

Resources at startup include people, but the focus is on acquiring capital, since the key human resource is the founder or founding team. As the company grows, it accumulates capital, to be sure, and fixed assets. But it also builds intangible assets—resources such as the proprietary knowledge underlying its products and services and the skills of the organization's people. You should have addressed intellectual property considerations early on, before early growth—even before starting the business. But this should also be an ongoing process requiring continual legal advice and subsequent actions to protect technologies, processes, and creative work through trade secrets, copyrights, trademarks, and patents (see Chapter 13).

Starting in early growth, you'll need to develop or hire people with specialized skills. Generalist skills are important at startup: Everyone should be able to pitch in and help with shipping, inventory control, marketing, and so forth. As volume increases and the business becomes more complex, it becomes harder to maintain efficiency and effectiveness with generalist skills. Now you will need to hire specialists in areas such as marketing, inventory management, accounting and finance, and logistics.

An organization also develops capabilities that define what it is good at. These are processes that coordinate and integrate the organization's tangible and intangible resources to create unique sources of value. Just like inventory and equipment, they lead to revenues for a company. Think about businesses or organizations that are familiar to you and about what they do best. McDonald's has efficient processes to deliver fast, low-priced meals. Dell Computer can deliver a custom computer quickly and inexpensively. These transactions translate to capabilities. Now think about whether these organizations would be good at doing something totally different in their industry. Could McDonald's open a high-end restaurant? Could Dell invent its own computer products? Probably not so easily. But there are opportunities to expand into the periphery with their capabilities. For example, McDonald's began to offer salads in an attempt to attract more health-conscious, but also convenience-minded and price-conscious, eaters. In 2008, McDonald's rolled out McCafé, which offers specialty coffees such as cappuccino, lattes and mochas and directly competes with Starbucks.

Your capabilities need to be consistent with your firm's strategic focus. As the opportunity domain section of this chapter reveals, organizations define their strategy both through detecting where the opportunities are for unique advantages in the external competitive environment and through building and leveraging a set of unique capabilities. McDonald's needs to have processes that optimize efficiency and cut costs out of its operations. Dell needs to have capabilities for sourcing and integrating multiple components into customized computer systems that meet the needs of its customers. Think again about the capabilities Stonyfield Farm and Yankee Candle needed as they started and expanded their businesses.

Sustained growth in a changing environment requires constant attention to identifying what the company does best and matching that with the potential for unique value in the competitive environment. Your company may be good at user-friendly innovations. If it does this better than rivals and users are willing to pay a premium for that, then leverage it—ensuring the right people and systems are in place to maximize the value you can gain from this capability.

Meanwhile, you need to monitor the uniqueness and value of your company's capabilities over time. If competitors duplicate this ability or customers shift toward more technically complex solutions, reassess what your company does best. Renew key capabilities periodically. A research study of telecommunications and computer startups found that high levels of innovativeness at founding did not translate to higher growth seven, eight, or nine years out. And simply forming alliances didn't help. But those building internal technology capabilities beyond founding were more likely to achieve a higher level of sustained growth.<sup>10</sup>

## Leadership

---

Figure 14.8 summarizes some key differences between entrepreneurs, managers, and entrepreneurial leaders. The entrepreneurial leader plays a distinct role, critical for sustaining a growing organization.

Entrepreneur	Manager	Entrepreneurial Leader
Locates new ideas	Maintains current operations	Leverages core business while exploring new opportunities
Starts a business	Implements the business	Starts businesses within an ongoing organization
Opportunity driven	Resource driven	Capability and opportunity driven; leverages capabilities and builds new ones to expand opportunity domain
Establishes and implements a vision Builds an organization around the opportunity	Plans, organizes, staffs, controls Enhances efficiency of organization	Establishes a vision and empowers others to carry it out Maintains entrepreneurial ability as organization grows; ensures culture, structure, systems are conducive to entrepreneurship; removes barriers
Leads and inspires others	Supervises and monitors others	Develops and guides entrepreneurial individuals; bridges between individuals and groups with diverse expertise and orientation
Orchestrates change in the competitive environment	Maintains consistency and predictability	Orchestrates change in both the organizational and competitive environment

**Figure 14.8**

#### The entrepreneur vs. manager vs. entrepreneurial leader

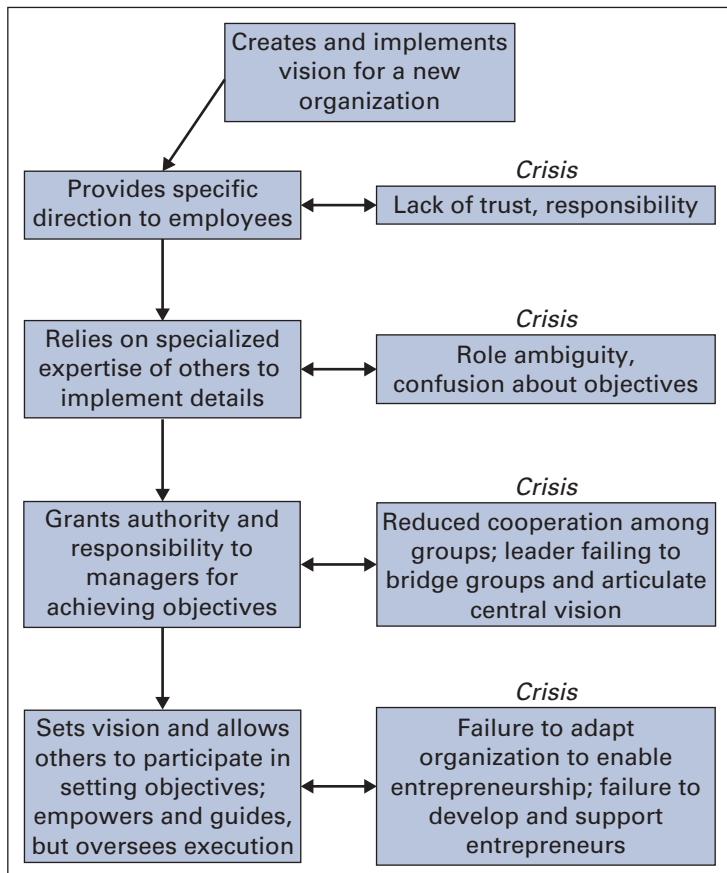
## Starting the Delegation Process

The entrepreneur typically starts out doing everything. She answers phones, ships product, designs advertisements—in essence, performing just about all the activities needed to ensure the organization gets product sold and out the door. But sometime in early growth, the organization will outgrow her ability to keep up. She will have neither the time nor the expertise to deal with the range of challenges a burgeoning business presents. The following are symptoms revealing that the organization has outgrown the entrepreneur's capacity.

- ▣ The volume of decisions multiplies. The entrepreneur is working harder but accomplishing less.
- ▣ Decisions become more difficult to make: more complex and specialized. The entrepreneur increasingly wonders whether she has made the right decision.
- ▣ Everyone is still pitching in and doing everything, but more and more, something critical slips by or mistakes occur.
- ▣ If the entrepreneur is not directly involved in the task, no progress can happen.

Starting in early growth, the entrepreneur must delegate responsibilities to others in the organization. The process of delegation is mapped out in Figure 14.9.

As Figure 14.9 shows, the entrepreneur starts out assigning specific tasks to others. As delegation proceeds, she passes responsibility for achieving objectives to specialists, and then managers, without needing to understand or know about the underlying mechanics. Then the setting of objectives moves to others: experienced managers and teams close to the activity. This process enables the entrepreneur to spend less time on the day-to-day details of everything

**Figure 14.9**

### Transition from entrepreneur to entrepreneurial leader

for executing in specialized areas. Then, in her leadership role, she must develop the ability to inspire people with a range of expertise to organize, communicate, collaborate—and be creative in both running an efficient operation and pursuing entrepreneurial ideas.

## First-Level Management

In early growth, the first set of supervisors can come from within. In some sense, they deserve to be promoted because they have been with the company since its early days and have contributed to its success. They were willing to chip in whenever and wherever needed, they have worked closely with you, the entrepreneur, and they therefore understand your vision and the purpose of the organization. They may also have the respect of their peers.

Assess whether these people have the potential to become managers, however, and whether they can develop their abilities through training and experience. There are a few things you should do: (1) set expectations up front, including setting personal performance goals; (2) provide coaching, mentoring, and training; and (3) periodically assess behavior and performance. But developing managers takes time. If the venture is late forming its management structure and is therefore playing catch-up, if internal and external conditions are

and focus on what she does best, while those most qualified make decisions. At the same time, the entrepreneur needs to oversee execution by providing guidance to managers and using metrics to evaluate progress, but she may need to step in when necessary, particularly when initiatives meet with resistance.

Delegation, while necessary for surviving the entrepreneurial growth phase, is typically difficult for the entrepreneur to accomplish. She may continue to attempt to do everything herself, but she's increasingly unable to do so. Faced with these challenges, the entrepreneur may revert back to what she does best, ignoring tasks she has neither the comfort level nor the capability to deal with. A technical entrepreneur may retreat to developing new products, while ignoring the company's inability to pay bills on time. What's bad is not the entrepreneur doing what she does best—it's having no one pay attention to the company's most critical problems.

Employees may not have a problem with the lack of delegation because they may prefer that the entrepreneur make decisions that they can then carry out. Then they don't need to take responsibility for outcomes. On the other hand, in allowing employees to take responsibility for decisions, the entrepreneur also needs to let them make mistakes and learn from them, circumstances neither the employees nor the entrepreneur may feel comfortable with. The entrepreneur cannot continue to be the "go-to" guy, however, when the volume of decisions mushrooms and she becomes increasingly less qualified to provide direction in many areas.

As the entrepreneur delegates, she will need to put in place managers who can be responsible

rapidly changing, or if the learning gap between current employees and needed management is too wide, then allowing managers to learn on the job is too risky. You will need to hire from the outside.

Hiring from the outside has its own hazards because the workers, particularly those who have been there from the beginning, may not respect these outsiders. First, act as a broker between the employees and management during this transition. This includes advising the new manager and recognizing the cooperation and contributions of employees. The latter can mean acknowledging accomplishments through personal contact or making these visible around the organization. In addition, you (and your managers) can ensure employees have a satisfactory career path by promoting them and moving them into jobs in which they increasingly feel engaged and challenged.

Where possible, employ a mix of externally hired managers and internally promoted managers. Again, broker between these internal and external managers during the transition by setting expectations, advising and coaching, and monitoring behavior. By achieving cooperation among internal and external managers, you're more likely to accomplish broad cooperation across the organization. Also reinforce the authority of your new managers, whether they originate from the inside or the outside. For example, route to them employees who have always gone directly to you.

## From Delegation to Decentralization

What starts as a process of delegation in early growth evolves into a decentralized reporting structure as the organization approaches later growth. As functions become more specialized and the product and service offering broadens, responsibility and decision making are best left to those with the expertise and day-to-day involvement in specific areas.

A decentralized structure can also aid communication flow throughout the organization, which increasingly becomes challenged as the organization grows. While closeness to the entrepreneur in early stages helps everyone understand her vision and the organization's objectives, the complexity and changes a growing organization experiences can create confusion about direction and purpose. Communication and understanding need to happen among the members of the management team, who then ensure consistent information flow throughout their areas.

## Professional Management and Boards

In later growth, the organization needs to ensure it has a leadership team in place: professional managers who share in the organization's strategic planning process and have the capability to balance the need for efficient operations with the benefits of maintaining its entrepreneurial edge. Once the organization has created control systems, a management structure, and a strategic focus, it needs to look toward its future. This job becomes increasingly complex and requires those with experience and track records. Employees who have been promoted into managerial positions are not likely to be qualified for the organization's top levels. Consequently, professional managers typically come from the outside.

With the introduction of a leadership team, the organization itself becomes more professional. This is a major change, even more so than the shift from startup to early growth. Some employees will leave, but others will make this transition. The practices you put in place to integrate managers and employees and insiders and outsiders during early growth will be critical to your introduction of a professional management team.

By carefully selecting members of the board of directors, you can provide alternative perspectives and depth and breadth of experience. The board should include experts from outside the firm who can become key participants in the strategic planning process.

What's important for the firm is a proactive, rather than a reactive, approach to seeking ways to extend and build value. The composition of the company's board of directors will typically undergo changes as the firm emerges from its startup phase. Initially, the board may be informal—occupied by those unlikely to have high-level experience but able to provide support to the entrepreneur in her early endeavors. In early growth, boards typically evolve to include those able to provide operational guidance—for example, retired bankers, investors, and lawyers.

As the company professionalizes, the board should be more useful for strategic purposes, with members having a broader and visionary view of the market and industry—for example, other CEOs, industry experts, and senior executives in related businesses. While many investors require representation on the board of directors, avoid stakeholders who can control the firm for their benefit through board positions, such as suppliers, customers, and the company's lenders.

Supplement the skill and experience of the company's leadership and board of directors with the skill and experience of advisory boards and consultants. For example, you may assemble a group of technology experts from universities, government labs, and corporations to examine industry technological trends, or you may bring in a marketing consulting firm to determine tactics for expanding into overseas markets.

## Coordinating the Driving Forces

The driving forces model shows a link among the three elements: organizational resources and capabilities, opportunity domain, and leadership. And at the core of this is execution: ensuring the most efficient and effective coordination of these activities in a way that enhances the organization's profitability. Capabilities and the opportunity domain interact: Capabilities define where the company can best play, and opportunities extend capabilities. Leadership maps out a particular opportunity domain with its strategic focus and modifies this focus over time, as the industry and market environment changes and the company seeks future growth. Leadership also ensures its capabilities and opportunity domain are in balance. But as the organization grows, a key concern for its leaders is how to manage its people and maintain its entrepreneurial capabilities, as the next section illustrates.

## Leading People; Developing Entrepreneurs

The most common “people mistakes” an entrepreneurial firm makes are preparing people inadequately and maintaining the wrong people as the organization grows. Early in the business's life, organization members do their jobs and pitch in wherever needed. It is more important for the lean team to maintain the flexibility and broad skills needed to accomplish a lot with a little. Early in the game, it is not yet apparent these employees lack the skills needed to scale up the organization. It is difficult to think about training to develop future skills when growth is consuming everyone's time.

As the need for specialists and managers arises, the tasks you expect of some employees may exceed their abilities, and you may need to place them in other roles—or even fire them if necessary. Other employees may be able to rise up to the challenges presented and assume these new functions and responsibilities. The process of adapting to these new roles takes time, however. The company will often need to do some hiring from the outside. You will have to deal with reduced motivation from setbacks or crises at the same time that employees struggle with adapting to new employees and higher-level managers coming from the outside, both of whom lack the shared experiences gained through the organization's history.

The second tier of employees, beyond the founding group, is often said to be more like 9-to-5ers who tend to view working there as a job. But in most companies, there are entrepreneurs in the mix. While we often think that ideas come from anywhere or that anyone can be creative if given a chance, the reality is that some people don't have the stomach for ambiguity and risk. And in many companies, the entrepreneur remains the sole entrepreneurial engine.

Our research on corporate entrepreneurship suggests the organization's leaders need to:

- Identify those exhibiting passion for entrepreneurship
- Develop their ability to work under conditions of high ambiguity
- Ensure they have the inclination and credibility to convince others in the organization to contribute and commit to their projects
- Facilitate, support, and guide their efforts, while also providing them with sufficient freedom and empowerment
- Recognize their contribution to the company's innovation and growth ambitions.
- View failure as a risk associated with entrepreneurship and an opportunity for learning, therefore ensuring that well-intentioned failures are not punished

We suspect these practices are also critical in smaller organizations. One study reports that human resource practices like training and development distinguish high-growth firms from more slowly growing ones.<sup>11</sup>

## CONCLUSION

Starting a business is a risky endeavor, but staying in business can be just as challenging. As the entrepreneurial firm grows beyond founding, it needs to ensure its organization is capable of managing growth. We have outlined a driving forces model that integrates leadership, opportunity domain, and resources and capabilities—and has execution at the core. The entrepreneur should understand and anticipate the challenges associated with building and managing a growing organization at different stages, prepare the organization to execute effectively at each point, and set the stage for a healthy future.

These efforts, however, must not distance the company from its entrepreneurial roots. Growing companies struggle not just with such concerns as having fewer resources than big companies but also with coordinating an increasingly bigger and more complex business. The team members must work to prevent the organization from becoming a bureaucracy that inhibits entrepreneurship. They must continually foster entrepreneurial actions even when this is their biggest challenge. They have to consciously work on preserving and maintaining their entrepreneurial spirit, and if they lose it, they have to rejuvenate the company and rekindle entrepreneurship before it's too late.

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

Reflection Point	Your Thoughts ...
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. What are your personal growth objectives for your venture? Is a “lifestyle” business going to meet your personal goals? Or a high-potential venture?</li><li>2. What will your role within the company be at various stages of growth? Do you want to remain the CEO? Are you more interested in another aspect — say, CTO?</li><li>3. What skills will you need to develop as the company grows to satisfactorily fulfill the roles you aspire to? Which of these skills can you learn on the job? Which skills might need further education or other outside development?</li><li>4. What kind of controls can you establish early in your venture’s life? How will these help you manage cash and other key components of your business?</li><li>5. Which aspects of your business should you keep in-house and which should you outsource? How do you protect your competitive advantage?</li><li>6. What is your strategic focus for early growth? How do you leverage what you do really well? What are some possible peripheral growth opportunities for later in your venture’s life?</li><li>7. What are your organization’s key resources and capabilities? What should they be in the future? How do you build toward those resources and capabilities?</li><li>8. What is your leadership plan? When and which responsibilities will you delegate? How will you promote people in your organization? When might you need to go outside to hire?</li></ol>	

Identify three companies that have experienced successful, rapid growth in your industry. Study their Websites and search for articles about the companies. Can you discern their strategic focuses early in their growth cycles? What are the core areas that they are leveraging? How do their growth strategies change later in their lives? What are some peripheral markets/customers they are going for? Have they grown by acquisition? How has that worked out?

## WEB EXERCISE

- <sup>1</sup> Zook, C., and Allen, J. *The Facts About Growth*. New York, NY: Bain Company. 1999.
- <sup>2</sup> Quinn, J. Google Founders Have “Grown Up” says CEO Eric Schmidt. Telegraph.co.uk. May 10, 2008. [www.telegraph.co.uk/finance/newsbysector/mediatechnologyandtelecoms/2789659/Google-founders-have-grown-up-says-CEO-Eric-Schmidt.html](http://www.telegraph.co.uk/finance/newsbysector/mediatechnologyandtelecoms/2789659/Google-founders-have-grown-up-says-CEO-Eric-Schmidt.html).
- <sup>3</sup> “Top Digital Camera Makers Worldwide, 2008 and 2011.” Technology Outlook 2009, J.P. Morgan, December 1, 2008, p. 87, from J.P. Morgan and Camera & Imaging Products Association. Market Share Reporter 2009. Online Edition. Gale, 2009.
- <sup>4</sup> Additional resources on growth stages can be found in the following references:
  - ◻ Adizes, Ichak. *Managing Corporate Lifecycles*. Paramus, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1999.
  - ◻ Churchill, Neil C. The Six Key Phases of Company Growth. In S. Birley and D. Muzyka (Eds.), *Mastering Enterprise*. London, England: Pitman Publishing. 1997.
  - ◻ Flamholtz, Eric G., and Randle, Yvonne. *Growing Pains: Transitioning from an Entrepreneurship to a Professionally Managed Firm*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass. 2000.
- <sup>5</sup> Greiner, Larry E. Evolution and Revolution as Organizations Grow. *Harvard Business Review*, 76(3): 55–63. 1998.
- <sup>6</sup> Harper, Stephen C. *The McGraw-Hill Guide to Managing Growth in Your Emerging Business*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill. 1995.
- <sup>7</sup> Kolen, Joel, and Jaffe, Susan Biddle. Knowing When to Take a Breather: Controlling Company Growth. *Nation’s Business*, 83(11): 6. November 1995.
- <sup>8</sup> Dell Computer Corporation Website. April 2003.
- <sup>9</sup> Paratek is a disguised name.
- <sup>10</sup> Osborne, Richard L. Second Phase Entrepreneurship: Breaking Through the Growth Wall. *Business Horizons*, 37(1): 80–86. 1994.
- <sup>11</sup> Bally Acquires Crunch Fitness. *Fitness Business Pro*. December, 2001 [http://fitnessbusinesspro.com/mag/fitness\\_bally\\_acquires\\_crunch](http://fitnessbusinesspro.com/mag/fitness_bally_acquires_crunch).

## NOTES

**CASE****Lazybones**

Sitting in his Cambridge townhouse, Dan Hermann mulled over the latest performance report for his company, Lazybones, a laundry delivery service for college students. The unit<sup>1</sup> in Boulder, Colorado, was performing well, and he could see the positive results of the company's hiring and training initiatives. The Boston, Massachusetts, store was bringing in decent revenues, but it had just lost its manager. Over the coming weeks, Dan would need to be onsite quite a bit to work with new staff. Meanwhile, the Storrs, Connecticut, location (Lazybones' newest unit) was well below expectations. So in addition to overseeing four other stores and giving extra attention in Boston, Dan needed to spend time in Storrs assessing why that site couldn't get off the ground.

On the surface, the Lazybones store operations were straightforward: collect dirty laundry from college students, clean it, and then deliver it back to their dorm or apartment in less than 24 hours. The process, fine-tuned at their Syracuse, New York, and Madison, Wisconsin, flagship locations, worked flawlessly. Dan and his co-founder, Reg Mathelier, could monitor each unit remotely via webcam. They also used a barcode tracking system to feed a comprehensive reporting system for each store: the daily dashboard performance monitor. In fact, Dan lived in Boston and Reg lived in Chicago, far from most of the operating units. Yet as the company grew, the workload and processes were becoming more complicated. Dan was rethinking his growth objectives:

*I hope I didn't mess up a good thing. I'm making less money, working twice as many hours, and I'm rapidly approaching 40 years old. The hours I put in now have more meaning to me. I've got more at stake today than I had when we were a startup. How should I evaluate that?*

Dan's business, prior to adding the new locations, generated a consistent flow of cash and allowed him and Reg to earn a nice living. The business had evolved to the point where it did not require much time or effort to maintain a return. It had become an annuity of sorts, and Dan was free to pursue additional projects, like earning his MBA at Babson College. Dan faced the dilemma that many successful lifestyle entrepreneurs face: Should he keep the business as it is, or should he grow it? Perhaps it was the excitement of his classes at Babson, but Dan felt the itch to grow the Lazybones franchise and the two stores in Boston and Boulder were steps in that direction. Unfortunately, it was proving to be more work than Dan had expected.

**Take It to the Cleaners**

It was May of 1993, and like many other recent college grads, Dan Hermann and Reg Mathelier needed jobs. But neither saw himself in a corporate position. They both had an urge to start their own company; they just needed an idea. The inspiration came from an unlikely place . . . their own personal negligence. As stereotypical undergraduates, Reg and Dan were not too diligent with cleanliness. A close friend took note and offered to do their laundry in exchange for a small fee. The two friends started to realize that, if they had bemoaned doing their laundry, so, too, would many of the thousands of undergraduate students at their alma mater, the University of Wisconsin at Madison.

This case was prepared by Sara Gragnolati under the direction of Professor Andrew Zacharakis.

<sup>1</sup>A unit, also called a store, is where Lazybones executes all of its laundry activities.

The barriers to entry in laundry service were low. With a loan of \$12,000 from friends and family, the two newly minted graduates traded in their laid-back academic lifestyle for the sweat and tears needed to launch Lazybones, a laundry delivery service targeted at college students. Their strategy was simple: Appeal to the parents of incoming and returning students and offer a fee-based subscription program. Each subscription covered the weekly pick-up and drop-off of a prepaid amount of laundry. Any overage was billed by the pound.

Dan explained:

*The laundry is picked up, separated into lights and darks, washed with top-quality detergent and softeners, dried, meticulously folded, packaged in brown paper, and delivered back to the student within 24 hours of pick-up. Parents loved the idea. Now their kids, even if they were hundreds of miles from home, would have clean clothes when they went out in public and, God forbid, be wearing clean underwear if they should be rushed to the emergency room following an accident. Parents willingly prepaid for the semester to bring a little bit of "mom" to college with the kid.*

Although they had a rudimentary business plan—Dan laughs when he thinks about how rough and incomplete it was—they mostly learned the business on the job. They started with three home-grade washers and dryers and went out and solicited their first customers. They quickly realized that their service speed was too slow and their prices too low. What they lacked in business experience the two compensated for with diligence. They were literally willing to do whatever it took to get Lazybones off of the ground.

*When we first started, we were working day and night, seven days a week. Reg and I knew that our service was going to be based on our quality. We would rewash clothes or hand scrub stains if needed.*

The first year was a struggle for survival. Dan and Reg worked around the clock, and they were constantly on the verge of going out of business. They often used credit cards to finance the business over the first few years, especially during the summer, when the business basically came to a halt as students returned home. Fortunately, Dan and Reg found a complementary summer business to ease the cash-flow famine. While school was out of session, Lazybones stored student possessions (TVs, furniture, etc.) that the students did not want to lug home and back. Three years passed before either founder took home any money. But by year five, they were turning a profit. The whole process was an exercise in logistics, with a steep learning curve.

*We were constantly operating about 30% to 40% over what our actual logical capacity to do laundry was, given our facility, equipment, and staff. Yet we still weren't making money. But we were learning fast and having fun with the challenge of it. The demand for our service exceeded our ability to deliver, and we viewed this as an indicator that, if we hung in there and made adjustments, we would be onto something.*

Six years into the business, Reg and Dan decided it was time to expand. After a friend conducted some market research, they identified Syracuse University as an ideal fit; the school charged a high tuition and possessed a large student base with a more-than-adequate amount of disposable income. Dan moved to Syracuse to oversee the opening. They soon received an endorsement from the school, which set up a direct pipeline to acquiring customers. Within a year and a half, the new location was breaking even.



Courtesy Dan Hermann

**The Syracuse,  
New York, unit.**

Once a location hit profitability, the unit economics became attractive (see Exhibit 14.1 for the Unit Profit and Loss Statement). Customers loved the service, and many parents had approached Dan and Reg about possibly franchising Lazybones to other locations. Dan reflected:

*Expanding campus to campus meant we would not be able to add a lot of locations in close proximity to one another. Hiring good managers became even more important, as they would potentially need to operate [in] states away from our corporate office location in Massachusetts. Turnover was even more of a stress and an expense. I started to view franchising as the way to go.*

## The Industry

In 2009, the non-coin-operated laundry industry represented \$9.6 billion of business, with the services sector occupying 21.5% of the total market.<sup>2</sup> Within the services arena, two segments exist: commercial customers, including hotels and hospitals, and noncommercial customers, such as the college-student base that Lazybones targets. This put Lazybones' direct market size at \$1.0 billion.

The industry, in 2009, was highly fragmented and mature and had reached a sales plateau, with revenues declining by 2.1% from the previous year.<sup>3</sup> This was a market dominated by owner-operated businesses. Just 6% of the industry was composed of companies with 20 or more employees.<sup>4</sup> And from that portion, 5.4% of the market share went to the largest competitors: National Drycleaning Inc.,<sup>5</sup> Dry Clean USA, and Hangers America<sup>6</sup> franchises. Because of its narrow customer segment, though, Lazybones did not compete directly with these three companies.

While sales for the overall market waned, the services segment exhibited increases due to the growing tourism, hospitality, and retail fashion trades.

On the college campuses, Lazybones saw very little competition. Most of its competitors operated at only one school or city—mom-and-pop type players. There were few companies that serviced multiple schools. The most comparable competition, University Laundry in Texas and Soapy Joe's out of Maryland, did not have facilities in close proximity to any current Lazybones location. And while some colleges owned their own internal laundry service for students, enough institutions of higher learning did not offer a comparable service to provide significant competition for Lazybones.

## Absentee Owner

*We grew very quickly in Syracuse, but when we made the transition from me being on hand to me being an absentee owner, we saw many challenges. All of a sudden we realized that we were the glue that held everything together and kept the quality at its highest level. We had to implement systems to sustain the business, or we would be forever tied to the day-to-day.*

<sup>2</sup>IBISWorld. *IBISWorld Industry Report: Non Coin-Operated Laundromats and Dry Cleaners in the US*. August 2009.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid.

<sup>5</sup>Parent company: DCI Management Group Ltd.

<sup>6</sup>Parent company: Cool Clean Technologies.

## EXHIBIT 14.1

## Model Store 5-Year Income Statement

Month	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Semester	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Semester
Laundry Revenue	\$—	\$2,907	\$6,056	\$7,994	\$6,056	\$1,211	\$24,225	\$36,338	\$4,845	\$2,423	\$2,423	\$2,423	\$—	\$48,450
Storage Revenue	\$—	\$—	\$—	\$—	\$—	\$5,281	\$5,281	\$—	\$—	\$—	\$1,320	\$5,281	\$6,601	\$13,202
Other Revenue							\$—							\$—
Total Revenue	\$—	\$2,907	\$6,056	\$7,994	\$6,056	\$6,492	\$29,506	\$36,338	\$4,845	\$2,423	\$3,743	\$7,703	\$6,601	\$61,652
Cost of Goods Sold	\$—	\$517	\$1,593	\$3,014	\$4,090	\$4,306	\$13,519	\$3,819	\$4,329	\$4,583	\$4,838	\$5,093	\$5,093	\$27,754
Gross Profit	\$—	\$2,390	\$4,463	\$4,980	\$1,966	\$2,187	\$15,986	\$32,518	\$516	\$(2,161)	\$(1,095)	\$2,611	\$1,508	\$33,898
Gross Profit %							54%							55%
Selling, General & Administrative	\$14,526	\$14,526	\$12,776	\$11,026	\$11,026	\$11,776	\$75,659	\$11,776	\$11,776	\$11,776	\$13,526	\$15,276	\$14,526	\$78,659
EBITDA	\$(14,526)	\$(12,136)	\$(8,313)	\$(6,046)	\$(9,060)	\$(9,590)	\$(59,672)	\$20,742	\$(11,260)	\$(13,937)	\$(14,622)	\$(12,666)	\$(13,018)	\$(44,761)
Interest Expense	\$585	\$580	\$575	\$570	\$565	\$559	\$3,434	\$554	\$549	\$544	\$538	\$533	\$528	\$3,246
Net Ordinary Income	\$(15,111)	\$(12,716)	\$(8,888)	\$(6,616)	\$(9,625)	\$(10,149)	\$(63,106)	\$20,187	\$(11,809)	\$(14,481)	\$(15,160)	\$(13,199)	\$(13,546)	\$(48,007)
Net Profit Margin	—437%	—147%	—83%	—159%	—156%	—214%	56%	—244%	—598%	—405%	—171%	—205%	—78%	

Year	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Laundry Revenue	\$72,675	\$169,575	\$290,700	\$387,600	\$484,500
Storage Revenue	\$18,483	\$25,084	\$46,207	\$72,611	\$99,015
Other Revenue	\$—	\$—			
Total Revenue	\$91,158	\$194,659	\$336,907	\$460,211	\$583,515
Cost of Goods Sold	\$41,274	\$91,416	\$158,218	\$216,124	\$274,030
Gross Profit	\$49,884	\$103,243	\$178,689	\$244,087	\$309,485
Gross Profit%	55%		53%	53%	53%
Selling, General & Administrative	\$154,317	\$137,191	\$142,423	\$147,716	\$153,131
EBITDA	\$(104,433)	\$(33,947)	\$36,265	\$96,371	\$156,354
Interest Expense	\$6,680	\$5,894	\$5,034	\$4,094	\$3,065
Net Ordinary Income	\$(111,113)	\$(39,841)	\$31,231	\$92,277	\$153,289
Net Profit Margin	—122%	—20%	9%	20%	26%

For the first three years, the two founders were tirelessly at work improving the business and evaluating their progress. Efficiency was a priority. Growing the business beyond its existing locations was far from their minds. They focused solely on developing the quality that was needed to sustain Lazybones. Eventually, Dan and Reg were able to get the business to the point where it required only 25 hours per week from each of them. At this stage, Lazybones was teetering between a lifestyle business and a growing business. With time on his hands, Dan decided he needed to figure out how to expand the company.

In September 2003, Dan started in the part-time, evening MBA program at Babson College. Through his coursework, Dan's entrepreneurial spirit was sparked again. He started to realize the potential for growth in his business. Dan recalled his first conversation with Reg about growing:

*Reg, now a family man, wasn't necessarily open to the stress that would come along with growing Lazybones. Nonetheless, he was on board. He would have been fine with keeping it a lifestyle business. But he could see my vision. His practicality balanced me, and we both knew we had to have a plan if it was going to work.*

Although Dan and Reg wanted to increase revenues and profits at their existing locations, they recognized that real company growth could be fueled only by campus-to-campus expansion.

Now living in the Boston area, Dan decided to oversee the opening of a local outlet in August 2008. This new facility would service Boston-area universities, such as Boston University and Babson College. In addition, Dan and Reg decided that it was time to take a risk and test the company's potential to grow. Through careful research, they decided to also open a store in Boulder to service the University of Colorado. Dan pointed out:

*We needed to push our systems to see how far they could go. Could we really succeed with Lazybones in any location in the United States? It was a gamble, for sure, but we had to know [to what] extent we could take this business. If we couldn't succeed in Boulder, we would have to restrategize our growth plans.*

In regard to Boulder, Dan and Reg decided to hedge their bets by relocating their seasoned Wisconsin manager to run the new store. He had been very successful at handling the Madison location and had proven that he was trustworthy. Dan and Reg needed to know that the manager for this new store, so far away from where they were located, could be relied on.

During the first year, laundry sales in Boulder were much slower than projected. Dan and Reg came to realize that they had sent an operations specialist into a startup environment. Also, the manager did not know the town or the University. Lastly, they really needed someone who knew how to sell. Fortunately, revenues from the summer storage rentals came in higher than expected and helped to give the location a financial boost for the close of its first year. Despite the bump in revenue, Dan and Reg knew that they had to make a change if this store was going to succeed. They made the extremely difficult decision to replace their experienced manager, who had been a loyal employee of the company for many years, with someone new.

The problematic management situation in Boulder, in addition to simultaneous manager recruitment activities in three other locations, was the impetus for designing a structured training program. This was a step in the right direction: Lazybones needed more structure and metrics.

## Ironing Out the Details

Just about a year prior to the Boston and Boulder openings, Dan met Joel Pedlikin during an MBA evening course at Babson. They developed a friendship, but it was not until they learned about franchising, through a finance course, that Joel's interest in joining the company peaked. During their Entrepreneurship class in the fall of 2008, Dan and Joel solidified their goal to grow Lazybones, which was now in its 15th year of operation. With Reg's full support, Dan and Joel thoroughly explored franchising and the role it could play in growing Lazybones. The possibility of expanding the business to the point at which they could sell it intrigued them. The pair worked on a business plan during their Entrepreneurship class to investigate the feasibility of a franchising growth plan.

Dan and Joel identified a few areas of the business that needed to be improved in order to better position the company for growth, franchise development, and eventual acquisition. Following a typical franchising growth strategy, Dan and Joel planned on opening several more company stores. They wanted to prove that the process could be replicated and to iron out the unit management and monitoring details. Once they had 7 to 10 company stores, the management team would start franchising Lazybones.

By May 2009, Joel had become a partner and full-time member of the Lazybones team. It was time to put their diligent research and planning into motion. The first step of the plan was to showcase the successful new company stores. Dan and Joel started by revamping their staffing strategy. Summer 2009 was the first year that the company implemented a hiring strategy. To successfully manage multiple locations, they needed the right people supervising company-owned stores. They realized they had to be thorough. Joel describes the transition:

*Our locations were first run by inexperienced managers, who had little more than a high school education. After 16 years, this method had worked for the status quo. To grow, we needed to have different qualifications and the benefits in place to attract the right applicants. So this past year, we put a lot of time and resources into this area.*

The new plan included writing formal job descriptions and developing an interview process to screen potential employees. The company would hire only recent alumni of a location's target school for the role of manager. The rationale for this requirement was that an alumnus would understand the market and have potential contacts with university administrators, granting him, or her, a better chance to receive a university endorsement. Also, college graduates were culturally better suited to market and sell the Lazybones services to the company's target customers. Dan and Joel implemented incentives for the manager to grow the business locally. To minimize the potential for missteps, every candidate would go through both phone and in-person interviews, and at least two executives would thoroughly interview the best managerial candidates.

Eventually, Dan and Joel realized that, although they had been tracking metrics, it did little good unless the store managers had direct access to the same data. Lazybones implemented the Dashboard, which allowed both the executive team and the managers to view performance comparisons, work efficiencies, payrolls, and sales statistics on a daily basis (see Exhibit 14.2).



Courtesy Dan Hermann



The University of Connecticut shop, in Storrs, Connecticut, was opened in August of 2009. That same month they hired new managers for Boulder and Boston based on the new hiring priorities that Dan and Joel had created.

## Franchising

Once Dan and Joel proved that they could replicate Lazybones' business model, both managers became certain of the company's future growth through franchising. The primary benefit of

this mode of growth is that the franchisees finance each new location, thereby minimizing the need for Lazybones to raise outside capital from investors or banks. In addition, the franchisee would be each new store's manager. Therefore, the head of each new location would have a strong financial incentive to grow the business, which would contribute positively to both the franchisee's and Lazybones' bottom line.

Between 2003 and 2008, U.S. franchise units, across all industries, grew over 4.5%, compounded annually.<sup>7</sup> This growth totals about 16,000 new units across approximately 3,000 franchised brands.<sup>8</sup> However, access to funding curbed the growth rate significantly, starting in the third quarter of 2008.

Franchising companies make money through three streams: an initial franchise fee, royalty rates, and advertising contributions. Initial franchise fees typically run from \$10,000 to \$100,000, with personal service franchises averaging \$22,150.<sup>9</sup> This fee covers only the right to use the company name, plus training and manuals. The franchisee is responsible for property, equipment, inventory, and staffing. The royalty income is earned either monthly or quarterly and represents a fixed percentage of the franchisee's revenue. The franchisee also pays a fixed ratio, based on revenues, toward any nationwide advertising campaign run by the franchisor.

Dan and Joel identified the benefits to franchising:

*It's [a] faster method for growth and can spread our name nationally. This rapid growth will position us to be an attractive acquisition in the future.*

Dan and Joel planned on setting the franchise fee at \$35,000. This price was higher than the service industry mean, but the owners believed they could justify the premium with above-average benefits, such as high unit revenues and profits, a proven business model, and location exclusivity.

Lazybones would also receive monthly royalties of 7% on revenue. Again, this was higher than the service industry norm, which was 5.5%. Joel said:

*We are confident that our franchisees will make larger net margins with Lazybones than with most franchises. For instance, dry cleaners and laundromats average net margins between 3% and 6%, while Lazybones has historically achieved 15% and 20%. Asking for a 1.5% higher contribution in exchange for a three to five times improvement in net margins is a very fair exchange.*

Franchisees will also pay 1% of their monthly revenue to Lazybones' national advertising fund. Corporate executives along with three franchisee representatives will manage the accounts.

Dan and Joel predicted that the company would be ready to franchise once it reached 7 to 10 locations, under the condition that a majority of sites made a profit and none operated at a loss. But what challenges would they face in the transition? How could they maintain brand consistency, especially when it comes to service quality? When so much of the business depends upon the skills of the manager, how would Dan and Joel help to ensure the managing franchisees' success?

<sup>7</sup>Johnson, Darrell M. The State of Franchising. *Franchising World*. [need volume]: 33–35. January 2009.

<sup>8</sup>Ibid.

<sup>9</sup>Blair, Roger, and LaFontaine, Franchise. *The Economics of Franchising*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press. 2005. pp. 57–71. The 2001 number has been adjusted to 2008 with inflation rates.

## Vision for the Future

As of December 2009, Lazybones had five locations. They were still shy of their 7–10 store goal—a milestone they felt they should reach before adopting the franchise model. It was imperative that Lazybones provide proof of concept to prospective franchisees.

Before they could worry about where to open next, the Lazybones partners had to get each of their current locations to break even, or, even better, to operate at a profit. In Boston, for example, they had 155 laundry customers. The first and only urban location, Boston's operating costs were much higher than those of the other sites due to the driving, labor, and marketing expenses needed for functioning in a major city. To increase revenues at this location, the local manager wanted to start servicing residential customers, as opposed to exclusively students. But this process would require some major adjustments to their core operations, including evening pick-ups and deliveries and an upgraded company Website.

Dan was previously committed to expanding Lazybones and harvesting the value he had created by selling the business. However, growth was proving to be difficult on many levels. Opening additional stores required a tremendous amount of his time, and the new endeavors were draining profits from the successful locations. He worried that perhaps he had talked his partner Reg into going down the wrong road. Maybe they should have stuck with their established successful locations and the nice leisurely life it had been providing for them. That route would mean cutting ties with Joel, who joined the management team only because of the perceived growth potential. Dan had plenty to think about as he prepared for a meeting with Reg and Joel.

## Preparation Questions

1. Should Dan grow Lazybones or maintain it as a lifestyle business?
2. If he chooses growth, is franchising the best way forward?
3. What are the advantages and disadvantages of franchising versus other means of growth?
4. Lay out a five-year plan for growth at both the corporate and the individual location levels (that is, show how you can increase revenue per store).



American ice cream makers Ben Cohen (L) and Jerry Greenfield, founders of the brand, Ben & Jerry's give out ice creams for free in their shop in the centre of Amsterdam, The Netherlands on Monday February 22, 2010.  
(Source: Ade Johnson/AFP/Getty Images, Inc.)

## SOCIAL ENTREPRENEURSHIP: AN OVERVIEW

---

Social entrepreneurs create or apply economically viable models to achieve social or environmental purposes. From 1978, when Bill Drayton started Ashoka to search the world for social entrepreneurs, to the present, we have seen significant growth in both social entrepreneurship education and practice, with hundreds of courses being taught at the university level and the Nobel Prize being awarded to exemplary social entrepreneurs. Drayton originally devised a rigorous screen for identifying and selecting exemplary social entrepreneurs, and by 1981, his organization, Ashoka, would select its first Ashoka Fellow. Today Ashoka has recognized and honored over 2,700 such Fellows in more than 60 countries worldwide.





Chip Somodevilla/Getty Images, Inc.

In this chapter, we will begin with a brief review of how *social entrepreneurship* is different from *entrepreneurship*. The key difference is in the motivation of the social entrepreneur, who undertakes a venture to carry out a social mission, in contrast to the classical entrepreneur, who seeks a profit.<sup>1</sup> An additional difference may concern the *organizational form* of the enterprise. The organizational form of an enterprise is often defined by the legal systems in which the entrepreneur operates. For example, in the United States we distinguish between for-profit and nonprofit entities. Many, though not all, social entrepreneurship ventures are undertaken through nonprofit organizations. The Internal Revenue Service Tax Code specifies that organizations that are considered public charities are owned by the public and, as such, cannot accrue privately owned profits; thus, they are called nonprofit organizations. All others, through which assets may be privately and profitably owned, are considered taxable. One must proactively apply for and receive tax-exempt status; otherwise, the default mode is a taxable entity.

At an elementary level, whatever interpretation of entrepreneurship is chosen and whatever organizational form is selected, if the entrepreneur is principally motivated to achieve *social value* (which may include *environmental value*), the entrepreneur is said to be a *social entrepreneur*. Given the defining importance of social value, we will look at the various organizational forms that make up social entrepreneurship, highlighting examples of both for-profit and nonprofit organizations. Then we will look at the key elements of getting started, including how opportunities can be found, organizations funded, and results evaluated.

---

**Bill Drayton, CEO and Chair of Ashoka, speaks during the "America's Best Leaders: How do they lead? Where are they taking us?" National Issues Briefing hosted by U.S. News and World Report October 25, 2005 at the National Press Club in Washington, DC.**

---

## Definition

---

Turning to social entrepreneurship, we find definitions that refer to *social value*, *social change*, or both. Among the earliest definitions of social entrepreneurship to address both social value and social change is that of Dees,<sup>2</sup> who integrates “the notions of value creation taken from [Jean Baptiste] Say, innovation and change agents from [Joseph] Schumpeter, pursuit of opportunity from [Peter] Drucker, and resourcefulness from [Howard] Stevenson.” His composite definition is as follows: Social entrepreneurs play the role of change agents in the social sector, by:

- Adopting a mission to create and sustain social value (not just private value),
- Recognizing and relentlessly pursuing new opportunities to serve that mission,
- Engaging in a process of continuous innovation, adaptation, and learning,
- Acting boldly without being limited by resources currently in hand, and
- Exhibiting heightened accountability to the constituencies served and for the outcomes created.

The predicate in the opening clause is social change, while social value is one of several qualifiers that also include being relentless, continually learning, acting boldly, and being accountable. The very term *social entrepreneurship* imbues entrepreneurship with *social value* as distinct from the implied *economic value*. All social ventures therefore must have some

	<b>Nonprofit</b>	<b>Hybrid (nonprofit with earned income)</b>	<b>For-profit</b>
<b>Imitative</b>	Charities, churches, schools, sporting clubs, scientific societies, etc.	Museum with ticket sales and a gift shop to generate revenues	Ben & Jerry's
<b>Innovative</b>	New Profit Inc.	Endeavor	Grameen Bank

**Figure 15.1****Social entrepreneurship organizational matrix**

purposeful dimension of social value. However, there is a decisive bias nowadays toward *social change* in the contemporary social entrepreneurial movement. For example, the title of Bornstein's landmark book, *How to Change the World: Social Entrepreneurs and the Power of New Ideas*, emphasizes change as the principal aim of social entrepreneurship. And the leading champion of social entrepreneurship on a global scale, Ashoka, specifically seeks out "changemakers," as will be discussed further below. Creating change and innovation, after all, seem far more exciting than merely replicating a proven model for conveying social value, but there is a substantial role for both types.

The Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM)<sup>3</sup> provides a useful taxonomy for classifying social entrepreneurship ventures described in the *GEM 2009 Report*, a taxonomy that has been slightly modified to fit our purposes:

1. *Imitative* nonprofit organizations
2. *Innovative* nonprofit organizations
3. *Hybrid* nonprofit organizations that promote social value with earned income to support the mission
4. *For-profit* organizations that promote both social value and economic value, with social value given greater attention

Figure 15.1 helps to visualize these options, with examples that will be further described below.

As noted in the *GEM 2009 Report*, there is also a fifth type of organization, a for-profit enterprise that is primarily concerned with generating economic value but that also attends to social value. To be sure, there are definitions of social entrepreneurship that promote economic value or a profit motive; however, the position taken here is that such definitions may be more aligned with *corporate social responsibility*<sup>4</sup> as a matter of good business practice, rather than with social entrepreneurship that emphasizes social value over economic value, or as a way to achieve social change. For example, the practices of social audits,<sup>5</sup> social and environmental certification,<sup>6</sup> double bottom line (which accounts for both financial and social benefits and costs), and triple bottom line (which accounts for financial, social, and environmental benefits and costs) represent techniques that can be employed by for-profit firms to report their socially responsible practices in ways that are not reflected in traditional accounting practice.<sup>7</sup> The commitment to corporate social responsibility has seen a growing number of adherents amongst enlightened corporate leaders such as Anita Roddick, founder of The Body Shop; Yvon Chouinard, founder of Patagonia; and John Mackey of Whole Foods. However, the principal difference between corporate social responsibility and social entrepreneurship lies in the purpose of a social entrepreneur to promote social value or social change in ways or places not otherwise being addressed either by the market or by the government. By contrast, the for-profit enterprise that exhibits social responsibility is typically competing with other corporate players to meet social needs in ways that are socially and environmentally

accountable but that are either secondary to pursuing profits or seen as a means by which to increase profits. This would be the inverse of the fourth category in the above taxonomy. Let's now explore a few specific examples of social entrepreneurship in each of the four types.

## Imitative Nonprofit Organizations

What is a nonprofit organization?<sup>8</sup> There are several forms of nonprofit organizations that qualify for some form of federal tax exemption, inclusively called section 501(c) organizations. Most nonprofit organizations qualify for tax exemption under section 501(c)(3) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code.<sup>9</sup> The organization must serve an *exempt purpose*, defined by the IRS<sup>10</sup> as

*charitable, religious, educational, scientific, literary, testing for public safety, fostering national or international amateur sports competition, and preventing cruelty to children or animals. The term charitable is used in its generally accepted legal sense and includes relief of the poor, the distressed, or the underprivileged; advancement of religion; advancement of education or science; erecting or maintaining public buildings, monuments, or works; lessening the burdens of government; lessening neighborhood tensions; eliminating prejudice and discrimination; defending human and civil rights secured by law; and combating community deterioration and juvenile delinquency.*

Moreover, the IRS requires all nonprofit organizations with revenues exceeding \$25,000 per year to report financial information on the Form 990. The exception is religious organizations, which are not required to file financial information. The public may view Forms 990 without charge at GuideStar,<sup>11</sup> an invaluable source for studying nonprofit organizations. Private foundations file a Form 990-PF, in which they typically also report the organizations they fund and the amounts granted to each. It is instructive to peruse this site to appreciate the range of organizations and missions included.

*Imitative* nonprofits, as all nonprofits, promote social value according to how they qualify for tax-exempt status with the IRS. A review of the types of organizations that qualify for tax-exempt status—e.g., religious, educational, scientific, literary, public safety, amateur sports, and cruelty prevention, not to mention charitable—can bring to mind numerous examples of imitative organizations—churches, schools, scientific research centers, sporting clubs, societies for the prevention of cruelty to children and animals, and so on—that are not innovative in any respect except, for example, their introduction to a new geographic area. The plethora of such imitative and well-known examples makes selecting one example to highlight here unnecessary.

Imitative nonprofits may also be productively examined for opportunities for innovation. Let's look at public schools. The tradition of funding public schools based on community property values has created vast disparities in resources and student achievement between schools in high-income communities and those in low-income areas. Some cash-starved schools in low-income areas have even taken to renting out their space to generate additional income to support their educational missions. In particularly poor areas, where the local population is close to or at subsistence level, unmoved or unable to engage in such civic duties as the school board, school systems have effectively crumbled in failure. This failure of the imitative model of public schools has created the innovative opportunity for so-called *charter schools* to emerge, drawing largely on entrepreneurial business practices applied to education. Charter schools, as an innovation, principally operate as autonomously managed public schools directly accountable for the performance of their students. A particularly notable instance of charter schools filling the void of failed public schools is found in post-Katrina New Orleans, where in 2006 social entrepreneur Sarah Usdin founded New Schools for New Orleans. As is often the case with social entrepreneurs who take action before working out a formal business plan, Usdin, a former Teach for America volunteer, responded to the devastation from the storm by applying her prior knowledge of charter schools and envisioning how this innovation could rescue schools in New Orleans: “I didn’t intend to start an organization,” she said. “It

just happened.”<sup>12</sup> Usdin has imitated and applied an innovative model of charter schools born from the failure of a prior imitative model of public schools.

As we move on to innovative organizations, many such enterprises will likely inspire other social entrepreneurs to imitate or adapt such innovations. For example, the inspiration to found Kiva, the Web-based organization that allows virtually anyone to lend small amounts of money to small-scale, generally impoverished entrepreneurs, grew directly from founder Jackley Flannery’s fascination with Muhammad Yunus’ microfinance model.<sup>13</sup> Yunus similarly inspired eBay founder Pierre Omidyar to enter the microfinance space, though Omidyar espouses a profit-driven approach, whereas Yunus eschews profit maximization as the driving motivation, insisting against “making money off poor people.”<sup>14</sup>

## Innovative Nonprofit Organizations

Organizations in this category must qualify for tax-exempt status with the IRS and promote social value in an innovative way. The difference in this category from the previous one is the emphasis on *innovation*, or the element of *change*, that characterizes the enterprise. The example highlighted here is New Profit Inc.<sup>15</sup> Disillusioned by the tendency of philanthropic foundations to abandon their investments before they could achieve financial self-sufficiency, Vanessa Kirsch founded New Profit in 1998 to create an innovative approach to providing both funding and expertise to leverage the effects and benefits of other social ventures: “What was needed was a new space in society—a *new profit sector*—that combined the best of the for-profit and nonprofit sectors.”<sup>16</sup> By the time Kirsch founded New Profit, she had already started two other nonprofit organizations: Public Allies, an innovative nonprofit that linked students seeking public service with community agencies, and Women’s Information Network, which provided support and political access to young women. The impulse to start New Profit was a direct outgrowth of her frustration with philanthropic foundations that provide only enough funding to prove a venture’s viability and then withdraw further funding. Inspired by a *Harvard Business Review* article<sup>17</sup> outlining the principles of a concept called “venture philanthropy,” she decided to launch New Profit as a composite of a philanthropic funding source that would invest in grantees to help them build their capabilities for long-term sustainability, a system of measuring a grantee’s ongoing success in going to scale, and a source of world-class technical assistance for grantees, provided by the consulting company Monitor Group.<sup>18</sup> New Profit itself would raise the philanthropic funds, negotiate in-kind donations of consulting time from Monitor Group, engage members from the Harvard Business School community to create an assessment system to track the success of its portfolio grantees, and select the best candidates among worthy grantees to support with its new venture philanthropy model. By 2008, New Profit’s revenues had exceeded \$18 million, and by 2009, it had raised more than \$100 million in investor funding, had invested in 25 organizations, and had 17 active portfolio commitments. Organizations no longer in the portfolio are either well-positioned for sustainability, or, have left the portfolio due to change of fit with New Profit investment criteria.

By studying the example of New Profit, we not only appreciate the value of innovation in the social entrepreneurship space but also learn about many other social ventures that have been and are being supported by New Profit, each of which is worthy of examination as a social venture in its own right.



Photo by Mark Wilson Images provided courtesy of New Profit, Inc.  
Reproduced with permission

---

**Vanessa Kirsch to start  
New Profit.**

---

## Hybrids



Peter DeJong/CAP/Wide World Photos

Hybrid organizations are nonprofit with an earned income component dedicated to achieving social value at a level significantly higher (say, two-thirds or more, by GEM standards) than economic value. Endeavor, an enterprise started by Linda Rottenberg to create a culture of venture capital in promising developing countries, is an excellent example of a nonprofit hybrid organization. As venture capital pioneer Peter Brooke, an advisor to Rottenberg, recounts,<sup>19</sup> venture capital as we know it today emerged in the latter part of the 20th century. Although General Georges Doriot, who founded American Research & Development Corporation in 1946, is credited with creating the venture capital model, Brooke, perhaps more than anyone else, seized the model, modified it to accommodate contemporary opportunities, and turned it into an institution, not only in the United States, but also, with some necessary cultural modifications as well, in many other countries around the world. His inspiration was how the Marshall Plan had catalyzed the rebuilding of the economic powerhouses in Europe after World War II, and he wanted to apply a model of financing that would similarly ignite economic development elsewhere throughout the world.

Some countries, largely in Latin America, Africa, and the Middle East, have cultures that favor family-owned firms and lack an environment conducive to funding individual entrepreneurs building ventures that would eventually launch an initial public offering of their stock. This creates a significant constraint on the economy's ability to promote entrepreneurship and create jobs. This opportunity was not lost on

Rottenberg, who founded Endeavor in 1997, when she was 29 years old.

Through Endeavor—and with Brooke's personal support and encouragement—Rottenberg has in turn successfully imitated and modified the venture capital model in several countries that historically lacked mezzanine funding for proven, for-profit entrepreneurial ventures. Working through offices in target countries such as Brazil, Rottenberg's staff first seeks out successful business executives who would be willing to provide venture funding to qualified companies. They then solicit business plans from companies whose funding needs are within the range of available funds. These are carefully screened, in part to identify prospects that will lead to significant job growth in the local economy. Once companies have been selected for investment, Endeavor provides mentoring and training to help strengthen their business capacity. The earned income component is that successful entrepreneurs donate a percentage of their returns to Endeavor to sustain the model. While the economic benefits to this model are clearly in the interest of governments concerned with creating new jobs, Rottenberg has turned down offers of government funding in the absence of private funding, as the culture she wants to create is one that is self-sustaining in the private sector, not a government program.

Although some thought Linda Rottenberg was "crazy" to pursue her venture as a nonprofit organization rather than as a bona fide venture capital firm, she had good reason to do so. Endeavor attempts to create more-favorable conditions to support entrepreneurship in emerging markets, specifically in developing countries that do not have a tradition of venture capital to support even proven concepts seeking mezzanine capital (financing beyond the startup phase but before the initial public offering). In 1999, Rottenberg hired a Harvard MBA chief financial officer to advise her on funding strategies to achieve financial sustainability. The MBA recommended that Endeavor charge fees for service, create a seed capital fund, or launch a for-profit sister company to generate revenues. Rottenberg dismissed all of these suggestions,

noting that such options “would have undermined our neutral and trustworthy role in the local economy.”<sup>20</sup> Instead, she decided to identify and work with in-country benefactors as a nonprofit organization, signaling that both profit and competition were not considerations in establishing the trust she needed to ensure their collaboration. Endeavor’s revenues grew to \$3.7 million in 2007. Over the prior decade, Endeavor entrepreneurs have raised over \$871 million in equity financing, taken in nearly \$1.4 billion in revenues, and created over 38,000 high-value jobs in 10 countries outside the United States. The fact that the nonprofit model of organization legally prevents the private ownership of assets established the basis of trust necessary for Rottenberg to convince businesspeople to invest in her venture capital model without the fear that she might end up competing with them. This collaboration was crucial for her success.

## For-Profits

For-profit enterprises generate earned income, are not designated as tax-exempt entities, and yet strive to achieve social value in ways that are at least equal to economic value. Ben and Jerry’s, founded in 1977, is an example of an imitative for-profit—another player in the multi-billion-dollar ice cream market, but with a principled commitment to creating social value through its policy from the outset of limiting the salary compensation ratio between the lowest- and highest-paid employees of 1:5 in order to lower disparities in wealth distribution. The company expressed social value in many other ways as well, such as through public education, support for indigenous suppliers, extensive employee benefits, charitable donations, and social audits. Early in its evolution as a company, the board assigned equal importance to the firm’s economic and social objectives. As Ben said in 1988, “It’s really interesting what you can do with business when you don’t care about making a lot of money.”<sup>21</sup>

Exemplifying the innovative for-profit business, we turn to the *social business* defined by Muhammad Yunus as a for-profit business that, beyond returning investment capital to its founders, plows profits back into building the business to generate social value. His Grameen Bank serves as a prime example of a for-profit social business. Grameen provides loans in micro amounts to poor people who have no assets to serve as the collateral that would be required to secure a loan provided by a commercial bank. The earnest commitment of borrowers to repay the loans has proven highly reliable, with repayment rates exceeding 97%.

Yunus describes his new conception of the for-profit business model designed to serve social needs as follows:

*If we describe our existing companies as profit-maximizing businesses (PMBs), the new kind of business might be called the social business. Entrepreneurs will set up social businesses not to achieve limited personal gain but to pursue specific social goals.... A social business differs from a charity or an NGO or a nonprofit group in another important way. Unlike those organizations, but like a traditional PMB, a social business has owners who are entitled to recoup their investments.... Thus, a social business might be defined as a non-loss, non-dividend business. Rather than being passed on to investors, the surplus generated by the social business is reinvested in the business. Ultimately, it is passed on to the target group of beneficiaries in such forms as lower prices, better service, and greater accessibility.<sup>22</sup>*

The Grameen Bank grew out of an academic research experiment. In 1976, Yunus, then an economics professor and head of the Rural Economics Program at the University of Chittagong in Bangladesh, began a research project to examine the feasibility of providing credit to rural poor people who had no collateral beyond their commitment to repay the loan.<sup>23</sup> The objectives of the project, called the Grameen Bank Project (*Grameen* means “rural” or “village” in the local language) were to

- ☐ Extend banking facilities to poor men and women;
- ☐ Eliminate the exploitation of the poor by money lenders;

- Create opportunities for self-employment for the vast multitude of unemployed people in rural Bangladesh;
- Bring the disadvantaged, mostly the women from the poorest households, within the fold of an organizational format that they can understand and manage themselves; and
- Reverse the age-old vicious circle of “low-income, low saving and low investment” into the virtuous circle of “low-income, injection of credit, investment, more income, more savings, more investment, more income.”

The academic project proved a success, and Yunus turned to the government for approval to convert it into a commercial establishment. Thus, the independent Grameen Bank was formed, with 90% of the shares owned by its borrowers and 10% owned by the government. Yunus argues that the type of credit extended by his bank is a human right.<sup>24</sup> In 2006, Yunus and the Grameen Bank received the Nobel Prize for Peace. By the end of 2009, the bank had nearly 8 million borrowers, 97% of which were women located in virtually all the villages throughout Bangladesh.

Other examples of the Grameen social business model are being implemented as “building blocks” within the Grameen Healthcare Trust,<sup>25</sup> a health care delivery network that serves the poor in Bangladesh. Examples of the component ventures under Grameen Healthcare include Grameen Clinics, a network of health clinics, laboratories, and pharmacies; Grameen Eye Hospital, modeled after the successful Aravind eye hospitals in India to provide eye examinations and treat cataracts; Grameen Danone Foods, a joint venture with the French firm Groupe Danone to provide healthy nutrition to the poor; Grameen and Veolia Water, which supplies water to the poorest, who pay only what they can afford; and BASF Grameen Ltd., which provides dietary supplements and mosquito nets.

The appeal of Yunus’ model of the social business is that those who provide financing to establish such businesses can recover their investments, and thus social businesses of this sort are not dependent on the limited sources of capital available to nonprofit organizations. Moreover, the operation of a for-profit social business such as this requires that the enterprise be profitable; in fact, it cannot achieve its social mission without at least breaking even, so resource allocation decisions are aligned with the survival of the enterprise and are reinvested for the benefit of those served rather than being harvested by external investors.

## New Forms of Organizations

---

Classical entrepreneurship typically features a for-profit firm with a shareholder class who owns the assets of the firm and reap or reinvest the profits of its success, and a working class of wage earners, who, in exchange for their labor, receive a salary. The nonprofit organization created through the Tax Code in the United States was a new form of organization meant to serve social purposes through a revised economic arrangement. Just as nonprofit organizations represent a different form of economic organization, so do cooperatives, except that cooperatives, unlike nonprofit organizations, do allow the private retention of earnings—in this case, distributed to the owners of the cooperatives. Furthermore, in terms of adding social value, cooperatives have been shown to create *social capital*: “connections among individuals—social networks and the norms of reciprocity and trustworthiness that arise from them”<sup>26</sup> both within the cooperative and in the surrounding community in ways that increase the quality of life.<sup>27</sup> As Schumpeter has argued, introducing new forms of organization is an entrepreneurial act,<sup>28</sup> and to the extent that cooperatives integrate both economic and social value, as well as contributing to the creation of social capital, we would argue that adopting the cooperative as the organizational form for a venture is itself an act of social entrepreneurship.

What, exactly, is a cooperative? According to the International Cooperative Alliance, a cooperative, “is an autonomous association of persons united voluntarily to meet their

common economic, social, and cultural needs and aspirations through a jointly-owned and democratically-controlled enterprise.” There are many different types of cooperatives, including agricultural, consumer, banking, savings and credit, fishery, forestry, housing, industrial, handicraft, insurance, school, and health care cooperatives. A well-known form of the credit cooperative is the credit union, owned by its depositors. Ocean Spray Cranberries, producers of the well-known juice, is a cranberry grower’s cooperative founded in 1930. Perhaps the most celebrated worker-owned industrial cooperative is Mondragón, located in the Basque region of Spain.<sup>29</sup> Founded in 1956 to produce small appliances, by 2008 the cooperative had become a global conglomerate with multiple business units, employing over 93,000 workers and generating revenues of nearly \$25 billion. Mondragón even established its own university in 1997 to teach cooperative management as a way of achieving social transformation.<sup>30</sup>

Cooperatives are a form of economic organization that expressly integrates social and economic value, and thus, like nonprofit organizations, they are structurally well suited to social entrepreneurship. Moreover, the contribution of cooperatives to creating social capital, especially when they are concentrated in certain areas, such as the Basque region of Spain<sup>31</sup> or the Emilia-Romagna region of Italy,<sup>32</sup> is well known. While most attention to social entrepreneurship has focused on the *individual* social entrepreneur, here we are suggesting that the very selection of a cooperative form of organizing an entrepreneurial venture is itself inherently social. Therefore, cooperatives, as an innovation in business organization, represent an organizational form of social entrepreneurship. In review, social entrepreneurship is found at the intersection of a social purpose and the entrepreneurial approach to serving social needs. At this intersection, the social entrepreneur has options for how to proceed. The general classification of social ventures as nonprofit or for-profit (including cooperatives), innovative or imitative, serves as a useful map to guide both the motivational and the behavioral options for social entrepreneurs. But where do they find their opportunities, and how to they get started?

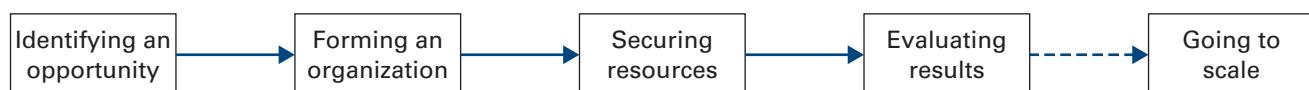
## Getting Started

---

In this section, we will first describe how opportunities are identified and then in turn discuss how to organize a social entrepreneurship venture, where to find funding and other resources, and what to consider when evaluating the results of the venture. Finally, we will discuss some concerns about going to scale. This section will follow the general startup sequence shown in Figure 15.2.

### Identifying an Opportunity

Identifying opportunities may be accidental or deliberate and will be considered in that order. Occasionally, for some social entrepreneurs, the moment of opportunity identification seems to come out of the blue. In 1979, Dan O’Neill, then 24 years old, was watching television reports of thousands of Cambodians fleeing into Thailand to escape the brutal killings by Pol Pot.<sup>33</sup> That was his moment of decision to start Mercy Corps, a nonprofit innovator that is now one of the world’s largest humanitarian aid organizations that responds to natural disasters and civil wars around the world in order to aid victims and rebuild essential services, with \$221 million in revenues in 2007. For Sarah Usdin, founder of New Schools for New Orleans, the



**Figure 15.2**

**Startup sequence**



Courtesy Sarah Newell Usdin

### **Sarah Usdin with New Schools post Katrina New Orleans.**

observation. For example, Rebecca Onie, while a student at Harvard, spent six months walking up and down the halls of a Boston hospital talking with doctors, nurses, physician aides, and staff when she realized that poor people coming in for emergency treatment were suffering from much deeper determinants of health that couldn't be addressed by a prescription for pills. In 1996, she started Project HEALTH, staffed by volunteer college students, to find food, housing, fuel, and other life basics to address the emergency needs accompanying the poor to the emergency room. "Some of these people didn't even have enough food at home to take the prescriptions," recounted Onie in a presentation to a class in social entrepreneurship.<sup>35</sup> Project HEALTH staffs a Family Help Desk in the hospital waiting room so that, when a physician participating in the program writes a prescription for food or housing, student volunteers are waiting to help the patient find these needed resources right away. Project HEALTH now operates 22 Family Help Desks in six cities with about 600 volunteers. Onie, an Ashoka Fellow, has been awarded a MacArthur Fellowship.

In societies where human needs are not being sufficiently addressed by other institutions such as the state, the market, or the church, opportunities for social entrepreneurship are relatively easy to find. Thus, as indicated in the *GEM 2009 Report* cited earlier, countries with less-developed economies appear to encourage social entrepreneurship that attends to more basic needs, "such as basic health care provision, access to water and sanitation or agricultural activities in rural areas."<sup>36</sup> Sometimes it takes a trip or volunteer service stint in an area particularly affected by disparities to see firsthand the opportunities for social entrepreneurship. Even within countries with advanced economies, one may find areas of deprivation. Volunteering for Teach For America, City Year, Americorps, or, at the international level, the Peace Corps is an excellent way to learn about inequities that might inspire an insight into a social venture. Talking with volunteers who have had experiences working in such areas can reveal opportunities.

At the global level, there is no shortage of big opportunities waiting for social entrepreneurs. Perhaps the largest and most serious contemporary threat is from climate change, which will cause massive dislocations in certain regions around the globe as rising ocean levels threaten to sink small island nations and flood vast regions of low-lying Bangladesh, rising temperatures allow infectious diseases to be borne on vectors that can survive warmer climates at higher latitudes, and drought conditions restrict food supplies. Also, the Millennium Development Goals of the United Nations provide an urgent "to do" list for social entrepreneurs, as governments strive to eliminate global poverty by the year 2015.

Identifying opportunities for social entrepreneurs is, perhaps, the easy step; the key is to prepare potential social entrepreneurs with the understanding and skills to pursue such opportunities in economically viable and sustainable ways.

moment of revelation was Hurricane Katrina. Social entrepreneurs see opportunity in times and places where others do not, a characteristic described by George Bernard Shaw's often invoked words: "Some people see things as they are and ask why. I see things as they never were and ask why not."<sup>34</sup>

But while a man-made or natural disaster may inspire some to take action, there is a more deliberative approach to opportunity identification as well. Opportunities can emerge over a period of intensive

Scan authoritative sources of critical needs	Millennium Development Goals
Interview experienced workers in existing social ventures	Contact individual organizations, such as the Peace Corps and Mercy Corps
Volunteer in a public service program	Teach For America, Peace Corps
Determine the optimal organizational form for the venture	Consult a lawyer and accountant
Seek government contracts	<a href="http://www.fedbizzopps.com">www.fedbizzopps.com</a>
Seek government grants	<a href="http://www.grants.gov">www.grants.gov</a>
Seek philanthropic grants	<a href="http://www.foundationcenter.org">www.foundationcenter.org</a>
Seek partnership arrangements with other organizations	Contact the CEOs of affinity organizations
File Form 990 if nonprofit	<a href="http://www.guidestar.org">www.guidestar.org</a>
File tax returns if for-profit	IRS

**Figure 15.3**

#### Checklist of startup considerations

## Forming an Organization

The aspiring social entrepreneur faces familiar options for how to start up a social venture (see Figure 15.3). One of the first considerations is whether the entrepreneur wants to apply or adapt an existing organizational model in a different geographic area or whether he or she has created an innovative approach to meeting a social need. A secondary consideration would be the relative importance of choosing a for-profit versus a tax-exempt model. Because the earlier chapters in this book provide ample guidance on the issues involved in creating a for-profit venture, we will focus here on those issues that specifically pertain to nonprofit organizations.

Launching a for-profit social venture, whether imitative or innovative, is similar to starting any other company; however, there are some concerns that warrant careful consideration with the nonprofit form of organization. For example, if it is crucial to build trust, as was the case for Linda Rottenberg of Endeavor, or to attract financing from philanthropic foundations or others interested in donating funds eligible for a tax deduction, or to engage in activities open only to nonprofit organizations, then the social entrepreneur needs to understand how the company can become designated as a public charity.<sup>37</sup> Fortunately, virtually every applicant is granted tax-exempt status.

Contrary to popular misconceptions, nonprofit organizations that employ sound financial practices can indeed grow to significant size and pay competitive salaries. While the multi-million-dollar salary of the Commissioner of the National Football League is an outlier, it would not be unusual for nonprofit organizations with revenues of \$100 million to pay CEO compensation of \$300,000 to \$400,000 per year and market-level salaries to key employees. Of course, while there are currently some 1.5 million tax-exempt organizations registered with the IRS,<sup>38</sup> relatively few reach this size, and most of these do so not through diversification, but by concentrating on a single type of funding source, such as the U.S. Government.<sup>39</sup>

Most nonprofit organizations deliver services specifically to meet social needs not otherwise met by the commercial market or directly by the government. Indeed, foundations and the government actually depend on such organizations to provide services to those in need. Thus, while a for-profit entrepreneur delivers goods and services to a paying customer, the social entrepreneur may well be delivering services to a nonpaying target group, while being compensated by the government or a philanthropic foundation to do so. Yet as funding available to meet such social needs come under pressure, usually as a result of lower tax policies (making fewer resources available to the government for social purposes) or adverse market conditions (constraining or reducing the investment earnings of foundations), nonprofit organizations are increasingly turning to charging some fees for services or even setting up

a for-profit (and taxable) enterprise to provide additional funding to support achieving the venture's social mission (thus falling into the hybrid model in our taxonomy).

Moreover, the social entrepreneur may well have to compete with other organizations for the opportunity to deliver such services or partner with them in a subcontract arrangement. If foundation funds are sought—and philanthropic foundations provided some \$45.6 billion in grants to nonprofit organizations in 2008<sup>40</sup>—the social entrepreneur will likely first submit a concept paper outlining the idea for a service and then negotiate with a foundation program officer until the foundation's requirements are met. This can be a long process, beginning with a search for foundations that may share an interest with the entrepreneur's vision of a better world. The standard source for information on philanthropic foundations and their funding priorities is The Foundation Center, based in New York.

The government, however, can be a more reliable source of funding, provided the firm can deliver the needed services as part of an established government program that allocates funding to contract for the social services offered. While the U.S. government does not typically deliver most social services directly, its budget of \$3.5 trillion in fiscal year 2010 includes many billions of dollars to create and operate social programs under contract by third-party organizations (increasingly for-profit firms), most of which have won competitive bids to provide such services. Clearly, the size of the government market dwarfs the funds available from foundations, but foundations, sometimes seen as the source of social venture capital, are more willing to fund experimental and innovative approaches to meeting social needs, which, if proven, may then become adopted as part of the government's welfare repertoire.

More often than not, securing government funds is a competitive process by which firms must respond to a posted Request for Proposal (RFP) with a competitive proposal that meets both personnel and funding guidelines and then await an award based on a competitive review of all such proposals. To build a long-term social venture to deliver services supported by the government, the firm must develop a competitively qualified staff of experts in the relevant subject, and as the principal of the social venture, the social entrepreneur should also cultivate a relationship of trust with the midlevel civil servants who are likely dedicated to their careers as public employees and highly qualified experts in their own right. The standard source for contracting opportunities with the federal government is Federal Business Opportunities,<sup>41</sup> while the standard source of federal grant opportunities is Grants.gov.<sup>42</sup>

Nonprofit corporations, like for-profit corporations, are registered at the state level. Adjudication of complaints concerning nonprofit organizations is the concern of the state attorney general. The financial control of a nonprofit organization bears some scrutiny in comparison to its for-profit counterparts. In the first instance, any retained revenues after expenses cannot be distributed to private entities, whether individuals or other corporations (unless they are also certified nonprofit organizations). All assets of the nonprofit organization are publicly owned, and even upon dissolution of the organization, they must be transferred to one or more certified nonprofit organizations.

Second, to the extent that the nonprofit organization must compete for contract or grant work, the organization typically either wins or loses the entire award. Thus, the successful organization must develop and sustain an exceptionally good ability to win consistently in the battle of competitive proposals in order to gain market share in a particular service area. Also, the venture must be prepared in case a winning proposal is contested, even following award of a contract, thus virtually assuring a repeated process of competitive bidding. The cumulative expense of writing proposals and defending them in contested cases, in both time and resources, can be considerable.

The goal of economic sustainability is achieved by increasing the firm's win rate over time, while ensuring that revenues exceed expenditures. How can this be done? Not only must the firm develop and nurture an in-house capacity for writing winning proposals, but also it must cultivate and retain well-qualified subject experts in the relevant domains of skills and knowledge. Moreover, it must work to win the trust of civil servants and program officers. These requirements for expertise and trust cannot be taken for granted but must be

developed and built over time, often a considerable amount of time. This in turn means that the organization must have the resources, beyond those required to execute any particular project, to pay attractive salaries and benefits, to support the necessary research, and to pay for the requisite proposal writing tailored to respond to any particular RFP. These costs, crucial to the survival of the organization, contribute to the organization's overhead costs. In nonprofit organizations with multi-million-dollar revenues, such overhead costs can be in the vicinity of 30% of direct costs.<sup>43</sup> To the extent that some funders, notably philanthropic foundations, are reluctant to pay for needed overhead costs, such funders may actually jeopardize the well-being and sustainability of the very agents they need to achieve their social purposes.

The considerations noted above are among those that make management of a nonprofit organization arguably more complex and demanding than management of a for-profit organization. Still, for those who succeed with a viable and sustainable business model, the rewards can be far more than material. Where, then, does the social entrepreneur turn for funding and other resources?

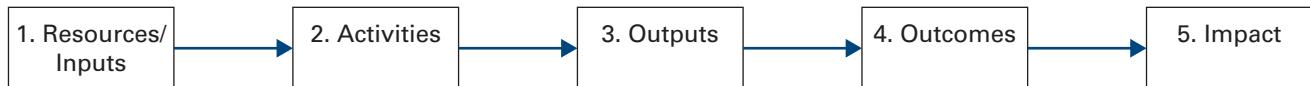
## Securing Resources

The number and variety of sources of funding for social entrepreneurship are growing. Consistent with the social value theme of this chapter, we can expect that each such source is likely to have a different set of preferences and almost surely a different procedure for requesting and evaluating proposals. Thus, it makes sense to pay careful attention to the social values conveyed by each source, reflect on the consistency between such social values and those to be conveyed by the social venture, and take particular note of the recommended procedure for contacting the funder and submitting a proposal.

While each funding source will have its own specifications for proposals, it is increasingly common to expect an explanation of the relevant *theory of change*. The theory of change is an explanation of how applying resources will result in a desired outcome. For simplicity, take the concept of feeding the hungry. One theory of change argues that, if you have access to a certain stock of fish, you can simply give people fish to eat until you run out of stock. A competing theory of change suggests that, if you give your people fishing rods and teach them how to fish, they could eat forever. Yet another approach, from the health- and safety-minded vegan community, calculates the cost-effectiveness of growing legumes, which combines greater occupational safety with an argument that vegetables and grains are nutritionally superior to a high-protein diet of fish. Making one's logic model explicit clarifies the relationship among underlying assumptions, required resources, and ultimate outcomes, thus providing a more informed basis on which to choose among alternatives.

The standard framework to illustrate the relationship among elements of a specific program is called a *logic model*. The logic model shows the progression of stages in a program, from inputs to outputs and outcomes. The basic logic model, as described by the W.K. Kellogg Foundation, is illustrated in Figure 15.4.<sup>44</sup>

Elements 1 and 2 indicate the planned work, while elements 3 through 5 indicate the intended results of the program. The resources and inputs in element 1 would include the human, financial, and supporting requirements necessary to carry out the program. Element 2 activities would describe how and when the resources are to be put to use in the program. The outputs in element 3 would include the specific products (such as curricula, reports, or houses built) and services (for example, training, transportation, or home visits) produced by the program. Outcomes in element 4 would indicate the intangible consequences of the program, such as changes in knowledge, behavior, or skills of the people being served by an educational program or the number of lives saved or injuries prevented in a health program. The Kellogg Foundation indicates that in a program lasting 7 to 10 years, short-term outcomes should be achieved in 1 to 3 years, while longer-term outcomes might take 4 to 6 years. Finally, element 5 refers to the impact caused by the program, which means whatever intended and desired or unintended effect or change results from the program following its conclusion.

**Figure 15.4****Logic model**

To the extent that the outputs, outcomes, and impact can be expressed in measurable terms, such as in quantifiable units, such goals would be included in an evaluation of the performance of the program, as described further below. The relationship between the theory of change and the logic model is simply that the logic model provides a graphical way to envision how the theory of change is applied in a particular program.

As to funding sources, we have already noted that foundations and the government are sources of funding for social programs. In addition, a growing number of sources are emerging to specialize in social entrepreneurship. Figure 15.5 provides a partial list of social entrepreneurship funding and other resources. We encourage you to search for additional sources on the Internet as well as to consult with a reference librarian.

In addition to the funding sources in the table, other resources are emerging to provide training and support to social entrepreneurs. Ashoka and New Profit provide such support in addition to funding. The Unreasonable Institute specifically provides training support to improve the effectiveness of qualified social entrepreneurs.<sup>45</sup> In fact, the effectiveness of the social entrepreneur (and his or her team) is one of the key concerns that foundations consider when reviewing funding proposals. As in the Timmons model of entrepreneurship, the three elements of opportunity, resources, and team are all crucial to the success of the venture. Opportunity and resources notwithstanding, foundations, according to one philanthropic advisor, are more likely to fund a first-class social entrepreneur with a second-class venture than the other way around.<sup>46</sup>

While foundations evaluate funding proposals according to the quality of the social entrepreneur(s), they will also attend to how the venture's performance will be evaluated. In fact, no matter what the source of financial support, there is an increasing demand that results be appropriately evaluated.

## Evaluating Results

The challenge of measuring business success by the traditional bottom line, that is, profitability, has no real counterpart when the success of the venture depends on creating social, rather than economic value. To be sure, any venture must be economically viable to survive and able to operate without incurring ongoing financial losses. But beyond the operating survival of the entity, how can we determine whether its social objectives are being met?

At the most general level, we can determine whether the outcomes or effects of the venture are conveying the social values that were originally intended. Are people being fed, housed, medically treated in appropriate ways? Are students being taught, and do they have the materials and health they need to be successful learners? These overall social values can be more concretely

Acumen Fund	<a href="http://acumenfund.org">http://acumenfund.org</a>
Ashoka	<a href="http://www.ashoka.org">www.ashoka.org</a>
Echoing Green	<a href="http://www.echoinggreen.org">www.echoinggreen.org</a>
New Profit, Inc.	<a href="http://newprofit.com">http://newprofit.com</a>
Schwab Foundation	<a href="http://www.schwabfound.org/sf/index.htm">www.schwabfound.org/sf/index.htm</a>
Skoll Foundation	<a href="http://www.skollfoundation.org">www.skollfoundation.org</a>

**Figure 15.5****Social entrepreneurship funding sources**

measured by using quantifiable metrics. How *many* people are now being helped? How *many* students are now receiving a good education? How much less *time* does it take for the homeless to find housing? These quantifiable units are usually identified as part of a program's goals and objectives in its Logic Model. Formally speaking, an evaluation involves making a judgment as to how well a particular program or product is to be rated. The judgment has to be based on some identifiable criterion, and in the case of a social venture, the criteria would be the specified outputs, outcomes, and impact of the program. How well were they achieved, if at all?

Most evaluations are addressed at two stages. First, a *formative* evaluation would take place while the program is being undertaken. This type of evaluation provides a way to monitor how well the program is going in a way that could allow mid-course corrections or other changes necessary to improve its performance. Second, a *summative* evaluation would be undertaken following the completion of the program. The summative evaluation would measure, for example, whether and how well the program created its intended outcomes and achieved its desired impact. A third type of evaluation, *longitudinal* evaluation, would apply if we were interested in measuring the effects of a program several years or more after its completion. For example, following completion of a Head Start preschool program, it would not be sufficient to conduct a summative evaluation once children have completed the program and enter the formal school system in first grade. It would be far more valuable to follow Head Start graduates as they move up through the primary, secondary, and even tertiary levels of education to see how well they do, particularly when compared to a virtually identical group of children who did not attend Head Start. Through such a longitudinal evaluation, especially if it included a control group of children, we would not only see how Head Start might have affected them, but also to compare how other children fared who did not attend the Head Start program.

Because New Profit is a leader in identifying, selecting, supporting, and evaluating social ventures, it is instructive to examine their annual report to see how they evaluate the performance of their portfolio companies.<sup>47</sup> Project HEALTH, for example, “touched” 2,329 lives in 2006 and 4,415 lives in 2008, a 38% compound annual growth rate. The venture’s revenues were \$1.54 million in 2006 and \$3.23 million in 2008, a 45% compound annual growth rate. Year Up “touched” 120 lives in 2004 and 622 lives in 2008, a 51% compound annual growth rate, while its revenues rose from \$3.5 million in 2004 to \$20.2 million in 2008, a 55% compound annual growth rate.

For-profit companies can be compared to each other by using various different quantitative ratios; likewise, social ventures can be compared. One way to evaluate social ventures in comparison to other social ventures is look at their respective “lives touched” numbers (the meaning of “touched” may vary from one organization to another, but the intent is to convey the number of individuals affected by the organization’s work). Project HEALTH touched 4,415 lives in 2008, at a cost of \$732 per life touched, while Year Up touched 622 lives that year, at a cost of \$32,476 per life touched. But are these programs really comparable using such a measure? Or does it make more sense to compare programs of more similar types?

Another way to compare program performance is by measuring the program’s *need share*, a concept analogous to *market share* in the for-profit world. Need share is the proportion of lives touched as a percentage of the total number of lives in need of that particular program’s services. If there were 39 million poor people in the United States in 2008 and Project HEALTH helped 4,415 of them, the venture’s needshare would be 0.0113%. Similarly, if there were 4.3 million youth in need of Year Up services in 2008 and, of these, 622 were, in fact, served, the venture’s need share would be 0.0145%. This analysis not only provides a more reasonable basis for comparing programs but also reveals that, however promising or beneficial a particular social venture is, it can be far from having the effect needed to make a material difference beyond the relative few individuals actually “touched.”

This may be an argument for why public policy at the national level can be a far more efficient and effective way to achieve social change than by attending to the consequences of bad or no public policy on a piecemeal basis. Sir Michael Marmot, who has led a World

Health Organization study of the social determinants of health, makes this very argument to try to persuade governments worldwide that health care is not merely the delivery of palliative care to the sick but also the guarantee to all citizens of a minimum standard of living necessary to prevent disease in the first place.<sup>48</sup> How to maximize needshare by going to scale is one of the most challenging issues facing even the most successful social entrepreneurs.

## Going to Scale

Social entrepreneurship ventures often begin as relatively small-scale experiments to demonstrate the viability of a particular theory of change. Once such experiments prove that they work, the compelling question is whether, and how, they can increase the number of lives touched through some form of expansion. It is the specific goal of New Profit to provide the resources to such promising ventures that would allow them to do exactly that: go to scale. But going to scale may not be easy—or even desired. Let's consider some of the issues, which may influence how to proceed.

First, a great many social entrepreneurs have no interest in expanding the reach of their ventures. They are community based and intimately connected to the fiber and character of a particular locale. They have proven their value in the local context, and they have no delusions of larger scale. Such cases can provide extraordinary value to the community and should be celebrated for doing so. Not every social entrepreneur should feel compelled to go to scale beyond achieving local success, nor should such heroes be discounted in a discourse that exemplifies the heroic, larger-than-life achiever.

Second, while a social entrepreneur may have proven exceptionally successful in a limited geographic area, such as a city or state, it may prove difficult to replicate success elsewhere, particularly without virtually cloning the social entrepreneur. Successful social entrepreneurs cannot simply be hired to work their magic as social entrepreneurs; they are not commodities. At the same time, those individuals who are motivated to be social entrepreneurs are likely executing their own social ventures or in the process of identifying opportunities for their own ventures. So there is no certainty that a social venture can successfully be scaled up through a franchise model.

Third, where foundation funding has been crucial to demonstrating the viability of a particular theory of change, there is no guarantee that the foundation will continue support to take the venture to scale. In fact, this failure is the reason that inspired Vanessa Kirsch to start New Profit.

The aspiring social entrepreneur should be mindful of these considerations. Nevertheless, social ventures with the right characteristics can successfully go to scale.<sup>49</sup> Your prospects of doing so are enhanced by anticipating and avoiding barriers to scale at the outset, including making sure that you are not indispensable for the venture to succeed or expand. As we have seen, the organizations that grow the largest, particularly with government funding, are those that create a deep and competitive capacity for providing expertise and cultivate a relationship of trust with funding sources. Short of the government itself providing all the services and goods necessary to meet citizen needs or in the improbable event that humans will suddenly revert to subsistence living, there will always be opportunity for social entrepreneurship.



## CONCLUSION

It can be heartwarming indeed to note the rising level of social entrepreneurship worldwide. From a critical point of view, it is one thing to pursue social entrepreneurship in response to the major, intractable social challenges that are beyond the reach of any particular government—these needs are real and enormous—and quite another to view the admirable,

but relatively limited efforts in which social entrepreneurs are responding to compensate for the failure of governments to meet the basic needs of their citizens or of corporations to act in socially and environmentally responsible ways. Until governments and corporations meet their respective social responsibilities, there will be plenty of demand for social entrepreneurs like Rebecca Onie, founder of Project HEALTH; Gerald Chertavian, founder of Year Up; and so many others who are not content with the status quo and are driven to make a difference.

The rise in global interest in social entrepreneurship has been championed by the work of Bill Drayton. “Was it possible,” he asked, “to create a system that would, with high reliability, spot major pattern-changing ideas and first-class entrepreneurs before either was proven?” Indeed, consistent with its emphasis on social change, Ashoka reports on its Website that within five years of being selected as a Fellow, 52% have changed national policy, and 76% have “changed their field systematically at the national level.” Just as Drayton has sought a system to identify exemplary social entrepreneurs, we and many other students of social entrepreneurship are attempting to rationalize and teach the process of *becoming* exemplary social entrepreneurs.

The goal of this chapter has been to introduce a path to social entrepreneurship for those who are motivated to apply their business acumen, knowledge, and skills to meet social needs in economically viable ways regardless of the promise of private profit or personal asset accumulation or, for that matter, an obsession to change the world. For those so inclined, the *imitative* entrepreneurial challenge to expand social value, whether on a local, regional, national, or global scale, is no less exciting and the psychic benefits no less rewarding than those available to the *innovator*. In either case, the motivation is likely to be intrinsic, deeply felt, and hopefully encouraged and guided by those considerations covered here.

### Reflection Point

### Your Thoughts

- When you look out on the world, are there any social or environmental conditions that particularly move you to change the world?
- Referring to the GEM typology of social entrepreneurship ventures, which do you think would be most appropriate for your social venture idea?
- Select two or more existing social ventures and determine how many people they are serving. Considering the total number of people needing their assistance, calculate the needshare for each. How do they compare in terms of cost-effectiveness?
- Do you think most social entrepreneurs are responding to the symptoms of underlying social disparities, or are they actually correcting these underlying, problematic causes?
- Are you more likely to be a financially-driven entrepreneur at the outset of your career, and then perhaps become a social entrepreneur? Or do you plan to be a social entrepreneur sooner after graduation?

## YOUR OPPORTUNITY JOURNAL

## WEB EXERCISE

How might you use the World Wide Web to find financial data on social ventures and their funders? Start by using GuideStar to look up information on specific nonprofit organizations ([www.guidestar.org](http://www.guidestar.org)). What can you find out about the relationship between annual revenues and compensation of the president or chief executive officer? What percentage of total revenues is spent for general and administrative costs? Fund-raising costs? For information on foundations, try using the online foundation finder at the Foundation Center (<http://foundationcenter.org>). Check with your library to see if it subscribes to the more comprehensive online Foundation Directory. Then use the directory to search for foundations funding subjects of interest to you.

## NOTES

- <sup>1</sup> This difference is further described by Neck, Brush, and Allen, who emphasize that social entrepreneurship focuses on the mission at the beginning of a venture rather than its outcomes, such as profit, which is the concern of classical entrepreneurship. Neck, Heidi, Brush, Candida, and Allen, I. Elaine. *The Landscape of Social Entrepreneurship*. *Business Horizons*, 52(1): 13–19 (2008).
- <sup>2</sup> Dees, J. Gregory, *The Meaning of Social Entrepreneurship*. 2001. [www.caseatduke.org/documents/dees\\_sedef.pdf](http://www.caseatduke.org/documents/dees_sedef.pdf).
- <sup>3</sup> The Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM), a nonprofit academic research consortium founded by Babson College and the London Business School, collects and disseminates high-quality international research data on entrepreneurial activity. The *GEM 2009 Report* is the largest study of entrepreneurial activity in the world. See Bosma, Niels, and Levie, Jonathan. *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2009 Executive Report*. Wellesley, MA.: Global Entrepreneurship Research Association. 2010.
- <sup>4</sup> Vogel, David. *The Market for Virtue: The Potential and Limits of Corporate Social Responsibility*. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press. 2005.
- <sup>5</sup> Abt, Clark C. *The Social Audit for Management*. New York, NY: Amacom. 1977.
- <sup>6</sup> [www.bcorporation.net](http://www.bcorporation.net).
- <sup>7</sup> Laurie Mook, Jack Quarter and Betty Jane Richmond. *What Counts: Social Accounting for Nonprofits and Cooperatives*. Second ed. London, England: Sigel Press, 2007.
- <sup>8</sup> The designation of *nonprofit* is an artifact of the prevailing legal system, which is more or less clearly defined in the United States and differently determined in other countries. The term *not for profit* is unnecessarily ambiguous for our treatment here, meant primarily for a U.S. audience.
- <sup>9</sup> [www.irs.gov/charities/charitable/article/0,,id=96099,00.html](http://www.irs.gov/charities/charitable/article/0,,id=96099,00.html).
- <sup>10</sup> [www.irs.gov/charities/charitable/article/0,,id=175418,00.html](http://www.irs.gov/charities/charitable/article/0,,id=175418,00.html).
- <sup>11</sup> [www.guidestar.org](http://www.guidestar.org).
- <sup>12</sup> Stacey Childress, Scott Benson, Sarah Tudryn. *New Schools for New Orleans 2008*. Case ed. 9-308-074. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. 2008.
- <sup>13</sup> Baron, David P. *Social Entrepreneurship: Kiva*. Case ed. P-70. Stanford, CA: Stanford School of Business. 2008.
- <sup>14</sup> Bruck, Connie. Millions for Millions. *The New Yorker*. October 30, 2006.
- <sup>15</sup> [www.newprofit.com](http://www.newprofit.com).

- <sup>16</sup> Elia, J. (2000). *New Profit Inc.* Case MCG0006. Kansas City: Kauffman Foundation.
- <sup>17</sup> Letts, Christine W., Ryan, William, and Grossman, Allen. Virtuous Capital: What Foundations Can Learn from Venture Capitalists. *Harvard Business Review*, 75(2), pp 36–42. March–April 1997.
- <sup>18</sup> A leading global consulting firm based in Cambridge, Massachusetts; see [www.monitor.com](http://www.monitor.com).
- <sup>19</sup> Brooke, Peter A. *A Vision for Venture Capital: Realizing the Promise of Global Venture Capital and Private Equity*. Boston, MA: New Ventures Press. 2009.
- <sup>20</sup> Sahlman, William A., and Pirmohamed, Taz. *Endeavor—Determining a Growth Strategy*. In Case No. 9-803-126, revised 18 November 2005. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. 2005.
- <sup>21</sup> Theroux, John, and Hurstak, Johanna M. *Ben & Jerry's Homemade Ice Cream Inc.: Keeping the Mission(s) Alive*. In Case No. 9-392-025, revised 15 December 1993. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. 1991.
- <sup>22</sup> Yunus, Muhammad. *Creating a World Without Poverty: Social Business and the Future of Capitalism*. New York, NY: Public Affairs. 2007. pp. 21–24.
- <sup>23</sup> Most historical facts here were taken from the Grameen Bank's Website, [www.grameen-info.org/index.php?option=com\\_content&task=view&id=19&Itemid=114](http://www.grameen-info.org/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=19&Itemid=114).
- <sup>24</sup> See [www.grameen-info.org/index.php?option=com\\_content&task=view&id=28&Itemid=108](http://www.grameen-info.org/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=28&Itemid=108).
- <sup>25</sup> See [www.grameenhealth.org](http://www.grameenhealth.org).
- <sup>26</sup> Putnam, Robert D. *Bowling Alone: The Collapse and Revival of American Community*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster. 2000. p. 19.
- <sup>27</sup> Logue, John. *Economics, Cooperation, and Employee Ownership: The Emilia Romagna Model—in More Detail*. Kent, Ohio: Kent State University, Ohio Employee Ownership Center. 2005.
- <sup>28</sup> Putnam, Robert D. *Making Democracy Work: Civic Traditions in Modern Italy*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press. 1993.
- <sup>29</sup> Schumpeter, Joseph A. *The Theory of Economic Development: An Inquiry into Profits, Capital, Credit, Interest, and the Business Cycle*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers. 2008/1934. p. 133.
- <sup>30</sup> Whyte, William Foote, and Whyte, Kathleen King. *Making Mondragón: The Growth and Dynamics of the Worker Cooperative Complex*. Second ed. Ithaca, NY: ILR Press, Cornell University Press. 1991.
- <sup>31</sup> [www.mondragon.edu](http://www.mondragon.edu).
- <sup>32</sup> Whyte and Whyte, *Making Mondragón*.
- <sup>33</sup> Logue, *Economics, Cooperation, and Employee Ownership..*
- <sup>34</sup> Bartlett, Christopher A., and Curran, Daniel F. *Mercy Corps: Global Social Entrepreneurship (a)*. In Case No. 9-303-079, Revised 8 April 2004. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Publishing. 2004.
- <sup>35</sup> Bloom, Gordon M. The Social Entrepreneurship Collaboratory (Se Lav): A University Incubator for a Rising Generation of Social Entrepreneurs. In Alex Nicholls, ed., *Social Entrepreneurship: New Models of Sustainable Social Change*. Oxford, England: Oxford University Press. 2008. p. 275.
- <sup>36</sup> Babson College. December 2, 2009.
- <sup>37</sup> Bosma and Levie, *Global Entrepreneurship Monitor: 2009 Executive Report*. p. 48.
- <sup>38</sup> See the Internal Revenue Service Website, [www.irs.gov/charities/index.html](http://www.irs.gov/charities/index.html).
- <sup>39</sup> See <http://nccs.urban.org/statistics/quickfacts.cfm>.
- <sup>40</sup> Foster, William, and Fine, Gail. How Nonprofits Get Really Big. *Stanford Social Innovation Review*, 5(2): pp. 46–55. Spring 2007.
- <sup>41</sup> See National Center for Charitable Statistics, <http://nccs.urban.org/statistics/quickfacts.cfm>.

- <sup>41</sup> [www.fbo.gov](http://www.fbo.gov).
- <sup>42</sup> [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov).
- <sup>43</sup> Consult GuideStar to determine the overhead rates of individual nonprofit organizations.
- <sup>44</sup> The *W.K. Kellogg Foundation Logic Model Development Guide* may be downloaded from [www.wkkf.org/Pubs/Tools/Evaluation/Pub3669.pdf](http://www.wkkf.org/Pubs/Tools/Evaluation/Pub3669.pdf).
- <sup>45</sup> [www.unreasonableinstitute.org](http://www.unreasonableinstitute.org).
- <sup>46</sup> Kramer, Mark R. *Measuring Innovation: Evaluation in the Field of Social Entrepreneurship*. Boston, MA: Foundation Strategy Group. 2005.
- <sup>47</sup> Examples taken from the *New Profit 2008–2009 Annual Report*. [www.newprofit.com/cgi-bin/iowa/about/31.html](http://www.newprofit.com/cgi-bin/iowa/about/31.html).
- <sup>48</sup> See [www.who.int/social\\_determinants/en](http://www.who.int/social_determinants/en).
- <sup>49</sup> Bradach, Jeffrey. Going to Scale: The Challenge of Replicating Social Programs. *Stanford Social Innovation Review*, 1(1): pp. 18-25. Spring 2003.

# Earthwatch

## CASE

Englishman Ed Wilson, CEO of the world's largest environmental volunteer nonprofit organization, felt he was back in prison in Sudan. In 1982, as an aspiring journalist in his youth, Ed took photographs of a refugee camp with the intention of exposing the Sudanese government's corruption. Within two hours of snapping his pictures, he was picked up by the Secret Police and thrown into prison with no one other than his captors aware of his whereabouts.

In the early part of 2009, Ed reclined in his chair and stared at the ceiling of his office in Earthwatch's headquarters in Massachusetts, much like he stared at the stone ceiling of his Sudanese prison cell 26 years ago. Now, as then, he was in a perilous predicament. Earthwatch had just scraped through 2008 at a loss. The year ahead, instead of promising a reprieve, only threatened to be the worst revenue year in the organization's 37-year history.

Earthwatch's retail revenue had been declining since 1993. The organization managed to survive by growing the revenue it generated from corporate sponsorships. At the end of 2008, however, the United States was on the brink of a recession, and common intuition predicted that donations and charitable partnerships would be among the first items to be cut in corporate budgets. Ed peered through his partially open door to survey his headquarters staff. Morale had been low in recent months, and the uncertainty about the organization's future was palpable. Ed was scheduled to address the employees at the bimonthly all-staff meeting, and he knew that he would have to provide clear direction. In addition, he was going to meet with the board of directors the day after the all-staff meeting, and he knew the question for which he needed an answer: "How can Earthwatch survive long enough to see better days?"

## Earthwatch and Its Origins

With a tagline of "Save the World. Yourself" and a mission grounded in scientific advancement, education, and volunteerism, Earthwatch was one of the world's largest private funders of scientific research. Over the years, it supported over 3,000 research projects all over the world with over \$80 million and over 100,000 volunteers.<sup>1</sup> These volunteers provided not only much-needed manpower but also the funding itself, since all of them paid to join a research expedition either out of their own pockets or through sponsorships provided by corporations, private donors, and Earthwatch's own foundation. By involving the general public in research projects, Earthwatch not only supported scientific discovery but also engaged society in its quest for knowledge. The organization believed that this public engagement is essential to social improvement and core to its mission as described on the company's Website:<sup>2</sup>

*Earthwatch Institute engages people worldwide in scientific field research and education to promote the understanding and action necessary for a sustainable environment.*

*We believe that teaching and promoting scientific literacy is the best way to systematically approach and solve the many complex environmental and social issues facing society today.*

Although it decries the distinction, Earthwatch was widely acknowledged as being the pioneer of "voluntourism" and "volunteer vacations"—fast-growing tourism categories that integrate social or environmental work into travel itineraries. This once-novel funding model was the brainchild of former New York investment banker Brian Rosborough. In 1971,

<sup>1</sup> This case was prepared by Cuesta, L., & Neck, H. Earthwatch. Wellesley, MA: Babson College. © Copyright Babson College, 2009.

<sup>2</sup> The volunteer figure does not represent distinct persons (i.e., a repeat volunteer is counted twice).

<sup>2</sup> [www.earthwatch.org/aboutus/whatwedo](http://www.earthwatch.org/aboutus/whatwedo).

Rosborough was approached by Smithsonian Institution science administrator Bob Citron for funding. According to Rosborough:

*Citron asked me for money that I didn't have to fund an expedition to the Sahara and it was that meeting that made me think that scientists searching for small amounts of money were like entrepreneurs looking for capital. Why not take them public and ask the citizen—the tax payer—to invest directly in field-based scientific exploration? Before that date, most of those funds for academic research came from national agencies with a small amount of funding coming from foundations. There was very little investment in basic research from corporations who were more interested in applied research.<sup>3</sup> So I found there was an opening there to support basic research through a public investment model.*

After Rosborough successfully aided Citron's expedition in 1972 using this public investment model, he left investment banking and moved to Boston to establish Earthwatch with a staff of four people. Earthwatch became an avenue for the concerned public to invest time and money in independent scientific research. From the beginning, Rosborough believed he was providing social venture capital to entrepreneurial scientists whose investigations might change the world for the better.

*We were an investment banker to scientific enterprise, but the investment requirements were small and there was a lot of volunteer spirit to back it up. So, in essence, people would come to paint the fence and they would pay for the brushes and the paint.*

The return on people's investment, naturally, was very different from the return one would expect from a typical financial investment. Rosborough commented:

*The returns were not capital returns. We used to say, "We promise you a return in insight" and that "honor and discovery are your rewards." So we used investment banking language to pioneer a field that is now known as social venture capital—investments in organizations that improve society; investments where the demanded returns are social rather than financial.<sup>4</sup>*

Satisfying this demand for social returns required the proper selection of research to fund. Earthwatch had to ensure that its portfolio of projects produced relevant results that furthered its mission of helping the environment. Every project proposal went through three or four peer reviews by experts on a given topic, and the scientific community had to endorse the principal investigator (lead scientist) of the potential Earthwatch project. But good science was not the only requirement; the projects also had to fit Earthwatch's mission of engaging the general public in scientific research. Rosborough reflected on the balance of mission of the organization with pure science:

*In some cases, the project was looking for too much money from too few people. Say a project needs \$100,000 and could only take 3 volunteers who all must speak Lithuanian—that's very difficult. The model is more populous. We need to involve quite a lot of people. We deploy people of varied skills and backgrounds, the only requirement being that they be smart, mobile and well-intentioned. The model worked very well in field-based research where non-specialists could make meaningful contributions.*

---

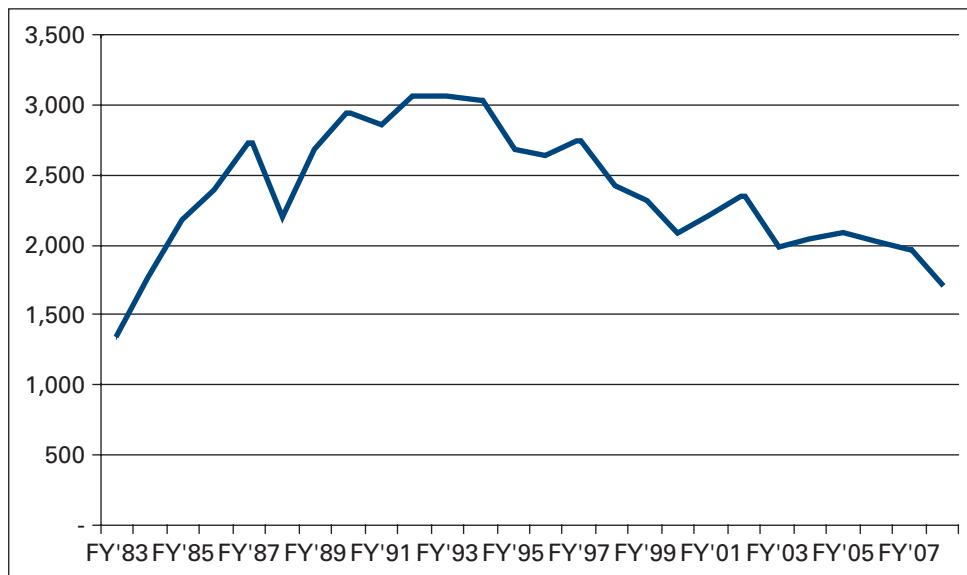
<sup>3</sup> Basic research is considered fundamental to the advancement of scientific disciplines. It is done to build a repository of knowledge in a particular area of science and may not have purposeful applications. Applied research seeks knowledge for the purpose of solving a problem or creating something of value and is typically associated with invention and innovation.

<sup>4</sup> Social returns involve the improvement of the welfare of people in society through the improvement of their condition or surroundings.

Earthwatch provided great benefits for both scientists and volunteers. Researchers received grants of \$10,000 to \$100,000 or more per project plus volunteer labor for data collection. Volunteers, on the other hand, got unforgettable experiences such as swimming with sharks and caring for cheetahs. Also, because of Earthwatch's nonprofit tax status, volunteers' financial contributions and out-of-pocket expenses such as airfare were tax deductible.

Earthwatch fielded 56 volunteers in its first year. When Rosborough handed over the reins of the organization to succeeding CEO Roger Bergen in 1996, Earthwatch had approximately 2,600 paying volunteers annually and revenues of \$10 million. At the end of 2008, under the leadership of CEO Ed Wilson, the organization fielded 1,864 paying volunteers and had revenues of just over \$11 million. Earthwatch's volunteer growth history is shown in Exhibit 15.1. The organization had also grown significantly since it was established in 1972 with four staff members. By the end of 2008, Earthwatch had 142 employees.

### EXHIBIT 15.1 Volunteer Numbers from 1983 to 2008



*Note:* Numbers reflect only paying volunteers. Volunteers that are sponsored by schools and companies, known as Fellows, are not included. The total number of volunteers in 2008, including Fellows, was about 3,500.

## Selecting Research Projects

Earthwatch supported a wide variety of research topics and areas, covering everything from archaeology to wildlife to endangered cultures in all parts of the world. This made for a diverse and exciting menu of expeditions that volunteers could join. For an average contribution of \$2,400 (excluding airfare), a paying volunteer could assist scientists in excavating the remains of prehistoric men in Spain, measuring ice caves in the Arctic, or surveying caimans and manatees in the Amazon River. In 2008, Earthwatch offered 89 expeditions (see Exhibit 15.2). The projects funded by Earthwatch were categorized according to research topic. In the organization's early years, there was no conscious effort to focus on any particular type of

research, and Earthwatch had a smorgasbord of projects that were funded for the sheer sake of scientific discovery. As Earthwatch matured, it began to focus on supporting research that addressed specific environmental issues. Eventually, the organization moved to supporting research in only four priority areas:

1. Climate change—issues related to global warming
2. Oceanic health—welfare of critical species and habitats in coastal seas
3. Resource management—the sustainable management of natural resources
4. Threatened cultures—welfare of indigenous people

### EXHIBIT 15.2

### Sample of 2008 Expeditions

Amazon Riverboat Exploration	Madagascar's Lemurs
Brazil's Dolphins	Meerkats of the Kalahari
Carnivores of Brazil's Grasslands	Moose and Wolves
Costa Rican Sea Turtles	Roman Fort on Tyne
Costa Rica's Monkeys	Samburu Wildlife and Communities, Kenya
Diamondback Terrapins of Barnegat Bay	Seabirds of Prince William Sound
Dolphins of Greece	South Africa's Brown Hyenas
Kenya's Forest Monkeys	Wild Horses of the Outer Banks
Lakes of the Rift Valley	Wildlife of the Mongolian Steppe
Year	Number of expeditions offered
2004	131
2005	125
2006	122
2007	97

While the locations and specific topics of Earthwatch's projects remained diverse, each was supported because of its contribution to one of the four priority areas. Earthwatch had two types of projects: those that were funded through paying volunteers, called retail projects, and those that were corporation funded, called corporate partnerships. On average, retail and corporate projects took 12 to 18 months to develop from a proposal to approval to the beginning of field implementation.

The development of an Earthwatch retail project began with the application of a scientist for a research grant. Grants could be obtained from a multitude of sources. Jeanine Pfeiffer, a director in Earthwatch's Research Department, explained why a scientist would approach Earthwatch:

*For any researcher, whether you are a scientist within an academy or an independent researcher, there are literally thousands of places where you can apply to get funding for your research, whether it's government, such as the National Science Foundation or the National Institutes of Health, or foundations including the Ocean Conservancy, World Wildlife Fund or Conservation International. Many of those agencies are highly competitive. Other agencies are not as competitive but are highly selective in the type of research they support. So what you do, to be strategic, is to find the agencies whose priority areas fit your research best. Another thing to consider is that many American agencies only support projects in the United States. So if you're a researcher who wants to do international field work, your funding options are much narrower. So researchers who want to do applied and not theoretical research, researchers who want to work overseas or in relatively remote locations, researchers who would have a hard time finding funding elsewhere or who are at the start of their careers, and most importantly researchers who are willing to work with volunteers—because many scientists don't even want to go there—Earthwatch would be a good option for them.*

Most scientists contacted Earthwatch's Research Department regarding priority areas and project requirements before submitting a proposal. Once a proposal was submitted, it went through an approval process that involved the Research, Sales, Marketing, Inventory Management, Finance, and Field Management Departments to determine whether the research was relevant, marketable, and viable given Earthwatch's model. Once a proposal was approved, Earthwatch worked with the scientist to develop a project that would engage paying volunteers.

Projects that were funded by corporate partners were developed in an entirely different way. Earthwatch approached corporations and offered to develop a project to address that company's problems. These problems included issues with employee retention, marketing, market entry, public perception and community relationships—issues that a corporate social responsibility (CSR) project<sup>5</sup> might be able to address. But a project developed to address the needs of the corporate partner still needed to address one of Earthwatch's four priority areas: climate change, oceanic health, resource management, and threatened cultures. Unlike retail projects, projects that were designed for corporations hired scientists that were approached by Earthwatch to take on the specified research. Also, these projects were generally not open to the public.

In the selection of retail projects as well as corporate partnerships, the challenge was achieving both relevance and profitability. Often it was one or the other. Several of Earthwatch's most popular and profitable retail projects had marginal research value. Conversely, many projects that made vital scientific contributions did not appeal to the public. One employee observed:

*There's a real disconnect between Sales and Marketing and Research. I think often what Sales and Marketing are selling is different from what Research is prioritizing for us to do. I think the kind of project that Research is really interested in is not necessarily the same kind of project that we can sell. I think those two groups need to get on the same page.*

Many in the organization believed that these marginally relevant but moneymaking projects were necessary because they made up for the less popular but more important projects. Others, however, felt that extraneous projects that were touristy diminished Earthwatch's credibility and attracted the wrong market, while alienating the core market of legitimate volunteers. Similar problems arose when developing corporate partnerships, as Ed Barker, Director of the Corporate Partnerships, noted:

*Inevitably, there may be a project that we [the Corporate Partnerships Department] think is a great idea that somebody else feels is not a priority. A funder may say, "Hey, we're really interested in doing research in Iceland," and we say, "Great, let's figure out how to set up some kind of sustainability initiative in Iceland." Then the Research team comes back and says, "Iceland? Iceland isn't a priority area." But we may lose the opportunity to do something exciting with sustainability that is funded by a major corporation.*

Some in the organization felt that all corporate partnerships presented an opportunity to further Earthwatch's mission and that a nonpriority project should be taken on if that is the only way to get a company involved. Others believed that Earthwatch should be more discriminating in its choice of corporate projects and partners in order to preserve its integrity and credibility.

## In the Field: Retail Projects

Earthwatch-funded projects ran from 1 to 10 years. Every year Field Management renegotiated contracts and budgets with the lead researcher, referred to as Principal Investigator (PI), of

<sup>5</sup> CSR programs were charitable initiatives that were corporations' way of giving back to their community. Most large corporations at the time had CSR programs because they provided several benefits to companies, not the least of which was tax breaks.

every retail project. PIs received a per capita grant from Earthwatch, which meant they allocated a specified amount of money for every volunteer who signed up for their project.

Earthwatch volunteers were fielded in teams that stay 10 to 15 days on a research site. Each 10- to 15-day duration was referred to as an “expedition,” and most projects had no more than four expeditions per year. However, many field projects ran year round, and the PIs had other sources of funding. Although Earthwatch had certain requirements from the PIs, these scientists were independent of the organization and had full ownership of their project. For the rest of the year when there were no expeditions, PIs ran their projects as they saw fit, with no operational obligations to Earthwatch. For example, PIs brought in volunteers from other organizations such as Habitat for Humanity and World Wildlife Fund when Earthwatch expeditions were not running.

Earthwatch’s involvement was not evident during nonexpedition periods, but also had limited visibility during its own expeditions. Earthwatch assigned no employees to travel on its retail projects. The PIs, who typically worked for scientific institutions, were independent contractors who typically had their own staff. During Earthwatch expeditions, they were in charge of food, accommodations, transport and the whole field experience. Before the first expedition of every new project, Earthwatch Field Management visited the research site to train the PI on working with Earthwatch volunteers and assessed the project’s infrastructure. Earthwatch set health and safety protocols as well as emergency response plans, but these were ultimately carried out by the PI and his or her staff.

Janet Belton, Director of Field Management, identified the root cause of wrong expectations for both parties:

*We market ourselves very differently to the scientific community than we do to the volunteer community. All the scientific community hears about are all the priority research areas, and how we are interested in funding that kind of research. We market ourselves to the scientists as a source of funding for their research. We market ourselves to the volunteers as a vacation.*

## In the Field: Corporate Partnerships

Projects developed through corporate partnerships did not have the PI-volunteer issues of retail projects, since the scientists and staff of corporate projects were employed by Earthwatch and the participants were not paying volunteers but employees of the corporate sponsor. Earthwatch’s biggest corporate partner was HSBC, a London-based bank that had 9,500 offices in 85 countries and territories all over the world. The relationship began in 2002 with HSBC’s Investing in Nature initiative, a five-year, \$50 million grant to Earthwatch, the World Wildlife Fund (WWF), and Botanical Gardens Conservation International. Of the \$50 million, Earthwatch received \$16 million. In this first partnership, no project was specifically developed for HSBC. Instead, 2,000 HSBC employees were fielded as volunteers in Earthwatch’s various existing projects around the world. Benefits to HSBC, as evaluations showed, were improvement in employees’ environmental and social awareness, management skills, and satisfaction with HSBC as an employer.

In 2007, HSBC continued its relationship with Earthwatch through the HSBC Climate Partnership, a five-year, \$100 million grant that also involved the WWF, Climate Group, and Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute. Of the \$100 million, Earthwatch received \$35 million, with funds disbursed yearly in five equal installments. Earthwatch’s role in this partnership was to determine how climate change and human activities affected the world’s temperate and tropical forests and gain knowledge to improve global forest management. Five Regional Climate Centers were established in China, India, Brazil, the United States, and the United Kingdom, where scientists, supported by the local communities and over 2,000 volunteer HSBC employees, could conduct research on forest health. The scientists and staff of

the Regional Climate Centers were employed by Earthwatch with the funds given by HSBC. Also, at Earthwatch's headquarters in Maynard, Massachusetts, a new department was formed to manage the HSBC Climate Partnership. This department was self-contained, having its own budget and marketing resources.

Starbucks and Wells Fargo & Co. were two other large Earthwatch partners. For the three-year Starbucks partnership (2007 to 2009), Earthwatch established a research center in Costa Rica to work on sustainable coffee production. For each year of the partnership, 20 Starbucks customers and 10 Starbucks employees were selected to work as volunteers in that research center. Wells Fargo's partnership with Earthwatch involved sponsoring teachers who taught in communities where the bank was present and sending them to volunteer in projects that addressed climate change. During their expedition, the educators taught their classes using Earthwatch's "Live from the Field" video phone conference system.

Grants to Earthwatch came in two forms: unrestricted and restricted. Unrestricted grants were unconditional donations and essentially free money. Restricted grants were more transactional in nature, with funds given in exchange for agreed deliverables. Up until a few years ago, most of Earthwatch's corporate partners gave unrestricted grants. Since 2006, however, most companies wanted something in return for their money. HSBC, Starbucks, and Wells Fargo all gave restricted grants. For Earthwatch's financials, restricted grants were double-edged swords. Often grants were accepted and commitments were made before the costs of delivery were fully understood. Many times, the amount Earthwatch spent to fulfill the conditions of a restricted grant was actually greater than the grant amount itself. This was a typical problem with small grants. However, the net gain on even large grants was questionable. Earthwatch did not have a cost accounting system that tracked man-hours. Many grant deliverables, especially the large ones that involved customized projects, required a significant amount of time and effort that was left unmeasured.

The organization had managed to survive despite a continuous decline in its retail revenue by growing its revenue from corporate partnerships. In 2007, after 36 years of supporting the organization primarily through paying volunteers, Earthwatch had its corporate income surpass its retail revenue. See Exhibit 15.3 for Earthwatch's sources of income and associated proportional shares.

### EXHIBIT 15.3 Sources of Income

2007 Revenues	Net Total	%
Volunteer Contributions	\$ 6,685,787	32%
Membership	\$ 1,763,109	8%
Grants, Partnerships and other Contributions	\$ 11,989,982	57%
Other Income	\$ 665,214	3%
Total	\$ 21,104,092	100%

*Note:* Volunteer Contributions refer to revenue from retail expeditions.

*Source:* Earthwatch Institute 2007 Annual Report.

## Competition and Market Dynamics<sup>6</sup>

Earthwatch operated at the intersection of three competitive arenas: adventure travel, volunteering, and environmental science and stewardship.

<sup>6</sup>In 2008, Babson MBA student Leo Cuesta did a market study for Earthwatch during his summer internship. Much of the information in this section was derived from his study.

## Adventure Travel

Adventure travel emerged in the 1960s and up until the early 1990s was a small niche of the tourism industry. Traditionally, its scope was limited to physically intense and potentially dangerous outdoor activities in exotic places. Until the turn of the century, adventure travel was associated with climbing Mount Everest, crossing the Sahara Desert, or rafting down the Amazon River. Eventually, however, the scope of category broadened to include less rugged pursuits. No longer was adventure travel limited to the realm of hardened mountaineers and fearless explorers. With the proliferation of tour companies that offered “soft adventures” that involved less physical demand and danger and more creature comforts, adventure travel soon encompassed everything from cruising the Galapagos in a ship to walking from inn to inn along the Irish countryside. In 2006, the Adventure Travel Trade Association confirmed the dilution of the adventure travel market by defining it as a tourist activity that included any two of the following three components: (1) a physical activity, (2) a cultural exchange or interaction, and (3) an engagement with nature.

After the turn of the century, adventure travel was often identified as one of the fastest-growing segments of the tourism industry. However, due to its highly fragmented structure and ambiguous definition, the industry’s size was never satisfactorily measured. Most adventure travel companies were small outfits that offered trips in only one location. While there were many large “do-it-all” outfitters, companies that offered an extensive range of experiences around the world, none of them had any significant market share. In 2008, the trends in adventure travel were identified as voluntours, extreme activities, obscure destinations, shorter trips, and adventure traveling with the family.<sup>7</sup>

In 2007, National Geographic Adventure identified the organization as the best adventure travel company in education and 6<sup>th</sup> best overall. Adventure travel companies had similar but varied takes on the primary motivation of adventure travelers. One noteworthy insight was given by John Bilby, founder of Wild Frontiers: “It has been said that we’re selling dinner party conversations—people want to do something unusual they can talk about.”<sup>8</sup>

## Volunteering

The volunteering space was divided into three segments that traverse a range of motivations and priorities. Voluntours, volunteer vacations, and direct service all involved voluntary social or environmental work but had very different models.

Direct service was considered the purest form of charity work, since it had the sole purpose of providing social or environmental service. Volunteers worked directly with a charitable institution such as the Red Cross or UNICEF, paid nothing, and usually worked in their own communities.

At the other end of the volunteering spectrum were voluntours, which were essentially adventure travel tours with some component of social awareness integrated into the itinerary. Voluntourists carried schoolbooks to a poor village while trekking in Nepal or helped to dig a well in an African village while on safari. Voluntourism was an add-on feature of adventure travel, and most of its providers were adventure travel companies. Volunteers paid the same amount as they would for a regular adventure trip.

Voluntourism received a significant amount of criticism in the mid-2000s because of poorly developed programs that gave superficial benefits or even did more harm than good.

<sup>7</sup> Travel and Tourism Analyst: Adventure Tourism. 2008. [Is this a publication? Please provide complete information.]

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.

Many voluntours were money-making schemes that profited from tourists who wanted “guilt-free” vacations but did little to help target communities. This was not surprising, considering that voluntours were provided not by charities but by adventure travel companies. However, even credible direct service organizations such as Habitat for Humanity and the World Wildlife Fund used the voluntourism model to attract more volunteers.

Volunteer vacations fell between direct service and voluntours. Providers functioned as intermediaries between volunteers and charitable institutions, and their primary purpose was to provide support to social and environmental projects. Volunteer vacation itineraries usually involved working all day, every day, with the only vacation aspect being that the work is in a foreign or exotic location and that the participants had free time in the evenings and one or two free days. Volunteers paid \$500 to \$1,500 per week of service, and this covered their food and accommodations and the overhead of the provider, which is not necessarily a nonprofit. The volunteer vacations arena was fragmented but had a few highly recognizable players.

People volunteered for a number of reasons, and their motivations were both altruistic and personal. Volunteers may want to help others or work for a cause they believe in. They also volunteered to feel a sense of achievement, to be affiliated with a group, or to exercise power in determining the welfare of others.<sup>9</sup> While volunteers commonly had both altruistic and personal motivations, the trend was for people to volunteer for more self-serving reasons. Volunteers were most satisfied when the issue they worked on was of personal importance, when they felt needed and valued, and when they performed meaningful and interesting work. Other motivations that were becoming common are to experience different cultures, create new friendships, and improve resumes.<sup>10</sup>

## Environmental stewardship

Environmental stewardship was what Earthwatch considered as its legitimate arena. All organizations in this arena were mission-driven and had congruent goals in protecting the environment. However, since all of these organizations were not-for-profit, they all relied on donations and effectively competed for the general public's financial support. Exhibit 15.4 shows the total income and public support of the six environmental organizations in the 100 largest nonprofit organizations in the United States in 2006. Also shown are Earthwatch's figures as well as those of well-known environmental organizations that did not make the top 100 list.

While environmental organizations all sought to protect the environment, they focused on different aspects of it. Some had localized and species-specific missions, such as Ducks Unlimited, which dedicated itself to wetlands and waterfowl conservation, or the Trust for Public Land, which preserved natural areas in the United States as parks. These organizations were called *local stewards*. Other organizations, such as the World Wildlife Fund and Greenpeace, had loftier missions that encompassed the planet and all associated environmental concerns. These organizations were called *world saviors*.

Two characteristics made an organization a world savior. First, the organization was international. It addressed environmental issues across the globe and kept offices in several countries. Second, it focused on the four big environmental concerns:

1. Climate change
2. Sustainability

<sup>9</sup> Bill Merrill and Merrill Associates. *Understanding Volunteer Motivations*. [Date? What is this source?]

<sup>10</sup> T&TA: Niche Market Tourism—Charity Tourism. [See previous query about this source.] 2006.

3. Oceans
4. Biodiversity

<b>EXHIBIT 15.4</b>		<b>Income of Environmental Nonprofit Organizations</b>		
		<b>2006 Income</b>	<b>Public Support</b>	
12	The Nature Conservancy	1,010,373,984	517,879,431	51%
55	American Museum of Nature History	239,978,517	99,290,758	41%
64	Wildlife Conservation Society	214,594,126	59,883,594	28%
89	World Wildlife Fund	162,536,877	114,625,541	71%
90	Ducks Unlimited	162,092,153	88,746,191	55%
98	Trust For Public Land	155,339,866	120,074,738	77%
	Earthwatch (2007)	21,104,092	11,989,982	57%
	Conservation International	108,000,000	78,300,000	73%
	Greenpeace	26,546,103	19,115,171	72%
	National Audubon Society (2007)	81,790,000	59,485,000	73%

*Note:* The number before the organization name indicates its ranking in 2006 among all nonprofit organizations. Public support numbers are portions of total income.

*Sources:* *Forbes America's Largest Charities*; organization Websites. (<http://www.nptimes.com/07Nov/071101SR.pdf>), [www.earthwatch.org](http://www.earthwatch.org), [www.conservation.org](http://www.conservation.org), [www.greenpeace.org](http://www.greenpeace.org), [www.audubon.org](http://www.audubon.org).

World saviors, with the notable exception of Greenpeace, had two other common traits. One was that they were prolific in their corporate and government partnerships and derived a significant amount of funding and influence through those partnerships. Second, they were science led. This meant that their position on any environmental issue was based on the best available scientific information. Greenpeace, an activist organization, did not work with corporations or governments and tends to be more sociopolitical than scientific in its positioning on issues.

Earthwatch was considered a world savior organization, and its competitors were the World Wildlife Fund, Greenpeace, Conservation International, and The Nature Conservancy.

As with volunteering, there are altruistic and self-serving motivations for donating to nonprofit organizations. The difference is that in donating, people are either altruistic or self-serving—but not both. People who give to nonprofit organizations out of empathy or concern for the less fortunate or out of a sense of responsibility for others were called supporters. Supporters were said to have a communal relationship with their chosen organization and wanted to feel like partners toward a common goal.<sup>11</sup> Other people donated because they expected rewards. These rewards were economic (to earn tax breaks), social (to gain public recognition), or emotional (to build self-esteem or rid oneself of guilt). Donors who had these motivations were called *customers* and had exchange relationships with their chosen organizations.

Making the distinction between these two types of donors was important to any nonprofit organization because the communal and exchange relationships were mutually exclusive and the wrong approach turned off potential donors. Would-be supporters were offended by organizations that used an exchange approach, and reward-driven donors were indifferent to pleas for altruism.

<sup>11</sup> National Council for Voluntary Organizations. *Charitable Giving and Donor Motivation*. [Date? More source information?]

## Paths of Renewal

Earthwatch's revenues from its retail projects had declined continuously since 1993. Even though, according to Earthwatch's market research, the travel and volunteer industries together have grown 10%–20% annually since 1993, Earthwatch had deteriorating performance in both acquiring new volunteers and in getting previous ones to come back. Figures on new business and volunteer retention rates are shown in Exhibit 15.5. A study done in 2008 also revealed that volunteers who joined multiple expeditions took their succeeding trips soon after their first. If a volunteer did not sign up for a second expedition within three years of the first, then that person most likely never would. Over 70% of the organization's marketing resources were expended on getting repeat business rather than on acquiring new customers.

EXHIBIT 15.5		Volunteer Retention						
Batch	Year total	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th
1996	2,518	1,575	322	137	73	46	31	23
1997	2,718	1,818	363	156	98	57	36	26
1998	2,406	1,485	306	120	64	33	20	12
1999	2,307	1,325	300	131	76	46	31	19
2000	2,051	1,177	268	98	47	31	20	13
2001	2,205	1,310	273	115	65	40	29	15
2002	2,299	1,270	258	102	43	23	18	12
2003	1,947	1,047	203	73	34	20	13	11
2004	2,015	1,111	221	81	32	14	10	5
2005	2,053	1,149	189	60	20	4	3	1
2006	1,963	1,075	161	29	7	2	-	-
2007	1,930	1,039	90	15	5	1	1	-
2008	1,641	927	16	1	-	-	-	-
Grand Total	28,053	16,308	2,970	1,118	564	317	212	137

Note: "Batch" refers to a given year, with "Year total" being all the people who took an expedition in that year; "1st" refers to the number of people in a batch who were taking their 1st expedition and can be thought of as the new batch of volunteers. "2nd" refers to the number of people from this batch who would go on to take a 2nd expedition sometime in the future, "3rd" is the people from the same batch who would take a 3rd expedition, and so on.

Source: Babson MBA Marketing Plan. Cuesta, Leo (2009) Earthwatch Institute project presentation: "Historical Retail Data Analysis"

Increasing prices were often blamed for the decline in volunteer numbers. From 2002 to 2008, when the average rate of inflation in the United States was only 2.87%, Earthwatch had an average annual price increase of 8.2%. In that same span of time, Earthwatch's fill rate<sup>12</sup> dropped an average of 2% annually, from 78% in 2002 to 64% in 2008. A pricing study showed that the demand for Earthwatch expeditions was very elastic and that a 1% increase in price resulted in a fill rate decrease of almost 2%. In 2008, the average Earthwatch expedition was priced at \$2,200, with the range going from \$1,100 to \$5,400.<sup>13</sup> In comparison, adventure travel trips ranged from \$2,000 to over \$7,000, while volunteer vacations ranged from \$500 to just above \$2,000. WWF's volunteer trips averaged \$4,000.

<sup>12</sup> Fill rate is the percentage occupancy of an expedition. If an expedition can accommodate 20 volunteers and 18 sign up, then the fill rate is 90%.

<sup>13</sup> Prices exclude airfare.

John Jorgenson, Director of Marketing and Communications, noted:

*The thing that's most lacking in this organization is brand identity—the story that we tell the world. Sometimes we project ourselves as a science organization and other times as an engagement organization. Obviously we're both of those things. The challenge is to bring those two messages together without one trumping the other to form a unified brand identity that everybody can rally around.*

Chief Operating Officer Gareth Price believed that Earthwatch would probably never be a household name like WWF and Greenpeace and that it shouldn't try to be:

*We're a non-campaigning organization. WWF, Conservation International and Greenpeace are all campaigning organizations. We do influence government and local agendas but we're not seen as a "Save the Panda" type of group; that's just not our voice and active campaigning isn't our market. Groups like WWF have a bigger profile because of their public campaigns. Where we would like to be is in the scientific and governmental arenas where we're hitting a different set of stakeholders. We want to be seen as a credible and leading scientific organization. So not every Tom, Dick or Harry on the street will know Earthwatch, but they're not necessarily our target market.*

Another employee offered a conflicting view:

*The biggest thing that I want for Earthwatch is a change in a way that we're viewed externally. I'd like to see our international status elevated and I think key partnerships are the way to do that. We've worked with several organizations that the average person on the street is aware of such as National Geographic, Conservation International and WWF. I want these organizations to be legitimately proud of partnering with us to the point of saying "Look, Earthwatch is our partner" instead of us always being the one to splash their names around. Only then can we be elevated to being known internationally as a solid conservation organization that everyone respects and is sort of a household name.*

John Jorgenson also believed that the Earthwatch name needed to become more ubiquitous and cited a public campaign as one of his most significant marketing achievements in 2008. "Beat the Heat" was a two-month campaign conducted in the summer of 2008 to boost climate change awareness in the Boston area. Significant marketing efforts were made to promote "Beat the Heat," and Earthwatch was featured in various mainstream magazines. John's testament to the campaign's success was "If you Google<sup>14</sup> 'climate change Boston,' Earthwatch's Beat the Heat campaign pops up on the first page and we did not pay Google anything for that."

Many in the organization believed that this internal disagreement regarding identity made Earthwatch ambiguous to its market and translated into declining support over the years.

Ed Wilson thoughtfully considered Earthwatch's situation. What is our true identity? Should we market ourselves in all three competitive arenas (adventure travel, volunteer vacations, and environmental stewardship) or concentrate on one? Should the organization focus more on corporate partnerships or on retail or continue to pursue both?

Ed once again recalled how he spent a night on the bare ground of his Sudanese prison, nervously anticipating his fate in the morning. The next day, while he was being interrogated, Ed heard English voices from outside the prison building. He broke free of his guard, ran toward the voices, and shouted for help. Two men from the British embassy had been looking for the missing youth and were told by the Sudanese police that they had no record of him

---

<sup>14</sup> Google was the world's most widely used Internet search engine at the time. The order of appearance in the search was usually determined by ubiquity but could also be influenced by paying Google search fees.

being held. The two men were about to leave when they heard Ed's cry for help, and this led to his release.

A desperate call for help had freed Ed Wilson from his predicament 26 years ago. He doubted that he could refer to the same tactic at the all-staff address and board of directors meeting. Ed had a week to come up with a plan to free Earthwatch from its slump.

## Preparation Questions

1. Reconstruct what you think was the logic that led to the creation of Earthwatch. Where would you place the existing organization in the GEM typology of social entrepreneurship organizations?
2. Using the Timmons Model to identify and evaluate the different paths of renewal Earthwatch could pursue, which would you recommend to Ed Wilson, and how would it fit in the GEM typology of social entrepreneurship organizations?
3. What are the enablers and inhibitors of each path?

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Glossary

**Accredited Investor:** Under the Securities Act of 1933, a company that offers or sells its securities must register the securities with the SEC or find an exemption from the registration requirements. The Act provides companies with a number of exemptions. For some of the exemptions, such as rules 505 and 506 of Regulation D, a company may sell its securities to what are known as “accredited investors.”

The federal securities laws define the term **accredited investor** in Rule 501 of Regulation D as:

1. a bank, insurance company, registered investment company, business development company, or small business investment company; an employee benefit plan, within the meaning of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act, if a bank, insurance company, or registered investment adviser makes the investment decisions, or if the plan has total assets in excess of \$5 million;
2. a charitable organization, corporation, or partnership with assets exceeding \$5 million;
3. a director, executive officer, or general partner of the company selling the securities;
4. a business in which all the equity owners are accredited investors;
5. a natural person who has individual net worth, or joint net worth with the person's spouse, that exceeds \$1 million at the time of the purchase;
6. a natural person with income exceeding \$200,000 in each of the two most recent years or joint income with a spouse exceeding \$300,000 for those years and a reasonable expectation of the same income level in the current year; or
7. a trust with assets in excess of \$5 million, not formed to acquire the securities offered, whose purchases a sophisticated person makes.

**Acquisition:** Acquiring control of a corporation, called a target, by stock purchase or exchange, either hostile or friendly; also called **takeover**.

**Agency theory:** A branch of economics dealing with the behavior of principals (for example, owners) and their agents (for example, managers).

**All-hands meeting:** A meeting of managers, lawyers, accountants, and investment bankers that sets the timetable and tasks to be accomplished prior to an initial public offering.

**American Stock Exchange (Amex):** Stock exchange located in New York, listing companies that are generally smaller and younger than those on the much larger New York Stock Exchange.

**Angel:** An individual who invests in private companies. The term business angel is sometimes reserved for sophisticated angel investors who invest sizeable sums in private companies. (*See informal investor.*)

**Anglo-Saxon capitalism:** So-called Anglo-Saxon capitalism (also Anglo-Saxon finance) is largely practiced in English speaking countries such as the United Kingdom and the United States. It is a capitalist macroeconomic model in which levels of regulation and taxes are low. In addition, Anglo-Saxon economies generally are more “liberal” and free-market oriented than other capitalist economies in the world. Another major difference between Anglo-Saxon and non-Anglo-Saxon countries is the legal system, which is based on case-law rather than civil code law.

**Antidilution (of ownership):** The right of an investor to maintain the same percentage of ownership of a company's common stock in the event that the company issues more stock. (*See dilution.*)

**Asked:** The price level at which sellers offer securities to buyers.

**ASP (Application Service Provider):** An ASP deploys, hosts, and manages access to a packaged software application for multiple parties from a centrally managed facility. The applications are delivered over networks on a subscription basis.

**Asset acquisition:** Means of effecting a buyout by purchase of certain desired assets rather than shares of the target company.

**Asset-based valuation:** This method considers the fair market value of fixed assets and equipment, and inventory. It is most appropriate for asset intensive businesses such as retail and manufacturing companies.

**Audited financial statements:** A company's financial statements prepared and certified by a certified public accounting firm that is totally independent of the company.

**Babson College:** Babson College, located in Wellesley, Massachusetts, is recognized internationally for its entrepreneurial leadership in a changing global environment. Babson grants BS, MBA, and custom MS and MBA degrees, and has a school of executive education. The Arthur M. Blank Center for Entrepreneurship was dedicated in 1998, and provides a dynamic home for Babson's world-famous entrepreneurship program.

**Backlog:** The sales that have been made but not fulfilled due to lack of inventory to finalize the sale.

**Bake-off:** When a private company compares offers from different investment banks to take it public.

**Balance sheet:** Summary statement of a company's financial position at a given point in time. It summarizes the accounting value of the assets, liabilities, preferred stock, common stock, and retained earnings. Assets = Liabilities + Preferred stock + Common stock + Retained earnings. (*See pro forma statements.*)

**Basis point:** One-hundredth of a percent (0.01%), typically used in expressing yield differentials ( $1.50\% - 1.15\% = 0.35\%$ , or 35 basis points). (*See yield.*)

**Bear:** A person who expects prices to fall.

**Bear market:** A period of generally falling prices and pessimistic attitudes.

**Best efforts offering:** The underwriter makes its best efforts to sell as much as it can of the shares at the offering price. Hence, unlike a firm commitment offering the company offering its shares is not guaranteed a definite amount of money by the underwriter.

**Beauty contest:** When investment banks make their best offers to take a company public.

**Bid:** The price level at which buyers offer to acquire securities from sellers.

**Big Board:** *See New York Stock Exchange.*

**Blue sky:** Refers to laws that safeguard investors from being misled by unscrupulous promoters of companies with little or no substance.

**Book value (of an asset):** The accounting value of an asset as shown on a balance sheet

is the cost of the asset minus its accumulated depreciation. It is not necessarily identical to its market value.

**Book value (of a company):** The common stock equity shown on the balance sheet. It is equal to total assets minus liabilities and preferred stock (synonymous with net worth and owners' equity).

**Bootstrap:** To build a business out of nothing, with minimal outside capital.

**Bottom-up forecasting:** Forecasting your income sheet revenue and expenses based upon a typical day and then multiplying those forecasts by the number of days in the period (i.e., month, quarter, or year).

**Brain-writing:** Similar to brainstorming, but the process is done with written versus oral communication. Ideas are presented and participants add their thoughts in writing. The key is to build on the idea rather than argue why the idea can't work.

**Break-even point:** The sales volume at which a company's net sales revenue just equals its costs. A commonly used approximate formula for the break-even point is Sales revenue = Total fixed costs/Gross margin.

**Bridge financing:** Short-term finance that is expected to be repaid relatively quickly. It usually bridges a short-term financing need. For example, it provides cash needed before an expected stock flotation.

**Burn rate:** The negative, real-time cash flow from a company's operations, usually computed monthly.

**Business Angel:** See angel.

**Business model:** The way in which a business makes a profit. As an example, here is IBM's definition of its business model: "IBM sells services, hardware and software. These offerings are bolstered by IBM's research and development capabilities. If a customer requires financing, IBM can provide that too." Southwest Airlines' business model is to provide inexpensive fares by keeping costs low through being more efficient than its major competitors.

**Business plan:** Document prepared by entrepreneurs, possibly in conjunction with their professional advisors, detailing the past, present, and intended future of the company. It contains a thorough analysis of the managerial, physical, labor, product, and financial resources of the company, plus the background of the company, its previous trading record, and its market position. The business plan contains detailed profit, balance sheet, and cash flow projections for two years ahead, and less detailed information for the following three years. The business plan crystallizes and focuses the management team's ideas. It explains their strategies, sets

objectives, and is used to monitor their subsequent performance.

**Buyback:** A corporation's repurchase of stock that it has previously issued; for example, a company buys its stock back from a venture capital firm that has previously been issued stock in return for money invested in the company.

**Call:** A contract allowing the issuer of a security to buy back that security from the purchaser at an agreed-upon price during a specific period of time.

**Capital gain:** The amount by which the selling price of an asset (for example, common stock) exceeds the seller's initial purchase price.

**Capitalization rate:** The discount rate,  $K$ , used to determine the present value of a stream of future earnings.  $PV = (\text{Normalized earnings after taxes})/(K/100)$ , where PV is the present value of the firm and K is the firm's cost of capital.

**Carried interest:** A venture capital firm's share of the profit earned by a fund. In the United States, the carried interest (carry) is typically 20% of the profit after investors' principal has been repaid.

**Cash flow:** The difference between the company's cash receipts and its cash payments in a given period.

**Cash-flow statement:** A summary of a company's cash flow over a period of time. (See *pro forma statements*.)

**Channel coverage:** The product distribution strategy in regards to how many channels to use. It can be intensive (multiple channels), selective (a subset of channels), or exclusive (one channel).

**Chattel (or property) mortgage:** A loan secured by specific assets.

**Classic venture capital:** Money invested privately in seed-, startup-, expansion-, and late-stage companies by venture capital firms. The term "classic" is used to distinguish from money invested privately in acquisitions, buyouts, mergers, and reorganizations.

**Collateral:** An asset pledged as security for a loan.

**Common stock:** Shares of ownership, or equity, in a corporation.

**Common-sized income statement:** Converting the income statement into percentages with total revenue equaling 100% and all other lines a percentage of total revenue.

**Comparable:** Using existing industry or company financials to forecast your own venture's financials.

**Compensating balance:** A bank requires a customer to maintain a certain level of demand deposits that do not bear interest. The interest forgone by the customer on the compensating balance recompenses the bank for services provided, credit lines, and loans.

**Conversion ratio:** The number of shares of common stock that may be received in exchange for each share of a convertible security.

**Convertible debt:** A loan that can be exchanged for equity.

**Convertible security:** Preferred stock that is convertible into common stock according to a specified ratio at the security holder's option.

**Cooperative (co-op):** an autonomous association of persons united voluntarily to meet their common economic, social, and cultural needs and aspirations through a jointly-owned and democratically-controlled enterprise.

**Corporation:** A business form that is an entity legally separate from its owners. Its important features include limited liability, easy transfer of ownership, and unlimited life.

**Cost of capital:** The required rate of return of various types of financing. The overall cost of capital is a weighted average of the individual required rates of returns (costs).

**Cost of debt capital:** The interest rate charged by a company's lenders.

**Cost of equity capital:** The rate of return on investment required by the company's common shareholders (colloquially called the hurdle rate).

**Cost of goods sold:** The direct cost of the product sold. For a retail business, the cost of all goods sold in a given period equals the inventory at the beginning of the period plus the cost of goods purchased during that period minus the inventory at the end of the period.

**Cost of preferred stock:** The rate of return on investment required by the company's preferred shareholders.

**Covenant:** A restriction on a borrower imposed by a lender. For example, it could be a requirement placed on a company to achieve and maintain specified targets such as levels of cash flow, balance sheet ratios, or specified capital expenditure levels in order to retain financing facilities.

**Cumulative dividend provision:** A requirement that unpaid dividends on preferred stock accumulate and have to be paid before a dividend is paid on common stock.

**Current ratio:** Current assets/Current liabilities. This ratio indicates a company's ability to cover its current liabilities with its current assets.

**Customer relationship management (CRM):** Systems designed to compile and manage data about customers.

**Customer value proposition (CVP):** The difference between total customer benefits and total customer costs, which are both monetary and non-monetary.

**Deal flow:** The rate at which new investment propositions come to funding institutions.

**Debenture:** A document containing an acknowledgment of indebtedness on the part of a company, usually secured by a charge on the company's assets.

**Debt service:** Payments of principal and interest required on a debt over a given period.

**Deep pockets:** Refers to an investor who has substantial financial resources.

**Default:** The nonperformance of a stated obligation. The nonpayment by the issuer of interest or principal on a bond or the nonperformance of a covenant.

**Deferred payment:** A debt that has been incurred and will be repaid at some future date.

**Depreciation:** The systematic allocation of the cost of an asset over a period of time for financial reporting and tax purposes.

**Dilution (of ownership):** When a new stock issue results in a decrease in the preissue owners' percentage of the common stock.

**Discounted cash flow (DCF):** Method of evaluating investments by adjusting the cash flows for the time value of money. In the decision to invest in a project, all future cash flows expected from that investment are discounted back to their present value at the time the investment is made. The discount rate is whatever rate of return the investor requires. In theory, if the present value of the future cash flows is greater than the money being invested, the investment should be made. (*See discount rate, internal rate of return, net present value, and present value.*)

**Discount rate (capitalization rate):** Rate of return used to convert future values to present values. (*See capitalization rate, internal rate of return, and rate of return.*)

**DJIA:** Dow Jones Industrial Average. The Dow Jones Industrial Average is a price-weighted average of 30 significant stocks traded on the New York Stock Exchange and the NASDAQ. The DJIA was invented by Charles Dow back in 1896. Often referred to as "the Dow," the DJIA is the oldest and single most watched index in the world. The DJIA includes companies like General Electric, Disney, Exxon, and Microsoft.

**Doriot, General Georges:** Founder of the modern venture capital industry, Harvard Business School professor, and one of the creators of INSEAD.

**Double bottom line:** captures both the financial profit the organization earns and also the social benefit it provides society; associated with social entrepreneurship.

**Double jeopardy:** The case where an entrepreneur's main source of income and most of her/his net worth depend on her/his business.

**Due diligence:** The process of investigation by investors into a potential investee's

management team, resources, and trading performance. This includes rigorous testing of the business plan assumptions and the verification of material facts (such as existing accounts).

**Dun & Bradstreet (D&B):** The biggest credit-reporting agency in the United States.

**Early-stage financing:** This category includes seed-stage, startup-stage, and first-stage financing.

**Earnings:** This is synonymous with income and profit.

**Earnings before interest and taxes (EBIT):** *See operating income.*

**Earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA):** Often referred to as cash flow. It removes non-cash charges, such as depreciation and amortization, to get a clearer view of the cash-flow-generating ability of a company.

**Earning-capitalization valuation:** This values a company by capitalizing its earnings. Company value = Net income/Capitalization rate.

**Earnings per share (EPS):** A company's net income divided by the number of common shares issued and outstanding.

**Earn-out:** A common contract provision when a company is sold or acquired. The founders will earn a portion of the sales price over time based upon continuing performance of the new venture.

**Elasticity of demand:** The percentage change in the quantity of a good demanded divided by the percentage change in the price of that good. When the elasticity is greater than 1, the demand is said to be elastic, and when it is less than 1, it is inelastic. In the short-term, the demand for nonessential goods (for example, airline travel) is usually elastic, and the demand for essentials (for example, electricity) is usually inelastic.

**Employee stock ownership plan (ESOP):** A trust established to acquire shares in a company for subsequent allocation to employees over a period of time. Several possibilities are available for structuring the operation of an ESOP. Essentially, either the company makes payments to the trust, which the trust uses to purchase shares; or the trust, having previously borrowed to acquire shares, may use the payments from the company to repay loans. The latter form is referred to as a leveraged ESOP and may be used as a means of providing part of the funding required to effect a buyout. A particular advantage of an ESOP is the possibility of tax relief for the contributions made by the company to the trust and on the cost of borrowing in those cases where the trust purchases shares in advance.

**Employment agreement:** An agreement whereby senior managers contract to remain with the company for a specified period. For

the investing institutions, such an agreement provides some measure of security that the company's performance will not be adversely affected by the unexpected departure of key managers.

**Equity:** *See owners' equity.*

**Equity kicker (or warrant):** An option or instrument linked to the provision of other types of funding, particularly mezzanine finance, which enables the provider to obtain an equity stake and hence a share in capital gains. In this way, providers of subordinated debt can be compensated for the higher risk they incur.

**EU:** The European Union, originally included the following countries: the Netherlands, Sweden, Finland, Denmark, Germany, Belgium, Luxembourg, the United Kingdom, Ireland, France, Austria, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Greece. Since May 1, 2004, the following countries also belong to the EU: Cyprus, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Malta, Poland, Slovakia, Slovenia, and the Czech Republic.

**Exit:** The means by which investors in a company realize all or part of their investment. (*See harvest.*)

**Expansion financing:** Working capital for the initial expansion of a company that is producing and shipping products and has growing accounts receivable and inventories.

**Factoring:** A means of enhancing the cash flow of a business. A factoring company pays to the firm a certain proportion of the value of the firm's trade debts and then receives the cash as the trade debtors settle their accounts. Invoice discounting is a similar procedure.

**FAQ:** Frequently asked questions—a computer text file that contains answers to common questions about a topic.

**FASB (Financial Accounting Standards Board):** A private sector board (industry) that establishes financial accounting and reporting standards.

**Filing:** Documents, including the prospectus, filed with the SEC for approval before an IPO.

**Financing flows:** Cash flows generated by debt and equity financing.

**Finder:** A person or firm that attempts to raise funding for a private company.

**Firm commitment offering:** The underwriter guarantees to raise a certain amount of money for the company and other selling stockholders at the IPO.

**First-round financing:** The first investment made by external investors.

**First-stage financing:** Financing to initiate full manufacturing and sales.

**Five Cs of credit:** The five crucial elements for obtaining credit are character (borrower's integrity), capacity (sufficient cash flow to

service the debt), capital (borrower's net worth), collateral (assets to secure the debt), and conditions (of the borrowing company, its industry, and the general economy).

**Fixed and floating charges:** Claims on assets pledged as security for debt. Fixed charges cover specific fixed assets, and floating charges relate to all or part of a company's assets.

**Floating lien:** A general lien against a group of assets, such as accounts receivable or inventory, without the assets being specifically identified.

**Flotation:** A method of raising equity financing by selling shares on a stock market, and often allowing management and institutions to realize some of their investment at the same time. (*See initial public offering.*)

**Follow-on financing:** A second or subsequent round of funding for a company.

**Founder shares:** Shares that the founders issue to themselves in exchange for their "sweat equity," meaning that the founders buy their shares for a nominal amount of cash. Founder shares are typically issued prior to the first round of financing.

**Four Fs:** Founders, family, friends, and foolhardy person who invest in a person's private business, generally a startup. (*See informal investor and angel.*)

**Franchising:** An organizational form in which a firm (the franchisor) with a market-tested business package centered on a product or service enters into a continuing contractual relationship with franchisees operating under the franchisor's trade name to produce or market goods or services according to a format specified by the franchisor.

**Free cash flow:** Cash flow in excess of that required to fund all projects that have a positive net present value when discounted at the relevant cost of capital. Conflicts of interest between shareholders and managers may arise when the organization generates free cash flow. Shareholders may desire higher dividends, but managers may wish to invest in projects providing a return below the cost of capital. (*See cost of capital and net present value.*)

**Future value:** The value at a future date of a present amount of money.  $FV_t = PV \times (1 + K/100)^t$  where  $FV_t$  is the future value,  $PV$  is the present value,  $K$  is the percentage annual rate of return, and  $t$  is the number of years. For example, an investment of \$100,000 must have a future value of \$384,160 after four years to produce a rate of return of 40%, which is the kind of return that an investor in an early-stage company expects to earn. (*See net present value, present value, and rate of return.*)

**Gatekeeper:** Colloquial term for a person or firm that advises clients on investments

in venture capital funds; formally called an investment advisor.

**G7:** Group of Seven Countries—Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, United Kingdom and USA—that meet to discuss issues covering macroeconomic management, international trade, international finances, relations with developing countries, and other global issues. They are sometimes joined by Russia, making the co-called G8.

**GDP (Gross Domestic Product):** The total market value of goods and services produced by workers and capital within a country's borders during a specific period, which is generally a calendar year.

**Gearing:** British term of leverage. (*See leverage.*)

**GEM (Global Entrepreneurship Monitor):** An annual study of entrepreneurial activity within different countries.

**General partner:** A partner with unlimited legal responsibility for the debts and liabilities of a partnership.

**Going concern:** This assumes that the company will continue as an operating business as opposed to going out of business and liquidating its assets.

**Golden handcuffs:** A combination of rewards and penalties given to key managers to dissuade them from leaving the company. Examples are high salaries, paid on a deferred basis while employment is maintained, and stock options.

**Goodwill:** The difference between the purchase price of a company and the net value of its assets purchased.

**Gross margin:** Gross profit as a percentage of net sales revenue.

**Gross profit (gross income, gross earnings):** Net sales revenue minus the direct cost of the products sold.

**Guarantee:** An undertaking to prove that a debt or obligation of another will be paid or performed. It may relate either to a specific debt or to a series of transactions such as a guarantee of a bank overdraft. For example, entrepreneurs are often required to provide personal guarantees for loans borrowed by their companies.

**Guerilla marketing:** Unique, low cost marketing methods to capture attention in a crowded marketplace.

**Harvest:** The realization of the value of an investment. (*See exit.*)

**Headcount:** The number of employees within a company at a particular point in time.

**High-potential venture:** A company started with the intent of growing quickly to annual sales of at least \$30-50 million in five years. It has the potential to have a firm-commitment IPO.

**Hurdle rate:** The minimum rate of return that is acceptable to investors. (*See return on investment.*)

**Hybrid organization:** nonprofit with an earned income component dedicated to achieving social value at a level significantly higher (say, two-thirds or more) than economic value.

**Income statement:** A summary of a company's revenues, expenses, and profits over a specified period of time. (*See pro forma statements.*)

**Informal investor:** An individual who puts money into a private company—usually a startup or a small business. Informal investments range from micro loans from family members to sizable equity purchases by sophisticated business angels.

**Initial public offering (IPO):** Process by which a company raises money, and gets listed on a stock market. (*See flotation.*)

**Intellectual property (IP):** Knowledge that a company possesses and considers proprietary. IP can be protected through patents, trademarks, etc.

**Interest cover:** The extent to which periodic interest commitments on borrowings are exceeded by periodic profits. It is the ratio of profits before the deduction of interest and taxes to interest payments. The ratio may also be expressed as the cash flow from operations divided by the amount of interest payable.

**Internal locus of control:** Persons with an internal locus of control see themselves as responsible for the outcomes of their own actions. These individuals often believe that they control their destiny.

**Internal rate of return (IRR):** The discount rate that equates the present value of the future net cash flows from an investment with the project's cash out-flows. It is a means of expressing the percentage rate of return projected on a proposed investment. For an investment in a company, the calculation takes account of cash invested, cash receipts from dividend payments and redemptions, percentage of equity held, expected date of payments, realization of the investment and capitalization at that point, and possible further financing requirements. The calculation will frequently be quoted in a range depending on sensitivity analysis. (*See discount rate, present value, future value, and rate of return.*)

**Inventory:** Finished goods, work in process of manufacture, and raw materials owned by a company.

**Investment bank:** A financial institution engaged in the issue of new securities, including management and underwriting of issues as well as securities trading and distribution.

**Investment flows:** Cash flows associated with purchase and sales of both fixed assets and business interests.

**IPO:** *See initial public offering.*

**IRR:** *See internal rate of return.*

**ISP:** Internet Service Provider—a company that provides direct connections to the Internet for computer users.

**Junior debt:** Loan ranking after senior debt or secured debt for payment in the event of a default.

**Junk bonds:** A variety of high-yield, unsecured bonds tradable on a secondary market and not considered to be of investment quality by credit-rating agencies. High yield normally indicates higher risk.

**Key person insurance:** Additional security provided to financial backers of a company through the purchase of insurance on the lives of key managers who are seen as crucial to the future of the company. Should one or more of those key executives die prematurely, the financial backers would receive the insurance payment.

**Key success factors (KSFs):** The attributes that customers use to distinguish between competing products or services. KSFs go beyond just product attributes, and may include brand and other intangibles.

**Lead investor:** In syndicated deals, normally the investor who originates, structures, and subsequently plays the major monitoring role.

**Lead underwriter:** The head of a syndicate of financial firms that are sponsoring an initial public offering of securities or a secondary offering of securities.

**Lead venture capital firm:** The head of a syndicate of venture capital firms that is investing privately in a company.

**Lemons and plums:** Bad deals and good deals, respectively.

**Leverage:** The amount of debt in a company's financing structure, which may be expressed as a percentage of the total financing or as a ratio of debt to equity. The various quasi-equity (preference-type shares) and quasi-debt (mezzanine debt) instruments used to fund later-stage companies means that great care is required in calculating and interpreting leverage or gearing ratios.

**Leveraged buyout (LBO):** Acquisition of a company by an investor group, an investor, or an investment/LBO partnership, with a significant amount of debt (usually at least 70% of the total capitalization) and with plans to repay the debt with funds generated from the acquired company's operations or from asset sales. LBOs are frequently financed in part with junk bonds.

**Lien:** A legal claim on certain assets that are used to secure a loan.

**Limited liability company:** A company owned by "members," who either manage the business themselves or appoint "managers" to run it for them. All members and managers have the benefit of limited liability, and, in most cases, are taxed in the same way as a subchapter S corporation without having to conform to the S corporation restrictions.

**Limited partnership:** A business organization with one or more **general partners**, who manage the business and assume legal debts and obligations, and one or more **limited partners**, who are liable only to the extent of their investments. Limited partners also enjoy rights to the partnership's cash flow, but are not liable for company obligations.

**Line of credit (with a bank):** An arrangement between a bank and a customer specifying the maximum amount of unsecured debt the customer can owe the bank at a given point in time.

**Line of credit (with a vendor):** A limit set by the seller on the amount that a purchaser can buy on credit.

**Liquidation value (of an asset):** The amount of money that can be realized from the sale of an asset sold separately from its operating organization.

**Liquidity:** The ability of an asset to be converted to cash as quickly as possible and without any price discount.

**Listing:** Acceptance of a security for trading on an organized stock exchange. Hence, a stock traded on the New York Stock Exchange is said to be listed on the NYSE.

**Living dead:** Venture capital jargon for a company that has no prospect of being harvested with a public offering or an acquisition; hence, the venture capital firm cannot realize its investment in the company.

**Liquidation value:** The total amount that could be realized from selling the business' individual assets, after satisfying all of the business' liabilities.

**Loan note:** A form of vendor finance or deferred payment. The purchaser (borrower) may agree to make payments to the holder of the loan note at specified future dates. The holder may be able to obtain cash at an earlier date by selling at a discount to a financing institution that will collect on maturity.

**Lock-up period:** An interval during which an investment may not be sold. In the case of an IPO, employees may not sell their shares for a period of time determined by the underwriter and usually lasting 180 days.

**Locus of control:** The perception of the factors responsible for the outcome of an event. Individuals with an internal locus of control believe their actions caused the outcome. Conversely, individuals with an external locus of

control believe the outcome was determined by outside forces.

**Management buy in (MBI):** The transfer of ownership of an entity to a new set of owners in which new managers coming into the entity are a significant element.

**Management buyout (MBO):** The transfer of ownership of an entity to a new set of owners in which the existing management and employees are a significant element.

**Market capitalization:** The total value at market prices of the securities in issue for a company, a stock market, or a sector of a stock market, calculated by multiplying the number of shares issued by the market price per share.

**Market-comparable valuation:** The value of a private company based on the valuation of similar public companies.

**Marketing:** An organizational function and a set of processes for creating, communicating, and delivering value to customers and for managing customer relationships in ways that benefit the organization and its stakeholders.<sup>1</sup>

**Merger:** The combining of two or more entities into one, through a purchase acquisition or a pooling of interests.

**Mezzanine financing:** Strictly, any form of financing instrument between ordinary shares and senior debt. The forms range from senior mezzanine debt, which may simply carry an interest rate above that for senior secured debt, to junior mezzanine debt, which may carry rights to subscribe for equity but no regular interest payment.

**Microcredit:** Tiny loans to entrepreneurs too poor to qualify for traditional bank loans. In developing countries especially, microcredit enables very poor people to engage in self-employment projects that generate income.

**Microfinancing:** Same as microcredit.

**Modified book value:** Valuation of a business in which all assets and liabilities (including off-balance sheet, intangible, and contingent) are adjusted to their fair market values.

**Money left on the table:** The difference between the price at the end of the first day's trading and the initial offering price, multiplied by the number of shares in the offering.

**Multiple:** The amount of money realized from the sale of an investment divided by the amount of money originally invested.

**Murphy's Law:** What can go wrong, will go wrong. An unexpected setback will happen at the most inconvenient moment.

**National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation (NASDAQ):** An electronic system for trading stocks. It is owned

<sup>1</sup> American Marketing Association, 2004; <http://www.marketingpower.com/content21257.php>

and operated by The Nasdaq Stock Market, Inc.

**Necessity entrepreneurship:** A business started out of necessity by an entrepreneur who cannot find a better source of income through employment.

**NGO:** Non-Governmental Organization.

**Net Assets:** Assets less liabilities.

**Net income (net earnings, net profit):** A company's final income after all expenses and taxes have been deducted from all revenues. It is also known as the bottom line.

**Net income margin:** Net income as a percentage of net sales revenue. In a typical year an average US company has a net income margin of about 5%.

**Net liquid value:** Liquid financial assets minus callable liabilities.

**Net present value:** The present value of an investment's future net cash flows minus the initial investment. In theory, if the net present value is greater than 0, an investment should be made. For example, an investor is asked to invest \$100,000 in a company that is expanding. He expects a rate of return of 30%. The company offers to pay him back \$300,000 after four years. The present value of \$300,000 at a rate of return of 30% is \$105,038. Thus, the net present value of the investment is \$5,038, so the investment should be made. (*See free cash flow, future value, present value, and rate of return.*)

**Net profit:** *See net income.*

**Net surplus:** Total revenue minus total cost and expenses in a non-profit organization; equivalent to net income in a for-profit enterprise.

**Net worth:** *See book value.*

**New York Stock Exchange (NYSE):** The largest stock exchange in the world, located in New York. Also known as the Big Board.

**Nonprofit organization:** organizations that are considered public charities are owned by the public and, as such, cannot accrue privately owned profits. These organization have applied and been granted nonprofit status and thus do not have to pay taxes.

**NPO:** Non-Profit Organization; also Not-for-profit Organization.

**OECD:** The Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development comprises Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Republic of Korea, Japan, Luxembourg, Mexico, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, UK, and United States.

**Offering circular:** *See prospectus.*

**Olin College:** Starting in the late 1980's, the National Science Foundation and the engineering community at-large started calling for

reform in engineering education. In order to serve the needs of the growing global economy, it was clear that engineers needed to have business and entrepreneurship skills, creativity, and an understanding of the social, political, and economic contexts of engineering. The F.W. Olin Foundation decided the best way to maximize its impact was to help create a college that could address these emerging needs. Olin College was chartered in 1997 and took its first freshman class in 2002. It is located adjacent to Babson College.

**Operating cash flows:** Cash flows directly generated by a company's operations. The cash flow from operating activity equals net income plus depreciation minus increase in accounts receivable minus increase in inventories plus increase in accounts payable plus increase in accruals. (*See financing flows and investment flows.*)

**Operating income:** Earnings (profit) before deduction of interest payments and income taxes, abbreviated to EBIT. It measures a company's earning power from its ongoing operations. It is of particular concern to a company's lenders, such as banks, because operating income demonstrates the ability of a company to earn sufficient income to pay the interest on its debt. (*See times interest earned.*)

**Opportunity:** An idea that has commercial viability and that provides the entrepreneur and company the potential to earn attractive margins and a return on their investment.

**Opportunity entrepreneurship:** The pursuit of a new venture because it is deemed as better than remaining in one's current job or other jobs that might be available.

**Options:** See stock option plan.

**Out of cash (OOC):** A common problem with entrepreneurial companies. The OOC time period is cash on hand divided by the burn rate.

**Over the counter (OTC):** The purchase and sale of financial instruments not conducted on a stock exchange such as the New York Stock Exchange or the American Stock Exchange. The largest OTC market is the NASDAQ.

**Owners' equity:** Common stock plus retained earnings. (*See book value of a company.*)

**Pain point:** A potential customer's problem that a business can relieve with its product or service.

**Paid-in capital:** Par value per share times the number of shares issued. Additional paid-in capital is the price paid in excess of par value times the number of shares issued.

**Partnership:** Legal form of a business in which two or more persons are co-owners, sharing profits and losses.

**Par value:** Nominal price placed on a share of common stock.

**Patent:** Granted by the government, patents protect unique devices (or combinations of components integrated into a device) and processes.

**Penetration pricing:** Pricing your product at a relatively lower price to gain high market share, but with lower margins.

**Piggy-back registration rights:** The right to register unregistered stock in the event of a company having a public stock offering.

**Pledging:** The use of a company's accounts receivable as security (collateral) for a short-term loan.

**Pop (first day):** Percentage increase in the price of a stock at the end of the first day's trading over the initial offering price.

**Positioning:** A company's offering on certain product attributes—the ones customers care about most—relative to competitive offerings.

**Portfolio:** Collection of investments. For example, the portfolio of a venture capital fund comprises all its investments.

**Post-money valuation:** The value of a company immediately after a round of additional money is invested.

**Pratt's Guide to Private Equity Sources:** Annual sourcebook for private equity, especially venture capital.

**Preemptive rights:** The rights of shareholders to maintain their percentage ownership of a company by purchasing a proportionate number of shares of any new issue of common stock. (*See antidilution, dilution, and pro rata interest.*)

**Preferred stock (Preference shares):** A class of shares that incorporate the right to a fixed dividend and usually a prior claim on assets, in preference to ordinary shares, in the event of a liquidation. Cumulative preference shares provide an entitlement to a cumulative dividend if, in any year, the preference dividend is unpaid due to insufficient profits being earned. Preference shares are usually redeemable at specific dates.

**Pre-money valuation:** The value of a company's equity before additional money is invested.

**Preliminary prospectus:** The initial document published by an underwriter of a new issue of stock to be given to prospective investors. It is understood that the document will be modified significantly before the final prospectus is published; also called a red herring.

**Prepayment:** A payment on a loan made prior to the original due date.

**Present value (PV):** The current value of a given future cash flow stream,  $FV_t'$  after  $t$  years, discounted at a rate of return of  $K\%$  is

**PV** =  $FV_t / (1 + K/100)^t$ . For example, if an investor expects a rate of return of 60% on an investment in a seed-stage company, and she believes that her investment will be worth \$750,000 after five years, then the present value of her investment is \$71,526. (*See discount rate, future value, net present value, and rate of return.*)

**Present value of future cash flows (valuation):** Present value is today's value of a future payment, or stream of payments, discounted at some appropriate compound interest, or discount rate; also called time value of money.

The present value of company is the present value of the future free cash flows plus the residual (terminal) value of the firm:

$$PV = \sum_{t=1}^N (FCF_t) / (1 + K)^t + (RV_N) / (1 + K)^N$$

Where K is the cost of capital; FCF<sub>t</sub> is the free cash flow in year t; N is the number of years; and RV<sub>N</sub> is the residual value in year N.

Free Cash Flow  
= Operating Income  
- Interest  
- Taxes on Operating Income  
+ Depreciation & Other Non-Cash Charges  
- Increase in Net Working Capital  
- Capital Expenditures (Replacement & Growth)  
- Principal Repayments

**Prevalence rate:** The percentage of a population participating in a particular activity.

**Price discrimination:** A strategy where different customer segments are charged different prices.

**Price-earnings ratio (P/E ratio):** The ratio of the market value of a firm's equity to its after-tax profits (may be calculated from price per share and earnings per share).

**Price points:** Product pricing in standardized or fixed points.

**Price promotion:** Discounts from the base price for a short period to attain specific goals such as introducing a product to new customers.

**Price skimming:** The strategy of pricing your product high to generate high margins, but recognizing that you'll gain limited market share because prices are relatively high.

**Primary data:** Market research collected specifically for a particular purpose through focus groups, surveys, or experiments.

**Primary target audience (PTA):** A group of potential customers identified by demographic and psychographic data that will be the focus of the company's early marketing and sales efforts.

**Prime rate:** Short-term interest rate charged by a bank to its largest, most credit-worthy customers.

**Private placement:** The direct sales of securities to a small number of investors (*See Regulation D.*)

**Product life cycle:** A stage model of a product's life, including introduction, growth, maturity, and decline; a similar concept to the S-curve lifecycle for an industry.

**Profit:** Synonymous with income and earnings.

**Pro forma statements:** Projected financial statements: income and cash-flow statements and balance sheets. For a startup company, it is usual to make pro forma statements monthly for the first two years and annually for the next three years.

**Pro rata interest:** The right granted the investor to maintain the same percentage ownership in the event of future financings. (*See antidilution and dilution.*)

**Prospectus:** A document giving a description of a securities issue, including a complete statement of the terms of the issue and a description of the issuer, as well as its historical financial statements. Also referred to as an offering circular. (*See red herring.*)

**Psychographics:** Information that categorizes customers based upon their personality, psychological traits, lifestyles, values, and social group membership. It helps to understand what motivates customers to act in the ways they do, and is important because members of a specific demographic category can have dramatically different psychographic profiles. Marketing strictly based on demographic information will be ineffective because it ignores these differences.

**Purchasing Power Parity (PPP):** A method of measuring the relative purchasing power of different countries' currencies over the same types of goods and services. Because goods and services may cost more in one country than in another, PPP allows us to make more accurate comparisons of standards of living across countries. PPP estimates use price comparisons of comparable items, but, since not all items can be matched exactly across countries and time, the estimates are not always "robust."

**Put:** A contract allowing the holder to sell a given number of securities back to the issuer of the contract at a fixed price for a given period of time.

**Quiet period:** The period starting when an issuer hires an underwriter and ending 25 days after the security begins trading, during which the issuer cannot comment publicly on the offering, due to SEC rules.

**R<sup>2</sup> (R-Square):** The fraction of variation in the dependent variable that is explained by variation in the independent variable. A high value indicates a strong relationship between the two variables.

**Rate of return:** The annual return on an investment. If a sum of money, PV, is invested and after t years that investment is worth FV<sub>t</sub>, the return on investment K = [(FV/PV)<sup>1/t</sup> - 1] × 100%. For example, if \$100 is invested originally, and one year later \$108 is paid back to the investor, the annual rate of return is 8%. **Realization:** *See exit and harvest.*

**Redeemable shares:** Shares that may be redeemable at the option of the company, or the shareholder, or both.

**Red herring:** Preliminary prospectus circulated by underwriters to gauge investor interest in a planned offering. A legend in red ink on its cover indicates that the registration has not yet become effective and is still being reviewed by the SEC.

**Registration statement:** A carefully worded and organized document, including a prospectus, filed with the SEC before an IPO.

**Regulation D:** An SEC regulation that governs private placement exemption.

**Reserve(s):** Non-profit organization's equivalent of owners' equity in a for-profit company.

**Residual value:** Market capitalization of a company at a specific time.

**Revenue drivers:** Elements within a business model that can be influenced to increase revenue, such as price, quantity purchased, awareness of product, availability, and so forth.

**Retained earnings:** The part of net income retained in the company and not distributed to stockholders.

**Return on investment (ROI):** The annual income that an investment earns.

**Roll-up:** A strategy to consolidate a fragmented industry.

**Running returns:** Periodic returns, such as interest and dividends, from an investment (in contrast to a one-time capital gain).

**Road show:** A series of meetings with potential investors and brokers, conducted by a company and its underwriter, prior to a securities offering, especially an IPO.

**SBA:** Small Business Administration.

**SBDC:** Small Business Development Centers (supported by the SBA).

**SBI:** Small Business Institutes, run by universities and colleges with SBA support.

**SBIC:** Small Business Investments Companies.

**SBIR:** Small Business Innovation Research Program.

**S-curve:** A model of new market product adoption. It illustrates market emergence, rapid growth, stability, and decline.

**Schumpeter, Joseph A.:** Moravian-born economist whose book *The Theory of Economic Development*, written in Vienna in 1912, introduced the modern theory of entrepreneurship, in which the entrepreneur

plays the central role in economic development by destroying the static equilibrium of the existing economy. Excellent modern examples are the roles played by Steve Jobs, Bill Gates, and Dan Bricklin in creating the microcomputer industry in the late 1970s. By the beginning of the 1990s, microcomputers (personal computers) were the principal force shaping the computer industry, and the old companies manufacturing mainframe and minicomputers, which dominated the computer industry until the mid-1980s, were in distress, ranging from outright bankruptcy to record-breaking losses.

**SCORE:** Service Core of Retired Executives, sponsored by the SBA to provide consulting to small businesses.

**Secondary data:** Market research that is gathered from already published sources, like an industry association study or census report.

**Second-round financing:** The introduction of further funding by the original investors or new investors to enable the company to grow or deal with unexpected problems. Each round of financing tends to cover the next period of growth.

**Second-stage financing:** Financing to fuel the growth of a young company.

**Secondary offering:** The sale of stock by an issuer or underwriter after a company's securities have already begun trading publicly.

**Secondary target market (STA):** See primary target audience. A group of potential customers identified by demographic and psychographic data that will be a secondary or alternative focus of the company's early marketing and sales efforts.

**Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC):** Regulatory body for investor protection in the United States, created by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. The supervision of dealers is delegated to the self-regulatory bodies of the stock exchanges and NASD under the provisions of the Maloney Act of 1938.

**Seed financing:** A relatively small amount of money provided to prove a concept; it may involve product development and market research but rarely involves the initial marketing of a product.

**Seed-stage company:** A company that doesn't have much more than a concept.

**Sensitivity analysis:** Examination of how the projected performance of the business varies with changes in the key assumptions on which the forecasts are based.

**Short-term security:** Generally, an obligation maturing in less than one year.

**Slotting fees:** The fees that a product manufacturer pays a retail outlet to place products in its warehouse and then ultimately in the retail store.

**Small business:** The SBA defines most small businesses as ones with 500 or fewer employees; but there are exceptions. Details can be found at <http://web.sba.gov/faqs/faqindex.cfm?areaID=15>

**Social capital:** Networks, norms, and trust that facilitates coordination and cooperation between people for mutual benefit.

**Social entrepreneur:** Someone who develops social innovation through entrepreneurial solutions. A social entrepreneur recognizes a social problem or need, comes up with a solution, and creates an organization to pursue it.

**Social model:** This term is often applied to the economic systems of nations where there is high welfare protection including restrictions on employer's rights to hire and fire employees, generous unemployment benefits, and mandated work weeks (e.g., 35 hour maximum in France). The social models are especially strong in France and Germany.

**Sole proprietorship:** A business form with one owner who is responsible for all the firm's liabilities.

**Startup company:** A company that is already in business and is developing a prototype but has not sold it in significant commercial quantities.

**Startup financing:** Funding provided to companies for use in product development and initial marketing. Companies may be in the process of being organized or may have been in business a short time (one year or less), but have not sold their product commercially. Generally, such firms have assembled the key management, prepared a business plan, made market studies, and completed other preliminary tasks.

**Stock option plan:** A plan designed to motivate employees, especially key ones, by placing a portion of the common stock of the company under option at a fixed price to defined employees. The option may then be exercised by the employees at a future date. Stock options are often introduced as part of the remuneration package of senior executives.

**Stock-out:** Demand for a product exceeds the inventory that a company has on hand. Stock-outs may lead to lost sales as customers seek other options.

**Strategic acquisition:** When a company buys another company to get access to a product or service that complements its existing business.

**Subchapter S corporation:** A small business corporation in which the owners personally pay the corporation's income taxes.

**Subordinated debt:** Loans that may be unsecured or, more commonly, secured by secondary charges that rank after senior debt for repayment in the event of default. Also referred to as junior debt or mezzanine debt.

**Sweat equity:** Equity acquired by the management team at favorable terms reflecting the value to the business of the managers' past and future efforts.

**Syndicate:** A group of investors that act together when investing in a company.

**TEA Indices (Total Entrepreneurial Activity Indices):** The percent of the adult population that is participating in a specific type of entrepreneurship. For example, the TEA (Overall) Index is the percent of the adult population that is in the process of starting a new business or has a business less than 42 months old.

**Tertiary Target Audience (TTA):** See primary target audience. A group of potential customers identified by demographic and psychographic data that will **not** be the focus of the company's early marketing and sales efforts.

**Term loan:** Debt originally scheduled to be repaid in more than one year, but usually in 10 years or less.

**Term sheet:** Summary of the principal conditions for a proposed investment in a company by a venture capital firm.

**Third-stage financing:** Funding to fuel the growth of a young company.

**Times interest earned:** Earnings before interest and taxes, divided by interest (**EBIT/I**). The higher this ratio, the more secure the loan on which interest is paid. It is a basic measure of the creditworthiness of a company.

**Top-down forecasting:** Determining projected revenues by estimating what a certain percentage of market share translates into in terms of revenues. This method is highly suspect and bottom-up and comparable projections tend to be better.

**Trade promotion:** Price promotions offered to retailers to induce them to carry your product.

**Trade sale:** This is the sale of a business to another company, often, but not always, in a similar line of business.

**Trade secret:** Knowledge that is kept secret for the purpose of gaining an advantage in business over one's competitors.

**Trademarks:** Protection obtainable for any word, symbol, or combination thereof that is used on goods to indicate their source.

**Triggering event:** An incident that prompts a person to take steps to start a new venture.

**Triple bottom line:** captures the financial profit the organization earns and also the social and environmental benefit it provides society; associated with social entrepreneurship.

**Underpricing:** The difference between the closing price on the first day of trading and the initial offering price of a stock.

**Underwater stock options:** When the price of a stock is lower than the exercise price of a stock option. (*See stock option.*)

**Underwrite:** An arrangement under which investment banks each agree to buy a certain amount of securities of a new issue on a given date and at a given price, thereby assuring the issuer of the full proceeds of the financing.

**Underwriter:** An institution engaged in the business of underwriting securities issues.

**Underwriting fee:** The share of the gross spread of a new issue accruing to members of the underwriting group after the expenses of the issue have been paid.

**Unsecured loans:** Debt that is not backed by a pledge of specific assets.

**Valuation (of a company):** The market value of a company. (*See market capitalization.*)

**Value-added (by investors):** Many venture capital firms claim that they add more than money to investee companies. They call it value-added, which includes strategic advice on such matters as hiring key employees, marketing, production, control, and financing.

**Venture Philanthropy:** applying the concepts of venture capital to achieving philanthropic goals.

**Value proposition:** The value of a business' products and services to its customers.

**Venture capitalist:** A financial institution specializing in the provision of equity and other forms of long-term capital to enterprises, usually to firms with a limited track record but with the expectation of substantial growth. The venture capitalist may provide both funding and varying degrees of managerial and technical expertise. Venture capital has traditionally been associated with startups; however, venture capitalists have increasingly participated in later-stage projects.

**Vesting period:** The time period before shares are owned unconditionally by an employee who is sold stock with the stipulation that he must continue to work for the company selling him the shares. If his employment terminates before the end of that period, the company has the right to buy back the shares at the same price at which it originally sold them to him.

**Visible venture capital (formal venture capital):** The organized venture capital industry consisting of formal firms, in contrast to invisible venture capital or informal venture capital.

**Vulture capital:** A derogatory term for venture capital.

**Waiver:** Consent granted by an investor or lender to permit an investor or borrower to be in default on a covenant.

**Walking wounded:** Venture capital jargon for a company that is not successful enough to be harvested with an IPO or acquisition, but might be worth another round of investment to try to get it into harvestable condition.

**Warrant:** An option to purchase common stock at a specified price. (*See equity kicker.*)

**Warranty:** A statement of fact or opinion concerning the condition of a company. The inclusion of warranties in an investment agreement gives the investor a claim against the company if it subsequently becomes apparent that the company's condition was not as stated at the time of the investment.

**Yield:** Annualized rate of return on a security.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# COMPANY INDEX

- 3Com, 8  
3M, 6
- American Broadcasting Company (ABC), 86  
ACNielsen International Research, 3, 16  
Adam Aircraft, 149–65  
Adobe, 128  
Advanta, 337  
AIG, 6  
AIM, 356  
Airbus Industrie, 7, 350  
Albercan Drilling Supply, 538–539  
Alcoa, 6  
Allied Can, 6  
Allied Chemical, 6  
Aloha Airlines, 19  
Altair, 132  
Altria, 6  
Amazon.com, 2, 11, 60, 93, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 132, 177, 244, 247, 311, 348, 354, 502, 519  
    business model for, 127  
American Airlines, 135  
American Cotton Oil, 6  
American Express, 6, 337  
American Research and Development, 352, 568  
American Smelting & Refining, 6  
American Sugar, 6  
American Tobacco, 6  
Anheuser-Busch, 183  
AOL, 92, 354, 404  
Apple, 1, 7, 8, 57, 63, 67, 101, 128, 171, 243, 348, 380, 388, 391, 509, 510  
Apple Corps, 509, 510  
Applebee's, 139  
ArcCell, 487  
ArcSys/Avant!, 490  
Ashoka, 563, 564, 565, 572, 576, 579  
ASK Computer Systems, Inc., 51  
American Trans Air (ATA Airlines), 19  
Atari, 63, 132  
Atkins Nutritionals, Inc., 59  
Atlantic Refining, 6  
AT&T, 4, 5, 6, 9, 15, 16  
Audi, 247  
AutoNation, 52  
Avant!, 487–97  
    intellectual property and, 528–30  
A&W All-American Restaurants, 145  
Azul Linhas Aéreas Brasileiras, 125, 136
- Babies "R" Us, 141  
Baby Bells, 4  
Baby Einstein Company, 51
- Bally Total Fitness, 544  
Bank of America, 6, 63, 380, 442  
barnesandnoble.com, 130  
Barnes & Noble, 90, 311, 315, 316, 317, 318, 320, 502  
Beautiful Legs by Post (BLBP), 130  
Ben & Jerry's, 510, 563, 565, 569  
Benchmark Capital, 11  
Berkshire Hathaway, 1  
Bertucci's, 51, 59, 399, 400  
Best Buy, 178, 244  
Bethlehem Steel, 6  
Beyond Blossoms, 237  
Beyster Institute, 210  
Big Belly Solar, 236, 379–380, 388 , 392  
BladeLogic, 412–420  
Blockbuster Video, 52  
Blue Cross/Blue Shield, 510  
BMW, 247  
The Body Shop, 60, 67, 565  
Boeing, 6, 350  
Books-A-Million, 311  
Book Stacks Unlimited, 132  
Boots, 57  
Borders, 311  
Borland, 67  
Boston Engineering, 380  
Boston Red Sox, 380  
Botanical Gardens Conservation International, 588  
Braniff Airlines, 7  
Brass Ring, 201  
Bright Horizons, 532  
Brown Rudnick, 380, 390  
Bug-Free Web Software (BFWS), 383–85, 398, 399  
    going public, 404  
Burlington Coat Factory, 61  
Burger King, 139  
The Byte Shop, 7  
BzzAgent, 183
- C&D Semiconductor Services, 464  
Cadbury, 171  
Cadence Design Systems, 487–97  
    intellectual property and, 528–30  
Callaway Golf, 60  
Calyx & Corolla, 106  
The Cartoon Network, 183  
Cargill, Inc., 101  
Caterpillar, 6  
CERN, 9  
Cetus, 67  
Channing Bete, 543  
Chevron, 4, 6
- Chicago Gas, 6  
Chloe, 144  
Chop House, 137  
Chrysler, 6, 15, 92  
Cisco, 6, 212, 239, 348, 352  
Citibank, 232  
Citigroup, 6  
Citizens Bank, 442  
Cobalt Networks, 401  
Coca-Cola Company, 6, 508  
College Coach, 141, 189–197, 532  
Compartamos, 339  
Compaq, 18, 57, 354  
Computer.com, 248  
Continental Airlines, 7, 19  
Cover-It, 202, 205  
Crunch Fitness, 544  
Cuisinart, 510, 512  
Cummings Properties, 387  
Curtis Tractor Cab, 443  
Custom Research, 174
- Data General, 307  
DAVIS by Ruthie Davis, 207  
DayOne, 361–78  
Dell Computer, 8, 67, 85, 132, 401, 540, 546  
Delta Airlines, 19  
Diebold, 132  
DiGiorno, 102, 103  
Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC), 18, 57, 60, 63, 352  
Digital Research, Inc., 101  
Distilling & Cattle Feeding, 6  
Docutel, 132  
Dow Jones, 102  
Dun & Bradstreet, 317, 429  
Dunkin' Donuts, 139, 142  
DuPont, 6
- Earthwatch, 583–95  
eBay, 2, 11, 16, 17, 93, 130, 131, 132, 243, 348, 567  
    first-mover advantage at, 131  
Eli Lilly, 67  
EMC Corporation, 8  
Emerge Logistics, 144  
Empress International, Ltd., 538  
Endeavor, 565, 568, 572  
Evolve Manufacturing Technologies, 51  
Excite, 132  
Experian, 405–6  
Exxon-Mobil, 6, 511
- Facebook, 49, 130, 132, 202, 206, 243  
Fairchild Semiconductor, 4, 18, 58, 354, 391

- Famous Amos Chocolate Chip Cookies, 88  
 Federal Express (FedEx), 2, 6–7, 11, 16, 135, 239, 348  
 Feed Resource Recovery, 447–60  
 Fidelity Investments, 179  
 FoodShouldTasteGood, 132, 133  
 Ford, 247  
 Forrester Consulting, 388  
 The Foundation Center, 574  
 Friendster, 130, 132  
 Frito-Lay, Inc., 83, 100, 101  
 Fry's, 178
- Gardener's Eden, 106  
 Garden of Life, 51  
 GBI Marketing, 543  
 Geico, 520  
 Gemvara.com, 201  
 Genentech, 7, 67, 348, 354  
 General Electric (GE), 6, 51, 510  
 General Mills, 99, 183  
 General Motors (GM), 2, 4, 6  
 General Railway, 6  
 GenRad, 232  
 GeoCenter, 406  
 Giant Foods, 96  
 Gillette, 506  
 Giro, 178, 182  
 Go, 67  
 Goldman Sachs, 59  
 Goodrich, 6  
 Goodyear, 4  
 Google, 2, 11, 12, 61–62, 67, 126, 132, 181, 186, 243, 348, 350, 354, 356, 380, 388, 394, 399, 520, 533, 594  
 GotVMail, 424  
 Gourmet Stew, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 176  
 Grameen Bank, 337, 338, 339, 565, 569–70  
 Grasshopper, 421, 424  
 Groupe Danone, 570  
 GUS, plc, 405
- Häagen-Das, 510  
 Habitat for Humanity, 591  
 Handy Dan, 50  
 Harley-Davidson, 144  
 Harvard Graphics, 132  
 Hawaiian Airlines, 19  
 Hawaiian Punch, 172  
 Head Start, 577  
 Healthon, 51  
 Hermes, 177  
 Hewlett-Packard, 6, 18, 63, 67, 227, 354, 401  
 Highland Capital, 201  
 The History Channel, 244, 247  
 Hoffmann-LaRoche, 67  
 Home Box Office (HBO), 184  
 Homeco, 50–51  
 Home Depot, 4, 5, 6, 11, 51, 67, 98, 243, 399  
     origins of, 50–51  
 Honeywell, 4, 6  
 Hormel, 98, 102, 103
- HSBC, 588, 589  
 Hybritech, 67
- IBM, 4, 6, 8, 15, 18, 57, 62, 67, 101, 141, 401, 507, 510  
 IDEO, 86, 89  
 Intel, 4, 6, 8, 63, 67, 103, 243, 348, 352, 380, 391, 399  
 International Harvester, 6  
 International Nickel, 6  
 International Paper, 6  
 Interstate Bakeries, 59  
 Intuit, 354  
 iRobot, 141
- J. Crew, 178  
 JetBlue, 11, 125, 133, 134, 135, 136  
 Johnson & Johnson, 6  
 J.P. Morgan Chase, 6  
 Juno, 132
- Kaplan, 97  
 Kate Spade, 177  
 Keen Footwear, 128  
 W.K. Kellogg Foundation, 575  
 KFC, 139, 145  
 Kidrobot, 128, 143  
 Kiva, 567  
 Kleiner Perkins Caufield & Byers, 354, 356, 394, 397  
 Kmart, 67  
 Kodak, 6, 511, 534, 535  
 Kool-Aid, 171  
 Kozmo.com, 96  
 KPMG, 496  
 Kraft Foods, 6, 98, 101
- Laclede Gas Light, 6  
 Lazybones, 237, 554–62  
 Lenovo, 18, 67  
 The Limited, 67  
 Lockheed, 15  
 Lotus, 8, 18, 67, 201  
 LowerMyBills.com, 404–6  
 Lowe's, 98  
 LSI Logic, 354  
 Lucy's Have A Heart Canvas, 59
- Mack Trucks, 6  
 MailBoxes Etc., 138  
 Maingate Electronics, 496  
 Maker's Mark Bourbon, 173, 181, 183, 184, 185  
 Marble Slab Creamery, 139  
 Marché Hors-Côte, 356  
 McCaw Communications, 10  
 McDonald's, 6, 85, 138, 139, 140, 141, 239, 510, 515, 546  
 McDonnell-Douglas, 7  
 Merck, 6  
 Mercy Corps, 571  
 Mentor Graphics, 490, 496  
 Mercato Restrito, 356
- Mercedes-Benz, 144  
 Metaphor, 67  
 Method, 423  
 Miadora.com, 431  
 Microsoft, 1, 2, 4–5, 6, 53, 66, 67, 101, 103, 132, 136, 181, 199, 212, 239, 243, 348, 352, 399, 407, 495, 508, 510, 511  
 MITS (Micro Instrumentation and Telemetry Systems of Albuquerque), 4  
 Mondragon, 571  
 Monitor Group, 567  
 Monster.com, 213, 220  
 More Technology Services, Inc. (MTS), 464  
 Mosaic Communications, 10  
 Motorola, Inc., 490  
 MouseDriver, 141  
 MSN, 404  
 MTS, 311  
 My Brest Friend, 361  
 MySpace, 130
- Naked Restaurants, 51  
 Nantucket Nectars, 167, 171, 172, 175, 177, 183  
 NASDAQ, 356  
 Nash Motors, 6  
 National Business Incubation Association (NBIA), 17  
 National Science Foundation, 18  
 National Lead, 6  
 Neiman Marcus, 177  
 Nestle S.A., 101  
 Netscape Communications, 10, 11, 51, 55, 67, 92, 354, 533  
 New England Restaurant Company, 400  
 New Profit, 565, 567, 576, 577, 578  
 New Schools, 566, 571, 572  
 New York Stock Exchange, 5, 8, 403  
 Nike, 239  
 Nintendo, 132  
 North American, 6  
 Northwest Airlines, 19  
 Novell, 67, 533  
 NYNEX, 232
- Ocean Spray, 171, 571  
 Odwalla, 172  
 Office Max, 98  
 Old Chicago's, 137, 138  
 Oracle, 399  
 Overstock.com, 431
- Packaged Facts, 93  
 Pacific Southwest Airline, 7  
 Parametric Technology Corp. (PTC), 394  
 Paramount Publix, 6  
 Parthenon Capital, 59  
 Patagonia, 84, 565  
 PayPal, 16, 131  
 Peapod, 96  
 Penn Central Railroad, 15  
 PepsiCo, 380  
 Pershing Square Capital Management, 140

- Petopia.com, 97  
 Pets.com, 97, 248  
 Pfizer, 6  
 Photon Dynamics, Inc., 487  
 Pixar, 64  
 Pizza Hut, 139  
 P'kolino, 128, 132, 133, 138, 141, 143, 240, 246  
     business plan, 261–304  
     financial plan, 326–36  
 Postum, 6  
 Pottery Barn, 90, 132  
 Price Waterhouse Coopers, 102  
 Princeton Review, 97  
 Procter & Gamble, 6, 99, 176, 183  
 Prodigy, 92  
 Project HEALTH, 572, 577, 579  
 Prudential Insurance, 510  
 Public Allies, 567  
 Quareo, 350  
 Radio Corporation, 6  
 Radio Shack, 101  
 Ragu, 98  
 The Right Start, 370  
 Robert Morris Associates, 64, 200, 323  
 Robot Coupe, 512  
 Rock Bottom Brewery and Restaurant, 137  
 Rockland Trust Company, 442  
 Rocky Mountaineer, 134  
 Rosetta Stone, Inc., 403  
 Royal Ahold, 96  
 Ryka, 248  
 Salary.com, 213, 220  
 Samsung, 507  
 Seagate Technology, 8  
 Seahorse Power Company (SPC), 110, 112, 123, 380  
 SeaPoint Ventures, 225  
 Sears Roebuck, 4, 6, 60, 67  
 Seattle Computer Products, 4, 101  
 Second Marché, 356  
 Secondary Market, 356  
 Sevin Rosen Management Company, 57  
 Shockley Semiconductor Laboratory, 4  
 Shugart Associates, 8  
 Siemens, 144, 509  
 Signature Financial Group, 501  
 Silicon Graphics, 51, 55, 532  
 Silicon Valley Bank, 208  
 Sing Sing, 137  
 Skype, 19, 131  
 Snapple, 172  
 Sobe, 172  
 Software Arts, 8  
 SolidWorks, 394  
 Sonic Drive-Ins, 139  
 Sony Ericsson Mobile, 183  
 Southwest Airlines, 7, 19, 61, 133, 134, 135  
 Southwestern Bell Corporation (SBC)  
     Communications), 4, 5  
 Sovereign Bank, 442  
 Spire Corporation, 380, 390  
 Spotlight Tours, 134  
 Stacy's Pita Chips, 83, 99, 100  
 Stagecoach, 51  
 Standard Oil, 6  
 Staples, 11, 98, 243  
 Starbucks, 93, 177, 223, 546, 589  
 Steve's Ice Cream, 51  
 Stonyfield Farm, 541, 546  
 Stop & Shop, 96  
 Stratus, 67  
 Studentcity.com, 60  
 SUBWAY, 138, 139  
 Sun Microsystems, 61, 354, 380, 401, 533  
 Sun-Times Media Group, 12  
 Sycamore Networks, 403  
 Synopsys, 495, 496, 529–30  
 Taco Bell, 139  
 TD Banknorth, 442, 443  
 Tennessee Coal, Iron & Railroad, 6  
 Texas Corporation, 6  
 Texas Gulf Sulphur, 6  
 Texas Instruments, 57, 58  
 TheLadders.com, 213  
 Thinking Machines, 67  
 TiVo, 178  
 Tommy Hilfiger, 207  
 Toys.com, 97  
 Toys "R" Us, 97, 126, 131  
 Tribune Company, 11  
 Trans-Texas Airlines, 7  
 TransWorld Entertainment, 311  
 Travelers, 6  
 Tropicana, 172  
 Trust Company Bank, 508  
 Turner Broadcasting, 184  
 Twitter, 12, 126, 348  
 Uniglobe, 60  
 Unilever, 101  
 Union Carbide, 4, 6  
 The Unreasonable Institute, 576  
 United Airlines, 19, 135  
 United Parcel Service (UPS), 100, 248  
 United Technologies, 6  
 U.S. Airways, 19  
 U.S. Leather, 6  
 U.S. Postal Service, 248  
 U.S. Rubber, 6  
 U.S. Steel, 6  
 Unlisted Securities Market, 356  
 Vail Ski Resort, 380  
 Vayusa, 215, 222–233  
 VeriFone, 227  
 Verizon, 6  
 Veryfine, 172  
 VIA Rail, 134  
 Victor Talking Machines, 6  
 Virgin Money US, 388  
 Volkswagen, 183  
 Waddell & Associates, 337  
 Walgreen, 534  
 Walmart, 2, 5, 6, 19, 67, 98, 126, 129, 141, 239, 243, 248  
 Walnut Brewery, 137  
 Walt Disney, 6  
 Waste Management, 52  
 Waterstone's, 51  
 Waverly Pharmaceutical, 51  
 WebMD, 51  
 Webvan, 96, 175  
 Wells Fargo, 589  
 Wendy's, 139  
 Westinghouse, 6  
 Whole Foods, 103, 140, 565  
 W.H. Smith, 51  
 Wild Frontiers, 590  
 William Morris, 88  
 Women's Information Network, 567  
 Woolworth, 5, 6  
 WordStream, 237  
 World Class Teams, 84  
 World Health Organization (WHO), 577–78  
 World Wildlife Fund (WWF), 588, 591, 593, 594  
 Wright, 6  
 Xerox, 510  
 Yahoo, 11, 12, 132, 350, 404  
 Yankee Candle Company, 531, 542, 543, 544, 546  
 Year Up, 577, 579  
 YouTube, 136  
 Zim Squared, 205

*This page intentionally left blank*

# NAME INDEX

- Abrams, Jonathan, 130  
Ackman, William, 140  
Adam Sr., George, 149  
Adam, Rick, 149–165  
Adams, Tom, 403  
Adler, Fred, 307  
Adler, Rob, 237  
Aigner-Clark, Julie, 51  
Allen, Paul, 1, 4, 199  
Amos, Wally, 88  
Anderson, Harlan, 60  
Anderssen, Mark, 363  
Andreessen, Marc, 9, 10, 51, 55, 533  
Armstrong, Lance, 178  
Armstrong, Peter, 134  
Aspinall, Neil, 509  
Atkins, Robert C., 59
- Ballmer, Steve, 66  
Bam, Ajay, 215, 222–233  
Barker, Ed, 587  
Barksdale, Jim, 10  
Barnard, Allison, 70–81  
Bayh, Birch, 16  
Beane, Billy, 217  
Bechtolsheim, Andy, 61, 380, 390  
Begin, Ryan, 457–58  
Belton, Janet, 588  
Bendis, Richard, 391  
Benincasa, Robyn, 84  
Bergen, Roger, 585  
Berners-Lee, Tim, 8, 9, 92  
Bernstein, Jeff, 144  
Berry, Leonard, 185  
Besemer, Deb, 201–202  
Bezos, Jeff, 60, 64  
Bilby, John, 590  
Birch, David, 3–4  
Blair, Tony, 27  
Blank, Arthur, 5, 50, 67, 98, 399  
Booth, Richard, 54  
Bonderman, Jeremy, 217  
Bornstein, David, 565  
Boyer, Herb, 7, 55  
Bricklin, Dan, 7–8, 63  
Brill, Ron, 51  
Brin, Sergey, 58, 61, 380, 390, 399, 533  
Brodsky, Norm, 214  
Brooke, Peter, 568  
Buffet, Warren, 1  
Bush, Vannevar, 8–9  
Bushnell, Nolan, 63  
Byers, Brook, 397  
Bygrave, William, 344  
Byrne, Patrick, 431
- Callaway, Ely, 60  
Canion, Rod, 57  
Chain, Ernst, 58  
Chen, Troy, 222  
Cheng, Chi-Liang “Eric,” 489, 492, 495, 528–529  
Chertavian, Gerald, 579  
Chirac, Jacques, 350  
Cho, Eric, 491, 492, 528–529  
Chouinard, Yvon, 84, 565  
Citron, Bob, 584  
Clark, James, 10, 51, 55, 532  
Coffin, Matt, 404, 405  
Cohen, Ben, 563, 569  
Cooper, Stephen, 370  
Costello, Joseph B., 487–93  
Cousteau, Jacques, 501  
Crugnale, Joey, 51, 59–60, 399, 400  
Curtis, Fred, 443
- Danel, Carlos, 339  
D’Angelo, Adam, 202  
Darwin, Charles, 58  
Davis, Ruthie, 207  
Day, Frank, 137, 138  
de Villepin, Dominique, 28  
Dees, Greg, 564  
Dell, Michael, 8, 85  
Dembiczak, Anita, 503  
Dickson, Pat, 142, 143, 145  
Doerr, John, 394  
Dole, Bob, 16  
Donahoe, John, 17  
Doriot, Georges, 57, 106, 252, 352, 568  
Dorward, Alastair, 423  
Drayton, Bill, 563, 564, 579  
Drucker, Peter, 203, 564
- Eagan, Dick, 8  
Eck-Thompson, Sarah, 205  
Einstein, Albert, 49, 58  
Eisenhower, Dwight D., 235  
Ellison, Larry, 399  
Eng, Robert 252  
Eten, Shane, 447–460
- Fabiani, Mark, 491  
Farah, Pat, 51  
Ferguson, Virginia, 145  
Finkelstein, Julius, 488, 491, 494, 495, 529  
First, Tom, 171, 183  
Flannery, Jakley, 567  
Fleming, Alexander, 58  
Florey, Howard, 58  
Ford, Henry, 64  
Fossey, Dian, 86  
Frankston, Bob, 8
- Frumkin, Marci, 140  
Furman, Roy, 389
- Galbraith, John Kenneth, 12–13  
Garino, Dave, 181  
Gates, Bill, 1, 4, 11, 49, 53, 55, 66, 67, 199, 399, 407  
Gates, Melinda, 1  
Gendron, George, 14–15, 17  
Gentes, Jim, 182  
Gillmor, Dan, 493  
Gloag, Ann, 51  
Goel, Prabhu, 490  
Gore, Al, 356  
Greenfield, Jerry, 563  
Guillen, Carlos, 217
- Hamilton, John, 149, 160  
Hansen, Jim, 139  
Hauser, David, 424  
Henderson, Fritz, 2  
Hermann, Dan, 237, 554–62  
Herman, Tom, 206  
Hession, John, 215, 222  
Hilfiger, Tommy, 207  
Hilton, Conrad, 64  
Hirshberg, Gary, 541  
Hoff, Ted, 4  
Hoffman, Joanne, 529  
Hsu, Gerald C., 487–97, 528–529  
Hsu, John H., 495, 496  
Huang, Leigh, 492  
Huang, ShiaoLi, 488  
Huizenga, Wayne, 52  
Hughes, Chris, 202  
Huyett, John, 489
- Igusa, Mitsuru “Mitch,” 488, 489, 491  
Ittycheria, Dev, 412–20
- Jay, Brook, 205  
Jobs, Steve, 7, 63, 64, 380, 390, 391  
Jones, Todd, 217  
Jorgenson, John, 594
- Kahn, Alfred, 19  
Kanter, Rosabeth, 66  
Kapor, Mitch, 8  
Karan, Donna, 49  
Kelleher, Herb, 7  
Kelley, David, 86  
Kennedy, John F., 92  
Kenny, Noreen, 51  
Keynes, John Maynard, 381  
Kilby, Jack, 58  
Kildall, Gary, 101

- Kirsch, Vanessa, 567, 578  
 Kittredge, Michael, 542  
 Kleiner, Eugene, 354  
 Kramer, Stephen, 189–197, 532  
 Kolen, Joel, 538  
 Kuemmerle, Walter, 204  
 Kurtzig, Sandra, 51
- Labarthe, Carlos, 339  
 LaChanze, 389  
 Lam, Trieu, 464  
 Lane, Ray, 397  
 Larcker, David F., 496  
 Lauzon, Matt, 201–202  
 Leibniz, Gottfried, 58  
 LeMonde, Greg, 178  
 Lescoe, Pete, 132  
 Levine, Doug, 544  
 Lichtenstein, Nelson, 19  
 Liao, Y.Z., 492, 528–529  
 Little, Roger, 390  
 London, Michael, 189–197, 532  
 Lowry, Adam, 423
- Mackey, John, 565  
 Macrae, Norman, 3, 13  
 Madison, Stacy, 83, 100  
 Manganella, Luciano, 73  
 Manwani, Vijay, 412–20  
 Marcus, Bernie, 5, 50, 67, 98, 399  
 Margetis, Helen, 529  
 Margetis, Paul, 529  
 Marino, Roger, 8  
 Markkula Jr., Armas, 63, 380, 390, 391  
 Marmot, Michael, 577  
 Marram, Edward, 406  
 Marx, Karl, 13  
 Maschek, Gina, 237  
 Mathelier, Reg, 554–62  
 McClelland, David, 52  
 McKenna, Regis, 63, 66  
 Metcalfe, Robert, 8  
 Milstein, Munroe, 61, 62  
 Moore, Gordon, 4, 18, 399  
 Morris, Jennifer, 370  
 Moskovitz, Dustin, 202  
 Motuke, La Maman Mole, 338  
 Motwani, Rajeev, 58
- Nader, Ralph, 14  
 Neelman, David, 125, 134, 135, 136  
 Nelson, Ted, 9  
 Newton, Isaac, 58  
 Noyce, Robert, 4, 58, 399  
 Nucci, Alfred, 3
- Obama, Barak, 2  
 Olsen, Ken, 60  
 Omidyar, Pierre, 567  
 O'Neill, Dan, 571
- Onie, Rebecca, 572, 579  
 Ordonez, Maggio, 217  
 Osborne, Richard, 544  
 Owades, Ruth, 106
- Page, Larry, 58, 61, 181, 380, 390, 399, 533  
 Parker, Clayton, 496  
 Patel, Viraj J., 496  
 Pearson, Ann, 372  
 Pedlikin, Joel, 559–62  
 Pentchev, Kalin, 36–48  
 Perkins, Tom, 354  
 Perot, Ross, 53  
 Peters, Tom, 67  
 Pfeiffer, Jeanine, 586  
 Poe, Sheri, 248  
 Poincare, Henri, 58  
 Poss, Jim, 89, 110–23, 236, 379–80, 387, 390, 392  
 Pot, Pol, 571  
 Preis, Elizabeth, 130  
 Price, Gareth, 594
- Reynolds, Paul, 344  
 Ricciardelli, Mario, 60  
 Riley, Elizabeth, 134  
 Rivera, Oscar, 339  
 Robert, Don, 406  
 Rock, Arthur, 4, 63  
 Roddick, Anita, 60, 67, 565  
 Rodgers, Kenny, 217  
 Rodgers, T.J., 493  
 Rodriguez, Ivan “Pudge”, 217  
 Rogers, Everett, 52  
 Roosevelt, Franklin, 12  
 Rose, Howard, 51  
 Rosen, Ben, 57  
 Rosborough, Brian, 583, 585  
 Rottenberg, Linda, 568, 572  
 Rubin, Jordan, 51  
 Ryan, Eric, 423
- Sagar, Dean, 139  
 Samuels Jr., Bill, 181, 184, 185  
 Sanders, Scott, 389–90  
 Say, Jean Baptiste, 564  
 Saverin, Eduardo, 202, 206  
 Schmidt, Eric, 533  
 Schmidt, Tom, 139  
 Schneider, David, 214  
 Schneider, J.B., 128, 235, 261–308  
 Schröder, Gerhard, 350  
 Schumpeter, Joseph, 1, 11, 13, 18, 564, 570  
 Scott, Leslee, 139  
 Scott, Mike, 63, 391  
 Scott, Tom, 171, 183  
 Servan-Schreiber, Jean-Jacques, 12–13  
 Sheffield, Gary, 217  
 Shaw, George Bernard, 56, 572  
 Shockley, William, 4
- Shrader, Rodney, 142  
 Shugart, Al, 8  
 Silverstein, Craig, 62  
 Smith, Fred, 6, 64  
 Sollitto, Vincent F., 487  
 Spade, Kate, 177  
 Spielberg, Stephen, 389  
 Stemberg, Thomas, 98  
 Stevens, Melanie, 51  
 Stevenson, Howard, 564  
 Stock, Walter, 222  
 Stoltzfus, Allen, 404  
 Swanson, Robert, 7, 55  
 Swart, Lalitha, 208
- Tabors, Dave, 412–20  
 Taghaddos, Siamak, 421, 424  
 Timmons, Jeffry, 56  
 Tokuyama, Jiro, 11  
 Tracy, John, 308  
 Tran, David, 464  
 Treiber, Bob, 380  
 Trump, Donald, 19  
 Tsai, Mike, 492, 528–529  
 Turco-Rivas, Antonio, 128, 235, 261–308  
 Tuzman, Kaleil, 206
- Usdin, Sarah, 566, 571, 572
- Valentine, Don, 63
- Waddell, David S., 337  
 Wagoner, Rick, 2  
 Wainwright, Fred, 392  
 Walker, Alice, 389  
 Walker, James, 236  
 Walker, Sam, 181  
 Wallace, Alfred Russel, 58  
 Walton, Sam, 2, 67  
 Warren, Rick, 93  
 Waterstone, Tim, 51  
 Weiner, Jeremy, 202, 205  
 Wetzel, Bill, 390  
 Wexner, Les, 67  
 Whitman, Meg, 131  
 Whouley, Kate, 311  
 Whyte, William, 12–13  
 Williams, Evan, 126  
 Williams, Venus, 49  
 Wilson, Charles Erwin, 4  
 Wilson, Ed, 583, 585, 594, 595  
 Winfrey, Oprah, 248, 389–90  
 Wozniak, Stephen, 7, 63, 380, 390, 391  
 Wu, Stephen Tzyh-Lih, 488, 492, 495, 528–529
- Yunus, Muhammad, 337, 338, 567, 569–70
- Zenoff, Andrew, 361–78  
 Zoener, Lisa, 371  
 Zuckerberg, Mark, 49, 130, 202, 206

# SUBJECT INDEX

- Accountants, 215–16  
in founding team, 215–16  
selection of, 466
- Accounts payable cycle, 423
- Accounts receivable  
bank loans through, 434–35  
cash from, 424–25  
collection policies, 428–29  
credit and, 426–28, 429–30  
cycle, 423  
factoring, 434–35  
pledging, 434  
sales, 426  
as working capital, 425–31
- ACE-Net (Angel Capital Investment Network), 390
- Acquisition, 404–7
- Actual net sales, 426
- Add-in interest, 438
- Administrative obligations, legal issues and, 474
- Advertising, 179  
magazine, 249  
strategic use of, 180  
taglines, 239
- Advisors, board of, 216, 254
- African Americans, entrepreneurship and, 54
- Age, entrepreneurship and, 22
- Age Discrimination in Employment Act, 479
- Agreements  
confidential disclosure, 525–26  
employment, 480–81  
idea submission, 526  
intellectual property (IP), 520–26  
license, 517–18
- Agriculture, shift in number of workers, 5
- American free enterprise, 350
- American Marketing Association, 167
- Analysis  
comparable, 315  
competition, 244–49  
customer, 243–44  
industry, 242–43
- Angel investment, raising, 392–93
- Anglo-Saxon economic model, 26–28
- Asset-based valuation, 383, 385–86  
example of, 385–86  
liquidation value, 383  
modified book value, 383  
replacement value, 383
- Assets, 308
- Assignment, 516–517
- Attorneys, 215  
in founding team, 215  
selection of, 466
- Augmented product, 171
- Baby boomers, 13
- Balance sheet, 312, 320–21
- Bank loans  
obtaining, 434–35  
short-term, 431
- Bayh-Dole Act, 15, 16
- Benchmarking, 135
- Blanket lien, 435
- Boards, 549–50  
of advisors, 216, 254  
of directors, 216–17, 254, 397
- Bootstrapping, 206–08  
new ventures and, 380–81
- Born-again globals, 143
- Born globals, 143
- Bottom-up forecasting, 307
- Brain-writing, 88
- Brand  
awareness, 185  
building, 185  
equity, 185  
image, 185
- Build-up method, 249, 308–14  
cost of goods sold (COGS) in, 311  
operating expenses in, 311–13  
preliminary income statement in, 314  
revenue projections in, 310–11
- Burnout, 218–19
- Burn rate, 65
- Business  
components for successful, 66–67  
evaluating opportunities for, 56–60  
fads in, 59  
margins in, 97–98  
raising startup capital/money, 379–408  
strategy, formulating, 132–45
- Business angels, 388. *See also* Informal investors  
raising investment from, 392–93  
search for, 390  
types of, 391–92
- Business interruption insurance, 483
- Business model, 125–30  
case study, 149–65  
cost, 128–30  
revenue, 126–27
- Business plan, 394  
analysis, 242–46  
case study, 261–304  
critical risks, 255–56  
financial, 256  
presentation of, 258  
process, 235–61, 237–39  
story model, 239–40  
taglines, 239
- team, 252–55  
types of, 257
- Business plan, sections of  
appendices, 256  
company and product description, 246  
cover, 240  
development plan, 251–52  
executive summary, 240–41  
marketing plan, 246–50  
offering, 256  
operations plan, 250–51  
outline, 238  
table of contents, 241–42
- Buzz marketing, 182, 183
- Capabilities  
intangible, 545–46  
organizational, 544–46
- Capital  
for business startup, 63–64, 342–43  
informal investors, 64  
venture, 347–56  
working, 424–31
- Carried interest, 353
- Cash  
from accounts receivable, 433  
available, 425  
*versus* credit sales, 426  
free, 65  
from seasonal business, 432–33  
short-term, 431–33
- Cash conversion cycle (CCC), 423–24  
managing, 538–40
- Cash flow  
free, 382, 444  
negative, 65  
planning, 444  
statement, 307, 321–22  
valuation of, 382
- Channel  
conflict, 177  
coverage, 177  
partnerships, 177  
power, 177
- Chattel mortgage, 435
- Civil Rights Act, 479
- Civil servants, 28
- Claims, patent, 503  
drafting, 504–6
- Classic venture capital, 347–50
- Collateral, 438–39
- Collection policies, 428–29
- Common-sized income statement, 314
- Communications  
marketing strategy, 248–49  
mix, 178

- Community Trade Mark (CTM), 515  
 Companies  
     description of, 246  
     first-stage, 384  
     name choice, 474–75  
     seed-stage, 384  
     selling, 404  
     startup, 62, 384  
     values, 133  
     venture-capital-backed, 395–96  
     virtual, 16  
 Comparable analysis, 316  
 Comparable method, 249, 315–17  
 Compensation  
     in business plan, 254–55  
     equity, 208–12  
     founder shares, 208  
     option pool, 210  
     salary, 213  
     stock, 211  
     vesting, 211  
 Competition, 100–103  
     analysis, 244–46  
     profile matrix, 102, 244  
 Competitive position, 426  
 Conditional sale contract, 441  
 Confidentiality, 520  
     moonlighting and, 522  
 Consumer promotions, 179, 181  
 Contracts  
     consultant, 524–25  
     employment, 521  
 Control system, 535  
 Convertible debt, 392  
 Cooperatives, 570–71  
 Copyright, 499, 512–13  
     employee ownership of, 524  
     laws, 464  
     software, 519  
 Core product, 171  
 Corporate angels, 391  
 Corporate opportunity, 462  
 Corporate social responsibility, 565  
 Corporation, 467  
     professional, 467  
     small business, 467  
 Cost of goods sold (COGS), 97, 126, 128, 311, 315, 316, 319  
     worksheet, 312  
 Cost model, 126, 128–30  
 Cost-plus pricing, 97  
 Costs  
     fixed, 174  
     operating, 128  
     variable, 174  
 Couponing, 175  
 Covenants, restrictive, 439–41  
 Credit  
     *versus* cash sales, 426  
     Five Cs of, 429–30  
     line of, 436  
     policies, 426–27  
     revolving, 438  
     setting limits, 429–30  
     setting terms, 427–28  
     trade, 431–32  
 Critical risks, 255–56  
     competitor actions and retaliation, 255  
     development costs, 255  
     financing, 256  
     growth potential, 255  
     market interest, 255  
     operating expenses, 256  
 Cross-purchase agreement, 476  
 Customer  
     analysis, 243–44  
     anthropology, 86  
     business opportunity and, 58  
     choice process of, 170–71  
     interview, 186–88  
     prepayments, financing from, 435  
     as primary target audience (PTA), 89  
     reaching, 98–99  
     sales frequency and price and, 95–97  
     as secondary target audience (STA), 89  
     selection strategy, 89–99, 170–71  
     as tertiary target audience (TTA), 89  
     trends, 91–93  
     understanding, 184–85  
     value, 172  
 Customer relationship management (CRM), 182  
 Customer value proposition (CVP), 172  
 Debt, 24, 62. *See also* Credit; Loans  
     convertible, 392  
     inventory, 430–31  
 Decentralization, of leadership, 549  
 Delegation process, of leadership, 547–48  
 Demand, elasticity of, 427  
 Demographics. *See also* Age; Gender  
     of entrepreneurship, 23–24  
     fast-casual, 91  
 Design patents, 506  
 Development  
     costs, 255  
     plan, 251–52  
 Dickson's model, 142–445  
 Digital Millennium Copyright Act, 519  
 Dilution effect, 212  
 Direct marketing, 178, 182  
 Directors, board of, 216–17, 254, 397  
 Disability insurance, 483  
 Discrimination, employment, 479–78  
 Disintermediation, 177  
 Distribution (place) strategy, 176–78, 248  
     channel coverage, types of, 177  
     disintermediation, 177  
     exclusive, 177  
 Do-it-yourself (DIY) stores, 5  
 Domestic service, shift in number of workers in, 5  
 Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA), 4, 5  
     companies, 6  
 Driving forces  
     coordinating, 550  
     of growth model, 534–35  
 Duty of loyalty, 462  
 Earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA), 382  
 Earnings capitalization method, 381–82  
 Economic growth  
     in entrepreneurial revolution, 18–19  
     Global Entrepreneurship Monitor model of, 14  
 Education, entrepreneurship, 17  
 Elasticity of demand, 427  
 Employees  
     business plan for, 252–55  
     as company agents, 478–79  
     compensation, 208–14  
     health insurance for, 483  
     hiring, 133, 478–82  
     importance of, 200–1  
     knowledge of, 133–34  
     moonlighting by, 522  
     ownership of copyright, 524  
     raiding, preventing, 523–24  
     recruitment of, 463  
     rights, 521–22, 524  
 Employment  
     agreements/contracts, 480–81, 521  
     discrimination, 479–80  
     statutes, 480  
 Enterprise, starting, 50–55  
 Enthusiast angels, 391  
 Entrepreneurial angels, 391  
 Entrepreneurial financing, for world's poorest, 338–40  
 Entrepreneurial growth, 531–51  
     case study, 554–62  
     execution of model of, 535–41  
     financial resources in, 544–45  
     leadership and, 546–51  
     model of driving forces, 534–35  
     opportunity domain, 541–44  
     process, 535  
     resources and capabilities, 544–46  
     transition from startup to, 532–33  
 Entrepreneurial marketing, 167–88  
     acquiring information, 169–70  
     case study, 189–197  
     challenges of, 168–69  
     guerrilla, 182–84  
     importance of, 168  
     skills for growth management, 184–85  
     strategy for, 170–82  
 Entrepreneurial organization, maintaining, 540–41  
 Entrepreneurial process, 49–68  
     case study, 70–81  
     customer in, 58  
     definition of, 49  
     environmental factors in, 52–54  
     evaluation of opportunities, 56–60  
     management team in, 59–60  
     model of, 50  
     profit potential, 64–65

- resources, 59, 60–64  
 sociological factors in, 54–55  
 startup, 50–55, 62–64  
 success in, 66–67  
 timing in, 58–59
- Entrepreneurial revolution, 4–19  
 agriculture service and, 5  
 Anglo-Saxon economic model, 26–28  
 case study, 36–48  
 causes of, 12–19  
 domestic service and, 5  
 economic growth, 18–19  
 framework changes, 14–18  
 Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM), 13, 14, 19–26  
 Internet boom/World Wide Web and, 1, 8–12, 16, 17  
 Microsoft and, 4–5  
 semiconductors and, 4, 9, 10  
 social model, 26–29  
 venture capital and, 10–11
- Entrepreneurial ventures  
 case study, 361–78, 412–20  
 financing, 337–58  
 informal investors, 340–47  
 venture capital and, 347–56
- Entrepreneurs  
 characteristics of, 53  
 “cocktail-party,” 86  
 definition of, 49  
 developing, 550–51  
 first-mover myth and, 130–32  
 founding team and, 199–220  
 informal investors and, 340–47  
 internal locus of control in, 52  
 leadership and, 546–51  
 listening system, building, 185  
 management team and, 59–60  
 marketing, 167–88  
 nascent, 3, 19–20, 25  
 position in company, 201–4
- Entrepreneurship  
 African Americans and, 54  
 current economies and, 26–29  
 definition, 1  
 demographics of, 22–24  
 education and training, 17  
 Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM), 19–26  
 necessity-based, 20–23  
 opportunity-based, 20–22  
 power of, 1–29  
 revolution, 3–20  
 U.S. small business, 2–12
- Entry strategy, 134–38  
 benchmarking, 135  
 initial market tests, 136–37  
 platform, creating, 137–38
- Environment, global, 104
- Equipment financing, 441
- Equity, 24, 62, 208–12  
 disposition of interest, 475–77
- shareholder, 308  
 sharing, 481–82  
 sweat, 64, 209
- Ethernet, 8
- Europe  
 patents and, 514  
 venture capital in, 356
- European Patent Convention (EPC), 514
- Event marketing, 183
- Exclusive license, 515
- Exit, investment, 399–407. *See also* Investment harvesting
- Expenses, operating, 311–13
- Exporting, 143, 144
- External financing sources, 442–43
- External members, 254
- Factoring, 434–35  
 recourse, 435
- Fads, 59
- Family pressure, 219
- Fast-casual demographics, 91
- Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (FFIEC), 436
- Field warehousing, 436
- Financial plan, 256
- Financial returns, on venture capital, 354–56
- Financial statements  
 overview of, 307–8  
 pro-forma, 305–23
- Financing, 256  
 accounts receivable and, 425–31  
 availability of, 357–58  
 bank loans, 434–35, 436–41  
 case study, 447–60  
 cash conversion cycle, 423–24  
 classic venture capital, 357–58  
 from credit cards, 422–23  
 from customer prepayments, 435  
 of entrepreneurial activity, 24–26  
 equipment, 441  
 from external sources, 442–43  
 from home equity lines, 422–23  
 from informal investing, 357  
 from internal sources, 420–23  
 loans against inventory, 435  
 microcredit for poor, 339–40  
 microfinancing, 338–39  
 short-term, 431–33, 436  
 supply and demand for, 346–47  
 total entrepreneurial activity (TEA), 357  
 ventures worldwide, 337–58  
 working capital, 424–25
- Financing, new venture, 386–399  
 business angels, 388–93  
 informal investors, 387–88  
 negotiation, 398  
 venture capital, 393–99
- Firm liquidity, 444
- First-level management, 548–49
- First-mover myth, 130–32
- First-stage company, 384
- Five Cs of credit, 429–30
- Fixed costs, 174
- Floating lien, 435
- Foreign direct investment (FDI), 143, 144
- Foreign licenses, 518
- Formal investors, 337
- For-profit, 569–70
- Founder shares, 208
- Founding team, 199–220. *See also* Employees  
 accountants, 215–16  
 attorneys, 215  
 board of advisors, 216  
 board of directors, 216–17  
 bootstrapping, 206–8  
 building, 205–6  
 burnout, 218–19  
 case study, 222–33  
 compensation, 208–14  
 entrepreneur’s position in, 201–5  
 external members, 214–17  
 family pressure and, 219  
 functioning of, 217–20  
 importance of, 200–1  
 interpersonal conflicts and, 219–20  
 outside investors, 214
- Four Ps of marketing, 168
- Framework conditions  
 cultural and social norms, 13–15  
 education and training, 17  
 financial, 18  
 government, 15  
 human, 17  
 physical, 16–17  
 professionalism, 17  
 R&D transfer, 15–16
- Franchising, 138–40, 144, 145
- Free cash, 65  
 flow, 382, 444
- Frequency, 179
- Gantt chart, 252, 253
- Gender, entrepreneurship and, 23–24
- General partnership, 467
- Geographic expansion, 141–42
- Global entrepreneurial firms, 142–43  
 born-again global, 143  
 born global, 143  
 gradual global, 142
- Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM), 13, 14, 19–26  
 findings of, 20–26  
 on informal investors, 18, 24, 26, 27, 341, 342  
 objectives of, 19  
 Global environment, 104
- Government  
 framework conditions and, 15  
 sponsored innovation, 350
- Gradual globals, 142
- Great Depression, 12, 13
- Gross domestic product (GDP), 2
- Group life insurance, 483

- Growth  
 entrepreneurial, 531–51  
 marketing skills for managing, 184–85
- Growth model, execution of, 535–41  
 cash cycle management, 538–40  
 controls, instituting, 535–37  
 maintaining organization, 540–41  
 tracking performance, 537–38  
 value chain, 540
- Growth strategy, 138–45  
 franchising, 138–40  
 geographic expansion, 141–42  
 international, 142–45  
 product mix, expanding, 140–41
- Guerrilla marketing, 182–84  
 buzz, 182, 183  
 viral, 182, 183  
 word-of-mouth, 182, 183
- Health insurance, 483
- High-expectation entrepreneurial activity (HEA), 25
- Home equity line of credit (HELOC), 422–23
- Hybrid organizations, 568–69
- Idea  
 multiplication, 85–89  
 submission agreement, 526
- Imitative Nonprofit Organizations, 566–67
- Incentive stock option, 481
- Income statement, 307, 314  
 common-sized, 314  
 integrated financial, 317–22  
 preliminary, 314
- Industry analysis, 242–43
- Informal investing, financing factors, 357
- Informal investors, 64  
 capital required from, 342–43  
 characteristics of, 343–44  
 entrepreneurs and, 340–47  
 financial returns for, 345  
 new venture and, 387–88  
 supply and demand for financing, 346–47
- Initial market test, 136–37
- Initial public offering (IPO), 63, 353, 354–56, 380  
 first-day pop, 403  
 going public, 402–4  
 investment harvesting, 399–04  
 pros and cons of, 400–2
- Innovative nonprofit organizations, 567
- Insurance, 482–83  
 business interruption, 483  
 disability, health, 483  
 liability, 482  
 life, 483  
 property, 482
- Intangible  
 capabilities, 544–46  
 resources, 544–46
- Integrated financial statements, building, 317–22  
 balance sheet, 320–21  
 cash flow statement, 321–22  
 income statement, 318–20
- Integrated marketing communications, 178
- Intellectual property (IP), 499–527  
 agreements, 520–26  
 case study, 528–30  
 copyright, 512–13  
 definition of, 499  
 international protection for, 513–15  
 Internet and, 520  
 licensing and technology transfer, 516–18  
 patents, 501–7  
 software protection, 518–20  
 trademarks, 510–12  
 trade secrets, 507–9
- Interest  
 add-in, 438  
 carried, 353  
 rates, 437–38  
 simple, 438
- Internal financing sources, 421–23
- Internal rate of return (IRR), 345, 383, 395
- International growth, 142–45
- Internet  
 boom, 10–12  
 geographic expansion and, 142  
 intellectual property (IP) and, 520  
 small business and, 16–17  
 users worldwide, 10
- Interpersonal conflicts, 219–20
- Inventions, patents and, 501
- Inventory, 430–31  
 chattel (property) mortgage, 435  
 cycle, 423  
 field warehousing, 435  
 floating lien, 435  
 obtaining loans against, 435  
 public warehousing, 435  
 working capital from, 424–25
- Investment  
 advisors, 353  
 foreign direct, 143, 144  
 founders', 472–74  
 harvesting, 399–407  
 venture capital, 352–53
- Investment harvesting, 399–407  
 acquisition, 404–7  
 going public and, 402–4  
 initial public offering (IPO), 399–404  
 selling company, 405
- Investors  
 4 Fs of, 340  
 formal, 337  
 informal, 64, 340–47  
 outside, 214  
 sale of securities to, 483–85
- IPO *see* Initial public offering
- Job creation, entrepreneurship and, 26–27
- Joint venture, 143–44
- Key person insurance, 483
- Key success factors (KSF), 102
- Leadership, entrepreneurial, 546–51  
 boards, 549–50  
 decentralization, 549  
 delegation process, 547–48  
 developing, 550–51  
 driving forces, coordinating, 550  
 management, 548–49, 549–50
- Lead underwriter, 402
- Legal forms  
 choosing, 466–74  
 control, 467–69  
 corporation, 467  
 general partnership, 467  
 limited liability company (LLC), 467  
 limited liability partnership (LLP), 467  
 nonprofit (not-for-profit) entity, 467  
 professional corporation, 467  
 sole proprietorship, 466  
 subchapter S (small business corporation), 467, 471  
 taxation, 470–72
- Legal issues  
 administrative obligations, 474  
 attorney, choosing, 466  
 case study, 487–97  
 choice of legal form, 466–74  
 copyright laws, 464  
 corporate opportunity, 462  
 discrimination, 479–80  
 employees and, 478–82  
 employment agreements/statutes, 480–81  
 initial investment of founders, 472–74  
 insurance, 482–83  
 name choice, 474–75  
 noncompetition, 465–66  
 personal liability, 469–70  
 proprietary information, 463–64  
 recruitment, 463  
 sale of securities, 483–85  
 stockholder and operating agreements, 475–78
- Liability, 308  
 insurance, 482  
 personal, 469–70
- License  
 agreements, 517–18  
 concerns about, 515–16  
 exclusive, 515  
 foreign, 518  
 limitations on, 516  
 nonexclusive, 515  
 for property, 516  
 royalty rates, 517  
 transfer of, 515–18  
 value to, 516–17
- Liens  
 blanket, 435  
 floating, 435
- Life insurance, 483
- Limited liability company (LLC), 467
- Limited liability partnership (LLP), 467
- Limited partnership, 467
- Line of credit, 436

- Liquidation, 425  
value, 383
- Liquidity  
firm, 444  
perspective, 425
- Listening system, 185
- Loans  
bank, 436–41  
maturity of, 437  
obtaining against inventory, 435  
SBA-guaranteed, 442–43
- Logic model, 575, 576
- Loyalty, duty of, 462
- Magazine advertising, 249
- Management  
experience, 59  
first-level, 548–49  
professional, 549–50  
team, 59–60
- Margins, 97–98
- Market  
openness, 15  
size, 93–95
- Market-comparable valuation, 382, 383–85
- Market data  
primary, 169  
secondary, 169
- Marketing, 469–71  
buzz, 182, 183  
direct, 178, 179, 182  
entrepreneurial, 167–88  
event, 183  
Four Ps of, 168  
guerrilla, 182–84  
research, 169  
viral, 182, 183  
word-of-mouth, 182, 183
- Marketing communications (promotion) strategy, 178–82  
communications mix, 178  
frequency, 179  
integrated, 178  
promotions, 181  
public relations (PR), 181  
pull strategy, 178  
push strategy, 178  
reach, 179
- Marketing mix, 171–82  
distribution (place) strategy, 176–78  
marketing communications (promotion)  
strategy, 178–82  
pricing strategy, 174–76  
product strategy, 171–74
- Marketing plan, 246–50  
communications strategy, 248–49  
forecasts, 249–50  
pricing strategy, 247–48  
product/service strategy, 247  
sales strategy, 249  
target marketing strategy, 247
- Marketing skills  
brand building, 185  
customer, understanding, 184–85  
managing growth for, 184–85
- Marketing strategy  
for entrepreneurs, 170–82  
positioning, 171  
segmentation, 170  
targeting, 171
- Market test, 83  
initial, 136–37  
schedule, 137
- Marks. *See also* Trademarks  
ownership of, 512  
registering, 511  
service, 510
- Members, external, 254
- Men, TEA for, 24
- Mergers & acquisitions (M&A), 143, 145
- Methods  
build-up, 308–14  
comparable, 315–17
- Microcredit, for poorest clients, 339–40
- Microfinancing, 338–39
- Micromanagement angels, 391
- Models  
Anglo-Saxon economic, 26–28  
business, 125–30  
cost, 126, 128–30  
Dickson's, 142–45  
of driving forces of growth, 534–35  
of entrepreneurial process, 50  
Global Entrepreneurship Monitor (GEM), 13, 14, 19–26  
logic, 575, 576  
revenue, 126–27  
social, 26–29  
story, 239–40
- Modified book value, 383, 385
- Moonlighting, 522
- Moore's law, 4
- Mortgage, chattel (property), 435
- Nascent business, informal investment and, 346
- Nascent entrepreneurs, 3, 19, 20, 25
- Necessity-based entrepreneurship, 20–23
- Need share, 577
- Negotiation, company valuation, 398
- Net liquid balance, 424
- Noncompetition, 465–66  
clauses, 522–23
- Nondisclosure agreements, confidential, 526–26
- Nonexclusive license, 515
- Nonprofit (not-for-profit) entity, 467
- Offering, 256  
initial public (IPO), 380, 389  
secondary, 401, 403
- Operating agreements, 469, 475–78  
company profits, 477  
disposition of equity interests, 476–78  
employment terms, 475  
redemption provisions, 478
- Operating expenses, 126, 129, 311–13  
worksheet, 312
- Operational plan, 250–51, 257
- Operations strategy, 250  
flow of, 251
- Opportunity  
case study, 110–23  
checklist, 104, 105  
competition and, 100–103, 104–6  
corporate, 462  
finding customers, 89–99  
domain, 541–44  
evaluating, 56–60  
global environment and, 104  
idea multiplication and, 85–89  
key success factors, 102  
recognition, 84–100  
shaping, 100–106  
social entrepreneurship, 571–73  
suppliers and vendors, 103  
trends in, 91–93
- Opportunity-based entrepreneurship, 21
- Option pool, 210
- Oral presentations, style pointers for, 258
- Organization, entrepreneurial, 540–41
- Outsourcing, 143, 144
- Partners, strategic, 254
- Partnership  
general, 467  
limited, 467  
limited liability, 467
- Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), 514
- Patent pending, 502
- Patents, 499, 501–7  
claims, drafting, 504–6  
costs, managing, 506–7  
deadlines, 514–15  
design, 506  
provisional applications, 506  
software protection, 518–20  
utility, 501–2
- Penetration pricing, 175
- Performance, tracking, 537–38
- Personal liability, 469–70
- Personal selling, 178, 179, 181
- Phantom stock, 211
- Plans  
business, 235–59  
development, 251–52  
financial, 256  
marketing, 246–50  
operational, 250–51, 257  
style pointers for, 258  
types of, 257
- Platform, creating, 137–38
- Pledging, 434  
with notification, 434
- Positioning, 171
- Post-money valuation, 398
- Poverty-stricken, financing for, 339–40

Pricing strategy, 174–76, 247–48

discrimination, 175

penetration, 175

points, 175

promotions, 175

skimming, 175

Primary data, 169

Primary Target Audience (PTA), 89, 171, 246, 248

Product

description, 246

diffusion curve, 174

life cycle, 173

mix, expanding, 140–41

Product/service strategy, 247

Product strategy, 171–74

augmented, 171

core, 171

Professional

angels, 391

corporation, 467

management, 549–50

Profile matrix, competitive, 244

Profit

distributions of, 477

planning, 444

potential, 64–65

Pro-forma financial statements, 305–23

building, 308

build-up method, 308–14

case study, 325–36

comparable method, 315–17

explanation for, writing, 322

integrated, building, 317–22

mistakes in, 306–7

overview of, 307–8

Promotions

consumer, 181

sales, 181

trade, 181

Property

insurance, 482

intellectual, 499–527

licensing of, 515–18

mortgage (*See* Chattel mortgage)

Proprietary information, 463–64

Protection, international, for intellectual property, 513–15

Provisional patent applications, 506

Provisions, bank loans, 439–41

Public relations (PR), 178, 181

corporate communications, 181

publicity, 181

Public warehousing, 435

Pull strategy, 178

Purchasing Power Parity (PPP), 21

Push strategy, 178

Raiding, employee, 523–24

Reach, 179

Recourse, 435

Recruitment, of fellow employees, 463

Redemption

agreement, 476

provisions, 478

Replacement value, 383

Research & development (R&D), 2

federal funding of, 16

marketing, 169

transfer, 15–16

Resources

acquiring, 60–64

entrepreneurial process and, 60

financial, obtaining, 544–45

intangible, 545–46

organizational, 544–46

on public/private companies, 245

social entrepreneurship, 575–76

startup capital, 62–64

Restricted stock, 211

Restrictive covenants, 439

Revenue

drivers, 310

model, 125, 126–27

projections, 310–11

worksheet, 310

Revolution, entrepreneurial, 12–19

Revolving credit, 438

Risks, critical. *See* Critical risks

Royalty rates, 517

Salaries and general administration (SG&A), 311

Salary, 213

Sales

actual net, 426

pattern, 426

per customer, 315

promotions, 179, 181

strategy, 249

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 217

SBA-guaranteed loans, 442–43

Seasonal dating, 432

Secondary data, 169

Secondary market, 356

Secondary offering, 401, 403

Secondary Target Audience (STA), 89, 171, 246

Securities, sale of, 486–85

Securities Act of 1933, 483, 484

Securities Exchange Act, 583

Securities Exchange Commission, 240

Seed-stage company, 384

Segment, 170

Segmentation, 170

Self-employment, 3

Semiconductor revolution, 9

Service mark, 510

Shareholder equity, 308

Shares, founder, 208

Short-term bank loans, 436–41

applying for, 439

collateral, 438–39

interest rates, 437–38

maturity of, 437

provisions, 439–41

restrictive covenants, 439

Short-term cash, sources of, 431–33

Short-term financing, 436

Silicon Valley fever, 52

Simple interest, 438

Small business, entrepreneurship and, 2–12

Small Business Administration (SBA), 55

Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) program, 15

Social Change, 564

Social Entrepreneurship, 563–79

change, 564

corporate social responsibility, 564

definition, 564–70

evaluating results, 576–78

forming organization, 573–75

for-profit, 569–70

hybrids, 568–569

identifying opportunity, 571–73

imitative nonprofit, 566–67

innovative nonprofit, 567

getting started, 571–78

logic model, 575, 576

need share, 577

organization, new forms, 570–71

resources, 575–76

scaling, 578

value, 564

Social model, 26–29

Social value, 564

Software protection, 518–20

copyrights, 519

patents for, 518–19

trade secret, 520–21

Sole proprietorship, 466

Stakeholders, 534

Startup

capital, 62–64

companies, 62, 384

Statements

cash flow, 307, 321–22

financial, 305–23

income, 307

Stock appreciation rights, 211

Stockholder agreements, 475–78

company profits, 477

disposition of equity interests, 475–77

redemption provisions, 478

Stock options, 481–82

incentive, 481

Story model, business plan, 239–40

Strategic partners, 254

Strategy

communications, 248–49

customer selection, 170–71

development, 132–45, 251–52

distribution (place), 176–78

employee, 133–34

entry, 134–38

formulating, 132–45

growth, 138–45

marketing, 170–82

- marketing communications (promotion), 178–82  
 operations, 250  
 pricing, 174–76, 247–48  
 product, 171–74  
 product/service, 247  
 pull, 178  
 push, 178  
 sales, 249  
 structure, venture, 134  
 target marketing, 247  
 values, identifying, 133  
 Subchapter S, 467, 471  
 Suppliers, 103  
 Sweat equity, 64, 209  
 Syndicate, bank, in IPOs, 402
- Taglines, 239  
 Targeting, 171  
 Target marketing, 393  
 strategy, 247  
 Taxation, double, 470  
 Tax issues  
 accountant, choosing, 466  
 equity sharing, 481–82  
 hiring employees, 478–82  
 raising money, 483–85  
 stock options, 481–82  
 taxation and legal forms, 470–72  
 Team. *See also* Founding team  
 biographies and roles, 254  
 business plan and, 252–55  
 compensation, 254–55  
 Technology  
 licensing, 143, 144  
 transfer, 515–18  
 Tertiary Target Audience (TTA), 89, 246  
 Timing, business opportunity and, 58–59  
 Timmons framework, 56  
 Top-down forecasting, 307
- Total entrepreneurial activity (TEA), 20–24  
 Trade credit  
 advantages of, 433  
 cash from, 431–32  
 Trademarks, 499, 530–32  
 ownership of, 512  
 registering, 511  
 service mark, 510  
 Trade promotions, 181  
 Trade sale, 354  
 Trade secrets, 499, 507–9  
 software protection, 519–20  
 theft of, 464  
 Traditional bank lending, 436–41  
 Training, entrepreneurship, 17  
 Trends, customer, 91–93  
 Triggering event, 51
- Under pricing, 403  
 Underwriter, lead, 402  
 United States, importance of venture capital in, 350–52  
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, 502, 503, 504, 511  
 Utility patents, 501–6  
 criteria for, 503–4  
 drafting claims, 504–6  
 obtaining, 501–2
- Valuation, 381–86  
 asset-based, 383  
 earning capitalization, 381–82  
 of future cash flows, 382  
 market-comparable, 382, 383–85  
 post-money, 398  
 Value added, 397  
 Value chain, leveraging, 540  
 Values, company, 133  
 Variable costs, 174
- Vendors, 103  
 Venture capital, 10–11, 15, 18, 24, 26, 27, 347–56, 393–95, 396–98  
 candidates for, 393–95  
 classic, 347–50  
 classic, financing factors, 357–58  
 dealing with capitalists, 396–98  
 in Europe, 356  
 financial returns on, 354–56  
 flow of, 353  
 fund, 353  
 importance of, 350–52  
 investing mechanism, 352–53  
 rounds of, 398–99  
 Venture-capital-backed companies, 395–96  
 Venture financing, 143, 145  
 Ventures  
 financing, 337–58, 386–99  
 new, bootstrapping, 380–81  
 valuation, 381–86  
 Vesting, 211  
 Viral marketing, 182, 183  
 Virtual companies, 16  
 Virtual team, 214
- Warehousing  
 field, 435  
 public, 435  
 Women, TEA for, 23, 24  
 Word-of-mouth marketing, 182, 183  
 Working capital  
 accounts receivable as, 424–31  
 from inventories, 430–31  
 maintenance, 439  
 management of, 430  
 Worksheets  
 cost of goods sold (COGS), 312  
 operating expenses, 312  
 World Wide Web (www), 1, 8, 9